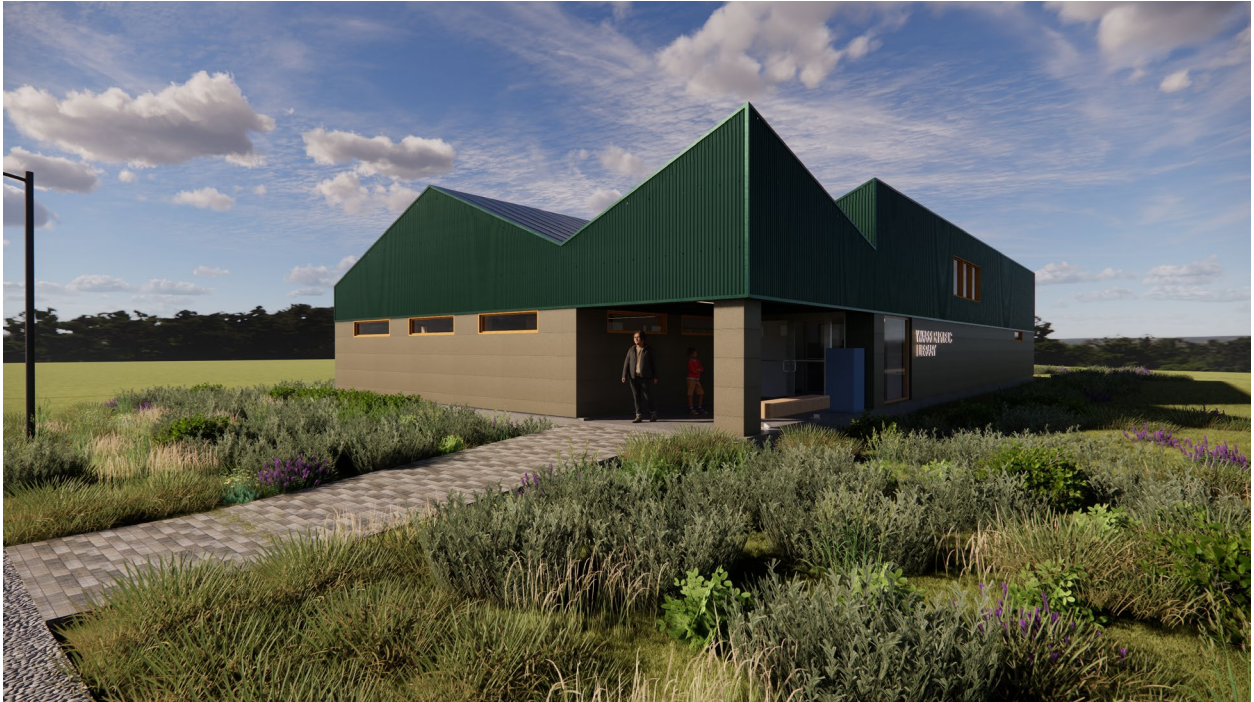


# Warren Branch Library

13750 Sidonie  
Warren, MI 48089

Project Number: ITB-W-1478 | P24006  
Issued For: Permit and Bid Set  
Date Issued: 03/14/2025



Owner: Warren Public Library  
Owner Representative: Craig Treppa

Architect of Record: PLY +  
409 ½ N. Fourth Ave  
Ann Arbor, MI 48104

Civil Engineer: Nederveld  
3037 Miller Rd.  
Ann Arbor, MI. 48103

Structural Engineer: IMEG Corp.  
3353 Twelve Mile Rd  
Farmington Hills, MI. 48331

M/E/P Engineer: IMEG Corp  
3353 Twelve Mile Rd  
Farmington Hills, MI. 48331

Technology: IMEG Corp  
3353 Twelve Mile Rd  
Farmington Hills, MI. 48331

**PLY+**  
*architecture, urbanism, design*



**SECTION 000107**

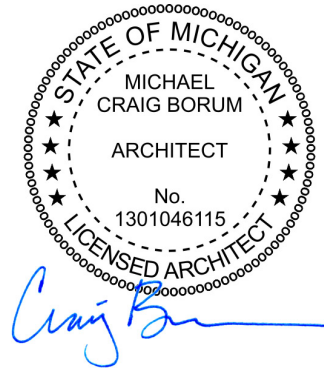
**SEALS PAGE**

**ARCHITECTURAL SIGNATURE PAGE**

**PLY+ ARCHITECTURE**  
**219 NORTH MAIN STREET**  
**ANN ARBOR, MI. 48104**

**PH. 734.827.2238**

**ARCHITECT: CRAIG BORUM, FAIA**

		
--	--	---

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**CIVIL SIGNATURE PAGE**

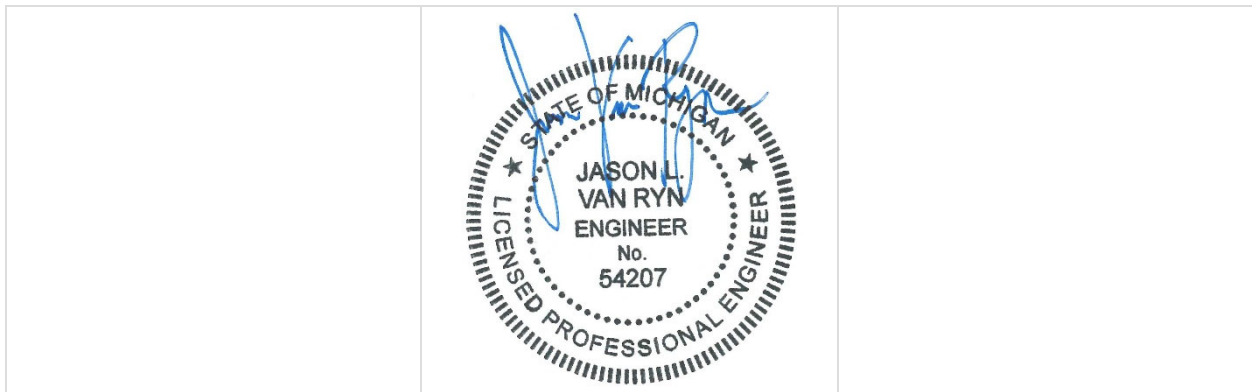
**NEDERVELD**

**3037 MILLER RD**

**ANN ARBOR, MI. 48103**

**PH. 734.929.6963**

**ENGINEER: JASON VAN RYN, PE**



---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**STRUCTURAL SIGNATURE PAGE**

**IMEG CORP.**

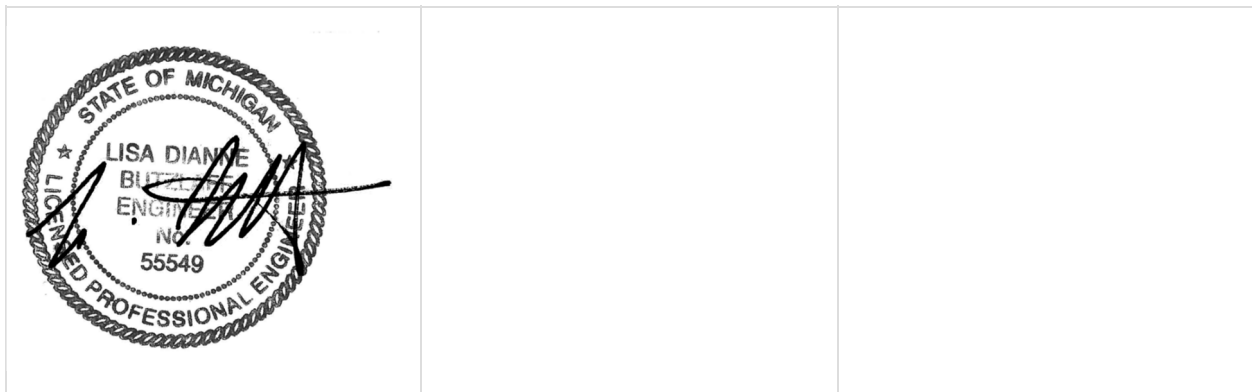
**33533 TWELVE MILE ROAD**

**SUITE 200**

**FARMINGTON HILLS, MI. 48331**

**PH.248.847.3234**

**ENGINEER: LISA BUTZLAFF, PE**



**MEP SIGNATURE PAGE**

**IMEG CORP.**

**33533 W 12 MILE ROAD**

**SUITE 200**

**FARMINGTON HILLS, MI. 48331**

**PH. 630.717.2445**

**MECHANICAL ENGINEER: PETER PAPANIKOLAOU, PE, PHD**

**PH. 630.717.2435**

**ELECTRICAL ENGINEER: ANTHONY VANSANT, PE**



---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**IT SIGNATURE PAGE**

**IMEG CORP.**


**33533 W 12 MILE ROAD**

**SUITE 200**

**FARMINGTON HILLS, MI. 48331**

**PH. 630.717.2435**

**ANTHONY VANSANT, PE**

		
---	--	--

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**END OF SECTION 000107**



**SECTION 000110**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

**1.01 DIVISION 00 -- PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. 000107 - Seals Page
- B. 000110 - Table of Contents
- C. 000116 - Drawing Index
- D. 002113 - Instructions to Bidders
- E. 004100 - Bid Form
- F. 006325 - Substitution Request Form - During Construction
- G. 007200 - General Conditions

**SPECIFICATIONS**

**2.01 DIVISION 01 -- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. 011000 - Summary
- B. 012100 - Allowances
- C. 012200 - Unit Prices
- D. 012500 - Substitution Procedures
- E. 013000 - Administrative Requirements
- F. 013216 - Construction Progress Schedule
- G. 013300 - Submittal Procedures
- H. 014000 - Quality Requirements
- I. 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls
- J. 016000 - Product Requirements
- K. 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements
- L. 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal

**2.02 DIVISION 02 -- EXISTING CONDITIONS**

- A. For Site Preparation and Earthwork, see Division 31
- B. For Pavements and Site Improvements, see Division 32
- C. For Site Utilities, see Division 33

**2.03 DIVISION 03 -- CONCRETE**

- A. 030130 - Maintenance of Cast-In-Place Concrete

- B. 031000 - Concrete Formwork
- C. 032000 - Concrete Reinforcement
- D. 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete

**2.04 DIVISION 04 -- MASONRY**

- A. 042200 - Reinforced Unit Masonry

**2.05 DIVISION 05 -- METALS**

- A. 050523 - Welding
- B. 051223 - Structural Steel

**2.06 DIVISION 06 -- WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

- A. 061000 - Rough Carpentry
- B. 061200 - Structural Insulated Panels for Roofs and Walls
- C. 061300 - Heavy Timber
- D. 061800 - Glued-Laminated Construction
- E. 064100 - Architectural Wood Casework
- F. 068316 - Fiberglass Reinforced Paneling

**2.07 DIVISION 07 -- THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

- A. 071400 - Fluid-Applied Waterproofing
- B. 072100 - Thermal Insulation
- C. 072700 - Air Barriers
- D. 074113 - Metal Roof Panels
- E. 074213 - Metal Wall Panels
- F. 074243 - Composite Wall Panels
- G. 074400 - Concrete Faced Panels
- H. 075323 - EPDM Thermoset Single-Ply Roofing - Carlisle
- I. 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- J. 077123 - Manufactured Gutters and Downspouts
- K. 079200 - Joint Sealants

**2.08 DIVISION 08 -- OPENINGS**

- A. 081113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
- B. 081416 - Flush Wood Doors
- C. 084313 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts
- D. 087100 - Door Hardware

- E. 088000 - Glazing

## **2.09 DIVISION 09 -- FINISHES**

- A. 090561 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation
- B. 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies
- C. 092216 - Non-Structural Metal Framing
- D. 092513 - Direct Exterior Finish System
- E. 093000 - Tiling
- F. 095100 - Acoustical Ceilings
- G. 096500 - Resilient Flooring
- H. 096813 - Tile Carpeting
- I. 099000 - Interior and Exterior Paints and Coatings

## **2.10 DIVISION 10 -- SPECIALTIES**

- A. 101400 - Signage
- B. 101419 - Dimensional Letter Signage
- C. 102800 - Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories
- D. 104400 - Fire Protection Specialties

## **2.11 DIVISION 11 -- EQUIPMENT**

## **2.12 DIVISION 12 -- FURNISHINGS**

- A. 123600 - Countertops
- B. 124813 - Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

## **2.13 DIVISION 13 -- SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

## **2.14 DIVISION 14 -- CONVEYING EQUIPMENT**

## **2.15 DIVISION 21 -- FIRE SUPPRESSION**

## **2.16 DIVISION 22 -- PLUMBING**

- A. 220500 - Basic Plumbing Requirements
- B. 220529 - Plumbing Supports and Anchors
- C. 220719 - Plumbing Piping Insulation
- D. 220900 - Instrumentation
- E. 221000 - Plumbing Piping
- F. 221023 - Natural Gas Piping
- G. 221030 - Plumbing Specialties

- H. 221123 - Domestic Water Pumps
- I. 223000 - Plumbing Equipment
- J. 224000 - Plumbing Fixtures

## **2.17 DIVISION 23 -- HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

- A. 230500 - Basic HVAC Requirements
- B. 230513 - Motors
- C. 230529 - HVAC Supports And Anchors
- D. 230593 - Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing
- E. 230713 - Ductwork Insulation
- F. 230719 - HVAC Piping Insulation
- G. 230900 - Controls
- H. 233100 - Ductwork
- I. 233300 - Ductwork Accessories
- J. 233416 - Centrifugal Fans
- K. 233600 - Air Terminal Units
- L. 233700 - Air Inlets And Outlets
- M. 237416.12 - Packaged Rooftop Air Conditioning Units 25 Ton And Below
- N. 238126 - Split System Air Conditioning Units
- O. 238200 - Terminal Heat Transfer Units

## **2.18 DIVISION 25 -- INTEGRATED AUTOMATION**

## **2.19 DIVISION 26 -- ELECTRICAL**

- A. 260500 - Basic Electrical Requirements
- B. 260513 - Wire And Cable
- C. 260517 Electric Heat Trace and Snow Melt
- D. 260526 - Grounding and Bonding
- E. 260527 - Supporting Devices
- F. 260533 - Conduit And Boxes
- G. 260553 - Electrical Identification
- H. 260573 - Power System Study
- I. 260933 - Lighting Control Systems
- J. 262000 - Service Entrance
- K. 262416 - Panelboards
- L. 262419 - Motor Control

- M. 262726 - Wiring Devices
- N. 262813 - Fuses
- O. 262816 - Disconnect Switches
- P. 265119 - Led Lighting
- Q. 265215 - Emergency Lighting Inverter

**2.20 DIVISION 27 -- COMMUNICATIONS**

- A. 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements
- B. 270526 - Communications Bonding
- C. 270528 - Interior Communication Pathways
- D. 270543 - Exterior Communication Pathways
- E. 270553 - Identification for Communication Systems
- F. 271100 - Communication Equipment Rooms (CER)
- G. 271500 - Horizontal Cabling Requirements
- H. 271710 - Testing
- I. 271720- Structured Cabling System Warranty

**2.21 DIVISION 28 -- ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

**2.22 DIVISION 31 -- EARTHWORK**

- A. 31 10 00 - Site Clearing
- B. 31 20 00 - Earth Moving
- C. 31 20 20 - Structural Excavation and Backfill
- D. 31 23 00 - Foundation Excavating and Backfilling
- E. 31 23 19 - Dewatering
- F. 31 50 00 - Excavation Support and Protection

**2.23 DIVISION 32 -- EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

- A. 32 13 13 - Concrete Paving
- B. 32 13 73 - Concrete Paving Joint Sealants
- C. 32 14 13 - Non-Permeable Unit Paving
- D. 32 17 23 - Pavement Markings
- E. 32 17 26 - Tactile Warning Surfacing
- F. 32 92 00 - Turf and Grasses
- G. 32 93 00 - Plants

**2.24 DIVISION 33 -- UTILITIES**

- A. 33 05 00 - Common Work Results for Utilities
- B. 33 41 00 - Storm Utility Drainage Piping
- C. 33 46 00 - Subdrainage

**2.25 DIVISION 34 -- TRANSPORTATION**

**2.26 DIVISION 40 -- PROCESS INTEGRATION**

**2.27 DIVISION 46 -- WATER AND WASTEWATER EQUIPMENT**

**END OF SECTION 000110**

**SECTION 000116**

**DRAWING INDEX**

<b>A000</b>	<b>PROJECT COVER SHEET</b>
<b>A010</b>	<b>SHEET INDEX</b>

**CIVIL DRAWINGS**

<b>C100</b>	<b>COVER SHEET</b>
<b>C-201</b>	<b>EXISTING SITE CONDITIONS PLAN</b>
<b>C203</b>	<b>DEMOLITION PLAN</b>
<b>C204</b>	<b>OVERALL SITE LAYOUT PLAN</b>
<b>C205</b>	<b>SITE LAYOUT PLAN</b>
<b>C300</b>	<b>GRADING AND S.E.S.C. PLAN</b>
<b>C400</b>	<b>UTILITY PLAN</b>
<b>C500</b>	<b>DETAILS AND SPECIFICATIONS</b>
<b>L100</b>	<b>LANDSCAPE PLAN</b>
<b>P-1</b>	<b>PHOTOMETRIC PLAN</b>
<b>DSE-1</b>	<b>SOIL EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL DETAILS</b>
<b>DS-1</b>	<b>PIPE BEDDING AND SEWER DETAILS</b>
<b>DW-1</b>	<b>WATER MAIN DETAILS</b>

**ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS**

<b>A015</b>	<b>ARCHITECTURAL REFERENCE STANDARDS</b>
<b>A020</b>	<b>CODE SUMMARY</b>
<b>A100</b>	<b>ARCHITECTURAL SITE PLAN</b>
<b>A200</b>	<b>FOUNDATION PLAN</b>
<b>A210</b>	<b>MAIN FLOOR PLAN</b>
<b>A220</b>	<b>REFLECTED CEILING PLAN</b>
<b>A230</b>	<b>ROOF PLAN</b>
<b>A240</b>	<b>WALL TYPE PLAN</b>
<b>A300</b>	<b>ENLARGED PLANS TOILET ROOMS</b>
<b>A400</b>	<b>EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS</b>
<b>A450</b>	<b>BUILDING SECTIONS</b>
<b>A500</b>	<b>WALL SECTIONS</b>
<b>A510</b>	<b>WALL SECTIONS</b>
<b>A520</b>	<b>WALL SECTIONS</b>
<b>A600</b>	<b>ENLARGED PLAN DETAILS</b>

<b>A601</b>	<b>ENLARGED SECTION DETAILS</b>
<b>A602</b>	<b>ENLARGED SECTION DETAILS</b>
<b>A603</b>	<b>ENLARGED SECTION DETAILS</b>
<b>A700</b>	<b>INTERIOR ELEVATIONS</b>
<b>A710</b>	<b>INTERIOR ELEVATIONS</b>
<b>A720</b>	<b>INTERIOR ELEVATIONS</b>
<b>A800</b>	<b>SCHEDULES</b>
<b>A805</b>	<b>EXTERIOR GLAZING ELEVATIONS</b>
<b>A810</b>	<b>FINISH PLAN + SCHEDULE</b>
<b>A900</b>	<b>INTERIOR MILLWORK</b>
<b>A901</b>	<b>INTERIOR MILLWORK</b>
<b>A902</b>	<b>INTERIOR MILLWORK</b>
<b>A903</b>	<b>INTERIOR MILLWORK</b>
<b>A9.10</b>	<b>FURNITURE PLAN (FOR CITY REFERENCE)</b>
<b>A9.20</b>	<b>EQUIPMENT PLAN (FOR CITY REFERENCE)</b>
<b>SG100</b>	<b>INTERIOR SIGNAGE KEYPLAN</b>
<b>SG110</b>	<b>INTERIOR SIGNAGE</b>

#### **STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS**

<b>S001</b>	<b>STRUCTURAL GENERAL NOTES</b>
<b>S002</b>	<b>STRUCTURAL GENERAL NOTES</b>
<b>S003</b>	<b>STRUCTURAL GENERAL NOTES</b>
<b>S004</b>	<b>SPECIAL INSPECTIONS</b>
<b>S100</b>	<b>FOUNDATION PLAN</b>
<b>S101</b>	<b>ROOF FRAMING PLAN</b>
<b>S300</b>	<b>TYPICAL CONCRETE DETAILS</b>
<b>S301</b>	<b>TYPICAL CONCRETE DETAILS</b>
<b>S600</b>	<b>TYPICAL WOOD DETAILS</b>
<b>S700</b>	<b>SECTIONS AND DETAILS</b>
<b>S701</b>	<b>SECTIONS AND DETAILS</b>
<b>S702</b>	<b>SECTIONS AND DETAILS</b>

#### **MECHANICAL DRAWINGS**

<b>M000</b>	<b>MECHANICAL COVERSHEET</b>
<b>M201</b>	<b>LEVEL 01 PLAN - HVAC</b>
<b>M400</b>	<b>HVAC DETAILS</b>
<b>M401</b>	<b>HVAC DETAILS</b>
<b>M500</b>	<b>HVAC DIAGRAMS</b>
<b>M501</b>	<b>HVAC DIAGRAMS</b>



<b>M600</b>	<b>HVAC SCHEDULES</b>
<b>M601</b>	<b>HVAC SCHEDULES</b>

#### **ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS**

<b>E000</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL COVERSHEET</b>
<b>E001</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL LIGHTING COVERSHEET</b>
<b>E100</b>	<b>LEVEL 01 SITE PLAN - ELECTRICAL</b>
<b>E201</b>	<b>LEVEL 01 PLAN - LIGHTING</b>
<b>E211</b>	<b>LEVEL 01 PLAN - POWER</b>
<b>E400</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL DETAILS</b>
<b>E401</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL DETAILS</b>
<b>E402</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL DETAILS</b>
<b>E500</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL DIAGRAMS</b>
<b>E600</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES</b>
<b>E601</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES</b>
<b>E700</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES</b>

#### **PLUMBING DRAWINGS**

<b>P000</b>	<b>PLUMBING COVERSHEET</b>
<b>P200</b>	<b>UNDERFLOOR PLAN - PLUMBING</b>
<b>P201</b>	<b>LEVEL 01 PLAN - PLUMBING</b>
<b>P400</b>	<b>PLUMBING DETAILS</b>
<b>P500</b>	<b>PLUMBING DIAGRAMS</b>
<b>P600</b>	<b>PLUMBING SCHEDULES</b>

#### **TECHNOLOGY DRAWINGS**

<b>T000</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY COVERSHEET</b>
<b>T100</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY SITE PLAN</b>
<b>T201</b>	<b>LEVEL 01 PLAN - TECHNOLOGY</b>
<b>T300</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY ROOM ENLARGEMENTS</b>
<b>T400</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS</b>
<b>T401</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS</b>
<b>T402</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS</b>
<b>T403</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY DETAILS AND DIAGRAMS</b>
<b>T500</b>	<b>TECHNOLOGY SCHEDULES</b>

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**END OF SECTIONAA 000116**

## **SECTION 002113**

### **INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS**

#### **SUMMARY**

##### **1.01 DOCUMENT INCLUDES**

- A. Invitation
  - 1. Bid Submission
- B. Bid Documents and Contract Documents
  - 1. Inquiries/Addenda
- C. Bid Enclosures/Requirements
  - 1. Security Deposit
  - 2. Performance Assurance
  - 3. Bid Form Requirements
  - 4. Bid Form Signature

#### **INVITATION**

##### **2.01 BID SUBMISSION**

- A. Bids signed and under seal, executed, and dated will be received electronically via the BIDNET (MITN) System by 12:30 PM local standard time on 04-30-2025
  - 1. The City will only accept electronic bids submitted via the BIDNET (MITN) system.
  - 2. Bids received after 12:30 PM of the date they are due will not be accepted. Bids received will be publicly opened via a virtual (Zoom) meeting and read aloud at 1:00pm.
    - a. **LINK TO ZOOM MEETING:**  
<https://cityofwarren.zoom.us/j/86707177500?pwd=qGb5HEV6GO4esvQUxdDLy mLbLuBk6h.1>
    - b. **ZOOM CALL-IN #:** 1 305 224 1968
    - c. **ZOOM MEETING ID:** 867 0717 7500
    - d. **ZOOM MEETING PASSCODE:** 798669
  - 3. Bid Security
    - a. Each bid must be accompanied by a certified check or acceptable bid bond made in favor of the Treasurer of the City of Warren in an amount equal to five percent (5%) of the total bid. The original certified check or bid bond must be received in the City of Warren Purchasing Division, One City Square, Suite 425, Warren, MI 48093, by 12:30 PM local time on the date the electronic bids are due.

- b. Bids may not be withdrawn for a period of ninety (90) days after the scheduled time of opening bids, without the consent of the Owner. The City reserves the right to reject any or all bids received and to waive any formalities.
- c. In addition, the City reserves the right to evaluate bids on any basis determined by the City to be in the best interest of the City and to consider alternate bids if the low bidder(s) does not comply with the project requirements or are otherwise determined to be unqualified.

## **BID DOCUMENTS AND CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

### **3.01 BID DOCUMENTS**

- A. Bid documents can be electronically downloaded from the Michigan Inter-Governmental Trade Network (MITN) website @ [www.mitn.info](http://www.mitn.info).
- B. INQUIRIES/ADDENDA
  - 1. Contractor questions regarding the steps needed to complete the electronic bid submission should be directed to the BidNet (MITN) help desk at 1-800-835-4603. Select option 2 when prompted.
  - 2. Contractor questions regarding the Contract Documents should be submitted to Craig Treppa, Purchasing Agent, at [ctreppa@cityofwarren.org](mailto:ctreppa@cityofwarren.org)
  - 3. Last day for questions is 04-17-2025 at 12:30 PM.

## **BID ENCLOSURES AND REQUIREMENTS**

### **4.01 BID SECURITY REQUIREMENTS FOR CITY OF WARREN BIDS**

- A. Each bid must be accompanied by a certified check or acceptable bid bond made in favor of the Treasurer of the City of Warren (a company or personal check is not acceptable) duly executed by the bidder as principal and having as surety thereon a surety company approved by the City, in the amount of 5% of the bid amount as a guarantee on the part of the bidder that he will, if called upon to do so, enter into a contract to perform the work as per the attached specifications.
- B. The original bid bond must be received in the City of Warren Purchasing Division, One City Square, Suite 425, Warren, MI 48093, attention to: Craig Treppa, Purchasing Agent, by 12:30 PM local time on the date the electronic bids are due.
- C. Bidders who have not submitted a bid security to the purchasing division prior to the bid being due, will have their bids rejected.
- D. Contractors are required to submit certified payroll

#### **4.02 PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT ASSURANCE**

- A. Include the cost of Performance and Payment Bonds and Maintenance and Gurantee Bonds as 100% of the contract sum.
- B. Accepted Bidder: Provide a Performance Bond as described in Appendix C
- C. Accepted Bidder: Provide a Payment Bond as described in Appendix C
- D. Accepted Bidder: Provide a Maintenance and Guarantee Bond as described in Appendix C

#### **4.03 MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. The following requirements apply to the following unless stated otherwise
  - 1. Architect/Engineer
  - 2. General Contractor
  - 3. Subcontractors (General Contractor responsible for subcontractors adhering to requirements.)
- B. Shall show evidence of procuring goods, products, and materials produced in the United States, when appropriate, and to the extent consistent with law. These records shall be held for three years.
- C. General Contractor shall keep records for three years showing compliance with the Prevailing Wage Ordinance with both general contractor and subcontractor work.
- D. Shall comply with all applicable standards, orders or regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387). Violations must be reported to the Federal awarding agency and the Regional Office of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
- E. Shall include a statement and signature affirming "Inclusion of the "Equal Employment Opportunity" clause as outlined in section 41 CFR § 60-1.4 of Uniform Guidance." See Exhibit C.
- F. All contracts more than \$100,000 that involve the employment of mechanics or laborers shall include a provision for compliance with the Contact Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. Under 40 U.S.C. 3702 of the Act, each contractor must be required to compute the wages of every mechanic and laborer on the basis of a standard work week of 40 hours. Work in excess of the standard work week is permissible provided that the worker is compensated at a rate of not less than one and a half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours in the work week.
  - 1. The requirements of 40 U.S.C. 3704 are applicable to construction work and provide that no laborer or mechanic must be required to work in surroundings or under working

conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous. These requirements do not apply to the purchases of supplies or materials or articles ordinarily available on the open market, or contracts for transportation or transmission of intelligence.

#### **4.04 BID SECURITY LIQUIDATED DAMAGES CLAUSE:**

- A. Failure of the successful bidder to enter into an agreement with the City for the work and deliver the required bonds and insurance will result in forfeiture of the bid bond, and that security shall, as liquidated damages, become the property of the City.

#### **4.05 LABOR HARMONY**

- A. CITY ORDINANCE FOR LABOR HARMONY THROUGH PREVAILING WAGE AND BENEFITS FOR CITY PROJECTS:

1. The Warren City Council has adopted an ordinance entitled Labor Harmony through Prevailing Wage and Benefits for City Projects. The ordinance applies to projects that are anticipated to be over \$50,000.00 in value, and that involve City Projects as defined in section 2-334.1. A copy of the ordinance is contained in Appendix A.
2. The undersigned has read and agrees to comply with the ordinance including to adherence to wage guidelines, in the event that the undersigned is the successful contractor.
3. All laborers and mechanics employed or working on this project shall be paid wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalent therefore) at rates not less than those in General Wage Decision (See Appendix B)

#### **4.06 MANDATORY PREBID CONFERENCE**

- A. There will be a mandatory in person Pre-Bid Meeting for all contractors wishing to submit a bid on 04-10-2025 at Warren City Hall
1. Location: Pre-bid meeting will be held in the Baseline Conference Room 4th Floor, of the Warren City Hall Building located at One City Square, Warren, MI 48093.
  2. Time: 9:30 AM
- B. Representatives of Architect will be in attendance.
- C. Summarized minutes of this meeting will be circulated to attendees. These minutes will not form part of Contract Documents.

**END OF SECTION 002113**

**SECTION 004100**

**BID FORM**

**THE PROJECT AND THE PARTIES**

**1.01 TO:**

- A. Owner  
Warren Branch Library - City of Warren  
13750 Sidonie  
Warren, Michigan 48089

**1.02 FOR:**

- A. New Public Library Branch for the Warren Public Library

**1.03 DATE: \_\_\_\_\_ (BIDDER TO ENTER DATE)**

**1.04 SUBMITTED BY: (BIDDER TO ENTER NAME AND ADDRESS)**

- A. Bidder's Full Name \_\_\_\_\_  
1. Address \_\_\_\_\_  
2. City, State, Zip \_\_\_\_\_

**1.05 OFFER**

- A. Having examined the Place of The Work and all matters referred to in the Instructions to Bidders and the Bid Documents prepared by PLY+ and its consultants for the above mentioned project, we, the undersigned, hereby offer to enter into a Contract to perform the Work for the Sum of:
- B. \_\_\_\_\_ dollars  
(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), in lawful money of the United States of America.
- C. Accompanying the proposal is a bid security for work required to be furnished by the Contract Documents, the same being subject to forfeiture in the event of default by the undersigned.
1. Reference Section 002113 - Instructions to Bidders for Bid Security Requirements and Bonds
- D. All applicable federal taxes are included and State of Michigan taxes are included in the Bid Sum.
- E. All Cash and Contingency Allowances described in Section 012100 - Allowances are included in the Bid Sum.

---

## 1.06 ACCEPTANCE

- A. This offer shall be open to acceptance and is irrevocable for 90 days from the bid closing date.
- B. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids.
- C. If this bid is accepted by Owner within the time period stated above, we will:
  - 1. Execute the Agreement within seven days of receipt of Notice of Award.
  - 2. Furnish the required bonds within seven days of receipt of Notice of Award.
  - 3. Commence work within seven days after written Notice to Proceed of this bid.
- D. If this bid is accepted within the time stated, and we fail to commence the Work or we fail to provide the required Bond(s), the security deposit shall be forfeited as damages to Owner by reason of our failure, limited in amount to the lesser of the face value of the security deposit or the difference between this bid and the bid upon which a Contract is signed.

## 1.07 ALLOWANCES - REFERENCE SECTION 01 22 00

- A. These amounts are to be included in the Base Bid amount listed above.
- B. Allowance No. 1: Provide allowance for coordination and installation work with DTE to bring power to the site from Schoenherr Rd. or other means necessary as required to meet the loads indicated on the Contract Documents
  - 1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars  
(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), in lawful money of the United States of America.
- C. Allowance No. 2: Provide pricing for independent testing required per the Project Manual
  - 1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars  
(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), in lawful money of the United States of America.

## 1.08 UNIT PRICES - REFERENCE SECTION 01 21 00

- A. The following are Unit Prices for specific portions of the Work as listed. The following is the list of Unit Prices:
- B. ITEM DESCRIPTION - UNIT QUANTITY - UNIT PRICE - ITEM VALUE
- C. Cost of Concrete per the Quantities shown on the Contract Documents - \$ - per Cu. Yd. -  
\$ \_\_\_\_\_

## 1.09 BID FORM SUPPLEMENTS

- A. Non-Iran Linked Businesses
  - 1. By signing below, I certify and agree on behalf of myself and the company submitting this proposal the following:



2. (1) that I am duly authorized to legally bind the company submitting this proposal; and
3. (2) that the company submitting this proposal is not an "Iran linked business," as that term is defined in Section 2(e) of the Iran Economic Sanctions Act, being Michigan Public Act No. 517 of 2012; and
4. (3) that I and the company submitting this proposal will immediately comply with any further certifications or information submissions requested by the City in this regard.

**1.10 BID FORM SIGNATURE(S)**

A. Company / Contact Information

1. Company Name:
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Contact Name:
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Address:
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Phone Number:
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Cell \_\_\_\_\_
9. Email:
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Corporate Officer
12. Name \_\_\_\_\_ Title \_\_\_\_\_
13. Corporate Officer Signature:
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Date
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Federal ID Number:
18. \_\_\_\_\_

**1.11 IF THE BID IS A JOINT VENTURE OR PARTNERSHIP, ADD ADDITIONAL FORMS OF EXECUTION FOR EACH MEMBER OF THE JOINT VENTURE IN THE APPROPRIATE FORM OR FORMS AS ABOVE.**

**END OF SECTION 004100**



---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**SECTION 006325**

**SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM - DURING CONSTRUCTION**

**SUBSTITUTION REQUEST NUMBER:**

**DATE SUBMITTED:**

**SPECIFIED ITEM:** \_\_\_\_\_

**SPECIFICATION SECTION:** \_\_\_\_\_

**SPEC ARTICLE / PARAGRAPH:** \_\_\_\_\_

**SPECIFIED PRODUCT / DESCRIPTION:** \_\_\_\_\_

**SPECIFIED MANUFACTURER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**SPECIFIED PRODUCT / MODEL:** \_\_\_\_\_

**REASON SPECIFIED ITEM CANNOT BE PROVIDED:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION**

**DESCRIPTION OF PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PROPOSED MANUFACTURER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**PRODUCT / MODEL:** \_\_\_\_\_

**YEARS PRODUCT / MODEL HAS BEEN MANUFACTURED:** \_\_\_\_\_

**DIFFERENCES BETWEEN PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION AND SPECIFIED ITEM:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**WILL PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION AFFECT OTHER PARTS OF THE WORK?**

☐ YES   ☐ NO

**IF YES, EXPLAIN HOW:** \_\_\_\_\_

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

---

---

---

**HOW WILL SUBSTITUTION BENEFIT THE OWNER:**

☐ COST SAVINGS    ☐ TIME SAVINGS    ☐ OTHER

PROVIDE SPECIFIC DETAILS: \_\_\_\_\_

**THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION IS REQUIRED; CHECK TO INDICATE INFORMATION IS ATTACHED. (REQUEST WILL BE REJECTED WITHOUT REQUIRED DATA)**

☐ LIST OF REFERENCES WHERE PROPOSED PRODUCT HAS BEEN INSTALLED; INCLUDE ADDRESS, OWNER, ARCHITECT, AND DATE INSTALLED.

☐ PRODUCT DATA SHEETS.

☐ APPLICABLE CERTIFICATES AND TEST REPORTS.

☐ COMPARATIVE DATA: PROVIDE POINT-BY-POINT, SIDE-BY-SIDE COMPARISON OF SPECIFIED PRODUCT AND PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION ADDRESSING ESSENTIAL ATTRIBUTES SPECIFIED.

**INDICATE WHICH OF THE FOLLOWING VOLUNTARY INFORMATION IS ATTACHED, IF ANY:**

☐ DRAWINGS.

☐ SAMPLES.

☐ OTHER ITEMS: \_\_\_\_\_

**SIGNATURE**

**THE UNDERSIGNED CERTIFIES:**

• PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION HAS BEEN FULLY INVESTIGATED AND DETERMINED TO BE EQUAL OR SUPERIOR IN ALL RESPECTS TO SPECIFIED PRODUCT.

- SAME WARRANTY WILL BE FURNISHED FOR PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION AS FOR SPECIFIED PRODUCT.
- SAME MAINTENANCE SERVICE AND SOURCE OF REPLACEMENT PARTS, AS APPLICABLE, IS AVAILABLE.
- PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION WILL HAVE NO ADVERSE EFFECT ON OTHER TRADES AND WILL NOT AFFECT OR DELAY PROGRESS SCHEDULE.
- COST DATA AS STATED ABOVE IS COMPLETE. CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL COSTS RELATED TO ACCEPTED SUBSTITUTION WHICH MAY SUBSEQUENTLY BECOME APPARENT ARE TO BE WAIVED.
- PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION DOES NOT AFFECT DIMENSIONS AND FUNCTIONAL CLEARANCES.
- PAYMENT WILL BE MADE FOR CHANGES TO BUILDING DESIGN, INCLUDING A/E DESIGN, DETAILING, AND CONSTRUCTION COSTS CAUSED BY THE SUBSTITUTION.
- COORDINATION, INSTALLATION, AND CHANGES IN THE WORK AS NECESSARY FOR ACCEPTED SUBSTITUTION WILL BE COMPLETE IN ALL RESPECTS.

SUBMITTED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

SIGNED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

FIRM / COMPANY \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_

EMAIL: \_\_\_\_\_ PHONE: \_\_\_\_\_

**ARCHITECT'S RESPONSE**

☐ SUBSTITUTION APPROVED - PROVIDE SUBMITTALS PER SECTION 01 33 00 AND RESPECTIVE SECTION FOR WHICH SUBSTITUTION WAS MADE.

☐ SUBSTITUTION APPROVED AS NOTED - PROVIDE SUBMITTALS PER SECTION 01 33 00 AND RESPECTIVE SECTION FOR WHICH SUBSTITUTION WAS MADE

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

☐ SUBSTITUTION REJECTED - PROVIDE SPECIFIED MATERIAL (S)

☐ SUBSTITUTION REQUEST RECEIVED TOO LATE - USE SPECIFIED MATERIALS.

ARCHITECT'S SIGNATURE: \_\_\_\_\_

ARCHITECT'S COMMENTS: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
ADDITIONAL COMMENTS:

☐ CONTRACTOR   ☐ SUBCONTRACTOR   ☐ SUPPLIER   ☐ MANUFACTURER   ☐ A/E

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

END OF SECTION 00632

**SECTION 007200**

**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**FORM OF GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**1.01 THE GENERAL CONDITIONS APPLICABLE TO THIS CONTRACT**

- A. "The General Conditions of the Contract for the Construction" A.I.A. Document A-201, 2017 Edition forms a part of these Specifications and shall have the same effect as if bound herin.
- B. Contractors shall be held responsible for having familiarized themselves with this document and all other documents affecting their contracts in this specification.

**1.02 CITY OF WARREN GENERAL CONDITIONS**

**A. SIGNATURE**

- 1. Bids and all information requested of the vendor shall be entered in the appropriate space on the bid form and Signature Page. Failure to do so may disqualify your offer.
- 2. An authorized officer or employee of the vendor shall sign all bids.

**B. ELECTRONIC BID SUBMISSION**

- 1. Electronic bids shall be submitted by the date specified and at or prior to the time specified to be considered. Late bids, e-mail, sealed, telegraphic, or telephone bids will NOT be accepted.
- 2. The bidder is required to submit their bid electronically via the BidNet (MITN) system in order to be considered for award.
- 3. Bids received after 12:30 pm of the date they are due will not be accepted.

**C. RELATIONSHIP DISCLOSURE**

- 1. It is required that any relationship (business or personal) to a City employee or official be disclosed. This includes employment or other professional engagements.

**D. ALTERATION OF BID DOCUMENTS**

- 1. Vendor **changes or alterations to the bid documents, including the specification, may result in the bid being considered non-responsive** and/or the Bidder being debarred. The only authorized vendor changes to the bid documents will be in the areas provided for the Bidder's response including the "Exceptions" section of the bid and on separate attached sheets submitted by the vendor. Vendor shall clearly identify product offered and deviations from the specification. If a change or alteration to the bid document is undetected, and the bid is awarded the contract, the original terms, conditions, and specification in the authorized version of the bid document will be

applicable during the terms of the contract. Bidders are responsible for ensuring they have obtained all relevant documents including amendments, clarifications, changes, drawings, etc. as made available by the City.

**E. PRICES**

1. Prices quoted shall be for new products in current production unless otherwise specified. Where refurbished or discontinued items are offered they shall be clearly identified as such.
2. Prices quoted shall be exclusive of any rebates due the City. Any rebates the City may be entitled to should be shown as a separate line item and include expiration date.
3. Corrections and/or modifications received after the bid closing time specified will not be accepted. Unit Prices prevail
4. All information shall be entered in ink or typewritten. Mistakes may be crossed out and corrections inserted before submission of your bid. The person signing the bid shall initial corrections in ink.
5. All prices will be proposed F.O.B. DESTINATION, INCLUDE ALL DELIVERY AND ANY ADDITIONAL CHARGES and remain in effect as specified in the bid.

**F. AWARD**

1. Unless otherwise stated in the bid documents, the City cannot guarantee exclusivity of the contract for the proposed products or services.
2. Award of the bids shall be based upon a combination of factors, including but not limited to, adherence to bid requirements, references and any other factors that may be in the City's best interest.
3. The City reserves the right to reject any and all bids, and to waive any defect or irregularity in bids.
4. The City reserves the right to accept and separate items in the bid and to accept the bid that, in the opinion of the City, is to the best advantage and interest of the public we serve. The City also has the right to re-solicit bids if it is deemed to be in the best interest of the City.
5. The City reserves the right to reject low bids which have major deviations from our specifications; to accept a higher bid which has only minor deviations. By signing the bid, Bidders agree to accept a split award unless the Bidder clearly indicates that it takes Exception. The bid will be awarded to that responsible, responsive firm whose bid, conforms to this solicitation and will be most advantageous to the City, with regard not only to price but also to availability of product, location and quality of product considered.



6. The City reserves the right to award all line items, to make no award or to award on an individual line item basis, whichever is deemed to be in the best interest of the City.
7. Time of delivery may be a consideration in the award.
8. The City reserves the right to consider as unqualified to perform the contract any bidder who does not habitually perform with its own forces seventy-five (75%) of the work involved.

**G. TERMINATION**

1. Failure to Perform. The City may terminate a bid award for the failure to perform a term of the bid specifications to the satisfaction of the City. The City shall provide ten (10) days advance written notice to the Awarded Vendor for the failure to perform services or for the violation of any other term of the bid specifications. Unless futile or the violation is recurring, the City shall provide notice and the opportunity to cure the violation prior to termination. Such notice to cure shall be given in writing by first-class mail. In the event of a dispute, or in order to avoid interruption of service, the City may engage another to perform the work and the Awarded Vendor shall be responsible for any costs the City incurs as a result of the Awarded Vendor's violation. The City may withhold payment to offset any damages the City incurs as a result of the Awarded Vendor's violation.
2. At Will. A bid award may be terminated at will by the City upon a minimum of thirty (30) days prior written notice to the Awarded Vendor. In the event of termination as provided in this subsection, the Awarded Vendor will be compensated for all services performed and approvable reimbursable expenses from the inception date to the termination date provided the services performed and the expenses were provided in accordance with the bid specifications. Payment shall be made upon the Awarded Vendor delivering to the City all information and materials retained by the Awarded Vendor, affiliates, or subcontractors in performing the services described in the bid specifications, whether completed or in progress.
3. Misrepresentation. In addition, the City may reject this Bid, or cancel a contract with an Awarded Vendor, if there is evidence of any misleading or intentionally fraudulent information or documents provided in connection with this Bid.

**H. SPECIFICATION**

1. Brand names and numbers, when used, are for reference to indicate the character or quality desired, unless specifically stated "No Substitutes".
2. Alternate items of the same quality will be considered, provided your offer clearly describes the article. Offers for alternate items shall state the brand and number, or level

or quality. When the bidder does not state brand, or level of quality, it is understood the offer is exactly as specified.

3. All products and services shall be in accordance with all applicable federal, state and local statutes, rules, ordinances, etc.
4. All personnel shall have the appropriate licenses with endorsements for the work performed.
5. In addition, any personnel driving a vehicle on City property shall have the appropriate valid driver's license and have or exceed minimum statutory insurance requirements.

**I. E-VERIFY**

1. Any bidder, attesting to his bid by signature, is affirming that the Bidder has registered with, participates in and utilizes the E-Verify Program (or any successor program implemented by federal Department of Homeland Security and Social Security Administration) to verify the work status of all newly hired employees employed by the Bidder.

**J. NON-IRAN LINKED BUSINESSES**

1. By signing below, Bidder certifies and agrees on behalf of Bidder and the company submitting this bid the following: (1) that the Bidder is duly authorized to legally bind the company submitting this bid; (2) that the company submitting this bid is not an "Iran linked business," as defined in Section 2(e) of the Iran Economic Sanctions Act, being Michigan Public Act No. 517 of 2012; and (3) that Bidder and the company submitting this bid will immediately comply with any further certifications or information submissions requested by the City in this regard.

**K. ASSIGNMENT OF AGREEMENT – OTHER CONTRACTORS.**

1. The Awarded Vendor shall not assign the contract or any part thereof without the written consent of the City.

**L. PERIOD AGREEMENTS**

1. No Exclusive Contract/Additional Services. The Awarded Vendor agrees and understands that the contract shall not be construed as an exclusive agreement and that the City may, at any time, secure similar or identical services at its sole option.
2. Any contract executed pursuant to this Bid, which is for a specific term shall include for an extension of the contract term, at the option of the City, as follows:
  - a. The City shall have the sole option to extend the contract herein for a period of two months by written notice to the Awarded Vendor exercising the option served at least ten days prior to the expiration date of the contract. In the event such option is

exercised by City, all of the provisions of the contract shall remain in full force and effect other than the date of expiration of the contract.

- b. The quantities have been estimated for bid award purposes and may be estimated based on past usage. The quantities may increase or decrease and the City makes no representation as to guarantee of usage. The quantities are estimated on an annual basis.

**M. PAYMENT TERMS**

- 1. The City's normal payment terms are 45 days in connection with cash discounts specified with this bid. Time will be computed from the date of complete delivery of services, supplies, or equipment, as specified, or from the date correct invoices are received in the Office of the City Controller, if the latter is later than the date of delivery. Prices will be considered as net if no cash discount is shown.
- 2. Progress payments will be made on the basis of hours of work completed during the course of the engagement in accordance with the firm's fee bid. Interim billings shall cover a period of not less than a calendar month.

**N. MICHIGAN FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT (FOIA)**

- 1. All costs incurred in the preparation and presentation of this bid, in any way whatsoever, shall be wholly absorbed by the Bidder. All supporting documentation shall become the property of the City unless requested otherwise at the time of submission. Michigan FOIA requires the disclosure, upon request, of all public records that are not exempt from disclosure under Section 13 of the Act, which are subject to disclosure under the Act. Therefore, confidentiality of information submitted in response to this RFP is not assured.

**O. EQUAL OPPORTUNITY CLAUSE**

- 1. This contract requires adherence to the equal opportunity clause, 41 CFR § 60-1.4.

**P. EXCEPTIONS TO THE BID SOLICITATION**

- 1. Each individual/group shall provide a list of Exceptions taken to this bid. Any Exceptions taken shall be identified and explained in writing. An Exception is defined as the individual/group's inability to meet a mandatory requirement or exceed a requirement in the manner specified in the bid solicitation. If the Bidder provides an alternative solution when taking an Exception to a requirement, the benefits of this alternative solution shall be explained. The City reserves the right to accept or reject any Exception whichever is deemed to be in the best interest of the City.

**Q. WITHDRAWAL OF BID**

1. Bidders may withdraw their bids by submitting a written request over the signature of an authorized individual to the Purchasing Department any time prior to the submission deadline. Bidders may thereafter submit a new bid prior to the deadline. Modification or withdrawal of the bid in any manner, oral or written, will not be considered if submitted after the deadline.

**R. DEFAULT TO CITY**

1. It is understood that any Bidder who is in default to the City at the time of opening its bid shall have its bid declared null and void.

**S. BIDDER DISCLOSURE**

1. The Bidder declares that it has not, nor will it, provide gifts, gift certificates, entertainment, favors, or other gratuities to a City official, employee, agent, or volunteer, or to their families.
2. The Bidder acknowledges that if it violates this policy then the City may terminate the contract with the Bidder.

**T. INDEMNITY CLAUSE**

1. To the extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify the City, its officers, employees, agents, and boards and commissions from and against any claim of liability; penalties; damages; attorney fees; professional advisors' fees; settlements; or other fees or expenses arising from or in connection with goods provided and services performed under this Invitation to Bid. The Contractor shall provide the Warren City Attorney's Office with all documents filed in any proceeding related to this Invitation to Bid in which any of the above-listed people or entities are named.

**U. APPENDIX A OF TITLE VI PLAN**

1. During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors, in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees, as follows:
  - a. COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATIONS The contractor shall comply with Regulations relative to nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the Department of Transportation, Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 21, as they may be amended from time to time (hereinafter referred to as the Regulations), which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.
  - b. NONDISCRIMINATION. The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, sex, or national origin in the selection, retention, and treatment of subcontractors, including procurements of materials in the discrimination prohibited by Section 21.5 of the

Regulation, including employment practices when the contractor covers a program set for in Appendix B of the Regulations.

- c. SOLICITATION FOR SUBCONTRACTS, INCLUDING PROCUREMENTS OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT. In all solicitations either by competitive bidding or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under the contract and the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, sex, or national origin.
- d. INFORMATION AND REPORTS. The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Regulations, or directives issues pursuant thereto, and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the State Highway Department or the Federal Highway Administration to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Regulations or directives. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish this information, the contractor shall so certify to the State Highway Department or the Federal Highway Administration, as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.
- e. SANCTIONS FOR NONCOMPLIANCE. In the event the contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination provisions of this contract, the State Highway Department shall impose such contract sanctions as it or the Federal Highway Administration may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:
  - 1) Withholding payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies and/or
  - 2) Cancellation, termination or suspension of the contract, in whole or in part.
- f. INCORPORATION OF PROVISIONS. The contractor shall include provisions of paragraphs (1) through (6) in every subcontract, including procurement of material and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Regulations, or directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the State Highway Department or the Federal Highway Administration may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance: provided, however, that, in the event a contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or supplier

as a result of such direction, the contractor may request the State Highway Department to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the State, and, in addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

**V. SAFETY DATA SHEETS**

1. Important: All City Purchases require Safety Data Sheets where applicable in compliance with the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Hazard Communication Standard.

**END OF SECTION 007200**

## **SECTION 011000**

### **SUMMARY**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 PROJECT**

- A. Project Name: P24006 Warren Library
- B. Owner's Name: City of Warren.
- C. Architect's Name: PLY+ Architecture.
- D. The Project consists of the construction of the new branch library for the City of Warren located at 13750 Sidonie. The work will include adapting the existing parking lot that serves the adjacent Underwood Park, as well as all civil and landscape work for the library. A new timber framed library will be erected on the north side of the site. .
- E. Project Location: 13750 Sidonie, WarrenMichigan, 48206
- F. Architect Identification: The Permit Documents, dated 03-14-2025 were prepared for this project by PLY+ Architecture

##### **1.02 CONTRACT DESCRIPTION**

- A. Contract Type: A single prime contract based on a Stipulated Price as described in the contract for construction.

##### **1.03 PROJECT WARRANTY**

- A. Refer to General Conditions for warranty provisions applicable to this Contract.
  - 1. Project warranty period is governed by Michigan state statutes and other provisions of the Contract.
- B. Guarantee of Materials and Workmanship:
  - 1. Guarantee in writing to Owner that all work performed and all materials and equipment furnished under this Contract are new and in accordance with the Contract Documents, are free from defects in equipment, materials or design furnished, or workmanship performed by Contractor or any of his subcontractors or suppliers at any tier. Such guarantee shall continue for a period of one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion of the Work.
  - 2. Under this guarantee, Contractor agrees to remedy at his own expense any inferior or defective equipment, materials, workmanship, or design that should develop during the guarantee period, or in restoring any other work damaged in fulfilling the terms of the guarantee.

3. Do not perform any work that shall void any manufacturer guarantee or warranty.
- C. Manufacturer's Guarantee and Warranty:
  1. As identified in other Sections of the specifications, provide written manufacturer's guarantees and warranties for specific materials, products, and equipment furnished and installed under this Contract.
  2. Guarantees and Warranties Period: Valid for the period of time stated in each applicable specification Section from the date of Substantial Completion of the Work, but not less than twelve (12) months.
- D. Extended Warranties:
  1. As identified in other Sections of the specifications, provide written manufacturer's guarantees and warranties for specific materials, products, and equipment furnished and installed under this Contract.
  2. Guarantees and Warranties Period: Valid for the stated extended period beyond twenty-four (12) months from the date of Substantial Completion of the Work.
- E. Exclusions:
  1. Warranty requirements contained in the specifications take precedence. These exclusions are superseded by warranty coverage requirements of the specifications.
  2. Notify Architect of design conditions which cannot be fully warranted. Submit notice in writing prior to purchase of the affected product or system.
  3. Failure to provide such notice will not be grounds for waiver of warranty requirements contained in the specifications.
  4. Upon receipt of such notice, Architect will consider modifications necessary to assure that final construction is warrantable to the full extent of Contract requirements.

#### **1.04 WORK BY OWNER**

- A. Items noted below shall be supplied by Owner and installed by Contractor before Substantial Completion
  1. Owner's Responsibilities: Owner will furnish products indicated and perform the following, as applicable:
    - a. Provide to Contractor Owner-reviewed Product Data, Shop Drawings, and Samples
    - b. Provide for delivery of Owner-furnished products to Project Site
    - c. Upon Delivery, inspect, with Contractor present, delivered items
      - 1) If Owner-furnished products are damaged, defective, or missing, arrange for replacement.
    - d. Obtain manufacturer's inspections, service, and warranties



- e. Inform Contractor of earliest available deliver date for Owner-furnished products
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities: The work includes the following, as applicable
  - 1. Designate delivery dates of Owner-furnished products in Contractor's construction schedule utilizing Owner-furnished earliest available delivery dates
  - 2. Small equipment.

#### **1.05 CONTRACTOR USE OF SITE AND PREMISES**

- A. Provide access to and from site as required by law and by Owner:
  - 1. Emergency Building Exits During Construction: Keep all exits required by code open during construction period; provide temporary exit signs if exit routes are temporarily altered.
  - 2. Do not obstruct roadways, sidewalks, or other public ways without permit.

**END OF SECTION 011000**



**SECTION 012100**

**ALLOWANCES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Contingency allowance.
- B. Inspecting and testing allowances.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Document 002113 - Instructions to Bidders: Instructions for preparation of pricing for Unit Prices.

**1.03 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE**

- A. Contractor's costs for products, delivery, installation, labor, insurance, payroll, taxes, bonding, equipment rental, overhead and profit will be included in Change Orders authorizing expenditure of funds from this Contingency Allowance.
- B. Funds will be drawn from the Contingency Allowance only by Change Order.
- C. At closeout of Contract, funds remaining in Contingency Allowance will be credited to Owner by Change Order.

**1.04 INSPECTING AND TESTING ALLOWANCES**

- A. Costs Included in Inspecting and Testing Allowances: Cost of engaging an inspecting or testing agency; execution of inspecting and tests; and reporting results.
- B. Costs Not Included in the Inspecting and Testing Allowances:
  - 1. Costs of incidental labor and facilities required to assist inspecting or testing agency.
- C. Payment Procedures:
  - 1. Submit one copy of the inspecting or testing firm's invoice with next application for payment.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 012100**



**SECTION 012200**

**UNIT PRICES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. List of unit prices, for use in preparing Bids.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Document 002113 - Instructions to Bidders: Instructions for preparation of pricing for Unit Prices.

**1.03 COSTS INCLUDED**

- A. Unit Prices included on the Bid Form shall include full compensation for all required labor, products, tools, equipment, plant, transportation, services and incidentals; erection, application or installation of an item of the Work; overhead and profit.

**1.04 UNIT QUANTITIES SPECIFIED**

- A. Quantities are for bidding and contract purposes only. Contractor to reference the Contract Documents for estimated quantities required to complete the work.

**1.05 PAYMENT**

- A. Payment for Work governed by unit prices will be made on the basis of the actual measurements and quantities of Work that is incorporated in or made necessary by the Work and accepted by the Architect, multiplied by the unit price.
- B. Payment will not be made for any of the following:
1. Products wasted or disposed of in a manner that is not acceptable.
  2. Products determined as unacceptable before or after placement.
  3. Products not completely unloaded from the transporting vehicle.
  4. Products placed beyond the lines and levels of the required Work.
  5. Products remaining on hand after completion of the Work.
  6. Loading, hauling, and disposing of rejected Products.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 012200**



## **SECTION 012500**

### **SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Procedural requirements for proposed substitutions.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 006325 - Substitution Request Form - During Construction: Required form for substitution requests made after award of contract (During construction).

##### **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Substitutions: Changes from Contract Documents requirements proposed by Contractor to materials, products, assemblies, and equipment.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Proposed due to changed Project circumstances beyond Contractor's control.
    - a. Unavailability.
    - b. Regulatory changes.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Proposed due to possibility of offering substantial advantage to the Project.
    - a. Substitution requests offering advantages solely to the Contractor will not be considered.

##### **1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. CSI/CSC Form 1.5C - Substitution Request (During the Bidding/Negotiating Stage); Current Edition.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

#### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

##### **3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. A Substitution Request for products, assemblies, materials, and equipment constitutes a representation that the submitter:
  - 1. Has investigated proposed product and determined that it meets or exceeds the quality level of the specified product, equipment, assembly, or system.
  - 2. Agrees to provide the same warranty for the substitution as for the specified product.

3. Agrees to provide same or equivalent maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable.
4. Agrees to coordinate installation and make changes to other work that may be required for the work to be complete, with no additional cost to Owner.
5. Waives claims for additional costs or time extension that may subsequently become apparent.
6. Agrees to reimburse Owner and Architect for review or redesign services associated with re-approval by authorities.
- B. A Substitution Request for specified installer constitutes a representation that the submitter:
  1. Has acted in good faith to obtain services of specified installer, but was unable to come to commercial, or other terms.
- C. Document each request with complete data substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with Contract Documents. Burden of proof is on proposer.
  1. Note explicitly any non-compliant characteristics.
  2. Submit shop drawings, product data, and certified test results attesting to the proposed product equivalent
- D. Content: Include information necessary for tracking the status of each Substitution Request, and information necessary to provide an actionable response.
  1. Forms indicated in the Project Manual are adequate for this purpose, and must be used.
- E. Limit each request to a single proposed substitution item.

### **3.02 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES DURING PROCUREMENT**

- A. Submittal Form (before award of contract):
  1. Submit substitution requests by completing CSI/CSC Form 1.5C - Substitution Request. See this form for additional information and instructions. Use only this form; other forms of submission are unacceptable.

### **3.03 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES DURING CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Submittal Form (after award of contract):
  1. Submit substitution requests by completing the form in Section 006325; see this section for additional information and instructions. Use only this form; other forms of submission are unacceptable.
- B. Submit request for Substitution for Cause within 14 days of discovery of need for substitution, but not later than 14 days prior to time required for review and approval by Architect, in order to stay on approved project schedule.



- C. Submit request for Substitution for Convenience immediately upon discovery of its potential advantage to the project, but not later than 14 days prior to time required for review and approval by Architect, in order to stay on approved project schedule.
  - 1. In addition to meeting general documentation requirements, document how the requested substitution benefits the Owner through cost savings, time savings, greater energy conservation, or in other specific ways.
  - 2. Document means of coordinating of substitution item with other portions of the work, including work by affected subcontractors.
  - 3. Bear the costs engendered by proposed substitution of:
    - a. Owner's compensation to the Architect for any required redesign, time spent processing and evaluating the request.

#### **3.04 RESOLUTION**

- A. Architect may request additional information and documentation prior to rendering a decision. Provide this data in an expeditious manner.

#### **3.05 ACCEPTANCE**

- A. Accepted substitutions change the work of the Project. They will be documented and incorporated into work of the project by Change Order, Construction Change Directive, Architectural Supplementary Instructions, or similar instruments provided for in the Conditions of the Contract.

**END OF SECTION 012500**



**SECTION 013000**

**ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. General administrative requirements.
- B. Preconstruction meeting.
- C. Progress meetings.
- D. Progress photographs.
- E. Requests for Interpretation (RFI) procedures.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures
- B. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: General product requirements.

**1.03 GENERAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for coordination of execution of administrative tasks with timing of construction activities.
- B. Make the following types of submittals to Architect:
  - 1. Requests for Interpretation (RFI).
  - 2. Requests for substitution.
  - 3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  - 4. Test and inspection reports.
  - 5. Design data.
  - 6. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports.
  - 7. Applications for payment and change order requests.
  - 8. Progress schedules.
  - 9. Coordination drawings.
  - 10. Correction Punch List and Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
  - 11. Closeout submittals.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING**

- A. Attendance Required:

1. Owner.
  2. Architect.
  3. Contractor.
- B. Agenda:
1. Execution of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
  2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
  3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
  4. Submission of list of subcontractors, list of products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.
  5. Designation of personnel representing the parties to Contract, \_\_\_\_\_ and Architect.
  6. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
  7. Scheduling.
- C. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

### **3.02 PROGRESS MEETINGS**

- A. Contractor To Be Determined will make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.
- B. Attendance Required:
1. Contractor.
  2. Owner.
  3. Architect.
  4. Contractor's superintendent.
  5. Major subcontractors.
- C. Agenda:
1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
  2. Review of work progress.
  3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
  4. Identification of problems that impede, or will impede, planned progress.
  5. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
  6. Review of RFIs log and status of responses.
  7. Review of off-site fabrication and delivery schedules.
  8. Maintenance of progress schedule.
  9. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.

10. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
  11. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
  12. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
  13. Other business relating to work.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

### **3.03 PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS**

- A. Submit photographs with each application for payment, taken not more than 3 days prior to submission of application for payment.
- B. Photography Type: Digital; electronic files.
- C. Provide photographs of site and construction throughout progress of work produced by an experienced photographer, acceptable to Architect.
- D. In addition to periodic, recurring views, take photographs of each of the following events:
  1. Completion of site clearing.
  2. Excavations in progress.
  3. Foundations in progress and upon completion.
  4. Structural framing in progress and upon completion.
  5. Enclosure of building, upon completion.
  6. Final completion, minimum of ten (10) photos.
- E. Views:
  1. Provide non-aerial photographs from four cardinal views at each specified time, until date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Consult with Architect for instructions on views required.
  3. Provide factual presentation.
  4. Provide correct exposure and focus, high resolution and sharpness, maximum depth of field, and minimum distortion.
- F. Digital Photographs: 24 bit color, minimum resolution of 1024 by 768, in JPG format; provide files unaltered by photo editing software.
  1. Delivery Medium: Via email.
  2. File Naming: Include project identification, date and time of view, and view identification.
  3. PDF File: Assemble all photos into printable pages in PDF format, with 2 to 3 photos per page, each photo labeled with file name; one PDF file per submittal.
  4. Hard Copy: Printed hardcopy (grayscale) of PDF file and point of view sketch.

### **3.04 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFI)**

- A. Definition: A request seeking one of the following:
  - 1. An interpretation, amplification, or clarification of some requirement of Contract Documents arising from inability to determine from them the exact material, process, or system to be installed; or when the elements of construction are required to occupy the same space (interference); or when an item of work is described differently at more than one place in Contract Documents.
- B. Preparation: Prepare an RFI immediately upon discovery of a need for interpretation of Contract Documents. Failure to submit a RFI in a timely manner is not a legitimate cause for claiming additional costs or delays in execution of the work.
  - 1. Prepare a separate RFI for each specific item.
    - a. Review, coordinate, and comment on requests originating with subcontractors and/or materials suppliers.
  - 2. Combine RFI and its attachments into a single electronic file. PDF format is preferred.
- C. Reason for the RFI: Prior to initiation of an RFI, carefully study all Contract Documents to confirm that information sufficient for their interpretation is definitely not included.
  - 1. Unacceptable Uses for RFIs: Do not use RFIs to request the following::
    - a. Approval of submittals (use procedures specified elsewhere in this section).
    - b. Approval of substitutions (see Section - 016000 - Product Requirements)
    - c. Changes that entail change in Contract Time and Contract Sum (comply with provisions of the Conditions of the Contract).
- D. Attachments: Include sketches, coordination drawings, descriptions, photos, submittals, and other information necessary to substantiate the reason for the request.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare and maintain a tabular log of RFIs for the duration of the project.
- F. Review Time: Architect will respond and return RFIs to Contractor within seven calendar days of receipt. For the purpose of establishing the start of the mandated response period, RFIs received after 12:00 noon will be considered as having been received on the following regular working day.

### **3.05 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE**

- A. Submit to Architect for review a schedule for submittals in tabular format.
- B. Reference Section

### **3.06 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW**

- A. Reference Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures

### **3.07 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. General Requirements: Reference 013300 - Submittal Procedures

**END OF SECTION 013000**





## **SECTION 013216**

### **CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule
  - 2. Submittals Schedule
  - 3. Field Conditions Report

##### **1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AGC (CPSM) - Construction Planning and Scheduling Manual; 2004.
- B. M-H (CPM) - CPM in Construction Management - Project Management with CPM; 2016.

##### **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Critical Path: The longest continuous chain of activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- B. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
  - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
- C. Fragment: A partial or fragmentary network that breaks down activities into smaller activities for greater detail.
- D. Major Area: A story of construction, a separate building, or a similar significant construction element.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submittals Schedule: Submit three copies of schedule. Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
  - 1. Scheduled date for first submittal.
  - 2. Specification Section number and title.
  - 3. Submittal category (action or informational).
  - 4. Name of subcontractor.
  - 5. Description of the Work covered.
  - 6. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.

- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Submit two printed copies of initial schedule, one a reproducible print and one a blue- or black-line print, large enough to show entire schedule for entire construction period.
- C. Field Condition Reports: Submit two copies at time of discovery of differing conditions.

#### **1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of subcontracts, Submittals Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE**

- A. Preparation: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, resubmittal, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates.
  - 1. Coordinate Submittals Schedule with list of subcontracts, the Schedule of Values, and Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's Construction Schedule

#### **2.02 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)**

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work. Base schedule on the Preliminary Construction Schedule and whatever updating and feedback was received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
  - 1. For construction activities that require 3 months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

## **2.03 REPORTS**

- A. Field Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between field conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare a detailed report. Submit with a request for information on CSI Form 13.2A. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE**

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each progress meeting
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  3. As the Work progresses, indicate Actual Completion percentage for each activity
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility
1. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

**END OF SECTION 013216**



## **SECTION 013300**

### **SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other miscellaneous submittals.

##### **1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Architect's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require Architect's approval. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.
- C. Submittals for Project Closeout

##### **1.03 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
- B. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for list of submittals and time requirements for scheduled performance of related construction activities.
- C. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for re-submittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal.
  - 1. Initial Review: Allow 10 business days (2 weeks) for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if processing must be delayed to permit coordination with subsequent submittals. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  - 2. If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  - 3. Allow 10 business days (2 weeks) for processing each re-submittal.
  - 4. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals in advance of the Work to permit processing.
- D. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
  - 1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.

2. Provide a space approximately 4 by 5 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
  - a. Project name.
  - b. Name and address of subcontractor.
  - c. Name and address of supplier.
  - d. Name of manufacturer.
- E. Contractor certification:
  1. Apply Contractor's stamp, signed or initialed certifying that review, approval, verification of products required, field dimensions, adjacent construction work, and coordination of information is in accordance with the requirements of the work and Contract Documents.
    - a. Submittals from sources other than the Contractor, or without Contractor's stamp will not be acknowledged, reviewed, or returned.
- F. Deviations: Highlight, encircle, or otherwise identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- G. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions of the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
- H. Transmittal: Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than Contractor.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals with mark indicating action taken by Architect in connection with construction.
- K. Required Submittals: Material submittals will not be required for approval when the material specified is the material proposed for use. Submittals will be required for all assemblies and when coordination with other trades is required for proper installation. A submittal copy for all materials will be included in the closeout document package.

## **PART 1 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Prepare and submit Action Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.

1. Number of Copies: Submit one copy of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return a marked up copy as required. When review is complete, return a copy as a Project Record Document.
2. Electronic Documents: Submit one electronic copy in PDF format; an electronically-marked up file will be returned. Create PDFs at native size and right-side up; illegible files will be rejected.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - d. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - e. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - f. Printed performance curves.
    - g. Operational range diagrams.
    - h. Compliance with recognized trade association standards.
    - i. Compliance with recognized testing agency standards.
- C. Warranties: Submit written warranties with Product Data for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated.
- D. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  1. Preparation: Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Dimensions.
    - b. Identification of products.
    - c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    - d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    - e. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring.
    - f. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
    - g. Templates and patterns.

- h. Schedules.
  - i. Notation of coordination requirements.
  - j. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
- 2. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- 3. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 40 inches.
- E. Samples: Prepare physical units of materials or products, including the following:
  - 1. Samples for Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."
- G. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."
- H. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Use CSI Form 1.5A.
- I. Submit Safety Data Sheets (SDS) with Closeout Documents for City .

## **2.02 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Prepare and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one copy of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
  - 3. Test and Inspection Reports: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."
- C. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.



- D. Product Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements.
- E. Maintenance Data: Prepare written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."
- F. Design Data: Prepare written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.
- G. Manufacturer's Instructions: Prepare written or published information that documents manufacturer's recommendations, guidelines, and procedures for installing or operating a product or equipment. Include name of product and name, address, and telephone number of manufacturer.
- H. Insurance Certificates and Bonds: Prepare written information indicating current status of insurance or bonding coverage. Include name of entity covered by insurance or bond, limits of coverage, amounts of deductibles, if any, and term of the coverage.

## **2.03 SUBMITTALS FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT**

- A. Submit Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- B. Submit Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- C. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them at project closeout in compliance with requirements of Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Project record documents.
  - 2. Operation and maintenance data.
  - 3. Warranties.
    - a. Submit Warranty Information with original Submittal for Review. These will be reviewed again at Project Closeout.
  - 4. Bonds.

## **PART 1 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW**

- A. Review each submittal and check for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.

- B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### **3.02 ARCHITECT'S ACTION**

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken, as follows:
1. Accepted
  2. Not Accepted - Resubmit
  3. Accepted as Noted
  4. Submit for Record
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will reject and return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will not be reviewed and may be discarded.

**END OF SECTION 013300**

**SECTION 014000**  
**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Submittals.
- B. Quality assurance.
- C. References and standards.
- D. Testing and inspection agencies and services.
- E. Control of installation.
- F. Mock-ups.
- G. Tolerances.
- H. Manufacturers' field services.
- I. Defect Assessment.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C1021 - Standard Practice for Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants; 2008 (Reapproved 2023).
- B. ASTM C1077 - Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation; 2024.
- C. ASTM C1093 - Standard Practice for Accreditation of Testing Agencies for Masonry; 2023.
- D. ASTM D3740 - Standard Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction; 2023.
- E. ASTM E329 - Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection; 2023.
- F. ASTM E543 - Standard Specification for Agencies Performing Nondestructive Testing; 2021.
- G. ASTM E699 - Standard Specification for Agencies Involved in Testing, Quality Assurance, and Evaluating of Manufactured Building Components; 2016.
- H. IAS AC89 - Accreditation Criteria for Testing Laboratories; 2021.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Prior to start of work, submit agency name, address, and telephone number, and names of full time registered Engineer and responsible officer.
  2. Submit copy of report of laboratory facilities inspection made by NIST Construction Materials Reference Laboratory during most recent inspection, with memorandum of remedies of any deficiencies reported by the inspection.
  3. Qualification Statement: Provide documentation showing testing laboratory is accredited under IAS AC89.
- B. Designer Qualifications: Where professional engineering design services and design data submittals are specifically required of Contractor by Contract Documents, provide services of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.

#### **1.05 TESTING AND INSPECTION AGENCIES AND SERVICES**

- A. As indicated in individual specification sections, Owner or Contractor shall employ and pay for services of an independent testing agency to perform other specified testing.
- B. Employment of agency in no way relieves Contractor of obligation to perform Work in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Contractor Employed Agency:
1. Testing agency: Comply with requirements of ASTM E329, ASTM E543, ASTM E699, ASTM C1021, ASTM C1077, ASTM C1093, ASTM D3740, and \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. Inspection agency: Comply with requirements of ASTM D3740, ASTM E329, and \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. Laboratory Qualifications: Accredited by IAS according to IAS AC89.
  4. Laboratory: Authorized to operate in the State in which the Project is located.
  5. Laboratory Staff: Maintain a full time registered Engineer on staff to review services.
  6. Testing Equipment: Calibrated at reasonable intervals either by NIST or using an NIST established Measurement Assurance Program, under a laboratory measurement quality assurance program.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION**

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.

- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

### **3.02 MOCK-UPS**

- A. Before installing portions of the Work where mock-ups are required, construct mock-ups in location and size indicated for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work. The purpose of mock-up is to demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
- B. Accepted mock-ups establish the standard of quality the Architect will use to judge the Work.
- C. Tests shall be performed under provisions identified in this section and identified in the respective product specification sections.
- D. Assemble and erect specified items with specified attachment and anchorage devices, flashings, seals, and finishes.
- E. Architect will use accepted mock-ups as a comparison standard for the remaining Work.
- F. Where mock-up has been accepted by Architect and is specified in product specification sections to be removed, protect mock-up throughout construction, remove mock-up and clear area when directed to do so by Architect.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' tolerances. Should manufacturers' tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

### **3.04 TESTING AND INSPECTION**

- A. Testing Agency Duties:

1. Provide qualified personnel at site. Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of services.
  2. Perform specified sampling and testing of products in accordance with specified standards.
  3. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
  4. Promptly notify Architect and Contractor of observed irregularities or non-compliance of Work or products.
  5. Perform additional tests and inspections required by Architect.
  6. Submit reports of all tests/inspections specified.
- B. Limits on Testing/Inspection Agency Authority:
1. Agency may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
  2. Agency may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  3. Agency may not assume any duties of Contractor.
  4. Agency has no authority to stop the Work.
- C. Contractor Responsibilities:
1. Deliver to agency at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used that require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
  2. Cooperate with laboratory personnel, and provide access to the Work and to manufacturers' facilities.
  3. Provide incidental labor and facilities:
    - a. To provide access to Work to be tested/inspected.
    - b. To obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested/inspected.
    - c. To facilitate tests/inspections.
    - d. To provide storage and curing of test samples.
  4. Notify Architect and laboratory 24 hours prior to expected time for operations requiring testing/inspection services.
  5. Employ services of an independent qualified testing laboratory and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
  6. Arrange with Owner's agency and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
- D. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be performed by the same agency on instructions by Architect.

- E. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be paid for by Contractor.

**3.05 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES**

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, test, adjust, and balance equipment, and \_\_\_\_\_ as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturers' written instructions.

**3.06 DEFECT ASSESSMENT**

- A. Replace Work or portions of the Work not complying with specified requirements.

**END OF SECTION 014000**





**SECTION 015000**

**TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary utilities.
- B. Temporary telecommunications services.
- C. Temporary sanitary facilities.
- D. Security requirements.
- E. Vehicular access and parking.
- F. Waste removal facilities and services.
- G. Project identification sign.
- H. Field offices.

**1.02 TEMPORARY UTILITIES**

- A. Provide and pay for all electrical power, lighting, water, heating and cooling, and ventilation required for construction purposes.
- B. Use trigger-operated nozzles for water hoses, to avoid waste of water.

**1.03 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SERVICES**

- A. Provide, maintain, and pay for telecommunications services to field office at time of project mobilization.
- B. Telecommunications services shall include:
  - 1. Phone and Email: Account/address reserved for project use.

**1.04 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES**

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Provide at time of project mobilization.
- B. Maintain daily in clean and sanitary condition.

**1.05 EXTERIOR ENCLOSURES**

- A. Provide temporary insulated weather tight closure of exterior openings to accommodate acceptable working conditions and protection for Products, to allow for temporary heating and maintenance of required ambient temperatures identified in individual specification sections, and to prevent entry of unauthorized persons. Provide access doors with self-closing hardware and locks.

#### **1.06 SECURITY - SEE SECTION 013553**

- A. Provide security and facilities to protect Work, existing facilities, and Owner's operations from unauthorized entry, vandalism, or theft.

#### **1.07 VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING**

- A. Comply with regulations relating to use of streets and sidewalks, access to emergency facilities, and access for emergency vehicles.
- B. Coordinate access and haul routes with governing authorities and Owner.
- C. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants, free of obstructions.
- D. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.
- E. Provide temporary parking areas to accommodate construction personnel. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking.

#### **1.08 WASTE REMOVAL**

- A. See Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.
- B. Provide waste removal facilities and services as required to maintain the site in clean and orderly condition.
- C. Provide containers with lids. Remove trash from site periodically.
- D. If materials to be recycled or re-used on the project must be stored on-site, provide suitable non-combustible containers; locate containers holding flammable material outside the structure unless otherwise approved by the authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Open free-fall chutes are not permitted. Terminate closed chutes into appropriate containers with lids.

#### **1.09 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Provide project identification sign of design and construction indicated on drawings.
- B. Erect on site at location indicated.
- C. No other signs are allowed without Owner permission except those required by law.

#### **1.10 FIELD OFFICES**

- A. Office: Weathertight, with lighting, electrical outlets, heating, cooling equipment, and equipped with sturdy furniture, drawing rack, and drawing display table.
- B. Provide space for Project meetings, with table and chairs to accommodate 10 persons.
- C. Locate offices a minimum distance of 30 feet (10 m) from existing and new structures.

**1.11 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS**

- A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Date of Substantial Completion inspection.
- B. Remove underground installations to a minimum depth of 2 feet (600 mm). Grade site as indicated.
- C. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 015000**



## **SECTION 016000**

### **PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 012500 - Substitution Procedures: Substitutions made during procurement and/or construction phases.
- B. Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Waste disposal requirements potentially affecting product selection, packaging and substitutions.

##### **1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data Submittals: Submit manufacturer's standard published data. Mark each copy to identify applicable products, models, options, and other data. Supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information specific to this Project.
- B. Shop Drawing Submittals: Prepared specifically for this Project; indicate utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- C. Sample Submittals: Illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of the product, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate sample submittals for interfacing work.
  - 1. For selection from standard finishes, submit samples of the full range of the manufacturer's standard colors, textures, and patterns.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 NEW PRODUCTS**

- A. Provide new products unless specifically required or permitted by Contract Documents.
- B. Use of products having any of the following characteristics is not permitted:
  - 1. Made using or containing CFC's or HCFC's.
  - 2. Containing lead, cadmium, or asbestos.
- C. Where other criteria are met, Contractor shall give preference to products that:
  - 1. If used on interior, have lower emissions
  - 2. If wet-applied, have lower VOC content

##### **2.02 PRODUCT OPTIONS**

- A. Products Specified by Reference Standards or by Description Only: Use any product meeting those standards or description.

- B. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers: Use a product of one of the manufacturers named and meeting specifications, no options or substitutions allowed.
- C. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers with a Provision for Substitutions: Submit a request for substitution for any manufacturer not named.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS**

- A. See Section 012500 - Substitution Procedures.

### **3.02 OWNER-SUPPLIED PRODUCTS**

- A. Owner's Responsibilities:
  - 1. Arrange for and deliver Owner reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples, to Contractor.
  - 2. On delivery, inspect products jointly with Contractor.
  - 3. Submit claims for transportation damage and replace damaged, defective, or deficient items.
  - 4. Arrange for manufacturers' warranties, inspections, and service.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities:
  - 1. Review Owner reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  - 2. Receive and unload products at site; inspect for completeness or damage jointly with Owner.
  - 3. Handle, store, install and finish products.
  - 4. Repair or replace items damaged after receipt.

### **3.03 TRANSPORTATION AND HANDLING**

- A. Package products for shipment in manner to prevent damage; for equipment, package to avoid loss of factory calibration.
- B. If special precautions are required, attach instructions prominently and legibly on outside of packaging.
- C. Coordinate schedule of product delivery to designated prepared areas in order to minimize site storage time and potential damage to stored materials.
- D. Transport and handle products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Transport materials in covered trucks to prevent contamination of product and littering of surrounding areas.
- F. Promptly inspect shipments to ensure that products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.

- G. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage, and to minimize handling.
- H. Arrange for the return of packing materials, such as wood pallets, where economically feasible.

#### **3.04 STORAGE AND PROTECTION**

- A. Provide protection of stored materials and products against theft, casualty, or deterioration.
- B. Designate receiving/storage areas for incoming products so that they are delivered according to installation schedule and placed convenient to work area in order to minimize waste due to excessive materials handling and misapplication.
- C. Store and protect products in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- D. Store with seals and labels intact and legible.
- E. Store sensitive products in weathertight, climate-controlled enclosures in an environment favorable to product.
- F. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place on sloped supports above ground.
- G. Protect products from damage or deterioration due to construction operations, weather, precipitation, humidity, temperature, sunlight and ultraviolet light, dirt, dust, and other contaminants.
- H. Comply with manufacturer's warranty conditions, if any.
- I. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation and degradation of products.
- J. Prevent contact with material that may cause corrosion, discoloration, or staining.
- K. Provide equipment and personnel to store products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.
- L. Arrange storage of products to permit access for inspection. Periodically inspect to verify products are undamaged and are maintained in acceptable condition.

**END OF SECTION 016000**





## **SECTION 017000**

### **EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.
- B. Surveying for laying out the work.
- C. Cleaning and protection.
- D. Starting of systems and equipment.
- E. Demonstration and instruction of Owner personnel.
- F. Closeout procedures, including Contractor's Correction Punch List, except payment procedures.
- G. General requirements for maintenance service.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, Electronic document submittal service.
- B. Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Additional procedures for trash/waste removal, recycling, salvage, and reuse.
- C. Section 024100 - Demolition: Demolition of whole structures and parts thereof; site utility demolition.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations; 2022.

##### **1.04 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. For demolition work, employ a firm specializing in the type of work required.
- B. For field engineering, employ a professional engineer of the discipline required for specific service on Project, licensed in the State in which the Project is located. Employ only individual(s) trained and experienced in establishing and maintaining horizontal and vertical control points necessary for laying out construction work on project of similar size, scope and/or complexity.
- C. For design of temporary shoring and bracing, employ a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.

## **1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Grade site to drain. Maintain excavations free of water. Provide, operate, and maintain pumping equipment.
- B. Protect site from puddling or running water. Provide water barriers as required to protect site from soil erosion.
- C. Ventilate enclosed areas to assist cure of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
- D. Dust Control: Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations. Provide positive means to prevent air-borne dust from dispersing into atmosphere and over adjacent property.
- E. Erosion and Sediment Control: Plan and execute work by methods to control surface drainage from cuts and fills, from borrow and waste disposal areas. Prevent erosion and sedimentation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. Take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.
- E. Verify that utility services are available, of the correct characteristics, and in the correct locations.
- F. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having

jurisdiction.

- B. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect through Construction Manager
- C. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- D. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- E. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

### **3.03 LAYING OUT THE WORK**

- A. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect through Construction Manager
- B. Verify locations of survey control points prior to starting work.
- C. Promptly notify Architect of any discrepancies discovered.
- D. Protect survey control points prior to starting site work; preserve permanent reference points during construction.
- E. Promptly report to Architect the loss or destruction of any reference point or relocation required because of changes in grades or other reasons.
- F. Replace dislocated survey control points based on original survey control. Make no changes without prior written notice to Architect.
- G. Utilize recognized engineering survey practices.
- H. Establish elevations, lines and levels. Locate and lay out by instrumentation and similar appropriate means:
  - 1. Site improvements including pavements; stakes for grading, fill and topsoil placement; utility locations, slopes, and invert elevations; and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2. Grid or axis for structures.
  - 3. Building foundation, column locations, ground floor elevations, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. Periodically verify layouts by same means.
- J. Maintain a complete and accurate log of control and survey work as it progresses.

### **3.04 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.
- B. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.
- F. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- G. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- H. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.

### **3.05 PROGRESS CLEANING**

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing the space.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.
- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site periodically and dispose off-site; do not burn or bury.

### **3.06 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK**

- A. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.
- B. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.
- C. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.

- D. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- E. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.
- F. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. If traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- G. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle coverings if possible.

### **3.07 SYSTEM STARTUP**

- A. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.
- B. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions that may cause damage.
- C. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.
- D. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- E. Execute start-up under supervision of applicable Contractor personnel and manufacturer's representative in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- F. Submit a written report that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

### **3.08 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION**

- A. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shutdown of each item of equipment at scheduled time, at equipment location.
- B. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.
- C. Provide a qualified person who is knowledgeable about the Project to perform demonstration and instruction of Owner's personnel.

### **3.09 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.

### **3.10 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. Use cleaning materials that are nonhazardous.
- B. Clean interior and exterior glass, surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces, vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.

- C. Remove all labels that are not permanent. Do not paint or otherwise cover fire test labels or nameplates on mechanical and electrical equipment.
- D. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition with cleaning materials appropriate to the surface and material being cleaned.
- E. Clean filters of operating equipment.
- F. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, scuppers, overflow drains, area drains, drainage systems, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. Clean site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.
- H. Remove waste, surplus materials, trash/rubbish, and construction facilities from the site; dispose of in legal manner; do not burn or bury.

### **3.11 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

- A. Make submittals that are required by governing or other authorities.
  - 1. Provide copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Accompany Architect on preliminary inspection to determine items to be listed for completion or correction in the Contractor's Correction Punch List for Contractor's Notice of Substantial Completion.
- C. Substantial Completion
  - 1. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete in request.
    - a. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
    - b. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
    - c. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
    - d. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to
    - e. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
    - f. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
    - g. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner.
    - h. Complete startup testing of systems.

- i. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - j. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  - k. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- 2. Final Review: Submit a written request of Final Review for Substantial Completion. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with review or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after the review or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued
- D. Notify Architect when work is considered ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- E. Submit written certification containing Contractor's Correction Punch List, that Contract Documents have been reviewed, work has been inspected, and that work is complete in accordance with Contract Documents and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- F. Conduct Substantial Completion inspection and create Final Correction Punch List containing Architect's and Contractor's comprehensive list of items identified to be completed or corrected and submit to Architect.
- G. Correct items of work listed in Final Correction Punch List and comply with requirements for access to Owner-occupied areas.
- H. Notify Architect when work is considered finally complete and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion final inspection.
- I. Final Completion
  - 1. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final review for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:
    - a. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion review list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
    - b. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.

- c. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
- J. Complete items of work determined by Architect listed in executed Certificate of Substantial Completion.

### **3.12 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. General: Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Protect Project Record Documents from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
- B. Record Drawings: Maintain and submit one set of blue- or black-line white prints of Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings
  - 1. Mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up Record Prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
    - b. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
  - 2. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at the same location.
  - 3. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, Change Order numbers, alternate numbers, and similar identification where applicable.
  - 4. Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location. Organize into manageable sets; bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets
- C. Record Specifications: Submit one copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications. Mark copy to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders and Record Drawings, where applicable.



- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference

### **3.13 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Provide service and maintenance of components indicated in specification sections.
- B. Maintenance Period: As indicated in specification sections or, if not indicated, not less than one year from the Date of Substantial Completion or the length of the specified warranty, whichever is longer.
- C. Examine system components at a frequency consistent with reliable operation. Clean, adjust, and lubricate as required.
- D. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of components. Repair or replace parts whenever required. Use parts produced by the manufacturer of the original component.
- E. Maintenance service shall not be assigned or transferred to any agent or subcontractor without prior written consent of the Owner.
- F. Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating the operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include operation and maintenance data required in individual Specification Sections and as follows
1. Operation Data: Include emergency instructions and procedures, system and equipment descriptions, operating procedures, and sequence of operations.
  2. Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's information, list of spare parts, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules for preventive and routine maintenance, and copies of warranties and bonds.
- G. Organize operation and maintenance manuals into suitable sets of manageable size. Bind and index data in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, with pocket inside the covers to receive folded oversized sheets. Identify each binder on front and spine with the printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project name, and subject matter of contents.

### **3.14 WARRANTIES**

- A. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch

paper.

2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- B. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Submit Warranties with initial Product Data for Submittal Review. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures

**END OF SECTION 017000**

**SECTION 017419**

**CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 WASTE MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Owner desires that this project generate the least amount of trash and waste possible.
- B. Employ processes that ensure the generation of as little waste as possible due to error, poor planning, breakage, mishandling, contamination, or other factors.
- C. Minimize trash/waste disposal in landfills; reuse, salvage, or recycle as much waste as economically feasible.
- D. Required Recycling, Salvage, and Reuse: The following may not be disposed of in landfills or by incineration:
  - 1. Aluminum and plastic beverage containers.
  - 2. Corrugated cardboard.
  - 3. Wood pallets.
  - 4. Clean dimensional wood.
  - 5. Metals, including packaging banding, metal studs, sheet metal, structural steel, piping, reinforcing bars, door frames, and other items made of steel, iron, galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum, copper, zinc, lead, brass, and bronze.
  - 6. Carpet, carpet cushion, carpet tile, and carpet remnants, both new and removed: DuPont (<http://flooring.dupont.com>) and Interface ([www.interfaceinc.com](http://www.interfaceinc.com)) conduct reclamation programs.
- E. Contractor shall develop and follow a Waste Management Plan designed to implement these requirements.
- F. Methods of trash/waste disposal that are not acceptable are:
  - 1. Burning on the project site.
  - 2. Burying on the project site.
  - 3. Dumping or burying on other property, public or private.
  - 4. Other illegal dumping or burying.
  - 5. Incineration, either on- or off-site.
- G. Regulatory Requirements: Contractor is responsible for knowing and complying with regulatory requirements, including but not limited to Federal, state and local requirements, pertaining to legal disposal of all construction and demolition waste materials.

## **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Additional requirements for project meetings, reports, submittal procedures, and project documentation.
- B. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Additional requirements related to trash/waste collection and removal facilities and services.
- C. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: Waste prevention requirements related to delivery, storage, and handling.
- D. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Trash/waste prevention procedures related to demolition, cutting and patching, installation, protection, and cleaning.

## **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Clean: Untreated and unpainted; not contaminated with oils, solvents, caulk, or the like.
- B. Construction and Demolition Waste: Solid wastes typically including building materials, packaging, trash, debris, and rubble resulting from construction, remodeling, repair and demolition operations.
  - 1. This definition also includes trash and waste generated by construction workers and Contractor's personnel while engaged in the work and on lunch and other breaks, including but not limited to items such as lunch bags, food wrappers, drinking cups, and similar trash and waste.
- C. Hazardous: Exhibiting the characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitability, corrosivity, toxicity or reactivity.
- D. Nonhazardous: Exhibiting none of the characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitability, corrosivity, toxicity, or reactivity.
- E. Nontoxic: Neither immediately poisonous to humans nor poisonous after a long period of exposure.
- F. Recyclable: The ability of a product or material to be recovered at the end of its life cycle and remanufactured into a new product for reuse by others.
- G. Recycle: To remove a waste material from the project site to another site for remanufacture into a new product for reuse by others.
- H. Recycling: The process of sorting, cleansing, treating and reconstituting solid waste and other discarded materials for the purpose of using the altered form. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating, or thermally destroying waste.
- I. Return: To give back reusable items or unused products to vendors for credit.
- J. Reuse: To reuse a construction waste material in some manner on the project site.

- K. Salvage: To remove a waste material from the project site to another site for resale or reuse by others.
- L. Sediment: Soil and other debris that has been eroded and transported by storm or well production run-off water.
- M. Source Separation: The act of keeping different types of waste materials separate beginning from the first time they become waste.
- N. Toxic: Poisonous to humans either immediately or after a long period of exposure.
- O. Trash: Any product or material unable to be reused, returned, recycled, or salvaged.
- P. Waste: Extra material or material that has reached the end of its useful life in its intended use. Waste includes salvageable, returnable, recyclable, and reusable material.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures
- B. Submit Waste Management Plan within 10 calendar days after receipt of Notice of Award of Bid, or prior to any trash or waste removal, whichever occurs sooner; submit projection of all trash and waste that will require disposal and alternatives to landfilling.
- C. Waste Management Plan: Include the following information:
  - 1. Analysis of the trash and waste projected to be generated during the entire project construction cycle, including types and quantities.
  - 2. Landfill Options: The name, address, and telephone number of the landfill(s) where trash/waste will be disposed of, the applicable landfill tipping fee(s), and the projected cost of disposing of all project trash/waste in the landfill(s).
  - 3. Landfill Alternatives: List all waste materials that will be diverted from landfills by reuse, salvage, or recycling.
    - a. List each material proposed to be salvaged, reused, or recycled.
    - b. List the local market for each material.
    - c. State the estimated net cost, versus landfill disposal.
  - 4. Meetings: Describe regular meetings to be held to address waste prevention, reduction, recycling, salvage, reuse, and disposal.
  - 5. Materials Handling Procedures: Describe the means by which materials to be diverted from landfills will be protected from contamination and prepared for acceptance by designated facilities; include separation procedures for recyclables, storage, and packaging.
  - 6. Transportation: Identify the destination and means of transportation of materials to be recycled; i.e. whether materials will be site-separated and self-hauled to designated

centers, or whether mixed materials will be collected by a waste hauler.

- D. Waste Disposal Reports: Submit at specified intervals, with details of quantities of trash and waste, means of disposal or reuse, and costs; show both totals to date and since last report.
1. Submit updated Report with each Application for Progress Payment; failure to submit Report will delay payment.
  2. Submit Report on a form acceptable to Owner.
  3. Landfill Disposal: Include the following information:
    - a. Identification of material.
    - b. Amount, in tons or cubic yards (cubic meters), of trash/waste material from the project disposed of in landfills.
    - c. State the identity of landfills, total amount of tipping fees paid to landfill, and total disposal cost.
    - d. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices as evidence of quantity and cost.
  4. Recycled and Salvaged Materials: Include the following information for each:
    - a. Identification of material, including those retrieved by installer for use on other projects.
    - b. Amount, in tons or cubic yards (cubic meters), date removed from the project site, and receiving party.
    - c. Transportation cost, amount paid or received for the material, and the net total cost or savings of salvage or recycling each material.
    - d. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices as evidence of quantity and cost.
    - e. Certification by receiving party that materials will not be disposed of in landfills or by incineration.
  5. Material Reused on Project: Include the following information for each:
    - a. Identification of material and how it was used in the project.
    - b. Amount, in tons or cubic yards (cubic meters).
    - c. Include weight tickets as evidence of quantity.
  6. Other Disposal Methods: Include information similar to that described above, as appropriate to disposal method.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **2.01 WASTE MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. See Section 013000 for additional requirements for project meetings, reports, submittal procedures, and project documentation.
- B. See Section 015000 for additional requirements related to trash/waste collection and removal facilities and services.
- C. See Section 016000 for waste prevention requirements related to delivery, storage, and handling.
- D. See Section 017000 for trash/waste prevention procedures related to demolition, cutting and patching, installation, protection, and cleaning.

### **2.02 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN IMPLEMENTATION**

- A. Manager: Designate an on-site person or persons responsible for instructing workers and overseeing and documenting results of the Waste Management Plan.
- B. Communication: Distribute copies of the Waste Management Plan to job site foreman, each subcontractor, Owner, and Architect.
- C. Instruction: Provide on-site instruction of appropriate separation, handling, and recycling, salvage, reuse, and return methods to be used by all parties at the appropriate stages of the project.
- D. Meetings: Discuss trash/waste management goals and issues at project meetings.
  - 1. Prebid meeting.
  - 2. Preconstruction meeting.
  - 3. Regular job-site meetings.
  - 4. Job safety meetings.
- E. Facilities: Provide specific facilities for separation and storage of materials for recycling, salvage, reuse, return, and trash disposal, for use by all contractors and installers.
  - 1. As a minimum, provide:
    - a. Separate area for storage of materials to be reused on-site, such as wood cut-offs for blocking.
    - b. Separate dumpsters for each category of recyclable.
    - c. Recycling bins at worker lunch area.
  - 2. Provide containers as required.
  - 3. Provide temporary enclosures around piles of separated materials to be recycled or salvaged.

4. Provide materials for barriers and enclosures that are nonhazardous, recyclable, or reusable to the maximum extent possible; reuse project construction waste materials if possible.
  5. Locate enclosures out of the way of construction traffic.
  6. Provide adequate space for pick-up and delivery and convenience to subcontractors.
  7. If an enclosed area is not provided, clearly lay out and label a specific area on-site.
  8. Keep recycling and trash/waste bin areas neat and clean and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination of materials.
- F. Hazardous Wastes: Separate, store, and dispose of hazardous wastes according to applicable regulations.
- G. Recycling: Separate, store, protect, and handle at the site identified recyclable waste products in order to prevent contamination of materials and to maximize recyclability of identified materials. Arrange for timely pickups from the site or deliveries to recycling facility in order to prevent contamination of recyclable materials.
- H. Reuse of Materials On-Site: Set aside, sort, and protect separated products in preparation for reuse.
- I. Salvage: Set aside, sort, and protect products to be salvaged for reuse off-site.

**END OF SECTION 017419**



**SECTION 03013**

**MAINTENANCE OF CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. All items required for executing and completing the following:
  - 1. Removal of deteriorated concrete and subsequent replacement and patching.
  - 2. Floor joint repair.
  - 3. Epoxy crack injection.
  - 4. Corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
  - 5. Polymer overlays.
  - 6. Polymer sealers.
  - 7. Composite structural reinforcement.
- B. Cast-in-place concrete, steel reinforcement, and placement of nonprestressed steel reinforcement are specified in Division 3.
- C. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding maintenance or repair of cast-in-place concrete shall be considered a part of this specification.

**1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 032000 - Concrete Reinforcement.
- C. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- D. Section 051223 - Structural Steel.
- E. Section 055000 - Metal Fabrications.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provision of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. ACI 503.4 - Standard Specifications for Repairing Concrete with Epoxy Mortars.
  - 2. ACI 503.7 - Specification for Crack Repair by Epoxy Injection.
  - 3. ACI 506.2 - Specification for Shotcrete.

4. ASTM C33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
5. ASTM C109 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars.
6. ASTM C150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
7. ASTM C881 - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete.
8. ASTM C928 - Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Rapid-Hardening Cementitious Materials for Concrete Repairs.
9. ASTM C1059 - Standard Specification for Latex Agents for Bonding Fresh to Hardened Concrete.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Manufacturer and Installation Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer:
  - a. Each manufactured bonding agent, cementitious patching mortar and crack injection adhesive manufacturer shall employ factory-trained technical representatives who are available for consultation and on-site inspections and assistance at no additional cost.
2. Installer: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by the manufacturer to apply packaged patching mortar materials and epoxy crack injection materials.

B. Maintenance Program: Prepare a written plan for maintenance of cast-in-place concrete, including each phase or process, protection of surrounding materials during operations, and control of debris during the work. Describe in detail materials, methods, equipment and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the work.

C. Mockups: Building mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Deck Removal and Patching: Remove and repair approximately 50 square feet of deteriorated concrete deck.
2. Floor Joint Repair: Cut out and reinstall joints in two separate areas approximately 4 feet long.
3. Epoxy Crack Injection: Perform in two separate areas approximately 4 feet long.
4. Polymer Overlay: Apply approximately 50 square feet.
5. Polymer Sealer: Apply approximately 50 square feet.
6. Composite Structural Reinforcement: Apply approximately 4 feet long.
7. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the drawings unless Architect/Engineer specifically approves deviations in writing.

---

### 1.05 BID REQUIREMENTS

- A. Unit prices shall be issued to the Architect/Engineer prior to construction as part of the submittal package. Provide the following unit costs:
1. Concrete Removal and Replacement or Patching (\$/cubic foot)
  2. Epoxy Crack Injection (\$/linear foot)
  3. Polymer Overlays (\$/square foot)
  4. Composite Structural Reinforcement (\$/square foot)

### 1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, chemical composition, physical properties, test data and mixing, preparation and application instructions for each type of product.
- B. Samples: Cured samples for each exposed product and for each color or texture specified.
1. Initial Selection:
    - a. Sets of patching material in the form of briquettes at least 3 inches long by 1 1/2 inches wide, representative of the range of concrete colors on the project. Document each sample with product, mix, and other necessary information to replicate it.
    - b. Sets of polymer overlay in the form of treated cementitious tiles at least 4 inches long by 4 inches wide, representative of the range of required colors and textures.
    - c. Sets of polymer sealer in the form of treated cementitious tiles at least 4 inches long by 4 inches wide, representative of the range of required colors and textures.
    - d. Have each set of samples contain a close color range of at least three samples showing different mixes of materials that match the variations in the existing construction.
  2. Verification:
    - a. Samples of patching material in the form of patches in drilled holes or sawed joints in sample concrete representative of the range of concrete colors in the existing construction. Samples to show each required type, color and texture.
    - b. Samples of polymer overlay material in the form of cementitious tiles at least 8 inches long by 8 inches wide showing each required type, color and texture.
    - c. Sets of polymer sealer material in the form of cementitious tiles at least 8 inches long by 8 inches wide showing each required type, color and texture.
- C. Material Certificates: For each type of Portland cement and aggregate supplied for mixing or adding to products at site.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: When requested, the proposed testing agency shall submit data on qualifications for acceptance.

- E. Test Reports: Submit laboratory test reports for all products.
- F. Field quality control reports.
- G. Maintenance Program: Submit before work begins.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature requirements and other conditions for storage.
- B. Store cementitious materials off the ground, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates covered and in a dry location; maintain grading and other required characteristics and prevent contamination.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations for Epoxies: Do not apply when air and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by manufacturer. During hot weather, cool epoxy components before mixing, store mixed products in shade, and cool unused mixed products to retard setting. Do not apply to wet substrates unless approved by manufacturer.
  - 1. Use only Class A epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 40F within 8 hours.
  - 2. Use only Class A or B epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 60F within 8 hours.
  - 3. Use only Class C epoxies when substrate temperatures are above and are expected to stay above 60F for 8 hours.
- B. Cold Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Do not apply unless concrete surface and air temperatures are above 40F and will remain so for at least 48 hours after completion of work.
- C. Cold Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Comply with the following procedures:
  - 1. When air temperature is below 40F, heat patching material ingredients and existing concrete to produce temperatures between 40F and 90F.
  - 2. When mean daily air temperature is between 25F and 40F, cover completed work with weather resistant insulating blankets for 48 hours after repair or provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32F for 48 hours after the repair.
  - 3. When mean daily air temperature is below 25F, provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32F for 48 hours after the repair.
- D. Hot Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Protect repair work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from patching materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply to substrates with temperatures of 90F and above.

- E. Environmental Limitations for High-Molecular-Weight Methacrylate Sealers: Do not apply when concrete surface temperature is below 55F or above 75F. Apply only to substrates that have been dry for at least 72 hours.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each color, grade, finish, type and variety of product from a single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- B. VOC Content: Provide materials that comply with VOC limits of Authorities Having Jurisdiction.

### **2.02 BONDING AGENTS**

- A. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Manufactured product consisting of water-insensitive epoxy adhesive, Portland cement and water-based solution of corrosion inhibiting chemicals forming a protective film on steel reinforcement.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation - MasterEmaco P124
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company - Duralprep A.C.
    - c. Kaufman Products, Inc. - Surepoxy HM EPL
    - d. Sika Chemical Corporation - Armatec 110 EpoCem
  - 2. Epoxy Bonding Agent: ASTM C881, Type II and free of VOCs.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a) BASF CorporationDayton Superior Corporation
      - b) Euclid Chemical Company
      - c) ChemCo Systems
      - d)
      - e) Kaufman Products, Inc.
    - 2) Sika Chemical Corporation

- 3) W.R. Meadows
- 3. Latex Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059, Type I.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Type I (Redispersible):
      - a) Dayton Superior Corporation - PVA Bonding Agent J41
      - b) Euclid Chemical Company - Tammsweld
      - c) Kaufman Products, Inc. - SureWeld
      - d) W.R. Meadows - Intralok
- 4. Mortar Scrub Coat: Mix consisting of 1 part Portland cement and 1 part fine aggregate complying with ASTM C144 except 100 percent passing a No. 16 sieve.

## **2.03 PATCHING MORTAR**

- A. General:
  - 1. Only use patching mortars that are recommended by manufacturer for each applicable horizontal, vertical or overhead use.
  - 2. Color and Aggregate Texture: Provide patching mortar and aggregates of colors and sizes necessary to produce patching mortar that matches existing, adjacent, exposed concrete. Blend several aggregates, if necessary, achieve suitable matches.
  - 3. Coarse Aggregate for Patching Mortar: ASTM C33, washed aggregate, Size No. 8, Class 5S. Add to patching mortar mix only as permitted by manufacturer.
- B. Job-Mixed Patching Mortar: 1 part Portland cement and 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate complying with ASTM C144, except 100% passing a No. 16 sieve.
- C. Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix for repair of concrete.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation
    - b. ChemCo Systems
    - c. Dayton Superior Corporation
    - d. Euclid Chemical Company
    - e. Kaufman Products, Inc.
    - f. Sika Chemical Corporation

- g. W.R. Meadows
- 2. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C109.
- D. Rapid-Strengthening, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix, non-shrink, non-slump, non-metallic, quick setting for repair of concrete.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation - MasterEmaco N426
    - b. Dayton Superior Corporation - Recrete
    - c. Euclid Chemical Company - Euco-Speed
    - d. Sika Chemical Corporation - SikaQuick 1000
    - e. W.R. Meadows - Meadow-Patch 20
  - 2. Compressive Strength: Not less than 2000 psi within three hours when tested according to ASTM C109.
- E. Polymer-Modified, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix for repair of concrete and contains a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation
    - b. Dayton Superior Corporation
    - c. Euclid Chemical Company
    - d. Kaufman Products, Inc.
    - e. Sika Chemical Corporation
    - f. W.R. Meadows
  - 2. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C109.
- F. Polymer-Modified, Silica-Fume-Enhanced, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix for repair of concrete and contains silica fume complying with ASTM C1240 and a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. BASF Corporation
  - b. Euclid Chemical Company
  - c. Kaufman Products, Inc.
  - d. Sika Chemical Corporation
  - e. W.R. Meadows
2. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C109.

#### **2.04 PREPLACED CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Preplaced Aggregate: Washed aggregate, ASTM C33, Class 5S, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve, 40 to 80 percent passing a 3/4-inch sieve, 0 to 15 percent passing a 1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 2 percent passing a 3/8-inch sieve.
- B. Fine Aggregate for Grout: Fine aggregate according to ASTM C33 with 100 percent passing a No. 8 sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a No. 16 sieve, 55 to 80 percent passing a No. 30 sieve, 30 to 55 percent passing a No. 50 sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 sieve and 0 to 10 percent passing a No. 200 sieve, and having a fineness modulus of 1.30 to 2.10.
- C. Grout Fluidifier for Grout: ASTM C937.
- D. Pozzolans for Grout: ASTM C618.

#### **2.05 JOINT FILLER**

- A. Epoxy Joint Filler: Two-component, semi-rigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 according to ASTM D2240.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation - MasterSeal CR 190
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company - Euco 700
    - c. Sika Chemical Corporation - Sikadur 51 NS
    - d. W.R. Meadows - Rezi-Weld Flex
- B. Polyurea Joint Filler: Two-component, semi-rigid, 100 percent solids, polyurea resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 according to ASTM D2240.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation - MasterSeal CR 100



- b. ChemCo Systems - Polyurea SWL
  - c. Euclid Chemical Company - Euco QWIKjoint 200
2. Color: Matching existing joint filler.

## **2.06 EPOXY CRACK-INJECTION MATERIALS**

- A. Epoxy Crack-Injection Adhesive: ASTM C881, Type I, free of VOCs.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company
    - c. Kaufman Products, Inc.
    - d. Sika Chemical Corporation
    - e. W.R. Meadows
  - 2. Capping Adhesive: Product manufactured for use with crack injection adhesive by same manufacturer.
  - 3. Color: Provide epoxy crack injection adhesive and capping adhesive that will blend with existing, adjacent concrete and will not stain concrete surface.

## **2.07 OTHER MATERIALS**

- A. Corrosion Inhibiting Treatment: Waterborne solution of alkaline corrosion inhibiting chemicals for concrete surface application that penetrates concrete by diffusion and forms a protective film on steel reinforcement.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cortec Corporation - MCI-2020
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company - Duralprep 3020
    - c. Evonik - Protectosil CIT
    - d. Sika Chemical Corporation - Sika FerroGard 903
- B. Polymer Overlay: Epoxy adhesive complying with ASTM C881, Type III, with surface-applied aggregate for skid resistance; free of VOCs.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ChemCo Systems
  - b. Dayton Superior Corporation
  - c. Euclid Chemical Company
  - d. Kaufman Products, Inc.
  - e. Sika Chemical Corporation
  - f. W.R. Meadows
2. Aggregate: ACI 503.3, oven-dried, washed silica sand.
3. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect/Engineer from full range of industry colors.
- C. Polymer Sealer: Low-viscosity epoxy or high-molecular-weight methacrylate penetrating sealer and crack filler recommended by manufacturer for penetrating and sealing cracks in exterior concrete traffic surfaces; free of VOCs.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Epoxy Sealers:
      - 1) BASF Corporation - MasterSeal 370
      - 2) Dayton Superior Corporation - Unitex Pro-Poxy 50
      - 3) Euclid Chemical Company - Euco #512 VOX Epoxy Sealer
      - 4) Sika Chemical Corporation - Sikadur 55 SLV
    - b. High-Molecular-Weight Methacrylate Sealers:
      - 1) Cortec Corporation - MasterSeal 630
      - 2) Sika Chemical Corporation - SikaPronto 19 TF
      - 3) Transpo Industries, Inc. - Sealate T-70
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect/Engineer from full range of industry colors.
- D. Composite Structural Reinforcement: Manufacturer's system consisting of carbon glass fiber reinforcement in the form of sheets with field-applied saturant preimpregnated sheets and epoxy primers, fillers, adhesives, saturants and topcoats, designed for use as externally bonded structural reinforcement for concrete.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements. Available products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation - MasterBrace
    - b. Sika Chemical Corporation - SikaWrap
- E. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, II or III unless noted otherwise.

## **2.08 MIXES**

- A. General: Mix products, in clean containers, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Do not add water, thinners or additives unless recommended by manufacturer.
  2. When practical, use manufacturer's premeasured packages to ensure materials are mixed in proper proportions. When premeasured packages are not used, measure ingredients using graduated measuring containers; do not estimate quantities or use shovel and trowel as unit of measure.
  3. Do not mix more materials than can be used within time limits recommended by manufacturer. Discard materials that have begun to set.
- B. Mortar Scrub Coat: Mix dry ingredients with enough water to provide consistency of thick cream.
- C. Dry-Pack Mortar: Mix patching mortar dry ingredients with just enough liquid to form damp cohesive mixture that can be squeezed by hand into a ball but is not plastic.
- D. Concrete: Comply with Division 03 Section 033000 Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- E. Shotcrete: Comply with ACI 506.2 and provide a minimum strength of 5000 psi at 7 days.
- F. Grout for Use with Preplaced Aggregate: Proportion according to ASTM C938. Add grout fluidifier to mixing water followed by Portland cement, pozzolan and fine aggregate.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Notify Architect/Engineer seven (7) days in advance of dates when areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete and deteriorated reinforcing bars will be located.
- B. Locate areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete using hammer or chain-drag sounding and mark boundaries. Mark areas for removal by simplifying and squaring off boundaries. At columns and walls, make boundaries level and plumb unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Pachometer Testing: Locate at least three (3) reinforcing bars using a pachometer, and drill test holes to determine depth of cover. Calibrate pachometer using depth of cover measurements and verify depth of cover in removal areas using pachometer.
- D. Perform surveys as the work progresses to detect hazards resulting from concrete maintenance work.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Ensure supervisory personnel are on site and on duty when concrete maintenance work begins and during its progress.
- B. Preparation for Removal of Deteriorated Concrete: Examine construction to be repaired to determine best methods to safely and effectively perform concrete maintenance work. Examine adjacent work to determine what protective measures will be necessary. Make explorations, probes, and inquiries as necessary to determine condition of construction to be removed during repair.
  1. Verify that affected utilities have been disconnected and capped.

2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed for reinstallation or salvage.
  3. Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and temporary structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement, settlement, or collapse of construction being demolished and construction and finishes to remain.
- C. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building being restored, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from concrete maintenance work.
1. Comply with each product manufacturer's written instructions for protections and precautions. Protect against adverse effects of products and procedures on people and adjacent materials, components, and vegetation.
  2. Use only proven protection methods appropriate to each area and surface being protected.
  3. Provide barricades, barriers, and temporary directional signage to exclude the public from areas where concrete maintenance work is being performed.
  4. Erect temporary protective covers over walkways and at points of pedestrian and vehicular entrance and exit that must remain in service during course of concrete maintenance work.
  5. Contain dust and debris generated by concrete maintenance work and prevent it from reaching the public or adjacent surfaces.
  6. Use water-mist sprinkling and other wet methods to control dust only with adequate, approved procedures and equipment, ensuring water will not create a hazard or adversely affect other building areas or materials.
  7. Protect floors and other surfaces along haul routes from damage, wear, and staining.
  8. Provide supplemental sound control treatment to isolate removal and dismantling work from other areas of the building.
  9. Protect adjacent surfaces and equipment by covering them with heavy polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape or a liquid strippable masking agent. If practical, remove items, store, and reinstall after potentially damaging operations are complete.
  10. Neutralize and collect alkaline and acid wastes for disposal off Owner's property.
  11. Dispose of debris and runoff from operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscape, and water penetration into building interiors.
- D. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work in an area, test drainage system to ensure it is functioning properly. Notify Architect/Engineer immediately of inadequate drainage or blockage. Do not begin work in an area until the drainage system is in working order.
1. Prevent solids such as aggregate or mortar residue from entering the drainage system. Clean out drains and drain lines that become sluggish or blocked by sand or other materials resulting from concrete maintenance work.
  2. Protect drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.

E. Concrete Removal:

1. Provide shoring, bracing, and supports, as necessary. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of removal work. Do not overload structural elements with debris.
2. Saw-cut perimeter of areas indicated for removal to a depth of at least 1/2 inch. Make cuts perpendicular to concrete surfaces and no deeper than cover on reinforcement.
3. Remove deteriorated and delaminated concrete by breaking up and dislodging from reinforcement.
4. Remove additional concrete, if necessary, to provide a depth of removal of at least 1/2 inch over entire removal area.
5. Where half or more of the perimeter of reinforcing bar is exposed, bond between reinforcing bar and surrounding concrete is broken or reinforcing bar is corroded, remove concrete from entire perimeter of bar and to provide at least a 3/4-inch clearance around the bar.
6. Test areas where concrete has been removed by tapping with hammer and remove additional concrete until unsound and debonded concrete is completely removed.
7. Provide surfaces with a fractured profile of at least 1/8 inch that are approximately perpendicular or parallel to original concrete surfaces. At columns and walls, make top and bottom surfaces level unless otherwise directed.
8. Thoroughly clean removal areas of loose concrete, dust and debris.

F. Reinforcing Bar Preparation: Remove loose and flaking rust from reinforcing bars by wire brushing until only tightly adhered light rust remains.

1. Where section loss of reinforcing bar is more than 20 percent, or 15 percent in two or more adjacent bars, cut bars and remove and replace. Remove additional concrete as necessary to provide at least 3/4-inch clearance at existing and replacement bars. Splice replacement bars to existing bars according to ACI 318 by lapping, welding, or using mechanical couplings.

G. Preparation of Floor Joints for Repair: Saw cut joints full width to edges and depth of spalls, but not less than 3/4 inch deep. Clean out debris and loose concrete, vacuum or blow clear with compressed air.

H. Surface Preparation for Corrosion Inhibiting Treatment: Clean concrete to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to treatment application.

1. Use low-pressure water cleaning, detergent scrubbing, or sandblasting.
2. Allow surface to dry before applying corrosion inhibiting treatment.

I. Surface Preparation for Overlays:

1. Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material.
2. Roughen surface of concrete to produce a surface profile matching CSP 3 according to ICRI 03732.
3. Use sandblasting, scarifying, high-pressure water jetting, or milling.

4. Sweep and vacuum roughened surface to remove debris followed by low-pressure water cleaning.
- J. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Acid etch surface of concrete to produce a surface profile matching CSP 1 according to ICRI 03732. Prepare surface for acid etching by detergent scrubbing to remove oils and films that may prevent acid penetration.
  1. Remove excess acid solution, reaction products, and debris by squeegeeing or vacuuming.
  2. Scrub surface with an alkaline detergent, rinse, and squeegee or vacuum.
  3. Check acidity or surface with pH test paper and continue rinsing until pH is acceptable to written requirements of sealer manufacturer.
  4. When pH is acceptable to written requirements of sealer manufacturer and surface is clean, vacuum dry.
- K. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Clean concrete to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to sealer application.
  1. Use shot blasting, low-pressure water cleaning, or detergent scrubbing.
- L. Surface Preparation for Composite Structural Reinforcement: Clean concrete where reinforcement and epoxy patching mortar are to be placed by low-pressure water cleaning or detergent scrubbing to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to epoxy patching mortar.
  1. Roughen surface of concrete by sandblasting.
  2. Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material.
  3. Sweep and vacuum roughened surface to remove debris followed by low-pressure water cleaning.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for application of products, including surface preparation.
- B. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by stiff brush or hopper spray according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply to reinforcing bars in two coats, allowing first coat to dry two to three hours before applying second coat. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by brush, roller, or spray according to manufacturer's written instructions, leaving no pinholes or other uncoated areas. Apply to reinforcing bars in at least two coats, allowing first coat to dry before applying second coat. Place patching mortar or concrete while epoxy is still tacky. If epoxy dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
- D. Latex Bonding Agent, Type I: Apply to concrete by brush roller or spray. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.

- 
- E. Latex Bonding Agent, Type II: Mix with Portland cement and scrub into concrete surface according to manufacturer's written instructions. Place patching mortar or concrete while bonding agent is still wet. If bonding agent dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
  - F. Mortar Scrub Coat for Job Mixed Patching Mortar and Concrete Dampen repair area and surrounding concrete 6 inches beyond repair area. Remove standing water and apply scrub coat with a brush, scrubbing it into surface and thoroughly coating repair area. If scrub coat dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
  - G. Slurry Coat for Cementitious Patching Mortar: Wet substrate thoroughly and then remove standing water. Scrub a slurry of neat patching mortar mixed with latex bonding agent into substrate, filling pores and voids.
  - H. Placing Patching Mortar: Place as follows unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer:
    - 1. Provide forms where necessary to confine patch to required shape.
    - 2. Wet substrate and forms thoroughly and then remove standing water.
    - 3. Pretreatment: Apply specified bonding agent.
    - 4. General Placement: Place patching mortar by troweling toward edges of patch to force intimate contact with edge surfaces. For large patches, fill edges first and then work toward center, always troweling toward edges of patch. At fully exposed reinforcing bars, force patching mortar to fill space behind bars by compacting with trowel from sides of bars.
    - 5. Vertical Patching: Place material in lifts of not more than 1 inch nor less than 1/8 inch. Do not feather edge.
    - 6. Overhead Patching: Place material in lifts of not more than 1 inch nor less than 1/8 inch. Do not feather edge.
    - 7. Consolidation: After each lift is placed, consolidate material and screed surface.
    - 8. Multiple Lifts: Where multiple lifts are used, score surface of lifts to provide a rough surface for placing subsequent lifts. Allow each lift to reach final set before placing subsequent lifts.
    - 9. Finishing: Allow surfaces of lifts that are to remain exposed to become firm and then finish to a surface matching adjacent concrete.
    - 10. Curing: Wet-cure cementitious patching materials, including polymer-modified cementitious patching materials, for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
  - I. Dry Pack Mortar: Use for deep cavities and where indicated. Place as follows unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer:
    - 1. Provide forms where necessary to confine patch to required shape.
    - 2. Wet substrate and forms thoroughly and then remove standing water.
    - 3. Pretreatment: Apply specified bonding agent.

4. Place dry-pack mortar into cavity by hand and compact tightly into place. Do not place more material at a time than can be properly compacted. Continue placing and compacting until patch is approximately level with surrounding surface.
  5. After cavity is filled and patch is compacted, trowel surface to match profile and finish of surrounding concrete. A thin coat of patching mortar may be troweled into the surface of patch to help obtain required finish.
  6. Wet-cure patch for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
- J. Concrete: Place according to Division 03, Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete and as follows:
1. Pretreatment: Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  2. Pretreatment: Apply latex bonding agent to concrete substrate.
  3. Standard Placement:
    - a. Use vibrators to consolidate concrete as it is placed.
    - b. At unformed surfaces, screed concrete to produce a surface when finished with patching mortar will match required profile and surrounding concrete.
  4. Form and Pump Placement: Place concrete where indicated by form and pump method.
    - a. Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to wet concrete weight. Seal joints and seams in forms and where forms abut existing concrete.
    - b. Pump concrete into place from bottom to top, releasing air from forms as concrete is introduced. When formed space is full, close air vents and pressurize to 14 psi.
  5. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
  6. Fill placement cavities with dry-pack mortar and repair voids with patching mortar. Finish to match surrounding concrete.
- K. Grouted Preplaced Aggregate Concrete: Use where indicated. Place as follows:
1. Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to wet grout weight. Seal joints and seams in forms and where forms abut existing concrete.
  2. Apply epoxy-modified cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  3. Place aggregate in forms, consolidating aggregate in lifts as it is placed. Pack aggregate into upper areas of forms to achieve intimate contact with concrete surfaces.
  4. Fill forms with water to thoroughly dampen aggregate and substrates. Drain water from forms before placing grout.



5. Pump grout into place at bottom of preplaced aggregate, forcing grout upward. Release air from forms at top as grout is introduced. When formed space is full and grout flows from air vents, close vents and pressurize to 14 psi.
  6. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog or water-saturated absorptive cover.
  7. Repair voids with patching mortar and finish to match surrounding concrete.
- L. Floor Joint Repair: Cut out deteriorated concrete and reconstruct sides of joint with patching mortar as indicated on the drawings. Install joint filler in nonmoving floor joints where indicated and as follows:
1. Depth: Install joint filler to a depth of at least 3/4 inch. Use fine silica sand no more than 1/4-inch deep to close base of joint. Do not use sealant backer rods or compressible fillers below joint filler.
  2. Top Surface: Install joint filler so when cured, it is flush at top surface of adjacent concrete. If necessary, overfill joint and remove excess when filler has cured.
- M. Shotcrete: Place according to ACI 506.2.
- N. Epoxy Crack Injection:
1. Clean areas to receive capping adhesive of oil, dirt, and other substances that would interfere with bond, and clean cracks with oil-free compressed air or low-pressure water to remove loose particles.
  2. Place injection ports as recommended by epoxy manufacturer, spacing no farther apart than thickness of member being injected. Seal injection ports in place with capping adhesive.
  3. Seal cracks at exposed surfaces with a ribbon of capping adhesive at least 1/4 inch by 1 inch wider than crack.
  4. Inject cracks wider than 0.003 inch to a depth of 8 inches.
  5. Inject epoxy adhesive, beginning at widest part of crack and working toward narrower parts. Inject adhesive into ports to refusal, capping adjacent ports when they extrude epoxy. Cap injected ports and inject through adjacent ports until crack is filled.
  6. After epoxy adhesive has set, remove injection ports and grind surface smooth.
- O. Corrosion Inhibiting Treatment: Apply by brush, roller or airless spray in two coats at manufacturer's recommended application rate. Remove film of excess treatment by high-pressure washing before patching treated concrete or applying a sealer or overlay.
1. Apply to the following: .
- P. Polymer Overlay: Apply according to ACI 503.3.
1. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.

- Q. Polymer Sealer: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
1. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
- R. Composite Structural Reinforcement using Fiber Sheet and Saturant: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, install as follows:
1. Apply epoxy primer using brush or short nap roller to prepared concrete surfaces in areas where composite structural reinforcement will be applied.
  2. After primer has set, patch surface defects with epoxy filler and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
  3. Apply epoxy saturant to fiber sheet or primed and patched surface using roller. Apply fiber sheet to primed and patched surface while saturant is still wet, using pressure roller to remove air pockets. Remove paper backing from fiber sheet and apply additional epoxy to fully saturate.
  4. Apply additional layers using same procedure, fully saturating each layer with epoxy.
  5. After saturant has cured, apply protective topcoat by brush roller or spray.
- S. Composite Structural Reinforcement using Preimpregnated Fiber Sheet: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, install as follows:
1. Patch surface defects with epoxy mortar and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
  2. Apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of 1/16 inch to prepared concrete surfaces.
  3. Clean fiber sheet with acetone or other suitable solvent and apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of 1/16 inch.
  4. Apply adhesive coated fiber sheet to adhesive coated concrete and roll with a hard rubber roller until fiber sheet is fully embedded in adhesive, air pockets are removed and adhesive is forced out from beneath fiber sheet at edges.
  5. Apply additional layers using same procedure.

**END OF SECTION 030130**

**SECTION 031000**

**CONCRETE FORMWORK**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Design, construction and treatment of formwork and related accessories to confine and shape concrete to the required dimensions.
- B. Installation of embedded items such as waterstops, dovetail anchors, flashing reglets, shelf angles, and PVC weeps.
- C. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding concrete formwork shall be considered a part of this specification.

**1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 032000 - Concrete Reinforcement.
- C. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where provisions of the pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. ACI 117 - Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
  - 2. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete.
  - 3. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
  - 4. ACI 347 - Guide to Formwork for Concrete.
  - 5. ASTM C31 - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
  - 6. ASTM C39 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
  - 7. NIST - PS 1: Structural Plywood

#### 1.04 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design and engineering of formwork is the responsibility of the Contractor. Design, engineer and construct formwork, shoring, and bracing to conform to Contract Documents and in accordance with building code requirements. Formwork design shall be under direct supervision of a Professional Structural engineer experienced in the design of this work and licensed in the State where the project is located. Design for construction loads, lateral pressure, and requirements of the applicable building code to conform to the required shape, line, and dimensions. Contractor is responsible for formwork camber calculations.
- B. Foundation concrete may be placed directly into neat excavations, provided the foundation trench walls are stable as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer. In such case, the minimum formwork indicated on the drawings is mandatory to ensure clean excavations immediately prior to and during the placing of concrete.
  - 1. When forms are omitted, provide additional 1" concrete minimum on each side of the minimum design profiles and dimensions shown on the drawings.
- C. Drawings show the design requirements and dimensions for structural strength, but structural drawings do not show all detail dimensions to fit intricate architectural and mechanical detail. Contractor shall construct the concrete work so that it will conform to the clearance required by the architectural, mechanical, and electrical design.
- D. Maximum deflection of facing materials forming concrete surfaces exposed to view shall be 1/240 of the center-to-center span between structural members of the formwork.
- E. Carry vertical and lateral loads to the ground by a formwork system and in-place construction that has attained adequate strength for that purpose. Where adequate foundations for shores and struts cannot be secured, provide trussed supports.

#### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, installation instructions and specifications for each of the following:
  - 1. Waterstop profiles
  - 2. Form sealer
  - 3. Form release agent(s), including certification that agent is compatible with finish
  - 4. Form ties and spreaders
- B. Testing for Formwork Removal: When methods other than cylinder tests are proposed for determining time for formwork removal, submit data on methods for approval.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare and submit shop drawings for formwork, including dimensional layout for foundations, beams, columns, piers, walls and slabs.
- D. Pour Sequence: Submit sequence of concrete operations for supported structural slab, beams, columns, and walls.
- E. Shoring and Re-shoring: Submit proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and installing and removing reshoring.
- F. Construction Joints: Submit layout of construction joints and details of construction joints.

G. Sustainable Measures: Submit manufacturer's certification for formwork including the following:

1. Recycled content including percentage of pre-consumer (post-industrial) and post-consumer recycled content. Also provide manufacturer's name and product cost.
2. Location of manufacturing plant, manufacturer's name, product cost and location of extraction or harvest of raw materials.
3. Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood used for formwork complies with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain-of-custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
  - a. Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.

## **1.06 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate with other sections of work that require attachment of components to formwork.
- B. If formwork is placed after reinforcement, resulting in insufficient concrete cover to reinforcement, request instructions from the Owner's Representative or Architect or Structural Engineer before proceeding.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Formwork Accessories: Use commercially manufactured accessories for formwork accessories partially or completely embedded in concrete, including ties and hangers.
- B. Sealer: Clear, penetrating, synthetic resin sealer.
- C. Formwork Release Agent: Use commercially manufactured form release agents that will prevent formwork absorption of moisture, prevent bond with concrete, and will not stain the concrete surface. Reapply to cleaned forms before each reuse. Formwork release agent shall be compatible with paint or any other finish applied to the concrete; submit data indicating compatibility.
- D. Waterstops: Waterstops shall be a flexible butyl rubber and bentonite clay compound that swells upon contact with water.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. CETCO - Waterstop RX
    - b. Greenstreak - Swellstop
    - c. J.P. Specialties - Earth Shield (Type 20 & 23) Waterstop
- E. Waterstops: Waterstop materials shall be non-metallic polyvinyl chloride (PVC) or thermoplastic elastomeric rubber (TPE-R) material.
  1. Waterstop shall be fabricated from prime virgin resin material.

2. PVC material shall meet Corp of Engineers CRD - C572. TPE-Rubber shall meet EPA Title 40 CFR Section 265.193.
3. Profile shall be 6 inches long, multi-ribbed, center bulb type with 3/16-inch minimum thickness.
4. Splices shall be field welded butt splices as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide shop made fittings for all changes in direction and intersections, which maintain continuity of the waterstop profile. All splices shall provide not less than 80% tensile strength of the parent section. Edge welding is not permitted.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) Greenstreak. - PVC Waterstop
    - 2) J.P. Specialties - Earth Shield (TPE-Rubber) Waterstop
    - 3) Westec Barrier Technologies - TPE-R Waterstop

F. Form Material:

1. No aluminum shall be allowed in the concrete work unless coated to prevent aluminum-concrete reaction.
2. Concrete form materials must be used in a manner to provide the surface finish specified.
3. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will not produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation or securely clamp together providing tight joints.
4. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
5. Design formwork in accordance with the provisions of the building code or the following standards if not covered in the building code:
  - a. Wood - AWC "National Design Specification".
  - b. Plywood - American Plywood Association "Plywood Design Specification".
  - c. Steel - AISC "Manual of Steel Construction".
  - d. Aluminum - Aluminum Association "Aluminum Construction Manual"
  - e. Concrete - ACI 318.
  - f. Other materials - as directed by manufacturer.

G. Chamfer Strips:

1. Chamfer strips shall be the size as indicated on the drawings. Provide in maximum possible lengths.

H. Keyways:

1. Provide keyways as shown on the drawings. Unless noted otherwise, keyways shall be a minimum of 1-1/2 inches deep and 3-1/2 inches wide. Bevel edges of keyways 10 degrees to facilitate stripping.

## **2.02 FORM FINISHES**

### **A. Rough Form Finish:**

1. Concrete surfaces not exposed to view in the finished work shall have a rough-form finish. No form-facing material is specified for rough-form finish.
2. Set and maintain forms so finished concrete dimensions shall conform to the tolerances. Rough form finish is Designated Surface Finish-1.0 from ACI 301, except that surface tolerance Class C is required as specified in ACI 117.

### **B. Smooth Form Finish:**

1. Concrete surfaces exposed to view in the finished work or surfaces to receive finishes of any type (paint, textured paint, etc.) shall have a smooth form finish. Form-facing material shall be plywood, tempered concrete-form-grade hardboard, metal, plastic, paper, or other acceptable material capable of producing the desired finish. Form-facing material shall produce a smooth, uniform texture on the concrete. Do not use form facing material with raised grain, torn surfaces, worn edges, patches, dents, or other defects that might impair the texture of the concrete surfaces.
2. Set and maintain forms so finished concrete dimensions shall conform to the tolerances. Smooth form finish is Designated Surface Finish-3.0 from ACI 301, including surface tolerance Class A as specified in ACI 117.

### **C. Patching and repairing concrete finishes are specified under Section 033000.**

## **2.03 FABRICATION AND MANUFACTURE**

- ### **A. Form Ties and Spreaders:** Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms, hold inner and outer forms for vertical concrete together, and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1-1/2 inch to the plane of the exposed concrete surface.
  2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes not larger than 1 inch in diameter in the concrete surface.
  3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.
  4. At horizontal pour lines, locate ties not more than 6" below the pour lines. Tighten after concrete has set and before the next pour is made.
  5. For exposed concrete surfaces, provide form ties of removable type with permanent plugs and a system approved by the Architect for fixing the plugs in place.

- B. Waterstops: Fabricate pieces of premolded waterstop with a maximum practicable length to hold the number of end joints to a minimum. Fabricate joints in waterstops in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONSTRUCTION OF TEMPORARY FORMWORK**

- A. In accordance with ACI 301, construct formwork:
  - 1. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until the concrete structure can support such loads.
  - 2. Obtain approval before framing openings in structural members not indicated on the drawings.
- B. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces where slope is too steep to place concrete with bottom forms only.
  - 3. Chamfer wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like to allow wood to swell without spalling concrete and to ensure easy removal.
- C. Falsework:
  - 1. Provide positive means of adjustment (wedges or jacks) of shores and struts. Do not adjust formwork after concrete has taken its initial set. Brace formwork securely against lateral deflection and lateral instability.
  - 2. To maintain specified tolerances, camber formwork to compensate for anticipated deflections in formwork prior to hardening of concrete. Formwork camber calculations are the responsibility of the formwork designer. Set formwork and intermediate screed strips for slabs accurately to produce designated elevations and contours of the finished surface prior to removal of formwork. Ensure edge forms and screed strips are sufficiently strong to support vibrating screeds or roller pipe screeds when the finish specified requires the use of such equipment.
  - 3. When formwork is cambered, set screeds to a like camber to maintain required concrete thickness.
  - 4. Verify lines, levels, and centers before proceeding with formwork. Ensure dimensions agree with the drawings.
  - 5. Fasten form wedges in place after final adjustment of forms and prior to concrete placement.
  - 6. Anchor formwork to shores, supporting surfaces, or members to prevent upward or lateral movement of the formwork system during concrete placement.



7. Securely brace and shore forms to prevent displacement and to safely support construction loads.
  8. Construct forms plumb and straight to conform to slopes, lines, and dimensions shown.
  9. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
  10. Provide runways for moving equipment and support runways directly on formwork or structural member without resting on the reinforcing steel.
- D. Where end-of-work sequence requires a joint in the concrete, provide adequately designed additional formwork. Extend reinforcement through formwork and key joints as indicated on the drawings. Location of the construction joint is subject to approval by the Architect and the Structural Engineer.
- E. Forms for Exposed Concrete:
1. At construction joints, lap contact surface of the form sheathing for flush surfaces exposed to view over the hardened concrete in the previous placement by not more than 1 inch. Ensure formwork is held firmly against hardened concrete to prevent offsets or loss of mortar at construction joints and to maintain a true surface.
  2. Provide watertight formwork when architectural exposed concrete is specified.
  3. Unless specified in the Contract Documents, construct formwork so concrete surfaces conform to tolerance limits. The class of surface for offset between adjacent pieces of formwork facing material shall be Class C, unless specified otherwise.
  4. Do not use metal cover plates for patching holes or defects in forms.
  5. Provide sharp, clean corners at intersecting plans, without visible edges or offsets.
  6. Fill all unwanted joint openings with specified joint filler and finish flush to match adjacent form surfaces.
- F. Construct formwork for wall openings to facilitate removal and to counteract swelling of wood formwork. Keep wood forms wet as necessary to prevent shrinkage.
- G. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- H. Provide temporary openings at the base of column and wall formwork and at other points where necessary to facilitate cleaning and inspection.
- I. Unless noted otherwise, all footings shall be centered under walls, piers, or columns.
- J. Provisions for Other Trades:
1. Place sleeves, inserts, anchors, and embedded items required for adjoining work or for support of adjoining work prior to concrete placement.
  2. Position and support expansion joint material and other embedded items to prevent displacement. Fill voids in sleeves, inserts, and anchor slots temporarily with readily removable material to prevent entry of concrete into voids.

- K. Projecting corners of beams, walls and columns shall be formed with a 3/4-inch chamfer, unless noted otherwise on architectural drawings.
- L. Cleaning:
  - 1. Clean surfaces of formwork and embedded materials of mortar, grout, and foreign material before concrete is placed.
  - 2. Cover surfaces of formwork with acceptable formwork release agent. Apply form release agent before placing reinforcing steel and concrete according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not allow formwork release agent to puddle in forms. Do not allow formwork release agent to contact reinforcing steel or hardened concrete against which fresh concrete is to be placed. Do not apply form release agent to concrete surfaces receiving special finishes or applied coverings affected by the agent.
  - 3. Clean and inspect formwork immediately before concrete is placed.
- M. Provide forms for concrete work adjacent to earth banks including sides of footings, except where footing excavation is vertical rock cut.
- N. Hand trim sides and bottom of earth forms. Remove loose soil prior to placing concrete.
- O. Install void forms in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Protect forms from moisture or crushing.

### **3.02 COORDINATION**

- A. Install all required pipe sleeves, cavities or slots. Notify appropriate trades in due time so they may furnish information and make necessary installations. Check sizes, location and alignment of all openings, frames and other work, which are to be built-in including electrical boxes and conduit.
- B. Layout the run of partitions and establish location of openings so other trades may properly locate their work.
- C. Core drilling concrete is not permitted unless noted otherwise or approved in writing by the Architect. Notify the Architect in advance of conditions not shown on the drawings.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. Built-In Items:
  - 1. Confirm with Architect that all materials to be embedded are suitable for embedment in concrete.
  - 2. Build in anchors, inserts, and other devices indicated or required for various portions of work.
  - 3. Build in sleeves, thimbles, and other items furnished or set in place by other trades.
  - 4. Accurately position and support all embedded items prior to concrete placement. Secure embedded items against displacement during concrete placement operations.
  - 5. Fill voids with readily removable material to prevent entry of concrete into voids.
  - 6. Mechanical and Electrical shall provide and set required sleeves.

7. Coordinate setting of all embedded items.

**B. Waterstops:**

1. Locate waterstops in joints where indicated on the drawings.
2. Build in waterstops using longest unbroken lengths possible to hold the number of end splices to a minimum.
3. Form splices and intersections strictly according to the manufacturer's instructions so waterstops are continuous and develop an effective watertight joint.
4. In general, waterstops should be located just behind outermost layer of reinforcing. Do not place waterstops closer than 2" from face of concrete.
5. Center waterstops in joints. Take care to prevent waterstops from bending over during placing of concrete.

**3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Construction formwork to maintain tolerances required by ACI 301 and ACI 117.

**3.05 REMOVAL OF FORMS**

- A. When removal of formwork or reshoring is based on concrete reaching a specified compressive strength, concrete will be presumed to have reached this strength when either of the following requirements has been met:
1. Test cylinders, molded and cured under the same conditions for moisture and temperature as used for the concrete they represent, have reached the specified compressive strength.
  2. Concrete has been cured in accordance with the specifications for the same length of time as laboratory-cured cylinders, which have reached the specified strength. Determine the length of time concrete has been cured in the structure by the cumulative number of days or fractions thereof, not necessarily consecutive, during which the temperature of the air in contact with the concrete is above 50F and the concrete has been damp or thoroughly sealed from evaporation and loss of moisture.
- B. Forms shall remain in place for the following periods of time. These periods represent cumulative number days or hours, not necessarily consecutive, during which the temperature of the air surrounding the concrete is above 50F:
1. Walls, Grade Beams, Columns, Sides of Beams, Girders and Footings: 67% specified compressive strength or minimum 24 hours.
  2. Pan Joist Forms: 36 hours or 75% specified compressive strength.
  3. Joist, Beam or Girder Soffits: 75% specified compressive strength.
  4. One-Way Floor Slabs: 75% specified compressive strength.

5. Two Way Slabs: Forms for two-way flat slabs may be removed after 75% specified compressive strength is reached but reshoring must be placed at midpoint of the column spacing in each direction. Reshoring must be capable of safely supporting dead load of slab plus 20 psf and be placed the same working day as the slab is stripped. If reshoring is not used, all two-way slab forms must remain in place for 28 days.
- C. When finishing is required, remove forms as soon as removal operations will not damage concrete.
- D. Remove top forms on sloping surfaces of concrete as soon as removal will not allow concrete to sag. Perform needed repairs or treatment required at once and follow immediately with specified curing.
- E. Loosen wood formwork for wall openings when this can be accomplished without causing damage to concrete.
- F. Do not allow removal of formwork to damage the fresh concrete for columns, walls, sides of beams, and other parts supporting the weight of the concrete. Perform needed repair and treatment required on vertical surfaces at once and follow immediately with specified curing.

### **3.06 RESHORING**

- A. Shoring must be provided for a sufficient number of floors to develop the necessary capacity to support the imposed loads without excessive stress or deflection.
  1. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
  2. Plan sequence of shore removal and reshoring to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

### **3.07 FASTENER REMOVAL**

- A. Remove all protruding fasteners left as a result of securing inserts to forms by Contractor responsible for insert.
- B. Cutting flush with surface is not acceptable.
- C. Patch exposed concrete surfaces if damaged during fastener removal process.

### **3.08 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS**

- A. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- B. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by the Architect.

**END OF SECTION 031000**

**SECTION 032000**

**CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fabrication and placement of reinforcing steel for concrete and all related accessories.
- B. Reinforcing steel for use in bond beams, masonry columns, and lintels is specified in Division 4 and is not a part of the work in this section.
- C. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding concrete reinforcement shall be considered a part of this specification.

**1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 031000 - Concrete Formwork.
- C. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where provisions of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. ACI 117 - Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
  - 2. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete.
  - 3. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
  - 4. ACI SP-066 - ACI Detailing Manual.
  - 5. ASTM A184 - Standard Specification for Welded Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 6. ASTM A370 - Standard Test Methods and Definitions for Mechanical Testing of Steel Products
  - 7. ASTM A615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 8. ASTM A706 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Low-Alloy Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 9. ASTM A775 - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars.

10. ASTM A934 - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel Reinforcing Bars
11. ASTM A1064 - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete.
12. ASTM C1116 - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete.
13. ASTM D3963 - Standard Specification for Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars.
14. AWS D1.4 - Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel.
15. AWS D1.8 - Structural Welding Code - Seismic Supplement.
16. California Building Standards Code, California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2, Volume 2 of 2 (including all supplements).
17. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI) - Manual of Standard Practice.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Placing Drawings: Submit placing drawings showing fabrication dimensions and locations for placement of reinforcement and reinforcement accessories. Indicate bar sizes, spacing, locations, and quantities of reinforcing steel, bending and cutting diagrams, anchors, and supporting and spacing devices. Dowels shall be shown in placing drawings for the element that is to be placed first. Reinforcing steel descriptions or shop drawings shall be inch-pound sizes.
- B. Product Data: Submit product data sheets for all specified products.
  1. Fibrous concrete reinforcing material.
    - a. Application rate per cubic yard of concrete.
    - b. Manufacturer's printed batching and mixing instructions.
    - c. Letter of Certification that materials supplied meet or exceed ASTM C1116.
- C. Manufacturer's Certifications:
  1. Submit mill certifications at time of delivery.
  2. Submit carbon equivalent (CE) for reinforcing bars to be welded.
- D. Splices: Submit request for splices not indicated in the Contract Documents. Request shall indicate locations, types, and lengths of splices for approval.
- E. Column Dowels: Submit requests of column dowels without the use of templates.
- F. Field Bending: Submit requests and procedure for field bending or straightening of reinforcement partially embedded in concrete not described in the Contract Documents.
- G. Reinforcement Relocation: Submit requests to adjust reinforcement spacing necessitated by conflicts with other reinforcement, conduits, etc. for approval.

- H. Mechanical Connections: Submit request for the use of mechanical connections not shown on the project drawings. Include engineering data on proprietary connection devices for approval.
- I. Welding Procedure Specifications: For welding of reinforcing steel, include designations of processes (e.g. SMAW, GMAW, FCAW, etc.), weld symbols, and details. All WPS shall be qualified by current Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) per AWS D1.4 and approved by the Structural Engineer.
- J. Epoxy Coating: Submit product data for the proposed coating material.
- K. Supports for Coated Reinforcement: Submit description of reinforcement supports and material for fastening coated reinforcement.
- L. Alternative Reinforcement: Submit request to relocate any reinforcing bars that exceeds placement tolerances.
- M. Sustainability Measures: Submit manufacturer's certification for reinforcement including the following:
  - 1. Recycled content, including percentage of pre-consumer (post-industrial) and post-consumer recycled content. Also provide manufacturer's name, product cost, and steel processing furnace type.
  - 2. Location of manufacturing plant, manufacturer's name, product cost and location of extraction or harvest of raw materials.
    - a. Environmental Product Declaration: Submit a product specific EPD for each type of reinforcement including Product Category Rule (PCR), impact category results, declared product, date of issue, period of validity, and third party verification.

## **1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate reinforcement installation with the placement of formwork and other embedded items such as inserts, conduit, pipe sleeves, drains, metal supports, anchor rods, etc.

## **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver reinforcement to the jobsite in bundles sorted and labeled with durable tags indicating bar size, length, and shop drawing mark. Bundles shall also bear testing laboratory tags indicating identified steel.
- B. Store elevated clear of ground and protect at all times from contamination and deterioration.
- C. Prevent bending, coating with earth, oil, or other material, or otherwise damaging the reinforcement.
- D. For handling coated reinforcement, use equipment having contact areas padded to avoid damaging the coating. Lift bundles of coated reinforcement at multiple pick points to prevent bar-to-bar abrasion from sags in the bundles.
- E. Do not drop or drag coated reinforcement. Take all necessary steps to minimize damage to coating. Damaged coatings shall be patched.
- F. Store welding electrodes in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.4.

---

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Bar Deformations: Bars used for reinforcement shall be deformed except column spirals and welded wire reinforcement, which may be plain.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: Reinforcing steel shall conform to the ASTM standard and grade indicated in the General Notes on the drawings.
- C. Microfiber Reinforcing: 100% virgin polypropylene, MD grade, fibers containing no reprocessed olefin materials and specifically manufactured for use as concrete secondary reinforcement.
  - 1. Fiber length: Multi-Design Gradation Fibrillated Fibers
  - 2. Mix proprietary materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, product data and technical bulletins.
  - 3. Application Rate: 1 to 1-1/2 lbs. per cubic yard or as recommended by the fiber-reinforcing manufacturer.
    - a. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Fibrasol F; Axim Concrete Technologies.
      - 2) Fibermesh; Fibermesh, Div. of Synthetic Industries.
      - 3) Forta; Forta Corporation.
      - 4) Grace Fibers; W. R. Grace & Co., Construction Products Div.
- D. Synthetic Macro Fiber Reinforcing: Shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1116, Type III, be approved by UL for use in a two-hour rated floor assembly, and be specifically manufactured for use as concrete secondary reinforcement.
  - 1. Fiber Length: 1-1/2" to 2".
  - 2. Aspect Ratio: Between 70 and 100.
  - 3. Specific Gravity: Between 0.90 and 0.93.
  - 4. Mix proprietary materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, product data and technical bulletins.
  - 5. Application Rate: Per drawings.
    - a. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated in the Work include:
      - 1) STRUX 90/40; Grace Construction Products.
      - 2) Fibermesh 650; Propex Concrete Systems.
      - 3) TUF-STRAND SF; Euclid Chemical Company.



- E. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: Steel for epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall conform to the ASTM standard listed in the General Notes on the drawings.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. E.I. DuPont De Nemours Company, Inc. - Flintflex 531-6080.
    - b. Cook Paint and Varnish Company - Epoxy Power 720-A-009.
    - c. Polymer Corporation - Corvel ECA-1558-Red-27000.
    - d. Armstrong Products Company - Epoxiplate 346, 347 or 348.
    - e. Mobil Chemical Company - Mobilox 1004-R-2.
    - f. 3M - ScotchKote 213.
    - g. Napco Corporation - Nap-Gard 7-2000.
- F. Epoxy Patching Material: Use only patching material approved by epoxy coating manufacturer, compatible with epoxy coating and inert in fresh and hardened concrete. The maximum amount of repaired damaged areas shall not exceed 2 percent of the surface area in each lineal foot of each bar. Bars with damaged epoxy-coating areas exceeding this limit are to be rejected.
- G. Welded Wire Reinforcement: Welded wire reinforcement shall conform to the ASTM standard indicated in the General Notes on the drawings.
- H. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: Epoxy-coated welded wire reinforcement shall conform to ASTM A884.
- I. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain-steel bars. Cut bars true to length with square ends and free of burrs.
- J. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: Plain steel bars. Cut bars true to length with square ends and free of burrs. Patch with epoxy material.
- K. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, precast concrete, or fiber-reinforced concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
  - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
  - 3. Concrete cast against earth: Bars may be supported by precast concrete bricks or approved prefabricated wire bar supports complying with CRSI recommendations with footpads large enough to support the weight of the bars and construction traffic without being pushed into underlying grade. Precast concrete blocks shall have a minimum compressive strength of 6,000 psi.

## 2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication Tolerances: Reinforcing steel shall be shop fabricated within tolerances according to ACI 117 and other applicable codes, and shall conform in size, shape, quantity, dimensions, etc. to the construction drawings and approved shop drawings.

- B. Bar Condition: Bars shall be free from mill scale, excessive rust, and other coatings, which would reduce or destroy the bond with the concrete. Wipe oil from forms before reinforcement is placed on or adjacent to so that oil will not be tracked over or in any way come into contact with the reinforcement.
- C. Bars Bending: Bars shall be bent cold, and no method of fabrication shall be used which would be injurious to the material. Heating of bars for bending is not permitted.
- D. Identification: After fabrication, bars shall be sorted, bundled, and tagged with metal tags bearing the bar mark before delivery to the jobsite.
- E. Splicing:
  - 1. Continuous reinforcing in beams and grade beams shall be lapped as follows unless noted otherwise:
    - a. Top bars: Midspan
    - b. Bottom bars: Directly over support
  - 2. Locate reinforcing splices not indicated on drawings at point of minimum stress. Review location of splices with the Structural Engineer and obtain written approval prior to proceeding.
- F. Where beams and grade beams are simple span, top bars shall be continuous for full length and hooked down at each end.
- G. Reinforcing for continuous footings shall extend into spread footings a minimum of 2'-0".
- H. Bending of Epoxy-Coated Bars: Bending of epoxy coated reinforcing bars shall conform to the epoxy manufacturer's specified requirements.
- I. Dowels between footings and walls or columns shall be the same grade, size and spacing or number as the vertical reinforcing respectively, unless noted otherwise.
- J. Welding: Do not weld crossing bars (tack welding) for assembly of reinforcement, supports, or embedded items.
- K. Epoxy Coating Applications: Prepare bar in accordance with requirements of epoxy manufacturer. Coating shall be applied to the cleaned surface as soon as possible after cleaning and before visible oxidation of the surface occurs, but in no case shall more than eight hours elapse.
- L. Epoxy Coating Thickness: Electrostatically apply coating as specified by powder coating supplier.
  - 1. Thickness after curing: 7 mils with a tolerance of plus 3 mils and minus 2 mils.
  - 2. Check coating visually after cure for continuity. It shall be free from holes, voids, contamination, cracks, and damaged areas. Patch defects in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

---

## 2.03 SUSTAINABILITY MEASURES

- A. Provide steel products made using an Electric Arc Furnace having a minimum recycled content of 80%, including at least 40% post-consumer recycled content and 30% post-industrial recycled content.
  - 1. Concrete reinforcement must be made using an Electric Arc Furnace.
- B. Steel products shall be manufactured within 500 miles of project site. Recycled steel products shall be procured from within 500 miles of the project site.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PLACING

- A. Reinforcement Relocation: When necessary to move reinforcement beyond the specified spacing to avoid interference with other reinforcement, or embedded items, submit resulting arrangement of reinforcement to Structural Engineer for approval.
- B. Reinforcement Cutting: Cutting of reinforcement which conflicts with embedded objects is not acceptable.
- C. Welded Wire Reinforcement: Extend welded wire reinforcement to within 1 inch of the concrete edge. Lap edges and ends of fabric sheets a minimum of two full mesh squares. Lace edges with 16-gauge tie wire. Support welded wire reinforcement during placing of concrete to assure required positioning in the slab. Do not place wire reinforcement on grade or metal deck and raise into position in freshly-placed concrete.
- D. Wire Tie Orientation: Set wire ties so ends are directed away from the concrete surface.
- E. Slab on Grade Reinforcement Placement: Place shrinkage and temperature reinforcement 1/3 of the slab thickness from the top surface of the slabs on grade unless noted otherwise on the drawings.
- F. Do not cut, displace, or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- G. Support for Reinforcement: Unless noted otherwise, supports for reinforcement shall have Class 2 protection as defined in the CRSI Manual of Standard Practice. Submit data on supports indicating class of protection at all different locations for approval. Supports shall not be used as bases for runways for concrete-conveying equipment and similar construction loads. Do not place reinforcing bars more than 2" beyond last leg of any continuous bar support.
- H. Fibrous Reinforcement: Add fibrous reinforcement to concrete materials at the time concrete is batched in amounts indicated on the approved submittals for each type of concrete required.
  - 1. Mix concrete for uniform and complete distribution of fibrous reinforcement.
- I. Support for Coated Reinforcement: Supports for coated reinforcement shall have Class 1 protection as defined in the CRSI Manual of Standard Practice. Submit data on supports and coatings for approval.

- J. Support for Bars in Concrete Cast on Ground: Bar supports for slabs on grade, grade beams, footings, and all other concrete cast directly onto grade shall be supported at an average spacing of 4 feet or less in each direction.
- K. Securing Reinforcing Bars: All bars must be placed, spaced, secured, and supported prior to casting concrete. Bars embedded in hardened or partially hardened concrete shall not be bent unless approved in writing prior to placement by the Structural Engineer.
- L. Foot Traffic: Restrict foot traffic over the slab on grade reinforcing after it has been properly positioned.
- M. Reinforcement at Expansion Joints: Do not continue reinforcement or other embedded metal items bonded to concrete through expansion joints. Dowels bonded on only one side of a joint and waterstops may extend through joint.
- N. Pumping Concrete: When using a pump to place concrete, pump hose shall be supported directly on forms. Do not allow hose to rest on reinforcing bars if doing so could cause displacement of bars.

**END OF SECTION 032000**

## **SECTION 033000**

### **CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. All items required for executing and completing the cast-in-place concrete work and related work shown on the drawings or specified herein. Work shall include installation of items furnished in other sections of these specifications.
- B. Concrete paving, walks, and curbs are specified in Division 3 or 32.
- C. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding cast-in-place concrete shall be considered a part of this specification.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 031000 - Concrete Formwork.
- C. Section 032000 - Concrete Reinforcement.
- D. Section 033810 - Unbonded Post-Tensioned Concrete.
- E. Section 053100 - Steel Deck.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provision of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. ACI 117 - Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
  - 2. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete.
  - 3. ACI 302.1R - Guide to Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
  - 4. ACI 302.2R - Guide for Concrete Slabs that Received Moisture-Sensitive Flooring Materials.
  - 5. ACI 303.1 - Standard Specification for Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete.
  - 6. ACI 304R - Guide to Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete.
  - 7. ACI 305.1 - Specification for Hot Weather Concreting.
  - 8. ACI 306.1 - Guide to Cold Weather Concreting.
  - 9. ACI 308R - Guide to External Curing of Concrete.

10. ACI 309R - Guide for Consolidation of Concrete.
11. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
12. ACI 347R - Guide to Formwork for Concrete.
13. ASTM C31 - Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
14. ASTM C33 - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
15. ASTM C39 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
16. ASTM C42 - Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.
17. ASTM C88 - Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate.
18. ASTM C94 - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.
19. ASTM C131 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine.
20. ASTM C138 - Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.
21. ASTM C143 - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
22. ASTM C150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
23. ASTM C157 - Standard Test Method for Length Change of Hardened Hydraulic-Cement Mortar and Concrete
24. ASTM C171 - Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
25. ASTM C172 - Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
26. ASTM C173 - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method.
27. ASTM C231 - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
28. ASTM C260 - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
29. ASTM C309 - Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
30. ASTM C330 - Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete.
31. ASTM C494 - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
32. ASTM C595 – Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements.
33. ASTM C618 - Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete.
34. ASTM C979 - Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.
35. ASTM C1017 - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete.

36. ASTM C1059 - Standard Specification for Latex Agents for Bonding Fresh to Hardened Concrete.
37. ASTM C1064 - Standard Test Method for Temperature of Freshly Mixed Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
38. ASTM C1077 - Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation.
39. ASTM C1107 - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink).
40. ASTM D1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).
41. ASTM D2103 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Film and Sheeting.
42. ASTM E154 - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover.
43. ASTM E329 - Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection.
44. ASTM E1155 - Standard Test Method for Determining FF Floor Flatness and FL Floor Levelness Numbers.
45. ASTM E1745 - Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs.
46. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI) - Manual of Standard Practice.

#### **1.04 SAMPLING AND TESTING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Maintain records verifying materials used are of the specified and accepted types and sizes and are in conformance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Use of testing services will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to furnish materials and construction in full compliance with the Contract Documents.
- C. Take samples of fresh concrete at the job site for each mix design placed each day. Sampling and testing shall be done after the final addition and proper mixing of any water or admixtures that are added on site.
  1. Personnel and testing equipment shall meet the requirements of ASTM E329.
  2. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
  3. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 150 cu. yd. or 5,000 sq. ft. of surface area, whichever is less or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - a. On a given project, if the total volume of concrete is such that the frequency of testing required above would provide less than five strength tests for a given class of concrete, tests shall be made from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five batches are used.

4. A strength test shall be the average of the strengths of two 6x12 inch or three 4x8 inch cylinders made from the same sample of concrete and tested at 28 days.
- D. For each sample of fresh concrete, perform the following duties:
1. Measure and record slump in accordance with ASTM C143.
  2. Measure and record temperature in accordance with ASTM C1064.
    - a. Provide one test hourly when air temperature is 40F and below and when 80F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  3. Measure and record air content by volume in accordance with either ASTM C231 or ASTM C173.
  4. Measure and record shrinkage percentage in accordance with ASTM C157, with the following modifications:
    - a. Wet cure specimens for a period of seven (7) days (including the period of time the specimens are in the mold). Wet cure may be achieved through storage in a moist cabinet or room in accordance with ASTM C511, or through storage in lime-saturated water.
    - b. Slump of concrete for testing shall match job requirements and need not be limited to the restrictions as stated in ASTM C157.
    - c. Report results in accordance with ASTM C157 at 0, 7, 14 and 28 days of drying.
  5. Mold three 6x12 inch or four 4x8 inch cylinders (laboratory cylinders) in accordance with ASTM C31 to be laboratory-cured. Protect from moisture loss and maintain at 60F to 80F for 24 to 48 hours before moving. Deliver cylinders to testing laboratory for curing and testing.
  6. Mold one cylinder (field cylinder) in accordance with ASTM C31 to be field-cured. Field cylinder shall be placed as near as possible to the in-place concrete from which it was taken, protected, and cured in the same manner. Deliver field-cured cylinder to testing laboratory, and measure and record compressive strength in accordance with ASTM C39. Field cylinder shall be used to determine if concrete footings, walls, or piers have reached the required compressive strength for steel erection to begin.
  7. Unit Weight: ASTM C138, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
- E. Measure and record compressive strength in accordance with ASTM C39 for laboratory cylinders. Test one laboratory cylinder at 7 days and all other cylinders at 28 days. Acceptance is based on the average of the two 6x12 inch or three 4x8 inch laboratory cured 28-day tests. Notify Architect in the event strength levels do not meet the acceptance requirements of ACI 318.
1. Any additional cylinders molded for Contractor to have a compressive strength test done before seven days shall be at the Contractor's expense.



- F. Prepare and submit test reports to the Architect, Engineer, Contractor and Supplier. Reports shall be completed and furnished within 48 hours of testing. Refer to description in Submittals.
- G. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
- H. Should the strength of any grade of concrete for any portion of work, as indicated by molded test cylinders, fall below the minimum 28-day compressive strength specified on the drawings, upon approval of the Structural Engineer, the concrete supplier shall adjust the concrete mix for remaining portion of construction so that the resulting concrete meets the minimum strength requirements.

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Concrete Materials: Submit information on concrete materials as listed below.
  - 1. Cementitious Materials: Submit type, class, producer name, and certification not more than 90 days old of compliance with applicable ASTM standard.
  - 2. Aggregates: Submit type, pit or quarry location, producer name, gradations, specific gravity, water content, and certification not more than 90 days old.
  - 3. Admixtures: Submit product data sheet. Product data shall include: dosages and performance data, brand names, producers, chloride ion concentrations, and certifications of compliance with applicable ASTM standard. Certifications shall not be more than 90 days old.
  - 4. Water: Submit name of source.
  - 5. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): Submit a product-specific EPD for each mix design including Product Category Rule (PCR), declared product, date of issue, period of validity, and third-party verification.
- B. Product Data: Prepare and submit product and performance data for materials and accessories, including patching compounds, joint systems, curing compounds, finish materials, and other concrete related items.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: When requested, the proposed testing agencies shall submit data on qualifications for acceptance.
- D. Concrete Mix Design:
  - 1. Concrete mix design submittals shall be submitted to the Structural Engineer for review and approval at least 14 days prior to placing concrete.
  - 2. Obtain Structural Engineer approval for each mix design prior to use, including new mix designs required to be prepared should there be a change in materials being used.
  - 3. Submit concrete mixture proportions and characteristics for each concrete mix. Include standard deviation analysis or trial batch data with mix design. Submit historical field test data to demonstrate the average compressive strength for approval. Concrete mix proportions, materials, and handling methods for field test data or trial batches shall be the same as used for the work. Include the following information for each mix design:

- a. Water/cementitious materials ratio.
  - b. Slump per ASTM C143
  - c. Air content per ASTM C231 or ASTM C173
  - d. Unit weight of concrete per ASTM C138
  - e. Compressive strength at 28 days per ASTM C39
  - f. Shrinkage (length change) as measured in accordance with ASTM C157 with the modifications included in Section 1.3.
  - g. Embodied Carbon in kg CO<sub>2</sub>e/yd<sup>3</sup> per ISO 21930:2017.
4. If trial batches are used, submit representative samples of each proposed ingredient to independent testing laboratory for use in preparation of mix design.
  5. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments. Indicate amounts of mix water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
  6. Provide a record copy of the final mix designs and test results to the testing agency prior to commencement of the concrete work.
- E. Sustainability Measures: Submit manufacturer's certification for each concrete product including the following:
1. Recycled content, including percentage by weight of pre-consumer (post-industrial) and post-consumer recycled content. Also provide manufacturer's name and product cost.
  2. Location of manufacturing plant, manufacturer's name, product cost and location of extraction or harvest of raw materials.
- F. Concrete Finish Shop Drawings: Submit drawings indicating type of finish to be used at each location.
- G. Slab-on-Grade Joint Layout: Submit drawings for proposed slab-on-grade control joint and construction joint layout for approval.
- H. Slab Coordination Drawings: Submit drawings indicating coordinated locations of MEP penetrations, sleeves, openings, in-slab conduit/duct (if allowed), embeds, cast-in anchors, and other items embedded or penetrating elevated structural slabs.
- I. Construction Sequence Submittal: Contractor shall submit an elevated slab construction sequence indicating construction joints and the pour sequence.
- J. Test Reports: Submit laboratory test reports for concrete materials, mix design, compressive strength, slump, air content, and temperature. Each report shall indicate date of sampling, date of test, mix design, and location of concrete in structure.
- K. Repair Methods: When stains, rust, efflorescence, and surface deposits must be removed, submit the proposed method of removal.
- L. Certificates: Submit written certification regarding the design mix from the ready-mix supplier and the admixture manufacturer stating all concrete and admixtures do not contain chloride ions in excess of concentrations specified herein.

- M. Placement Notification: Notify the Architect at least 24 hours in advance of concrete placement.
- N. Adjustments: Submit any adjustments to mixture proportions or changes in materials, suppliers, or sources, along with supporting documentation, during the course of the work.
- O. Cold Weather Procedure Submittal: Refer to Cold Weather Concreting article in Part 3 for more information.
- P. Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of embedded utilities and components that are concealed from view.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Store cementitious materials in dry weather tight buildings, bins, or silos that exclude contaminants.
- B. Aggregates: Store and handle aggregate in a manner that will avoid segregation and prevent contamination with other materials or other sizes of aggregates. Store aggregates so as to drain freely.
- C. Do not allow machinery to run over lightweight aggregates.
- D. Admixtures: Protect stored admixtures against contamination, evaporation, or damage. Protect liquid admixtures from freezing and temperature changes, which would adversely affect their performance. Handle chemical admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Portland Limestone Cement: Portland limestone cement (PLC) shall conform to ASTM C595, Type IL. Use one brand of PLC throughout project, unless approved in writing by the Engineer. PLC used in concrete shall be the same as used in the concrete represented by the submitted field test data or used in the trial mixtures. Maintain consistent PLC color throughout project unless directed otherwise by architectural requirements.
  - 1. Total replacement of Portland limestone cement by supplementary cementitious materials in design mixture shall not exceed 50% (by weight).
- B. Portland Cement: Portland cement shall conform to ASTM C150, Type I Normal, and be a standard brand of Portland cement. Use one brand of cement throughout project, unless approved in writing by the Engineer. Cement, which conforms to ASTM C150 Type II, may be used if it also meets the requirements of ASTM C150 Type I. Cement used in concrete shall be of the same brand and type as the cement used in the concrete represented by the submitted field test data or used in the trial mixtures. Maintain consistent cement color throughout project unless directed otherwise by architectural requirements.
  - 1. Total replacement of Portland cement by supplementary cementitious materials in design mixture shall not exceed 50% (by weight).
  - 2. Portland Limestone Cement is preferred.

C. Supplementary Cementitious Materials

1. Fly Ash: Fly ash shall conform to ASTM C618, Class C or Class F. Replacement of Portland cement by fly ash shall not exceed the following (percentages are by weight):
  - a. Concrete Flatwork: 20 percent.
  - b. Mass Concrete (more than two feet thick): 50 percent.
  - c. All other concrete: 25 percent.
  - d. Concrete to be placed in cold weather as defined herein: No fly ash allowed unless the cold weather procedure submitted has compensated for the increased setting time and decreased rate of strength gain due to cold weather and fly ash.
2. Slag Cement: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.
  - a. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag Limit: 50% by weight of total cementitious materials.
  - b. In mass concrete more than 2 feet thick, the usage rate may be 80% by weight of total cementitious materials.
3. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240, amorphous silica.
  - a. Silica Fume Limit: 10% by weight of total cementitious materials.
4. Combined Fly Ash and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag:
  - a. Supplementary Cementitious Materials Limit: 50% with fly ash not exceeding 25% by weight of total cementitious materials.
  - b. In mass concrete more than 2 feet thick: 80% with fly ash not exceeding 50% by weight of total cementitious materials.
5. Combined Fly Ash and Silica Fume:
  - a. Supplementary Cementitious Materials Limit: 35% with fly ash not exceeding 25% and silica fume not exceeding 10% by weight of total cementitious materials.
6. Combined Fly Ash, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume:
  - a. Supplementary Cementitious Materials Limit: 50% with fly ash not exceeding 25% and silica fume not exceeding 10% by weight of total cementitious materials.

- D. Coarse Aggregate for Normal Weight Concrete: Comply with ASTM C33. Provide coarse aggregate from a single source for exposed concrete. Gradations shall be similar to that described in the following table:

COARSE AGGREGATE GRADATIONS
SIEVE SIZE - PERCENT PASSING

Grade No.	1-1/2"	1"	3/4"	1/2"	3/8"	No. 4	No. 16
4	90-100 Note 1	20-55	0-15	---	0-5	---	---
57	100	95-100	---	25-60	0-10	0-10	---
67	---	100	90-100	---	20-55	0-10	---
89	---	---	---	100	90-100	20-55	0-10

1. Shall be 100 percent passing the 2" sieve.
  2. A maximum of 30% of coarse aggregate may be recycled aggregate for footing and grade beam concrete.
- E. Fine Aggregate for Normal Weight Concrete: Comply with ASTM C33. Provide fine aggregate from a single source for exposed concrete. Fine aggregate shall consist of washed sand. Gradations shall be similar to that described in the following table:

FINE AGGREGATE GRADATIONS							
SIEVE SIZE - PERCENT PASSING							
Grade No.	3/8	No. 4	No. 8	No. 16	No. 50	No. 80	No. 100
FA	100	95-100	80-100	50-85	5-30	---	0-10

1. A maximum of 10% of fine aggregate may be recycled aggregate for footing and grade beam concrete.
- F. Do not use aggregates containing deleterious substances that could cause spalling on any exterior exposed surface. These include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Organic impurities.
  2. Ferrous metals.
  3. Soluble salts.
  4. Coal, lignite, or other lightweight materials.
  5. Soft particles.
  6. Clay lumps and friable particles.
  7. Cherts of less than 2.40 specific gravity.
- G. Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete: Lightweight aggregates shall comply with ASTM C330 and not exceed 1/2" sieve size. Aggregates shall have not more than 8% loss if tested by sodium sulfate solution and not more than 10% if tested by magnesium sulfate solution complying with ASTM C88.

- H. Water: Mixing water for concrete shall meet the requirements of ASTM C94. Water shall be clean and free from injurious amounts of acids, alkalis, organic materials, chloride ions and oils deleterious to concrete or reinforcing steel.
- I. Testing agency shall be given access to plants and stockpiles to obtain samples for testing for compliance with the Contract Documents.

## **2.02 ADMIXTURES**

- A. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures. Calcium chloride thiocyanates or admixtures containing intentionally added chlorides are not permitted.
- B. Water Reducing Admixture: Material shall comply with ASTM C494, Type A.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterPozzolith Series or MasterPolyheed Series.
    - b. Chemical Company - Eucon WR Series.
    - c. Sika Chemical Corp. - Plastocrete 161.
    - d. GRT - Polychem 400 NC.
    - e. Grace Construction Products - WRDA 82.
- C. High Range Water Reducing Admixture (superplasticizer): Material shall comply with ASTM C494, Type F or Type G.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterRheobuild 1000 or MasterGlenium Series.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucon 37 or Plastol Series.
    - c. Sika - ViscoCrete 2100.
    - d. GRT - Melchem.
    - e. Grace Construction Products - Mira 110.
- D. High Range Water Reducing, Slump Retaining Admixture: Material shall comply with ASTM C494, Type F or Type G.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterGlenium 7700.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucon 537, Eucon 1037, or Plastol Series.
    - c. Sika - Sikament 686.
    - d. GRT - Melchem - M.
    - e. Grace Construction Products - ADVA FLEX.

- E. Non-Chloride Accelerator: Material shall comply with ASTM C494, Type C or Type E, and not contain a higher chloride ion concentration than municipal drinking water.

1. Acceptable:

- a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterSet FP 20 or MasterSet AC 534.
- b. Euclid Chemical Company - Accelguard Series.
- c. Sika Chemical Corp. - Sika Rapid-1.
- d. GRT - Polychem HE.
- e. Grace Construction Products - Lubricon NCA.

- F. Air Entraining Admixture: Air entraining admixture shall comply with ASTM C260, and be certified by the manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures to be used.

1. Acceptable:

- a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterAir Series.
- b. Euclid Chemical Company - Air-Mix or AEA Series.
- c. Sika Chemical Corporation - Sika-Aer.
- d. GRT - Polychem VR.
- e. Grace Construction Products - Darex II or Daravair 1000.

- G. Water Reducing and Retarding Admixture: Material shall comply with ASTM C494, Types B and D.

1. Acceptable:

- a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterSet R Series or MasterSet DELVO Series.
- b. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucon Retarder Series.
- c. Sika Chemical Corporation - Plastiment.
- d. GRT - Polychem - R.
- e. Grace Construction Products - Daratard 17 or Recover.

- H. Set Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Admixture shall contain at least 30% calcium nitrite, while meeting the requirements of ASTM C494 as a Type C admixture.

1. Acceptable:

- a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterLife CI 30.
- b. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucon CIA.
- c. Grace Construction Products - DCI.

- I. Shrinkage Reducing and/or Shrinkage Compensating Admixture: Admixture used for the compensation and reduction of shrinkage in Portland cement concrete.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company - Conex.
    - b. Grace Construction Products - Eclipse Floor 200.
    - c. Master Builders Solutions - MasterLife SRA Series or MasterLife CRA 007 MasterSure Z60 MasterLife 300D.
- J. Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. Axim Concrete Technologies - Catexol 1000CL
    - b. Master Builders Solutions - MasterLife CI 30 or MasterLife CI 222.
    - c. Cortec Corporation - MCI 2000 or MCI 2005
    - d. W. R. Grace & Co - DCI or DCI-S
    - e. Sika Corporation - FerroGard-901
    - f. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucon CIA
- K. CO<sub>2</sub> mineralized concrete is preferred where available, provided concrete performance criteria is met. Supply CO<sub>2</sub> mineralized concrete, such that post-industrial carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) is injected into the concrete like an admixture and chemically converted into a mineral. The concrete may undergo mix optimization whereby the strength enhancement property of the mineralized CO<sub>2</sub> is utilized to adjust cementitious content, provided the optimized concrete mix meets concrete performance requirements as outlined in this specification document.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. CarbonCure Ready Mix Concrete Technology
- L. Workability-Retaining Admixture: Admixture shall retain concrete workability without affecting time of setting or early-age strength development, while meeting the requirements of ASTM C494 as a Type S admixture.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. Master Builders Solutions – MasterSure Z 60



- M. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: Admixture is Portland cement-based crystalline capillary waterproofing material that reacts to form insoluble crystalline hydration products in the capillary pores of concrete. When tested in accordance with CRD-C 48 at a pressure of 200 psi, a reduction is shown when compared to an identical mixture without the admixture. Testing in accordance with DIN 1048 for a duration of 96 hours shows a reduction or no water penetration when compared to an identical mixture without the admixture. NSF-61 certified.
1. Acceptable:
    - a. Master Builders Solutions – MasterLife 300 Series
- N. Admixtures used in concrete shall be the same brand, type, and dosage used in concrete represented by field test data or used in trial mixes.

## **2.03 CURING PRODUCTS**

### **A. Moisture Retaining Cover**

1. Plastic Film: Use 6 mil polyethylene film sheet materials that meet the requirements of ASTM C171.
2. White burlap-polyethylene sheet meeting ASTM C171.
3. Reinforced curing paper complying with ASTM C171.
4. Moisture Retaining Fabric: A naturally colored, non-woven, polypropylene fabric with a 4-mil, non-perforated reflective (white) polyethylene coating containing stabilizers to resist degradation from ultraviolet light. Fabric shall exhibit low permeability and high moisture retention. Acceptable manufacturers and products include:
  - a. PNA Construction Technologies, Inc.: Hydracure S16.
  - b. PNA Construction Technologies, Inc.: Hydracure M5.
  - c. Reef Industries Incorporated: Transguard 4000.

### **B. Dissipating Resin Curing Compound: Clear, waterborne, membrane-forming curing compound complying with ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B shall be composed of hydrocarbon resins and dissipating agents that begin to break down upon exposure to ultraviolet light and traffic approximately 4 to 6 weeks after application, providing a film that is removable with standard degreasing agents and mechanized scrubbing actions so as to not impair the later addition of applied finishes.**

1. Curing compounds used on interior enclosed environments shall be a water-borne product and VOC compliant as required by the U.S. EPA Architectural Coating Rule.

### **C. Non-dissipating Curing Compound: Clear, membrane-forming curing compound complying with ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B.**

1. Curing compounds used on interior enclosed environments shall be a water-borne product and VOC compliant as required by the U.S. EPA Architectural Coating Rule.

- D. Curing and Sealing Compound: Clear, membrane-forming curing and sealing compound complying with ASTM C309, Type 1, and ASTM C1315, Type 1, Class A. Compound shall dry to a clear finish, resist yellowing due to ultraviolet degradation and provide a long-lasting finish that has high resistance to chemicals, oil, grease, deicing salts, and abrasion.
  - 1. Curing and sealing compounds used on interior enclosed environments shall be a water-borne product and VOC compliant as required by the U.S. EPA Architectural Coating Rule.

## **2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Patching Mortar: Non-shrink, non-slump, non-metallic, quick setting.
  - 1. Acceptable manufacturers and products:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucospeed.
    - b. Master Builders Solutions - MasterEmaco N 424.
    - c. Adhesive Technologies. - Hard Rok Vertipatch.
    - d. W.R. Meadows - Speed Crete (Red Line).
    - e. Dayton Superior - Re-Crete 20 minute.
    - f. SpecChem - Precast Patch.
- B. Cement Grout: Mix 1 part Ordinary Portland cement, Portland limestone cement, 2-1/2 to 3 parts fine aggregate, and enough water for required consistency. Depending on use, consistency may range from mortar consistency to a mixture that will flow under its own weight. Do not mix more than the amount that can be used within 30 minutes. Retempering is not permitted. Use for leveling, preparing setting pads, beds, construction joints (with liquid bonding admixture) and similar uses. Do not use for grouting under bearing plates or structural members in place.
- C. Dry-Pack: Mix 1 part Ordinary Portland cement, Portland limestone cement, 2 parts fine aggregate, and enough water to hydrate cement and provide a mixture that can be molded with the hands into a stable ball (a stiff mix). Do not mix more than the amount that can be used within 30 minutes.
- D. Expansion Joint Material: Preformed, resilient, non-extruding asphalt-impregnated fiber conforming to ASTM D1751. Thickness of expansion joint material shall be 1/2" unless noted otherwise on the drawings.
- E. Magnesium phosphate patching cement specially designed for cold weather grouting and anchoring.
  - 1. Acceptable:
    - a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterEmaco T545.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucospeed MP.
- F. Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A, not less than 10 mils thick.

1. Acceptable:
  - a. Stego Industries, LLC - Stego Wrap.
  - b. W.R. Meadows, Inc. - Perminator.
  - c. Raven Industries - Vapor Block
  - d. Insulation Solutions - Viper VaporCheck II.
- G. Bonding Agent: "Weld-Crete" manufactured by the Larsen Products Corporation or "Nitobond Acrylic" manufactured by Fosroc Inc. or approved equivalent.
- H. Anti-Bonding Agent: "Thompson's Water Seal" as manufactured by A. E. Thompson, Inc., California or approved equivalent.
- I. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
  1. Manufacturers and products:
    - a. Master Builders Solutions - MasterKure HD 200WB.
    - b. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc. - Intraseal
    - c. Curecrete Chemical Co., Inc. - Ashford Formula
    - d. Dayton Superior Corporation - Day-Chem Sure Hard (J-17)
    - e. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucosil
    - f. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc. - Seal Hard
    - g. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc - Vexcon Starseal PS
    - h. SpecChem - SpecHard
- J. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  1. Type II, non-load bearing, for bonding freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  2. Types I and II, non-load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  3. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- K. Control Joint Filler: Flexible, single-component polyurethane sealant with backer rod compliant with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25. Apply sealant per manufacturers written recommendations.
  1. Acceptable:
    - a. Dayton Superior - Perma 230 SL.

- b. Euclid Chemical Company - Eucolastic I.
- c. Master Builders Solutions - MasterSeal SL 1.
- L. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, non-glazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery with emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 25 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.

## 2.05 STRENGTH AND PROPERTIES

- A. Concrete Mix Designs: Refer to the drawings for specified compressive strength and other performance criteria. Proportion concrete mixes to meet design and performance requirements. The concrete supplier may produce a mix at a lower water-cement ratio to allow for adjustment of slump at the site by adding water. The addition of site water shall be in accordance with ASTM C94.
- B. Density of Lightweight Concrete: Dry density of lightweight concrete shall be 107-116 pcf as determined by ASTM C567. Correlate air-dry density with fresh bulk density of concrete. Use fresh bulk density as the basis for acceptance during construction.
- C. Slump of Superplasticized Concrete: Concrete containing high-range water reducing admixtures (superplasticizer) shall have 8" maximum slump, unless otherwise approved by Structural Engineer.
- D. Slump of Lightweight Concrete: For lightweight concrete slabs placed by pump, slump shall not exceed 5 inches at the point of placement. For all other lightweight concrete, slump shall not exceed 4 inches.
- E. Compliance with Fire Assembly: All concrete supplied for slab on metal decks shall meet the requirements for a 2-hour floor construction per UL assembly number D925. Specifically, the concrete must meet the following:
  - 1. Be normal weight with fresh bulk density of 107-116 pcf.
  - 2. Be vibrated during placement.
  - 3. Be air-entrained between 4 to 7 percent.
  - 4. Be constructed to maintain a minimum 3-1/4-inch slab thickness above the metal flutes.
- F. Accelerators: Add non-chloride accelerator to all concrete slabs placed at air temperatures below 50F only when approved in the mix design. Use of admixtures will not relax cold weather placement requirements.
- G. Water Reducer: Add water reducing admixture or high range water reducing admixtures (superplasticizers) as follows:
  - 1. All pumped concrete.
  - 2. Fiber reinforced concrete.
  - 3. As required for placement or workability.
  - 4. As required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  - 5. Concrete with water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

- H. Use shrinkage reducing admixture or shrinkage compensating admixture where indicated on the drawings to keep shrinkage below 0.04% or demonstrate that the proposed mix design meets the same value without the shrinkage reducing or shrinkage compensating admixture.
- I. No other admixtures shall be used unless approved by Structural Engineer.
- J. Chlorides: Admixtures or other ingredients including aggregates containing calcium chloride or more than 0.05% chloride ions by weight shall not be used.
- K. Workability: Concrete shall have a workability such that it will fill the forms without voids, honeycombs, or rock pockets with proper vibration without permitting materials to separate or excess water to collect on the surface.
- L. Concrete Temperatures: Minimum concrete temperature of fresh concrete varies in relation to average air temperature over a 24-hour period as follows:
  - 1. Air temperature below 0F                      Concrete temperature 70F min.
  - 2. Air temperature 0F to 30F                      Concrete temperature 65F min.
  - 3. Air temperature 30F to 50F                      Concrete temperature 50F min.
  - 4. Air temperature above 50F                      No minimum temperature
  - 5. The maximum temperature of concrete at the time of delivery shall be 95F. When concrete temperature exceeds 95F, concrete supplier shall attempt to reduce temperature by shading aggregates and cement and cooling mix water. When these methods fail to reduce the concrete temperature below 95F, supplier shall use ice in the water to reduce the concrete temperature. Use set retarding admixtures only when approved in the mix design.

## 2.06 SUSTAINABILITY MEASURES

- A. Concrete flatwork shall contain at least 15% recycled cement (slag cement and fly ash). Concrete footings and drilled piers shall contain at least 50% recycled content. All other concrete shall contain at least 25% recycled cement.
- B. Concrete shall be manufactured within 500 miles of the project site. Aggregate, sand, and water shall be procured from within 500 miles of the project site.
- C. Embodied Carbon Requirements - Concrete mixes must have embodied carbon values equal or lower than the noted values as documented with a mix specific Environmental Product Declaration.
  - 1. Concrete flatwork: XXX kg CO<sub>2</sub>e / yd<sup>3</sup>.
  - 2. All other concrete: XXX kg CO<sub>2</sub>e / yd<sup>3</sup>.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Verify requirements for concrete cover over reinforcement.

- B. Verify anchors, seats, plates, reinforcement, and other items to be cast into concrete are accurately placed, positioned securely, and will not cause hardship in placing concrete.
- C. Do not place concrete until data on materials and mix designs have been approved, Architect has been notified, and all other affected trades have coordinated their work.
- D. Remove snow, ice, frost, water, mud, and other foreign material from surfaces, reinforcing bars and embedded items against which concrete will be placed.
- E. Prepare previously placed concrete by cleaning with sandblasting, steel brush, or water blast to expose aggregate to minimum 1/4" amplitude.
- F. Sandblast all existing concrete surfaces older than 28 days against which concrete is to be placed, unless directed otherwise in writing by Architect/Engineer.

### 3.02 SLABS

A. Slab on Grade:

- 1. All interior slabs on grade shall have a polyethylene vapor retarder conforming to ASTM E1745. Lap all joints minimum 6" and seal edges with adhesive tape. Fit vapor retarder around utilities and seal with adhesive tape as required. Place, protect, and repair vapor-retarder sheets according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. Refer to Section 312300 for required sub-grade preparation beneath slabs on grade.
- 3. Where vapor retarder is not used below the slab on grade, wet sub-grade below slab prior to placing concrete. Subgrade shall be moist with no free water and no muddy or soft spots.
- 4. Saw cut control joints: Cut with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks. Control joints shall be located along column lines, with intermediate joints spaced at a maximum distance indicated on the drawings, unless noted otherwise. Control joints shall be continuous, not staggered or offset. Slab panels shall have a maximum length to width ratio of 1.5 to 1. Provide additional control joints at all reentrant or isolated corners formed in the slab on grade. Refer to the drawings for typical control joint detailing.
- 5. Provide isolation joints around each column, against grade beams, and along foundation walls. Form isolation joints with 1/2" expansion joint material. Extend isolation joint material full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Depress slabs as required for mats, architectural finishes, pits, and kitchen equipment. Obtain layout and locations from Architect.
- 7. Verify completion of all under slab work with mechanical and electrical trades before placing slabs.
- 8. Slope slabs as indicated on the drawings and to provide positive drainage. Slope slab keeping bottom level and varying top. Maintain minimum thickness of concrete as indicated on the drawings. Refer to floor finishes for tolerances.

- B. All supported slabs, including slabs-on-steel decking and cast-in-place concrete slabs:

1. Supported slabs have deflections that may cause areas of concrete to have thicknesses greater than indicated on the drawings. Contractor is expected to provide that volume as needed to finish the floor at the specified elevation. If specified floor finish tolerances are not achieved during the concrete floor construction, after formwork removal, the Contractor shall install, at no cost to the project, a self-leveling cementitious underlayment Master Builders Solutions - MasterTop 110 SL or approved equivalent to correct the floor flatness and levelness.

C. Embedded Items:

1. The outside diameter of embedded conduit or pipe shall not exceed one-third of the slab thickness in structural slabs, including at crossovers, and shall be placed between the top and bottom reinforcing with a minimum 3" clear cover. Conduit or pipe running parallel to each other shall be spaced at least 8" apart and no more than 2 runs stacked vertically in the slab. Conduit or pipe shall not be embedded in any supported slab less than 6" thick. No embedded conduit or pipe is allowed in any concrete slab-on-steel deck.

### 3.03 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

- A. Beams: Locate construction joints for beams, joists, and girders in middle 1/3 of span, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings. When a beam intersects a girder at this point, the joint in the girder shall be offset a distance equal to or greater than twice the width of the beam. Make joints perpendicular to the main reinforcement.
- B. Slabs: Where slab pour is to receive a subsequent topping or additional concrete, expose aggregate in top surface by brooming in two directions at right angles to each other.
- C. Vertical: Locate vertical construction joints in walls and grade beams not farther than a maximum of 100 feet on center. Coordinate joint locations with architectural design.
- D. [ walls,][ piers,][ and][ columns] slabs, Reinforcing: Stop all welded wire reinforcement and/or reinforcing at construction joints in slabs on grade and provide dowel bars as detailed. Provide reinforcement at other construction joints as detailed. Roughen and thoroughly clean the surface of the concrete, remove all laitance, and wet the surface before placing new concrete against the joint. Slush vertical joints with a neat cement grout before placing new concrete.
- E. Wall Control Joints: Locate vertical control joints in exposed walls at a minimum uniform spacing not to exceed 25'-0". Coordinate joint locations with architectural drawings.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Locate construction joints only at predetermined locations approved by the Architect and the Structural Engineer.

### 3.04 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place concrete as continuously as possible until placement is complete. Do not place against concrete that has attained initial set, except at authorized joints. If, for any reason, concrete pour is delayed for more than 45 minutes, bulkhead off pour at last acceptable construction joint. Immediately remove excess concrete and clean forms.
- B. Do not begin to place concrete during periods of rain, sleet, or snow unless adequate protection is provided.

- C. No concrete shall be cast onto or against sub-grades containing free water, frost, ice, or snow. If earth at bottom of forms has dried out, rewet so the soil is moist, but free of standing water and mud.
- D. Notify the Architect in advance if concrete is to be pumped.
- E. Do not place concrete until all reinforcement is in place, forms have been thoroughly cleaned and approval has been given.
- F. Do not accept concrete delivered to the job site more than 90 minutes after initial mixing.
- G. Concrete from its point of release to mixers, hoppers, or conveyances, shall not be permitted to drop more than 5 feet (10 feet for concrete containing high-range water reducers). Deposit concrete directly into conveyances and directly from conveyances to final points of deposit. Sufficient transportation equipment in good working order shall be on hand before work begins. All conveying equipment must be clean and kept clean during concreting operations. Take every possible precaution to prevent segregation or loss of ingredients.
- H. Regulate rate of placement so concrete surface is kept level throughout; a minimum being permitted to flow from one area to another. Use tremie heads spaced at approximately 10-foot intervals for placing concrete in walls. Control rate of placement consistent with form design.
- I. Deposit concrete in one continuous operation until section being placed has been completed. For slab thicknesses greater than 12 inches, prevent excessive segregation of aggregate and high temperatures in accordance with ACI 304 and ACI 308. Place concrete in wall forms in layers not greater than 12 inches in depth, each layer being compacted by internal vibration before succeeding layer is placed.
- J. Place concrete as near as possible to its final position to prevent segregation or loss of materials. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete within forms. Consolidate concrete in walls, columns, beams, and slabs or joist construction thicker than 8" with internal vibrators (8,000 to 12,000 VPM). Slabs less than 8" thick may be consolidated with internal vibrators (9,000 to 13,500 VPM) or vibrating screeds supported on forms, boards, or rails, approved by the Structural Engineer, supplement vibration by forking or spading by hand along surfaces adjacent to forms and construction joints. Be sure an adequate number of operating vibrator units are on hand to properly consolidate quantity of concrete to be placed, including spares for emergency use.
  - 1. Vertically insert and remove handheld vibrators at constant intervals 18 to 30 inches apart. Vibrate concrete the maximum amount and time required for complete consolidation, without segregation, and release of entrapped air bubbles, but in no instance exceed 15 seconds per square foot of exposed surface.
- K. Place concrete during daylight hours, unless permitted otherwise by the Structural Engineer.
- L. Re-tempering of concrete shall not be permitted. Concrete that has stood more than 15 minutes after leaving the mixer shall be discarded.
- M. Exercise care in placing concrete over waterproof membranes, rigid insulation, and/or protection boards to avoid damaging those materials. Report damage immediately, and do not proceed until damage is repaired.
- N. Remove loose debris from hardened surfaces of previous pours by sandblasting surfaces and expose clean coarse aggregate firmly embedded in cement matrix.



- O. Remove loose debris from hardened surfaces of previous pours, thoroughly wet and slush with a neat cement grout immediately before placing new concrete or apply bonding compound to surface and let dry before placing new concrete.
- P. Protect existing concrete work to be exposed to view and other finished materials from damage and staining resulting from concreting operations. Handle concrete carefully to avoid dripping and spillage. Remove spilled concrete from existing surfaces immediately. Covering sills, ledges, and other surfaces with protective coverings may be necessary to protect the work.
- Q. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete Work.
- R. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on drawings. Set anchor rods for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- S. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on the drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

### **3.05 CONCRETE FINISHES AND TOLERANCES**

- A. Exposed Smooth Formed Surfaces: Remove forms and perform necessary repairs and patch to produce surface finish-3.0 as specified in ACI 301. Apply the following to smooth-formed finished concrete exposed to view in the finished work. Confirm finishes with the Architect prior to concrete placement by submitting shop drawings indicating locations of all types of finishes.
  - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
  - 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part Ordinary Portland cement, Portland limestone cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white Ordinary Portland cement, Portland limestone cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
  - 3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part Ordinary Portland cement, Portland limestone cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white Ordinary Portland cement, Portland limestone cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
- B. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.06 CONCRETE SLAB FINISHES AND TOLERANCES**

**A. Trowel Finish:**

1. Screed concrete to an even plane, float, then power trowel the surface.
2. Hand trowel the surface smooth and free of trowel marks. Continue hand troweling until a ringing sound is produced as the floor is troweled.
3. Provide trowel finish as indicated on the drawings and at the following locations:
  - a. Concrete floors exposed in finished work unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Slabs to receive curing compounds and sealers.
  - c. Slabs to receive resilient flooring or carpet.
  - d. Slabs to receive waterproof membranes.

**B. Fine Broom Finish:**

1. Screed concrete to an even plane, float, then power trowel the surface. Provide fine hair broom finish perpendicular to slope, free of loose particles, ridges, projections, voids, and concrete droppings.
2. Provide fine broom finish as indicated on the drawings and at the following locations:
  - a. Stoop slabs.
  - b. Raised curbs and walkway areas.
  - c. Slabs to receive thin set ceramic tile.

**C. Broom Finish:**

1. Screed concrete to an even plane and then float. Immediately after concrete has received a floated finish, give the concrete surface a coarse transverse scored texture by drawing a coarse broom across the surface.
2. Provide as indicated on the drawings and at the following locations:
  - a. ADA ramp slabs.
  - b. Exterior walkway slabs.

**D. Float Finish:**

1. Screed concrete to an even plane then float.
2. Provide as indicated on the drawings and at the following locations:
  - a. Slabs to directly receive concrete topping.
  - b. Roof slabs to receive loose laid roof insulation.

- E. Floor Finish Tolerances: Floor finish tolerances as measured in accordance with ASTM E1155, Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Levelness Using the F-Number System (Inch Pound Units), shall be as follows:

Floor Profile Quality Classification	Minimum Flatness Number Required			
	Test Area		Minimum Local F-Number	
	Flatness $F_F$	Level $F_L$	Flatness $F_F$	Level $F_L$
Slab on Grade (Office, School)	25	20	15	12
Slab on Grade (General Warehouse)	35	25	21	15
Slab on Grade (Very Flat)	45	35	27	21
Slab on Grade (Super flat)	60	40	36	24
Suspended Slab (Steel frame)	25	N/A	15	N/A

- F. Floor Finish Tolerances: Floor finish tolerances shall be measured by placing a freestanding (unleveled) 10-foot straightedge anywhere on the slab and allowing it to rest upon two high spots within 72 hours after placement of slab and removal of shoring (if present). The gap at any point between the straightedge and the floor (and between the high spots) shall not exceed:
1. Slab on Grade (Office, School): 1/4"
  2. Slab on Grade (General Warehouse): 3/16"
  3. Suspended Slabs (Steel frame): 1/4"
- G. Slab Drainage: Finish all concrete slabs to proper elevations to ensure that all surface moisture will drain freely to floor drains, and that no puddle areas exist. Contractor shall bear the cost of corrections to provide positive drainage.
- H. Special Tolerances for Concrete Slabs: No abrupt change in vertical elevation of 1/4" or more is acceptable at the interface between slabs and within areas where pedestrian traffic is expected.

### 3.07 CONCRETE CURING

- Freshly placed concrete shall be protected from premature drying and excessively hot temperatures.
- Concrete other than high-early strength shall be maintained above 50F and in a moist condition for at least the first 7 days after placement, except when special curing is used. Special curing procedures shall not be used without written permission from the Structural Engineer.
- High-early strength concrete shall be maintained above 50F and in a moist condition until it has reached 2/3 of the specified 28-day compressive strength, but not less than 3 days unless special curing is used with written permission from the Structural Engineer.
- Formed surfaces shall be cured by leaving the formwork in place during the curing period.

- E. Protect concrete from excessive changes in temperature during the curing period and at the termination of the curing process. Changes in the temperature of the concrete shall be as uniform as possible and shall not exceed 5F in any one hour or 50F in any 24-hour period.
- F. Protect concrete from injury from the elements until full strength is developed. Protect from mechanical injury.
- G. During cold weather construction, all footings shall be protected from frost penetration until the building is enclosed and temporary heat is provided.

### 3.08 SLAB CURING

- A. Begin curing after finishing concrete, but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface. Use one of the methods described below.
- B. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing for Concrete Floors Not Exposed in Final Condition: Cover concrete surface with waterproof sheet material as soon as finishing operations are complete and the concrete is sufficiently hard to be undamaged by covering. The cover shall be placed flat on the concrete surface, avoiding wrinkles. Sprinkle concrete with water as necessary during application of covering. Place in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and seal with waterproof tape or adhesive. Verify the concrete is continuously wet under the sheets; otherwise, add water through soaker hoses under the sheets. Weight down covering to prevent displacement. Immediately repair any holes or tears during the curing period using polyethylene sheet and waterproof tape. Curing process shall be maintained for a minimum of 7 days.
- C. Moisture-Retaining-Fabric Curing for Concrete Floors to Remain Exposed: Cover concrete surface with moisture retaining fabric as soon as finishing operations are complete and the concrete is sufficiently hard to be undamaged by covering. The cover shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written recommendations, in largest practical widths. Wet the slab to rejection, then thoroughly wet fabric side of cover and install with poly side up. Lap over adjacent covers a minimum of 18". Wet all laps and outside edges to prevent displacement and to ensure intimate contact with concrete and adjacent covers. Rewet as necessary and protect covers from damage during curing process.
  - 1. After minimum 7-day cure, remove moisture retaining fabric in sections.
  - 2. A maximum of 3,500 square feet of concrete curing cover may be removed at any one time. At no time shall the exposed area be permitted to dry prior to completion of the floor scrubbing process.
  - 3. Using a high-powered floor scrubber capable of a minimum 80 pounds head pressure, and a mild citrus-based detergent that does not damage or mar the surface in any way, scrub the floor to remove any minerals or soluble salts that may have accumulated at the floor surface. Rinse area thoroughly with clean fresh water. Remove water and allow floor to dry. If whitening occurs during drying, repeat scrubbing process before floor dries until no whitening occurs during drying.
  - 4. All areas of the floor shall remain wet during floor scrubbing process. Expose only the amount of floor surface that can be cleaned before any drying occurs without exceeding the maximum allowable exposed area.

- D. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by low pressure spray equipment or roller as soon as finishing operations are complete, free water on the surface has disappeared, and no water sheen can be seen. Follow the manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period. Verify compatibility of the curing compound with paint, finishes, or toppings that require positive bond to the concrete. If curing compound is not compatible with paint finishes or toppings, utilize a dissipating curing compound and remove in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

### **3.09 PENETRATING LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS**

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Do not apply to concrete that is less than seven days old.
- D. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.

### **3.010 JOINT FILLING**

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- C. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.

### **3.011 APPLICATION OF FLOOR SEALER - FINISH COAT**

- A. Give concrete floors, as indicated in the Room Finish Schedule and where exposed in finished Work, a second coat of curing and sealing compound immediately prior to Substantial Completion.
- B. Clean floors and apply sealer strictly according to manufacturer's instructions. Dilution and coverage shall be as recommended by the manufacturer. Apply sealer evenly.

### **3.012 COLD WEATHER CONCRETING**

- A. Definition: Cold weather shall be defined as a period when for more than three successive days the average daily outdoor temperature drops below 40F. The average daily temperature is the average of the highest and lowest temperature during the period from midnight to midnight. When temperatures above 50F occur during more than half of any 24-hour duration, the period shall not be regarded as cold weather.
- B. All cast-in-place concrete work occurring during cold weather shall conform to all requirements of ACI 306.1, "Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting", published by the American Concrete Institute, Detroit, Michigan, except as modified by the contract documents or this specification.

- C. Planning: The General Contractor, concrete contractor, concrete supplier, and Architect shall have a pre-construction conference to outline the cold weather concreting operations concerning the placing, finishing, curing and protection of the concrete during cold weather. Pre-construction conference shall occur before cold weather is expected to occur.
- D. Detailed procedure submittal: Concrete contractor shall prepare and submit for review detailed procedures for the production, transportation placement, protection, curing and temperature monitoring of concrete during cold weather. Include procedures to be implemented upon abrupt changes in weather conditions. Do not begin cold weather concreting until these procedures have been reviewed and approved.
- E. Mixing: Concrete flatwork poured in cold weather shall be proportioned to obtain a lower slump to minimize the amount of bleed water during finishing. All bleed water should be skimmed off flatwork prior to troweling. Concrete that will be exposed to cycles of freezing and thawing while saturated should be properly air entrained as outlined in this specification.
- F. Protection of Concrete: Cure and protect concrete against damage from freezing for a minimum period of 72 hours, unless approved by the Structural Engineer. The protection period may be reduced according to ACI 306.1 requirements. Concrete contractor shall submit a letter of request to reduce the protection period, by outlining the method used to achieve the reduction per ACI 306.1.
1. When practical for the construction schedule, formwork shall be insulated and remain in place for at least the required protection period.
- G. Concrete Temperatures: The minimum temperature of concrete immediately after placement shall be as specified in the following table.

Section Size	Minimum temperature of concrete as placed and maintained during the protection period	Maximum gradual decrease in surface temperature during any 24 hours after the end of the protection.	Mixing Temperatures		
			Above 30F	0 to 30F	Below 0F
Less than 12 in	55F	50F	60F	65F	70F
12-36 in	50F	40F	55F	60F	65F
36-72 in	50F	30F	50F	55F	60F
Greater than 72 in	50F	20F	45F	50F	55F

- H. Mixing Temperatures: As the ambient air temperature decreases, the concrete mixing temperature shall be increased to compensate for the heat lost in the period between mixing and placement. The concrete supplier shall use one or both of the following methods for increasing the concrete temperature.
1. Heating the mixing water to a temperature necessary to offset the temperature losses during transport. Supplier shall not heat water to temperatures in excess of 140F, without taking special precautions as outlined in ACI 306.

2. Heating the aggregate with a circulated steam piping system.
- I. Temperature Measurements: The Contractor shall be responsible for monitoring and recording the concrete temperatures during placement and throughout the protection period.
  1. Inspection personnel shall keep a record of the date, time, outside air temperature, temperature of concrete as placed, and weather conditions.
  2. Temperature of the concrete and the outside air shall be recorded at regular intervals but not less than twice in a 24-hour period. The record shall include temperatures at several points within the enclosure and on the concrete surface of sufficient frequency to determine a range of temperatures.
  3. Inspection agency shall submit the temperature logs to the Architect for permanent job records.

### 3.013 HOT WEATHER PROTECTION

- A. Definition: Hot weather shall be defined as any combination of high ambient temperature, low relative humidity, high winds, and intense solar radiation that leads to higher than usual evaporation. The table below defines low relative humidity based on air temperature. For a given air temperature, if the relative humidity is equal to or less than the specified minimum, provisions for hot weather concreting shall be as follows:

Air Temperature	Minimum Relative Humidity
105F	90%
100F	80%
95F	70%
90F	60%
85F	50%
80F	40%
75F	30%

- B. Scheduling: When hot weather is expected, adjust concrete placement schedules to avoid placing or finishing during the period from noon until 3:00 pm. When possible, slab pours should be delayed until the building is enclosed to protect the concrete from wind and direct sunlight. The construction schedule shall account for 7-day moist curing period.
- C. Mixing: Concrete supplier shall adjust mix designs and admixtures to minimize slump loss. Concrete shall be mixed at a water-cement ratio, which is lower than the specified maximum, to allow for the adjustment of slump by addition of water in the field. Water reduction shall be accomplished without reducing initial slump by increasing dosage of a water reducing admixture.
- D. Preparation: Do not order concrete earlier than is required to avoid delays. Cool forms, subgrades and reinforcing bars with water spray from fog nozzle prior to concrete placement.
- E. Delivery: Site traffic shall be coordinated, and delivery times scheduled to minimize waiting times for concrete trucks.

- F. Placement: Preparations shall be made to place and consolidate the concrete at the fastest possible rate. Maintain a continuous flow of concrete to the job site to avoid development of cold joints, during placement of slabs, apply fog spray to prevent moisture loss without causing surplus water to stand on concrete surface.
- G. Finishing: Finish concrete as fast as practical. Continue fogging concrete during finishing. Where fogging is not possible, apply sprayable moisture-retaining film between finishing passes.
- H. Curing: Formed concrete shall be covered with a waterproof material to retain moisture. Flat work shall be moisture cured as described in this specification. Moist curing shall continue for at least 7 days.

### **3.014 FIELD QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Independent Testing Agency and Special Inspector shall each perform their prescribed inspection, sampling, and testing services as described in Part 1 of this specification section.
- B. In cases where samples have not been taken or tests conducted as specified or strength of laboratory test cylinders for a particular portion of the structure fails to meet requirements of ACI 301, for evaluation of concrete strength, Structural Engineer shall have the right to order compressive or flexural test specimens or both be taken from the hardened concrete according to ASTM C42, load tests according to ACI 318, or such other tests as may be necessary to clearly establish the strength of the in situ concrete, and such tests shall be paid for by the Contractor. Where cores have been cut from the Work, Contractor shall fill voids with dry-pack and patch the finish to match the adjacent existing surfaces.

### **3.015 REPAIR OF DEFECTIVE AREAS**

- A. All repair of defective areas shall be made, with prior approval of Architect and Structural Engineer as to method and procedure, in accordance with Section 5 of ACI 301, except specified bonding compound must be used. Cosmetic repairs of minor defects in exposed concrete surfaces shall be in a manner acceptable to the Architect. Defective areas shall be deemed when:
  - 1. Tests on core or prism specimens fail to show specified strengths.
  - 2. Not formed as indicated or detailed.
  - 3. Not plumb or level where so indicated or required to receive subsequent work.
  - 4. Not true to intended grades and levels.
  - 5. Cut, filled, or resurfaced, unless under direction of the Structural Engineer.
  - 6. Debris is embedded therein.
  - 7. Not fully in conformance with provisions of the drawings.
  - 8. Damaged by hot or cold weather conditions.
  - 9. Mixing time exceeds 90 minutes from ready-mix plant to the time of deposit.
- B. Patch form tie holes at the following locations:



1. Unfinished exposed concrete (not scheduled for painting, plus at board formed concrete finish).
2. All other areas: Prime voids with bonding compound and fill with patching mortar. Strike flush without overlap, float to uniform texture to match adjacent surfaces.
3. Exposed areas scheduled for spray texture:
  - a. Remove projections and protrusions: 1/16" or larger.
  - b. Remove continuous ridges 1/32" or larger.
  - c. Fill voids and pin holes.
4. Exposed areas scheduled for paint or epoxy:
  - a. Remove projections, ridges, and other protrusions 1/32" or larger.
  - b. Fill voids and pin holes 1/16" or larger.
5. Exposed areas not scheduled for paint or other finishes:
  - a. Remove projections, ridges and other protrusions not conforming to requirements specified under Section 031000.
  - b. Fill voids and pin holes not conforming to requirements specified under Section 031000.
- C. All structural repairs shall be made, with prior approval of the Architect/Engineer, as to method and procedure, using the specified epoxy adhesive and/or epoxy mortar.
- D. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white Ordinary Portland cement, Portland limestone cement and standard Ordinary Portland cement. Portland limestone cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- E. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mix as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

### **3.016 CEMENT GROUT AND DRY-PACK**

- A. Cement Grout: Thoroughly mix sufficient quantities to avoid combining different batches of grout mix. Ensure that grout completely fills all spaces and voids. Level, screed, or cut flush excess grout to produce smooth, neat, even exposed surfaces.
- B. Dry-Pack: Thoroughly blend dry ingredients prior to mixing with water. Forcibly pack mixture to completely fill voids and spaces.

### **3.017 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed concrete to remove laitance, efflorescence and stains.

**END OF SECTION 033000**

**SECTION 042200**

**REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Supply and installation of all reinforced concrete unit masonry work (concrete unit masonry, mortar, grout, reinforcement, anchors, and ties) and accessories as shown on the drawings and herein specified.
- B. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding reinforced unit masonry shall be considered part of this specification.

**1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 042000 - Unit Masonry.
- C. Section 051223 - Structural Steel.
- D. Section 312300 - Foundation Excavating and Backfilling.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provision of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 2. ASTM A615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 3. ASTM A641 - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire.
  - 4. ASTM A951 - Standard Specification for Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement.
  - 5. ASTM C90 - Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units.
  - 6. ASTM C270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.
  - 7. ASTM C387 - Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Concrete and High Strength Mortar.
  - 8. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry.
  - 9. ASTM C780 - Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry.

10. ASTM C1019 - Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout.
11. International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council (IMIAC) - Recommended Practices and Guide Specifications for Cold Weather Masonry Construction.
12. TMS 402/602 - Building Code Requirements and Specifications for Masonry Structures.
13. UL - Underwriters Laboratories.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installation Company: Company shall have not less than five (5) years of documented experience in the construction of masonry projects of similar scope and complexity.
- B. For the actual cutting and placing of concrete masonry units, use only skilled masons who are thoroughly experienced with the material and methods specified and thoroughly familiar with the design requirements. Workers shall have not less than three (3) years of documented experience in the construction of masonry walls.
- C. Fire Resistance: Whenever a fire-resistant classification is indicated for unit masonry construction, provide concrete block units as tested and listed for the particular fire-resistant construction.
- D. The governing building department reserves the right to take samples and make material tests prior to or during construction, without expense to the Contractor. Materials found to be defective shall be removed and replaced.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Prepare and submit product data for the Engineer's approval. Data should include all horizontal reinforcement, anchoring devices, and all other embedded items herein specified.
- B. Prepare and submit shop drawings detailing the fabrication, bending, and placement of reinforcing bars.
- C. Samples: When requested by the Architect and before any materials are delivered to the Worksite, submit for approval one sample of the proposed masonry materials, showing the full range of colors and textures available.
- D. Certificates:
  1. Submit a letter of certification from the manufacturer of the concrete masonry units certifying all concrete masonry units delivered to the worksite are in strict conformance with the provisions of this specification.
  2. Submit concrete unit masonry compressive strength test results demonstrating the units meet the specified strength. Test must be conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Submit mortar mix design and test results as follows:
  1. Mix designs shall indicate type and proportions of ingredients in compliance with the proportion requirements of ASTM C270.

2. For mix designs not in accordance with the proportion requirements of ASTM C270, the mortar test history must be performed in accordance with ASTM C780 to verify performance with property requirements of ASTM C270. Tests must meet the type of mortar specified on the drawings. Tests must be done by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Submit grout mix designs and test results as follows:
1. Mix designs shall indicate type and proportions of the ingredients in compliance with the proportion requirements of ASTM C476.
  2. For mix designs not in accordance with the proportion requirements of ASTM C476, the grout test history must be performed in accordance with ASTM C1019 to verify performance with property requirements of ASTM C476. Tests must meet the type of grout specified on the drawings. Test must be done by a qualified independent testing agency.
    - a. Perform one test prior to construction and perform at least one test during construction for each 5000 square feet of wall.

#### **1.06 MOCKUP**

- A. Prior to installation of masonry work, erect sample wall panel to further verify color and texture characteristics of selected masonry units and mortar and to demonstrate the level of workmanship required for the unit masonry.
- B. Construct mockup at the site, where directed. Mockup shall be full thickness four-foot high by four-foot long, including face and back-up wythes, as well as all accessories. Mockup shall indicate the proposed range of color, texture, and quality of workmanship to be expected in the completed work.
- C. Obtain the Architect's acceptance of visual qualities of the mockup before start of masonry work.
- D. Retain mockup during construction as a standard for judging completed masonry work.
- E. Construct mockup panels for the following walls:
  1. Exterior masonry wall construction.
- F. Demolish and remove mockups from site when directed by the Architect/Engineer.
- G. Mockups may remain as part of work when directed by the Architect/Engineer.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. All masonry units shall be delivered to the worksite and stacked on pallets to allow the circulation of air through all units. Cover with a waterproof covering anchored to prevent displacement during high winds.
- B. Masonry accessories, including reinforcing steel, shall be stored clear of the ground to prevent deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, and corrosion.
- C. Deliver all materials in sufficient quantity and time to maintain approved construction schedule.

- D. Deliver all packaged materials in manufacturer's original containers, with labels and markings intact and legible.
- E. Immediately remove all damaged materials or containers from site and replace with new items.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C90, Grade N-1 as follows:
  - 1. Weight: Normal weight or lightweight.
  - 2. Compressive Strength: As indicated on the drawings.
  - 3. Nominal Size: As indicated on the drawings.
  - 4. Actual Size: 3/8" less than nominal size.
  - 5. Aggregates:
    - a. Normal Weight: ASTM C33.
    - b. Lightweight: ASTM C331.
  - 6. Provide special units for 90-degree corners, lintels jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bond beams, and other special conditions conforming to ASTM C90.
  - 7. All exposed unit masonry shall be free of chips, cracks, and other imperfections.
- B. Mortar and Grout:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: As indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Mortar type for masonry construction shall be as designated in the General Notes of the drawings, conforming to ASTM C270, and grout shall conform to ASTM C476.
  - 3. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, non-staining, no air entraining, natural color cement.
  - 4. Blended Cement: ASTM C595.
  - 5. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91.
  - 6. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C144, standard masonry type sand .
  - 7. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207.
  - 8. Quicklime: ASTM C5, non-hydraulic type.
  - 9. Premix Mortar: ASTM C387, using gray cement, normal strength.
  - 10. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C404 Pea gravel with not more than 5% passing the No. 8 sieve and 100% passing the 3/8-inch sieve.
  - 11. Grout Fine Aggregate: Sand.
  - 12. Water: Clean and potable.

13. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.

C. Joint Reinforcement:

1. Provide joint reinforcement formed from galvanized carbon-steel wire in accordance with ASTM A641, Class 1 for interior walls; and ASTM A153, Class B-2, for exterior walls.
2. Provide welded wire units prefabricated with 9 gauge deformed continuous side rods and 9 gauge plain cross rods into straight lengths of not less than 10 feet with matching corner and tee units. Unit widths to be 1-1/2 to 2 inches less than the wall thickness.
3. For multi-wythe concrete masonry walls, provide truss type reinforcement with a third side rod extending out into the other wythe.

D. Reinforcement:

1. Use deformed billet bars with unprotected finish conforming to ASTM A615, 60 ksi yield strength.

E. Control and Expansion Joints:

1. Control joint material for unit masonry shall consist of cross-shaped extruded polyvinyl gaskets sized to match wall thickness.
2. Expansion or joint filler material, unless otherwise indicated, shall be 1/2 inch thick asphalt impregnated cellular board.
3. Compressible filler shall be pre-molded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 1; compressible up to 35 percent of width and thickness indicated.
4. Bond breaker strips shall be asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

F. Flashing:

1. Provide metal flashing at window sills, exterior lintels, base courses of masonry walls, and elsewhere as shown on drawings or specified herein. Flashing shall be prefabricated minimum 18 gauge galvanized pre-finished sheet metal flashing.

G. Breath Wicks: 3/16 inch diameter cotton sash cord or glass fiber rope. Provide 2 inches of exposure to the outside and space wicks at 18 inches on center along the wall.

H. Insulation Board: Refer to Board Insulation in Division 7.

I. Masonry cleaners shall be non-acidic and not harmful to masonry workers or adjacent materials.

J. Waterproofing: Reference Section 07 14 00.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.
  - 1. Verify foundations are constructed with tolerances conforming to the requirements of ACI 117.
  - 2. Verify reinforcing dowels are positioned in accordance with the drawings.
- B. Verify items provided by other Sections of work are properly sized and located.
- C. Verify built-in items are in proper location and ready for roughing into masonry work.
- D. Beginning of installation means Installer accepts existing conditions.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Layout walls in advance for accurate spacing of bond patterns, with uniform joint widths and to properly locate openings, expansion joints, and offsets.
- B. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied to other Sections.
- C. The Contractor is responsible to design, provide, and install bracing that will ensure stability of masonry during construction. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.
- D. Remove laitance, loose aggregate, and anything else that would prevent mortar from bonding to the foundation.
- E. Clean all reinforcement by removing mud, oil, or other materials that will adversely affect or reduce bond at the time mortar or grout is placed.

### **3.03 COLD WEATHER CONSTRUCTION**

- A. When ambient temperature is below 40F, implement cold weather procedures.
- B. Special cold weather requirements for various temperature ranges are as follows:
  - 1. Air temperature 40F to 32F: Sand or mixing water shall be heated to produce mortar temperatures between 40F to 120F.
  - 2. Air temperature 32F to 25F:
    - a. Sand and mixing water shall be heated to produce mortar temperatures between 40F to 120F. Maintain temperature of mortar on boards above freezing.
    - b. Grout aggregates and mixing water shall be heated to produce grout temperature between 70F to 120F.
  - 3. Air temperature 25F to 20F: Comply with requirements for air temperature between 32F to 25F and the following:



- a. Provide heat sources on both sides of the wall under construction to heat masonry surfaces to 40F. Windbreaks shall be used when wind is in excess of 15 miles per hour.
  - b. Heat masonry to a minimum temperature of 40F prior to grouting.
- 4. Air temperature 20F and below: Comply with requirements for air temperature between 32F to 20F and the following:
  - a. Enclosure and auxiliary heat shall be provided to maintain air temperature above freezing. Do not lay masonry units having a temperature below 20F.
- C. Cold-Weather Protection:
  - 1. When the mean daily air temperature is 40F to 25F, masonry shall be completely covered for 24 hours with weather-resistive membrane.
  - 2. When the mean daily air temperature is 25F to 20F, masonry shall be completely covered for 24 hours with insulating blankets with a weather-resistive covering. Extend time period to 48 hours for grouted masonry.
  - 3. When the mean daily air temperature is 20F or below, masonry temperature shall be maintained above freezing for 24 hours by enclosure and auxiliary heating. Extend time period to 48 hours for grouted masonry.
- D. Do not lay masonry units having either a temperature below 20F or containing frozen moisture, visible ice, or snow on their surfaces.
- E. Remove visible ice and snow from the top surface of existing foundations and masonry to receive new construction. Heat these surfaces above freezing.
- F. Top of all walls not enclosed or sheltered shall be covered with strong weather-resistive material at the end of each day or shutdown.
- G. Partially completed walls shall be covered at all times when work is not in progress.
- H. Any section of masonry deemed frozen and damaged shall be removed before continuing construction of that section.
- I. Masonry units shall be dry at the time of placement. Wet or frozen units shall not be laid.
- J. All cold weather masonry construction shall conform to TMS 402/602 Building Code Requirements and Specifications for Masonry Structures.

### **3.04 HOT WEATHER CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Hot weather construction is defined when:
  - 1. The ambient air temperature exceeds 100F or exceeds 90F with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph.
- B. Hot Weather Procedures:
  - 1. Maintain sand piles in a damp, loose condition.

2. Provide necessary conditions and equipment to produce mortar having a temperature below 120F.
3. Flush mixer, mortar transport container, and mortar boards with cool water before they come in contact with mortar ingredients or mortar.
4. Use mortar within two hours of initial mixing.
5. Fog spray all newly constructed masonry until damp, at least three times a day until the masonry is three days old.
6. Do not spread mortar beds more than 4 feet ahead of masonry. Set masonry within one minute of spreading mortar.

### **3.05 COURSING**

- A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement. Grouted cells shall be in vertical alignment.
- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- C. Lay concrete masonry units in bond to match existing at all patch and infill locations.
- D. Unless noted otherwise, provide masonry control joints at 30'-0" on center maximum.
- E. Unless noted otherwise, build non-bearing interior partitions walls full height to underside of structure.

### **3.06 PLACING AND BONDING**

- A. Unless noted otherwise, construct masonry in running bond pattern.
- B. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.
- C. Bed and Head Joints:
  1. Unless otherwise required, construct 3/8 inch thick bed and head joints.
  2. At foundation, construct bed joint of the starting course a thickness not less than 1/4 inch, and not more than 3/4 inch.
  3. Unless otherwise noted, tool joint with a round jointer when the mortar is thumbprint hard.
  4. Remove masonry protrusions extending 1/2 inch or more into cells or cavities to be grouted.
  5. Where masonry rests on concrete, the concrete shall be sandblasted or bushed.
- D. Collar Joints:
  1. Unless otherwise required, solidly fill collar joints less than 3/4 inch wide with mortar as the job progresses.
- E. Place hollow units as follows:
  1. With face shells of bed joints fully mortared.

2. With webs fully mortared in:
    - a. All courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
    - b. In the starting course on foundations.
    - c. When necessary to confine grout or loose fill.
    - d. When otherwise required.
  3. With head joints mortared, a minimum distance from each face equal to the face shell thickness of the unit.
  4. Vertical cells to be grouted are aligned and openings are unobstructed.
- F. Place solid units as follows:
1. Unless otherwise required, solidly fill bed and head joints with mortar.
  2. Do not fill head joints by grouting with mortar.
  3. Construct head by shoving mortar tight against the adjoining unit.
  4. Do not deeply furrow bed joints.
- G. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints is not permitted.
- H. Remove excess mortar as work progresses.
- I. Interlock intersections and external corners.
- J. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.
- K. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, undamaged edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.
- L. Isolate masonry partitions from vertical structural framing members with a control joint.
- M. Isolate top joint of masonry partitions from horizontal structural framing members and slabs or decks with compressible joint filler and pin top of wall with prefabricated partition anchors that allow vertical movement.

### **3.07 HORIZONTAL REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORS**

- A. Install horizontal joint reinforcement as follows:
1. Interior non-load bearing walls - 24 inches on center vertically.
  2. Exterior walls and interior load bearing walls - 16 inches on center vertically.
  3. Parapet walls - 8 inches on center vertically unless noted otherwise.
  4. Foundation walls - 8 inches on center vertically unless noted otherwise.
- B. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings. Extend minimum 16 inches each side of opening.

- C. Place joint reinforcement continuous in first and second joint below top of walls.
- D. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches. Extend minimum 16 inches each side of openings.
- E. Place joint reinforcement so longitudinal wires are embedded in mortar with a minimum cover of 1/2 inch when not exposed to weather or earth, and 5/8 inch when exposed to weather or earth.
- F. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces such members.
- G. Wall Ties:
  - 1. Embed the ends of wall ties in mortar joints. Embed wall tie ends at least 1/2" into the outer face shell of hollow units. Embed wire wall ties at least 1-1/2" into the mortar bed of solid masonry units or solid grouted hollow units.
  - 2. Do not bend wall ties after embedded in grout or mortar.
  - 3. Unless otherwise required, install adjustable ties in accordance with the following requirements.
    - a. One tie for each 1.77 square feet of wall area.
    - b. Do not exceed 16 inches horizontal or vertical spacing.
    - c. The maximum misalignment of bed joints from one wythe to the other is 1-1/4".
    - d. The maximum clearance between connecting parts of the ties is 1/16".
    - e. When pintle legs are used, provide ties with at least two legs made of wire size W2.8.
    - f. Install wire ties perpendicular to a vertical line on the face of the wythe from which they protrude. Where one-piece ties or joint reinforcement is used, the bed joints of adjacent wythes shall align.
    - g. Unless otherwise required, provide additional unit ties around all openings larger than 16 inches in either dimension. Space ties around the perimeter of an opening at a maximum of 3 feet on center. Place ties within 12 inches of an opening.

### 3.08 VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement beyond the tolerances allowed by construction loads or by placement of grout or mortar. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of masonry unit or formed surface, but not less than 1/4 inch (only when fine grout is used).
- B. Dowels in footings shall be set to align with cores containing reinforcing steel.
- C. Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing. Completely embed reinforcing bars in grout.
- D. All cells containing reinforcing in concrete blocks shall be filled solid with grout.
- E. Do not bend reinforcement after it is embedded in grout or mortar.
- F. Reinforce masonry unit cores and cavities with vertical reinforcement bars and grout as indicated on the drawings. Place reinforcement and ties in grout spaces prior to grouting.
- G. Retain vertical reinforcement in position at top and bottom of cells and at intervals not exceeding 192 bar diameters.

- H. Place steel in walls and flexural elements within 1/2 inch of required location.
- I. Place vertical bars within 2 inches of the required location along the length of the wall.

### **3.09 CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY**

- A. Lay masonry units with core cells vertically aligned and clear of mortar dropping, debris, loose aggregates, and any material deleterious to masonry grout.
- B. Do not place grout until height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist grout pressure.
- C. Do not wet concrete masonry units before laying.
- D. Grout spaces less than two inches in width with fine grout using low lift grouting techniques. Grout spaces two inches or greater in width with course grout using high lift or low lift grouting techniques.
- E. When grouting is stopped for more than one hour, terminate grout 1-1/2 inch below top of upper masonry unit to form a positive key for subsequent grout placement.
- F. Grouting:
  - 1. Place grout in lifts not to exceed five feet. Consolidate grout at time of placement.
    - a. Consolidate grout pours 12 inches or less in height by mechanical vibration or by puddling.
    - b. Consolidate grout pours exceeding 12 inches in height by mechanical vibration and reconsolidate by mechanical vibration after initial water loss and settlement has occurred.
  - 2. When the grout pour height exceeds 5 feet 4 inches, provide cleanout opening no less than 3 inches high at the bottom of each cell to be grouted by cutting one face shell of masonry unit. Opening should be of sufficient size to permit removal of debris.
  - 3. Pump grout into spaces. Maintain water content in grout to intended slump without aggregate segregation.
  - 4. Limit grout lift to 60 inches and rod for grout consolidation. Wait 30 to 60 minutes before placing next lift.

### **3.010 GROUTING REINFORCED CONCRETE BLOCK WALLS**

- A. Provide reinforcing bars at indicated spacing and grout bars and voids solid with grout having a 28-day compressive strength as listed in the General Notes of the drawings.

### **3.011 GROUTING BLOCK CELLS BELOW LINTELS AND BEAMS**

- A. For lintel spans greater than 5'-0": Grout block cells 24 inches beneath the lintel and 24 inches each side of lintel.

### **3.012 LINTELS AND BOND BEAMS**

- A. Steel Lintels: Install steel lintels supplied from Division 5 of this specification. Provide a minimum of 8 inches of end bearing on each side of opening unless noted otherwise. All exterior exposed steel lintels shall be hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123.
- B. Bond Beams:
  - 1. Use specially shaped lintel units at hollow masonry unit walls, with reinforcing bars as shown and filled with concrete grout.
  - 2. Provide minimum 16 inches of end bearing at each side of opening.
  - 3. Provide reinforced concrete block lintels over openings less than 3'-0" wide which are not scheduled.
  - 4. Place and consolidate concrete without disturbing the reinforcing.
  - 5. Allow lintels to reach 100 percent of their design strength before removing temporary supports.
  - 6. Do not place vertical control joints above bond beams or within 16 inches each side of bond beam.

### **3.013 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. Do not continue horizontal joint reinforcement through control and expansion joints except above wall openings.
- B. Provide vertical expansion, control, and isolation joints as indicated on the drawings. If joints are not indicated, then provide control joints at a maximum spacing of 30'-0".
- C. Install all built-in masonry accessory items as work progresses.
- D. Exposed joints to be tooled slightly concave and concealed joints to be struck flush. Use a 3/4-inch diameter round tool for making 1/2-inch joints.
  - 1. Bed Joints: Not less than 3/8-inch and not more than 2-inch thick.
  - 2. Head Joints: To match bed joints.
- E. Rake out mortar where sealants are shown or required.

### **3.014 BUILT-IN WORK AND EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. As work progresses, build in metal door and glazed frames, fabricated metal lintels, anchor bolts, plates, and other items furnished by other Sections.
- B. Place pipes and conduits passing horizontally through masonry beams or masonry walls in steel sleeves or cored holes.
- C. Install pipes and conduits passing horizontally through non-bearing masonry partitions.
- D. Install and secure connectors, flashing, weep holes, weep vents, nailing blocks, and other accessories.

- E. Do not embed aluminum conduits, pipes, and accessories in masonry, grout, or mortar, unless effectively coated or covered to prevent aluminum-cement chemical reaction or electrolytic action between aluminum and steel.
- F. Build in items plumb and level.
- G. Bed anchors of metal door and glazed frames in adjacent mortar joints. Fill frame voids solid with grout.
- H. Do not build in organic materials subject to deterioration.

### **3.015 PREFABRICATED CONCRETE AND MASONRY ITEMS**

- A. Erect prefabricated concrete and masonry items in accordance with the requirements.

### **3.016 TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with tolerances in the MSJC Specification and the following:
  - 1. Maximum variation from alignment of columns and pilasters: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Maximum variation from unit to adjacent unit: 1/32 inch.
  - 3. Maximum variation from plane of wall: 1/4 inch in 10 feet and 3/8 inch in 20 feet or more.
  - 4. Maximum variation from plumb: 1/4 inch per story non-cumulative.
  - 5. Maximum variation from level coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 feet and 1/4 inch in 10 feet; 1/2 inch in 30 feet.
  - 6. Maximum variation of bed joint thickness: 1/8 inch.

### **3.017 CUTTING AND FITTING**

- A. Cut and fit for chases, pipes, conduit, sleeves, and structural members. Coordinate with other Sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.
- B. Obtain the Engineer's approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.

### **3.018 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears.
- B. Replace defective mortar.
- C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.
- D. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.
- E. Clean exposed masonry surfaces of all stains, efflorescence, mortar or grout droppings, and debris.
- F. Where new masonry wall surfaces remain stained or defaced by mortar or any other foreign matter to a degree not acceptable to the Owner, clean surfaces by a light sandblasting at no added cost. Avoid damaging masonry surfaces and joints during sandblasting operations.

### **3.019 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK**

- A. Without damaging completed work, provide protective boards at exposed external corners that may be damaged by construction activities.
- B. Water Repellent Coating:
  - 1. Apply sufficient coats of the approved material to achieve a consistent and uniform appearance, free from runs and sags, and with a uniformly resistive surface that will prevent penetration of water through the walls for the required period of warranty.
  - 2. Twenty days after completion of the portion of the Work, and as a condition of its acceptance, demonstrate by running a water test showing it will successfully repel water.
    - a. Notify the Engineer at least 72 hours in advance and conduct the test in the Engineer's presence.
    - b. By means of an outrigger or similar acceptable equipment, place the nozzle of a 3/4" garden hose at a point approximately 10 feet away from the top of the wall, aiming the nozzle at a slight downward angle to direct the full stream of water onto the wall.
    - c. Run the water onto the wall at full available force for not less than 4 hours.
    - d. Upon completion of the 4-hour period, inspect the interior surfaces of the wall for evidence of moisture penetration.
  - 3. If evidence of moisture penetration is discovered, apply an additional coat of the water repellent material to the exterior surface in areas directed by the Engineer, repeating the application and the testing, at no additional cost to the Owner, until no evidence of moisture penetration is found.

**END OF SECTION 042200**



## **SECTION 050523**

### **WELDING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Welding of structural steel, including both field and shop welding.
- B. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding welding should be considered a part of this specification.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 051223 - Structural Steel.
- C. Section 053100 - Steel Deck.
- D. Section 055000 - Metal Fabrications.
- E. Section 055100 - Metal Stairs.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provisions of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. AISC - Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings and Supplement No. 2.
  - 2. AISC 303 - Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges.
  - 3. AISC 341-10 - Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings, including any Supplements.
  - 4. AISC 358-10 - Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment Frames for Seismic Applications.
  - 5. AISC 360-10 - Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.
  - 6. ANSI/ASNT CP-189 - Standard for Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel.
  - 7. ANSI/ASNT SNT-TC-1A - Personnel Qualification and Certification in Nondestructive Testing
  - 8. ASTM A435 - Standard Specification for Straight-Beam Ultrasonic Examination of Steel Plates.

9. ASTM A898 - Standard Specification for Straight Beam Ultrasonic Examination of Rolled Steel Structural Shapes.
10. ASTM E114 - Standard Practice for Ultrasonic Pulse-Echo Straight-Beam Contact Testing.
11. ASTM E164 - Standard Practice for Contact Ultrasonic Testing of Weldments.
12. ASTM E329 - Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection.
13. ASTM E543 - Standard Specification for Agencies Performing Nondestructive Testing.
14. ASTM E587 - Standard Practice for Ultrasonic Angle-Beam Contact Testing.
15. ASTM E1212 - Standard Practice for Establishing Quality Management Systems for Nondestructive Testing Agencies.
16. AWS A5.01 - Welding Consumables - Procurement of Filler Metals and Fluxes.
17. AWS C4.1 - Criteria for Describing Oxygen-Cut Surfaces, and Oxygen Cutting Surface Roughness Gauge.
18. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel.
  - a. Amendment to Chapter 4, Section 4.2.2: Aging: Replace this section with the following. "No thermal treatment of weldment or test specimens is permitted, except that machined tensile test specimens may be aged at 200F to 220F for up to 48 hours, then cooled to room temperature before testing."
19. AWS D1.8 - Structural Welding Code - Seismic Supplement.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

##### **A. Welder Qualifications:**

1. All welders, welding operators, and tack welders must have been qualified by test with the largest diameter electrodes to be used on the work and must hold a currently valid certificate, issued by an independent testing agency, to perform the type of welds required by the work, including the process, position, and thickness of materials used.
2. In addition to meeting the requirements above, welders who will make welds with restricted access, such as, but not limited to, the beam bottom flange to column welds through a cope hole or access hole in the beam web, or where access to the bottom of a groove is restricted by the presence of a column flange, must have currently valid qualification certification performed per Annex C of AWS D1.8.
3. All welders on the project shall be capable of understanding and following the requirements of the written WPS.
4. Each welder employed on the project shall understand all the requirements of this welding specification before welding on the project.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 WELDING PROCESS**

- A. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS) corresponding to SMAW, SAW, GMAW (except GMAW-S), and FCAW processes, which conform to all the provisions of AWS D1.1, Chapter 3 shall be deemed as prequalified and can be used without performing WPS qualification tests for the process. Any deviation from the prequalified WPS requirements shall necessitate qualification by test.
- B. FCAW and GMAW done with prequalified WPSs shall be performed using constant voltage (CV) power supplies.
- C. Where ESW-NGI process is used, the joints must be positioned in vertical or near-vertical position.

### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Filler metals shall conform to the requirements of ANSI/AWS Specifications for electrodes and shall provide Charpy V-Notch (CVN) impact energy of 20 ft-lbs at -20F and 40 ft-lbs at 70F.
- B. Testing of each lot to be used in production shall be performed on each filler metal manufacturer's production lot (i.e., Production Lot Testing), as defined in AWS A5.01, as follows:
  - 1. Class C3 or C4 for SMAW electrodes
  - 2. Class S4 for solid GMAW and SAW electrodes
  - 3. Class T4 for FCAW and composite GMAW electrodes
  - 4. Class F2 for SAW fluxes
- C. Production Lot Testing of the filler metals is required for welding of the seismic force resisting system (SFRS) only.
- D. In order to remain exempt from the Production Lot Testing, the manufacturer shall perform WPS Heat Input Envelope Testing of Filler Metals as described in Annex A of AWS D1.8, on at least one lot of material, at a frequency not exceeding three (3) years, for each trade name and diameter of electrodes to be used in production. The WPS Heat Input Envelope Testing of filler metals may be performed by the filler metal manufacturer or by the Contractor. The Contractor, however, shall be responsible to ensure this testing has been performed for the filler metals to be used.
- E. Filler metals shall be provided in packaging that limits the ability of the electrode to absorb moisture. Electrodes from packaging that has been punctured or torn shall be dried in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or shall not be used. Modification or lubrication of the electrodes after manufacture is prohibited, except that drying is permitted in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. For FCAW electrodes, the permissible exposure time after removal from protective packaging shall not exceed the time recommended by the manufacturer. Overexposed FCAW electrodes shall be either dried in accordance with the electrode manufacturer's recommendations or shall not be used.

---

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 WELDING PROCEDURE SPECIFICATIONS (WPS)**

- A. All welding shall be performed in strict adherence to a written WPS, whether the WPS is prequalified or whether it has been qualified by test. All applicable parameters in AWS D1.1, Table 3.7 shall be complied with for prequalified WPSs.
- B. All WPSs shall be first submitted to the Structural Engineer for review.
- C. All WPSs shall be prepared by qualified individuals, and the same individual responsible for the suitability of the WPS shall be recorded on the WPS.
- D. The written WPS shall be available to the welder, welding supervisor, and inspector.
- E. All welding equipment shall be properly maintained and regularly checked to ensure compliance with manufacturer's stated accuracy.
- F. WPSs that are not prequalified shall be subject to qualification testing in accordance with AWS D1.1, Chapter 4. For WPSs that have been qualified by test, the supporting Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) shall be submitted along with the WPS.
- G. The written WPS shall contain all the necessary information required by AWS D1.1, this specification, and any other information necessary to produce welds that are in compliance with these requirements.
  - 1. The WPS shall list the applicable base metal types and thicknesses.
  - 2. The WPS shall contain a sketch of the joint and shall list the welding joint detail, including type, weld type, joint geometry, and applicable dimensions. Individual weld passes shall be identified in the sketch and numbered to identify the maximum layer thicknesses and bead widths.
  - 3. The WPS shall list the applicable welding process.
  - 4. The WPS shall list the filler metal specification, AWS classification, electrode manufacturer's designation, and details regarding the shielding material used, if any.
  - 5. The WPS shall indicate the minimum preheat and inter-pass temperature requirements. The inter-pass temperature shall, at least, be equal to the preheat temperature. Maximum inter-pass temperature shall not exceed 550F. Additional preheat requirements are included in Section 3.2.F of this specification.
  - 6. The WPS shall list all applicable electrical characteristics for the process employed. The WPS shall clearly indicate the acceptable values required for each welding pass. These electrical characteristics shall include, at a minimum, the following:
    - a. Type of current and acceptable ranges of current measured in amperage. For wire feed process, both wire feed speed and amperage shall be listed.
    - b. Voltage
    - c. Travel speed (range)
    - d. Electrode extension for wire feed processes
    - e. Amperage, voltage, and electrode extension (as applicable) shall be within the filler metal manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.02 FABRICATION AND ERECTION

#### A. Assembly:

1. Assembly tolerances shall not exceed those for the prequalified joint detail employed, or the limits of AWS D1.1, Figure 5.3, as applicable. The minimum root-opening dimension shall be maintained for the length of the joint. For joints where the minimum root opening dimensions are less than the minimum requirement, compensation may be made by increasing the root opening by gouging, chipping, or grinding. At Contractor's option, alternate approved written WPS suitable for the smaller root opening may be employed. Root openings that exceed the maximum allowable root opening in the WPS may be corrected by welding to acceptable dimensions and performing ultrasonic testing of the built-up weld after minimum 24 hours prior to joining the parts by welding. The Structural Engineer shall be notified whenever the root opening exceeds the allowable tolerance range.
2. All CJP welds shall be ultrasonically tested a minimum of 24 hours after the welding is complete.
3. Bolts shall be fully torqued only after welds have been completed on both flanges.

#### B. Tack Welds:

1. All tack welds shall be of the same quality as the final welds. This includes the requirements for preheat. The requirements of AWS D1.1, Section 5.18 shall be adhered to.

#### C. Weld Access Holes:

1. Weld access holes shall be sized in accordance with the detail provided on the drawings.

#### D. Weld Termination:

1. Weld tabs shall be employed as shown on the drawings. Minimum length shall be 1 inch or thickness of the part, whichever is greater, but need not exceed 2 inches. Where there is inadequate access for weld tabs, such as with closely spaced pieces or pieces intersecting at acute angles, weld ends may be cascaded for approximately one weld size.
2. End dams may be metallic or non-metallic. End dams shall not be placed at either end of the weld joint, except end dams may be placed at outboard ends of the weld tabs.
3. Weld tabs shall be removed, and end of the weld finished. Removal of weld tabs could be by any of the following processes: air carbon arc cutting (CAC-A), grinding, chipping, or thermal cutting. The process shall be controlled to minimize errant gouging. The edges where weld tabs have been removed shall have a surface roughness of not more than 500 micro-inches. AWS C4.1, Sample 4, may be used as a guide for evaluating surface roughness of these surfaces. Grinding to a flush condition is not required. The contour of the weld shall provide a smooth transition, free of notches and sharp corners.

#### E. Steel Backing:

1. If backing bars are used on complete joint penetration (CJP) groove welds, the backing bar shall be removed at beam bottom flange to column connection. Removal shall be by air carbon arc cutting (CAC-A), plasma air gouging (PAC-G), grinding, chipping, or thermal cutting. The process shall be controlled to minimize errant gouging.
2. Following removal of backing, the weld root shall be backgouged to sound metal and filled with weld metal, as necessary, to achieve at least a flush condition. The weld shall be deposited in accordance with an applicable and approved WPS. Gouges that remain after any back-welding or fillet welding is performed shall be repaired.
3. Where reinforcing fillet welds are required at locations where steel backing has been removed, the minimum size shall be 5/16 inch. The leg of the fillet weld adjacent to the beam flange shall be such that the fillet toe is located on the base metal, except that if the weld root and base metal is ground smooth after removal of backing, the fillet need not extend to the base metal.
4. The backup bars can be left in place at most of the other joints, for instance, beam top flange to column connection, at column continuity plates, etc. provided a reinforcing fillet weld, minimum 5/16 inch, is made under the backup bar to the column flange. The backing bars shall be removed only at locations specifically indicated on the drawings.

F. Preheat and Inter-Pass Temperatures:

1. The preheat temperature at the parts being welded (referred to as "weld location" hereon) shall be in accordance with the applicable WPS and shall be attained by heating full length of the joint gradually and uniformly. Local hot spots shall be avoided. The preheat temperature shall be measured at a distance from the axis of the weld equal to thickness of the thickest part being welded, but in no case less than 3 inches in all directions, including the through thickness dimension of the part being welded, for full length of the weld joint. The inter-pass temperature shall not be less than the preheat temperature. Preheat shall be maintained until all welding at the weld location is complete unless otherwise approved by the Structural Engineer.
2. Special Inspection Agency shall measure and record, on a random daily basis, that proper preheat was applied and inter-pass temperatures were maintained and provide daily written reports documenting the areas observed and measured and recorded temperatures.
3. Unless noted otherwise, preheat temperature shall be determined in accordance with AWS D1.1, Table 3.2.
4. Preheating shall be by electric strip heaters, induction heating, radiant heating method, or fuel gases. If fuel gases are used for preheating, the fabricator shall submit a preheating procedure to the Structural Engineer for review. The acceptance of use of fuel gases for preheating shall be subjected to procedures approval by the Structural Engineer.
5. The preheat temperature shall be measured either by using strip charts for each location, with capability of monitoring preheat and temperature of multiple welds, or by using handheld laser guns.
6. For WPSs that have been qualified by testing, preheat temperature shall be based on the associated PQR within the limitations of AWS D1.1, Table 4.5.

G. Intermix of Filler Metals:

1. When FCAW-S filler metals are used in combination with filler metals for any other process, including FCAW-G, supplemental notch toughness testing shall be conducted. Such testing can be conducted using either of the following two methods: (a) in accordance with Annex B of AWS D1.8 or (b) by running PQRs that contain intermixed weld metal, corresponding to the welding process that would be used in combination with FCAW-S for production welding, wherein CVN test specimens have been taken from the intermixed zone. Regardless of the testing method used, compliance with the acceptance criteria of Annex B of AWS D1.8 shall be demonstrated.

H. Peening:

1. Peening shall not be allowed except if approved by the Structural Engineer.

I. Cleaning:

1. Surfaces to be welded and surfaces adjacent to a weld shall be free from loose or thick scale, slag, rust, moisture, grease, and other foreign materials that would prevent proper welding or create objectionable fumes. Mill scale that can withstand vigorous wire brushing, a thin rust-inhibitive coating, or anti-spatter compound may remain with the following exception: for girders of the seismic-load-resisting-system, all mill scale shall be removed from the surfaces on which flange-to-web welds are to be made.

J. Technique for Making Welds Involving Weld Access Holes:

1. After the joint has been assembled (bolts not fully torqued), the weld shall be completed as follows:
  - a. The root pass shall initiate near the center of the joint, in the area of the weld access hole. The welder shall extend the electrode through the weld access hole approximately 1" beyond the opposite side of the web. After the arc is initiated, travel shall progress toward the end of the joint, and the weld shall be terminated on the weld tab.
  - b. The half-length root pass shall be thoroughly cleaned.
  - c. The start of the weld in the weld access hole area shall be visually inspected to ensure fusion, soundness, freedom from slag inclusions, and excessive porosity. The resulting lead profile shall be suitable for obtaining good fusion by the subsequent pass to be initiated on the opposite side of the beam web. If the profile is not conducive to good fusion, the start of the first root pass shall be ground, gouged, chipped, or otherwise prepared to ensure adequate fusion.
  - d. The second half of the weld joint shall have the root pass applied before any other weld passes are performed. The arc shall be initiated in the area of the start of the first root pass, and travel shall progress to the end of the joint, terminating on the weld tab.
  - e. Each weld layer shall be completed on both sides of the joint before a new layer is deposited.
  - f. Deviation from the preceding procedure may be made, provided the Contractor submits, in writing, an alternate sequence that is approved by the Structural Engineer prior to fabrication.

---

### 3.03 QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Inspections for Quality Control (QC) and Quality Assurance (QA) shall comply with AWS D1.1, Chapter 6, and AWS D1.8, Chapter 7. Where there is a conflict with the preceding, the contract specifications and drawings shall prevail.
- B. Inspection points and frequencies of QC and QA tasks and associated documentation for the SLRS shall be in accordance with Appendix Q, Section Q5 of ANSI/AISC 341s1.
- C. Inspection:
  - 1. The Owner shall engage an independent testing and inspection agency (except for the fabrication/erection inspection and testing per AWS D1.1, Section 6.1.2.1) at no cost to the Contractor to perform the work listed in Sections 3.3,C.2 and 3.3,C.3 below.
  - 2. Qualifications: All Inspectors shall meet the requirements of AWS D1.1, Section 6.1.4 and hold current CWI certification.
  - 3. Special Inspection Agency Responsibility: The inspection agency shall perform all inspections required by AWS D1.1 including the requirements herein. The inspector shall be present before, during, and after welding on all complete joint penetration (CJP) welds and as necessary during all other welding operations. The inspector shall also be present during removal of steel backing and runoff tabs.
- D. Testing:
  - 1. All complete penetration groove welds shall be ultrasonically tested in accordance with AWS D1.1, Chapter 6, Part "F", Ultrasonic Testing (UT) of Groove Welds". The acceptance criteria for welds subjected to UT shall conform to the requirements of AWS D1.1, Table 6.2. All defective welds shall be repaired and retested with ultrasonic equipment at the Contractor's expense.
  - 2. Flanges: An area extending 6" above and below the point of attachment for CJP welds and flange edge shall be inspected visually, and entire area ultrasonically tested for lamination, plate discontinuities, and non-metallic inclusions.
  - 3. Ultrasonic inspections of all CJP welds shall be conducted from both the top and bottom sides of the flange, and from the back side of the column flange as necessary to determine potential rejectable welding defects.
  - 4. Base metal thicker than 1-1/2", when subjected to through thickness weld shrinkage strains, shall be ultrasonically inspected for discontinuities directly behind such weld before and after the joint completion. Repairs if needed, to parent material shall comply with ASTM A6, Section 9.
  - 5. All nondestructive testing (NDT) shall be performed after all welds are complete including, but not limited to, removal of runoff tabs and steel backing and grinding of the same; removal of reinforcement per AWS D1.1, Sections 5.24.4, 5.24.4.1, and 5.24.4.2; any post-weld heat treatment. This is not intended to exclude in-house intermittent NDT programs.
  - 6. Any NDT, except VT, shall not be started before a minimum of 24 hours after subject weldments have cooled down to the ambient temperature.
  - 7. NDT personnel, other than VT, shall also submit their experience and qualification on like-type weldments when required by the Structural Engineer.



---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**END OF SECTION 050523**



**SECTION 051223**  
**STRUCTURAL STEEL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fabrication and erection of structural steel work, as shown on the drawings and specified herein. Work shall include, but not be limited to the following items:
  - 1. Structural steel.
  - 2. Base and bearing plates.
  - 3. Deck support angles and framing for roof openings.
  - 4. Steel lintel members for masonry openings.
  - 5. Edge angles and bent plates.
  - 6. Connection plates.
  - 7. Shear stud connectors.
  - 8. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel (AESS).
  - 9. All other steel items as listed in AISC - "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" as shown on structural and architectural drawings.
- B. Work shall also include grouting of all structural steel members where indicated.
- C. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding structural steel framing should be considered a part of this specification.

**1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- C. Section 050523 - Welding.
- D. Section 052100 - Steel Joists.
- E. Section 053100 - Steel Deck.
- F. Section 054000 - Cold-Formed Steel Framing Systems.
- G. Section 055000 - Metal Fabrications.
- H. Section 055100 - Metal Stairs.

---

### 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provisions of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
1. AISC - Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts.
  2. AISC - Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts.
  3. AISC 303 - Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges.
  4. AISC 341-10 - Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings, including any Supplements.
  5. AISC 358-10 - Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment Frames for Seismic Applications.
  6. AISC 360-10 - Specification for Structural Steel Buildings.
  7. ASTM A6 - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling.
  8. ASTM A36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.
  9. ASTM A53 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
  10. ASTM A108 - Standard Specification for Steel Bar, Carbon and Alloy, Cold-Finished.
  11. ASTM A123 - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
  12. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  13. ASTM A193 - Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for High Temperature or High Pressure Service and Other Special Purpose Applications.
  14. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength.
  15. ASTM A449 - Standard Specification for Hex Cap Screws, Bolts and Studs, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105/90 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, General Use.
  16. ASTM A500 - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
  17. ASTM A563 - Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts.
  18. ASTM A572 - Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel.
  19. ASTM A913 - Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel Shapes of Structural Quality, Produced by Quenching and Self-Tempering Process (QST).
  20. ASTM A992 - Standard Specification for Steel for Structural Steel Shapes.

21. ASTM A1085 - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded Carbon Steel Hollow Structural Sections (HSS).
22. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel.
23. ASTM E94 - Standard Guide to Radiographic Examination Using Industrial Radiographic Film.
24. ASTM E165 - Standard Practice for Liquid Penetrant Examination for General Industry.
25. ASTM E709 - Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Testing.
26. ASTM F436 - Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers.
27. ASTM F959 - Standard Specification for Compressible-Washer-Type Direct Tension Indicators for Use with Structural Fasteners.
28. ASTM F1554 - Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength.
29. ASTM F3125 - Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 120 ksi and 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, Inch Dimensions.
30. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel.
31. AWS D1.8 - Structural Welding Code - Seismic Supplement.
32. SSPC - Steel Structures Painting Council.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Fabrication, Erection, and Welding Qualifications:

1. Fabricate structural steel members in accordance with AISC Specification for the design, fabrication, and erection of structural steel for buildings.
2. Steel erector shall not have less than five (5) years of continuous experience in the erection of structural steel framing.
3. All welding of structural steel shall be performed by operators who have been recently qualified as prescribed in "Qualification Procedures" of the American Welding Society (AWS). Refer to Section 050523.
4. Information provided on paper-based contract documents will govern over information provided via electronic model transfer.
5. Tolerances: Tolerances shall be as indicated by the AISC Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges, except that tolerances for fabricating, rolling, cambering and erection shall not be cumulative.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

A. Shop Drawings:

1. Prepare and submit complete erection and detailed shop drawings for Engineer's approval, including framing plans indicating size, weight, and location of all structural members. Shop drawings shall indicate methods of connecting, anchoring, fastening, bracing, and attaching work of other trades.
    - a. Where contract documents indicate verify in field (VIF) dimensions, shop drawings shall indicate these dimensions and Contractor shall note the dimensions have been verified.
    - b. This specification modifies AISC Code of Standard Practice by deleting the following sentence from 4.4.1(c): "Release by the Owner's Designated Representatives for Design and Construction for the Fabricator to begin fabrication using the approved submittals." Review of the shop drawings by the Engineer shall not relieve the fabricator of this responsibility.
  2. Furnish both the Engineer and Architect with one copy of the following:
    - a. Final shop drawings containing all review notations.
    - b. Field Use/For Construction drawings.
  3. The steel fabricator shall submit a setting plan for all embedded items for Engineer's approval.
  4. Shop drawings shall identify and mark AESS members and items. Specific project requirements for AESS (required blast cleaning, SSPC designation, special handling, etc.) relating to shop fabrication and field erection practices shall be indicated on the shop drawings.
  5. Prepare and submit for approval structural calculations for all structural steel connections. Calculations shall be sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State the project is located.
  6. Welder's Certification: Submit certification for all welders employed on the project demonstrating they have been AWS qualified to perform the welding procedures required for this project.
  7. General Contractor/Construction Manager to provide copies of field concrete cylinder breaks indicating the concrete meets 75% of the design compressive strength to the steel erector.
- B. The General Contractor/Construction Manager shall conduct a field survey of as-built anchors and bearing plate locations and elevations prior to steel erection. Survey shall be furnished to the steel fabricator. Contractor shall identify deviations from approved shop drawings and submit proposed repairs and modifications to the Engineer and steel fabricator for approval.
- C. Product Data:
1. Certified copies of material test reports, commonly called mill test reports, for all structural steel used on the project. Material test reports shall comply with the requirements of ASTM A6, shall cover chemical and physical properties, and shall be accompanied by a Certificate of Compliance from the fabricator.

2. Manufacturer specifications, certifications, and installation recommendations for the following products, including laboratory test reports and other data required to prove compliance with these specifications:
    - a. High strength bolts, including nuts and washers.
    - b. Unfinished bolts and nuts
  3. The Contractor shall submit written procedures for the pre-installation testing, installation, snugging, pretensioning, and post-installation inspection of fasteners. The procedure(s) shall meet all requirements of the RCSC specification and the drawings. Procedures need to be submitted only for the method(s) of installation to be used by the Contractor, which may include the turn-of-nut, calibrated wrench, twist-off type tension control bolt, and direct tension indicator methods.
  4. Shear Stud Connectors: Contractor shall submit the following:
    - a. Certifications that the studs, as supplied, meet the requirements of AWS D1.1, Sections 7.2 and 7.3.
    - b. Certified copies of the stud manufacturer's test reports covering the last completed set of in-plant quality control mechanical tests for the diameter supplied.
    - c. Certified material test reports from the steel supplier indicating diameter, chemical properties, and grade on each heat number supplied.
    - d. Certificate of Compliance from the Contractor.
  5. Prepare and submit product data for Engineer's approval for shop applied primers, finished paint system, expansion and/or adhesive anchors, non-shrink grout and other miscellaneous materials.
- D. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): Submit manufacturers' EPDs per the following:
1. EPDs to be submitted for each of the following structural steel types:
    - a. Hot-rolled structural systems (W,S,M,C,MC,L).
    - b. Hollow structural sections (HSS).
    - c. Structural plate.
  2. All EPDs are to be third party verified in accordance with the current version of ISO 14025 (validated by a date that has not expired) and indicate the following Impact Categories:
    - a. Global Warming Potential (GWP): All GWP information submitted shall be in the form of kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq/kg.
    - b. Ozone Depletion Potential (ODP): All ODP information shall be submitted in the form of kgCFC-11/kg.
    - c. Acidification Potential (AP): All AP information shall be submitted in the form of kgSO<sub>2</sub>/kg.

- d. Eutrophication Potential (EP): All EP information submitted shall be in the form of kgN/kg.
  - e. Smog Formation Potential (SFP): All SFP information shall be submitted in the form of kgO3/kg.
  - f. Energy Consumption: All energy consumption information shall be submitted in the form of MJ.
3. All EPDs are to conform to the following Product Category Rules (PCR):
- a. UL Environment "Part A: Life Cycle Assessment Calculation Rules and Report Requirements (v3.2)" and "Part B: Designated Steel Construction Product EPD Requirements (v2.0)".
4. EPDs must indicate the "cradle-to-gate" life cycle scope (product stages A1-A3, at a minimum) of the product and clearly specify if fabrication impacts are included.
- E. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide documentation in accordance with the current version of ISO 14021 from the manufacturer of each steel product listed below. For each product, both the post-consumer and preconsumer recycled content percentage by weight must be indicated:
- 1. W and WT Shapes
  - 2. Channels, Angles, M and S Shapes
  - 3. Plates
  - 4. Hollow Structural Sections (HSS)

## **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Steel members shall be transported, stored, and erected in a manner that will avoid any damage or deformation. Materials should be stored to allow easy access for inspection and identification. Bent or deformed members will be rejected and shall be replaced or repaired at the expense of the responsible party. Store clear of the ground and in such a manner as to eliminate excessive handling.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected location. Clean and re-lubricate bolts and nuts before use.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Structural Steel:
  - 1. All structural steel shall be free from defects impairing strength, durability, or appearance. All structural steel shall meet the latest minimum requirements as follows:
    - a. Structural steel wide flange shapes shall:



- 1) Conform to the ASTM designations listed in the General Notes of the drawings, unless noted otherwise.
  - 2) The following rolled sections and built-up sections shall be considered as "Heavy Sections", subject to special notch toughness, fabrication, welding, and inspection requirements:
    - a) ASTM A6 hot-rolled shape with a flange thickness exceeding 2 inches.
    - b) Built-up cross-sections consisting of plates with a thickness exceeding 2 inches.
  - 3) "Heavy Sections" (hot-rolled shapes) shall be supplied with Charpy V-Notch (CVN) testing in accordance with ASTM A6, Supplementary Requirement S30, Charpy V-Notch Impact Test for Structural Shapes - Alternate Core Location. "Heavy Sections" (plates for built-up sections) shall be supplied with Charpy V-North (CVN) testing in accordance with ASTM A6, Supplementary Requirement S5, Charpy V-Notch Impact Test. The test shall meet a minimum average value of 20 ft-lbs absorbed energy at 70F. Testing shall be in accordance with the current AISC Specification. Steel shall be manufactured using fully killed fine grain practice yielding grain size numbers 5 or greater as determined by ASTM E112.
  - 4) All "Heavy Section" column flanges located at welded moment connections shall be ultrasonically examined, prior to welding, for evidence of laminations, inclusions, or other discontinuities in accordance with ASTM A435 or ASTM A898 as applicable and along beams, 6 inches past the end of the joint assembly. The area to be tested is a zone 6 inches above and below each beam flange connection. For plates, any discontinuity causing a total loss of back reflection that cannot be contained within a circle the diameter of which is 3 inches, or one-half the plate thickness, whichever is greater, shall be rejected.
  - 5) If beams in the Seismic-Force-Resisting-System (SFERS) are moment-connected to the weak axis of the column, the column web shall be similarly examined to the above criteria.
  - 6) Shapes of ASTM A572, Grade 50, mill certified to AISC Technical Bulletin #3 requirements, may be substituted for A992 with approval from the Structural Engineer.
  - 7) Grade 50 steel shall have a minimum yield stress of 50 ksi and the yield stress,  $F_y$ , that is reported from tests shall be based on the yield strength definition in ASTM A370, using the offset method at 0.002 strain.
- b. Structural steel angles, channels, bars, plates and miscellaneous steel shall conform to the ASTM designations listed in the General Notes of the drawings.
  - c. Square and rectangular structural tubing shall be cold formed conforming to the ASTM designations listed in the General Notes of the drawings.
  - d. Round structural tubing shall be cold formed conforming to the ASTM designations listed in the General Notes of the drawings.
  - e. Steel pipe shall conform to the ASTM designations listed in the General Notes of the drawings.

B. High Strength Structural Bolts:

1. High strength structural bolts shall conform to the ASTM designations listed in the General Notes of the drawings.
2. High strength bolts shall be detailed and installed in accordance with AISC - "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts."
3. High strength bolts shall be detailed and installed in accordance with AISC - "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
4. Manufacturer's symbol and grade markings shall appear on all bolts and nuts.

C. Anchoring Devices:

1. Anchor Rods: Anchor rods used with structural steel members shall be plain threaded rods conforming to the ASTM designations listed in the General Notes of the drawings.
2. Expansion Anchors: Expansion anchors shall consist of one-piece wedge type carbon steel anchors with heavy-duty nuts and washers. All components shall be zinc plated in accordance with ASTM B633. Refer to the drawing details and General Notes for the expansion anchors used as the basis of design and the acceptable alternates.
3. Adhesive Anchoring System: Adhesive anchoring system shall consist of a threaded anchor rod complete with nut and washer and the adhesive cartridge. Refer to the drawing details and General Notes for the adhesive anchoring systems used as the basis of design and the acceptable alternates.
  - a. Nuts shall meet ASTM A563, Grade DH, and washers shall meet ASTM F436.
  - b. All components shall be zinc plated in accordance with ASTM B633 SC1.
  - c. Adhesive shall consist of a two-part acrylic based adhesive applied in a dual cartridge dispensing system that properly mixes the components at the point of application.

D. Welding Materials:

1. Type required for material being welded in conformance with AWS D1.1.

E. Steel Stud Connectors:

1. For threaded studs that are being used to connect steel beams to embed plates, use ASTM A108, Type A, Grades 1010 through 1020 forged steel, headed uncoated with a minimum tensile strength of 61,000 psi. Fabricated within the tolerances set forth in AWS D1.1.
2. For shear connectors that are being used on steel beams in concrete slabs for composite shear transfer and embedded steel members, use ASTM A108, Type B, Grades 1010 through 1020 forged steel, headed uncoated with a minimum tensile strength of 65,000 psi. Fabricated within the tolerances set forth in AWS D1.1
3. Studs applied by means of the electric arc welding process and shall use an arc shield ferrules of heat resistant ceramic.

- F. Galvanizing: Where indicated on the drawings, steel shall be galvanized by the hot-dip process after fabrication conforming to ASTM A123. All exterior steel that will remain exposed shall be galvanized, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Paints and Primers:
1. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, non-asphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.
  2. SSPC Paint 15, Type 1, red oxide.
  3. Galvanizing repair paint: SSPC Paint 20.
  4. Refer to Specification Section 099000 for additional paint requirements.
- H. Non-Shrink Grout for Base and Bearing Plates: Non-shrink grout, conforming to ASTM C1107, shall be pre-mixed, non-metallic, non-corrosive, non-staining product containing selected silica sand, Portland cement, shrinkage compensating agents, plasticizing and water reducing agents. All constituents shall meet the requirements of these specifications. Minimum compressive strength at 28-days shall be 7,000 psi as determined by ASTM C109. Follow manufacturer's instructions for handling, mixing, placing, and curing. Acceptable products are:
1. Euclid Chemical Company - Euco N.S. Grout
  2. L&M Construction Chemical - Crystex.
  3. Master Builders - Masterflow 713.
  4. Sonneborn - SonnogROUT.
  5. Five Star Products Inc. - Five Star Grout.
  6. Dayton Superior - Sure-Grip High Performance Grout.
  7. Dayton Superior - 1107 Advantage Grout.
  8. Insert
- I. Structural Steel Global Warming Potential (GWP): The GWP (A1-A3) of the products shall not exceed the limits in the table below. MT indicates metric tonne of steel.

PRODUCT TYPE	MAX. ACCEPTABLE GWP (MT KQ CO2EQE/MTMT STEEL)	
	UNFABRICATED (MILL) PRODUCT	FABRICATED PRODUCT
HOT-ROLLED STRUCTURAL SECTIONS	NO LIMIT	NO LIMIT
PLATE	**	**
HOLLOW STRUCTURAL SECTION (HSS)	**	**

1. A maximum of 5% of steel products (nonconforming tons relative to total project tonnage) is permissible to exceed the GWP limits in the table above.

---

## 2.02 FABRICATION AND MANUFACTURE

### A. Fabrication Procedures (non-AESS):

1. Fabricate all structural steel items in accordance with AISC Specifications and as indicated on the approved shop drawings.
2. Provide camber in structural members where indicated.
3. Properly mark materials for field assembly and location for which intended. Fabricate for delivery sequence that will expedite erection and minimize handling of materials.
4. Complete structural steel assemblies before shop priming or galvanizing.

### B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel (AESS):

1. Definitions:
  - a. AESS 1: Basic elements which require workmanship exceeding what would be done for non-AESS.
  - b. AESS 2: Feature elements viewed at a distance greater than 20 ft.
  - c. AESS 3: Feature elements viewed at a distance less than 20 ft.
  - d. AESS 4: Showcase elements with special surface and edge treatment beyond fabrication.
  - e. AESS C: Custom elements with characteristics specifically described within the drawings.
2. Fabricate and erect all structural steel items identified on the drawings as AESS in accordance with the AISC Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges.
  - a. Shop fabricate and assemble to the maximum extent possible. Locate field joints at concealed locations, if possible. Detail assemblies to minimize handling and to expedite erection.
  - b. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness.
  - c. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
3. Prepare AESS surfaces according to Table 10.1 in the AISC Steel Design Manual, unless noted otherwise.
  - a. Fabrication and erection tolerances, which are more stringent than required by the AISC Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges.
    - 1) Curved Members: Distortion of webs, stems, outstanding flanges, and legs of angles shall not be visible from a distance of 20 feet under any lighting conditions.

- 2) Tolerance for walls of curved hollow steel sections after rolling shall be approximately 1/2-inch.
  - b. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1, AWD D1.8 and Section 050523.
    - 1) Remove backing bars or run-off tabs; back-gouge and grind steel smooth.
    - 2) Remove erection bolts, fill holes, and grind smooth.
    - 3) Fill weld access holes and grind smooth.
  - c. Requirements, if any, of a mockup of components for inspection and acceptance of standards prior to the start of fabrication.
  - d. Special handling and touch-up requirements.
- C. Shop Connections:
  1. All shop connections shall be welded, unless noted otherwise on drawings. Connections shall develop the full strength of the adjoining members unless detailed otherwise.
  2. All holes shall be either drilled or punched, as no burning of holes will be permitted, including the enlargement of holes. Provide all holes required for connections and for attaching the work of other trades where such holes are shown if furnished prior to fabrication.
  3. Connections shall be detailed as standard framed beam connections (bearing type) in accordance with the AISC Manual of Steel Construction. Connections which require oversized holes or slotted holes in which the force is other than normal to the axis of the slot shall be detailed as "Slip-Critical Connections" and noted as such on the erection drawings. Provide bearing plates and end anchorage for beams resting on masonry.
  4. All full and partial penetration welds shall be fully detailed on the shop drawings. Use backing for all full penetration welds.
  5. Weld access holes shall be fabricated in accordance with the recommendations of AWS D1.1 and AISC Specification.
- D. Steel Stud Connectors:
  1. Steel stud shear connectors shall be securely welded in the field to structural steel beams as detailed on the drawings. Welds shall be such that the stud connector will deform before weld failure occurs. Welding shall be done in accordance with AWS D1.1.
  2. Steel stud connectors for embedded plates and angles shall be welded in the fabrication shop in accordance with AWS D1.1.
- E. Deck support framing and seats: Furnish all miscellaneous framing necessary to fully support the roof and floor steel decking.
- F. Shop Priming:
  1. Unless noted otherwise below, structural steel shall not be shop primed.
  2. The following are steel surfaces to receive shop priming:

- a. Surfaces outside the building envelope that are not galvanized, including the following:
    - b. Surfaces to be painted per Architect's drawings.
  - 3. If the steel pieces are to be shop primed, the following surfaces are exceptions to shop priming:
    - a. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
    - b. Surfaces to be field welded.
    - c. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
    - d. Top flanges of beams supporting composite steel decking.
    - e. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
    - f. Galvanized surfaces.
  - 4. Surface Preparation: Clean Surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
    - a. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
    - b. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 "White Metal Blast Cleaning"
    - c. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 "Commercial Blast Cleaning"
    - d. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4 "Brush-off Blast Cleaning"
    - e. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2 "Near-White Blast Cleaning"
    - f. SSPC-SP 11 "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal"
    - g. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8 "Industrial Blast Cleaning"
  - 5. Priming: Apply primer in accordance with paint manufacturer's recommendations, and at a rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
- G. Finished Paint System:
- 1. Finished paint coats shall be in accordance with paint manufacturer's recommendations and Division 9.
  - 2. Paint shall be free of sags, runs, drips or other defects. Allow ample drying time before handling to prevent damage to coatings.
  - 3. Strip paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  - 4. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that will be inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of the second coat to distinguish it from the first.

- H. Finished Paint System for Exposed Structural Steel: Structural steel exposed to the elements of weather shall be painted as follows:
1. Apply one coat of steel primer in shop as specified above.
  2. Apply two coats of alkyd enamel paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils for each coat. Paint shall be applied according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
  3. Paint shall be free of sags, runs, drips or other defects. Allow ample drying time before handling to prevent damage to coatings.
- I. Galvanizing:
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A123.
    - a. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.
    - b. Unless otherwise noted on drawings or in Division 9, all exterior steel components exposed to the elements shall be galvanized, including, but not limited to, lintels.

## **2.03 SUSTAINABLE MEASURES**

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content such that the postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of the pre-consumer recycled content is not less than the values indicated below.
1. W and WT Shapes:
  2. Channels, Angles, M and S Shapes:
  3. Plates:
  4. Hollow Structural Sections:

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 SURFACE CONDITIONS**

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this Section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the Work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 ERECTION**

- A. Erection Procedures:
1. The erector and not the Structural Engineer shall be responsible for the means, methods, and safety of erection of the structural steel framing.
  2. Erection of all structural steel items shall meet the requirements of AISC "Specification and Code of Standard Practice."

3. All work shall be erected square, plumb, straight and true, accurately fitted and with tight joints and intersections, by mechanics experienced in the erection of structural steel. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
4. Clean the bearing surface and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact before assembly.
5. All base plates shall be supported on steel wedges, steel shims or heavy-duty leveling nuts until the supported members have been leveled and plumbed.
  - a. Snug tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumb. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base plate before packing with grout.
  - b. Promptly place non-shrink grout between bearing surfaces and base plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturers written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
6. Field connections of structural work shall be made with either high strength bolts (bearing type) or by welding. Proper precaution shall be taken to ensure anchored items will not be distorted or overstressed due to improperly fabricated items.
7. Splice members only where indicated unless, with the Structural Engineer's approval, splices not indicated would result in lower costs due to reduced shipping expense. For splices not indicated, submit structural calculations prepared under direct supervision of and signed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state where the project is located.
8. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by the Engineer/Architect in writing.
9. Steel erection shall not proceed without concrete in footings, piers, and walls attaining 75% of the intended minimum compressive design strength. Documentation must be provided indicating compliance with this requirement.

B. Surveys:

1. Establish permanent benchmarks necessary for accurate erection of structural steel.
2. Check elevations of concrete surfaces, and locations of anchor bolts and similar items, before erection proceeds.

C. Bracing and Protection:

1. Steel shall be well plumbed, leveled and braced to prevent any movement.
  - a. Contractor shall provide and maintain all necessary temporary guying of steel frame to safely resist all wind and construction loads during erection and to assure proper alignment of all parts of the steel frame.
2. Provide all temporary flooring, bracing, shoring and guards necessary to prevent damage or injury. All partially erected steel shall be secured in an approved manner during interruptions of work.



D. Anchor and Foundation Rods:

1. All anchor or foundation rods and similar steel items to be built into concrete or masonry are to be set by the concrete or masonry contractors and shall be furnished promptly so they may be built in as the work progresses because cutting of structural steel members to accommodate errors pertaining to embedded items will not be permitted.

### 3.03 FIELD WELDING

A. Welding Procedures:

1. All field welding shall be in accordance with AISC Specifications and conform to AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel".
  - a. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - b. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice" for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
2. Contractor shall remove ceramic ferrules from shear stud connectors in sufficient time to allow for inspection of welds prior to placement of the concrete.

### 3.04 REPAIRS, PROTECTION, AND TOUCH UP

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings and on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touch up Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field welds, final connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates and abutting structural steel.
  1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
  2. Apply a compatible primer of the same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
  3. Secure approval by the Architect prior to field painting.

### 3.05 GROUTING

- A. Grouting under structural framing members shall be completed after all members have been plumbed and braced and before imposed loads are placed thereon.
- B. Remove all defective concrete, dirt, oil, grease, and other foreign matter from surfaces to which grout will be placed.

### 3.06 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL AND STEEL LINTELS

- A. Furnish and install all miscellaneous steel as detailed in architectural and structural drawings.

- B. The steel fabricator shall furnish all steel lintels required for masonry wall construction indicated in the architectural and structural drawings and schedules.
- C. Provide additional steel framing for continuous support of steel deck edges at openings and column interruptions.
- D. All exterior exposed steel shall be hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123.

**END OF SECTION 051223**

**SECTION 061000**  
**ROUGH CARPENTRY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Dimensional lumber, minor timber framing, engineered wood products, APA rated sheathing, underlayment,.
- B. Appropriate anchoring and/or fastening devices for wood members, as well as acceptable wood treatment.
- C. Preservative and fire-retardant treatment of wood.
- D. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding rough carpentry shall be considered a part of this specification.

**1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- C. Section 042200 - Reinforced Unit Masonry.
- D. Section 051223 - Structural Steel.
- E. Section 055000 - Cold-Formed Steel Framing (CFSF) System.
- F. Section 061753 - Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses.
- G. Section 062000 - Finished Carpentry.
- H. Section 099000 - Paints and Coatings: Field Finishing.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provision of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. APA PRP-108 - Performance Standards and Qualification Policy for Structural-Use Panels.
  - 2. AQMD - Local Air Quality Management District Regulations.
  - 3. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 4. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60,000 psi Tensile Strength.

5. ASTM A563 - Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts.
6. ASTM A653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dip Process.
7. ASTM D245 - Standard Practice for Establishing Structural Grades and Related Allowable Properties for Visually Graded Lumber.
8. ASTM D5516 - Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to Elevated Temperatures.
9. ASTM D5664 - Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-Retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber.
10. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
11. AWC - Manual for Engineered Wood Construction.
12. AWPA M4 - Standard for the Care of Preservative-Treated Wood Products.
13. AWPA P5 - Standard for Waterborne Preservatives.
14. AWPA P17 - Fire-Retardant Formulations.
15. AWPA T1 - Use Category System: Processing and Treatment Standard.
16. AWPA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood.
17. NDS - National Design Specification for Wood Construction with Commentary.
18. NDS Supplement - National Design Specification Values for Wood Construction.
19. NIST PS 1 - Structural Plywood.
20. NIST PS 2 - Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels.
21. NIST PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Engineered Wood Products: Obtain each type of engineered wood product through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Preservative and fire-treated lumber: Shall be identified by the Quality Mark of an approved inspection agency in accordance with the California Building Code, and Title 24.
- C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Obtain each type of fire-retardant-treated wood product through one source from a single producer.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data for each distinct product specified.
  1. Submit product data and current ICC Evaluation Reports for framing anchors.

- B. Material certificates for dimensional lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses indicated on the documents. Indicate species and grade selected for each use, and design values approved by American Lumber Standards Committee.
- C. Wood treatment data as follows, including chemical treatment manufacturer's warranty and instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated materials:
  - 1. For each type of preservative-treated wood product, include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standard.
  - 2. For waterborne-treated products, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels indicated before shipment to the project site.
  - 3. For fire-treated wood products, include certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with specified standards and other requirements as well as data relative to bending compliance from a treating plant stating the size and quantity of lumber treated and the type, moisture content, chemical content, manufacturer, and amount of treatment. Test according to ASTM D5516 and D5664.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. All lumber shall be delivered, piled, and handled to protect it from warping due to excessive moisture or damage. Lumber shall be stored off the ground and under a waterproof cover properly fastened down to resist wind forces.
- B. All installed exposed wood roof nailers, cants, curbs, and similar items shall be protected from moisture until covered with subsequent roofing materials or flashings.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Lumber Standards:
  - 1. Dimensional Lumber: Comply with PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
    - a. Each piece of lumber to be factory marked with grade, producing mill and the agency providing inspection services. Where exposed lumber is indicated to have a natural finish or receive stain, grade stamp to be located on the end or back of each piece.
    - b. Moisture content not to exceed 19% for kiln-dry or air-dry lumber.
- B. Grade and Species:
  - 1. Provide dimensional lumber of any species, graded visually or mechanically, and capable of supporting required loads without exceeding allowable design values according to the "National Design Specification for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."
- C. Lumber grading rules shall be obtained from one of the following agencies:

1. NELMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
  2. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
  3. NSLB - Northern Softwood Lumber Bureau.
  4. RIS - Redwood Inspection Services.
  5. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  6. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  7. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.
- D. When nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.

## **2.02 DIMENSIONAL LUMBER**

- A. : Refer to the drawings for material specifications.
- B. Exterior and Bearing Wall Framing: Refer to the drawings for material specifications.
- C. Non-load Bearing Partitions: Standard, stud, or No. 3 of mixed Southern Pine, Hem-Fir, Hem-Fir (North), or Spruce-Pine-Fir.
- D. Non-load Bearing Ceiling Joists: Standard, stud, or No. 3 of mixed Southern Pine, Hem-Fir, Hem-Fir (North), or Spruce-Pine-Fir.
- E. Exposed framing indicated to be a natural finish or receive stain: Provide material free from imperfections with uniformity of appearance. Refer to the drawings for material specifications.

## **2.03 ENGINEERED LUMBER**

- A. Provide engineered lumber capable of supporting required loads and meeting or exceeding the bending stress and modulus of elasticity as designated on the drawings.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Subject to compliance with design requirements and material properties as indicated on the drawings.

## **2.04 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS**

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A T1 and AWP A U1.
1. Preservative Chemicals:
    - a. Alkaline Copper Quat (ACQ-C and ACQ-D)
    - b. Inorganic Boron (SBX)
    - c. Copper Azole (CBA-A and CA-B)

2. Wood treatment plant shall be experienced in performing work of this section, have specialization in treatment of wood similar to that required for this project, and be licensed by the manufacturer.
- B. Kiln dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 18 percent for plywood. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- D. All treated items shall bear an end tag or permanent ink stamp indicating the following:
  1. Identification of treating manufacturer.
  2. Type of preservative used.
  3. Minimum preservative retention (pcf).
  4. End use for which the product is treated.
  5. Identity of the accredited inspection agency.
  6. Standard to which the product is treated.
- E. Application: Contractor to treat wood in accordance with AWPA Standard U1. Provide treated wood materials as indicated on the drawings and at the locations recommended by the following Use Categories:
  1. UC1 represents elements exposed to termites. Locations and/or elements are:
  2. UC2 represents elements exposed to insects and/or in contact with concrete or high humidity. Locations and/or elements are:
    - a. Interior above ground flooring and blocking
    - b. Interior furring strips applied to slab on grade
    - c. Interior framing (glulam beams,)
    - d. Millwork or trim touching concrete
    - e. Sill plates
  3. UC3A represents elements used on the exterior of a building, coated in paint or stain, used in a vertical application where water will runoff rapidly. Locations and/or elements are:
    - a. Siding, fascia boards and trim
    - b. Exposed balcony or porch posts
    - c. Gazebo materials

4. UC3B represents elements used on the exterior of a building used in a horizontal application where water runoff is not rapid or isn't finished. Locations and/or elements are:
  - a. Decking or balcony boards, including all subframing
  - b. Unpainted siding, fascia boards and trim
  - c. Railings
  - d. Gazebo materials
  - e. Lattice
  - f. Shakes and shingles
5. UC4A represents elements in contact with the ground or fresh water. Location and/or elements are:
  - a. Decking or balcony boards, including all subframing
  - b. Exposed balcony or porch posts
  - c. Plywood sheathing
  - d. Pergola materials
6. UC5A represents elements in saltwater environments. Locations and/or elements are:

## **2.05 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS**

- A. Fire-retardant treatment shall comply with AWPAC Standard U1.
  1. Use treatment for which chemical manufacturer publishes physical properties of treated wood after exposure to elevated temperatures when tested by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5664 for lumber and ASTM D5516 for plywood.
  2. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  3. Wood treatment plant shall be experienced in performing work of this section, have specialization in treatment of wood similar to that required for this project, and is licensed by the manufacturer.
- B. Kiln dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 18 percent for plywood. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- D. All treated items shall bear an end tag or permanent ink stamp indicating the following:
  1. Identification of treating manufacturer.
  2. Name of fire-retardant treatment used.
  3. Species of wood treated.



4. Flamespread and smoke-developed index.
5. Method of drying after treatment.
6. Identity of the accredited inspection agency.
7. Standard to which the product is treated.

E. Application: Provide treated wood materials as indicated on the drawings.

## **2.06 SHEATHING**

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177.
1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Dens-Glass Gold" by G-P Gypsum Corp.
  2. Type and Thickness: [Regular, 1/2 inch][Type X, 5/8 inch]<Insert> thick.
  3. Size: [48 by 96 inches][48 by 108 inches][48 by 120 inches]<Insert> for vertical installation.

## **2.07 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS**

- A. Backing Panels for Telephone and Electrical Equipment: PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated. Provide thickness as indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2 inch thick and not less than 12 inches beyond size of panel.

## **2.08 TIMBER**

- A. For timber of 5-inch nominal size and thicker, provide material complying with the following requirements:
1. Species and Grade: As indicated on the drawings., Select Structural grade.
  2. Additional Restriction: Free of heart centers.

## **2.09 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER**

- A. Grounds,: Standard, stud, or No. 3 of mixed Southern Pine, Douglas-Fir, Hem-Fir, Hem-Fir (North), or Spruce-Pine-Fir.
- B. Wood preservative treatment for wood plates, curbs, cleats, nailing strips, cants, blocking, nailers, and similar items for roof deck construction shall be ACQ or other non-arsenate based preservative. Conform to AQMD, Local Regulations.
1. Oil based preservatives, such as creosote or pentachlorophenol types are not acceptable.
  2. Paint surfaces, which are cut after treatment with a concentrated solution of the treatment.
- C. Fire retardant treatment for interior wood framing members shall be in accordance with the previously cited AWPA standard and comply with CBC Section 2303.2. Treatment shall achieve a flame spread rating of not more than 25 when tested in accordance with UL Test 723, ASTM E84, or NFPA Test 355.

---

## 2.010 MISCELLANEOUS FASTENING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Furnish and install all fasteners and anchoring devices for entire project, which shall include items such as nails, screws, bolts, anchors, and similar items. Common nails shall be used for all fastening in rough carpentry. Exterior exposed nails and screws shall be hot-dip galvanized. Bolts shall have standard threads and be complete with washers and nuts.
  - 1. Lumber attached to metal decking shall be anchored directly with two rows of 1/4 inch diameter bolts or sheet metal lag screws spaced not greater than 24 inches on center for each row.
  - 2. Wood assemblies such as wood curbs, top nailers, and other built-up members shall be anchored with common nails or wood screws having at least 1-1/2 inch anchoring penetration spaced in two staggered rows at 24 inches on center for each row.
  - 3. Miscellaneous nailing shall be at the Contractor's discretion for a secure and tight installation.
  - 4. Pre-drill holes for all nails larger than 20d. Field drill bolt holes for proper matching and bearing.
  - 5. Lead holes for lag screws shall be installed as per NDS. Lag screws shall be screwed and not driven into place.
  - 6. Bolts shall be installed in holes bored with a bit 1/16 inch larger than the diameter of the bolt. Bolts and nuts seating on wood shall have cut steel washers under heads and nuts. Nuts shall be pulled tight and again checked and tightened just prior to enclosing bolted members. Counterbore for bolted heads or nuts only where so indicated on the drawings, and then only to sufficient depth to house the bolt or head or nut and washer. Cut off excessive bolt projection where necessary. Nick threads to prevent loosening.

## 2.011 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
- B. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, used in treated wood, or in areas of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153.
- C. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- D. Power-Driven Fasteners: ESR 1539.
  - 1. Use of machine nailing is subject to a satisfactory jobsite demonstration for each project and approval by the District Representative and the Division of the State Architect. Approval is subject to continued satisfactory performance. Machine nailing will not be approved in 5/16" plywood. If nail heads penetrate outer ply more than would be normal for a hand hammer or if minimum allowable edge distances are not maintained, performance will be deemed unsatisfactory.
- E. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

- F. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954 and comply with , except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- G. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- H. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- I. Metal Framing Anchors
  - 1. General: Provide framing anchors made from metal indicated, of structural capacity, type, and size indicated, and as follows:
    - a. Approved Manufacturers:
      - 1) KC Metal Products, Inc.
      - 2) Simpson Strong-Tie
      - 3) MiTek USP
    - b. Research/Evaluation Reports: Provide products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which model code research/evaluation reports exist that show compliance of metal framing anchors, for application indicated, with building code in effect for Project.
    - c. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, which meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653, G60 coating.

## **2.012 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Sheathing Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape for sealing joints and penetrations in sheathing and recommended by sheathing manufacturer for use with type of sheathing required.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of rough carpentry or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

- C. Apply field treatment complying with AWPAC M4 to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber and plywood.
- D. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. CABO NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Published requirements of metal framing anchor manufacturer.
- E. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; predrill as required.
- F. Use finishing nails for exposed work, unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
- G. All installed wood roof nailers, cants, curbs, and similar items shall be protected from moisture until covered with subsequent materials or flashing.

### **3.02 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. Build anchor bolts into masonry during installation of masonry work. Where possible, secure anchor rods to formwork before concrete placement.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### **3.03 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level and at ceiling, with wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal size furring horizontally at 24 inches o.c.
- C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.
- D. Furring to Receive Plaster Lath: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.

---

### **3.04 WOOD FRAMING INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Manual for Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. The design provisions for solid sawn Douglas Fir lumber in the Code are applicable to laminated veneer lumber.
- C. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless specifically detailed.
- D. Maximum concentrated load on any joist to not exceed 100 pounds. Add joists when concentrated load exceeds this value.
- E. Provide a minimum of three inches of bearing for dimensional lumber. Refer to the supplier requirements for bearing of laminated veneer lumber, unless noted otherwise.
- F. Laminated veneer lumber beams shall be laterally supported at all points of bearing. Side mounted joist hangers, nailing to shoulder studs, and nailing of sheathing to beam will satisfy this requirement.
- G. Nails installed parallel to the glue lines on the narrow face shall not be spaced closer than four inches for 10d common nails and three inches for 8d common nails.
- H. Nails installed perpendicular to the glue lines on the wide face shall be installed in accordance with the Building Code. Assemble laminated veneer lumber beams with a minimum of three 16d nails per foot, fully penetrating each piece, unless noted otherwise.
- I. Where built-up beams or girders of 2-inch nominal dimension lumber on edge are required, fasten together with 2 rows of 20d nails spaced not less than 32 inches o.c, staggered on opposite faces. Locate one row near top edge and another near bottom edge. Provide two (2) 20d nails at each end and at each splice.
  - 1. For continuous members, stagger end joints at quarter points between supports.

### **3.05 TIMBER FRAMING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install timber with crown edge up and provide not less than [4]<Insert> inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members, unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports if not continuous.
- B. Where beams or girders are framed into pockets of exterior concrete or masonry walls, provide [1/2-inch]<Insert> air space at sides and ends of wood members.
- C. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
- D. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

### **3.06 WOOD STRUCTURAL-USE PANEL INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations contained in APA "Engineered Wood Construction Guide" for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:

1. Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: As indicated on the drawings.
2. Subflooring: As indicated on the drawings.
3. Sheathing: As indicated on the drawings.
4. Underlayment:
  - a. Nail to subflooring.
  - b. Space panels 1/32 inch apart at edges and ends.
  - c. Fill and sand edge joints of underlayment receiving resilient flooring just before installing flooring.
5. Plywood Backing Panels: Nail or screw to supports.

### **3.07 GYPSUM SHEATHING**

- A. General: Fasten gypsum sheathing to supports with [galvanized roofing nails][ or ][divergent point galvanized staples]; comply with GA-253 and manufacturer's recommended spacing and referenced fastening schedule. Keep perimeter fasteners [3/8]<Insert> inch from edges and ends of units.
- B. Install [24-by-96-inch]<Insert> sheathing horizontally with long edges at right angles to studs with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent board without forcing. Abut ends of boards over centers of studs and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing, two where possible.
- C. Install [48-by-96-inch]<Insert> and longer sheathing vertically with long edges parallel to, and centered over, studs. Install solid wood blocking where end joints do not occur over framing. Fit units tightly against each other.

### **3.08 SHEATHING TAPE APPLICATION**

- A. Apply sheathing tape to joints between sheathing panels and at items penetrating sheathing. Apply at upstanding flashing to overlap both flashing and sheathing.

**END OF SECTION 061000**

## **SECTION 061200**

### **STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANELS FOR ROOFS AND WALLS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Structural Insulated Panels (SIPs)
- B. Structural Insulated Panels (SIPs) consist of performance-rated oriented strand board (OSB) structurally laminated to expanded polystyrene (EPS) rigid insulation core. A SIP system incorporates manufacturer-specific spline connectors, sealants and SIP screws.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures
- B. Section 016000 - Product Requirements
- C. Section 033000 - Cast-In-Place Concrete
- D. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry
- E. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- F. Section 072700 - Air Barriers
- G. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. DOC PS2 – Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels.
- B. ICC ES AC12 – Acceptance Criteria for Foam Plastic Insulation.
- C. ASTM E1803 – Standard Test Method for Determining Structural Capacities of Insulated Panels.
- D. ASTM D746 Standard Specification for Structural Insulated Panel (SIP) Adhesives for Laminating Oriented Strand Board (OSB) to Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation Core Materials
- E. APA PRP-108 - Performance Standards and Qualification Policy for Wood Structural Panels (Form E445); 2021.
- F. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- G. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation; 2019.
- H. ASTM D746 - Standard Test Method for Brittleness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact; 2020.

- I. ASTM E72 - Standard Test Methods of Conducting Strength Tests of Panels for Building Construction; 2022.
- J. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials; 2020.
- K. ICC-ES AC04 - Acceptance Criteria for Sandwich Panels; 2019, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- L. ICC-ES AC05 - Acceptance Criteria for Sandwich Panel Adhesives; 2009, with Editorial Revision (2020).

#### **1.04 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Project design team shall review manufacturer installation guide and design manual. Copies can be obtained from [www.insulspan.com](http://www.insulspan.com) or by contacting INSULSPAN technical service at 1-800-726-3510 (East) or 1-866-848-8855 (West).
- B. Provide SIPs which have been manufactured, fabricated and installed to withstand specified loads as determined by design in accordance with the local building codes and to maintain performance criteria as stated by the SIP manufacturer without defects, damage or product failure.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data
  - 1. SIP Code Compliance: Provide code report for SIP to demonstrate compliance with requirements for construction as per current applicable code. {Submit current ICC-ES evaluation report from showing compliance the International Building Code (IBC) and International Residential Code (IRC).} {Submit current CCMC evaluation report showing compliance with the National Building Code of Canada (NBC).}
  - 2. EPS Code compliance: Provide evaluation report for EPS insulation with evidence of compliance with current applicable code. {Submit current ICC-ES evaluation report showing compliance with the IBC and IRC.} {Submit CCMC evaluation listing showing conformance with the NBC.}
- B. Calculation: Provide structural calculation prepared by a design professional registered in the jurisdiction where the work is being performed when required.
- C. Shop drawings: Submit SIP shop drawings showing panel layout, elevations, SIP connection details, product components and accessories.
- D. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:
  - 1. Third-Party Quality Control: Provide proof of manufacturer participation in recognized third party certification program to assure conformance with Insulspan SIP System specified



performance characteristics and physical properties in accordance with Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures.

2. Submit copy of third party certification label demonstrating that manufacture of panels complies with specified performance characteristics and physical properties.
  3. Submit manufacturer-specific installation instructions for SIP system.
- E. Fire Resistant Assemblies: Submit Intertek listed assembly or approved equal for testing to
1. ASTM E119 requirements to demonstrate required fire resistance rating.
- F. Warranty: Provide limited warranty documents as specified herein.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer to have demonstrated experience acceptable to SIP Manufacturer for installation work similar in scope and size to this project. Manufacturer to confirm availability of site advisory service.
- B. Field Measurements: Request field measurements prior to completion of shop drawings and fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction schedule to avoid delay of work. NOTE: Field fabrication is allowed to ensure proper fit after consultation with manufacturer, but must be kept to minimum with majority of SIP fabrication being done under controlled shop conditions.
- C. Source limitations: Obtain all SIPs through one source. All accessories to be furnished or recommended by the SIP manufacturer.

#### **1.07 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. SIPs shall be recognized for compliance with the applicable building code with {an ICC-ES evaluation report demonstrating compliance with the International Building Code (IBC) and International Residential Code (IRC)} {a CCMC evaluation report demonstrating compliance with the National Building Code of Canada (NBC)}.
- B. Pre-installation Meeting: Conduct pre-installation meeting to verify project requirements, foundation/structural system/substrate conditions, review SIP manufacturer installation instructions and requirements for SIP manufacturer warranty. Comply with Division 1 Project Management and Coordination (Project Meetings) Section.

#### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Ordering: Comply with SIP manufacturer ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- B. Delivery: Deliver materials from SIP manufacturer with identification labels or markings intact.

- C. Unloading: Off-load SIPs from delivery truck and handle using fork lift, crane or other means to prevent damage to SIPs.
- D. Storage: SIPs shall be fully supported in level storage and prevented from contact with the ground. Stack SIPs with a minimum of three supports for every eight feet of SIP length.
- E. Protection: SIPs shall be fully protected from the weather. Protect against exposure to rain, water, dirt, mud, and other residue that may affect SIP performance. Cover stored SIPs with breathable protective wraps. SIPs shall be stored in a protected area.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty conditions and provisions.
- B. SIP Manufacturer Warranty: SIP Manufacturer Limited Warranty is in addition to and not a limitation of other rights the Owner may have under Contract Documents.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 2.01 MANUFACTURERS/SUPPLIERS**

- A. PFB Manufacturing, LLC (Insulspan SIP Plant):
  - 1. 1. 9012 East US Hwy 233, Blissfield, MI, USA 49228-0026, Telephone 800-726-3510
- B. Or approved Equal

#### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Sips consist of the following
  - 1. Expanded polystyrene (EPS) core –EPS insulation complying with ASTM C578, Type I (other densities may be specified). Manufacturer to provide Third Party Certification to demonstrate compliance with applicable insulation specification.
  - 2. Oriented Strand Board (OSB) – a performance rating mark shall be identified on the OSB panel, with an Exposure 1 durability rating; minimum material properties shall be as described in DOC PS2, APA PRP-108 and CSA 0325.0. The minimum material properties for use in Insulspan SIP System shall be approved by Insulspan.
  - 3. Laminating Adhesives – a structural grade laminating adhesive that has demonstrated compliance with ICC ES AC05 – Acceptance Criteria for Sandwich Panel adhesives, CCMC technical evaluation guide for SIPs and ASTM D7446.

#### **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Splines

1. OSB, dimensional lumber, engineered wood or I-beam for use in joining SIPs shall be supplied by the SIP manufacturer as specified on approved SIP shop drawings
- B. Fasteners
  1. Nails as per SIP manufacturer design requirements shall be used for spline and plate attachments following fastening requirements specified on approved SIP shop drawings. Nails for field installation of spline and plates to be supplied by the SIP installer.
  2. Panel Screws as per SIP manufacturer design requirements shall be used following fastening requirements specified on approved SIP shop drawings. Panel screws are to be supplied by the SIP manufacturer or approved equal supplied by the SIP installer.
- C. SIP Sealant
  1. Sealants shall be specifically designed for use with SIPs. Sealant must be compatible with all components of the SIP. Sealant is to be supplied by the SIP manufacturer or approved equal supplied by the SIP installer.
    - a. Exterior roof joints supplier will provide an asphalt caulk
- D. SIP Panel Seal Tape
  1. Tape with an adhesive suitable for indoor use, minimum 6" (152 mm) wide for use on flat SIP joints and minimum 12" (304 mm) wide for use on opposing angled surfaces including ridge and roof-to-wall connections. SIP tape shall be supplied by the manufacturer.

## **2.04 FABRICATION**

- A. Panel sizes shall be fabricated in accordance with approved shop drawings. Maximum panel size shall be 96.06 inch (2440 mm) x 288.19 inch (7320 mm). Fabrication tolerances shall comply with values in manufacturer product specification.
- B. Manufacturing Standards: SIPs shall be manufactured under a third party certification program monitored by an accredited agency.
- C. SIP Thermal Resistance at a Mean Temperature of 75° F (24° C) for SIP only consisting of 7/16" (0.43 inch (11 mm)) OSB structurally laminated to both faces of EPS insulation core.
  1. NOTE: SIP thermal resistance values are for Insulspan SIPs with OSB surface spline or insulated block spline panel to panel connection type. Thermal resistance values do not include interior/exterior cladding or finish materials and air films. R-value (Inch-pound) units are (ft<sup>2</sup>•hr•°F)/BTU. RSI-value (SI System) units are (m<sup>2</sup>•°C)/W.
    - a. 4 ½" (4.49 inch (114 mm)) thick SIP with R-15.4 (RSI-2.71).
    - b. 6 ½" (6.5 inch (165 mm)) thick SIP with R-23.2 (RSI-4.08).
    - c. 8 ¼" (8.27 inch (210 mm)) thick SIP with R-30.0 (RSI-5.28).
    - d. 10 ¼" (10.24 inch (260 mm)) thick SIP with R-37.8 (RSI-6.65).

e. 12 1/4" (12.24 inch (311 mm)) thick SIP with R-45.6 (RSI-8.03).

D. Fire Performance Rating:

1. Fabricate SIP in accordance with required Intertek or equal assembly listing for testing per ASTM E119 to provide required fire resistance rating.

## **2.05 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS**

A. Substitutions: No substitutions permitted without fourteen day (14) prior approval.

## **2.06 RELATED MATERIALS**

A. Related Material: refer to other sections for related materials as follows:

1. Dimensional Lumber: SPF # 2 or better or pre-engineered equivalent: Refer to Division 06 carpentry Section.

## **2.07 SOURCE QUALITY**

A. Source Quality Assurance: Each SIP component required shall be supplied by SIP manufacturer and shall be obtained from the selected SIP manufacturer of its approved supplier.

B. Each SIP shall be labeled indicating Third Party Certification.

1. Provide evidence of Third Party Certification and labeling of all insulation used in the manufacturing of SIPs.
2. Dimensional Tolerance – shall comply with values listed in the SIP manufacturer Quality Control Manual.

C. Source Quality: Obtain SIPs from a single manufacturer.

## **PART 3 INSTALLATION**

### **3.01 MANUFACTURER INSTRUCTIONS**

A. Compliance: Comply with SIP manufacturer {ICC-ES} {CCMC} evaluation reports, published Load Design Charts, Construction Assembly Drawings, Approved Shop Drawings and product data including Technical Bulletins and Product Information Bulletins for design and installation.

B. Construction Documents and Shop drawings shall be reviewed by a qualified architect/engineer and shall be signed and sealed. Deviations from standard details or load design values shall be calculated for the specific use and the calculations and details shall be signed and sealed by a registered design professional and provided to the manufacturer.

### **3.02 EXAMINATION**

A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions (which have been previously installed under other related sections) are acceptable for product installation in accordance with SIP

manufacturer instructions and guidelines.

1. Verify conditions of foundation/structural system/substrate and other conditions which affect installation of SIPs. Any adverse conditions shall be reported in writing to the SIP manufacturer and the lead design professional. Do not proceed with installation until adverse conditions are corrected and documented.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

#### **A. SIP Installation:**

1. SIP Support: Provide level and square foundation/structural system/substrate that support wall and/or roof SIPs. For wall SIPs hold sill plate back from edge of deck ½" (0.5 inch (12.7 mm)) to provide full bearing of both OSB skins. Provide adequate bracing of SIPs during panel erection. Remove debris from plate area prior to application of sealant and SIP placement.
2. Electrical: If required, provide 1 ½" (1.5 inch (38 mm)) diameter access holes in top and bottom plating to align with electrical wire chases in SIPs. Align all horizontal electrical chases in SIPs and maintain debris free electrical chases.
3. SIP Fastening: Connect SIPs using screws or nails as shown on approved shop drawings. Where manufacturer supplied SIP Screws are used, a minimum of 1 ½" (1.5 inch (38 mm)) of penetration is required into wood support.
4. SIP Sealant: Sealant must be installed in a continuous bead at all connections.
5. SIP Tape: Apply SIP tape at joints between roof SIPs, at the roof-to-wall connection and at the ridge. Tape shall only be installed after all spline connections are completed as per Manufacturer installation instructions.
  - a. SIP tape will be needed for the interior roof panel joints and the intersection of the roof and walls
6. Vapor Retarders: Provide vapor retarders as required by applicable building code.
7. Thermal Barriers: Interior surface of SIPs shall be finished with a minimum 15-minute thermal barrier, such as ½" (0.5 inch (12.7 mm)) gypsum wall board, nominal 1" (0.98 inch (25 mm)) solid wood paneling, or other approved materials. Apply approved thermal barrier according to requirements of applicable building code.
8. Restrictions: Do not install SIPs directly or in contact with concrete/dirt. Do not install plumbing in a SIP without consulting SIP manufacturer. Do not over-cut panel skins for approved field-cut openings. Do not cut skins to install electrical chases. Do not expose EPS core of SIPs to any solvents or solvent-based adhesives.

9. Remove and replace any SIP wall or roof panels which have become wet or damaged before proceeding with the installation of additional SIPs or other work that may cover a compromised SIP.

#### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. SIP installer to complete the SIPA's Best Program online prior to inst

#### **3.05 FIELD QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Protection: Protect installed product from exposure and damage during construction.
  1. Wall or Roof SIP Temporary Protection: Protect SIPs from weather with temporary protection at the end of each day or when rain or snow is imminent. Apply wall or roof sheathing membrane to exposed panel faces as soon as practical after installation.
  2. After installation is complete, cover SIPs to prevent contact with excessive water on all exposed SIP edges and faces.
  3. Wall or Roof SIP Cladding: Cladding design must include a second line of defense based upon the anticipated wind-driven rain, snow and ice condition for the geographical location, building code requirements and cladding manufacturer requirements.
  4. Roof SIP: Roofing material must only be installed on a dry SIP roof with a moisture content of 17% or less.

**END OF SECTION 061200**

## **SECTION 061300 - HEAVY TIMBER**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Framing using timbers.

#### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry.
- C. Section 061800 - Glued-Laminated Construction.
- D. Section 061500 - Wood Decking.

#### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provision of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. AITC 108 - Standard for Heavy Timber Construction.
  - 2. AITC - Timber Construction Manual.
  - 3. ASTM A123 - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
  - 4. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 5. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength.
  - 6. ASTM A563 - Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts.
  - 7. ASTM A575 - Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Merchant Quality, M-Grades.
  - 8. ASTM A1011 - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength.
  - 9. ASTM D5933 - Standard Specification for 2 5/8-in. and 4-in. Diameter Metal Shear Plates for Use in Wood Construction.
  - 10. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 11. AWPA M4 - Standard for the Care of Preservative-Treated Wood Products.
  - 12. AWPA P5 - Standard for Waterborne Preservatives.

13. AWP T1 - Use Category System: Processing and Treatment Standard.
14. AWP U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood.
15. NDS - National Design Specification for Wood Construction with Commentary.
16. NDS Supplement - National Design Specification Values for Wood Construction.
17. NIST PS 20 - Voluntary Product Standard - American Softwood Lumber Standard.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Design Qualifications:

1. Delegated Design: Design structural timber and connectors, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified Professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Structural timber and connectors shall withstand the effects of structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in AITC 117 or determined according to ASTM D3737 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data:

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment. All treated items shall bear an end tag or permanent ink stamp indicating the following:
  - a. Identification of treating manufacturer.
  - b. Type of preservative used.
  - c. Minimum preservative retention (pcf).
  - d. End use for which the product is treated.
  - e. Identity of the accredited inspection agency.
  - f. Standard to which the product is treated.
  - g. Manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing and finishing treated material.
2. Include statement that moisture content of waterborne treated products was reduced to levels specified before shipment to site.
3. Include installation instructions for timber connectors.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of heavy timber construction system, full dimensions of each member, and details of connections.

1. Provide signed and sealed calculations for structural analysis of heavy timber construction, including specially fabricated components, prepared by a licensed Professional engineer registered in the State where the project is located.



- C. Samples: Full width and depth, 24 inches long, showing the range of variation to be expected in appearance of wood products, including surface texture. Apply a coat of penetrating sealer to samples.
- D. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed timber not marked with grade stamp.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Schedule delivery of heavy timber construction to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delays.
- B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within, around and under temporary coverings.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 HEAVY TIMBER, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by American Lumber Standards Committee (ALSC) Board of Review.
  - 1. Factory mark each timber item with grading agency stamp.
  - 2. Exposed timber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish to have grade stamps applied to surfaces that will not be exposed to view or omit grade stamps and provide certificates of inspection by grading agency.
- B. Lumber grading rules shall be obtained from one of the following agencies.
  - 1. NELMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
  - 2. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association.
  - 3. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 4. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - 5. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 6. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.
  - 7. .
- C. When nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
- D. Preservative Treatment:
  - 1. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative to comply with AWPA C15 requirements for sawn building poles and posts as structural members.
  - 2. Pressure treat poles with waterborne preservative to comply with AWPA C4.
  - 3. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.

4. Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
5. After treatment, re-dry to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
6. Application: Treat items as indicated on the drawings.

## **2.02 TIMBER**

- A. Timber Species and Grade: Refer to the material specifications listed in the General Notes of the drawings.
- B. Exposed framing indicated to be a natural finish or receive stain: Provide material free from imperfections with uniformity of appearance. Refer to plans for material specification.
- C. Moisture Content: Provide timber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- D. Dressing: Provide dressed timber (S4S), unless noted otherwise.
- E. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish. Use sealer that meets or exceeds VOC and chemical component limits of Green Seal requirements.
- F. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish. Use sealer that meets or exceeds VOC and chemical component limits of Green Seal requirements.

## **2.03 TIMBER CONNECTORS**

- A. General: Fabricate from the following materials, unless otherwise noted.
  1. Structural steel shapes, plates, and flat bars: Refer to the material specifications listed in the General Notes of the drawings.
  2. Round steel bars: ASTM A575, Grade M1020.
  3. Hot-rolled steel sheet: ASTM A1011, Structural Steel, Type SS, Grade 33.
- B. Bolts: Provide 3/4-inch diameter bolts complying with ASTM A307, Grade A; nuts complying with ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Shear Plates: Comply with ASTM D5933. Provide 2-5/8 inch diameter.
- D. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, 2-mil dry film thickness.
- E. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A123 or ASTM A153.
- F. Unless noted otherwise, all timber connections are to be concealed with all holes plugged.

## **2.04 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS**

- A. Provide metal framing anchors with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated, of the following metal and finish:

1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A653, G60 (ASTM A653M, Z180) coating designation; structural, commercial, or lock-forming quality, as standard with manufacturer for type of anchor indicated.

## **2.05 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIAL**

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

## **2.06 FABRICATION**

- A. Camber: Fabricate horizontal members and members inclined at a slope less than 1:1 with the natural crown up.
- B. During shop fabrication, cut and restore exposed surfaces to match surfacing specified. Predrill fasteners and assembly of units.
  1. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
  2. Where preservative treated members are indicated, fabricate before treatment to the greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative complying with AWPAC M4.
- C. After fabricating and surfacing each unit, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit, except for treated wood where the treatment included a water repellent.
- D. Factory finish exposed timbers as follows:
  1. Interior timbers (one coat): Pittsburg Interiors, Resin Stain, Semi-transparent Oil, Tinting Base #77-560, Color as selected by the Architect.
  2. Exterior timbers (two coats): Cabot, Semi-transparent Stain, #0306 Neutral BASF, Color as selected by the Architect.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Erect heavy timber construction true and plumb. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
- B. Install horizontal and inclined members with crown edge up and provide 4-inch minimum bearing on supports. Provide continuous members where indicated on the drawings.
- C. Provide all temporary flooring, bracing, shoring and guards necessary to prevent damage or injury. All partially erected timbers shall be secured in an approved manner during interruptions of work.
- D. Where timbers are built into masonry construction, provide 1/2-inch clearance at tops, sides and ends of members. Bevel cut ends 3 inches, with no more than 4-inch embedment in masonry.

- E. Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- F. Errors in timber cutting shall cause timbers to be replaced with new timbers. No plugs or similar repairs will be allowed.
- G. Install timber connectors as indicated.
  - 1. Install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.

### **3.02 REPAIR**

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after erection is complete. Replace damaged heavy timber sections if repairs are not approved by the Architect.

**END OF SECTION 061300**

## **SECTION 061800 - GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Design and construction using structural glued-laminated timber. Work shall include, but not be limited to the following items:
  - 1. Framing members.
  - 2. Anchoring and fastening devices.
  - 3. Wood treatment.
- B. Dimensional lumber items associated with glued-laminated timber framing is specified in Division 06.
- C. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding glued-laminated construction shall be considered a part of this specification.

#### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry.
- C. Section 061300 - Heavy Timber Construction.
- D. Section 061500 - Wood Decking.

#### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provision of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. AITC 108 - Standard for Heavy Timber Construction.
  - 2. AITC 109 - Standard for Preservative Treatment of Structural Glued Laminated Timber.
  - 3. AITC 110 - Standard Appearance Grades for Structural Glued Laminated Timber.
  - 4. AITC 111 - Recommended Practice for Protection of Structural Glued Laminated Timber During Transit, Storage and Erection.
  - 5. AITC 117 - Standard Specification for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species.
  - 6. AITC - Timber Construction Manual.
  - 7. ANSI A190.1 - Standard for Wood Products - Structural Glued Laminated Timber.

8. ASTM A36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.
9. ASTM A123 - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
10. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
11. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength.
12. ASTM A563 - Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts.
13. ASTM A575 - Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Merchant Quality, M-Grades.
14. ASTM A653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
15. ASTM A1011 - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength.
16. ASTM D245 - Standard Practice for Establishing Structural Grades and Related Allowable Properties for Visually Graded Lumber.
17. ASTM D3737 - Standard Practice for Establishing Allowable Properties for Structural Glued Laminated Timber (Glulam).
18. ASTM D5664 - Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-Retardant Treatments and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-Retardant Treated Lumber.
19. ASTM D5933 - Standard Specification for 2 5/8-in. and 4-in. Diameter Metal Shear Plates for Use in Wood Construction.
20. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
21. AWPA M4 - Standard for the Care of Preservative-Treated Wood Products.
22. AWPA P5 - Standard for Waterborne Preservatives.
23. AWPA P17 - Fire-Retardant Formulations.
24. AWPA T1 - Use Category System: Processing and Treatment Standard.
25. AWPA U1 -Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood.
26. NDS - National Design Specification for Wood Construction with Commentary.
27. NDS Supplement - National Design Specification Values for Wood Construction.
28. NIST PS 20 - Voluntary Product Standard - American Softwood Lumber Standard.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. The glued-laminated timber manufacturer shall be an AITC or APA-EWS licensed firm complying with AITC A190.1.

2. Shall have not less than five (5) years of continuous experience in manufacturing glued-laminated structural units.
  3. Factory mark each piece of structural glued-laminated timber with AITC Quality Mark or APA-EWS trademark. Place mark on surfaces that will not be exposed in the final installed condition.
- B. Design Qualifications:
1. Delegated Design: Design structural glued-laminated timber and connectors, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified Professional Engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  2. Structural Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors shall withstand the effects of structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in AITC 117 or determined according to ASTM D3737 and acceptable to the Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
- C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Obtain each type of fire-retardant-treated wood product through one source from a single producer.

#### **1.05 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Structural Performance: Provide structural glued-laminated timber, including connectors, capable of withstanding structural loads shown on the drawings without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed.
1. Framing: Provide structural glued-laminated timber, including connectors, capable of withstanding the design loads.
  2. Design Loads: As indicated on the drawings.
  3. Maximum Deflection under Design Loads:
    - a. Roof:  $L/360$ .
    - b. Floor:  $L/360$ .
- B. Employ a licensed Professional Engineer, registered in the State where the project is located, to perform design. Sign and seal shop drawings and design calculations submitted to the Architect/Engineer for review. Prepare and seal drawings and calculations for submittal to Authorities Having Jurisdiction. Comply with design intent, criteria, and requirements of the drawings.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. Include data on lumber, adhesives, fabrication and protection.
  2. Include connector installation instructions.

3. Wood treatment data as follows, including chemical treatment manufacturer's warranty and instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated materials:
  - a. For each type of preservative-treated wood product, include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standard.
  - b. For waterborne-treated products, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels indicated before shipment to the project site.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  1. Show layout of structural glued-laminated timber system and full dimensions of each member.
    - a. Indicate species and laminating combination, adhesive type, and other variables in required work.
    - b. Include large scale details of connections.
    - c. Structural analysis calculations.
- C. Samples: Provide full width and depth, 24 inches long, showing the range of variation to be expected in appearance of structural glued-laminated timber, including variations due to specified treatment.
- D. Samples: Apply specified factory finish to three sides of half-length of each sample.
- E. Certificates of Conformance: Issued by a qualified testing and inspecting agency indicating structural glued-laminated timber complies with requirements in AITC A190.1.
- F. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated wood products, from manufacturer. Indicate type of preservatives used and net amount of preservative retained.
- G. Research / Evaluation Reports: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors, from ICC-ES.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with provisions of AITC 111.
- B. All members shall be delivered, piled, and handled so as to protect them from warping due to excessive moisture or damage. Members shall be stored off the ground and individually wrapped using a plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.
- C. All installed exposed members shall be protected from moisture until covered with subsequent roofing materials or flashings.



## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work, but are not limited to, the following:
1. American Laminators, Oregon.
  2. Boise Cascade, LLC, Idaho.
  3. Calvert Co., Inc., Washington.
  4. Laminated Timbers, Inc., Kentucky.
  5. Sentinel Structures, Inc., Wisconsin.
  6. Timber Technologies, Wisconsin.
  - 7.

### **2.02 STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER**

- A. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with AITC A190.1 and AITC 117 or research / evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from single species.
  2. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations; do not use laminated veneer lumber.
  3. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with AITC A190.1.
- B. Species and Grades for Structural Glued-Laminated Timber: Provide grades needed to comply with "System Performance Requirements" Article section 1.5.
1. Alaska cedar
  2. Douglas fir-larch
  3. Southern pine
  4. Any species
  - 5.
- C. Species and Grades for Structural Glued-Laminated Timber: Provide grades needed to comply with structural properties, combination symbols and beam stress classifications indicated on drawings.
- D. Appearance Grade: Premium complying with AITC 110.
1. For Premium and Architectural appearance grades, fill voids as required by AITC 110.

2. For Premium appearance grade, use clear wood inserts, of matching grain and color, for filling voids and knot holes more than 1/4 inch wide.
- E. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- F. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer compatible with indicated finish.
- G. Preservative Treatment: Glued-laminated timber shall comply with AWPA U1.
  1. Use preservative solution without substances that may interfere with application of indicated finishes.
  2. Do not incise structural glued-laminated timber or wood used to produce structural glued-laminated timber.

## **2.03 TIMBER CONNECTORS**

- A. Provide connectors as detailed on the drawings. Basis of design for metal framing anchor products is Simpson Strong-Tie Co. Inc.
- B. Drawings indicate schematic connectors. Engage a licensed Professional Engineer to design structural glued-laminated connectors.
- C. Materials: Refer to drawings for connection material.:
  1. Structural steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A36.
  2. Round steel bars complying with ASTM A575, Grade M1020.
  3. Connection material shall comply with "System Performance Requirements" Article section 1.5 and as noted on the drawings.
- D. Bolts: Provide 3/4-inch diameter bolts complying with ASTM A307, Grade A; nuts complying with ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- E. Shear Plates: Comply with ASTM D5933. Provide 2-5/8 inch diameter.
- F. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, 2-mil dry film thickness.
- G. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A123 or ASTM A153.
- H. Unless noted otherwise, all timber connections are to be concealed with all holes plugged.

## **2.04 FABRICATION**

- A. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.
  1. Dress exposed surfaces as needed to remove planing and surfacing marks.

- B. Camber: Fabricate horizontal and inclined members of less than 1:1 slope with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.
- C. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
- D. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length and, after preservative treatment, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.
- E. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit, except for preservative-treated wood where treatment included a water repellent.

## **2.05 FACTORY FINISH**

- A. Wiped Stain Finish: Manufacturer's standard, dry-appearance, penetrating acrylic stain and sealer; oven dried and resistant to mildew and fungus.
  - 1. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- B. Clear Finish: Manufacturer's standard, two-coat, clear varnish finish; resistant to mildew and fungus.

## **2.06 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIAL**

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates in areas to receive structural glued-laminated timber, with installer present, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing conditions.

---

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
  - 1. Install structural glued-laminated timber to comply with the shop drawings.
  - 2. Handle and temporarily support glued-laminated timber to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
  - 3. Lift with padded slings and protect corners with wood blocking.
- B. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide 1/2-inch clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry; bevel cut ends 3 inches; and do not embed more than 4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- D. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing and finishing.
  - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
  - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
  - 3. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.
  - 4. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
    - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
    - b. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
- E. Install timber connectors as indicated.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
  - 2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
- F. Where beams penetrate through exterior walls, apply waterproof sealer as recommended by the manufacturer.

### 3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by the Architect/Engineer.

### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Framing Members: 1/2 inch maximum from true position.

### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose, including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.
  - 1. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.
- B. Slit underside of wrapping to prevent accumulation of moisture inside the wrapping.

**END OF SECTION 061800**



**SECTION 064100**

**ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Specially fabricated cabinet units.
- B. Hardware.
- C. Factory finishing.
- D. Preparation for installing utilities.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Support framing, grounds, and concealed blocking.
- B. Section 096500 - Resilient Flooring - Resilient Bases
- C. Section 123600 - Countertops.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.
- B. ANSI A208.2 - Medium Density Fiberboard (MDF) for Interior Applications; 2016.
- C. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program; Current Edition.
- D. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition; 2014, with Errata (2016).
- E. AWMAC (GIS) - Guarantee and Inspection Services Program; Current Edition.
- F. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2021, with Errata.
- G. BHMA A156.9 - Cabinet Hardware; 2020.
- H. HPVA HP-1 - American National Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood; 2020.
- I. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates; 2005.
- J. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2009 (Revised 2019).

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work
  - 1. Field verify critical dimensions and clearances prior to fabrication of casework items; assure that field conditions are as required to comply with indicated design requirements.
  - 2. By accurate field measurements before being enclosed, verify locations of concealed framing, blocking, reinforcements, and furring that support woodwork; record

measurements on shop drawings.

3. Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying work, establish required dimensions and maintain those dimensions for fabrication of woodwork.
4. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established required dimensions.
5. Coordinate cabinet spacing and clearances to ensure that doors and drawers do not conflict with each other.
6. Coordinate cabinet opening and spacing requirements with approved appliances and plumbing fixtures.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
  1. Scale of Drawings: 1-1/2 inch to 1 foot (125 mm to 1 m), minimum.
  2. Provide information as required by AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).
  3. Shop drawings are required to be generated as separate digital drawings specific to this Project, not utilizing Architect's digital drawing files in any manner.
  4. Show all adjacent construction including abutting walls, columns and similar elements affecting casework installation.
  5. Include certification program label.
- C. Product Data: Provide data for hardware accessories.
- D. Samples: Submit actual samples of architectural cabinet construction, minimum 12 inches (300 mm) square, illustrating proposed cabinet and shelf unit substrate and finish.
- E. Samples: Submit actual sample items of proposed pulls and shelf standards, demonstrating hardware design, quality, and finish.
- F. Certificate: Submit labels and certificates required by quality assurance and quality control programs.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
  1. Company with at least one project in the past 5 years with value of woodwork within 20 percent of cost of woodwork for this Project.



2. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
- B. Quality Certification:
1. Comply with AWI (QCP) woodwork association quality certification service/program in accordance with requirements for work specified in this section: [www.awiqcp.org/#sle](http://www.awiqcp.org/#sle).
  2. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
  3. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by certification program.
  4. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by certification program.
  5. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.
  6. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect units from moisture damage.
- B. Deliver casework items to installation areas only after clean, well ventilated, and temperature-controlled installation areas are available. Do not deliver casework items to installation areas until painting and similar operations are complete in those areas.
- C. Protect units from moisture and impact damage during transit, delivery, and storage; use protective covers during delivery, storage, and handling operations.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not deliver or install casework items until building is enclosed and weatherproof, and building's environmental control systems are operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at designed occupancy levels throughout the remainder of the construction period.
- B. During and after installation of custom cabinets, maintain temperature and humidity conditions in building spaces at same levels planned for occupancy.
- C. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Provide and install this work from single fabricator.

### **2.02 CABINETS AND MILLWORK**

- A. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Plastic Laminate Faced Millwork: Custom grade.
1. Finish - Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Decorative laminate as indicated on drawings
  2. Grain Direction to run vertically where applicable. Reference drawings.
  3. Edge Profiles: Square edge with thin applied band.
    - a. Finish - PL-02. Reference Laminate Schedule.
  4. Interior surfaces unless noted otherwise: Melamine, color: White
- C. Cabinets:
1. Finish - Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Decorative laminate as indicated on drawings
  2. Interior surfaces unless noted otherwise: Melamine, color: White
  3. Finish - Concealed Surfaces: Manufacturer's option.
  4. Door and Drawer Front Edge Profiles: Square edge with thin applied band.
    - a. Finish - PL-02. Reference Laminate Schedule.
  5. Casework Construction Type: Type A - Frameless.
  6. Interface Style for Cabinet and Door: Style 1 - Overlay; flush overlay.
  7. Grained Face Layout for Cabinet and Door Fronts: Flush panel
    - a. Doors, drawer fronts and false fronts wood grain to run and match vertically within each cabinet unit.
  8. Adjustable Shelf Loading: 50 psf (24.4 gm/sq cm).
    - a. Deflection: L/144.
  9. Drawer Constructoin: Fabricate with expoed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting scrws from interior of body
    - a. Drawer Side Construction: Multiple-dovetailed.
    - b. Drawer Construction Technique: Dovetail joints.

### **2.03 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS**

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.
- B. Medium Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2 , Grade 130
- C. Hardwood Plywood: HPVA HP-1

D. Softwood Plywood: PS 1

## **2.04 LAMINATE MATERIALS**

A. Manufacturers:

1. Abet Laminati; HPL Collection Colours: <https://abetlaminati.com/en/>

a. Designation: PL-01

1) 487 SEI

b. Designation: PL-03

1) 437 SEI

c. Designation: PL-04

1) 810 SEI

d. Locations: Reference Drawings

2. Wilsonart LLC;[ ]: [www.wilsonart.com/#sle](http://www.wilsonart.com/#sle).

a. Designation: PL-02

1) 7986-38 Pasadena Oak

b. Locations: Reference Drawings

3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

B. High Pressure Decorative Laminate (HPDL): NEMA LD 3, types as recommended for specific applications.

C. Provide specific types as indicated.

1. Horizontal Surfaces: HGS, 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) nominal thickness, through color, colors as indicated, finish as indicated.

2. Vertical Surfaces: VGS, 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) nominal thickness, through color, colors as indicated, finish as indicated.

3. Post-Formed Horizontal Surfaces: HGP, 0.039 inch (1.0 mm) nominal thickness, through color, colors as indicated, finish as indicated.

4. Flame Retardant Surfaces: HGF, 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) nominal thickness, through color, colors as indicated, finish as indicated.

## **2.05 COUNTERTOPS**

A. Countertops: See Section 123600.

## **2.06 ACCESSORIES**

A. Support Framing, Grounds, and Concealed Blocking: Referenece Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

B. Adhesive: Type recommended by AWI/AWMAC to suit application.

1. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde
2. VOC limits for installation adhesives and Glues: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D
  - a. Wood glues: 30 g/L
  - b. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L
- C. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.
- D. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, Pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; galvanized or chrome-plated finish in concealed locations and stainless steel or chrome-plated finish in exposed locations.
- E. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.
- F. Grommets: Standard painted metal grommets for cut-outs, in color to blend with adjacent surface.
  1. Basis of Design: Mockett PS-C2 Flush Mount
  2. Finish: Satin nickel
  3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.07 HARDWARE**

- A. Hardware: BHMA A156.9, types as indicated for quality grade specified.
- B. Adjustable Shelf Supports: Standard side-mounted system using recessed metal shelf standards or multiple holes for pin supports and coordinated self rests, polished chrome finish, for nominal 1 inch (25 mm) spacing adjustments.
  1. Adjustable Shelf Loading: 50 lbs per sq. ft.
    - a. Deflection: L/144
- C. Fixed Specialty Workstation and Countertop Brackets:
  1. Material: Aluminum.
  2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory-applied powder coat.
  3. Color: Selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Rakks/Rangine Corporation; EH Series Brackets: [www.rakks.com/#sle](http://www.rakks.com/#sle)
      - 1) 18" x 18" x 2" T Profile
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- D. Fixed Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)-Compliant Vanity and Countertop Brackets:
  1. Material: Aluminum.
  2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard

3. Products:
  - a. Rakks/Rangine Corporation; ADA Compliant Vanity Support Bracket (NEW):  
[www.rakks.com/#sle](http://www.rakks.com/#sle).
    - 1) 18" x 21 1/2" x 2" T Profile, 80 deg.
  - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- E. Cabinet and Drawer Pulls: "U" shaped Wire Pull
  1. Basis of Design: HEWI Furniture Handle; <https://catalog.hewi.com/en-DE/furniture-handle-o-10-mm-548106-33.html>
    - a. Location: Circulation Desk (MW1), Breakroom (MW3)
    - b. Color: No. 33 (Ruby red)
    - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- F. Cabinet Locks: Keyed cylinder, two keys per lock, master keyed, steel with chrome finish.
  1. Basis of Design: CompX Stock Locks
    - a. CB-290 Door Lock Vertical Mounted
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- G. Cabinet Catches:
  1. Type: Magnetic catch BHMA A156.9 , B03141
  2. Basis of Design: Hafele America Co.; Model 246.26.702: [www.hafele.com](http://www.hafele.com).
  3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- H. Drawer Slides:
  1. Type: Full extension.
  2. Static Load Capacity: Commercial grade.
  3. Mounting: Side mounted.
  4. Stops: Integral type.
  5. Finish: Selected from manufacturer's standard line.
  6. Features: Provide self closing/stay closed type.
  7. Standard Duty, Grade 1:
    - a. Self-closing, side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer.
    - b. Locations: For drawers not more than 3 inches high and 24 inches wide.
  8. Heavy Duty, Grade 1HD-100
    - a. Self-closing, side or bottom mounted; full-extension type.
    - b. Locations: For drawers not more than 6 inches high and 24 inches wide.
  9. Heavy Duty, Grade 1HD-200:
    - a. Self-closing, side or bottom mounted; full-extension type.

- b. Locations: For drawers more than 6 inches high or 24 inches wide.
- 10. Manufacturers:
  - a. Accuride International, Inc; Light-Duty Drawer Slides: [www accuride.com/#sle](http://www accuride.com/#sle).
  - b. Accuride International, Inc; Heavy-Duty Drawer Slides: [www accuride.com/#sle](http://www accuride.com/#sle).
  - c. Grass America Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.grassusa.com/#sle](http://www.grassusa.com/#sle).
  - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- I. Hinges: European style concealed self-closing type, steel with satin finish.
  - 1. Finish: Selected from Manufacturer's standard line.
  - 2. Features: Provide self closing / stay closed / soft close type.
  - 3. Manufacturers:
    - a. Grass America Inc: [www.grassusa.com/#sle](http://www.grassusa.com/#sle).
    - b. Hardware Resources: [www.hardwareresources.com/#sle](http://www.hardwareresources.com/#sle).
    - c. Hettich America, LP: [www.hettich.com/#sle](http://www.hettich.com/#sle).
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  - 4. Number of Hinges:
    - a. Provide two (2) hinges for doors less than 36 inches high
    - b. Provide (3) hinges for doors 37 inches to 54 inches high
    - c. Provide four (4) hinges for tall cabinet doors 55 inches to 84 inches high
- J. Television and Monitor Support Slides and mounting hardware:
  - 1. Reference Section 28 00 00

## **2.08 FABRICATION**

- A. Assembly: Shop assemble cabinets for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.
- B. Edging: Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with specified edging. Do not use more than one piece for any single length.
- C. Fitting: When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide matching trim for scribing and site cutting.
- D. Plastic Laminate: Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners.
  - 1. Cap exposed plastic laminate finish edges with material of same finish and pattern.
- E. Matching Wood Grain: Comply with requirements of quality standard for specified Grade and as follows:
  - 1. Provide balance matched panels at each elevation.

- F. Provide cutouts for plumbing fixtures. Verify locations of cutouts from on-site dimensions.  
Prime paint cut edges.

## **2.09 SHOP FINISHING**

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. For opaque finishes, apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations and sand smooth.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify location and sizes of utility rough-in associated with work of this section.
- C. Verify critical clearances and dimensions prior to installation of casework items.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) requirements for grade indicated.
- B. Set and secure custom cabinets in place, assuring that they are rigid, plumb, and level.
- C. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.
- D. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units.
- E. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch (0.79 mm). Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- F. Secure cabinets to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.
- G. Countersink anchorage devices at exposed locations. Conceal with solid wood plugs of species to match surrounding wood or plastic laminate; finish flush with surrounding surfaces.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust installed work.
- B. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings, and fixtures.

### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed cabinets and woodwork from damage due to subsequent construction operations.

**END OF SECTION 064100**





**SECTION 068316**

**FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PANELING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fiberglass reinforced plastic panels.
- B. Trim, fastener and adhesive.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 9 CFR 416.2 - Regulatory Requirements Under the Federal Meat Inspection Act and the Poultry Products Inspection Act, Part 416-Sanitation; current edition.
- B. ASTM D256 - Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics; 2023, with Editorial Revision.
- C. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber; 2021.
- D. ASTM D5319 - Standard Specification for Glass-Fiber Reinforced Polyester Wall and Ceiling Panels; 2022.
- E. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- F. FDA Food Code - Chapter 6 - Physical Facilities; Current Edition.
- G. ISO 846 - Plastics - Evaluation of the Action of Microorganisms; 2019.
- H. ISO 2812-1 - Paints and Varnishes -- Determination of Resistance to Liquids -- Part 1: Immersion in Liquids Other than Water; 2017.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples 3 by 3 inch (75x75 mm) in size illustrating the material and surface design of panels.
- D. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layout, dimensions, profiles, and product components, including anchorage, accessories, finish colors, patterns and textures. Indicate locations and dimensions of joints and fastener attachments.

#### **1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store panels flat, indoors, on a clean, dry surface. Remove packaging and allow panels to acclimate to room temperature for 48 hours prior to installation.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for shipping, storing, and handling material as needed to prevent warping, damaging, soiling and damage on edges.

#### **1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not store or install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Panels:
  - 1. Crane Composites, Inc; GLASBORD®: [www.cranecomposites.com/#](http://www.cranecomposites.com/#).
  - 2. Marlite, Inc; Standard FRP (Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic): [www.marlite.com/#sle](http://www.marlite.com/#sle).
  - 3. Panolam Industries International, Inc; FRP (Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic): [www.panolam.com/#sle](http://www.panolam.com/#sle).
  - 4. Nudo; FiberLite® FRP ; [www.nudo.com/#sle](http://www.nudo.com/#sle)
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 PANEL SYSTEMS**

- A. Wall Panels FRP-01:
  - 1. Panel Size: 4 by 8 feet (1.2 by 2.4 m).
  - 2. Panel Thickness: 0.09 inch (2.3 mm).
  - 3. Surface: Smooth.
  - 4. Finish: Satin.
  - 5. Color: White.
  - 6. Attachment Method: As recommended by manufacturer.

#### **2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Composite Wall Panels: Fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP), complying with ASTM D5319.
  - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread index of 25 and smoke developed index of 450; when system tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 2. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.

3. Impact Strength: Greater than 6 ft lb force per inch (320 J per m), when tested in accordance with ASTM D256.
  4. Sanitation and Cleanability: Comply with 9 CFR 416.2.
  5. Surface Characteristics and Cleanability: Provide products that are smooth, durable, and easily cleanable, in compliance with FDA Food Code, Chapter 6 - Physical Facilities.
  6. Chemical Cleanability: Excellent chemical resistance to common cleaners and detergents when tested in accordance with ISO 2812-1.
  7. Biological Resistance: Rating of 0, when tested in accordance with ISO 846.
- B. Trim: Vinyl; color coordinating with panel.
- C. Adhesive: Type recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sealant: Type recommended by panel manufacturer; white.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions and substrate flatness before starting work.
- B. Verify that substrate conditions are ready to receive the work of this section. Masonry surfaces shall be dry, and free of dirt, dust or grease. Wall surfaces shall be solid, flat, even, and true to line.
- C. Do not begin preparations or installation until unacceptable conditions are corrected.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage during installation.
- B. Comply with the instructions and recommendations of all panel manufacturer.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION - WALLS**

- A. Install panels in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Cut and drill panels with carbide tipped saw blades, drill bits, or snips. All panels shall be neatly cut and be full length.
- C. Apply adhesive to the back side of the panel using trowel as recommended by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Apply panels to wall with seams plumb and pattern aligned with adjoining panels.
- E. Install panels with manufacturer's recommended gap for panel field and corner joints.
- F. Place trim on panel before fastening edges, as required by manufacture.
- G. Fill channels in trim with sealant before attaching to panel.
- H. Install trim with adhesive and screws or nails, as required.

- I. Seal gaps at floor, ceiling, corner seams, trim junctions and between panels with applicable sealant to prevent moisture intrusion.
- J. Remove excess sealant after paneling is installed and prior to curing.

#### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean panel surfaces in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations. Do not use harsh cleaning materials or methods that could damage finish. Remove any dirt, grease or other marks from paneling and leave no visible cut marks or excess sealant.
- B. Dry panels with a soft, clean nonabrasive cotton cloth after cleaning.
- C. Upon completion of work, clear away from the building and site any excess or waste materials and debris.

#### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage during construction.

**END OF SECTION 068316**

## **SECTION 071400**

### **FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Cold-applied rubberized asphalt waterproofing.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 042000 - Unit Masonry: Masonry joints prepared to receive flashings.
- B. Section 072100 - Thermal Insulation: Insulation used for protective cover.
- C. Section 074400 - Concrete Faced Insulation Panels
- D. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal parapet covers, copings, and counterflashings.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C836/C836M - Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course; 2018 (Reapproved 2022).
- B. NRCA (WM) - The NRCA Waterproofing Manual; 2021.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and acceptable installation temperatures.
- D. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- E. Installer's qualification statement.
- F. Warranty Documentation:
  - 1. Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
  - 2. Submit installer's documentation that installation complies with warranty conditions for the field-applied waterproofing.

##### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years documented experience.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

#### **1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 degrees F (5 degrees C) for 24 hours before and during application and until cured.
- B. No installation work shall be performed during rainy or inclement weather and on frost or wet covered surfaces.
- C. Provide adequate protection of materials and work of this section from damage by weather backfilling operations and other causes.
- D. Protect work of other trades from damage resulting from work of this section. Make good such damage at own expense to satisfaction of the consultant.
- E. Apply protection course as soon as possible after installation of membrane.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Installer Warranty: Provide 2-year warranty for waterproofing failing to resist penetration of water commencing on Date of Substantial Completion. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with installer.
- C. Extended Correction Period: Correct defective work within 2-year period commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Modified-Polymer Elastomeric Waterproofing:
1. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc; MiraSEAL: [www.carlisleccw.com/#sle](http://www.carlisleccw.com/#sle).
  2. Henry Company; Henry CM100: [www.henry.com/#sle](http://www.henry.com/#sle).
  3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Modified-Polymer Elastomeric Waterproofing:
1. Location: CMU Stem Walls.

#### **2.03 FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING MATERIALS**

- A. Modified-Polymer Elastomeric Waterproofing:
1. Cured Thickness: 55 mil, 0.055 inch (1.397 mm), minimum.
  2. Suitable for installation over concrete substrates.

3. Tensile Strength: 95 psi (0.655 MPa), minimum, measured in accordance with ASTM D2370.
4. Ultimate Elongation: 350 percent, minimum, measured in accordance with ASTM D2370.
5. Ultimate Elongation: 375 percent, minimum, measured in accordance with ASTM D412.
6. Hardness: 55, minimum, measured in accordance with ASTM C661, using Type 00 durometer.
7. Hardness: 10, minimum, measured in accordance with ASTM C661, using Type A durometer.
8. Water Vapor Permeability: 0.07 perm inch (4.0 ng/(Pa s sq m)), maximum, measured in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
9. Water Vapor Permeance: 1.3 perm (74.4 ng/(Pa s sq m)), maximum, measured in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Sealant for Joints and Cracks in Substrate: Type compatible with waterproofing material and as recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are free of frozen matter, dampness, loose particles, cracks, pits, projections, penetrations, or foreign matter detrimental to adhesion or application of waterproofing system.
- C. Verify that substrate surfaces are smooth, free of honeycomb or pitting, and not detrimental to full contact bond of waterproofing materials.
- D. Verify that items penetrating surfaces to receive waterproofing are securely installed.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage not designated to receive waterproofing.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to receive waterproofing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not apply waterproofing to surfaces unacceptable to waterproofing manufacturer.
- D. Fill non-moving joints and cracks with a filler compatible with waterproofing materials.
- E. Seal moving cracks with sealant and non-rigid filler, using procedures recommended by sealant and waterproofing manufacturers.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install waterproofing to specified minimum thickness in accordance with manufacturers instructions and NRCA (WM) applicable requirements.
- B. Seal cracks and joints up to 1/8 inch in width with a 12 inch wide by 55 mil thick coating of the primary membrane and a 6 inch wide strip of fabric reinforcement centered over the joint.
- C. Seal cracks and joints up to 1/4 inch in width with a 12 inch wide by 55 mil thick coating of the primary membrane and a 6 inch wide strip of elastomeric crack treatment membrane centered over joint.
- D. Allow membrane to dry thoroughly. Protect from rain until fully cured. Allow membrane to fully cure prior to installing 074400 Concrete faced insulation covering material or backfilling. Patch or repair damaged areas using same material as original coating
- E. Seal membrane and flashings to adjoining surfaces.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Final inspection of completed work shall be carried out by the owner's representative, the contractor and th manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 071400**



## **SECTION 072100**

### **THERMAL INSULATION**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Board insulation at perimeter foundation wall and underside of floor slabs.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Field-applied termiticide for concrete slabs and foundations.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2021.
- B. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation; 2019.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- D. ASTM E136 - Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C; 2019a.
- E. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components; 2019.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance criteria, and product limitations.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include information on special environmental conditions required for installation and installation techniques.

##### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Thicknesses specified are for the thermal conductivity (k-value at 75 degrees F) specified for each material. Provide adjusted thicknesses for approved use of substituted materials with different thermal conductivity ratings. Where insulation is specified to have a specific "R" value, furnish manufacturer's standard thickness required to equal or exceed the specified value.

## **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Do not allow insulation materials to become wet, soiled, or covered with ice or snow. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storage, and protection during installation.
- B. Protect plastic insulation from exposure to direct sunlight.
- C. Do not deliver plastic insulation materials to the project site ahead of time of installation. Protect at all times against ignition. Complete the installation and concealment of plastic materials as soon as possible in each area of work.

## **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install insulation adhesives when temperature or weather conditions are detrimental to successful installation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Thermal Insulation Manufacturers:
  - 1. Dow Chemical Company; STYROFOAM Extruded Polystyrene Insulation (XPS):  
[www.dow.com/#sle..](http://www.dow.com/#sle..)
  - 2. Owens Corning Corporation; FOAMULAR Extruded Polystyrene (XPS) Insulation:  
[www.ocbuildingspec.com/#sle..](http://www.ocbuildingspec.com/#sle..)
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### **2.02 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Insulation Under Concrete Slabs: Extruded polystyrene (XPS) board.
  - 1. Location: Reference Structural Drawings
- B. Insulation at Perimeter of Foundation: Extruded polystyrene (XPS) board.
  - 1. Location: Reference Structural Drawings

### **2.03 FOAM BOARD INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Extruded Polystyrene (XPS) Board Insulation: Complies with ASTM C578 with either natural skin or cut cell surfaces.
  - 1. Type and Compressive Resistance: Type IV, 25 psi (173 kPa), minimum.
  - 2. Flame Spread Index (FSI): Class A - 0 to 25, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 3. Smoke Developed Index (SDI): 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - 4. Type and Thermal Resistance, R-value (RSI-value): Type IV, 5.0 (0.88) per 1 inch (25.4 mm) thickness at 75 degrees F (24 degrees C) mean temperature.
  - 5. Board Edges: Square.

6. Manufacturers:

- a. Dow Chemical Company; STYROFOAM Extruded Polystyrene Insulation:  
[www.dowbuildingsolutions.com/#sle](http://www.dowbuildingsolutions.com/#sle).
- b. Owens Corning Corporation; FOAMULAR Extruded Polystyrene (XPS) Insulation  
NGX 250: [www.ocbuildingspec.com/#sle](http://www.ocbuildingspec.com/#sle).
- c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Tape: Manufacturer's recommended type; self adhering, 2 inch wide.
- B. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation manufacturer for indicated applications

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation materials are dry and that substrates are ready to receive insulation.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are flat, free of honeycomb, fins, or irregularities.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION GENERAL**

- A. Install insulation to maintain continuity of thermal protection to building elements and spaces.
- B. Do not enclose insulation until before inspection and receipt of Consultant's written approval.

### **3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION AT FOUNDATION PERIMETER**

- A. Apply board manufacturer's recommended adhesive to back of boards.
- B. Do not use mechanical fasteners.
- C. Install boards vertically on foundation perimeter.
  - 1. Place boards to maximize adhesive contact.
  - 2. Install in running bond pattern.
  - 3. Butt edges and ends tightly to adjacent boards and to protrusions.
- D. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.
- E. Immediately following application of board insulation, place protective boards over exposed insulation surfaces.

### **3.04 BOARD INSTALLATION UNDER CONCRETE SLABS**

- A. Place insulation under slabs on grade after base for slab has been compacted.
- B. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.
- C. Prevent insulation from being displaced or damaged while placing vapor retarder and placing slab.

### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit installed insulation to be damaged prior to its concealment.

**END OF SECTION 072100**

## **SECTION 072700**

### **AIR BARRIERS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Air barriers; Materials that form a system to stop passage of air through exterior walls, joints between exterior walls and roof, and joints around frames of openings in exterior walls
- B. Water-Resistive Barrier: Under exterior wall cladding, over sheathing or other substrate; not air tight or vapor retardant.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Air barrier under exterior cladding.
- B. 072100 - Thermal Insulation: Vapor Retarder installed in conjunction with batt insulation
- C. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal flashings installed in conjunction with air barriers.
- D. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Air barrier under exterior cladding.

##### **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Air Barrier: Airtight barrier made of material that is virtually air impermeable but water vapor permeable, both to amount as specified, with sealed seams and sealed joints to adjacent surfaces.

##### **1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C1177/C1177M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing; 2017.
- B. ASTM D1970/D1970M - Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection; 2021.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- D. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2021.
- E. ASTM E2178 - Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate and Calculation of Air Permeance of Building Materials; 2021a.
- F. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components; 2019.

## **1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the installation of weather barriers with adjacent flashings and weather barriers for compatibility and continuity of those systems.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of flexible flashing at openings with Sections that specify window, door, and other opening installations.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this Section; require attendance by all affected installers.
  - 1. Discuss installation procedures, requirements for items that penetrate the system, transitions and tie-ins, and other pertinent issues.

## **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on system materials and accessory components, material characteristics, performance criteria, limitations, and manufacturer's standard flashing and termination details..
- C. Shop Drawings: Provide drawings of special joint conditions.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation, installation methods, and storage and handling criteria.
- E. ABAA Manufacturer Qualification: Submit documentation of current evaluation of proposed manufacturer and materials.
- F. ABAA Installer Qualification: Submit documentation of current contractor accreditation and current installer certification; keep copies of each contractor accreditation and installer certification on site during and after installation, and present on-site documentation upon request.

## **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Quality Assurance Program (QAP);  
[www.airbarrier.org/#sle](http://www.airbarrier.org/#sle):
  - 1. Installer Qualification: Use accredited contractor, certified installers, evaluated materials, and third-party field quality control audit.
- B. Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Evaluated Air Barrier Assemblies;  
[www.airbarrier.org/#sle](http://www.airbarrier.org/#sle): Use evaluated materials from a single manufacturer regularly engaged in air barrier material manufacture, and use secondary materials approved in writing by primary material manufacturer.

- C. System Compatibility: Assume responsibility for confirming that weather barrier system components are compatible with each other as a system, and also compatible with substrate surfaces with which they will be in contact, including but not limited to wall and sheathing surfaces, opening materials, other flashings and weather barrier materials, and joint sealants.
  - 1. Assure that system components are compatible as specified prior to preparing and making specified submittals.
  - 2. Assume responsibility for removal of incompatible system components and installation of properly compatible components at no additional cost to Owner regardless of when incompatibility is discovered.
- D. Basis of Design: Specifications are based on primary weather barrier systems by specified basis of design manufacturer. Primary weather barrier systems manufactured by other acceptable manufacturers are permitted, subject to compliance with specified requirements; and provided that deviations in design, weight, and performance are minor, and do not detract substantially from the indicated design intent.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain temperature and humidity recommended by materials manufacturers before, during, and after installation.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard material warranty in which manufacturer agrees to provide replacement material for the fully self-adhered water-resistive vapor permeable air barrier sheets installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions that fail due to material defects within 20 years of the date of Purchase.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Air Barrier
  - 1. On outside surface of sheathing of exterior walls use air barrier sheet, self-adhesive type.

#### **2.02 AIR BARRIER MATERIALS (AIR IMPERMEABLE AND WATER VAPOR PERMEABLE)**

- A. Air Barrier Sheet, Self-Adhered:
  - 1. Air Permeance: 0.004 cfm/sq ft (0.02 L/(s sq m)), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
  - 2. Water Vapor Permeance: 29 perms (1658 ng/(Pa s sq m)), minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M using Procedure A - Desiccant Method, at 73.4

degrees F (23 degrees C).

3. Water Penetration Resistance Around Nails: Pass, when tested in accordance with ASTM D1970/D1970M (modified).
  4. Ultraviolet (UV) and Weathering Resistance: Approved by manufacturer for up to 90 days of weather exposure.
  5. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 450 or less, Class A when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  6. Comply with NFPA 285 requirements for wall assembly.
  7. Seam and Perimeter Tape: As recommended by sheet manufacturer.
  8. Products and Basis of Design
    - a. VaproShield, LLC; PanelShield - Self Adhered: [www.vaproshield.com/#sle](http://www.vaproshield.com/#sle).
    - b. Henry Company; Blueskin VP160: [www.henry.com/#sle](http://www.henry.com/#sle).
      - 1) Location: Exterior Walls
      - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- B. Air Barrier Sheet, Self Adhered Roof Underlayment and Ice and Water Shield
1. Self-adhered membrane for use under Thermal Insulation at Roof to be applied directly on metal pan decking and existing and new wood deck.
  2. Water Vapor Permeance: 25 perms, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M Procedure A (desiccant procedure)
  3. Basis of Design Product
    - a. VaproShield, LLC; SlopeShield Plus - Self-Adhered: [www.vaproshield.com](http://www.vaproshield.com)
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Sealants, Tapes, and Accessories for Sealing Air Barrier and Adjacent Substrates: As indicated or in compliance with air barrier manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Vapor Permeable Roof Underlayment:
1. Self-adhered membrane for use under Thermal Insulation at Roof to be applied directly on metal pan decking and existing and new wood deck.
  2. Water Vapor Permeance: 25 perms, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M Procedure A (desiccant procedure)
  3. Basis of Design Product
    - a. VaproShield, LLC; SlopeShield Plus - Self-Adhered: [www.vaproshield.com](http://www.vaproshield.com)
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Flexible Transition and Flashing Membrane: Part I of Two Part Flashing System.



1. Self-adhered air barrier transition and flashing membrane for all window jambs, headers, door openings, inside and outside corners, and other transitions.
  - a. Basis of Design Product:
    - 1) VaproShield, LLC; RevealFlashing SA - Self-Adhered: [www.vaproshield.com](http://www.vaproshield.com).
    - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- D. Rough Opening Flashing in Existing Window Openings and New Openings: Part II of Two Part Flashing System.
  1. Rough opening flashing recommended by manufacturer.
    - a. Basis of Design Product:
      - 1) VaproShield, LLC; VAPRO-SS FLASHING: [www.vaproshield.com](http://www.vaproshield.com).
      - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- E. Through Wall and Transition Flashing:
  1. Self-adhered flashing membrane including a flexible 2 mil (0.05 mm) stainless steel sheet with an 8 mil (0.20 mm) butyl adhesive backing.
    - a. Basis of Design Product:
      - 1) VaproShield, LLC; VAPRO-SS FLASHING: [www.vaproshield.com](http://www.vaproshield.com).
      - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- F. Termination Bar:
  1. UV-resistant, rigid thermoplastic extrusion.
    - a. Basis of Design Product:
      - 1) VaproTermination Bar™: 1 inch (25 mm) wide x 8 feet (2.4 m) long.
      - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- G. Penetration Sealant:
  1. Provide sealant for penetrations as recommended by manufacturer.
    - a. Basis of Design Products:
      - 1) VaproShield, LLC; VaproBond: [www.vaproshield.com](http://www.vaproshield.com).
      - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- H. Accessory Components, Battens, and Vents: As recommended by primary air barrier membrane manufacturer.
- I. Sealant for Cracks and Joints In Substrates: Resilient elastomeric joint sealant compatible with substrate and air barrier materials.
  1. Application: Apply at 30 to 40 mil, 0.030 to 0.040 inch (0.76 to 1.02 mm), nominal thickness.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready for work of this section.
- B. Do not proceed with this work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, and loose or foreign matter that might interfere with proper installation.
- B. Clean and prime substrate surfaces to receive adhesives and sealants in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. All surfaces must be dry, sound, clean, free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants detrimental to the adhesion of the water resistive air barrier membrane and flashings. Fill voids and gaps in substrate greater than 7/8 inch (22 mm) in width to provide an even surface. Strike masonry joints full-flush.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Air Barriers: Install continuous airtight barrier over surfaces indicated, with sealed seams and with sealed joints to adjacent surfaces.
- C. Ice and Water Shield: Install secondary layer of SlopeShield SA or approved equal in accordance with Michigan Building Code 2015 section 1507
- D. Apply sealants and adhesives within recommended temperature range in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- E. Self-Adhered Sheets:
  - 1. Prepare substrate in accordance with sheet manufacturer's installation instructions; fill and tape joints in substrate and between dissimilar materials.
  - 2. Lap sheets shingle fashion to shed water and seal laps airtight.
  - 3. Once sheets are in place, press firmly into substrate with resilient hand roller; ensure that laps are firmly adhered with no gaps or fishmouths.
  - 4. Use same material, or other material approved by sheet manufacturer, to seal to adjacent substrates, and as flashing.
  - 5. At wide joints, provide extra flexible membrane allowing joint movement.
- F. Transitions and Tie-Ins:
  - 1. Tie-in to structural beams, columns, floor slabs and intermittent floors, parapet curbs, foundation walls, roofing systems and at the interface of dissimilar materials with self-

adhering air barrier transition and flashing membrane.

2. Provide minimum 3 inch (76 mm) lap on to substrates.
3. Ensure minimum 3 inch (76 mm) overlap at side and end laps of membrane and 6 inch (152 mm) at inside and outside corners, if joints occur at corner locations.
4. Roll membrane and lap seams with roller to ensure positive contact and adhesion, immediately.

G. Openings and Penetrations in Exterior Air Barriers:

1. Install flexible flashings around rough openings per manufacturer's written instructions (Part I). Lap a minimum 2-3/4 inch into opening at sill, jamb, and head. Lap materials in shingled fashion and roll seams.
2. Install stainless flashings around rough openings per manufacturer's written instructions (Part II). Cover entire rough opening surface and continue flashing a minimum 1-inch on to wall surface.
3. Service and Other Penetrations:
  - a. Secure pipe, conduit, or penetrating members in a solid position prior to flashing.
  - b. Electrical services penetrating the wall assembly and fully self-adhered vapor permeable air barrier membrane must be placed in appropriate conduit and secured solid into position.
  - c. Install manufactured flanged penetration sleeves as recommended by sleeve manufacturer.
  - d. For straight sided penetrations, cut and fit fully self-adhered vapor permeable air barrier to accommodate sleeve, install VaproLiqui-Flash™ to seal the air barrier membrane to ductwork or preformed flange sleeve.
  - e. Refer to manufacturer's standard details.
4. Fastening Clips and Masonry Ties:
  - a. Consult manufacturer for recommendations on fastener treatments for rain screen cladding attachment components by others.

### 3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Do not leave materials exposed to weather longer than recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 072700**



## **SECTION 074113**

### **METAL ROOF PANELS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Metal roof panel system of preformed steel panels and subgirt framing assembly, with related flashings and accessory components.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Roof sheathing.
- B. Section 061200 - STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANELS FOR ROOFS AND WALLS
- C. Section 072100 - Thermal Insulation: Rigid roof insulation.
- D. Section 072700 - Air Barriers
- E. Section 074213 - Metal Wall Panels: Preformed wall panels.
- F. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between metal roof panel system and adjacent construction.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2020.
- B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- C. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2018a.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- E. ASTM E1592 - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2005 (Reapproved 2017).
- F. ASTM E1646 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 1995 (Reapproved 2018).
- G. ASTM E1680 - Standard Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems; 2016 (Reapproved 2022).

- H. UL 580 - Standard for Tests for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
1. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  2. Installation methods.
  3. Specimen warranty.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show layout and elevations, dimensions, and thickness of panels, connections, details and location of joints, sealants and gaskets, method of anchorage, number of anchors, supports, reinforcement, trim, glazing, and accessories that are specific to this project.
1. Show work to be field-fabricated or field-assembled.
  2. Indicate substrate and adjacent work with which wall system must be coordinated
  3. Include large-scale details of anchorages and connecting elements
- D. Selection Samples: For each roofing system specified, submit color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- E. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- F. Installer's qualification statement.
- G. Test Reports: Indicate compliance of metal roofing system to specified requirements.
- H. Warranty: Submit specified manufacturer's warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and are registered with manufacturer.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section and with at least three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.
- C. Design Engineer's Qualifications: Design structural supports and anchorages under direct supervision of a Structural Engineer experienced in design of this type of Work and licensed in Michigan.
- D. Basis of Design: Specifications are based on wall panel types by specified basis of design manufacturer. Wall panel types manufactured by other acceptable manufacturers are permitted, subject to compliance with specified requirements, and provided that deviations in design, composition, and profile are minor, and do not detract substantially from the indicated design

intent.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Provide strippable plastic protection on prefinished roofing panels for removal after installation.
- B. Store roofing panels on project site as recommended by manufacturer to minimize damage to panels prior to installation.

#### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install metal roof panels, eave protection membrane or underlayment when surface, ambient air, or wind chill temperatures are below 45 degrees F (7 degrees C).

#### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Finish Warranty: Provide 30 year manufacturer standard warranty against excessive degradation of exterior finish. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading, chalking, or flaking. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with warrantor.
- C. Special Warranty: Provide 20 year standard manufacturer warranty for weathertightness of roofing system, including agreement to repair or replace metal roof panels that fail to keep out water commencing on the Date of Substantial Completion. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with warrantor.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Architectural Metal Roof and Wall Panel Manufacturers:
  - 1. ATAS International, Inc; Dutch Seam: [www.atas.com/#sle](http://www.atas.com/#sle).
    - a. Color: Hartford Green
    - b. 24 ga. Metallic Coated Steel
    - c. 19 1/4" Wide Panel with stiffening ribs
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Metal Roof Panels: Provide complete roofing assemblies, including roof panels, clips, fasteners, connectors, and miscellaneous accessories, tested for compliance with the following minimum standards:
  - 1. Structural Design Criteria: Provide panel assemblies designed to safely support design loads at support spacing indicated, with deflection not to exceed L/180 of span length(L) when tested in accordance with ASTM E1592.

2. Overall: Complete weathertight system tested and approved in accordance with ASTM E1592.
3. Provide continuity of water-resistive barrier seal at building enclosure elements; see Section 072700
4. Water Penetration: No water penetration when tested in accordance with procedures and recommended test pressures of ASTM E1646; perform test immediately following air infiltration test.
5. Thermal Movement: Design system to accommodate without deformation anticipated thermal movement over ambient temperature range of 100 degrees F (56 degrees C).

### **2.03 ATTACHMENT SYSTEM**

- A. Concealed System: Provide manufacturer's standard stainless steel or nylon-coated aluminum concealed anchor clips designed for specific roofing system and engineered to meet performance requirements, including anticipated thermal movement.

### **2.04 SECONDARY FRAMING**

- A. Framing Material: ASTM A1011/A1011M Designation SS steel sheet.
  1. Profile: Manufacturer's standard zee, asymmetrical zee, hat channel, and plain channel.
  2. Thickness: 12 gauge, 0.1046 inch (2.657 mm).
  3. Finish: Galvanized per ASTM A653/A653M, G90.
- B. Framing Connectors: Factory-made formed steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M SS Grade 50, with G60/Z180 hot dipped galvanized coating and factory punched holes.

### **2.05 FABRICATION**

- A. Panels: Provide factory or field fabricated panels with applied finish and accessory items, using manufacturer's standard processes as required to achieve specified appearance and performance requirements.

### **2.06 FINISHES**

- A. Fluoropolymer Coil Coating System: Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) multi-coat superior performing organic coatings system complying with AAMA 2605, including at least 70 percent PVDF resin, and at least 80 percent of coil coated metal surfaces having minimum total dry film thickness (DFT) of 0.9 mil, 0.0009 inch (0.023 mm); color and gloss as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.
  1. Products:
    - a. Arkema, Inc; Kynar 500: [www.arkema.com/#sle](http://www.arkema.com/#sle).
    - b. PPG; Duranar: [www.ppgmetalcoatings.com/#sle](http://www.ppgmetalcoatings.com/#sle).



- c. Sherwin-Williams Company; Fluropon: [www.coil.sherwin.com/#sle](http://www.coil.sherwin.com/#sle).
- d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.07 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Items: Provide flashings, trim, moldings, closure strips, preformed crickets, and caps of the same material, thickness, and finish as used for the roofing panels. Items completely concealed after installation may optionally be made of stainless steel.
- B. Rib and Ridge Closures: Provide prefabricated, close-fitting components of steel with corrosion resistant finish or combination steel and closed-cell foam.
  - 1. Vented Closures
    - a. Provide manufacturer's standard vented metal closure trim pieces, including ridge caps and Z-closures
- C. Provide Above sheathing ventilation spacer shim and ventilating mat per drawings
  - 1. Spacer Shim: ASV/TB or approved equal
  - 2. Ventilating Mat: EnkaMat ASV 7010 or approved equal
- D. Sealants:
  - 1. Exposed Sealant: Elastomeric; silicone, polyurethane, or silyl-terminated polyether/polyurethane.
  - 2. Concealed Sealant: Non-curing butyl sealant or tape sealant.
- E. Underlayment: Reference 072700 - Air Barriers

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin installation of preformed metal roof panels until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Coordinate roofing work with provisions for roof drainage, flashing, trim, penetrations, and other adjoining work to ensure that completed roof will be free of leaks.
- B. Remove protective film from surface of roof panels immediately prior to installation; strip film carefully to avoid damage to prefinished surfaces.
- C. Separate dissimilar metals by applying a bituminous coating, self-adhering rubberized asphalt sheet, or other permanent method approved by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- D. Protect surrounding areas and adjacent surfaces from damage during execution of this work.

- E. At locations where metal will be in contact with wood or other absorbent material subject to wetting, seal joints with sealing compound and apply one coat of heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Overall: Install roofing system in accordance with approved shop drawings and metal roof panel manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, as applicable to specific project conditions; securely anchor components of roofing system in place allowing for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Install roofing system with concealed clips and fasteners, except as otherwise recommended by manufacturer for specific circumstances.
  - 2. Minimize field cutting of panels. Where field cutting is required, use methods that will not distort panel profiles. Use of torches for field cutting is prohibited.
- B. Accessories: Install necessary components that are required for complete roofing assembly, including flashings, trim, moldings, closure strips, preformed crickets, caps, rib closures, ridge closures, and similar roof accessory items.
- C. Roof Panels: Install metal roof panels in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions, minimizing transverse joints except at junction with penetrations.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove grease and oil films, excess joint sealer, handling marks, and debris from installation, leaving the work clean and unmarked, free from dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, or other damage to the finish.

### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit storage of materials or roof traffic on installed roof panels. Provide temporary walkways or planks as necessary to avoid damage to completed work. Protect roofing until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged roof panels or accessories before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 074113**

## **SECTION 074213**

### **METAL WALL PANELS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Manufactured metal panels for exterior wall panels and subgirt framing assembly, with related flashings and accessory components.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061200 - STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANELS FOR ROOFS AND WALLS: Wall Panel Substrate
- B. Section 072700 - Air Barriers: Air barrier under wall panels.
- C. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between metal wall panel system and adjacent construction.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2020.
- B. ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and elevations, dimensions, and thickness of panels, connections, details and location of joints, sealants and gaskets, method of anchorage, number of anchors, supports, reinforcement, trim, glashing, and accessories specific to this project.
  - 1. Indicate substrate and adjacent work with which wall system must be coordinated
  - 2. Include large-scale details of anchorages and connecting elements

#### **1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
- B. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- C. Installer's qualification statement.
- D. Warranty Documentation for Installation of Building Rainscreen Assembly: Submit installer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with installer.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- C. Design Engineer's Qualifications: Design structural supports and anchorages under direct supervision of a Structural Engineer experienced in design of this type of Work and licensed in Michigan.
- D. Basis of Design: Specifications are based on wall panel types by specified basis of design manufacturer. Wall panel types manufactured by other acceptable manufacturers are permitted, subject to compliance with specified requirements, and provided that deviations in design, composition, and profile are minor, and do not detract substantially from the indicated design intent.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect panels from accelerated weathering by removing or venting sheet plastic shipping wrap.
- B. Store prefinished material off the ground and protected from weather; prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion; provide ventilation; slope metal sheets to ensure proper drainage.
- C. Prevent contact with materials that may cause discoloration or staining of products.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install wall panels when air temperature or relative humidity are outside manufacturer's limits.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Finish Warranty: Provide 30 year manufacturer standard warranty against excessive degradation of exterior finish. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading,

chalking, or flaking. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with warrantor.

- C. Installation Warranty for Building Rainscreen Assembly: Installer of exterior rainscreen assembly (including air/vapor barrier and attachments, framing, and exterior panels) to provide 10-year warranty that includes coverage for defective materials and/or workmanship. This warranty will also clearly include materials, labor, necessary activity to access these areas, and removal of any materials to effect repairs and restore to watertight conditions.

[www.edacontractors.com/#sle](http://www.edacontractors.com/#sle)

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Metal Wall Panels - Exposed Fasteners:
1. ATAS International, Inc; Corrugated Panel: [www.atas.com/#sle](http://www.atas.com/#sle).
    - a. Material: 24 ga. Metallic Coated Steel
    - b. Color: Hartford Green
    - c. Location: Exterior Rainscreen Above Fiber Cement Panels
  2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
    - a. Or Approved Equal

### **2.02 METAL WALL PANEL SYSTEM**

- A. Wall Panel System: Factory fabricated prefinished metal panel system, site assembled.
1. Provide exterior wall panels and subgirt framing assembly as required by backup wall to match existing.
  2. Design and size components to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of wall.
  3. Maximum Allowable Deflection of Panel:  $L/180$  for length(L) of span.
  4. Movement: Accommodate movement within system without damage to components or deterioration of seals, movement between system and perimeter components when subject to seasonal temperature cycling; dynamic loading and release of loads; and deflection of structural support framing.
  5. Drainage: Provide positive drainage to exterior for moisture entering or condensation occurring within panel system.
  6. Fabrication: Formed true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects; pieces of longest practical lengths.
- B. Subgirt Framing Assembly: thickness and configuration as required by system manufacturer to attach panel system to building.

1. Standard Hat Channel Profile; 7/8" Hat Channel, Horizontal and Vertical for total 1-1/2" rainscreen assembly. Reference drawings
  - a. Location: North, East, West Facades
  - b. Provide galvanic separation tape between dissimilar metals or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer or SMACNA
2. Standard 7/8" Hat Channel Profile with Standard 4" Z-Girt Profile rainscreen assembly. Reference drawings
  - a. Location: South Facade
  - b. Provide galvanic separation tape between dissimilar metals or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer or SMACNA
  - c. Subgirt framing;
- C. Internal and External Corners: Same material, thickness, and finish as exterior sheets; profile to suit system; shop cut and factory mitered to required angles.
- D. Expansion Joints: Same material, thickness and finish as exterior sheets; verify existing gauge and match, \_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_ mm) thick; manufacturer's standard brake formed type, of profile to suit system.
- E. Trim: Same material, thickness and finish as exterior sheets; brake formed to required profiles.
- F. Anchors: Same material as exterior sheets.

### **2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Precoated Steel Sheet: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, Structural Steel (SS) or Forming Steel (FS), with G90/Z275 coating; continuous coil-coated on exposed surfaces with specified finish coating and on panel back with specified panel back coating.

### **2.04 FINISHES**

- A. Exposed Surface Finish: Panel manufacturer's standard polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) coating, top coat over epoxy primer.
- B. Panel Backside Finish: Panel manufacturer's standard siliconized polyester wash coat.
- C. Fluoropolymer Coil Coating System: Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) multi-coat superior performing organic coatings system complying with AAMA 2605, including at least 70 percent PVDF resin, and at least 80 percent of coil coated metal surfaces having minimum total dry film thickness (DFT) of 0.9 mil, 0.0009 inch (0.023 mm); color and gloss as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.
  1. Products:
    - a. Arkema, Inc; Kynar 500: [www.arkema.com/#sle](http://www.arkema.com/#sle).

- b. PPG; Duranar: [www.ppgmetalcoatings.com/#sle](http://www.ppgmetalcoatings.com/#sle).
- c. Sherwin-Williams Company; SHER-NAR 5000: [www.coil.sherwin.com/#sle](http://www.coil.sherwin.com/#sle).
- d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard type to suit application; stainless steel. Fastener cap same color as exterior panel.
  - 1. Metal-to-Metal Fasteners: Self-drilling, self-tapping screws.
- B. Subgirt Framing Assembly: thickness and configuration as required by system manufacturer to attach panel system to building.
  - 1. Standard Hat Channel Profile; 7/8" Vertical over 7/8" horizontal. Reference drawings
    - a. Location: North, East, West Facades
    - b. Provide galvanic separation tape between dissimilar metals or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer or SMACNA
  - 2. Standard 4 inch Z-Girt Profile. Reference drawings
    - a. Location: South Facade
    - b. Provide galvanic separation tape between dissimilar metals or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer or SMACNA
  - 3. Vented Closure Channels
    - a. 1 x 1 perforated closure channel in .063 aluminum
      - 1) Standard Finish: Powder Coat Black
      - 2) Location: Reference Drawings
      - 3) Basis of Design: Monarch Metals Vent Screen 110-0021
    - b. 4 x 1 perforated closure channel in .063 aluminum
      - 1) Standard Finish: Powder Coat Black
      - 2) Location: Reference Drawings
      - 3) Basis of Design: Monarch Metals Vent Screen Custom size made to order
- C. Field Touch-up Paint: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that building framing members are ready to receive panels.
- B. Verify that air barrier, see Section 072700, has been properly installed over wall panel substrate; see Section 054000.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect surrounding areas and adjacent surfaces from damage during execution of this work.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install panels on walls in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fasten panels to structural supports; aligned, level, and plumb.
- C. Locate joints over supports.
- D. Lap panel ends 2 inches (51 mm), minimum.

### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Offset From True Alignment Between Adjacent Members Abutting or In Line: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), maximum.
- B. Variation from Plane or Location As Indicated on Drawings: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), maximum.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Remove site cuttings from finish surfaces.
- B. Remove protective material from wall panel surfaces.
- C. Clean and wash prefinished surfaces with mild soap and water; rinse with clean water.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect metal wall panels until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged wall panels or accessories before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 074213**



## **SECTION 074243**

### **COMPOSITE WALL PANELS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Composite wall panel system and accessories for exterior wall panels and subgirt framing assembly, with related flashings and accessory components.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry
- B. Section 061200 - STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANELS FOR ROOFS AND WALLS
- C. Section 072700 - Air Barriers
- D. Section 072500 - Weather Barriers.
- E. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
- F. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C518
- B. ASTM E330/E330M
- C. ASTM E331
- D. NFPA 268
- E. AAMA 509 - Voluntary Test and Classification Method for Drained and Back Ventilated Rainscreen Wall Cladding Systems; 2022.
- F. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2021.
- G. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2021.
- H. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2018.
- I. ASTM C1186 - Standard Specification for Flat Fiber-Cement Sheets; 2008 (Reapproved 2016).
- J. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- K. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials; 2020.
- L. ASTM E330/E330M - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2014

(Reapproved 2021).

- M. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2000 (Reapproved 2016).
- N. NFPA 268 - Standard Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source; 2022.
- O. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components; 2019.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data sheets on each product.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout, panel locations, and configuration.
  - 1. Indicate size, spacing, and location of support and attachment components, connections, and types and locations of fasteners.
  - 2. Indicate necessary provisions for structural and thermal movement between wall panel system and adjacent materials.
  - 3. Indicate locations and sizes of penetrations through wall panel system for Architect's approval.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of each style and color panel, 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm) in size and showing finish color, sheen, and texture.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Include instructions for storage, handling, preparation, and product installation.
- F. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
  - 1. All fiber cement panels specified in this section must be supplied by a manufacturer with a minimum of 10 years of experience in fabricating and supplying fiber cement cladding systems.
  - 2. Provide technical and design support as needed regarding installation requirements and warranty compliance provisions.
- G. Installer's qualification statement.
  - 1. All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer trained by manufacturer or representative.
- H. Executed panel manufacturer's warranty.
- I. Executed installation warranty.

### **1.05 MOCK-UPS**

- A. Construct mock-up of each panel type, \_\_\_\_ feet (\_\_\_\_ m) long by \_\_\_\_ feet (\_\_\_\_ m) wide. Include panel materials, flashings, weep drainage system, attachments, anchors, trim and termination accessories, and perimeter sealant.
- B. Locate where directed.
- C. Mock-up may remain as part of work.

### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store materials with labels intact in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store products under waterproof cover, well ventilated, and elevated above grade on flat surface.
  - 1. If panels are exposed to water or water vapor prior to installation, allow to completely dry before installing. Failure to do so may result in panel shrinkage at ship lap joints, and such action may void warranty.
- C. Panels MUST be carried on edge. Do not carry or lift panels flat. Improper handling may cause cracking or panel damage.
- D. Direct contact between the panels and the ground should be avoided at all times. It is necessary to keep panels clean during installation process.

### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide 15 year manufacturer warranty for panels. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.
  - 1. Additional 5-year extension available when refinished in year 14-15.
- C. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide 15 year manufacturer warranty against manufactured defects in panel finish.
- D. Installation Warranty for Building Rainscreen Assembly: Provide 10-year warranty including, but not limited to, defective materials and workmanship, labor, and removal of materials to effect repairs and restore to watertight conditions.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Nichiha USA, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.nichiha.com/#sle](http://www.nichiha.com/#sle).
  - 1. Basis of Design Product: Nichiha Architectural Block.

- a. Profile colors: Tuscan.
- b. AWP-1818: 455mm (17-7/8") (h) x 1,818 mm (71-9/16") (l).
- c. Panel Thickness: 16 mm (5/8").
- d. Finish: Matte, lightly textured.
- e. Factory sealed on six [6] sides.

B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.02 COMPOSITE WALL PANELS**

- A. Panels: Fiber-cement sheets complying with ASTM C1186, Type A.
  - 1. Wet Flexural Strength: Result: 1418 psi, Lower Limit: 1015 psi.
  - 2. Water Tightness: No water droplets observed on any specimen.
  - 3. Freeze-thaw: No damage or defects observed
  - 4. Warm Water: No evidence of cracking, delamination, swelling, or other defects observed
  - 5. Heat-Rain: No crazing, cracking, or other deleterious effects, surface or joint changes observed in any specimen
- B. Mean Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion (ASTM E228): Max  $1.0 \times 10^{-5}$  in./in. F
- C. Fiber cement panels manufactured from a pressed, stamped, and autoclaved mix of Portland cement, fly ash, silica, recycled rejects, and wood fiber bundles.
- D. Panel surface pre-finished and machine applied.
- E. Panels profiled along all four edges, such that both horizontal and vertical joints between the installed panels are ship-lapped.
- F. Factory-applied sealant gasket added to top and right panel edges; all joints contain a factory sealant.
- G. Rainscreen Assembly: Ventilated cavity formed by back of panels and water-resistive barrier. Provide positive drainage to exterior from moisture entering or condensation occurring within panel system.
  - 1. Drained and Back-Ventilated Rainscreen System Classification: V1/W1 when tested in accordance with AAMA 509.

## **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Concealed Clip System: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of starter tracks, panel clips, corner clips, sealant backers, and spacers.
  - 1. Ultimate Clip System
    - a. Starter Track: FA 700 - 10' galvalume coated steel

- b. Panel Clips: JEL 778 "Ultimate Clip II" = Zinc-Aluminum-Magnesium alloy coated steel
    - 1) Joint Tab Attachments - Used at all AWP 1818 panel to panel vertical joints
  - c. Corner Clips: JE 777C - Zinc-Aluminum Magnesium alloy coated steel
  - d. Single Flange Sealant Backer - FHK 1015 R - fluorine coated galvalume
  - e. Double Flange Sealant Backer - 10' fluorine coated galvalume
  - f. Corrugated Spacer - FS 1005 - 4'
- B. Subgirt Framing Assembly: thickness and configuration as required by system manufacturer to attach panel system to building.
  - 1. Standard Hat Channel Profile; 7/8" Vertical. Reference drawings
    - a. Location: North, East, West Facades
    - b. Provide galvanic separation tape between dissimilar metals or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer or SMACNA
  - 2. Standard 4 inch Z-Girt Profile. Reference drawings
    - a. Location: South Facade
    - b. Provide galvanic separation tape between dissimilar metals or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer or SMACNA
  - 3. Vented Closure Channels
    - a. 1 x 1 perforated closure channel in .063 aluminum
      - 1) Standard Finish: Powder Coat Black
      - 2) Location: Reference Drawings
      - 3) Basis of Design: Monarch Metals Vent Screen 110-0021
    - b. 4 x 1 perforated closure channel in .063 aluminum
      - 1) Standard Finish: Powder Coat Black
      - 2) Location: Reference Drawings
      - 3) Basis of Design: Monarch Metals Vent Screen Custom size made to order
- C. Fasteners
  - 1. Corrosion resistant fasteners, such as hot-dipped galvanized screws appropriate to local building codes and practices must be used. Use Stainless Steel fasteners in high humidity and high-moisture regions. Panel manufacturer is not liable for corrosion resistance of fasteners. Do not use aluminum fasteners, staples or fasteners that are not rated or designed for intended use. See manufacturer's instructions for appropriate fasteners for construction method used.
- D. Metal Trim: Extruded aluminum, ASTM B221.

1. Corner Key for outside corners
  2. Inside Corners
  3. J-mold Trim for top and bottom of panels
  4. Finish: Standard Powder coating to match panel coloring
- E. Flashing: Sheet aluminum; see Section 076200.
- F. Sealant: ASTM C920, Class 35, elastomeric, polyurethane or silyl-terminated polyether/polyurethane, and capable of being painted.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrate; clean and repair as required to eliminate conditions detrimental to proper installation.
- B. Verify that water-resistive barrier has been properly installed and approved.
- C. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install cladding in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and approved shop drawings.
- B. Wall Panels:
1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Install wall panels with manufacturer's recommended concealed attachment system.
- C. Install control and expansion joints as detailed on drawings.
1. Vertical Joints: Install at locations and with spacings recommended by wall panel manufacturer.
- D. After installation, seal joints. Include joints around penetrations and between wall panels and adjacent construction.
- E. Field Cutting:
1. Always cut fiber cement panels outside or in a well ventilated area. Do not cut the products in an enclosed area.
  2. Always wear safety glasses and NIOSH/OSHA approved respirator whenever cutting, drilling, sawing, sanding or abrading the products. Refer to manufacturer SDS for more information.
  3. Use a dust-reducing circular saw with a diamond-tipped or carbide-tipped blade.
    - a. Recommended circular saw: Makita 7-1/4" Circular Saw with Dust Collector (#5057KB).

- b. Recommended blade: Tenryu Board-Pro Plus PCD Blade (#BP-18505).
- c. Shears (electric or pneumatic) or jig saw can be used for complicated cuttings, such as service openings, curves, radii and scrollwork.
- 4. **Silica Dust Warning:** Fiber cement products may contain some amounts of crystalline silica, a naturally occurring, potentially hazardous mineral when airborne in dust form. Consult product SDS or visit <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/topics/silicacrystalline/>.
- 5. Immediately clean dust from cut panels as it may bind to the finish.

### 3.03 CLEANING

- A. See Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Clean exposed work upon completion of installation; remove grease and oil films, excess joint sealer, handling marks, and debris. Leave work clean, unmarked, and free from dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, or other damage to finish.

**END OF SECTION 074243**





**SECTION 074400**

**CONCRETE FACED PANELS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Perimeter faced insulation panels and protection board for foundation walls

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 033000-Cast-in-Place Concrete footings and grade beams
- B. Section 042000 - Unit Masonry : Masonry Stem Walls
- C. Section 061000-Rough Carpentry: Supporting construction for installation of panels
- D. Section 076200 - Flashing at base of wall assemblies

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2021.
- B. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation; 2019.
- C. ASTM D696 - Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of Plastics Between -30°C and 30°C with a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer; 2016.
- D. ASTM D1621 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties Of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2016.
- E. ASTM D2842 - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2019.
- F. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2021.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Convene at Project site 2 weeks prior to beginning work of this Section.
  - 2. Attendance: Architect, installer, and related trades.
  - 3. Review: Project conditions, manufacturer requirements, delivery and storage, staging and sequencing, and protection of completed work.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See section 013300 - Submittal Procedures
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:

2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
4. Installation methods.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include information on special environmental conditions required for installation and installation techniques.
- E. Samples:
  1. Color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
  2. After color selection submit 4 x 4[ x [ inch samples of each color and patterns.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Minimum 3 years experience in work of this Section.
- B. Manufacturer: Provides design, engineering, fabrication, and testing of required components and assemblies for complete system.
- C. Mockup: Provide mockup for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect materials from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Store panels flat.
- C. Do not drop panels.

#### **1.08 SITE CONDITIONS**

- A. Substrate and ambient air temperature in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer's standard year warranty against defects in materials and workmanship.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Faced Insulated Panel Manufacturers
  1. Contract Documents are based on products by T. Clear Corporation, 800-544-7398, email [sconfer@tclear.com](mailto:sconfer@tclear.com), [www.tclear.com](http://www.tclear.com).
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000-Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Concrete Faced Insulated Perimeter Wall Panels:

1. Basis of Design:
  - a. WallGUARD Concrete Faced Insulated Perimeter Wall Panels by T. Clear Corporation.
2. Construction:
  - a. Extruded polystyrene board, ASTM C578, Type IV, rigid, closed cell, with integral high density skin, with integral 5/16 inch (7.94 mm) thick latex-modified concrete facing.
  - b. Board Size: 2 x 4 feet (121.92 cm) x 3-5/16 inches thick.
  - c. Edges: Tongue-and-groove sides, square ends.
  - d. Thermal resistance: Long term aged R-value of 5 per inch, tested to ASTM C518.
  - e. Foam compressive strength: Minimum 35 PSI, tested to ASTM D1621.
  - f. Compressive strength: Minimum 40 PSI, tested to ASTM D1621.
  - g. Water absorption: Maximum 0.7 percent by volume, tested ASTM D2842.
  - h. Water vapor permeance: 0.8, tested to ASTM E96/E96M.
  - i. Coefficient of lineal thermal Expansion:  $3.5 \times 10^{-5}$  inches (127 mm) per inch x degree F, tested to ASTM D696.
3. Accessories:
  - a. Clips and fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, sized to suit application; as supplied by insulation manufacturer.
  - b. Corner Flashing: UV Stable rigid PVC side flashing
    - 1) Size: 2.25" x 4" x depth to match insulation thickness

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION - CONCRETE FACED INSULATED PERIMETER WALL PANELS**

- A. Surfaces to Receive Panels: Flat, sound, clean, and free from irregularities and or jagged surfaces.
- B. Lay out panels to maximize board sizes. Do not use boards less than 6 inches (152.4 mm) wide.
- C. Install panels in orientation to maximize full sheets.
- D. Install fastening clips and corner side flashing per manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.03 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage during construction.

**END OF SECTION 074400**

**SECTION 075323**

**EPDM THERMOSET SINGLE-PLY ROOFING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Adhered roof system with ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) roofing membrane, including all components specified.
- B. Comply with the published recommendations and instructions of the roofing membrane manufacturer.
- C. Commencement of work by Contractor shall constitute acknowledgement by Contractor that this specification can be satisfactorily executed, under the project conditions and with all necessary prerequisites for warranty acceptance by roofing membrane manufacturer. No modification of the Contract Sum will be made for failure to adequately examine the Contract Documents or the project conditions.
- D. Insulation, flat and tapered.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry.
- B. Section 061200 - STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANELS FOR ROOFS AND WALLS
- C. Section 072100 - Thermal Insulation
- D. Section 072700 - Air Barriers
- E. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- B. ASTM C1289 - Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board; 2022.
- C. ASTM D4637/D4637M - Standard Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-Ply Roof Membrane; 2015 (Reapproved 2021).
- D. NRCA (RM) - The NRCA Roofing Manual; 2025.
- E. UL 790 - Standard for Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Prior to installation of roofing system, meet at project site with Roofer, installers of other work adjoining roof system including penetrating work, and representatives of other entities directly concerned with performance of roofing system including, Owner's insurers, testing agencies, product manufacturers, Architect, and General Contractor.
- B. Where possible, tour representative areas of roofing substrates (decks), and discuss substrate condition.
- C. Review requirements (contract documents), submittals, status of coordinating work, availability of materials and installation facilities, proposed installation schedule, requirements for inspections and testing or certifications, forecasted weather conditions, governing regulations, insurance requirements, and proposed installation procedures. Record discussion including agreement or disagreement on matters of significance; furnish copy of recorded discussions to each participant.
- D. Discuss roofing system protection requirements for construction period extending beyond roofing installation. If meeting ends with substantial disagreements, determine how disagreements will be resolved and set date for reconvened meeting.
- E. Provide at least 72 hours advance notice to participants prior to convening pre-roofing conference.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit specifications, installation instruction and general recommendations from manufacturers of flexible sheet roofing system materials, for types of roofing required. Include data substantiating that materials comply with requirements.
- C. Shop drawings: Submit shop drawings for approval. Shop drawings are required for final inspection of the roof.
- D. Shop drawings shall include:
  - 1. Outline of roof and roof size showing general scope of work included for this project.
    - a. Types of roof penetrations and typical details.
    - b. Insulation type, brand and thickness.
    - c. Warranty type and period.
    - d. Anticipated walkway layout
- E. Warranty:

1. Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
2. Submit installer's certification that installation complies with all warranty conditions for the waterproof membrane.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section:
1. With minimum five (5) years documented experience.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products in manufacturer's original containers, dry, undamaged, with seals and labels intact.
- B. Protect products in weather protected environment, clear of ground and moisture.
- C. Protect foam insulation from direct exposure to sunlight.
- D. Keep Safety Data Sheets (SDS) at the project site at all times during transportation, storage, and installation of materials.
- E. Comply with requirements from Owner to prevent overloading or disturbance of the structure when loading materials onto the roof.

#### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. System Warranty: Provide manufacturer's system warranty agreeing to repair or replace roofing that leaks or is damaged due to wind or other natural causes.
1. Warranty Term: 20 years.
  2. For repair and replacement include costs of both material and labor in warranty.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURER**

- A. Basis of design Manufacturer: Carlisle SynTec: [www.carlisle-syntec.com/#sle](http://www.carlisle-syntec.com/#sle).
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 ROOFING APPLICATIONS**

- A. EPDM Membrane Roofing: One ply membrane, fully adhered, over insulation.
- B. Roofing Assembly Performance Requirements and Design Criteria:
1. Roof Covering External Fire Resistance Classification: Class C when tested per UL 790.
  2. Wind Uplift:
    - a. Designed to withstand wind uplift forces calculated with ASCE 7.

- b. Design Wind Speed: In accordance with local building code and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- 3. Insulation Thermal Resistance (R-Value): Provide R-30, minimum, over entire roof deck.

## **2.03 ROOFING MEMBRANE AND ASSOCIATED MATERIALS**

- A. Membrane:
  - 1. Material: Ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM); ASTM D4637/D4637M, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2. Attachment Method: Fully adhered.
  - 3. Thickness: 60 mils (0.060 inch) (1.5 mm), minimum.
  - 4. Sheet Width: Factory fabricated into largest sheets possible.
  - 5. Color: Black.
  - 6. Performance:
    - a. Tensile Strength: 1550 psi (10.7 MPa) minimum.
    - b. Tear Resistance: 200 lbf/in (35 kN/m) minimum.
    - c. Elongation: 480 percent.
  - 7. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Carlisle Sure-Tough.
- B. Seaming Materials: As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- C. Vapor Retarder: Specified in Section 072700 - Air Barriers.
- D. Flexible Flashing Material: Same material as membrane.
- E. Base Flashing: Provide waterproof, fully adhered base flashing system at all penetrations, plane transitions, and terminations.

## **2.04 INSULATION**

- A. Tapered Polyisocyanurate(ISO) Board Insulation: Closed cell polyisocyanurate foam core bonded on glass reinforced felt (GRF), complying with ASTM C1289 Type II Class 1, with the following additional characteristics:
  - 1. Custom manufactured for contour sloping. Provide minimum 1/4" per foot slope to roof drains.
  - 2. Minimum R-value: 30, provide minimum R-value at thinnest point.
  - 3. Compressive Strength: 20 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM C1289.
  - 4. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. InsulBase Tapered Polyiso

## **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Prefabricated Flashing Accessories:



1. Corners and Seams: Same material as membrane, in manufacturer's standard thicknesses.
  2. Penetrations: Same material as membrane, with manufacturer's standard cut-outs, rigid inserts, clamping rings, and flanges.
  3. Sealant Pockets: Same material as membrane, with manufacturer's standard accessories, in manufacturer's standard configuration.
  4. Sure-Seal Pressure-Sensitive Reinforced Universal Securement Strip (RUSS) As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- B. Insulation Adhesive: Two component polyurethane, expanding foam .
- C. Insulation Fasteners: Appropriate for purpose intended and approved by Factory Mutual and roofing manufacturer.
- D. Membrane Adhesive: As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- E. Surface Conditioner for Adhesives: Compatible with membrane and adhesives.
- F. Sealants: As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- G. Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard, clear, solvent-based cleaner.
- H. Primer: Manufacturer's recommended product.
- I. Edgings and Terminations: Manufacturer's standard edge and termination accessories.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 GENERAL**

- A. Comply with the manufacturer's published instructions for the installation of the membrane roofing system including proper substrate preparation, jobsite considerations and weather restrictions.
- B. Position sheets to accommodate contours of the roof deck and shingle splices to avoid bucking water.

#### **3.02 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces and site conditions are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify deck is supported and secure.
- C. Verify deck is clean and smooth, flat, free of depressions, waves, or projections, properly sloped and suitable for installation of roof system.
- D. Verify deck surfaces are dry and free of snow or ice.
- E. Verify that roof openings, curbs, and penetrations through roof are solidly set, and cant strips are in place.

### **3.03 PREPARATION, GENERAL**

- A. Clean substrate thoroughly prior to roof application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Do not begin work until other work that requires foot or equipment traffic on roof is complete.
- D. A vapor retarder / temporary roof (Carlisle VapAir Seal 725TR Air & Vapor Barrier/Temporary Roof or Carlisle VapAir Seal MD Air & Vapor Barrier) may be applied to protect the inside of the structure prior to the roof system installation.

### **3.04 WOOD DECK PREPARATION**

- A. Verify flatness and tightness of joints of wood decking. Verify that all wood decking edges are fully supported. Fill knot holes with latex filler or completely cover with securely nailed sheet metal.
- B. Confirm dry deck by moisture meter with 12 percent moisture maximum.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Perform work in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NRCA (RM) applicable requirements.
- B. Do not apply roofing membrane during unsuitable weather.
- C. Do not apply roofing membrane when ambient temperature is outside the temperature range recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Do not apply roofing membrane to damp or frozen deck surface or when precipitation is expected or occurring.
- E. Do not expose materials vulnerable to water or sun damage in quantities greater than can be weatherproofed the same day.
- F. Coordinate the work with installation of associated counterflashings installed by other sections as the work of this section proceeds.
- G. When substrate preparation is responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding.

### **3.06 INSULATION APPLICATION**

- A. Apply vapor retarder to deck surface with adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. Extend vapor retarder under cant strips and blocking to deck edge.
  - 2. Install flexible flashing from vapor retarder to air seal material of wall construction, lap and seal to provide continuity of the air barrier plane.

- B. Ensure vapor retarder is clean and dry, continuous, and ready for application of insulation.
- C. Install insulation or membrane underlayment over the substrate with boards butted tightly together with no 16 joints or gaps greater than 1/4 inch. Stagger joints both horizontally and vertically if multiple layers are provided.
- D. Attachment of Insulation: Mechanically fasten insulation to deck in accordance with roofing manufacturer's instructions and Factory Mutual requirements.
  - 1. Use at least 15 fasteners per board 48" x 96" board.
  - 2. Use at least one(1) fasteners per 2 sq ft (\_\_\_\_ sq m).
- E. Place tapered insulation to the required slope pattern in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Do not apply more insulation than can be completely waterproofed in the same day.

### **3.07 MEMBRANE PLACEMENT AND BONDING**

- A. Unroll and position membrane without stretching. Allow the membrane to relax for approximately 1/2 hour before bonding.
- B. Apply the Bonding Adhesive in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and coverage rates, to both the underside of the membrane and the substrate. Allow the adhesive to dry until it is tacky but will not string or stick to a dry finger touch.
  - 1. Roll the coated membrane into the coated substrate while avoiding wrinkles. Brush down the bonded half of the membrane sheet with a soft bristle push broom to achieve maximum contact.
  - 2. Fold back the unbonded half of the membrane sheet and repeat the bonding procedure.
- C. Install adjoining membrane sheets in the same manner, overlapping edges approximately 4 inches. Do not apply bonding adhesive to the splice area.

### **3.08 MEMBRANE SPLICING**

- A. Position membrane sheet to allow for required splice overlap. Mark the bottom sheets with an indelible marker approximately 1/4" to 1/2" from the top sheet edge. The pre-marked line on the membrane edge can also be used as a guide for positioning splice tape.
- B. When the membrane is contaminated with dirt, fold the top sheet back and clean the dry splice area (minimum 3" wide) of both membrane sheets by scrubbing with clean natural fiber rags saturated with Sure-Seal Weathered Membrane Cleaner. When using Sure-Seal (black) PRE-KLEENED membrane, cleaning the splice area is not required unless contaminated with field

dirt or other residue.

- C. Apply EPDM Primer or Low VOC EPDM Primer to splice area and permit to flash off. Primer must be applied to both the top membrane layer and the bottom membrane layer.
- D. When adhering Factory Applied Tape (FAT), pull the poly backing from FAT beneath the top sheet and allow the top sheet to fall freely onto the exposed primed surface. Press top sheet on to the bottom sheet using firm even hand pressure across the splice towards the splice edge.
- E. For end laps, apply 3" or 6" SecurTAPE to the primed membrane surface in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. Remove the poly backing and roll the top sheet onto the mating surface.
- F. Tape splices must be a minimum of 2-1/2" wide using 3" wide (Butyl/EPDM) SecurTAPE that is a minimum 25-mil thick. SecurTAPE must extend 1/8" minimum to 1/2" maximum beyond the splice edge. Field splices at roof drains must be located outside the drain sump.
- G. Immediately roll the splice using positive pressure when using a 2" wide steel roller. Roll across the splice edge, not parallel to it. When FAT is used, Carlisle's Stand-Up Seam Roller can be used to roll parallel to the splice edge.
- H. At all field splice intersections, apply Lap Sealant along the edge of the membrane splice to cover the exposed SecurTAPE 2" in each direction from the splice intersection. Install Carlisle's Pressure-Sensitive "T" Joint Coversor a 6" wide section (with rounded corners) of Sure-Seal Pressure-Sensitive Elastoform Flashing over the field splice intersection.

### **3.09 FLASHING**

- A. Wall and curb flashing shall be cured EPDM membrane. Continue the deck membrane as wall flashing where practicable. Use Pressure-Sensitive Curb Wrap when possible to flash curb units.
- B. Follow manufacturer's typical flashing procedures for all wall, curb, and penetration flashing including metal edging/coping and roof drain applications.

### **3.10 WALKWAYS**

- A. Install walkways at all traffic concentration points (such as roof hatches, access doors, rooftop ladders, etc.) and all locations as identified on the specifier's drawing.
- B. Adhere walkways pads or rubber pavers to the EPDM membrane in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

### **3.11 DAILY SEAL**

- A. On phased roofing, when the completion of flashings and terminations is not achieved by the end of the work day, a daily seal must be performed.

### **3.12 CLEANING**

- A. Perform daily clean-up to collect all wrappings, empty containers, paper, and other debris from the project site. Upon completion, all debris must be disposed of in a legally acceptable manner.
- B. Prior to the manufacturer's inspection for warranty, the applicator must perform a pre-inspection to review all work and to verify all flashing has been completed as well as the application of all caulking.

### **3.13 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed roofing and flashings from construction operations.
- B. Where traffic must continue over finished roof membrane, protect surfaces using durable materials.

**END OF SECTION 075323**



**SECTION 076200**

**SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fabricated sheet metal items, including flashings, counterflashings, and exterior penetrations.
- B. Sealants for joints within sheet metal fabrications.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood nailers for sheet metal work.
- B. Section 074113 - Metal Roof Panels
- C. Section 074213 - Metal Wall Panels
- D. Section 074243 - Composite Wall Panels
- E. Section 075323 - EPDM Thermoset Single-Ply Roofing
- F. Section 077123 - Manufactured Gutters and Downspouts.
- G. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing non-lap joints between sheet metal fabrications and adjacent construction.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2020.
- B. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2020.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- D. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- E. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2020.
- F. ASTM B209/B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2021a.
- G. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2018.
- H. ASTM D226/D226M - Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing; 2017.
- I. CDA A4050 - Copper in Architecture - Handbook; current edition.
- J. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; 2012.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate with roofing and siding work for scheduling installation of counterflashing, rain drainage and similar items related to roofing.
  - 2. Coordinate roofing manufacturer approval of edge metal with system warranty requirements specified in Section 07 53 23 - EPDM Thermoset Single-Ply Roofing.
  - 3. Coordinate with the work of Section 07 92 00 for installation of related sealants.
- B. Sequencing: Do not proceed with installation of flashing and sheet metal work until substrate construction, cants, blocking, reglets, and other construction are ready to receive the work of this Section.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on shape of components, materials and finishes, anchor types and locations.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details.
  - 1. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
  - 2. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
  - 3. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
  - 4. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
  - 5. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA (ASMM) and CDA A4050 requirements and standard details, except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Maintain one copy of each document on site.
- C. Fabricator and Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in sheet metal work with five years of documented experience.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, and abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.



- B. Prevent contact with materials that could cause discoloration or staining.
- C. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Sheet Metal Assemblies:
  - 1. Capable of withstanding structural movement and exposure to wind and weather without failure or permanent deformation.
    - a. Design Pressure: As indicated on structural drawings.
  - 2. Physically protect building elements and systems from damage that would permit water leakage into building enclosure assemblies under all weather conditions.
- B. Sheet Metal Standards: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### **2.02 SHEET MATERIALS**

- A. Manufacturer's standard recommended material to interface with metal roofing, metal wall panels, aluminum framed windows and composite panels.
- B. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24-gauge, 0.0239-inch (0.61 mm) thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF coating.
  - 1. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Coating: Superior performing organic powder coating, AAMA 2605; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer finish system.
  - 2. Color: As indicated on drawings.
- C. Anodized Aluminum: ASTM B209/B209M, 3005 alloy, H12 or H14 temper; 20 gauge, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick; clear anodized finish.
  - 1. Clear Anodized Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, clear anodic coating not less than 0.7 mil, 0.0007 inch (0.018 mm) thick.
- D. Pre-Finished Aluminum: ASTM B209/B209M, 3005 alloy, H12 or H14 temper; 18 gauge, 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick; plain finish shop pre-coated with silicone modified polyester coating.

1. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Coating: Superior performing organic powder coating, AAMA 2605; pretreated metal with two-coat system including primer and color coat with at least 70 percent PVDF coating.
  2. Color: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Stainless Steel: ASTM A666, Type 304 alloy, soft temper, 28 gauge, 0.0156 inch (0.40 mm) thick; smooth No. 4 - Brushed finish.

### **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
- B. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- C. Fabricate cleats and starter strips of same material as exposed sheet, one gage thickness heavier than exposed sheet, and interlockable with exposed sheet.
  1. Provide continuous cleat strips for metal copings and flashings.
- D. Form pieces in longest possible lengths.
- E. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch (13 mm); miter and seam corners.
- F. Form material with flat lock seams, except where otherwise indicated; at moving joints, use sealed lapped, bayonet-type or interlocking hooked seams.
- G. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18-inch (450 mm) long legs; seam for rigidity, seal with sealant.
- H. Fabricate vertical faces with bottom edge formed outward 1/4 inch (6 mm) and hemmed to form drip.
- I. Counterflashings: Factory fabricated and finished sheet metal that overlaps top edges of base flashing by at least 4 inches, and designed to snap into thru-wall flashing or reglets with lapped joints. Provide spring action pressure at bottom edge against base flashings.
  1. Type and Finish: See Sheet Metal Schedule
- J. Copings: Reference Section 074113 Metal Roof Panels. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot long sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and interior leg. Miter corners, solder or weld watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  1. Pull-Off Resistance: Tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 using test method RE-3 to positive and negative design wind pressure as defined by applicable local building code and as indicated in Structural Drawings.
  2. Coping Profile: As indicated on Drawings.

3. Joint Style: Butt, with 12-inch wide, concealed backup plate.
4. Type and Finish: See Sheet Metal Schedule.
- K. Openings Flashing: Fabricate head, sill, jamb and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high end dams.
  1. Type and Finish: See Sheet Metal Schedule.
- L. Provide for thermal expansion/contraction of all exposed sheet metal work exceeding 12 feet in running length, except as otherwise indicated.
  1. Exposed Flashings and Trim: 10 feet maximum spacing, and not closer than 24 inches from corners and intersections.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal..
  1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  2. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
  3. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel
- B. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- C. Protective Backing Paint: Zinc molybdate alkyd.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, noncorrosive compound free of asbestos, sulfur, and other deleterious impurities; 15 mil dry film thickness per coat.
- E. Concealed Sealants: Non-curing butyl sealant.
- F. Exposed Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric sealant, with minimum movement capability as recommended by manufacturer for substrates to be sealed; color to match adjacent material.
- G. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I.
- H. Solder: ASTM B32; Sn50 (50/50) type.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.
- B. Back paint concealed metal surfaces with protective backing paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 15 mil, 0.015 inch (0.4 mm).

### **3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Comply with SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
  - 1. Coat back side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where concealed flashing and trim will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum downspout that come into contact with dissimilar metals with two coats of clear lacquer.
  - 3. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or install a course of polyethylene sheet.
- C. Cleats and Edge Strips: Secure edges of sheet metal members over 12 inches wide, and at other indicated locations with cleats. Fasten cleats at maximum 12 inches on center unless otherwise indicated. Provide continuous edge strips at eaves and gable ends for attaching exposed terminating edge of copings, gravel stops, or fascias. Provide minimum 1/8 inch butt joints as required to accommodate thermal movement.
- D. Copings: Extend front and back edges of coping down over continuous interlocking edge strip. Terminate rear edge with hemmed and folded edge over roof base flashings, or interlock with adjacent flashings as indicated. Miter, seam, weld, and seal corners.

- E. Recessed Reglet Flashings and Counterflashings: Insert flashings full depth into recessed reglet. Anchor by mechanical means, including driven wedges of lead or other compatible metal spaced at 12 inches on center. Seal joint with elastomeric sealant specified in Section 07 92 00.
- F. Surface Mounted Reglet Flashings and Counterflashings: Place surface mounted reglet not less than 9 inches above top of cant strip. Place sealant in preformed groove on back of reglet and on lap before installation. Secure reglet to wall with power driven pins through neoprene washers spaced not less than 16 inches on center. Fill top groove with elastomeric sealant specified in Section 07 92 00. After roofing is installed, install snap-lock counterflashing.
  - 1. Lap counterflashing end joints minimum 3 inches. Do not solder joints. Provide continuous counterflashings at angles and corners, and lap over roof base flashings minimum 4 inches, unless detailed otherwise.
- G. Secure flashings in place using concealed fasteners, and use exposed fasteners only where permitted..
- H. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.
- I. Fit flashings tight in place; make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - WALL FLASHINGS**

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - PRE-FINISHED SHEET METAL**

- A. Take special care in the handling and installation to avoid damage to finish.
- B. Remove protective film from each unit after installation, but not before adjacent construction is complete.
- C. Touch up minor damage or defects to match factory finish. Replace units which are excessively damaged as determined by Architect.

### **3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On

completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.

### **3.07 SCHEDULE**

- A. Copings, Metal:
  - 1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel: 0.0276 inch.
  - 2. Finish: To match Standing Seam Metal Roof and Corrugated Wall Finish
- B. Counterflashings, Visible:
  - 1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel: 0.0217 inch.
  - 2. Finish: PVDF Coating To match Standing Seam Metal Roof and Corrugated Wall Finish
- C. Counterflashings, Concealed:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch.
  - 2. Finish: 2D dull annealed.
- D. Flashing Receivers, Visible:
  - 1. Prefinished Galvanized Steel: 0.0217 inch.
  - 2. Finish: PVDF Coating To match Standing Seam Metal Roof and Corrugated Wall Finish
- E. Flashing Receivers, Concealed:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch.
  - 2. Finish: 2D dull annealed.
- F. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Fabrications, Flashings, and Top of Wall Closures, Visible:
  - 1. Prefinished Galvanized Sheet Steel: 0.0276 inch.
  - 2. Finish: PVDF Coating To match Standing Seam Metal Roof and Corrugated Wall Finish
- G. Openings Flashing in Frame Construction, Visible:
  - 1. Prefinished Galvanized Sheet Steel: 0.0217 inch.
  - 2. Finish: PVDF Coating To match Standing Seam Metal Roof and Corrugated Wall Finish
- H. Openings Flashing in Frame Construction, Concealed:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch.
  - 2. Finish: 2D dull annealed.
- I. Aluminum Glazing Frame Flashing, Concealed:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch.
  - 2. Finish: Clear Anodized Aluminum
- J. Aluminum Glazing Frame Flashing, Visible:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch.
  - 2. Finish: PVDF Coating To match Standing Seam Metal Roof and Corrugated Wall Finish

- K. Aluminum Glazing Frame Sill Extensions, Visible:
  - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch.
  - 2. Finish: PVDF Coating To match Standing Seam Metal Roof and Corrugated Wall Finish
- L. Equipment Support Flashing:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch.
  - 2. Finish: 2D dull annealed.

**END OF SECTION 076200**





**SECTION 077123**

**MANUFACTURED GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Pre-Finished Steel Gutters

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 074113 - Metal Roof Panels
- B. Section 074213 - Metal Wall Panels
- C. Section 075323 - EPDM Thermoset Single-Ply Roofing
- D. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
- E. Section 099000 - Interior and Exterior Paints and Coatings
- F. Section 220000 - Storm Drainage Piping: Connection of downspouts to storm sewer.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2020.
- B. AAMA 2604 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for High Performance Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2021.
- C. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2020.
- D. ASTM A48/A48M - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings; 2003 (Reapproved 2021).
- E. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- F. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- G. ASTM B209/B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2021a.
- H. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2020.
- I. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; 2012.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with SMACNA (ASMM) for sizing components for rainfall intensity determined by a storm occurrence of 1 in 100 year.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on prefabricated components.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locations, configurations, jointing methods, fastening methods, locations, and installation details.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. See Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for packaging waste requirements.
- B. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope to drain.
- C. Prevent contact with materials that could cause discoloration, staining, or damage.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Gutters: Same manufacturer as metal roofing and siding manufacturer
  - 1. ATAS International, Inc; Water Control System: [www.atas.com/#sle](http://www.atas.com/#sle).
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Storm Piping
  - 1. Reference Section 22 00 00 - Storm Drainage Piping
- B. Gutter Material: Manufacturer's standard recommended material to interface with metal roofing and metal wall panels.
  - 1. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24-gauge, 0.0239-inch (0.61 mm) thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF coating.
    - a. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Coating: Superior performing organic powder coating, AAMA 2605; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer finish system.
    - b. Color: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Pre-Finished Aluminum: ASTM B209/B209M, 3005 alloy, H12 or H14 temper; 18 gauge, 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick; plain finish shop pre-coated with silicone modified polyester

coating.

- a. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Coating: Superior performing organic powder coating, AAMA 2605; pretreated metal with two-coat system including primer and color coat with at least 70 percent PVDF coating.
  - b. Color: As indicated on drawings.
3. Stainless Steel: ASTM A666, Type 304 alloy, soft temper, 28 gauge, 0.0156 inch (0.40 mm) thick; smooth No. 4 - Brushed finish.
- C. Gutters: SMACNA (ASMM) Rectangular profile size as indicated on drawings

## **2.03 COMPONENTS**

- A. Anchors and Supports: Profiled to suit gutters and downspouts.
1. Anchoring Devices: In accordance with CDA requirements.
  2. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.

## **2.04 FABRICATION**

- A. Form gutters of profiles and size indicated on drawings.
- B. Fabricate with required connection pieces.
- C. Form sections square, true, and accurate in size, in maximum possible lengths, free of distortion or defects detrimental to appearance or performance. Allow for expansion at joints.
- D. Hem exposed edges of metal.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Paint concealed sheet metal surfaces and surfaces in contact with dissimilar metals with protective backing paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 15 mil, 0.015 inch (0.381 mm).

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Reference Section 22 00 00 for Storm Drainage Piping.
- B. Install gutters, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Slope gutters 1/8 inch per foot (\_\_\_\_ mm/m) minimum .

- D. Connect downspouts to storm sewer system. Grout connection watertight.

**END OF SECTION 077123**

**SECTION 079200**

**JOINT SEALANTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Nonsag gunnable joint sealants.
- B. Self-leveling pourable joint sealants.
- C. Joint backings and accessories.
- D. Owner-provided field quality control.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 13 00 - Sheet Waterproofing.
- B. Section 07 27 00 - Air Barriers.
- C. Section 07 92 01 Restoration Joint Sealants.
- D. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C661 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Elastomeric-Type Sealants by Means of a Durometer.
- B. ASTM C794 - Standard Test Method for Adhesion-In-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- C. ASTM C834 - Standard Specification for Latex Sealants.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- E. ASTM C1087 - Standard Test Method for Determining Compatibility of Liquid-Applied Sealants with Accessories Used in Structural Glazing Systems.
- F. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
- G. ASTM C1248 - Standard Test Method for Staining of Porous Substrate by Joint Sealants.
- H. ASTM C1311 - Standard Specification for Solvent Release Sealants.
- I. ASTM C1330 - Standard Specification for Cylindrical Sealant Backing for Use with Cold Liquid-Applied Sealants.
- J. ASTM C1521 - Standard Practice for Evaluating Adhesion of Installed Weatherproofing Sealant Joints.
- K. SCAQMD 1168 - South Coast Air Quality Management District Rule No.1168.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data for Sealants: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheets for each product to be used, that includes the following.

1. Physical characteristics, including movement capability, VOC content, hardness, cure time, and color availability.
  2. List of backing materials approved for use with the specific product.
  3. Substrates that product is known to satisfactorily adhere to and with which it is compatible.
  4. Substrates the product should not be used on.
  5. Substrates for which use of primer is required.
  6. Substrates for which laboratory adhesion and/or compatibility testing is required.
  7. Installation instructions, including precautions, limitations, and recommended backing materials and tools.
  8. Sample product warranty.
  9. Certification by manufacturer indicating that product complies with specification requirements.
- B. Color Cards for Selection: Where sealant color is not specified, submit manufacturer's color cards showing standard colors available for selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: Where custom sealant color is specified, obtain directions from Architect and submit at least two physical samples for verification of color of each required sealant.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  4. Joint-sealant color.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section and with at least three years of documented experience.
- C. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Arrange for sealant manufacturer(s) to test each combination of sealant, substrate, backing, and accessories.
1. Adhesion Testing: In accordance with ASTM C794.
  2. Compatibility Testing: In accordance with ASTM C1087.
  3. Stain Testing: In accordance with ASTM C1248; required only for masonry substrates.
  4. Allow sufficient time for testing to avoid delaying the work.
  5. Deliver to manufacturer sufficient samples for testing.

6. Report manufacturer's recommended corrective measures, if any, including primers or techniques not indicated in product data submittals.
  7. Testing is not required if sealant manufacturer provides data showing previous testing, not older than 24 months, that shows satisfactory adhesion, lack of staining, and compatibility.
- D. Field Quality Control Plan:
1. Visual inspection of entire length of sealant joints.
  2. Non-destructive field adhesion testing of sealant joints, except interior acrylic latex sealants.
    - a. For each different sealant and substrate combination, allow for one test every 12 inches in the first 10 linear feet of joint and one test every 24 inches thereafter.
    - b. If any failures occur in the first 10 linear feet, continue testing at 12 inch intervals at no extra cost to Owner.
  3. Field Quality Control Log Form: Show same data fields as on Preinstallation Field Adhesion Test Log, with known information filled out and lines for multiple tests per sealant/substrate combinations; include visual inspection and specified field testing; allow for possibility that more tests than minimum specified may be necessary.
- E. Field Adhesion Test Procedures:
1. Allow sealants to fully cure as recommended by manufacturer before testing.
  2. Have a copy of the test method document available during tests.
  3. Take photographs or make video records of each test, with joint identification provided in the photos/videos; for example, provide small erasable whiteboard positioned next to joint.
  4. Record the type of failure that occurred, other information required by test method, and the information required on the Field Quality Control Log.
  5. When performing destructive tests, also inspect the opened joint for proper installation characteristics recommended by manufacturer, and report any deficiencies.
  6. Deliver the samples removed during destructive tests in separate sealed plastic bags, identified with project, location, test date, and test results, to Owner.
  7. If any combination of sealant type and substrate does not show evidence of minimum adhesion or shows cohesion failure before minimum adhesion, report results to Architect.
- F. Non-Destructive Field Adhesion Test: Test for adhesion in accordance with ASTM C1521, using Nondestructive Spot Method.
1. Record results on Field Quality Control Log.
  2. Repair failed portions of joints.

- G. Field Adhesion Tests of Joints: Test for adhesion using most appropriate method in accordance with ASTM C1521, or other applicable method as recommended by manufacturer.

## **1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. Correct defective work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories that fail to achieve watertight seal , exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL**

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, unless otherwise indicated

### **2.02 JOINT SEALANT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Scope:
1. Exterior Joints: Seal open joints, whether or not the joint is indicated on drawings, unless specifically indicated not to be sealed. Exterior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
    - a. Wall expansion and control joints.
    - b. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
    - c. Joints between different exposed materials.
    - d. Openings below ledge angles in masonry.
    - e. Other joints indicated below.
  2. Interior Joints: Do not seal interior joints unless specifically indicated to be sealed. Interior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
    - a. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
    - b. In sound-rated wall and ceiling assemblies, gaps at electrical outlets, wiring devices, piping, and other openings; between wall/ceiling and other construction; and other flanking sound paths.
      - 1) Exception: Through-penetrations in sound-rated assemblies that are also fire-rated assemblies.
    - c. Other joints indicated below.
  3. Do not seal the following types of joints.



- a. Intentional weepholes in masonry.
  - b. Joints indicated to be treated with manufactured expansion joint cover or some other type of sealing device.
  - c. Joints where sealant is specified to be provided by manufacturer of product to be sealed.
  - d. Joints where installation of sealant is specified in another section.
  - e. Joints between suspended panel ceilings/grid and walls.
- B. Exterior Joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal non-traffic surfaces, Type JS-1.
  - 1. Locations:
    - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
    - c. Joints between metal panels or metal materials.
    - d. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
    - f. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
- C. Exterior Joints in vertical surfaces, Type JS-2.
  - 1. Locations:
    - a. Joints between walls and adjoining interior storefront/curtain wall.
- D. Interior Joints in horizontal traffic surfaces, Type JS-3.
  - 1. Locations:
    - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
- E. Interior Joints in vertical drywall surfaces and perimeter joints in drywall, Type JS-5.
  - 1. Locations:
    - a. Interior non-moving exposed sealant joints in gypsum drywall construction
    - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows, and elevator entrances.
- F. Interior Mildew-Resistant Joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal non-traffic surfaces, Type JS-6.
  - 1. Locations:
    - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - b. Wall tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
- G. Concealed Mastics, Type JS-7.

1. Locations:
  - a. Aluminum thresholds.
  - b. Sill plates.
- H. Exterior Joints in horizontal traffic surfaces, Type JS-8.
  1. Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints in paving units where indicated.
    - b. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - c. Joints between different materials listed above.

## **2.03 JOINT SEALANTS - GENERAL**

- A. Sealants and Primers: Provide products having lower volatile organic compound (VOC) content than indicated in SCAQMD 1168.
- B. Colors for concealed locations: Manufacturer's Standard.
- C. Colors for exposed locations: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's Standard Range.

## **2.04 NONSAG JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Type JS-1 - Non-Staining Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
  1. Movement Capability: Plus 100 percent, minus 50 percent, minimum.
  2. Non-Staining To Porous Stone: Non-staining to light-colored natural stone and marble when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
  3. Dirt Pick-Up: Reduced dirt pick-up compared to other silicone sealants.
  4. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  5. Manufacturers:
    - a. Dow Chemical Company; DOWSIL 790 Silicone Building Sealant: [consumer.dow.com/en-us/industry/ind-building-construction.html/#sle](http://consumer.dow.com/en-us/industry/ind-building-construction.html/#sle).
    - b. Pecora Corporation; 890 NST: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
    - c. Sika Corporation; Sikasil WS-290: [www.usa-sika.com/#sle](http://www.usa-sika.com/#sle).
    - d. Tremco Commercial Sealants & Waterproofing; Spectrem 1: [www.tremcosealants.com/#sle](http://www.tremcosealants.com/#sle).
- B. Type JS-2 - Non-Staining Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
  1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 50 percent, minimum.
  2. Non-Staining To Porous Stone: Non-staining to light-colored natural stone and marble when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.

3. Dirt Pick-Up: Reduced dirt pick-up compared to other silicone sealants.
4. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
5. Manufacturers:
  - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 756 SMS Building Sealant: [www.dowcorning.com/construction/sle](http://www.dowcorning.com/construction/sle).
  - b. Sika Corporation U.S.; SikaSil-WS295.
  - c. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 3.
- C. Type JS-5 - Acrylic Emulsion Latex: Water-based; ASTM C834, single component, non-staining, non-bleeding, non-sagging; not intended for exterior use.
  1. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  2. Grade: ASTM C834; Grade - Minus 18 Degrees C.
  3. Manufacturers:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
    - b. Sherwin-Williams Company; 950A Siliconized Acrylic Latex Caulk: [www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle](http://www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle).
    - c. Tremco Commercial Sealants & Waterproofing; Tremflex 834: [www.tremcosealants.com/#sle](http://www.tremcosealants.com/#sle).
    - d. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.
- D. Type JS-6 - Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single component, mildew resistant; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; 860: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
    - b. Sika Corporation; Sikasil GP: [www.usa-sika.com/#sle](http://www.usa-sika.com/#sle).
    - c. Dow Corning Corporation; 786-M White.
    - d. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 200.
- E. Type JS-7 - Butyl Sealant: Solvent-based; ASTM C1311; single component, nonsag; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
  1. Service Temperature Range: Minus 13 to 180 degrees F.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams Company; Storm Blaster All Season Sealant: [www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle](http://www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle).
    - b. Pecora Corporation; BC-158.

## **2.05 SELF-LEVELING SEALANTS**

- A. Type JS-3 - Self-Leveling Polyurethane Sealant for Continuous Water Immersion:  
Polyurethane; ASTM C920, Grade P, Uses M and A; single component; explicitly approved by manufacturer for traffic exposure and continuous water immersion.
1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent, minimum.
  2. Hardness Range: 35 to 55, Shore A, when tested in accordance with ASTM C661.
  3. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to 180 degrees F.
  5. Manufacturers:
    - a. Sika Corporation; Sikaflex-1c SL: [www.usa-sika.com/#sle](http://www.usa-sika.com/#sle).
    - b. W. R. MEADOWS, Inc; POURTHANE SL: [www.wrmeadows.com/#sle](http://www.wrmeadows.com/#sle).
    - c. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 45SSL.
    - d. Pecora Corporation; NR-201.
- B. Type JS-8 - Self-Leveling Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade P, Uses M and A; single-component, explicitly approved by manufacturer for traffic exposure when recessed below traffic surface; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion.
1. Movement Capability: Plus 100 percent, minus 50 percent, minimum.
  2. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  3. Manufacturers:
    - a. Dow NS Parking Structure Sealant.
    - b. Tremco Spectrum 800 Sealant.

## **2.06 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Backer Rod: Cylindrical cellular foam rod with surface that sealant will not adhere to, compatible with specific sealant used, and recommended by backing and sealant manufacturers for specific application.
1. Type for Joints Not Subject to Pedestrian or Vehicular Traffic: ASTM C1330; Type O - Open Cell Polyurethane.
  2. Type for Joints Subject to Pedestrian or Vehicular Traffic: ASTM C1330; Type B - Bi-Cellular Polyethylene.
  3. Open Cell: 40 to 50 percent larger in diameter than joint width.
  4. Closed Cell and Bi-Cellular: 25 to 33 percent larger in diameter than joint width.
- B. Backing Tape: Self-adhesive polyethylene tape with surface that sealant will not adhere to and recommended by tape and sealant manufacturers for specific application.

- C. Masking Tape: Self-adhesive, nonabsorbent, non-staining, removable without adhesive residue, and compatible with surfaces adjacent to joints and sealants.
- D. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, type recommended by sealant manufacturer; compatible with joint forming materials.
- E. Primers: Type recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application; non-staining.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that joints are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that backing materials are compatible with sealants.
- C. Verify that backer rods are of the correct size.
- D. Preinstallation Adhesion Testing: Install a sample for each test location indicated in the test plan.
  - 1. Test each sample as specified in PART 1 under QUALITY ASSURANCE article.
  - 2. Notify Architect of date and time that tests will be performed, at least 7 days in advance.
  - 3. Arrange for sealant manufacturer's technical representative to be present during tests.
  - 4. Record each test on Preinstallation Adhesion Test Log as indicated.
  - 5. If any sample fails, review products and installation procedures, consult manufacturer, or take whatever other measures are necessary to ensure adhesion; re-test in a different location; if unable to obtain satisfactory adhesion, report to Architect.
  - 6. After completion of tests, remove remaining sample material and prepare joint for new sealant installation.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Clean joints, and prime as necessary, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.
- D. Mask elements and surfaces adjacent to joints from damage and disfigurement due to sealant work; be aware that sealant drips and smears may not be completely removable.
- E. Concrete Floor Joints That Will Be Exposed in Completed Work: Test joint filler in inconspicuous area to verify that it does not stain or discolor slab.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Perform installation in accordance with ASTM C1193.

- C. Measure joint dimensions and size joint backers to achieve width-to-depth ratio, neck dimension, and surface bond area as recommended by manufacturer, except where specific dimensions are indicated.
- D. Install bond breaker backing tape where backer rod cannot be used.
- E. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags, and without getting sealant on adjacent surfaces.
- F. Do not install sealant when ambient temperature is outside manufacturer's recommended temperature range, or will be outside that range during the entire curing period, unless manufacturer's approval is obtained and instructions are followed.
- G. Nonsag Sealants: Tool surface concave, unless otherwise indicated; remove masking tape immediately after tooling sealant surface.
- H. Concrete Floor Joint Filler: After full cure, shave joint filler flush with top of concrete slab.

#### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Owner will employ an independent testing agency to perform field quality control inspection and testing as specified in PART 1 under QUALITY ASSURANCE article.
- B. Non-Destructive Adhesion Testing: If there are any failures in first 100 linear feet, notify Architect immediately.
- C. Remove and replace failed portions of sealants using same materials and procedures as indicated for original installation.

#### **3.05 POST-OCCUPANCY**

- A. Post-Occupancy Inspection: Perform visual inspection of entire length of project sealant joints at a time that joints have opened to their greatest width; i.e. at low temperature in thermal cycle. Report failures immediately and repair.

**END OF SECTION 079200**

## **SECTION 081113**

### **HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Non-fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Hollow metal frames for wood doors.
- C. Thermally insulated hollow metal doors with frames.
- D. Hollow metal borrowed lites glazing frames.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 087100 - Door Hardware.
- B. Section 088000 - Glazing: Glass for doors and borrowed lites.
- C. Section 099000 - Interior and Exterior Paints and Coatings

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ANSI/SDI A250.4 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames and Frame Anchors; 2018.
- C. ANSI/SDI A250.6 - Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames; 2020.
- D. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (SDI-100); 2017.
- E. ANSI/SDI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames; 2020.
- F. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- G. ASTM A480/A480M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip; 2022.
- H. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- I. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Required Hardness, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2021a.
- J. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and

Ultra-High Strength; 2018a.

- K. ASTM C143/C143M - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete; 2020.
- L. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry; 2020.
- M. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- N. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation In Steel Doors And Steel Frames; 2016.
- O. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2017.
- P. NAAMM HMMA 830 - Hardware Selection for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2002.
- Q. NAAMM HMMA 831 - Hardware Locations for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2011.
- R. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Guide Specifications For Receipt, Storage and Installation of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2017.
- S. NAAMM HMMA 850 - Fire-Rated Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2014.
- T. NAAMM HMMA 860 - Guide Specifications for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2018.
- U. NAAMM HMMA 861 - Guide Specifications for Commercial Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; 2014.
- V. SDI 117 - Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames; 2019.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Materials and details of design and construction, hardware locations, reinforcement type and locations, anchorage and fastening methods, and finishes; and one copy of referenced standards/guidelines.
- C. Shop Drawings: Details of each opening, showing elevations, glazing, frame profiles, and any indicated finish requirements.
  - 1. Door Schedule: Provide schedule coordinated with numbering on drawings and hardware schedule. Indicate door types and openings receiving electrified hardware.
- D. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's published instructions, including any special installation instructions relating to this project.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certification that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- G. Installer's Qualification Statement.

#### **1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate with wall construction for anchor placement.



2. Coordinate installation of hardware.
3. Coordinate installation of glazing.

#### **1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to applicable Building Code for fire rated assemblies.
- B. Accessibility: Conform to ADA and applicable building codes.

#### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.
- C. Maintain at project site copies of reference standards relating to installation of products specified.

#### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with NAAMM HMMA 840 or ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
- B. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion and adverse effects on factory applied painted finish.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  1. Ceco Door, an Assa Abloy Group company; \_\_\_\_: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  2. Curries, an Assa Abloy Group company; \_\_\_\_: [www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  3. Fleming Door Products, an Assa Abloy Group company; \_\_\_\_:  
[www.assaabloydss.com/#sle](http://www.assaabloydss.com/#sle).
  4. Republic Doors, an Allegion brand; \_\_\_\_: [www.republicdoor.com/#sle](http://www.republicdoor.com/#sle).
  5. Steelcraft, an Allegion brand; \_\_\_\_: [www.allegion.com/#sle](http://www.allegion.com/#sle).

#### **2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Requirements for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  1. Steel Sheet: Comply with one or more of the following requirements; galvanized steel complying with ASTM A653/A653M, cold-rolled steel complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled pickled and oiled (HRPO) steel complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel (CS) Type B, for each.

2. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
  3. Exterior Door Top Closures: Flush end closure channel, with top and door faces aligned.
  4. Door Edge Profile: Manufacturers standard for application indicated.
  5. Typical Door Face Sheets: Flush.
  6. Glazed Lights: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations as indicated on drawings. Style: Manufacturer's standard.
  7. Hardware Preparations, Selections and Locations: Comply with NAAMM HMMA 830 and NAAMM HMMA 831 or BHMA A156.115 and ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
    - a. Prepare doors and frames for hardware in accordance with templates provided under 087100 - Door Hardware
  8. Zinc Coating for Typical Interior and/or Exterior Locations: Provide metal components zinc-coated (galvanized) and/or zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness, unless noted otherwise for specific hollow metal doors and frames.
    - a. Based on SDI Standards: Provide at least A40/ZF120 (galvannealed) when necessary, coating not required for typical interior door applications, and at least A60/ZF180 (galvannealed) for corrosive locations.
- B. Combined Requirements: If a particular door and frame unit is indicated to comply with more than one type of requirement, comply with the specified requirements for each type; for instance, an exterior door that is also indicated as being sound-rated must comply with the requirements specified for exterior doors and for sound-rated doors; where two requirements conflict, comply with the most stringent.

## **2.03 HOLLOW METAL DOORS**

- A. Door Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- B. Exterior Doors: Thermally insulated.
  1. Based on SDI Standards: ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100).
    - a. Level 3 - Extra Heavy-duty.
    - b. Physical Performance Level C, 250,000 cycles; in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.4.
    - c. Model 2 - Seamless.
    - d. Door Face Metal Thickness: 16 gauge, 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), minimum.
    - e. Zinc Coating: A60/ZF180 galvannealed coating; ASTM A653/A653M.
  2. Door Core Material: Polyurethane, 1.8 lbs/cu ft minimum density.

- a. Foam Plastic Insulation: Manufacturer's standard board insulation with maximum flame spread index (FSI) of 75, and maximum smoke developed index (SDI) of 450 in accordance with ASTM E84, and completely enclosed within interior of door.
- 3. Door Thermal Resistance: R-Value of 8.7, minimum, for installed thickness of polyurethane.
- 4. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm), nominal.
- 5. Door Finish: Factory primed and field finished as scheduled.

## **2.04 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES**

- A. Comply with standards and/or custom guidelines as indicated for corresponding door in accordance with applicable door frame requirements.
- B. Exterior Door Frames: Full profile/continuously welded type.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with A40/ZF120 coating.
  - 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 14 gauge, 0.067 inch (1.7 mm), minimum.
  - 3. Frame Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
  - 4. Weatherstripping: Integral, recessed into frame edge.
- C. Interior Door Frames, Non-Fire Rated: Knock-down type.
  - 1. Frame Metal Thickness: 16 gauge, 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), minimum for doors up to 42 inches wide.
  - 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 14 gauge, 0.067 inch (1.7 mm), minimum for doors greater than 42 inches wide.
  - 3. Frame Metal Thickness: 14 gauge, 0.067 inch (1.7 mm), minimum for doors with continuous hinges, regardless of width
  - 4. Frame Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- D. Frames for Wood Doors: Comply with frame requirements in accordance with corresponding door.
- E. Frames Wider than 48 inches (1219 mm): Reinforce with steel channel fitted tightly into frame head, flush with top.

## **2.05 FINISHES**

- A. Primer: Rust-inhibiting, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10, door manufacturer's standard.

## **2.06 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000, factory installed.

- B. Mechanical Fasteners for Concealed Metal-to-Metal Connections: Self-drilling, self-tapping, steel with electroplated zinc finish.
- C. Silencers: Resilient rubber, fitted into drilled hole; provide three on strike side of single door, three on center mullion of pairs, and two on head of pairs without center mullions.
- D. Temporary Frame Spreaders: Provide for factory- or shop-assembled frames.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Verify that finished walls are in plane to ensure proper door alignment.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and related requirements of specified door and frame standards or custom guidelines indicated.
- B. Coordinate frame anchor placement with wall construction.
- C. Install door hardware as specified in Section 087100.
  - 1. Comply with recommended practice for hardware placement of doors and frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6 or NAAMM HMMA 861.
- D. Comply with glazing installation requirements of Section 088000.
- E. Coordinate installation of electrical connections to electrical hardware items.
- F. Touch up damaged factory finishes.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Clearances Between Door and Frame: Comply with related requirements of specified frame standards or custom guidelines indicated in accordance with SDI 117 or NAAMM HMMA 861.
- B. Maximum Diagonal Distortion: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) measured with straight edge, corner to corner.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.

### **3.05 SCHEDULE**

- A. Refer to Door and Frame Schedule on the drawings.

**END OF SECTION 081113**

**SECTION 081416**  
**FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Flush wood doors; flush configuration; non-rated.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 064100 - Architectural Wood Casework
- B. Section 081213 - Hollow Metal Frames.
- C. Section 087100 - Door Hardware.
- D. Section 088000 - Glazing.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials; Current Edition.
- B. ANSI A208.1 - American National Standard for Particleboard; 2016.
- C. ANSI/BHMA A156.38 - Low Energy Power Operated Sliding and Folding Doors; 2019.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- E. ASTM E336 - Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Attenuation between Rooms in Buildings; 2020.
- F. ASTM F476 - Standard Test Methods for Security of Swinging Door Assemblies; 2014.
- G. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition; 2014, with Errata (2016).
- H. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards; 2021, with Errata.
- I. BHMA A156.2 - Bored and Preamsembled Locks and Latches; 2017.
- J. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- K. WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors; 2021, with Errata.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures
- B. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics, door edge construction, door face type and characteristics
- C. Shop Drawings: Show doors and frames, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts, beveling, blocking for hardware, factory machining, factory finishing, cutouts for glazing and other details.

- D. Samples: Submit two samples of door construction, 12 by 12 inches (\_\_\_ by \_\_\_ mm) in size cut from top corner of door.
- E. Samples: Submit two samples of door veneer, 12 by 12 inches (\_\_\_ by \_\_\_ mm) in size illustrating wood grain, stain color, and sheen.
- F. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- G. Installer's qualification statement.
- H. Warranty, executed in Owner's name.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging, and inspect for damage.
- C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic; do not store in damp or wet areas or areas where sunlight might bleach veneer; seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week, and break seal on site to permit ventilation.

#### **1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Interior Doors: Provide manufacturer's warranty for the life of the installation.
- C. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, and telegraphing core construction.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer
- B. Wood Veneer Faced Doors:
  - 1. Masonite Architectural; Aspiro Select Wood Veneer Doors:  
[www.architectural.masonite.com/#sle](http://www.architectural.masonite.com/#sle).
  - 2. VT Industries, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.vtindustries.com/#sle](http://www.vtindustries.com/#sle).
    - a. Basis of Design
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 DOORS**

- A. Doors: See drawings for locations and additional requirements.
  - 1. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, Heavy Duty performance, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
  - 2. Wood Veneer Faced Doors: 5-ply unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Interior Doors: 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
  - 1. Provide solid core doors at each location.

### **2.03 DOOR AND PANEL CORES**

- A. Non-Rated Solid Core and 20 Minute Rated Doors: Type structural composite lumber core (SCLC), plies and faces as indicated.
  - 1. Location: Public Restrooms
  - 2. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber
    - a. Screw Withdrawal, Door Face: 550 lbf
    - b. Screw Withdrawal, Vertical Door Edge: 550 lbf
- B. Non-Rated Solid Core and 20 Minute Rated Doors: Type particleboard core (PC), plies and faces as indicated.
  - 1. ANSI A208.1 , Grade LD-2 particleboard
  - 2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware and as follows:
    - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking in doors with closers
    - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking in doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates
    - c. 5-inch midrail blocking in doors indicated to have exit devices
- C. Construction: Five plies, hot pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edgeing is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering

### **2.04 DOOR FACINGS**

- A. Veneer Facing for Transparent Finish: White oak, veneer grade in accordance with quality standard indicated, rift cut (only red and white oak), with book match between leaves of veneer, center balance match of spliced veneer leaves assembled on door or panel face.
  - 1. Vertical Edges: Same species as face veneer.

### **2.05 DOOR CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Fabricate doors in accordance with door quality standard specified.
- B. Glazed Openings: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations as indicated on drawings.
- C. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.
- D. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.
- E. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.

- F. Factory Fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated on drawings
  - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated
  - 2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges
- G. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied
  - 1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3
  - 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame shop drawings, ANSI/BHMA A156.38 , and hardware templates
  - 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining
  - 4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified lockets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware
- H. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors
  - 1. Lite Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated
    - a. Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Profile: Flush rectangular beads
    - c. Species: Same as door faces.
  - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 - Glazing

## **2.06 FINISHES - WOOD VENEER DOORS**

- A. Factory Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), Section 5 - Finishing for grade specified and as follows:
  - 1. Transparent:
    - a. System - 5, Varnish, Conversion.
    - b. Stain: To match architect's sample
      - 1) Basis of Design: Clear, CL18
    - c. Sheen: Satin and as selected by Architect

## **2.07 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Hollow Metal Door Frames: See Section
- B. Glazing: See Section 088000.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.



- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors in accordance with NFPA 80 requirements.
- B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not field cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.
- C. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.
- D. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with specified quality standard for fit and clearance tolerances.
- B. Comply with specified quality standard for telegraphing, warp, and squareness.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.

**END OF SECTION 081416**



**SECTION 084313**

**ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Aluminum-framed storefront, with vision glass.
- B. Aluminum doors and frames.
- C. Interior aluminum framing system
- D. Weatherstripping.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 072700 - Air Barriers: Sealing framing to weather barrier installed on adjacent construction.
- B. Section 074213 - Metal Wall Panels: Trim and Flashing
- C. Section 074243 - Composite Wall Panels: Trim and Flashing
- D. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- E. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between frames and adjacent construction.
- F. Section 087100 - Door Hardware: Hardware items other than specified in this section.
- G. Section 088000 - Glazing: Glass and glazing accessories.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum from Shop to Site; 2015.
- B. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document); 2015.
- C. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2020.
- D. AAMA 1503 - Voluntary Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Condensation Resistance of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections; 2009.
- E. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix); 2020.
- F. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017.
- G. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2014.
- H. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric); 2014.

- I. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2021.
- J. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2021.
- K. ASTM E283/E283M - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen; 2019.
- L. ASTM E330/E330M - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2014 (Reapproved 2021).
- M. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2000 (Reapproved 2016).
- N. ASTM E2112 - Standard Practice for Installation of Exterior Windows, Doors and Skylights; 2019c.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate with installation of other components that comprise the exterior enclosure.
- B. Coordinate attachment and seal of perimeter air barrier materials.
- C. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, describe components within assembly, anchorage and fasteners, glass and infill, and internal drainage details.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, and field welding required.
  - 1. Include design engineer's stamp or seal on shop drawings for attachments and anchors.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 inches (\_\_\_\_x\_\_\_\_ mm) in length illustrating finished aluminum surface, glass, glazing materials.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that the products supplied meet or exceed the specified requirements.
- F. Design Data: Provide framing member structural and physical characteristics, engineering calculations, and dimensional limitations.

- G. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- H. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- I. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Basis of Design: Drawing details are based on profiles by specified basis of design manufacturer. Similar profiles by other acceptable manufacturers are permitted, subject to compliance with all specified performance characteristics, and provided that deviations in dimension, profile, and finish are minor, and do not detract from the indicated design intent.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least five years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least five years of documented experience.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Handle products of this section in accordance with AAMA CW-10.
- B. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F (5 degrees C). Maintain this minimum temperature during and 48 hours after installation.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against failure of glass seal on insulating glass units, including interpane dusting or misting. Include provision for replacement of failed units.
- C. Provide 20 year manufacturer warranty against excessive degradation of exterior finish. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading, chalking, or flaking.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Basis of Design: Manufacturer:
  - 1. Kawneer North America; Product Trifab 451 / 451T: [www.kawneer.com](http://www.kawneer.com).
- B. Other Acceptable - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tubelite, Inc: [www.tubeliteinc.com/#sle](http://www.tubeliteinc.com/#sle).

2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.02 ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONT**

- A. Aluminum-Framed Storefront: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members with infill, and related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
1. Glazing Position: Front-set.
    - a. Location: Exterior - Reference Drawings for Details
  2. Glazing Position: Centered (front to back).
    - a. Location: Interior Storefront - Reference Drawings for Details
    - b. Provide required adapters in mullion system for 1/4" glazing.
  3. Vertical Mullion Dimensions: 2 inches wide by 4-1/2 inches deep (50 mm wide by 114 mm deep).
  4. Finish: Class I natural anodized.
    - a. Factory finish all surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.
  5. Fabrication: Joints and corners flush, hairline, and weatherproof, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors and hardware; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
    - a. Fabricate individual system frame members, comp heads, sill pans, and other system components in single, continuous pieces; splices are not permitted unless specifically required by project installation conditions.
  6. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
  7. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
  8. Expansion/Contraction: Provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F (95 degrees C) over a 12 hour period without causing detrimental effect to system components, anchorages, and other building elements.
  9. Movement: Allow for movement between storefront and adjacent construction, without damage to components or deterioration of seals.
  10. Perimeter Clearance: Minimize space between framing members and adjacent construction while allowing expected movement.
  11. Air and Vapor Seal: Maintain continuous air barrier and vapor retarder throughout assembly, primarily in line with inside pane of glazing and heel bead of glazing compound.

**B. Performance Requirements**

1. Design and size components to withstand the specified load requirements without damage or permanent set, when tested in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M, using loads 1.5 times the design wind loads and 10 second duration of maximum load.
  - a. Design Wind Loads: Comply with requirements of applicable code.
  - b. Member Deflection: Limit member deflection to L/175 of clear span, 3/4 inch total, or to flexure limit of glass in any direction, whichever is less, with full recovery of glazing materials.
  - c. Provide reinforced mullion sections as may be required to comply with specified design requirements, for manufacturer's specified system.
2. Water Penetration Resistance on Manufactured Assembly: No uncontrolled water on interior face, when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at pressure differential of 10 psf (480 Pa).
  - a. Fastener Heads must be seated and sealed against Sill Flashing on any fasteners that penetrate through the Sill Flashing.
3. Air Leakage: 0.06 cfm/sq ft (0.3 L/sec sq m) maximum leakage of storefront wall area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283/E283M at 6.27 psf (300 Pa) pressure differential across assembly
4. Condensation Resistance Factor of Framing: 60, minimum, measured in accordance with AAMA 1503.
5. Overall U-value Including Glazing: 0.36 Btu/(hr sq ft deg F) (\_\_\_\_ W/(sq m K)), maximum.

**2.03 COMPONENTS**

- A. Aluminum Framing Members: Tubular aluminum sections, thermally broken with interior section insulated from exterior, drainage holes and internal weep drainage system.
1. Framing members for interior applications need not be thermally broken.
  2. Glazing Stops: Flush.
  3. Cross-Section: As indicated on drawings.
  4. Corner Assemblies:
    - a. 90-Degree Corners: Manufacturer's standard combination of two pocket corner extrusions.
    - b. Corners Other Than 90 Degrees: Manufacturer's standard varying degree pocket corner extrusions with aluminum sheet metal fillers and closures.

- 5. Reinforced Mullions: As required or recommended by manufacturer using manufacturer's standard profile of extruded aluminum with internal reinforcement of steel shaped structural section
- B. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000.
- C. Swing Doors: Glazed aluminum.
  - 1. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (43 mm).
  - 2. Top Rail Exterior and vestibule: 5 inches (\_\_\_\_ mm) wide.
  - 3. Top Rail Interior: 2-1/4 inches wide
  - 4. Vertical Stiles Exterior: 5 inches (\_\_\_\_ mm) wide.
  - 5. Vertical Stiles Interior: 2-1/4 inches wide
  - 6. Bottom Rail Exterior: 10 inches (254 mm) wide.
  - 7. Bottom Rail Interior: 3-7/8 inches wide
  - 8. Glazing Stops: Manufacturer's standard snap-in glazing stops with gasketing; removable from inside..
  - 9. Finish: Same as Aluminum Framed Storefront
  - 10. Design exterior doors and lites for one inch insulating glass units, and interior doors and lites for 1/4 inch glass and non-thermally broken.

## **2.04 MATERIALS**

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
  - 1. Recycled Content:
    - a. Shall have a minimum of 50% mixed pre- and post-consumer recycled content.
- B. Sheet Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).
- C. Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- D. Flashings, Concealed and Exposed: As specified in 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- E. Glazing Gaskets: Type to suit application to achieve weather, moisture, and air infiltration requirements.
  - 1. Size gaskets as required by manufacturer of glazing channel frame to provide proper pressure and bite on glazing units.
- F. Glazing Accessories: As specified in Section 088000.

## **2.05 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Reinforcement: Where fasteners screw-anchor into aluminum less than 1/8 inch thick, reinforce the interior with aluminum or non-magnetic stainless steel to receive screw threads, or provide standard non-corrosive, pressed-in splined grommet nuts.



- B. Brackets: High-strength aluminum brackets and reinforcements where possible; otherwise provide non-magnetic stainless steel or galvanized steel complying with ASTM A123/A123M.
- C. Inserts: Cast iron, malleable iron, or 12 gage galvanized steel for required anchorage to concrete or masonry
- D. Sill Pans: Self Adhered Flashing to create Sill Pan at existing openings, otherwise:
- E. Manufacturer's standard extruded profile, designed to direct moisture to the exterior at sill conditions; including splice sleeves and continuously sealed end dams
  - a. Provide with sill pan clips for installation without the use of penetrating fasteners
- F. Expansion Anchors: Lead shield or toothed steel, drilled in type expansion bolts for required attachment to concrete or masonry.
- G. Bituminous Coatings: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 30 mil thickness per coat.
- H. Internal System Sealants and Gaskets: As recommended by manufacturer for use within the framing system for fabrication, assembly, and installation. Use products which will remain permanently elastic, non-shrinking, and waterproof.

## **2.06 FINISHES**

- A. Class I Natural Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A41 Clear anodic coating not less than 0.7 mils (0.018 mm) thick.
- B. Touch-Up Materials: As recommended by coating manufacturer for field application.

## **2.07 HARDWARE**

- A. For each door, include manufacturer weatherstripping and threshold at exterior doors.
- B. Other Door Hardware: As specified in Section 087100.
- C. Weatherstripping: Wool pile, continuous and replaceable; provide on all doors.
- D. Sill Sweep Strips: Resilient seal type, of neoprene; provide on all doors
- E. Reinforce components internally for door hardware .
- F. Finishing: Apply factory finish to all surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies, including exposed fasteners.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- B. Verify that wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. Install storefronts in accordance with ASTM E2112
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill pans with end dams. Turn up ends and edges; seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.
  - 1. Do not obstruct weep paths with sealants. Locate sill pan joints, if required, minimum 12 inches from centerline of vertical mullions. Seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.
- G. Where fasteners penetrate sill flashings, make watertight by seating and sealing fastener heads to sill flashing.
- H. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- I. Install glass in accordance with Section 088000, using glazing method required to achieve performance criteria.
- J. Glass shall be held in place with extruded aluminum pressure plates anchored to the mullion using stainless steel fasteners that are spaced no more than 9" (228.6 mm) on center.
- K. Install internal system sealants as installation progresses. Seal sill pan splices, end dams, water deflectors, and other components to ensure that proper water weepage paths are established and maintained within the system.
- L. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inch per 3 feet (1.5 mm per m) non-cumulative or 0.06 inch per 10 feet (1.5 mm per 3 m), whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
- C. Location: Limit variation from plane or dimensioned location to 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative, and 1/2 inch in overall length of member

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths, and take care to remove dirt from corners and to wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean aluminum surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 084313**



**SECTION 087100**

**DOOR HARDWARE**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (SDI-100); 2017.
- B. BHMA A156.1 - Standard for Butts and Hinges; 2021.
- C. BHMA A156.2 - Bored and Preamsembled Locks and Latches; 2017.
- D. BHMA A156.3 - Exit Devices; 2020.
- E. BHMA A156.4 - Door Controls - Closers; 2019.
- F. BHMA A156.5 - Cylinders and Input Devices for Locks; 2020.
- G. BHMA A156.19 - Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Swinging Doors; 2019.
- H. BHMA A156.26 - Standard for Continuous Hinges; 2021.
- I. BHMA A156.28 - Standard for Recommended Practices for Mechanical Keying Systems; 2023.
- J. ISO 9000 - Quality Management Systems -- Fundamentals and Vocabulary; 2015.
- K. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- L. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives; 2022.
- M. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- N. NFPA 105 - Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives; 2022.
- O. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; 2022.
- P. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 294 - Access Control System Units; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- R. UL 1784 - Standard for Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors; 2021, with Errata.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware
  - 2. Electronic access control system components
- B. Section excludes:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories
5. Overhead doors

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 "General Requirements" sections for Allowances, Alternates, Owner Furnished Contractor Installed, Project Management and Coordination.
2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
3. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry"
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
5. Division 08 Sections:
  - a. "Metal Doors and Frames"
  - b. "Flush Wood Doors"
  - c. "Stile and Rail Wood Doors"
  - d. "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames"
  - e. "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
  - f. "Stainless Steel Doors and Frames"
  - g. "Special Function Doors"
  - h. "Entrances"
6. Division 26 (792.48 cm)'Electrical" sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.
7. Division 28 (853.44 cm)'Electronic Safety and Security" sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system and fire alarm system.

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. General:

1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
  - a. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
  - b. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
    - 1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
    - 2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
    - 3) Point-to-point wiring.
    - 4) Risers.
3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
  - a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.
4. Door Hardware Schedule:
  - a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.
  - b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
  - c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
    - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
    - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
    - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
    - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
    - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.

- 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
  - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
  - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
  - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
  - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.
5. Key Schedule:
- a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
  - b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
  - c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
  - d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
  - e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
  - f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.
- C. Informational Submittals:
- 1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
  - 2. Provide Product Data:
    - a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
    - b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.
- D. Closeout Submittals:
- 1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
    - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
    - b. Catalog pages for each product.



- c. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as installed.
  - d. Final keying schedule
  - e. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
  - f. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.
- E. Inspection and Testing:
- 1. Submit written reports to the Owner and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) of the results of functional testing and inspection for:
    - a. Fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
    - b. Required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:
- 1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with a minimum of 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project. Supplier to be recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturer of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in the Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff, a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
  - 2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
  - 3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
    - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
    - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
    - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
    - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.

4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
- B. Certifications:
1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
    - a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by UL LLC, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
  2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
    - a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105
    - b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
  3. Electrified Door Hardware
    - a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Accessibility Requirements:
    - a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article 087100, 1.02.D3 herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route. This project must comply with all Federal Americans with Disability Act regulations and all Local Accessibility Regulations.
- C. Pre-Installation Meetings
1. Keying Conference
    - a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
      - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
      - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
      - 3) Requirements for key control system.
      - 4) Requirements for access control.
      - 5) Address for delivery of keys.

2. Pre-installation Conference
  - a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
  - d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
  - e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
  - f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.
3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:
  - a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.
- F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

#### **1.06 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.
- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are

made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.

#### **1.08 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Approval of alternate manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category are only to be considered by official substitution request in accordance with section 01 25 00.
- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

#### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Fabrication
  - 1. Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. provide screws according to manufacturer's recognized installation standards for application intended.

2. Finish exposed screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
  3. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible for hardware units exposed when door is closed. Coordinate with "Metal Doors and Frames", "Flush Wood Doors", "Stile and Rail Wood Doors" to ensure proper reinforcements. Advise the Architect where visible fasteners, such as thru bolts, are required.
- B. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.
- C. Cable and Connectors:
1. Where scheduled in the hardware sets, provide each item of electrified hardware and wire harnesses with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
  2. Provide Molex connectors that plug directly into connectors from harnesses, electric locking and power transfer devices.
  3. Provide through-door wire harness for each electrified locking device installed in a door and wire harness for each electrified hinge, electrified continuous hinge, electrified pivot, and electric power transfer for connection to power supplies.

## **2.03 HINGES**

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Ives 5BB series
  2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. McKinney TB series
    - b. Best FBB series
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
  2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
  3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914.4 mm) wide:
    - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
    - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
  4. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914.4 mm) wide:
    - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high

- b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
- 5. 2 inches (50.8 mm) or thicker doors:
  - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
  - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
- 6. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
- 7. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.

## **2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES**

### **A. Manufacturers:**

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Ives
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Select
  - b. ABH
  - c. Best

### **B. Requirements:**

- 1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
- 2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
- 3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
- 4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
- 5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
- 6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
- 7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25.4 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

## **2.05 ELECTRIC POWER TRANSFER**

### **A. Manufacturers:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Von Duprin EPT-10
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. Security Door Controls PTM
  - b. Precision EPT-12C
- B. Requirements:
  1. Provide power transfer with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
  2. Locate electric power transfer per manufacturer's template and UL requirements, unless interference with operation of door or other hardware items.

## **2.06 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – COMMON AREAS**

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Schlage ALX series
  2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. Best 7KC series
    - b. Sargent 7-Line
- B. Requirements
  1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 2, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors with a minimum cycle life of 1 million.
  2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
  3. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2-inch latch throw. Provide 3/4" latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
  4. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
  5. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
  6. Provide a minimum of 5 points of lever engagement between the cassette spindle and lever shank to prevent lever sag.
  7. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
  8. Plug-n-Play – Provide modular lockset allowing lock functions to be created for 7 typical functions by inserting/installing parts into the exterior of a fully assembled chassis
  9. Reconfigurable Chassis - Provide modular lockset that allows the function to be reconfigured by removing external components from the chassis

10. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers and wrought roses on both sides.

- a. Lever Design: BRW

## **2.07 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – SGL USE RESTROOM**

### **A. Manufacturers and Products:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Schlage ND series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. Best 9K series
  - b. Sargent 11-Line

### **B. Requirements:**

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors.
2. Indicators: Where specified, provide escutcheon with lock status indicator window on top of lockset rose:
  - a. Escutcheon height (including rose) 6.05 inches (153.67 mm) high by 3.68 inches (93.47 mm) wide.
  - b. Indicator window measuring a minimum 3.52-inch by .60 inch (15.24 mm) with 1.92 square-inches of front facing viewing area and 180-degree visibility with a total of .236 square-inches of total viewable area.
  - c. Provide snap-in serviceable window to prevent tampering. Lock must function if indicator is compromised.
  - d. Provide messages color-coded with full text and symbol, as scheduled, for easy visibility.
  - e. Unlocked and Unoccupied message will display on white background, and Locked and Occupied message will display on red background.
3. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
4. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2-inch latch throw. Provide proper latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
5. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
6. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
7. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
8. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets.
9. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers without plastic inserts and wrought roses on both sides.



- a. Lever Design: BRW

## **2.08 EXIT DEVICES**

### **A. Manufacturers and Products:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Falcon 24/25 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. Sargent 19-43-GL-80 series
  - b. Precision Apex series

### **B. Requirements:**

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
7. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
8. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
9. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
10. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
11. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (50.8 mm) x 3 inches (76.2 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
12. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
13. Provide electrified options as scheduled.
14. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

## **2.09 ELECTRIC STRIKES**

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Locknetics
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. RCI
    - b. Security Door Controls 25/45
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide electric strikes designed for use with type of locks shown at each opening.
  - 2. Provide electric strikes UL Listed as burglary resistant.
  - 3. Provide electric strikes that are field selectable fail-safe and fail-secure.
  - 4. Provide electric strikes cycle tested to endure a minimum of 250,000 cycles.
  - 5. Where required, provide electric strikes UL Listed for fire doors and frames.
  - 6. Provide transformers and rectifiers for each strike as required. Verify voltage with electrical contractor.

## **2.10 PUSHBUTTONS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Schlage
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Alarm Controls
    - b. Camden Door Controls
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide push buttons as specified in hardware groups.

## **2.11 POWER SUPPLIES**

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Schlage/Von Duprin PS900 Series
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. Precision ELR series
    - b. Security Door Controls 600 series
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide power supplies approved by manufacturer of supplied electrified hardware.

2. Provide appropriate quantity of power supplies necessary for proper operation of electrified locking components as recommended by manufacturer of electrified locking components with consideration for each electrified component using power supply, location of power supply, and approved wiring diagrams. Locate power supplies as directed by Architect.
3. Provide regulated and filtered 24 VDC power supply, and UL class 2 listed.
4. Provide power supplies with the following features:
  - a. 12/24 VDC Output, field selectable.
  - b. Class 2 Rated power limited output.
  - c. Universal 120-240 VAC input.
  - d. Low voltage DC, regulated and filtered.
  - e. Polarized connector for distribution boards.
  - f. Fused primary input.
  - g. AC input and DC output monitoring circuit w/LED indicators.
  - h. Cover mounted AC Input indication.
  - i. Tested and certified to meet UL 294.
  - j. NEMA 1 enclosure.
  - k. Hinged cover w/lock down screws.
  - l. High voltage protective cover.

## **2.12 CYLINDERS**

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Schlage Everest FSIC
- B. Requirements:
  1. Provide cylinders compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset; manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
  2. Provide cylinders to accept in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
    - a. Patented Restricted 7-Pin: cylinder with permanent 7-pin core with keys capable of working in full size key-in-lever/knob, and small format interchangeable core.
  3. Patent Protection: Cylinders/cores requiring use of restricted, patented keys, patent protected.
  4. Nickel silver bottom pins.

## 2.13 KEYING

### A. Scheduled System:

#### 1. Existing factory registered system:

- a. Provide cylinders to accept Owner's existing factory registered core/keying system. Comply with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.

### B. Requirements:

#### 1. Construction Keying:

##### a. Temporary Construction Cylinder Keying.

- 1) Provide construction cores that permit voiding construction keys without cylinder removal, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
  - (a) Split Key or Lost Ball Construction Keying System.
  - (b) 3 construction control keys, and extractor tools or keys as required to void construction keying.
  - (c) 12 construction change (day) keys.
- 2) Owner or Owner's Representative will void operation of temporary construction keys.

##### b. Replaceable Construction Cores.

- 1) Provide temporary construction cores replaceable by permanent cores, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
  - (a) 3 construction control keys
  - (b) 12 construction change (day) keys.
- 2) Owner or Owner's Representative will replace temporary construction cores with permanent cores.

#### 2. Permanent Keying:

- a. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
  - 1) Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
- b. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
- c. Provide keys with the following features:
  - 1) Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
  - 2) Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s).

- 3) Geographically Exclusive: Where High Security or Security cylinders/cores are indicated, provide nationwide, geographically exclusive key system complying with the following restrictions.
- d. Identification:
  - 1) Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
  - 2) Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
  - 3) Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
  - 4) Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
  - 5) Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
- e. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
  - 1) Permanent Control Keys: 3.
  - 2) Master Keys: 6.
  - 3) Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core that is keyed differently
  - 4) Key Blanks: Quantity as determined in the keying meeting.

## **2.14 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Telkee
  2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. HPC
    - b. Lund
- B. Requirements:
  1. Provide key control system, including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet, all as recommended by system manufacturer, with capacity for 150% of number of locks required for Project.
    - a. Provide complete cross index system set up by hardware supplier, and place keys on markers and hooks in cabinet as determined by final key schedule.

- b. Provide hinged-panel type cabinet for wall mounting.

## **2.15 DOOR CLOSERS**

### **A. Manufacturers and Products:**

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Falcon SC70A series
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. LCN 4050A series
  - b. Norton 7500 series
  - c. Sargent 351 series

### **B. Requirements:**

- 1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
- 2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with aluminum cylinder.
- 3. Closer Body: 1-1/2-inch (1.5 inch (38 mm)) diameter with 5/8-inch (0.63 inch (16 mm)) diameter heat-treated pinion journal.
- 4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL 10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees Fahrenheit (48.89 degrees Celsius) to -30 degrees Fahrenheit (-1.11 degrees Celsius).
- 5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
- 6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
- 7. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
- 8. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

## **2.16 DOOR CLOSERS**

### **A. Manufacturers and Products:**

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Falcon SC80A series
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:

- a. LCN 1450 series
  - b. Norton 8000 series
  - c. Sargent 1331 series
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory.
  - 2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with aluminum cylinder.
  - 3. Closer Body: 1-1/4-inch (1.26 inch (32 mm)) diameter, with 5/8-inch (0.63 inch (16 mm)) diameter heat-treated pinion journal.
  - 4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL 10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees Fahrenheit (48.89 degrees Celsius) to -30 degrees Fahrenheit (-1.11 degrees Celsius).
  - 5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
  - 6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
  - 7. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
  - 8. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

## **2.17 ELECTRO-HYDRAULIC AUTOMATIC OPERATORS**

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. LCN 4600 series
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. Norton 6000 series
    - b. Precision D4990 series
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide low energy automatic operator units with hydraulic closer complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.
  - 2. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL 10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees Fahrenheit (48.89 degrees Celsius) to -30 degrees Fahrenheit (-1.11 degrees Celsius).

3. Provide units with conventional door closer opening and closing forces unless power operator motor is activated. Provide door closer assembly with adjustable spring size, back-check, and opening and closing speed adjustment valves to control door
4. Provide units with on/off switch for manual operation, motor start up delay, vestibule interface delay, electric lock delay, and door hold open delay.
5. Provide drop plates, brackets, and adapters for arms as required for details.
6. Provide actuator switches and receivers for operation as specified.
7. Provide weather-resistant actuators at exterior applications.
8. Provide key switches with LED's, recommended and approved by manufacturer of automatic operator as required for function described in operation description of hardware group below. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
9. Provide complete assemblies of controls, switches, power supplies, relays, and parts/material recommended and approved by manufacturer of automatic operator for each individual leaf. Actuators control both doors simultaneously at pairs. Sequence operation of exterior and vestibule doors with automatic operators to allow ingress or egress through both sets of openings as directed by Architect. Locate actuators, key switches, and other controls as directed by Architect.
10. Provide units with vestibule inputs that allow sequencing operation of two units, and SPDT relay for interfacing with latching or locking devices.

## **2.18 DOOR TRIM**

### **A. Manufacturers:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Ives
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns
  - b. Trimco
  - c. Rockwood

### **B. Requirements:**

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, pulls, and hands-free reversible door pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

## **2.19 PROTECTION PLATES**

### **A. Manufacturers:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:



- a. Ives
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns
  - b. Trimco
  - c. Rockwood
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
  - 2. Sizes plates 2 inches (50.8 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25.4 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
  - 3. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches (406.4 mm) high with UL label.

## **2.20 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
    - a. Glynn-Johnson
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Rixson
    - b. ABH
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.

## **2.21 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Ives
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Burns
    - b. Trimco
    - c. Rockwood
- B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button of thumbturn.
2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops.
3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

## **2.22 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING**

### **A. Manufacturers:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Zero International
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. National Guard
  - b. Reese
  - c. Pemko

### **B. Requirements:**

1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

## **2.23 SILENCERS**

### **A. Manufacturers:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Ives
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns
  - b. Rockwood
  - c. Trimco

### **B. Requirements:**

1. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames.
2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
3. Omit where gasketing is specified.

## **2.24 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES**

### **A. Manufacturers:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Schlage
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Nascom
  - b. Security Door Controls

### **B. Requirements:**

1. Provide recessed or surface mounted type door position switches as specified.
2. Coordinate door and frame preparations with door and frame suppliers. If switches are being used with magnetic locking device, provide minimum of 4 inches (101.6 mm) between switch and magnetic locking device.

## **2.25 FINISHES**

### **A. FINISH: BHMA 626/652 (US26D); EXCEPT:**

1. Aluminum Geared Continuous Hinges: BHMA 628 (US28)
2. Push Plates, Pulls, and Push Bars: BHMA 630 (US32D)
3. Protection Plates: BHMA 630 (US32D)
4. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630/652 (US32D)
5. Door Closers: 689/AL
6. Wall Stops: BHMA 630 (US32D)
7. Latch Protectors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
8. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum
9. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.

- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
  - 3. Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A
  - 4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware: DHI TDH-007-20
- B. Install door hardware in accordance with NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and provide post-install inspection, testing as specified in section 1.03.E unless otherwise required to comply with governing regulations.
- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- D. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- E. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- F. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- G. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.
- H. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- I. Lock Cylinders:
  - 1. Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
  - 2. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying section.
  - 3. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- J. Wiring: Coordinate with Division 26, ELECTRICAL and Division 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections for:
  - 1. Conduit, junction boxes and wire pulls.
  - 2. Connections to and from power supplies to electrified hardware.

3. Connections to fire/smoke alarm system and smoke evacuation system.
4. Connection of wire to door position switches and wire runs to central room or area, as directed by Architect.
5. Connections to panel interface modules, controllers, and gateways.
6. Testing and labeling wires with Architect's opening number.
- K. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- L. Continuous Hinges: Re-locate the door and frame fire rating labels where they will remain visible so that the hinge does not cover the label once installed.
- M. Door Closers & Auto Operators: Mount closers/operators on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers/operators so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- N. Overhead Stops/Holders: Mount overhead stops/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.
- O. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.
- P. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- Q. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- R. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- S. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- T. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  1. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
  2. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

### 3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.05 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.
- C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.
- D. Hardware Sets:

#### HARDWARE GROUP NO. 01

#### FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

100					
-----	--	--	--	--	--

#### PROVIDE EACH PR DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT	<input type="checkbox"/>		628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	689	VON
1	EA	KEYED REM. MULLION	KR4023 STAB	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	LMRX-MEL-25-R-NL-OP	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	626	FAL
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-MEL-25-R-EO	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	626	FAL
1	EA	MORTISE FSIC HOUSING	20-059 (CAM & RING AS REQ'D)	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH

1	EA	RIM FSIC HOUSING	20-079	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
2	EA	FSIC CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER'S LOCKSMITH	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
2	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	<input type="checkbox"/>		630-316	IVE
2	EA	OH STOP	100S	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC71A (TJ MOUNT)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	SURF. AUTO OPERATOR	4642 WMS	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	689	LCN
1	EA	WEATHER RING	8310-801	<input type="checkbox"/>			LCN
1	EA	ACTUATOR BUTTON	8310-853T	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	LCN
1	EA	DUAL ACTUATOR BUTTON	8310-855	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	LCN
2	EA	ACTUATOR MOUNT BOX	8310-867S	<input type="checkbox"/>			LCN
1	EA	MOUNTING PLATE	SC70A-18 (AS REQ'D)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	GASKETING/WEATHERSTRIPPING	BY DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER				B/O
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	<input type="checkbox"/>		A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	654A-223	<input type="checkbox"/>		A	ZER
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	LGR	SCE
1	EA	CARD READER	(SPECIFIED & FURNISHED UNDER DIVISION 28.)				B/O

**UNLOCKED HOURS OPERATION:**

**PANIC DEVICE LATCHES HELD RETRACTED ELECTRICALLY VIA ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM.  
PRESSING EITHER ACTUATOR SIGNALS AUTOMATIC OPERATOR TO OPEN DOOR.**

**LOCKED HOURS OPERATION:**

**DOORS CLOSED AND LOCKED. PRESENTING VALID CREDENTIAL TO READER MOMENTARILY  
RETRACTS LATCHES. EXTERIOR ACTUATOR DISABLED. INTERIOR ACTUATOR ENABLED AT  
ALL TIMES. PRESSING INTERIOR ACTUATOR RETRACTS PANIC DEVICE LATCH AND SIGNALS  
AUTOMATIC OPERATOR TO OPEN DOOR. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.**

**CONDUIT, JUNCTION BOXES AND HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING BY ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR.  
AUTO OPERATOR & ACTUATORS TO INTERFACE WITH PANIC DEVICE AND LATCHBOLT  
MONITOR. INSTALL ACTUATORS ON EACH SIDE OF THE DOOR PER CODE HEIGHT LOCATIONS.  
COORDINATE SYSTEM OPERATION, COMPONENT LOCATIONS AND POWER REQUIREMENTS  
WITH THE OWNER, ARCHITECT, AND ALL RELATED TRADES.**

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 02**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

101					
-----	--	--	--	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH PR DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY	<input type="checkbox"/>	628	IVE
2	EA	PUSH/PULL BAR	9190EZHD-12"-NO	<input type="checkbox"/>	630-316	IVE
2	EA	OH STOP	100S	<input type="checkbox"/>	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC71A (TJ MOUNT)	<input type="checkbox"/>	689	FAL
1	EA	SURF. AUTO OPERATOR	4642 WMS	<input type="checkbox"/>	~ 689	LCN
1	EA	ACTUATOR BUTTON	8310-853T	<input type="checkbox"/>	630	LCN
1	EA	ACTUATOR MOUNT BOX	8310-867S	<input type="checkbox"/>		LCN
1	EA	MOUNTING PLATE	SC70A-18 (AS REQ'D)	<input type="checkbox"/>	689	FAL
1	EA	GASKETING/WEATHERSTRIPPING	BY DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER			B/O



**NORMAL OPERATION:**

**DOORS ARE PUSH/PULL. PRESSING EITHER ACTUATOR SIGNALS AUTOMATIC OPERATOR TO OPEN DOOR.**

**CONDUIT, JUNCTION BOXES AND HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING BY ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR.**

**INSTALL ACTUATORS ON EACH SIDE OF THE DOOR PER CODE HEIGHT LOCATIONS.**

**COORDINATE SYSTEM OPERATION, COMPONENT LOCATIONS AND POWER REQUIREMENTS WITH THE OWNER, ARCHITECT, AND ALL RELATED TRADES.**

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 03**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

100E					
------	--	--	--	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	224XY	<input type="checkbox"/>		628	IVE
1	EA	ALARMED PANIC HARDWARE	L/SW-EA-25-R-EO	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	626	FAL
1	EA	MORTISE FSIC HOUSING	20-059 (CAM & RING AS REQ'D)	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER'S LOCKSMITH	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC71A SS	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	MOUNTING PLATE	SC70A-XX (AS REQ'D)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	CUSH SHOE SUPPORT	SC70A-30 (AS REQ'D)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA	<input type="checkbox"/>		AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	<input type="checkbox"/>		A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	654A-223	<input type="checkbox"/>		A	ZER
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	BLK	SCE

**NUISANCE ALARM:**

**DOOR CLOSED AND LOCKED. WHEN TOUCH BAR IS DEPRESSED, EGRESS IS ALLOWED, BUT INTERNAL LOCAL ALARM SOUNDS. THE ALARM CAN BE ARMED OR DISARMED BY A KEYED CYLINDER IN EXIT DEVICE CROSS BAR. THE DEVICE INCLUDES A DECAL READING "EMERGENCY EXIT ONLY. ALARM WILL SOUND". FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.**

**COORDINATE SYSTEM OPERATION, COMPONENT LOCATIONS AND POWER REQUIREMENTS WITH THE OWNER, ARCHITECT, AND ALL RELATED TRADES.**

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 04**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

100C	100D				
------	------	--	--	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY	<input type="checkbox"/>		628	IVE
1	EA	PUSH/PULL BAR	9190EZHD-12"-NO	<input type="checkbox"/>		630-316	IVE
1	EA	OH STOP	410S	<input type="checkbox"/>		652	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A FC (TJ MOUNT)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	MOUNTING PLATE	SC80A-18FC	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 05**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

102					
-----	--	--	--	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	<input type="checkbox"/>		652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80J BRW	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER'S LOCKSMITH	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	ELECTRIC STRIKE	CS450/CS750	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	630	LOC

1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA FC (PULL SIDE)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP/HOLDER	WS40	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64/SR65	<input type="checkbox"/>		GRY	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	LGR	SCE
1	EA	CARD READER	(SPECIFIED & FURNISHED UNDER DIVISION 28.)				B/O

**NORMAL OPERATION:**

DOORS CLOSED AND LOCKED. PRESENTING VALID CREDENTIAL TO READER MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING ENTRY. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

COORDINATE SYSTEM OPERATION, COMPONENT LOCATIONS AND POWER REQUIREMENTS WITH THE OWNER, ARCHITECT, AND ALL RELATED TRADES.

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 06**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

100F	100G				
------	------	--	--	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	<input type="checkbox"/>		652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80J BRW	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER'S LOCKSMITH	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	ELECTRIC STRIKE	CS450/CS750	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	630	LOC
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA FC (PULL SIDE)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	<input type="checkbox"/>		BK	ZER
1	EA	DESK MOUNT BUTTON	660-PB (AT INFO DESK)	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	628	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS	<input type="checkbox"/>	~	LGR	SCE

**NORMAL OPERATION:**

**DOORS CLOSED AND LOCKED. PUSH BUTTON AT INFO DESK MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS**

**ELECTRIC STRIKE ALLOWING ENTRY. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.**

**COORDINATE SYSTEM OPERATION, COMPONENT LOCATIONS AND POWER REQUIREMENTS  
WITH THE OWNER, ARCHITECT, AND ALL RELATED TRADES.**

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 07**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

103A	103B	104	105		
------	------	-----	-----	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	<input type="checkbox"/>		652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80J BRW	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER'S LOCKSMITH	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA FC (PULL SIDE)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	<input type="checkbox"/>		BK	ZER

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 08**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

102A					
------	--	--	--	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	<input type="checkbox"/>		652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK W/ OUTSIDE INDICATOR	ND40S BRW OS-OCC	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	SC81A RW/PA FC (PULL SIDE)	<input type="checkbox"/>		689	FAL
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit And Bid  
03-14-2025

---

1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	<input type="checkbox"/>		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	<input type="checkbox"/>		BK	ZER

**HARDWARE GROUP NO. 09**

**FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):**

103					
-----	--	--	--	--	--

**PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:**

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER			FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	<input type="checkbox"/>		652	IVE
1	EA	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50J BRW	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER'S LOCKSMITH	<input type="checkbox"/>		626	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	410S	<input type="checkbox"/>		652	GLY
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64/SR65	<input type="checkbox"/>		GRY	IVE

**END OF SECTION 087100**



**SECTION 088000**

**GLAZING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Insulating glass units.
- B. Monolithic glass units.
- C. Glazing compounds and accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section - 072700 - Air Barriers
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealants for other than glazing purposes.
- C. Section 081113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Glazed lites in doors and borrowed lites.
- D. Section 084313 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts: Glazing furnished as part of storefront assembly.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials; Current Edition.
- B. ANSI Z97.1 - American National Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test; 2015 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- C. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- D. ASTM C864 - Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers; 2005 (Reapproved 2019).
- E. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2018.
- F. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass; 2021.
- G. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass; 2018.
- H. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.
- I. ASTM C1376 - Standard Specification for Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on Flat Glass; 2021a.
- J. ASTM E1300 - Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings; 2016.
- K. ASTM E2190 - Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performance and Evaluation; 2019.
- L. GANA (GM) - GANA Glazing Manual; 2008.

- M. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual; 2008.
- N. IGMA TM-3000 - North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial & Residential Use; 1990 (Reaffirmed 2016).
- O. NFRC 100 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors; 2020.
- P. NFRC 200 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence; 2020.
- Q. NFRC 300 - Test Method for Determining the Solar Optical Properties of Glazing Materials and Systems; 2020.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by each of the affected installers.
  - 1. Discuss installation requirements and limitations (if any), coordination with other affected installers, and special applications (if any).

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data on Insulating Glass Unit and Glazing Unit Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- C. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements, and identify available colors.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch (\_\_\_ by \_\_\_ mm) in size of glass units.
- E. Certificate: Certify that products of this section meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- G. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- H. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with GANA Glazing Manual, GANA Sealant Manual, and IGMA TM-3000 for glazing installation methods.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.



- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least five years documented experience.
- D. Provide each type of glass, primary sealant, and gasket from a single manufacturer with not less than five years documented experience in the production of required materials.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for shipping, handling, storing, and protection of glass and glazing materials. Exercise exceptional care to prevent edge damage to glass, and damage to coatings.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F (4 degrees C).
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.
- C. Install sealants only when ambient temperature conditions can be maintained at or above 40 degrees F during installation and 48 hours immediately following installation.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Insulating Glass Units: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for seal failure, interpane dusting or misting, including providing products to replace failed units.
- B. Laminated Glass: Provide a five (5) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for delamination, including providing products to replace failed units.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Float Glass Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AGC Glass North America, Inc: [www.agcglass.com/#sle](http://www.agcglass.com/#sle).
  - 2. Guardian Glass, LLC: [www.guardianglass.com/#sle](http://www.guardianglass.com/#sle).
  - 3. Pilkington North America Inc: [www.pilkington.com/na/#sle](http://www.pilkington.com/na/#sle).
  - 4. Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass): [www.vitroglazings.com/#sle](http://www.vitroglazings.com/#sle).
- B. Insulating Glass Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Any of the manufacturers specified for float glass or a fabricator approved by one of the specified float glass manufacturers.

## **2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Provide type and thickness of exterior glazing assemblies to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of glass.
  - 1. Design Pressure: Calculated in accordance with ASCE 7 and requirements in Structural Drawings..
  - 2. Comply with ASTM E1300 for design load resistance of glass type, thickness, dimensions, and maximum lateral deflection of supported glass.
  - 3. Provide glass edge support system sufficiently stiff to limit the lateral deflection of supported glass edges to less than 1/175 of their lengths under specified design load.
  - 4. Design glazing units to reliably perform and remain reliably engaged on all edges under all service and thermal stresses, including those associated with partial shading.
  - 5. Limit center of glass deflection to the lesser of 3/4 inch or L/100 (where L is short side dimension of glass unit), or flexure limit of glass, whichever is less, with full recovery of glazing materials.
  - 6. Assure and confirm compatibility of all materials in contact with each other.
  - 7. Glass thicknesses listed are minimum.
- B. Air Barrier Seals: Provide completed assemblies that maintain continuity of building enclosure air barrier.
  - 1. In conjunction with air barrier and joint sealer materials described in other Sections.
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance: Provide exterior glazing products with performance properties as indicated. Performance properties are in accordance with manufacturer's published data as determined with the following procedures and/or test methods:
  - 1. Center of Glass U-Value: Comply with NFRC 100 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
  - 2. Center of Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Comply with NFRC 200 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
  - 3. Solar Optical Properties: Comply with NFRC 300 test method.
- D. Insulating Glass:
  - 1. Insulating Glass Certification Program: Provide insulating glass units that are certified by the Insulating Glass Certification Council (IGCC).
    - a. Provide permanent markings with appropriate certification label of IGCC on either the spacer or one lite of each insulated unit.

## **2.03 GLASS MATERIALS**

- A. Float Glass: Provide float glass based glazing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Annealed Type: ASTM C1036, Type I - Transparent Flat, Class 1 - Clear, Quality - Q3.
  - 2. Kind HS - Heat-Strengthened Type: Complies with ASTM C1048.
  - 3. Kind FT - Fully Tempered Type: Complies with ASTM C1048.
  - 4. Fully Tempered Safety Glass: Complies with ANSI Z97.1 or 16 CFR 1201 criteria for safety glazing used in hazardous locations.
  - 5. Impact Resistant Safety Glass: Complies with ANSI Z97.1 - Class B, or 16 CFR 1201 - Category I criteria.
  - 6. Thicknesses: As indicated; provide greater thickness as required for exterior glazing wind load design.

## **2.04 INSULATING GLASS UNITS**

- A. Insulating Glass Units: Types as indicated.
  - 1. Durability: Certified by an independent testing agency to comply with ASTM E2190.
  - 2. Coated Glass: Comply with requirements of ASTM C1376 for pyrolytic (hard-coat) or magnetic sputter vapor deposition (soft-coat) type coatings on flat glass; coated vision glass, Kind CV; coated overhead glass, Kind CO; or coated spandrel glass, Kind CS.
  - 3. Metal Edge Spacers: Aluminum, bent and soldered corners.
  - 4. Spacer Color: Black.
  - 5. Edge Seal:
    - a. Dual-Sealed System: Provide polyisobutylene sealant as primary seal applied between spacer and glass panes, and silicone sealant as secondary seal applied around perimeter.
    - b. Color: Black.
  - 6. Purge interpane space with dry air, hermetically sealed.
- B. Type IG-01 - Insulating Glass Units: Vision glass, double glazed.
  - 1. Applications: Exterior glazing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Space between lites filled with argon.
  - 3. Outboard Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, minimum.
    - a. Tint: Clear.
    - b. Coating: Low-E (passive type), on #2 surface.
  - 4. Inboard Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, minimum.
    - a. Tint: Clear.

5. Total Thickness: 1 inch (25.4 mm).
  6. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value): 0.25, nominal.
  7. Visible Light Transmittance (VLT): 69 percent, nominal.
  8. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.39, nominal.
  9. Glazing Method: Dry glazing method, gasket glazing.
  10. Products:
    - a. AGC Glass North America, Inc; ENERGY Select 40: [www.agcglass.com](http://www.agcglass.com).
    - b. Guardian Glass, LLC; SunGuard SuperNeutral SN 68: [www.guardianglass.com](http://www.guardianglass.com).
    - c. Viracon, Inc; VE1-2M: [www.viracon.com](http://www.viracon.com).
    - d. Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass); Solarban 60: [www.vitroglazings.com](http://www.vitroglazings.com)
- C. IG-02 Insulating Glass Units: Safety glazing.
1. Applications:
    - a. Glazed lites in exterior doors.
    - b. Glazed sidelights and panels next to doors.
    - c. Other locations required by applicable federal, state, and local codes and regulations.
    - d. Other locations indicated on drawings.
  2. Space between lites filled with argon.
  3. Glass Type: Same as other vision glazing except use fully tempered float glass for both outboard and inboard lites.
  4. Tint: Clear.
  5. Total Thickness: 1 inch (25.4 mm).

## **2.05 MONOLITHIC GLAZING UNITS**

- A. General - Combined Requirements: If a particular glass unit is indicated to comply with more than one type of requirement, such as color, safety characteristics, or other requirements. Comply with all specified requirements for each type as scheduled on Drawings.
- B. Type G-01 - Monolithic Safety Glazing: Non-fire-rated.
1. Applications:
    - a. Glazed lites in doors, except fire doors.
    - b. Glazed sidelights to doors, except in fire-rated walls and partitions.
    - c. Glazed view windows and panels in partitions
    - d. Other locations required by applicable federal, state, and local codes and regulations.
    - e. Other locations indicated on drawings.
  2. Glass Type: Fully tempered safety glass as specified.
  3. Tint: Clear.

4. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), nominal.

## **2.06 GLAZING COMPOUNDS**

- A. General Requirements:
- B. Provide black exposed glazing accessory materials, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
  - 1. Provide materials of hardness as recommended by manufacturer for required application and condition of installation in each case. Provide only compounds which are known to be fully compatible with surfaces contacted, including glass products, seals, and glazing channel surfaces.
- C. Silicone Sealant: Single component; neutral curing; capable of water immersion without loss of properties; non-bleeding, non-staining; ASTM C920 Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M, A, and G; with cured Shore A hardness range of 15 to 25; color as selected.
- D. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. BASF Corporation: [www.basf.com/#sle](http://www.basf.com/#sle).
  - 2. Bostik Inc: [www.bostik-us.com/#sle](http://www.bostik-us.com/#sle).
  - 3. Dow Corning Corporation: [www.dowcorning.com/construction/#sle](http://www.dowcorning.com/construction/#sle). Dow Corning Corporation: [www.dowcorning.com/construction/#sle](http://www.dowcorning.com/construction/#sle).
  - 4. Momentive Performance Materials, Inc: [www.momentive.com/#sle](http://www.momentive.com/#sle).
  - 5. Tremco Commercial Sealants & Waterproofing; Proglaze SSG: [www.tremcosealants.com/#sle](http://www.tremcosealants.com/#sle).

## **2.07 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Setting Blocks: Silicone, with 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Length of 0.1 inch for each square foot (25 mm for each square meter) of glazing or minimum 4 inch (100 mm) by width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) by height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- B. Spacer Shims: Neoprene, 50 to 60 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Minimum 3 inch (75 mm) long by one half the height of the glazing stop by thickness to suit application, self adhesive on one face.
- C. Glazing Gaskets: Resilient silicone extruded shape to suit glazing channel retaining slot; ASTM C864 Option II; color black.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS**

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.

- B. Verify that the minimum required face and edge clearances are being provided.
- C. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.
- D. Proceed with glazing system installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean contact surfaces with appropriate solvent and wipe dry within maximum of 24 hours before glazing. Remove coatings that are not tightly bonded to substrates.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant where required for proper sealant adhesion.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Install glazing in compliance with written instructions of glass, gaskets, and other glazing material manufacturers, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in glazing referenced standards.
- B. Install glazing sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193, GANA (SM), and manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not exceed edge pressures around perimeter of glass lites as stipulated by glass manufacturer.
- D. Set glass lites of system with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- E. Set glass lites in proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as indicated.
- F. Prevent glass from contact with any contaminating substances that may be the result of construction operations such as, and not limited to the following; weld splatter, fire-safing, plastering, mortar droppings, etc.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - DRY GLAZING METHOD (GASKET GLAZING)**

- A. Application - Exterior and/or Interior Glazed: Set glazing infills from either the exterior or the interior of the building.
- B. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch (152 mm) from corners; do not block weep paths.
- C. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against fixed stop with sufficient pressure on gasket to attain full contact.
- D. Install removable stops without displacing glazing gasket; exert pressure for full continuous contact.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- B. Remove non-permanent labels immediately after glazing installation is complete.
- C. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.
- D. Clean glass on both exposed surfaces not more than 4 days prior to Date of Substantial Completion in accordance with glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste; do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 088000**





**SECTION 090561**

**COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FLOORING PREPARATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section applies to floors identified in Contract Documents that are receiving the following types of floor coverings:
  - 1. Resilient sheet.
  - 2. Carpet tile.
  - 3. Thin-set ceramic tile
- B. Preparation of new concrete floor slabs for installation of floor coverings.
- C. Testing of concrete floor slabs for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
- D. Remediation of concrete floor slabs due to unsatisfactory moisture or alkalinity (pH) conditions.
  - 1. Contractor shall perform all specified remediation of concrete floor slabs. If such remediation is indicated by testing agency's report and is due to a condition not under Contractor's control or could not have been predicted by examination prior to entering into the contract, a contract modification will be issued.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Handling of existing floor coverings removed.
- B. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Moisture emission reducing curing and sealing compound for slabs to receive adhered flooring, to prevent moisture content-related flooring failures; to remain in place, not to be removed.
- C. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete admixture for slabs to receive adhered flooring, to prevent moisture content-related flooring failures.
- D. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Limitations on curing requirements for new concrete floor slabs.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C109/C109M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or [50 mm] Cube Specimens); 2021.
- B. ASTM C472 - Standard Test Methods for Physical Testing of Gypsum, Gypsum Plasters and Gypsum Concrete; 2020.

- C. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring; 2022.
- D. ASTM F1869 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride; 2023.
- E. ASTM F2170 - Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes; 2019a.
- F. RFCI (RWP) - Recommended Work Practices for Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings; 2011.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate scheduling of cleaning and testing, so that preliminary cleaning has been completed for at least 24 hours prior to testing.
- B. Section does not include abatement scope.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Floor Covering and Adhesive Manufacturers' Product Literature: For each specific combination of substrate, floor covering, and adhesive to be used; showing:
  - 1. Moisture and alkalinity (pH) limits and test methods.
  - 2. Manufacturer's required bond/compatibility test procedure.
- B. Testing Agency's Report:
  - 1. Description of areas tested; include floor plans and photographs if helpful.
  - 2. Summary of conditions encountered.
  - 3. Moisture and alkalinity (pH) test reports.
  - 4. Copies of specified test methods.
  - 5. Recommendations for remediation of unsatisfactory surfaces.
  - 6. Submit report to Architect.
  - 7. Submit report not more than two business days after conclusion of testing.
- C. Adhesive Bond and Compatibility Test Report.
- D. Floor Moisture Testing Technician Certificate: International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI) Concrete Slab Moisture Testing Technician- Grade I certificate.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Moisture and alkalinity (pH) testing shall be performed by an independent testing agency employed and paid by Contractor.
- B. Contractor may perform adhesive and bond test with Contractor's own personnel or hire a testing agency.

- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent testing agency experienced in the types of testing specified.
  - 1. Submit evidence of experience consisting of at least 3 test reports of the type required, with project Owner's project contact information.
- D. Contractor's Responsibility Relating to Independent Agency Testing:
  - 1. Provide access for and cooperate with testing agency.
  - 2. Confirm date of start of testing at least 10 days prior to actual start.
  - 3. Allow at least 4 business days on site for testing agency activities.
  - 4. Achieve and maintain specified ambient conditions.
  - 5. Notify Architect when specified ambient conditions have been achieved and when testing will start.
- E. Floor Moisture Testing Technician Qualifications: International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI) Concrete Slab Moisture Testing Technician Certification- Grade I.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store, handle, and protect products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's packaging; include installation instructions.
- C. Keep materials from freezing.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperature in spaces where concrete testing is being performed, and for at least 48 hours prior to testing, at not less than 65 degrees F (18 degrees C) or more than 85 degrees F (30 degrees C).
- B. Maintain relative humidity in spaces where concrete testing is being performed, and for at least 48 hours prior to testing, at not less than 40 percent and not more than 60 percent.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Moisture Emission Reducing Sealing Compound: Provide warranty to cost of flooring delamination failures for 10 years, minimum
  - 1. Include cost of repair or removal of failed flooring, remediation with moisture vapor impermeable surface coating, and replacement of flooring with comparable flooring system.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Patching Compound: Floor covering manufacturer's recommended product, suitable for conditions, and compatible with adhesive and floor covering. In the absence of any recommendation from flooring manufacturer, provide a product with the following characteristics:
  - 1. Cementitious moisture-, mildew-, and alkali-resistant compound, compatible with floor, floor covering, and floor covering adhesive, and capable of being feathered to nothing at edges.
  - 2. Compressive Strength: 3000 psi, minimum, after 28 days, when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M or ASTM C472, whichever is appropriate.
  - 3. Products:
    - a. TEC, an H.B. Fuller Construction Products Brand; TEC Feather Edge Skim Coat: [www.tecspecialty.com/#sle](http://www.tecspecialty.com/#sle).
    - b. USG Corporation; Durock Brand Advanced Skim Coat Floor Patch: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).
    - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Alternate Flooring Adhesive: Floor covering manufacturer's recommended product, suitable for the moisture and pH conditions present; low-VOC. In the absence of any recommendation from flooring manufacturer, provide a product recommended by adhesive manufacturer as suitable for substrate and floor covering and for conditions present.
- C. Remedial Floor Coating: Single- or multi-layer coating or coating/overlay combination intended by its manufacturer to resist water vapor transmission to degree sufficient to meet flooring manufacturer's emission limits, resistant to the level of alkalinity (pH) found, and suitable for adhesion of flooring without further treatment.
  - 1. Thickness: As required for application and in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 2. Products:
    - a. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX MC RAPID: [www.ardexamericas.com/#sle](http://www.ardexamericas.com/#sle).
    - b. Custom Building Products; TechMVC Moisture Vapor and Alkalinity Barrier: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle).
    - c. UZIN, a division of UFLOOR Systems Inc; UZIN PE 460 with UZIN PE 280 and UZIN NC 170 LevelStar: [www.ufloorsystems.com/#sle](http://www.ufloorsystems.com/#sle).

- d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  - 1) Must be compatible with Section 035400 - Cast Underlayments
- D. Remedial Floor Sheet Membrane: Pre-formed multi-ply sheet membrane installed over concrete subfloor and intended by its manufacturer to resist water vapor transmission to degree sufficient to meet flooring manufacturer's emission limits, resistant to the level of alkalinity (pH) found, and suitable for adhesion of flooring without further treatment.
  - 1. Thickness: 28 mil (0.028 inch) (0.711 mm).
  - 2. Tape: Types recommended by underlayment manufacturer to install membrane and cover seams.
  - 3. Products:
    - a. GCP Applied Technologies; Kovara MBX: [www.gcpat.com/#sle](http://www.gcpat.com/#sle).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- E. Floor Sealer: Clear, penetrating sealer for application to surfaces of concrete intended by its manufacturer to be vapor-proof, seal, harden, dust-proof, and weather-proof concrete slabs by closing capillary system of concrete, and eliminating route of moisture vapor emission allowing application of moisture-sensitive adhesives and coatings.
  - 1. Comply with [ASTM C309](#) and [ASTM C1315](#), Type I Class A or C.
  - 2. Solids Content: 25 percent, minimum.
  - 3. Acceptable Products:
    - a. Allied Construction Technologies, Inc.; AC-Tech 2170 FC Vapor Reducing System: [www.actechperforms.com](http://www.actechperforms.com).
    - b. Creteseal Concrete Waterproofing Products, Inc.; Creteseal 2000: [www.creteseal.com](http://www.creteseal.com).
    - c. Floor Seal Technology, Inc.; VaporSeal 309 System: [www.floorseal.com](http://www.floorseal.com).

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONCRETE SLAB PREPARATION**

- A. Follow recommendations of testing agency or Contractor's own personnel.
- B. Perform following operations in the order indicated:
  - 1. Existing concrete slabs (on-grade and elevated) with existing floor coverings:
    - a. Visual observation of existing floor covering, for adhesion, water damage, alkaline deposits, and other defects.
    - b. Removal of existing floor covering.
  - 2. Preliminary cleaning.

3. Moisture vapor emission tests; 3 tests in the first 1000 square feet (100 square meters) and one test in each additional 1000 square feet (100 square meters), unless otherwise indicated or required by flooring manufacturer.
  4. Internal relative humidity tests; in same locations as moisture vapor emission tests, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Alkalinity (pH) tests; in same locations as moisture vapor emission tests, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Install any moisture management over existing and new concrete slabs prior to the use of any cast underlayments.
  7. Specified remediation, if required.
  8. Patching, smoothing, and leveling, as required.
  9. Other preparation specified.
  10. Adhesive bond and compatibility test.
  11. Protection.
- C. Remediations:
1. Active Water Leaks or Continuing Moisture Migration to Surface of Slab: Correct this condition before doing any other remediation; re-test after correction.
  2. Excessive Moisture Emission or Relative Humidity: If an adhesive that is resistant to the level of moisture present is available and acceptable to flooring manufacturer, use that adhesive for installation of the flooring; if not, apply remedial floor coating or remedial sheet membrane over entire suspect floor area.
  3. Excessive Alkalinity (pH): If remedial floor coating is necessary to address excessive moisture, no additional remediation is required; if not, if an adhesive that is resistant to the level present is available and acceptable to the flooring manufacturer, use that adhesive for installation of the flooring; otherwise, apply a skim coat of specified patching compound over entire suspect floor area.

### **3.02 PRELIMINARY CLEANING**

- A. Clean floors of dust, solvents, paint, wax, oil, grease, asphalt, residual adhesive, adhesive removers, film-forming curing compounds, sealing compounds, alkaline salts, excessive laitance, mold, mildew, and other materials that might prevent adhesive bond.
- B. Do not use solvents or other chemicals for cleaning.

### **3.03 MOISTURE VAPOR EMISSION TESTING**

- A. Where the floor covering manufacturer's requirements conflict with either the referenced test method or this specification, comply with the manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Where this specification conflicts with the referenced test method, comply with the requirements of this section.
- C. Test in accordance with ASTM F1869 and as follows.
- D. Plastic sheet test and mat bond test may not be substituted for the specified ASTM test method, as those methods do not quantify the moisture content sufficiently.
- E. In the event that test values exceed floor covering manufacturer's limits, perform remediation as indicated. In the absence of manufacturer limits, perform remediation if test values exceed 3 pounds per 1000 square feet (1.4 kg per 93 square meters) per 24 hours.
- F. Report: Report the information required by the test method.

### **3.04 INTERNAL RELATIVE HUMIDITY TESTING**

- A. Where the floor covering manufacturer's requirements conflict with either the referenced test method or this specification, comply with the manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Where this specification conflicts with the referenced test method, comply with the requirements of this section.
- C. Test in accordance with ASTM F2170 Procedure A and as follows.
- D. Testing with electrical impedance or resistance apparatus may not be substituted for the specified ASTM test method, as the values determined are not comparable to the ASTM test values and do not quantify the moisture content sufficiently.
- E. In the event that test values exceed floor covering manufacturer's limits, perform remediation as indicated. In the absence of manufacturer limits, perform remediation if any test value exceeds 75 percent relative humidity.
- F. Report: Report the information required by the test method.

### **3.05 ALKALINITY TESTING**

- A. Where the floor covering manufacturer's requirements conflict with either the referenced test method or this specification, comply with the manufacturer's requirements.
- B. In the event that test values exceed floor covering manufacturer's limits, perform remediation as indicated. In the absence of manufacturer limits, perform remediation if alkalinity (pH) test value is over 10.

### **3.06 PREPARATION**

- A. See individual floor covering section(s) for additional requirements.

- B. Comply with requirements and recommendations of floor covering manufacturer.
- C. Fill and smooth surface cracks, grooves, depressions, control joints and other non-moving joints, and other irregularities with patching compound.
- D. Do not fill expansion joints, isolation joints, or other moving joints.

### **3.07 ADHESIVE BOND AND COMPATIBILITY TESTING**

- A. Comply with requirements and recommendations of floor covering manufacturer.

### **3.08 APPLICATION OF REMEDIAL FLOOR COATING**

- A. Comply with requirements and recommendations of coating manufacturer.
- B. Apply Floor sealer coating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, matching approved mockups for color, special effects, sealing and workmanship
  - 1. Use application materials, methods, and procedures required by coating manufacturer to establish and maintain specified warranty.

### **3.09 INSTALLATION OF REMEDIAL FLOOR SHEET MEMBRANE**

- A. Install in accordance with sheet membrane manufacturer's instructions prior to the use of any cast underlayments.

### **3.10 PROTECTION**

- A. Cover prepared floors with building paper or other durable covering.

**END OF SECTION 090561**



**SECTION 092116**

**GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Performance criteria for gypsum board assemblies.
- B. Acoustic insulation.
- C. Cementitious backing board.
- D. Gypsum wallboard.
- E. Joint treatment and accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Building framing and sheathing.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing acoustical gaps in construction other than gypsum board or plaster work.
- C. Section 092216 - Non-Structural Metal Framing.
- D. Section 093000 - Tiling: Tile backing board.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units; 2018.
- B. ANSI A118.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Test Methods and Specifications for Cementitious Backer Units; 2019.
- C. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board; 2017.
- D. ASTM C557 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing; 2003 (Reapproved 2017).
- E. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing; 2017.
- F. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products; 2020.
- G. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2020.
- H. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness; 2018.

- I. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs; 2020.
- J. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base; 2019.
- K. ASTM C1325 - Standard Specification for Fiber-Mat Reinforced Cementitious Backer Units; 2021.
- L. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board; 2017.
- M. ASTM C1658/C1658M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels; 2019, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- N. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber; 2021.
- O. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements; 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- P. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation; 2022.
- Q. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products; 2016, with Errata.
- R. GA-600 - Fire Resistance Design Manual Sound Control; 2021.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate special details associated with fireproofing and acoustic seals.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on metal framing, gypsum board, accessories, joint finishing system, and acoustic insulation and sealants.
- D. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on partition head to structure connectors, showing compliance with requirements.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing gypsum board installation and finishing, with minimum 5 years of experience.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier
- B. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack gypsum panels flat to prevent sagging.

## **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with requirements of ASTM C840 or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever is more stringent.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Provide completed assemblies complying with ASTM C840 and GA-216.
  - 1. See PART 3 for finishing requirements.

### **2.02 BOARD MATERIALS**

- A. Manufacturers - Gypsum-Based Board:
  - 1. American Gypsum Company: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
  - 2. CertainTeed Corporation: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
  - 3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum: [www.gpgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.gpgypsum.com/#sle).
  - 4. National Gypsum Company: [www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle).
  - 5. USG Corporation: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).
  - 6. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
  - 1. Application: Use for vertical surfaces and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Glass mat faced gypsum panels, as defined in ASTM C1658/C1658M, suitable for paint finish, of the same core type and thickness may be substituted for paper-faced board.
    - a. Glass mat faced gypsum panels are required for all pre-rock applications and gypsum installation prior to building being enclosed
  - 3. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
    - a. Mold-resistant board is required whenever board is being installed before the building is enclosed and conditioned.
    - b. Mold resistant board is required in areas subject to wetting, steam, or high humidity.
      - 1) Locations: Bathrooms, Staff Breakroom.
  - 4. At Above Grade Assemblies Indicated to Comply with NFPA 285: Use Type X board for interior drywall
  - 5. Thickness:
    - a. Vertical Surfaces: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
    - b. Ceilings: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
    - c. Multi-Layer Assemblies: Thicknesses as indicated on drawings.

6. Paper-Faced Products:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Type X Drywall: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
  - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum; ToughRock: [www.gpgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.gpgypsum.com/#sle).
7. Mold Resistant Paper Faced Products:
  - a. American Gypsum Company; M-Bloc Type X: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
  - b. American Gypsum Company; M-Bloc Type C: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
  - c. CertainTeed Corporation; M2Tech 5/8" Type X Moisture & Mold Resistant Drywall: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
  - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum; ToughRock Fireguard X Mold-Guard: [www.gpgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.gpgypsum.com/#sle).
  - e. USG Corporation; USG Sheetrock Brand EcoSmart Panels Mold Tough Firecode X: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).
8. Glass Mat Faced Products:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation; 5/8" GlasRoc Interior Type X: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
  - b. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond eXP Interior Extreme Gypsum Panel: [www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle).
  - c. USG Corporation; USG Sheetrock Brand Glass-Mat Panels Mold Tough.
- C. Backing Board For Wet Areas:
  1. Application: Surfaces behind tile in wet areas including bathrooms.
  2. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
  3. ANSI Cement-Based Board: Non-gypsum-based; aggregated Portland cement panels with glass fiber mesh embedded in front and back surfaces complying with ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C1325.
    - a. Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
    - b. Products:
      - 1) Custom Building Products; Wonderboard Lite: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle).
      - 2) National Gypsum Company; PermaBase Cement Board: [www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle).
      - 3) USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).
      - 4) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- D. Exterior Sheathing Board: See Section 061000.

### 2.03 GYPSUM BOARD ACCESSORIES

- A. Acoustic Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed mineral-fiber, friction fit type, unfaced; thickness as required for STC.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Rockwool AFB, [www.rockwool.com/north-america/products-and-applications/products/afb/](http://www.rockwool.com/north-america/products-and-applications/products/afb/)
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex or water-based elastomeric sealant; do not use solvent-based non-curing butyl sealant.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Franklin International, Inc; Titebond GREENchoice Professional Acoustical Smoke and Sound Sealant: [www.titebond.com/#sle](http://www.titebond.com/#sle).
    - b. Liquid Nails, a brand of PPG Architectural Coatings; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.liquidnails.com/#sle](http://www.liquidnails.com/#sle).
    - c. Specified Technologies Inc; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant: [www.stifirestop.com/#sle](http://www.stifirestop.com/#sle).
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  - 2. Comply with adhesives and sealants and VOS product requirements specified.
  - 3. Color of exposed acoustical joint sealants: Match adjacent surface.
- C. Acoustic Outlet Box Pads
  - 1. Minimum thickness: 1/8 inch
  - 2. Adhesion: adheres readily to metal or plastic
  - 3. Shall contain no asbestos
  - 4. Minimum shelf life: 1 year.
- D. Non Fire Rated Products
  - 1. Lowry's Outlet Box Pads as manufactured by Harry A. Lowry & Associates, Inc., Sun Valley, CA.
  - 2. Sound Pad #68 as manufactured by L.H. Dottie Co., City of Commerce, CA.
- E. Finishing Accessories: ASTM C1047, extruded aluminum alloy (6063 T5), galvanized steel sheet ASTM A924/A924M G90, rolled zinc, or rigid plastic, unless noted otherwise.
  - 1. Types: As detailed or required for finished appearance.
  - 2. Special Shapes: In addition to conventional corner bead and control joints, provide U-bead, L-bead, LC-bead, and tear away L-bead at exposed panel edges or transition between material finishes.

3. Products:
  - a. Same manufacturer as framing materials.
  - b. ClarkDietrich (Finishing Accessories) [www.clarkdietrich.com](http://www.clarkdietrich.com)
  - c. Phillips Manufacturing Co; \_\_\_\_: [www.phillipsmfg.com/#sle](http://www.phillipsmfg.com/#sle).
  - d. Trim-tex, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.trim-tex.com/#sle](http://www.trim-tex.com/#sle).
  - e. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- F. Joint Materials: ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.
  1. Fiberglass Tape: 2 inch (50 mm) wide, coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners exterior and glass-mat gypsum.
  2. Paper Tape: 2 inch (50 mm) wide, creased paper tape for joints and corners for interior gypsum board.
  3. Tape for Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
  4. Joint Compound: Drying type, vinyl-based, ready-mixed.
    - a. Use low-VOC joint compounds complying with requirements of LEED and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
  5. Joint Compound: Setting type, field-mixed.
- G. High Build Drywall Surfer: Vinyl acrylic latex-based coating for spray application, designed to take the place of skim coating and separate paint primer in achieving Level 5 finish.
- H. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inches (0.84 mm) in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion-resistant.
- I. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Steel Members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) in Thickness: ASTM C954; steel drill screws, corrosion-resistant.
- J. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- K. Anchorage to Substrate: Tie wire, nails, screws, and other metal supports, of type and size to suit application; to rigidly secure materials in place.
- L. Adhesive for Attachment to Metal:
  1. Products:
    - a. Franklin International, Inc; Titebond PROvantage Professional Drywall Adhesive: [www.titebond.com/#sle](http://www.titebond.com/#sle).
    - b. Liquid Nails, a brand of PPG Architectural Coatings; DWP-24 Drywall Construction Adhesive: [www.liquidnails.com/#sle](http://www.liquidnails.com/#sle); [www.liquidnails.com/#sle](http://www.liquidnails.com/#sle).

- c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Preparation for acoustic sealant:
  - 1. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing acoustical joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by acoustical-joint-sealant manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
  - 3. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.
- B. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- C. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.
- D. Acoustic Sealant: Install as follows:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM C 919, ASTM C 1193, and manufacturer's written recommendations for closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions to underside of floor slabs above acoustical ceilings.
  - 2. Acoustical Ceiling Areas: Apply acoustical joint sealant at perimeter edge moldings of acoustical ceiling areas in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  - 3. Place one bead continuously on substrate before installation of perimeter framing members.
  - 4. Place continuous bead at perimeter of each layer of gypsum board.

5. Seal around all penetrations by conduit, pipe, ducts, and rough-in boxes, except where firestopping is provided.

### **3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
- B. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- C. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- D. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
  2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.
- E. Single-Layer Nonrated: Install gypsum board in most economical direction, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
- F. Double-Layer, Nonrated: Use gypsum board for first layer, placed parallel to framing or furring members, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing. Use glass mat faced gypsum board at exterior walls and at other locations as indicated. Place second layer perpendicular to framing or furring members. Offset joints of second layer from joints of first layer.
- G. Cementitious Backing Board: Install over steel framing members and plywood substrate where indicated, in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Installation on Metal Framing: Use screws for attachment of gypsum board.
- I. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.
  1. Not more than 30 feet (10 meters) apart on walls and ceilings over 50 feet (16 meters) long.
  2. At exterior soffits, not more than 30 feet (10 meters) apart in both directions.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.



- C. Edge Trim: Install at locations where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials.

### **3.05 JOINT TREATMENT**

- A. Glass Mat Faced Gypsum Board and Exterior Glass Mat Faced Sheathing: Use fiberglass joint tape, embed and finish with setting type joint compound.
- B. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
1. Level 5: Walls and ceilings to receive semi-gloss or gloss paint finish and other areas specifically indicated.
  2. Level 4: Walls and ceilings to receive paint finish or wall coverings, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Level 2: In utility areas, behind cabinetry, and on backing board to receive tile finish.
  4. Level 1: Wall areas above finished ceilings, whether or not accessible in the completed construction.
- C. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
- D. Where Level 5 finish is indicated, spray apply high build drywall surfacer over entire surface after joints have been properly treated; achieve a flat and tool mark-free finish.
- E. Fill and finish joints and corners of cementitious backing board as recommended by manufacturer.

### **3.06 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m) in any direction.

**END OF SECTION 092116**



## **SECTION 092216**

### **NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Metal partition, ceiling, and soffit, shaft wall framing.
- B. Framing accessories.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 054000 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Requirements for structural, load-bearing, metal stud framing and exterior wall stud framing.
- B. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking within stud framing.
- C. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Wall sheathing.
- D. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Metal studs for gypsum board partition framing.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AISI S100 - North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members; 2016, with Supplement (2018).
- B. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2019.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- D. ASTM A1003/A1003M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Nonmetallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members; 2015.
- E. ASTM C645 - Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members; 2018.
- F. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products; 2020.
- G. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs; 2020.
- H. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements; 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- I. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation; 2022.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Indicate prefabricated work, anchorage to structure, acoustic details, and items of other related work.
  2. Describe method for securing studs to tracks, splicing, and for blocking and reinforcement of framing connections.
- C. Product Data: Provide data describing framing member materials and finish, product criteria, load charts, and limitations.
- D. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on partition head to structure connectors, showing compliance with requirements.
- E. Evaluation Reports: Submit evaluation reports certified under an independent third-party inspection program administered by an agency accredited by IAS to ICC-ES AC98 IAS accreditation criteria for inspection agencies.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum five years documented experience and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified in accordance with the product-certification program of the Steel Framing Industry Association (SFIA) or a similar organization that provides a verifiable code compliance program.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling as required by AISI S202 "Code of Standard Practice."

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Metal Framing, Connectors, and Accessories:
1. ClarkDietrich: [www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle](http://www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle).
  2. Jaimes Industries: [www.jaimesind.com/#sle](http://www.jaimesind.com/#sle).
  3. Marino: [www.marinoware.com/#sle](http://www.marinoware.com/#sle).
  4. Simpson Strong Tie: [www.strongtie.com/#sle](http://www.strongtie.com/#sle).
  5. Steel Construction Systems: [www.steelconsystems.com/#sle](http://www.steelconsystems.com/#sle).
  6. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.02 FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Design Requirements: Contractor is responsible for designing metal framing used to comply with performance requirements, including anchorage to structural system and necessary modifications to meet specified requirements and maintain visual design concepts.
  - 1. Design framing systems in accordance with AISI S220, "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Nonstructural Members" and ASTM C645, Section 10, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Interior Suspended Gypsum Board Ceilings, Soffits, and Bulkheads: Design and install to provide deflection of not more than  $1/360$  of distance between supports.
  - 2. Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies: Design and install to withstand lateral loading (air pressure) of 5 PSF with deflection limit not more than  $1/240$  of partition height.
  - 3. Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies at Locations with Ceramic Tile or Other Hard Surface Finishes: Design and install to withstand lateral loading (air pressure) with deflection limit not more than  $L/360$  of partition height.
  - 4. Where documents indicate a stud size, size shall be considered minimum. Increase gage to meet minimum performance requirements.
  - 5. Accommodate building structure deflections in connections to structure.
- C. Non-Loadbearing Framing System Components: : AISI S220 and ASTM C645; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 for the spacing indicated, with maximum deflection of wall framing of listed above.
  - 1. Protective Coating: AISI S220, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, (Z120); or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance of ASTM A653/A653M, G40 (Z120), hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.
  - 2. Studs: C shaped with flat or formed webs.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch (20-gage drywall) unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness at wall tile: 0.033 inch.
  - 3. Runners: U shaped, sized to match studs.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: Same as studs.
  - 4. Equivalent Gauge Studs and Runners:
    - a. Acceptable Product: ClarkDietrich; ProSTUD20 and ProTRAK20 with Smart Edge technology.

- b. Minimum Base Steel Thickness: 0.0181 inch (20 EQ).
- 5. Ceiling Channels: C shaped (main runners)
  - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.053 i.
  - b. Minimum Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
  - c. Minimum flange width: 1/2 inch.
- 6. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
  - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
- 7. Cold-Rolled U-Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
  - a. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
  - b. Acceptable Product: ClarkDietrich; Cold Formed U-Channel and FastBridge (FB33) Bridging Clip
- D. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung, non-rated system unless otherwise required by building codes or authorities having jurisdiction composed main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Where fire-rated grid system may be required by authorities having jurisdiction provide hanger wire suspension 8-inches off fire breaks in accordance with system manufacturer's written guidelines.
  - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems (non-rated).
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System (non-rated).
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System (non-rated).
- E. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- F. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- G. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.
- H. Partition Head to Structure Connections: Provide mechanical anchorage devices that accommodate deflection using slotted holes, screws, and anti-friction bushings, preventing rotation of studs while maintaining structural performance of partition.
  - 1. Structural Performance: Maintain lateral load resistance and vertical movement capacity required by applicable code, when evaluated in accordance with AISI S100.
  - 2. Material: ASTM A653/A653M steel sheet, SS Grade 50, with G60/Z180 hot-dipped galvanized coating.

3. Provide components UL-listed for use in UL-listed fire-resistance-rated head of partition joint systems indicated on drawings.
4. Provide top track preassembled with connection devices spaced to fit stud spacing indicated on drawings; minimum track length of 12 feet (3660 mm).
- I. Non-Loadbearing Framing Accessories:
  1. Ceiling Hangers: Type and size as specified in ASTM C754 for spacing required.
  2. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
  3. Partial Height Wall Framing Support: Provides stud reinforcement and anchored connection to floor.
    - a. Materials: ASTM A36/A36M formed sheet steel support member with factory-welded ASTM A1003/A1003M steel plate base.
    - b. Products:
      - 1) ClarkDietrich; Pony Wall (PW): [www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle](http://www.clarkdietrich.com/#sle).
  4. Bracing and Bridging: ASTM A653/A653M G90 galvanized steel; for lateral bracing of wall studs with slots for engaging on-module studs.
  5. Fasteners: ASTM C1002 self-piercing tapping screws.
- J. Tracks and Runners: Same material and thickness as studs, bent leg retainer notched to receive studs.
- K. Acoustic Insulation and Sealant: As specified in Section 09 21 16.
- L. Neoprene Closure Strips: ASTM D 1056, Grade SCE41 and RE41E1, black, closed-cell neoprene, 1/2" thick.
  1. Products: Williams Neoprene Type NN1, 1040 Series, Williams Products, Inc. (248) 643-6400.

## **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate assemblies of framed sections to sizes and profiles required.
- B. Fit, reinforce, and brace framing members to suit design requirements.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that rough-in utilities are in proper location.
- C. Examine areas and substrates for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been

corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF STUD FRAMING**

- A. Comply with requirements of ASTM C754.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. For interior non-load bearing walls indicated to terminate above suspended ceilings provide 20-gauge stud diagonal bracing of walls at door openings, corner wall intersections and at maximum 10'-0" intervals to structural supports or substrates above. Otherwise extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.
- F. Extend partition framing to structure where indicated and to ceiling in other locations.
- G. Partitions Terminating at Ceiling: Attach ceiling runner securely to ceiling track in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Partitions Terminating at Structure: Attach top runner to structure, maintain clearance between top of studs and structure, and connect studs to track using specified mechanical devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; verify free movement of top of stud connections; do not leave studs unattached to track.
- I. Align and secure top and bottom runners at 24 inches (600 mm) on center.
- J. At partitions indicated with an acoustic rating:
  - 1. Install acoustic insulation, sealants, and accessories as described in Section 09 21 16.
  - 2. Provide components and install as required to produce STC ratings as indicated, based on published tests by manufacturer conducted in accordance with ASTM E90 with STC rating calculated in accordance with ASTM E413.
- K. Fit runners under and above openings; secure intermediate studs to same spacing as wall studs.
- L. Install studs vertically at spacing indicated on drawings.



- M. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- N. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- O. Align stud web openings horizontally.
- P. Secure studs to tracks using crimping method. Do not weld.
- Q. Stud splicing is not permissible.
- R. Fabricate corners using a minimum of three studs.
- S. Double stud at wall openings, door and window jambs, not more than 2 inches from each side of openings.
  - 1. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  - 2. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
- T. Install double studs at wall openings, door and window jambs, not more than 2 inches (50 mm) from each side of openings.
- U. Brace stud framing system rigid.
- V. Coordinate erection of studs with requirements of door frames; install supports and attachments.
- W. Coordinate installation of bucks, anchors, and blocking with electrical, mechanical, and other work to be placed within or behind stud framing.
- X. Use sheet metal backing/blocking for reinforcement of the following:
  - 1. Framed openings.
  - 2. Wall mounted cabinets.
  - 3. Plumbing fixtures.
  - 4. Toilet accessories.
  - 5. Wall mounted door hardware.
  - 6. Wall mounted televisions or other equipment.

#### **3.04 CEILING AND SOFFIT FRAMING**

- A. Contractor's Option: At the Contractor's option suspended ceiling systems may be either suspended steel framing system or grid suspension system.
- B. Comply with requirements of ASTM C754.
- C. Install furring after work above ceiling or soffit is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- D. Install furring independent of walls, columns, and above-ceiling work.

- E. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- F. Securely anchor hangers to structural members or embed them in structural slab. Space hangers as required to limit deflection to criteria indicated.
  - 1. Hanger spacing not to exceed 48 inches on center.
- G. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
- H. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 1. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  - 2. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  - 3. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  - 4. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- I. Space main carrying channels at maximum 72 inch (1 800 mm) on center, and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from wall surfaces. Lap splice securely.
- J. Securely fix carrying channels to hangers to prevent turning or twisting and to transmit full load to hangers.
- K. Place furring channels perpendicular to carrying channels, not more than 2 inches (50 mm) from perimeter walls, and rigidly secure. Lap splices securely.
- L. Reinforce openings in suspension system that interrupt main carrying channels or furring channels with lateral channel bracing. Extend bracing minimum 24 inches (600 mm) past each opening.
- M. Laterally brace suspension system.
- N. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.

- O. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- P. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

### **3.05 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m).
- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m).

**END OF SECTION 092216**



## **SECTION 092513**

### **DIRECT EXTERIOR FINISH SYSTEM**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Acrylic polymer coating system.
- B. Exterior soffit applications.
  - 1. Gypsum backer board substrate.

##### **1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D2247
- B. ASTM C297/C297M
- C. ASTM C297/C297M - Standard Test Method for Flatwise Tensile Strength of Sandwich Constructions; 2016.
- D. ASTM D2247 - Standard Practice for Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100 % Relative Humidity; 2015 (Reapproved 2020).
- E. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber; 2021.
- F. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference; 2000 (Reapproved 2016).
- G. ASTM D3273
- H. ASTM E331

##### **1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information including specifications, basic materials, installation instructions for the system, and test reports from an independent testing laboratory certifying test results for bond integrity and material properties.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples, 12 x 12 inches (304.8 mm) each, indicating finish coat texture and color selected from manufacturer's standards. Apply samples to specified substrate board, using applicator, materials, tools, and techniques proposed for installation.

##### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum three years of experience.

- C. Obtain materials for system from either a single manufacturer, or from manufacturers approved by the system manufacturer as compatible with other system components.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION**

- A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages and containers, clearly marked with manufacturer's name, brand name, and description of contents.
- B. Store materials in clean, dry, well ventilated area in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Maintain ambient temperature above 40 degrees Fahrenheit (4.44 degrees Celsius).

#### **1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Apply system materials in ambient temperatures above [40] degrees Fahrenheit ([4.44] degrees Celsius).
- B. Do not apply system to damp or wet substrates.
- C. Maintain minimum ambient temperature of 40 degrees Fahrenheit (4.44 degrees Celsius) for minimum 24 hours after installation.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Correct defective Work within a three year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage of materials and workmanship against cracking, crazing, chalking, de-lamination, and color fading.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Basis of Design Manufacturer:
  - 1. STO Corp.; Specification F601S StoQuik Gold Finish System: [www.stocorp.com](http://www.stocorp.com).
  - 2. Substitutions: Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
  - 3. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Parex, Inc.: [www.parex.com](http://www.parex.com).
    - b. BASF Wall Systems: [www.basfwallsystems.com](http://www.basfwallsystems.com).
    - c. Omega Products International, Inc.; [www.omega-products.com](http://www.omega-products.com).
    - d. Dryvit Systems, Inc.; [www.dryvit.com](http://www.dryvit.com).

#### **2.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Site fabricated exterior soffit finish system consisting of gypsum backer board, fabric reinforcing, base coat, and finish coat. Use system manufacturer's standard products regularly used in producing specified system.

1. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within system components, or between system and supporting wall construction resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
2. Water Penetration: ASTM E331; no water penetration beyond the plane of the base coat/insulation board interface after 15 minutes at 6.24 psf, or 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater.
3. Water Resistance: ASTM D2247; no deleterious effects at 14 day exposure.
4. Mildew Resistance: ASTM D3273; no growth supported during 28 day exposure period.
5. Tensile Adhesion: ASTM C297; no failure in the adhesive, base coat, or finish coat; minimum 5 psi (34.47 kPa) tensile strength before and after freeze/thaw and accelerated weathering tests.

### **2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Glass-Mat-Faced Backing Board: Specified in Section 06 16 00.
- B. Base Coat: Fiber-reinforced, acrylic product that is compatible with backer board and reinforcing mesh.
- C. Finish Coat: Water-based, air curing, acrylic finish with integral color and texture.
  1. Texture: Fine.
  2. Color: To match Benjamin Moore HC-134

### **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, open weave glass fiber fabric, treated for compatibility and improved bond with coating, weight, strength, and number of layers as required to meet required system impact rating.
- B. Vented Channel Reveal - Surfac
  1. Basis of Design: Clark Dietrich DCV58-200SE
  2. Finish: Gray
  3. Substitutions: Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- C. Sealant Materials: Specified in Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates with applicator present to determine satisfactory condition of substrates for installation of system. Proceed with installation only when satisfactory conditions are present.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect adjacent work and substrates from moisture deterioration and soiling resulting from application of system. Provide temporary covering and other protection required to prevent damage to other work.
- B. Protect work areas and substrate construction from adverse weather during installation. Prevent infiltration of moisture behind system, and deterioration of substrates.
- C. Perform substrate preparation and cleaning procedures in conformance with system manufacturer's instructions for indicated substrate conditions.
- D. Apply patching compound and sealers as required to produce substrates meeting requirements of system manufacturer.
- E. Carefully mix, prepare, and apply materials in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install backer boards and tape joints to comply with manufacturer's recommendations for type of application indicated.
  - 1. Use galvanized or stainless steel fasteners.
- C. Apply base coat to minimum thickness specified by system manufacturer. Fully embed reinforcing fabric in wet base coat, with fabric continuous at corners, and lapped or otherwise treated at joints to comply with system manufacturer's specifications. Do not carry reinforcing fabric across expansion joints.
- D. Apply finish coat over dry base coat to minimum thickness specified by system manufacturer to produce uniform finish and specified texture.
- E. Coordinate perimeter sealant installation to produce water-resistant ceiling system.
- F. Install sealants as specified in 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants.

**END OF SECTION 092513**



**SECTION 093000**

**TILING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Tile for wall applications.
- B. Tile for floor applications
- C. Non-ceramic trim.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 035400 - Cast Underlayment.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between tile work and adjacent construction and fixtures.
- C. Section 090561 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation: Concrete slab moisture and alkalinity testing and remediation procedures.
- D. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Tile backer board.
- E. Section 224000 - Plumbing Fixtures: Shower receptor.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A108/A118/A136 - American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile (Compendium); 2019.
- B. ANSI A108.1a - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar; 2017.
- C. ANSI A108.1b - Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set, Modified Dry-Set, or Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar; 2023.
- D. ANSI A108.1c - Contractor's Option: Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar or Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set, Modified Dry-Set, or Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar; 2023.
- E. ANSI A108.2 - American National Standard General Requirements: Materials, Environmental and Workmanship; 2019.
- F. ANSI A108.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesive or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive; 2023.
- G. ANSI A108.5 - Setting of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Cement Mortar, Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar, EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar, or Improved Modified

Dry-Set Cement Mortar; 2023.

- H. ANSI A108.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grout Epoxy; 2023.
- I. ANSI A108.8 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2024).
- J. ANSI A108.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout; 2023.
- K. ANSI A108.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tilework; 2017 (Reaffirmed 2022).
- L. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units; 2018.
- M. ANSI A108.12 - Installation of Ceramic Tile with EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Modified Dry-Set Mortar; 2023.
- N. ANSI A108.13 - American National Standard for Installation of Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone; 2005 (Reaffirmed 2021).
- O. ANSI A108.19 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Gauged Porcelain Tiles and Gauged Porcelain Tile Panels/Slabs by the Thin-Bed Method Bonded with Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar or Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar; 2020.
- P. ANSI A118.1 - American National Standard Specifications for Dry-Set Cement Mortar; 2019.
- Q. ANSI A118.3 - American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive; 2021.
- R. ANSI A118.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes For Thin-Set Ceramic Tile And Dimension Stone Installation; 2014 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- S. ANSI A137.1 - American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile; 2022.
- T. ASTM C373 - Standard Test Methods for Determination of Water Absorption and Associated Properties by Vacuum Method for Pressed Ceramic Tiles and Glass Tiles and Boil Method for Extruded Ceramic Tiles and Non-tile Fired Ceramic Whiteware Products; 2018.
- U. ASTM C482 - Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement Paste; 2020.
- V. TCNA (HB) - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation; 2021.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate location of tiling movement joints on concrete floor substrates with locations of concrete floor expansion and control joints; align substrate joints and tiling system joints where required by specified reference standards.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.
  - 1. Review installation procedures and coordination requirements.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' data sheets on tile, mortar, grout, and accessories. Include instructions for using grouts and adhesives.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, junctions with dissimilar materials, ceramic accessories, and setting details.
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Full-sized units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish specified. For ceramic mosaic tile in color blend patterns, provide one full sheet of each specified color blend.
  - 2. Full sided units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish specified.
  - 3. Grout color samples for each type and color specified
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning methods, cleaning materials, and stain removal methods.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Tile: 5 percent of each size, color, and surface finish combination.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Maintain one copy of and ANSI A108/A118/A136 and TCNA (HB) on site.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the types of products specified in this section, with minimum five years of documented experience.
- C. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Company specializing in performing tile installation, with minimum of five years of documented experience.

- D. Provide materials obtained from only one manufacturer for each type and color of tile, and for each type of mortar, grout, adhesive and sealant.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover and in a dry location.
- C. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's recommendations for protection and maintenance of environmental conditions during and after installation.
- B. Do not install solvent-based products in an unventilated environment.
- C. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature above 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) and below 100 degrees F (38 degrees C) during installation and curing of setting materials.
- D. Vent temporary heaters to the exterior to prevent damage to tile work due to carbon dioxide accumulation.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace tile that falls in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Installer's Special Warranty: Specified form, signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, for warranty period of 10 years.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Break Strength: ASTM C648.
  - 1. Floor Tiles: 250 lbf
- B. Bond Strength: ASTM C482; 50 psi minimum.
- C. Scratch Resistance (Moh's Hardness):
  - 1. For Porcelain (dry pressed): 0.5% maximum.

#### **2.02 TILE**

- A. Manufacturers: All products by the same manufacturer.
  - 1. Mosa: [www.mosa.com/en-us](http://www.mosa.com/en-us)
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Glazed Wall Tile, Type WT-01: ANSI A137.1 standard grade.

1. Type: Global Collection
  2. Size: 6 by 6 inches, nominal.
  3. Shape: Square
  4. Moisture Absorption: 0 to 0.5 percent as tested in accordance with ASTM C373.
  5. Surface Finish: Smooth (V).
  6. Color(s): Plan Turquoise / 75100.
  7. Pattern: As indicated on drawings.
- C. Floor Tile, Type FT-01: ANSI A137.1 standard grade.
1. Type: Global Collection
  2. Size: 6 by 6 inches, nominal.
  3. Shape: Square.
  4. Moisture Absorption: 0 to 0.5 percent as tested in accordance with ASTM C373.
  5. Surface Finish: Smooth (V).
  6. Color(s): Small speckled turquoise / 75500.
  7. Pattern: As indicated on drawings.

## **2.03 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Non-Ceramic Trim: Brushed chrome anodized aluminum in profiles shown with integral provision for anchorage to mortar bed or substrate, style and dimensions to suit application, for setting using tile mortar or adhesive.
1. Applications:
    - a. Open edges of wall tile.
    - b. Open edges of floor tile.
    - c. Wall corners, outside and inside.
    - d. Transition between floor finishes of different heights Reference Section 096500 - Resilient Flooring
    - e. Borders and other trim as indicated on drawings.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Schluter-Systems: [www.schluter.com/#sle](http://www.schluter.com/#sle).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  3. Type:
    - a. Schluter Jolly to match thickness of tile
    - b. Finish: Anodized Aluminum
    - c. Location: Outside edge of bathroom walls and top edge of tile
  4. Type:

- a. Schluter DILEX AHK to match thickness of tile
- b. Finish: Anodized Aluminum
- c. Location: Wall to Floor tile transition

## **2.04 SETTING MATERIALS**

- A. Provide setting and grout materials from same manufacturer.
  - 1. Use only the types of mortar bed materials to set the types of tile for which the mortar is labeled.
- B. Modified Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar Bond Coat: ANSI A118.1.
  - 1. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
  - 2. Applications: Use this type of bond coat where indicated and where no other type of bond coat is indicated.
    - a. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
  - 3. Products:
    - a. TEC, an H.B. Fuller Construction Products Brand; [www.tecspecialty.com/#sle](http://www.tecspecialty.com/#sle).
      - 1) TEC Ultimate Large Tile Mortar.
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.05 GROUTS**

- A. Provide setting and grout materials from same manufacturer.
- B. Grout: ANSI A118.7 chemical resistant and water-cleanable epoxy grout.
  - 1. Applications: Typical grout unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide product capable of resisting continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 degrees F and 212 degrees F respectively; certified by grout manufacturer for intended use.
  - 3. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
  - 4. Products:
    - a. TEC, an H.B. Fuller Construction Products Brand; TEC Power Grout 550: [www.tecspecialty.com/#sle](http://www.tecspecialty.com/#sle).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS**

- A. Tile Sealant Traffic Grade:
  - 1. Reference Section 079200 - Joint Sealants

2. Provide nonsag traffic grade sealant or self leveling silicone sealant.
- B. Tile Sealant Non-Traffic Grade: Gunnable siliconized acrylic; moisture and mildew resistant type.
  1. Colors: To match adjacent grout
  2. TEC, H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc; AccuColor Sanded/Unsanded Siliconized Acrylic Caulk: [www.tecspecialty.com](http://www.tecspecialty.com).
  3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.07 ACCESSORY MATERIALS**

- A. Waterproofing Membrane: Specifically designed for bonding to cementitious substrate under thick mortar bed or thin-set tile; complying with ANSI A118.10.
  1. Application: Typical at floor tile in Bathrooms
  2. Fluid or Trowel Applied Type:
    - a. Products:
      - 1) TEC, an H.B. Fuller Construction Products Brand; TEC HydraFlex Waterproofing Crack Isolation Membrane: [www.tecspecialty.com](http://www.tecspecialty.com)..
      - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Backer Board: Specified in Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.
- C. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust free and free of substances that could impair bonding of setting materials to subfloor surfaces.
- D. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with bonded mortar bed or thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
- E. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for tiling installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
  1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tiling material manufacturer and setting material manufacturer.
  2. Reference Section 090561 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation

- F. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
- G. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances. and with product acceptable to tile manufacturer.
- D. Install backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions.  
Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of setting material to a feather edge.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Install tile and thresholds and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1a through ANSI A108.19 , manufacturer's instructions, and TCNA (HB) recommendations.
- B. Blending: For tile exhibiting color or pattern variations within the ranges of accepted submittals, verify that tile has been blended in the packages so that tile units taken from one package show same range in colors or patterns as those taken from other packages. If not blended in the packages, blend tile in the field before installation.
- C. Wall System Coverage: Where specified for individual setting methods, install wall tile units with 100 percent mortar coverage by complying with applicable special requirements for back buttering of tile units in referenced ANSI A108 specifications.
- D. Movement Joints: Comply with [TCNA \(HB\)](#) Method EJ171F requirements for locations, spacing, and installation of applicable movement joints, whether or not specifically indicated or detailed on Drawings, and as follows:
  - 1. Field Joint Spacing - Interior: Maximum 24 feet on center in each direction; reduce spacing to maximum 10 feet on center in areas exposed to direct sunlight or moisture.
  - 2. Joint Width: Match adjacent grouted joint widths, unless TCNA EJ171 requires a specific joint width based on joint location or joint service conditions.
  - 3. Apply sealant joint to junction of tile and dissimilar materials and junction of dissimilar planes, including but not limited to floor to wall joints, corners, and metal trim and non-ceramic accessory items.
  - 4. Keep movement joints free of setting adhesive and grout.



- 5. Form internal angles and corners square, not grouted, with sealant joint.
- 6. Form external angles and corners square, not grouted, with sealant joint.
- 7. Apply specified sealant to joints.
- E. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- F. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly.
- G. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make grout joints without voids, cracks, excess mortar or excess grout, or too little grout.
- H. Install non-ceramic trim in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- I. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
- J. Keep control and expansion joints free of mortar, grout, and adhesive.
- K. Prior to grouting, allow installation to completely cure; minimum of 48 hours.
- L. Grout tile joints unless otherwise indicated. Use standard grout unless otherwise indicated.
- M. At changes in plane and tile-to-tile control joints, use tile sealant instead of grout, with either bond breaker tape or backer rod as appropriate to prevent three-sided bonding.
- N. Allow completed tiling assemblies to cure full 72 hours before allowing heavy foot or equipment traffic on final installations

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE**

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproofing to cure before installing tile or setting materials

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE**

- A. Over cementitious backer units on studs, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W244, using membrane at toilet rooms and locker rooms.
  - 1. Provide 100 percent coverage of setting mortar over tile back surfaces.
- B. Over interior concrete and masonry install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W202 with waterproofing membrane.
  - 1. Provide 100 percent coverage of setting mortar over tile back surfaces.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION - FLOOR TILE**

- A. Over interior concrete install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W202 with waterproofing membrane.

### **3.07 TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.2, unless otherwise specified in this Section.
- B. Flatness - Finished Tiling Surfaces:
  - 1. Ceramic Tile: 1/4 inch in 10 feet.
- C. Lippage - Adjacent Tile Units:
  - 1. Glazed Wall Tile and Mosaic Tile: 1/32 inch; joint width 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch; 1 x 1 inch to 6 x 6 inch tile size.

### **3.08 CLEANING**

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.
- B. Remove grout efflorescence as required with product approved by tile and grout manufacturer.
- C. Unglazed tile may be cleaned with sulfamic acid solutions only when permitted by the tile and grout manufacturer's printed instructions, but not sooner than 14 days after completion of installation. Protect metal surfaces, iron, and vitreous fixtures from effects of acid cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after acid cleaning.
- D. Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, un-bonded, or otherwise defective tile work.

### **3.09 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 7 days after installation.
- B. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.

**END OF SECTION 093000**

**SECTION 095100**

**ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system.
- B. Acoustical units.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 233700 - Air Outlets and Inlets: Air diffusion devices in ceiling.
- B. Section 265100 - Interior Lighting: Light fixtures in ceiling system.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C635/C635M - Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings; 2017.
- B. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels; 2019.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- D. ASTM E580/E580M - Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions; 2022.
- E. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products; 2022.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Sequence work to ensure acoustical ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, sufficient heat is provided, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed, tested, and approved.
- B. Do not install acoustical units until after interior wet work is dry.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on suspension system components and acoustical units.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples 6 x 6 inch (\_\_\_\_by\_\_\_\_ mm) in size illustrating material and finish of acoustical units.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
  2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
  5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including, but not limited to, the following: Lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, perimeter moldings.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
1. Extra Acoustical Units: Quantity equal to 5 percent of total installed.

## **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. System Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in the installation of products specified in this Section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Suspension System Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Acoustical Unit Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

## **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F (16 degrees C), and maximum humidity of 20 to 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acoustic Units: The design for each acoustic panel specified is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc: [www.armstrongceilings.com](http://www.armstrongceilings.com).
  2. CertainTeed Corporation: [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
  3. Rockfon North America: [www.rockfon.com](http://www.rockfon.com).
  4. USG Corporation: [www.usg.com/ceilings](http://www.usg.com/ceilings).

- B. Metal Suspension Systems: The design for each metal suspension system specified is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc: [www.armstrongceilings.com](http://www.armstrongceilings.com).
  2. CertainTeed Corporation: [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
  3. Rockfon North America: [www.rockfon.com](http://www.rockfon.com).
  4. USG Corporation: [www.usg.com/ceilings](http://www.usg.com/ceilings).
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

## **2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Interior suspended Ceilings, Soffits, and Bulkheads: Maintain deflection of not more than L/360 of distance between supports.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E1264 for Class A materials.
  2. Smoke-Development Index: 50 or less.

## **2.03 ACOUSTICAL UNITS**

- A. Acoustical Panels, Type AC-01:
1. Surface Texture: Medium.
  2. Composition: Mineral Fiber.
  3. Color: White.
  4. Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm).
  5. Edge Profile:
    - a. Basis-of-Design Profile: Beveled Tegralar 5/8"
  6. Noise Reduction Coefficient( NRC): ASTM C 423; Classified with UL label on product carton 0.55.
  7. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC) : ASTM C 1414; Classified with UL label on product carton 35.
  8. Flame Spread: ASTM E 1264; Class A (UL).
  9. Light Reflectance (LR) White Panel: ASTM E 1477; 0.80.
  10. Dimensional Stability: Standard.
  11. Acceptable Product:

- a. CORTEGA, 769 No added formaldehyde as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries.
- b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.04 SUSPENSION SYSTEM(S)**

- A. Components: Main beams and cross tees, base metal and end detail, fabricated from commercial quality hot dipped galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 653. Main beams and cross tees are double-web steel construction with type exposed flange design. Exposed surfaces chemically cleansed, capping prefinished galvanized steel in baked polyester paint. Main beams and cross tees shall have rotary stitching.
  - 1. Structural Classification: ASTM C 635 Intermediate Duty duty
  - 2. Color: White and match the actual color of the selected ceiling tile, unless noted otherwise.
  - 3. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Suprafine 9/16" Exposed Tee as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries.
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Wire for Hangers and Ties: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft annealed, with a yield stress load of at least time three design load, but not less than 12 gauge.
- D. Edge Moldings and Trim:
  - 1. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
    - a. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
  - 2. Miscellaneous Moldings: Same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
  - 3. Touch-up Paint: Type and color to match acoustical and grid units.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that layout of hangers will not interfere with other work.
- C. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged or mold damaged.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less than half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans. Coordinate panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.
- C. Coordination: Furnish layouts for preset inserts, clips, and other ceiling anchors whose installation is specified in other sections.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION - SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

- A. Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M, ASTM E580/E580M, and manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.
- B. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.
- C. Locate system on room axis according to reflected plan.
- D. Install after major above-ceiling work is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- E. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
- F. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
- G. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability.
- H. Support fixture loads using supplementary hangers located within 6 inches (152 mm) of each corner, or support components independently.
  - 1. Support all fixtures weighing less than 56 lbs by at least two supplementary No. 12 gauge hangers if required by applicable building code; hangers may be slack
- I. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.

- J. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
  - 1. Use longest practical lengths.
  - 2. Overlap and rivet corners.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS**

- A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
- C. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
- D. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
- E. Cutting Acoustical Units:
  - 1. Cut to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim.
  - 2. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges. finish cut edges to match factory finished edges if cut edge is exposed to view.
  - 3. Double cut and field paint exposed reveal edges to match factory finished edges.
- F. Where round obstructions occur, provide preformed closures to match perimeter molding.
- G. Install hold-down clips on panels within 10 ft (\_\_\_\_ m) of an exterior door.

### **3.05 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m).
- B. Maximum Variation from Plumb of Grid Members Caused by Eccentric Loads: 2 degrees.

### **3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION 095100**



**SECTION 096500**  
**RESILIENT FLOORING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Resilient base.
- C. Metal accessories.
- D. Installation accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors to receive adhesive-applied resilient flooring.
- B. Section 035400 - Cast Underlayment
- C. Section 090561 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation: Removal of existing floor coverings, cleaning, and preparation.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring; 2022.
- B. ASTM F1861 - Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base; 2021.
- C. ASTM F2034 - Standard Specification for Sheet Linoleum Floor Covering; 2018.
- D. NSF 332 - Sustainability Assessment for Resilient Floor Coverings; 2015.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.
- C. Verification Samples: Submit three samples, 12 by 12 inch (\_\_\_ by \_\_\_ mm) in size illustrating color and pattern for each resilient flooring product specified.
- D. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- E. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.

2. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - a. Resilient Sheet Flooring: Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, in roll form and in full roll width for each type, color, and pattern of flooring installed.
3. Clearly identify each package.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing specified flooring with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing specified flooring with minimum five years documented experience.
  1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are approved, trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store resilient sheet flooring and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store rolls upright.

#### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 85 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:
  1. 48 hours before installation
  2. During installation.
  3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install resilient flooring and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting have been completed.

#### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer's standard limited 30 year warranty

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 SHEET FLOORING**

- A. Linoleum Sheet Flooring - Type \_\_\_\_: Homogeneous wear layer bonded to backing, with color and pattern through wear layer thickness.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Forbo Flooring, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.forboflooringna.com/#sle](http://www.forboflooringna.com/#sle).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  2. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F2034, Type corresponding to type specified.
  3. Backing: Jute fabric.
  4. Thickness: 0.100 inch (2.5 mm), minimum, excluding backing.
  5. Sheet Width: 79 inch (2000 mm), minimum.
  6. Conventional Fit Seams: sheet product shall be installed utilizing conventional fit seams
    - a. Paste weld: Forbo Marmoweld ETU color -matched as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard patterns and colors.
    - b. Welding Rod: Forbo Marmoweld color-matched solid color welding rod as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard patterns and colors.
  7. Pattern: Solid / Marbelized. Reference Drawings
  8. Color: As indicated on drawings.

### **2.02 RESILIENT BASE**

- A. Resilient Base - Type[B-01, B-02]: Thermoplastic Vinyl Wall Base.
1. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Vinyl Wall Base as manufactured by Tarkett: [www.commercial.tarkett.com](http://www.commercial.tarkett.com)
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  2. ASTM F1861, Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base, Type TV (vinyl, thermoplastic), Group 2 (solid, layered), Style A&B (Straight, Cove).
  3. Style: Cove
  4. Height: 4 inch (100 mm).
  5. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  6. Length: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
  7. Color: As indicated on drawings.
    - a. Reference Drawings for locations
  8. Accessories:

- a. Outside Corners: Manufacturer's standard outside toe corner.
- b. Inside Corners: Manufacturer's standard inside toe corner.
- c. Color-matched caulks.

## **2.03 ACCESSORIES.**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one of the following:
  - 1. Basis-of- Design manufacturer: Schluter-Systems: [www.schluter.com](http://www.schluter.com).
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- B. Metal edge and transition strips for changes in flooring materials:
  - 1. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
    - a. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface.
    - b. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.
    - c. All thresholds to be ADA compliant
  - 2. Material: Metal.
  - 3. Finish: Anodized Aluminum.
  - 4. Profile and Dimensions: As standard with manufacturer and as follows:
    - a. As appropriate for floor finishes.
    - b. As appropriate for thickness of the floor.
    - c. As indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Changes in elevation: Tile to Resilient
    - a. Equal to Schluter-Systems: Schluter®-Reno-U
  - 6. Changes in elevation: Carpet to Resilient
    - a. Equal to Schluter-Systems: Schluter®-VINPRO-S.
  - 7. Changes in elevation: Concrete to Resilient
    - a. Equal to Schluter-Systems: Schluter®-VINPRO-S.

## **2.04 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES**

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Primers, Adhesives and Seam Sealer: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50g/L or less.
2. Basis of Design: Forbo Sustain 100 Adhesive or approved equal.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.
- C. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
  1. Concrete substrates shall be cured per the concrete manufacturer's recommendations. They must have a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi and a minimum dry density of 150 pounds per cubic foot. Refer to Division 3 Concrete Sections for patching, repairing crack materials and leveling compounds with Portland cement based compounds.
  2. Surface Moisture Testing: ASTM F 2659 – Standard Guide for Preliminary Evaluation of Comparative Moisture Condition of Concrete, Gypsum Cement and other Floor Slabs and Screeds Using a Non- Destructive Electronic Moisture Meter
    - a. The concrete surface must be dry and have a value of 5 or less when using Forbo Sustain 100 adhesive.
  3. Substrate Porosity Testing: ASTM F 3191 – Standard Practice for Field Determination of Substrate Water Absorption (Porosity) for Substrates to Receive Resilient Flooring.
    - a. Conduct testing in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations in various locations throughout the area where flooring is to be installed. Although the number of tests required may vary, enough tests should be performed to allow an evaluation of the entire area where material will be installed.
    - b. Water should penetrate into the substrate within 5 – 20 minutes to be considered acceptable. If water penetrates too rapidly or too slowly, adjustments to the substrate must be made to provide the proper surface profile. Substrates determined to be overly porous, dusty or generally insufficient may need to be primed using a primer

according to the manufacturer's recommendations to regulate the porosity level of the substrate.

4. pH testing: ASTM F 710 – Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring.
  - a. The surface pH of the concrete must not exceed a pH of 12.0 when using Forbo Sustain 100 adhesive. Concrete surfaces with pH readings less than 8.0 or above 12.0 will require remediation prior to installation.
5. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL**

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of subfloor conditions.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Adhesive-Applied Installation:
  1. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
  2. Adhesive Application: Use trowel recommended by flooring manufacturer for Forbo Sustain 100 adhesive.
    - a. 1/16" x 1/16" x 1/16" square notch trowel
    - b. Spread rate is approximately 125 ft<sup>2</sup>/gallon
  3. Fit joints and butt seams tightly.
  4. Seaming: All Marmoleum sheet products shall be installed utilizing conventional fit seams. A properly executed conventional fit seam will have no gaps or fullness. If the material is cut too full, it will result in bubbled or peaked seams. Cut the material at an

angle so as to slightly undercut the material. This will compensate for any slight expansion that may occur. Roll the seam with a steel seam roller, making sure that the flooring material is placed into wet adhesive. Slight gaps can be addressed with Forbo Marmoweld ETU

5. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.
- D. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.
- E. At movable partitions, install flooring under partitions without interrupting floor pattern.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION - SHEET FLOORING**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Unroll resilient sheet flooring and allow it to stabilize before cutting and fitting.
- C. Lay flooring with joints and seams parallel to longer room dimensions, to produce minimum number of seams. Lay out seams to avoid widths less than 1/3 of roll width; match patterns at seams.
- D. Avoid cross seams.
- E. Extend resilient sheet flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on resilient sheet flooring as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Adhere resilient sheet flooring to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION - RESILIENT BASE**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instruction for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces. and other permanent fixtures in room and areas where base is required, as indicated in the drawings.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

### **3.06 INSTALLATION - RESILIENT ACCESSORIES**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Install floor moldings in one piece for full width of installation, where possible.
1. Where joints are unavoidable, fit tightly together and align adjacent molding profiles.
- C. Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.

### **3.07 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 096500**



**SECTION 096813**

**TILE CARPETING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Carpet tile, fully adhered.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 016116 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions.
- B. Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal: Reclamation/Recycling of new carpet tile scrap.
- C. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors to receive adhesive-applied flooring.
- D. Section 090561 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation: Removal of existing floor coverings, cleaning, and preparation.
- E. Section 090561 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation: Concrete slab moisture and alkalinity testing and remediation procedures.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D2859 - Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials; 2016 (Reapproved 2021).
- B. ASTM E648 - Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source; 2019a, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- C. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring; 2022.
- D. ASTM F1869 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride; 2023.
- E. ASTM F2170 - Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes; 2019a.
- F. CRI 104 - Standard for Installation of Commercial Carpet; 2015.
- G. NFPA 253 - Standard Method of Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source; 2023.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures

- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout of joints.
- D. Samples: Submit two carpet tiles illustrating color and pattern design for each carpet color selected.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- F. Concrete Subfloor Test Report: Submit a copy of the moisture and alkalinity (pH) test reports.
- G. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- H. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- I. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Carpet Tiles: Quantity equal to 5 percent of total installed of each color and pattern installed.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing specified carpet tile with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing carpet tile with minimum three years documented experience and approved by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Independent firm specializing in performing testing and inspections of the type specified in this section.

#### **1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Store materials in area of installation for minimum period of 24 hours prior to installation.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Tile Carpeting:
  - 1. Interface, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.interface.com/#sle](http://www.interface.com/#sle).
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Tile Carpeting: Tufted, textured loop
  - 1. Product: Angle Up manufactured by Interface.
  - 2. Tile Size: 25 cm x 1 m

3. Yarn System: 100% Recycled Content Aquafil Nylon
4. Dye Method: 100% solution dyed
5. Backing: GlasBac™
6. Pattern: Ashlar.

### **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B.
- C. Edge Strips: Embossed aluminum, \_\_\_\_\_ color.
- D. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
  1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. Transition Strips: Reference Section 096500 - Resilient Flooring

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- C. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of adhesive materials to subfloor surfaces.
- D. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for flooring installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
  1. Reference Section 090561 - Common Work Results for Flooring Preparation
  2. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by flooring material manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare floor substrates for installation of flooring in accordance with Section 090561.
  1. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch

unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.

- a. Patching is required for approximately [not less than] 20 percent of the gross floor area of the Project.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of subfloor conditions.
- C. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Blend carpet from different cartons to ensure minimal variation in color match.
- E. Cut carpet tile clean. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.
- F. Lay carpet tile in Ashlar pattern, with pile direction parallel to next unit, set parallel to building lines.
- G. Trim carpet tile neatly at walls and around interruptions.
- H. Complete installation of edge strips, concealing exposed edges.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. See Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.
- C. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

**END OF SECTION 096813**

**SECTION 099000**

**BM INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR PAINTS AND COATINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Interior paint and coating commercial systems including surface preparation.
- B. Exterior new paint and coating systems including surface preparation.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 04 20 00 - Unit Masonry: Concrete Masonry Units (CMU) and brick.
- B. Section 05 50 00 - Metal Fabrications.
- C. Section 06 41 00 - Architectural Woodwork.
- D. Section 08 11 13 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- E. Section 09 21 16 - Gypsum Board Assemblies
- F. Section 092513 - Direct Exterior Finish System
- G. Section 23 05 00 - Common Work Results for HVAC.
- H. Section 26 05 00 - Common Work Results for Electrical.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Green Seal Standard GS-11; May 20, 1993.
- B. US Green Building Council, (USGBC) - Green Seal standards for LEED paint credits.
- C. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA) - Safety Standards.
- D. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) - Performance Standards.
- E. Paint Decorating Contractors of America (PDCA) - Application Standard.
- F. National Paint and Coatings Association (NPCA) - Gloss Standard.
- G. American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM) - Testing Methods.
- H. Master Paint Institute (MPI #) - Established paint categories and standards.
- I. Ozone Transmission Commission (OTC) - Established levels of Volatile Organic Compounds.
- J. SCAQMD 1168 - South Coast Air Quality Management District Rule #1168; October 3, 2003.
- K. SSPC (PM1) - Steel Structures Painting Manual, Vol. 1, Good Painting Practice; Society for Protective Coatings; 1993, Third Edition.
- L. SSPC (PM2) - Steel Structures Painting Manual, Vol. 2, Systems and Specifications; Society for Protective Coatings; 1995, Seventh Edition.
- M. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.

#### **1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Commercial as used in this Section refers to a product well suited for a commercial application.
- B. DFT as used in this Section refers to the Dry Film Thickness of the coating.
- C. Enamel refers to any acrylic or alkyd (oil) base paint which dries leaving an eggshell, pearl, satin, semi-gloss or high gloss enamel finish.
- D. DTM as used in this Section refers to paint that is applied Direct To Metal.
- E. OTC as used in this Section refers to the Ozone Transmission Commission. OTC has established the following VOC levels for the Northeastern United States. Products shall meet the following OTC limits for VOC's.
  - 1. Interior flat paints: 100 grams per liter or less, per gallon.
  - 2. Interior enamels: 150 grams per liter or less, per gallon.
  - 3.
  - 4. Interior primers: 200 grams per liter or less, per gallon.
  - 5. Rust preventive coatings: 400 grams per liter or less, per gallon.
  - 6. Dry fog coatings: 400 grams per liter or less, per gallon.
  - 7. Floor coatings: 250 grams per liter or less, per gallon.
- F. Premium as used in this Section refers to the best quality product "top of the line".
- G. VOC as used in this Section refers to Volatile Organic Compounds found in primers, paints, sealers and stains. The level of VOCs appears after each product listed in the Schedule in grams per liter (g/L).
- H. Paints are available in a wide range of sheens or glosses, as measured by a gloss meter from a 60 and/or 85 degree angle from vertical, as a percentage of the amount of light that is reflected. The following terms are used to describe the gloss of our products. The list below is provided for general guidance; refer to the technical data sheet for the actual gloss/sheen level for each product.
  - 1. Flat - Less than 5 Percent.
  - 2. Eggshell - 5 - 20 Percent.
  - 3. Satin - 20 - 35 Percent.
  - 4. Semi-Gloss - 30 - 65 Percent.
  - 5. Gloss - Over 65 Percent.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00 - Administrative Requirements.

- B. Product Data: Provide a complete list of all products to be used, with the following information for each:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category.
  - 2. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) that the product is to be used in; include description of each system.
- C. Samples: Submit three paper samples, 5 inches by 7 inches (127mm x 178mm) in size, illustrating selected colors for each color and system selected with specified coats cascaded..
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special surface preparation procedures.
- E. Maintenance Data: Submit data on cleaning, touch-up, and repair of painted and coated surfaces.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten years experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be applied by a Painting Contractor with a minimum of five years demonstrated experience in surface preparation and field application of the same type and scope as specified.
- C. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
  - 1. Finish surfaces for verification of products, colors and sheens.
  - 2. Finish area designated by Architect.
  - 3. Provide samples that designate primer and finish coats.
  - 4. Do not proceed with remaining work until the Architect approves the mock-up.
  - 5. Mock-up for exterior coating removal at application of adhered veneer can remain part of finish work. Contractor to notify Architect when work is complete for inspection.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery: Deliver manufacturer's unopened containers to the work site. Packaging shall bear the manufacturer's name, label, and the following list of information.
  - 1. Product name, and type (description).
  - 2. Application and use instructions.
  - 3. Surface preparation.
  - 4. VOC content.
  - 5. Environmental handling.

- 6. Batch date.
- 7. Color number.
- B. Storage: Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Store materials in an area that is within the acceptable temperature range, per manufacturer's instructions. Protect from freezing.
- D. Handling: Maintain a clean, dry storage area, to prevent contamination or damage to the coatings.

#### **1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

#### **1.09 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra paint materials from the same production run as the materials applied and in the quantities described below. Package with protective covering for storage and identify with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to Owner.
- B. Furnish Owner with an additional one percent of each material and color, but not less than 1 gal (3.8 l) or 1 case, as appropriate.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Inspection of all surfaces to be coated must be done by the manufacturer's representative to insure proper preparation prior to application. All thinners, fillers, primers and finish coatings shall be from the same manufacturer to support a product warranty. Products other than those submitted shall be accompanied by a letter stating its fitness for use and compatibility.
- B. At project closeout, provide to the Owner or owner's representative an executed copy of the Manufacturer's standard form outlining the terms and conditions of and any exclusions to their Limited Warranty against Manufacturing Defect.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer:
  - 1. Sherwin-Williams
    - a. [info@specifications@sherwin.com](mailto:info@specifications@sherwin.com); [www.swspecs.com](http://www.swspecs.com).
  - 2. Benjamin Moore



- a. [www.benjaminmoore.com/en-us](http://www.benjaminmoore.com/en-us)
- b. Basis of Design
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

## **2.02 APPLICATIONS/SCOPE**

- A. Interior Paint and Coating Commercial Systems:
  - 1. Metal
  - 2. Wood
  - 3. Gypsum

## **2.03 PAINT MATERIALS - GENERAL**

- A. Paints and Coatings:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide factory-mixed coatings. When required, mix coatings to correct consistency in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before application. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute coatings or add materials to coatings unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
  - 2. For opaque finishes, tint each coat including primer coat and intermediate coats, one-half shade lighter than succeeding coat, with final finish coat as base color. Or follow manufacturer's product instructions for optimal color conformance.
- B. Primers: Where the manufacturer offers options on primers for a particular substrate, use primer categorized as "best" by the manufacturer.
- C. Coating Application Accessories: Provide all primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials required, per manufacturer's specifications.
- D. Color: Refer to Finish Schedule for paint colors, and as selected.
- E. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content:
  - 1. Provide coatings that comply with the most stringent requirements specified in the following:
    - a. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D-National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings.
    - b. Determination of VOC Content: Testing and calculation in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), exclusive of colorants added to a tint base and water added at project site; or other method acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- F. Compatibility: Provide materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

## **2.04 INTERIOR PAINT AND COATING COMMERCIAL SYSTEMS AND LOCATIONS**

- A. General Walls and Ceilings (Horizon OC-53) Reference Drawings for Location
1. 1st Coat: Benjamin Moore Drywall Primer 380, 11.4 g/L
  2. 2nd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Low Sheen Eggshell N296, Horizon OC-53, <50 g/L
  3. 3rd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Low Sheen Eggshell N296, Horizon OC-53, <50 g/L
- B. Staff Break Room (Garrison Red HC-66). Reference Drawings for Location
1. 1st Coat: Benjamin Moore Fresh Start® High-Hiding All Purpose 046, 44 g/L, 6, 17, 17 X-Green™, 39, 50, 50 X-Green™, 137, 137 X-Green™
  2. 2nd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Semi-Gloss N298, Garrison Red HC-66, < 50 g/L
  3. 3rd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Semi-Gloss N298, Garrison Red HC-66, < 50 g/L
- C. Accent Walls: (Mystical Blue 792 and Blue Dusk 1644) Reference Drawings for Location
1. 1st Coat: Benjamin Moore Drywall Primer 380, 11.4 g/L
  2. 2nd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Low Sheen Eggshell N296, <50 g/L
  3. 3rd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Low Sheen Eggshell N296, <50 g/L
- D. Study Room, Teen Room, Hall: (Soft Glow 014 and Garrison Red HC-66) Reference Drawings for Location
1. 1st Coat: Benjamin Moore Fresh Start® High-Hiding All Purpose 046, 44 g/L, 6, 17, 17 X-Green™, 39, 50, 50 X-Green™, 137, 137 X-Green™
  2. 2nd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Low Sheen Eggshell N296, <50 g/L
  3. 3rd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Low Sheen Eggshell N296, <50 g/L
- E. Public Restroom Walls: (Horizon OC-53) Reference Drawings for Location
1. 1st Coat: Benjamin Moore Drywall Primer 380, 11.4 g/L
  2. 2nd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Semi-Gloss N298, Horizon OC-53
  3. 3rd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Semi-Gloss N298, Horizon OC-53, < 50 g/L
- F. Metal Doors and Frames: New with shop primer. Reference Door Schedule for Colors
1. 1st Coat: Benjamin Moore High Performance Acrylic Metal Primer HP1100, 50 g/L
  2. 2nd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Semi-Gloss N298 <50 g/L

- 3. 3rd Coat: Benjamin Moore Interior Super Hide Semi-Gloss N298 <50 g/L
- G. Metal: Steel (Miscellaneous)
  - 1. 1st Coat: Benjamin Moore High Performance DTM Acrylic Enamel Satin HP3300, 96 g/L
  - 2. 2nd Coat: Benjamin Moore High Performance DTM Acrylic Enamel Satin HP3300, 96 g/L,  
Eligible for LEED® v4 Credit, Eligible for CHPS Low Emitting Credit

## **2.05 MIXING AND TINTING**

- A. Except where specifically noted in this section, all paint shall be ready-mixed and pre-tinted. Agitate all paint prior to and during application to ensure uniform color, gloss, and consistency.
- B. Thinner addition shall not exceed manufacturer's printed recommendations. Do not use kerosene or other organic solvents to thin water-based paints.
- C. Where paint is to be sprayed, thin according to manufacturer's current guidelines.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. The Contractor shall review the product manufacturer's special instructions for surface preparation, application, temperature, re-coat times, and product limitations.
- B. The Contractor shall review product health and safety precautions listed by the manufacturer.
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for enforcing on site health and safety requirements associated with the Work.
- D. Ensure that surfaces to receive paint are dry immediately prior to application.
- E. Ensure that moisture-retaining substrates to receive paint have moisture content within tolerances allowed by coating manufacturer. Where exceeding the following values, promptly notify Architect and obtain direction before beginning work.
  - 1. Exterior Wood: 17 percent.
  - 2. Interior Wood: 15 percent.
  - 3. Interior Finish Detail Woodwork, Including Trim, and Casework: 10 percent.
  - 4. Plaster and Gypsum: 15 percent.
  - 5. Concrete Slab-On-Grade: Perform calcium chloride test over 24 hour period or other acceptable test to manufacturer. Verify acceptable moisture transmission and pH levels.
- F. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared; notify Architect of unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- G. Proceed with work only after conditions have been corrected and approved by all parties, otherwise application of coatings will be considered as an acceptance of surface conditions.

- H. Correct conditions that could impair performance or appearance of coatings in accordance with specified surface preparation procedures before proceeding with coating application.

### **3.02 SURFACE PREPARATION**

- A. General: Surfaces shall be dry and in sound condition. Remove oil, dust, dirt, loose rust, peeling paint or other contamination to ensure good adhesion.
1. Prior to attempting to remove mildew, it is recommended to test any cleaner on a small, inconspicuous area prior to use. Bleach and bleaching type cleaners may damage or discolor existing paint films. Bleach alternative cleaning solutions are advised.
  2. Remove mildew before painting by washing with a solution of 1 part liquid household bleach and 3 parts of warm water. Apply solution and scrub the mildewed area. Allow solution to remain on the surface for 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow surface to dry before painting. Wear protective glasses or goggles, waterproof gloves, and protective clothing. Quickly wash off any of the mixture that comes in contact with your skin. Do not add detergents or ammonia to the bleach/water solution.
  3. Remove items including but not limited to thermostats, electrical outlets, switch covers and similar items prior to painting. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in the trades involved.
  4. No exterior painting should be done immediately after a rain, during foggy weather, when rain is predicted, or when the temperature is below 50 degrees F (10 degrees C), unless products are designed specifically for these conditions. On large expanses of metal siding, the air, surface and material temperatures must be 50 degrees F (10 degrees F) or higher to use low temperature products.
- B. Aluminum: Remove all oil, grease, dirt, oxide and other foreign material by cleaning per SSPC-SP1, Solvent Cleaning.
- C. Block (Cinder and Concrete): Remove all loose mortar and foreign material. Surface must be free of laitance, concrete dust, dirt, form release agents, moisture curing membranes, loose cement, and hardeners. Concrete and mortar must be cured at least 30 days at 75 degrees F (24 degrees C). The pH of the surface should be between 6 and 9 unless the products are designed to be used in high pH environments. On tilt-up and poured-in-place concrete, commercial detergents and abrasive blasting may be necessary to prepare the surface. Fill bug holes, air pockets, and other voids with a cement patching compound.
- D. Concrete, SSPC-SP13 or NACE 6: This standard gives requirements for surface preparation of concrete by mechanical, chemical, or thermal methods prior to the application of bonded protective coating or lining systems. The requirements of this standard are applicable to all

types of cementitious surfaces including cast-in-place concrete floors and walls, precast slabs, masonry walls, and shotcrete surfaces. An acceptable prepared concrete surface should be free of contaminants, laitance, loosely adhering concrete, and dust, and should provide a sound, uniform substrate suitable for the application of protective coating or lining systems.

- E. Cement Composition Siding/Panels: Remove all surface contamination by washing with an appropriate cleaner, rinse thoroughly and allow to dry. Existing peeled or checked paint should be scraped and sanded to a sound surface. Pressure clean, if needed, with a minimum of 2100 psi pressure to remove all dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose particles, laitance, foreign material, and peeling or defective coatings. Allow the surface to dry thoroughly. The pH of the surface should be between 6 and 9 unless the products are designed to be used in high pH environments.
- F. Copper and Stainless Steel: Remove all oil, grease, dirt, oxide and other foreign material by cleaning per SSPC-SP 2, Hand Tool Cleaning.
- G. Exterior Composition Board (Hardboard): Some composition boards may exude a waxy material that must be removed with a solvent prior to coating. Whether factory primed or unprimed, exterior composition board siding (hardboard) must be cleaned thoroughly and primed with an alkyd primer.
- H. Drywall - Exterior: Must be clean and dry. All nail heads must be set and spackled. Joints must be taped and covered with a joint compound. Spackled nail heads and tape joints must be sanded smooth and all dust removed prior to painting. Exterior surfaces must be spackled with exterior grade compounds.
- I. Drywall - Interior: Must be clean and dry. All nail heads must be set and spackled. Joints must be taped and covered with a joint compound. Spackled nail heads and tape joints must be sanded smooth and all dust removed prior to painting.
- J. Galvanized Metal: Clean per SSPC-SP1 using detergent and water or a degreasing cleaner to remove greases and oils. Apply a test area, priming as required. Allow the coating to dry at least one week before testing. If adhesion is poor, Brush Blast per SSPC-SP16 is necessary to remove these treatments.
- K. Plaster: Must be allowed to dry thoroughly for at least 30 days before painting unless the products are designed to be used in high pH environments. Room must be ventilated while drying; in cold, damp weather, rooms must be heated. Damaged areas must be repaired with an appropriate patching material. Bare plaster must be cured and hard. Textured, soft, porous, or powdery plaster should be treated with a solution of 1 pint household vinegar to 1 gallon of water. Repeat until the surface is hard, rinse with clear water and allow to dry.

- L. Steel: Structural, Plate, And Similar Items: Should be cleaned by one or more of the surface preparations described below. These methods are used throughout the world for describing methods for cleaning structural steel. Visual standards are available through the Society of Protective Coatings. A brief description of these standards together with numbers by which they can be specified follow.
1. Solvent Cleaning, SSPC-SP1: Solvent cleaning is a method for removing all visible oil, grease, soil, drawing and cutting compounds, and other soluble contaminants. Solvent cleaning does not remove rust or mill scale. Change rags and cleaning solution frequently so that deposits of oil and grease are not spread over additional areas in the cleaning process. Be sure to allow adequate ventilation.
  2. Hand Tool Cleaning, SSPC-SP2: Hand Tool Cleaning removes all loose mill scale, loose rust, and other detrimental foreign matter. It is not intended that adherent mill scale, rust, and paint be removed by this process. Before hand tool cleaning, remove visible oil, grease, soluble welding residues, and salts by the methods outlined in SSPC-SP1.
  3. Power Tool Cleaning, SSPC-SP3: Power Tool Cleaning removes all loose mill scale, loose rust, and other detrimental foreign matter. It is not intended that adherent mill scale, rust, and paint be removed by this process. Before power tool cleaning, remove visible oil, grease, soluble welding residues, and salts by the methods outlined in SSPC-SP1.
  4. White Metal Blast Cleaning, SSPC-SP5 or NACE 1: A White Metal Blast Cleaned surface, when viewed without magnification, shall be free of all visible oil, grease, dirt, dust, mill scale, rust, paint, oxides, corrosion products, and other foreign matter. Before blast cleaning, visible deposits of oil or grease shall be removed by any of the methods specified in SSPC-SP1 or other agreed upon methods.
  5. Commercial Blast Cleaning, SSPC-SP6 or NACE 3: A Commercial Blast Cleaned surface, when viewed without magnification, shall be free of all visible oil, grease, dirt, dust, mill scale, rust, paint, oxides, corrosion products, and other foreign matter, except for staining. Staining shall be limited to no more than 33 percent of each square inch of surface area and may consist of light shadows, slight streaks, or minor discoloration caused by stains of rust, stains of mill scale, or stains of previously applied paint. Before blast cleaning, visible deposits of oil or grease shall be removed by any of the methods specified in SSPC-SP1 or other agreed upon methods.
  6. Brush-Off Blast Cleaning, SSPC-SP7 or NACE 4: A Brush-Off Blast Cleaned surface, when viewed without magnification, shall be free of all visible oil, grease, dirt, dust, loose mill scale, loose rust, and loose paint. Tightly adherent mill scale, rust, and paint may

- remain on the surface. Before blast cleaning, visible deposits of oil or grease shall be removed by any of the methods specified in SSPC-SP 1 or other agreed upon methods.
7. Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal, SSPC-SP11: Metallic surfaces that are prepared according to this specification, when viewed without magnification, shall be free of all visible oil, grease, dirt, dust, mill scale, rust, paint, oxide corrosion products, and other foreign matter. Slight residues of rust and paint may be left in the lower portions of pits if the original surface is pitted. Prior to power tool surface preparation, remove visible deposits of oil or grease by any of the methods specified in SSPC-SP1, Solvent Cleaning, or other agreed upon methods.
  8. Near-White Blast Cleaning, SSPC-SP10 or NACE 2: A Near White Blast Cleaned surface, when viewed without magnification, shall be free of all visible oil, grease, dirt, dust, mill scale, rust, paint, oxides, corrosion products, and other foreign matter, except for staining. Staining shall be limited to no more than 5 percent of each square inch of surface area and may consist of light shadows, slight streaks, or minor discoloration caused by stains of rust, stains of mill scale, or stains of previously applied paint. Before blast cleaning, visible deposits of oil or grease shall be removed by any of the methods specified in SSPC-SP1 or other agreed upon methods.
  9. High- and Ultra-High Pressure Water Jetting for Steel and Other Hard Materials: SSPC-SP12 or NACE 5: This standard provides requirements for the use of high- and ultra-high pressure water jetting to achieve various degrees of surface cleanliness. This standard is limited in scope to the use of water only without the addition of solid particles in the stream.
  10. Water Blasting, SSPC-SP12/NACE No. 5: Removal of oil grease dirt, loose rust, loose mill scale, and loose paint by water at pressures of 2,000 to 2,500 psi at a flow of 4 to 14 gallons per minute.
- M. Vinyl Siding, Architectural Plastics, EIFS and Fiberglass: Clean vinyl siding thoroughly by scrubbing with a warm, soapy water solution. Rinse thoroughly. Do not paint vinyl siding with any color darker than the original color unless the paint system features Sherwin-Williams VinylSafe technology. Painting with darker colors that are not Sherwin-Williams VinylSafe may cause siding to warp. Follow all painting guidelines of the vinyl manufacturer when painting. Only paint properly installed vinyl siding. Deviating from the manufacturer's painting guidelines may cause the warranty to be voided.
- N. Stucco: Must be clean and free of any loose stucco. If recommended procedures for applying stucco are followed, and normal drying conditions prevail, the surface may be painted in 30

days. The pH of the surface should be between 6 and 9 unless the products are designed to be used in high pH environments such as Loxon.

- O. Wood: Must be clean and dry. Prime and paint as soon as possible. Knots and pitch streaks must be scraped, sanded, and spot primed before a full priming coat is applied. Patch all nail holes and imperfections with a wood filler or putty and sand smooth.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Apply all coatings and materials with the manufacturer's specifications in mind. Mix and thin coatings according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Application of primers, paints, stains or coatings, by the Contractor, will serve as acceptance that surfaces were properly prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.
- C. Do not apply to wet or damp surfaces. Wait at least 30 days before applying to new concrete or masonry. Or follow manufacturer's procedures to apply appropriate coatings prior to 30 days. Test new concrete for moisture content. Wait until wood is fully dry after rain or morning fog or dew.
- D. Apply coatings using methods recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Uniformly apply coatings without runs, drips, or sags, without brush marks, and with consistent sheen.
- F. Apply coatings at spreading rate required to achieve the manufacturers recommended dry film thickness.
- G. Regardless of number of coats specified, apply as many coats as necessary for complete hide, and uniform appearance.
- H. Inspection: The coated surface must be inspected and approved by the Architect just prior to the application of each coat.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean excess coating materials, and coating materials deposited on surfaces not indicated to receive coatings, as construction activities of this section progress; do not allow to dry.
- B. Re-install hardware, electrical equipment plates, mechanical grilles and louvers, lighting fixture trim, and other items that have been removed to protect from contact with coatings.
- C. Reconnect equipment adjacent to surfaces indicated to receive coatings.
- D. Relocate to original position equipment and fixtures that have been moved to allow application of coatings.
- E. Remove protective materials.



### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finished coatings from damage until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged coatings after substantial completion, following manufacturer's recommendation for touch up or repair of damaged coatings. Repair any defects that will hinder the performance of the coatings.

**END OF SECTION 099000**



## **SECTION 101400**

### **SIGNAGE**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Interior panel signs.
  - 1. Room Identification.
  - 2. Restroom.
  - 3. Informational Signage.
  - 4. Directory Signage.

##### **1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines; current edition.
- B. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- C. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2017.

##### **1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Detail drawings showing sizes, lettering and graphics, construction details of each type of sign and mounting details with appropriate fasteners for specific project substrates.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Printed installation instructions for each signage system.
- E. Message List: Signage report indicating signage location, text, and sign type.
- F. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and available pictograms, characters, and Braille indications.
- G. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 6 inches (150 mm) square, representing actual product, color, and typical pictograms, characters, and Braille indications.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Minimum three years documented experience in work of this Section.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials in unopened factory packaging.
- B. Inspect materials at delivery to verify there are no defects or damage.
- C. Store products in manufacturer's original packaging until ready for installation in climate controlled location away from direct sunlight.
- D. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Install products in an interior climate controlled environment.
- B. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide photopolymer signage that conforms to the requirements of all regulatory agencies holding jurisdiction.
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with all applicable provisions of the 2010 ADA Standard for Accessible Design.
  - 2. Character Proportion: Letters and numbers on signs must have a width-to-height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and a stroke width-to-height ratio between 1:5 and 1:10.
  - 3. Color Contrast: Characters and symbols must contrast with their background - either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.
  - 4. Raised Characters or Symbols: Letters and numbers on signs must be raised 1/32 in (0.8 mm) minimum and be sans serif characters. Raised characters or symbols must be at least 5/8 in (16 mm) high but no higher than 2 in (50 mm). Symbols or pictograms on signs must be raised 1/32 in (0.8 mm) minimum.
  - 5. Symbols of Accessibility: Accessible facilities required to be identified must use the international symbol of accessibility.

6. Braille: Grade II with accompanying text.

## **2.02 INTERIOR SIGNAGE - GENERAL**

- A. It is the intent of these specifications to establish a sign standard for the Owner including but not limited to, interior directional and information signs, room identification, restrooms, code-required door and room signs and all code compliant Braille signage.
- B. Code-Required Door and Room Signs: Provide all signs required by Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) for building occupancy; determine requirements and report to Owner and Architect prior to making specified submittals. Include cost of these signs in Contract Sum.
- C. Comply with all applicable provisions of the 2010 ADA Standard for Accessible Design codes that apply to the State and Local jurisdiction of the project.
- D. If required text and graphics are not indicated in specification or on drawings, obtain Owner's instructions as to text and graphics prior to preparation of shop drawings.
- E. Typography: See Drawings. Copy shall be a clean and accurate reproduction of typeface(s) specified. Upper and lower case and all caps as indicated in Sign Type drawings and Signage Schedule. Letter spacing to be set by manufacturer.
- F. Arrows, symbols, and pictograms will be provided in style, sizes, colors and spacing as indicated in drawings for each sign system.
- G. Braille: Grade 2 Braille.
- H. Design:
  - 1. Text/Graphics Placement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Font: As indicated on Drawings.

## **2.03 SIGNAGE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Accessibility Compliance: Signs are required to comply with ADA Standards and ICC A117.1 and applicable building codes, unless otherwise indicated; in the event of conflicting requirements, comply with the most comprehensive and specific requirements.
- B. Code-Required Door and Room Signs: Provide all signs required by Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) for building occupancy; determine requirements and report to Owner and Architect prior to making specified submittals. Include cost of these signs in Contract Sum.
  - 1. Sign Type: Flat signs with applied character panel media as specified.
  - 2. Provide "tactile" signage, with letters raised minimum 1/32 inch and Grade II braille.
  - 3. Character Height: 1 inch.
  - 4. Rest Rooms: Identify with pictograms, the names "MEN" and "WOMEN", ISA, and braille.

5. Tactile Exit Signs: Adjacent to each door to an egress stairway, an exit passageway, and exit door.

## **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Mounting Devices: Except as specified for each sign type, provide mounting devices specifically recommended by manufacturer for indicated application; concealed upon finished installation.

## **2.05 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate panel material in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings.
- B. Fabricate signs by photo polymer process using film negatives to produce characters and graphics in contrasting color, raised. Refer to Drawing.
- C. Characters:
  1. Height: Refer to Drawing.
  2. Style: Refer to Drawing.
  3. Width to height ratio: Refer to Drawing.
  4. Stroke width to height ratio: Refer to Drawing.
- D. Pictograms: Refer to Drawing.
- E. Provide Braille Grade indications for each character.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install neatly, with horizontal edges level.
- C. Locate signs and mount at heights indicated on drawings and in accordance with ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.

### **3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect from damage until Date of Substantial Completion; repair or replace damaged items.

**END OF SECTION 101400**





## **SECTION 101419**

### **DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Dimensional letter signage for exterior signage
- B. Illumination system - Reference Electrical

##### **1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- B. UL 879 - Electric Sign Components; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### **1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's product literature for each type of dimensional letter sign, indicating style, font, colors, locations, and overall dimensions of each sign.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include dimensions, locations, elevations, materials, text and graphic layout, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of electrical service connections.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Samples: Submit one sample of each type of dimensional letter sign of size similar to that required for project, indicating sign style, font, and method of attachment.
- E. Selection Samples: Where materials, colors, and finishes are not specified, submit one set of selection charts or chips.
- F. Verification Samples: Submit samples showing colors and finishes specified.
- G. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include installation templates and attachment devices.
- H. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- I. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- J. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

##### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum 5 years of documented experience.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least 5 years of documented experience.

## **1.05 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Dimensional Letter Signs:
1. Gemini Inc.: [www.arkramos.com](http://www.arkramos.com)
  2. A.R.K. Ramos: [www.arkramos.com](http://www.arkramos.com).
  3. FASTSIGNS International, Inc: [www.fastsigns.com/#sle](http://www.fastsigns.com/#sle).
  4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

### **2.02 DIMENSIONAL LETTERS**

- A. Metal Letters:
1. Material: Aluminium sheet, fabricated channel letter.
    - a. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
  2. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for letter size.
  3. Mounting Location: Exterior as indicated on drawings.
  4. Letter Height: As indicated on drawings.
  5. Text and Typeface:
    - a. Character Font and Case: As indicated on drawings.
  6. Finish: Brushed.
  7. Color: As selected.
  8. Mounting: Projecting studs (pin mounted).
    - a. Projected Mounting: Unless otherwise indicated, mount dimensional characters 1 inch off substrate; from face of substrate to back of dimensional character.
    - b. Provide fasteners as applicable for substrates indicated.

9. Illumination System: Halo-lit reverse channel letters.
  - a. Reference Electrical 26 00 00
  - b. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 879, where applicable.

### **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
- B. Electrical Components and Devices: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 by a qualified testing agency.

### **2.04 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
  1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  2. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  3. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners.

### **2.05 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that electrical service is correctly sized and located to accommodate dimensional letter signs.

- C. Notify Architect if conditions are not suitable for installation of signs; do not proceed until conditions are satisfactory.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 101419**

## **SECTION 102800**

### **TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Toilet accessories.
- B. Under-lavatory pipe supply covers.
- C. Electric hand/hair dryers.
- D. Diaper changing stations.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000: Concealed supports for accessories, including in wall framing and plates.
- B. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies
- C. Section 093000 - Tiling: Ceramic washroom accessories.
- D. Section 224000 - Plumbing Fixtures: Under-lavatory pipe and supply covers.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ASTM A269/A269M - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 2015a (Reapproved 2019).
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- D. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- E. ASTM B86 - Standard Specification for Zinc and Zinc-Aluminum (ZA) Alloy Foundry and Die Castings; 2018, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- F. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass; 2021.
- G. ASTM C1503 - Standard Specification for Silvered Flat Glass Mirror; 2018.
- H. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- I. ASTM F2285 - Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Diaper Changing Tables for Commercial Use; 2004, with Editorial Revision (2016).
- J. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities; 2017.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate locations of accessories with other work to avoid interference, and to assure proper operation and servicing of accessory units.
- B. Coordinate location and installation of toilet accessories mounted on or in immediate proximity to toilet partitions.
- C. Coordinate the work with the placement of internal wall reinforcement to receive anchor attachments.
- D. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit data on accessories describing size, finish, details of function, and attachment methods.
- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Identify accessories using designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish material indicated.
- E. Samples for Verification: When requested by Architect, for each type of material, color, and finish required, 2 by 2 inches in size.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include operating procedures and recommended cleaning methods.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
- H. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and installer.
- I. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least 5 years of documented experience.

## **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Commercial Toilet, Shower, and Bath Accessories:
  - 1. The design for each item specified is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American Specialties, Inc: [www.americanspecialties.com/#sle](http://www.americanspecialties.com/#sle).
    - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc. : <https://www.bobrick.com/sle>.
    - c. Bradley Corporation: [www.bradleycorp.com/#sle](http://www.bradleycorp.com/#sle).
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Professional: [www.blue-connect.com/#sle](http://www.blue-connect.com/#sle).
    - e. Substitutions: Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Diaper Changing Stations:
  - 1. American Specialties, Inc: [www.americanspecialties.com/#sle](http://www.americanspecialties.com/#sle).
  - 2. Bradley Corporation: [www.bradleycorp.com/#sle](http://www.bradleycorp.com/#sle).
  - 3. Diaper Deck & Company: [www.diaperdeck.com/#sle](http://www.diaperdeck.com/#sle).
  - 4. Koala Kare Products: [www.koalabear.com/#sle](http://www.koalabear.com/#sle).
  - 5. Substitutions: 016000 - Product Requirements.

### **2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

### **2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Accessories - General: Shop assembled, free of dents and scratches and packaged complete with anchors and fittings, steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
- B. Keys: Provide 2 keys for each accessory to Owner; master key lockable accessories.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A666, Type 304.

- D. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269/A269M, Grade TP304 or TP316.
- E. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 coating.
- F. Zinc Alloy: Die cast, ASTM B86.
- G. Mirror Glass: Annealed float glass, ASTM C1036 Type I, Class 1, Quality Q2, with silvering, protective and physical characteristics complying with ASTM C1503.
- H. Fasteners, Screws, and Bolts: Hot dip galvanized; tamper-proof; security type.
- I. Expansion Shields: Fiber, lead, or rubber as recommended by accessory manufacturer for component and substrate.

## **2.04 FINISHES**

- A. Stainless Steel: Satin finish, unless otherwise noted.

## **2.05 TOILET ACCESSORIES**

- A. Grab Bars - Type T1.
  - 1. Application: ADA Toilet
  - 2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
  - 3. Material: Stainless steel with smooth, satin, slip-resistant finish.
  - 4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches.
  - 5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 6. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.; B-6806 Series.
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- B. Toilet Paper Dispenser - Type T2.
  - 1. Shared, Partition Mounted Toilet Tissue Dispensers.
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Model B-4288 as manufactured by Bobrick.:[www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).
      - 1) Double-roll, 5 1/4-inch diameter.
      - 2) Vandal resistant hinged locking cover.
      - 3) Satin finish stainless steel.
      - 4) Surface mounted.
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- C. Sanitary Napkin Disposal - Type T3.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Model B-254 as manufactured by Bobrick.:[www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).



- b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- D. Seat Cover Dispenser - Type T4.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Model 6477-9 as manufactured by Anerican Specialities, Inc.
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- E. Soap Dispenser - Type T5.
  - 1. Manual, 40 mL Refill Size,
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Model B-2112 as manufactured by Bobrick.:[www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- F. Mirrors - Type T6
  - 1. Frame: Stainless steel angle, 0.05 inch thick; with corners welded and ground smooth.
  - 2. Hangers: Manufacturer's standard rigid, tamper and theft resistant.
  - 3. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Model B-290 2436 as manufactured by Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- G. Changing Table - T7
  - 1. Recessed Baby Changing Station: Stainless Steel
  - 2. Basis of Design Product:
    - a. Model 9013 as manufactured by American Specialties Inc
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- H. Electric Hand Dryer - T8
  - 1. High Speed Surface Mounted ADA Compliant Hand Dryer
  - 2. Basis of Design Product:
    - a. Model 2923-287401 as manufactured by Bradely Corp.
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.
- I. Coat Hook with Bumper - T9
  - 1. Type 303 stainless steel post and hook pin with concealed mounting flange and polyurethane bumper
  - 2. Basis of Design Product:
    - a. Model B-9541 as manufactured by Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.

## **2.06 UNDER-LAVATORY PIPE AND SUPPLY COVERS**

- A. Specified in 224000 - Plumbing Fixtures.

## **2.07 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES**

- A. Combination Utility Shelf and Mop and Broom Holder:
  - 1. Length: 36 inches.
  - 2. Hooks: Three.
  - 3. Mop/Broom Holders: Four, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
  - 4. Material: Stainless steel.
    - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05 inch (18 gage) thick.
    - b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch-diameter.
  - 5. Basis-of-Design Product:
    - a. Model B-224 as manufactured by Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
    - b. Substitutions: Section 016000-Product Requirements.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify exact location of accessories for installation.
- C. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on drawings.
- D. See Section 06 10 00 for installation of blocking, reinforcing plates, and concealed anchors in walls.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' instructions in locations indicated on drawings.
- B. Install plumb and level, securely and rigidly anchored to substrate.
- C. Mounting Heights: As indicated and as required by accessibility regulations.
- D. Use concealed fasteners wherever possible.
- E. Where exposed mounting devices and fasteners are necessary, provide such devices finished to match accessory; use security type fasteners for all exposed accessory mountings.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, align accessory units with adjacent fixtures and other elements within the same area. Conform to ICC A117.1 for mounting structural strength, positions, and mounting heights.
- G. Where possible, locate wall fasteners at masonry and tile joints; do not penetrate masonry or tile faces.
- H. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

### **3.03 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed accessories from damage due to subsequent construction operations.

### **3.04 CLEANING AND ADJUSTMENT**

- A. Clean and polish all exposed surfaces after installation, and after removal of labels and protective coatings or coverings.
- B. Test and adjust accessories for proper and smooth operation.

**END OF SECTION 102800**



## **SECTION 104400**

### **FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fire extinguishers.
- B. Accessories.

##### **1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking product and execution requirements.

##### **1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide; current edition.
- B. NFPA 10 - Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers; 2022.
- C. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; Current Edition.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features, extinguisher ratings and classifications, color and finish, anchorage details, and installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate locations of cabinets.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include test, refill or recharge schedules and re-certification requirements.

##### **1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install extinguishers when ambient temperature may cause freezing of extinguisher ingredients.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Fire Extinguishers:
  - 1. Ansul, a Tyco Business; \_\_\_\_: [www.ansul.com/#sle](http://www.ansul.com/#sle).
  - 2. Kidde, a unit of United Technologies Corp; \_\_\_\_: [www.kidde.com/#sle](http://www.kidde.com/#sle).
  - 3. Nystrom, Inc; \_\_\_\_: [www.nystrom.com/#sle](http://www.nystrom.com/#sle).
  - 4. Potter-Roemer; \_\_\_\_: [www.potterroemer.com/#sle](http://www.potterroemer.com/#sle).

5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## **2.02 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

- A. Fire Extinguishers - General: Comply with product requirements of NFPA 10 and applicable codes, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Provide extinguishers labeled by UL (DIR) or FM (AG) for purpose specified and as indicated.
- B. Multipurpose Dry Chemical Type Fire Extinguishers: Carbon steel tank, with pressure gauge.
  - 1. Stored Pressure Operated: Deep Drawn.
  - 2. Class: A:B:C type.
  - 3. Size: 10 pound (4.54 kg).
  - 4. Finish: Baked polyester powder coat, red color.
  - 5. Temperature range: Minus 65 degrees F (Minus 54 degrees C) to \_\_\_\_ degrees F (\_\_\_\_ degrees C).

## **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Extinguisher Brackets: Formed steel, chrome-plated.
- B. Lettering: FIRE EXTINGUISHER decal, or vinyl self-adhering, pre-spaced black lettering in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure rigidly in place.
- C. Place extinguishers on wall brackets.
  - 1. Maximum height to top of bracket shall be 48 inches above finished floor
- D. Position cabinet signage at locations required by Authorities Having Jurisdiction.

**END OF SECTION 104400**

**SECTION 123600**

**COUNTERTOPS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Countertops for architectural cabinet work.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 064100 - Architectural Wood Casework.
- B. Section 224000 - Plumbing Fixtures: Sinks.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C97/C97M - Standard Test Methods for Absorption and Bulk Specific Gravity of Dimension Stone.
- B. ASTM C99/C99M - Standard Test Method for Modulus of Rupture of Dimension Stone
- C. ASTM C170/170M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Dimension Stone.
- D. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023b.
- E. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program; Current Edition.
- F. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition; 2014, with Errata (2016).
- G. ISFA 2-01 - Classification and Standards for Solid Surfacing Material; 2013.
- H. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2009 (Revised 2019).

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination
  - 1. Coordinate sizing and configuration of countertops with associated casework and adjacent construction.
  - 2. Coordinate sizing and locations of cutouts for plumbing fixtures with base cabinet configurations for proper alignments as indicated on Drawings.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.

3. Specimen warranty.
- C. Shop Drawings: Complete details of materials and installation ; combine with shop drawings of cabinets and casework specified in other sections.
  1. Indicate plans, sections, dimensions, component sizes, edge details, thermosetting requirements, fabrication details, attachment provisions, sizes of furring, blocking, including concealed blocking and coordination requirements with adjacent work. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, faucets, soap dispensers, waste receptacles and other items installed in countertops. Show seaming locations
- D. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, minimum size 6 inches (150 mm) square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.
  1. Cut sample and seam together for representation of seaming techniques
- E. Test Reports: Chemical resistance testing, showing compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Certificate: Submit labels and certificates required by quality assurance and quality control programs.
- G. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations.
- H. Maintenance Data: Manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for maintenance and repair of countertop surfaces.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate stone countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum 10 years experience in manufacture of quartz surfacing materials.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- D. Quality Certification:
  1. Comply with AWI (QCP) woodwork association quality certification service/program in accordance with requirements for work specified in this section: [www.awiqcp.org/#sle](http://www.awiqcp.org/#sle).
  2. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
  3. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by certification program.
  4. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by certification program.



5. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of construction to receive stone countertops by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### **1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Solid Surface Material Manufacturer Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard warranty for solid surface material only for period of 10 years against defects and/or deficiencies in accordance with General Conditions of the Contract. Promptly correct any defects or deficiencies which become apparent within warranty period, to satisfaction of Architect and at no expense to Owner.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 COUNTERTOPS**

- A. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Solid Surfacing Countertops and Sills: Solid surfacing sheet or plastic resin casting over continuous substrate.
  1. Flat Sheet Thickness: 1/2 inch (12 mm), minimum.
  2. Solid Surfacing Sheet and Plastic Resin Castings: Complying with ISFA 2-01 and NEMA LD 3; acrylic or polyester resin, mineral filler, and pigments; homogenous, non-porous and capable of being worked and repaired using standard woodworking tools; no surface coating; color and pattern consistent throughout thickness.
    - a. Manufacturers:
      - 1) Type SS-01: Formica Classic; [www.solidsurface.com/luna-fossil-formica](http://www.solidsurface.com/luna-fossil-formica)  
(a) Luna Fossil 774

- (b) Locations: Reference Drawings
- 2) Type SS-02: Corian; <https://coriandesignsamples.colors2u.net/product/corian-solid-surface-aurora/>
  - (a) Aurora;
  - (b) Locations: Reference Drawings
- 3) Type SS-03: Durat; <https://durat.com/products/d0370-00-tumma-turkoosi-kirkas-pieni-muru>
  - (a) 370 Dark Turquoise
  - (b) Locations: Reference Drawings
- 4) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- b. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum; smoke developed index of 450, maximum; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- c. NSF approved for food contact.
- d. Finish on Exposed Surfaces: Matte, gloss rating of 5 to 20.
- 3. Other Components Thickness: 1/2 inch (12 mm), minimum.
- 4. Exposed Edge Treatment: Built up to minimum 1-1/2 inch (\_\_\_\_ mm) thick; 1/8 inch radius edge.
- 5. Back and End Splashes: Same sheet material, square top; minimum 4 inches (102 mm) high.
- 6. Skirts: As indicated on drawings.
- 7. Fabricate in accordance with manufacturer's standard requirements.

## **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Plywood for Supporting Substrate: PS 1 Exterior Grade, A-C veneer grade, minimum 5-ply; minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick; join lengths using metal splines.
  - 1. Provide preservative treatment for subtops at sink or other wet locations.
- B. Adhesives: Chemical resistant waterproof adhesive as recommended by manufacturer of materials being joined.
- C. Joint Sealant: Mildew-resistant silicone sealant, clear.

## **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate tops and splashes in the largest sections practicable, with top surface of joints flush.
  - 1. Join lengths of tops using best method recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Fabricate to overhang fronts and ends of cabinets 1-1/2 inch (\_\_\_\_ mm) except where top butts against cabinet or wall.

3. Prepare all cutouts accurately to size; replace tops having improperly dimensioned or unnecessary cutouts or fixture holes.
  4. Undercounter Fixtures: Make cutouts for undercounter fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
  5. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
  6. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.
- B. Provide back/end splash wherever counter edge abuts vertical surface unless otherwise indicated.
1. Secure to countertop with concealed fasteners and with contact surfaces set in waterproof glue.
  2. Height: 4 inches (102 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solid Surfacing: Fabricate tops up to 144 inches (3657 mm) long in one piece; join pieces with adhesive sealant in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.
1. Arrange seams symmetrically or in orderly locations, minimum 12 inches from edges of sink and similar cutouts.
  2. Reinforce as required

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Verify that wall surfaces have been finished and mechanical and electrical services and outlets are installed in proper locations.
- D. Verify actual site dimensions and location of adjacent materials prior to commencing work.
- E. Examine cabinets or other millwork upon which counter tops are to be installed. Verify they are level to within 1/8" in 10' - 0"

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Attach resin countertops with continuous bead of adhesive from manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
- B. Securely attach countertops to cabinets using concealed fasteners. Make flat surfaces level; shim where required
- C. Bond joints with countertop manufacturer's recommended adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- D. Do not cut countertops in field unless otherwise indicated. If countertops or splashers require additional fabrication not specified to be performed at Project site, return to fabrication shop for adjustment.
- E. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.

### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Variation From Horizontal: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), maximum.
- B. Offset From Wall, Countertops: 1/8 inch (3 mm) maximum; 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) minimum.
- C. Field Joints: 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide, maximum.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean countertops in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
- B. Remove adhesives, sealants, and other stains in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
  - 1. Protect installed countertops with non-staining sheet.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 123600**

## **SECTION 124813**

### **ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Entrance Grid System including floor mats and frames and floor grids and frames
- B. Carpet mat.

##### **1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures , for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data indicating properties of walk-off surface, component dimensions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions.
- D. Samples: Submit three samples, 12 by 12 inch (\_\_\_ by \_\_\_ mm) in size illustrating pattern, color, finish, and edging.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include cleaning instructions, \_\_\_\_\_, and stain removal procedures.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Entrance Floor Grilles and Gratings: To withstand 750 lb. wheel loads
  - 1. Construction Specialties, Inc; Entrance Grids: [www.c-sgroup.com/#sle](http://www.c-sgroup.com/#sle).
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Floor Mats:
  - 1. Construction Specialties, Inc; Entrance Mats: [www.c-sgroup.com/#sle](http://www.c-sgroup.com/#sle).
  - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

##### **2.02 ENTRANCE FLOOR GRILLES AND GRATINGS**

- A. Floor Mats / Grids: Extruded 6105-T5 aluminum alloy with ½" deep multiple tread planks which are joined by an TPE hinge to comprise the overall grid length. All material shall be perforated to allow drainage, unless otherwise specified
  - 1. Basis of Design: Peditred® LP G3
    - a. Aluminum: Mill Finish
    - b. TPE: Flexible and Prime
    - c. Carpet: 9313 Midnight
- B. Mat / Grid Frame: Surface Mounted Aluminum Frame

1. (THFR) Threshold Frame - for surface installation to provide flush transition from the entryway door threshold to the mat surface.
2. Finish: Anodized Aluminum
- C. Mounting: Top of non-resilient members level with adjacent floor.
- D. Structural Capacity: Capable of supporting a rolling load of 500 pounds (226.8 kg) without permanent deformation or noticeable deflection.
- E. Vibration Resistant Fabrication: All members welded, riveted, or bolted; no snap or friction connections.

## **2.03 MATS**

- A. Carpet Mat: 100% UV-resistant polypropylene carpet fibers with nitrile rubber backing
  1. Basis of Design: Design Step
  2. Colors: Castle Gray.
- B. Mat / Grid Frame: Surface Mounted Aluminum Frame
  1. (TNG) Tapered Angle Frame - shall be a 1/2"(12.7mm) deep recessed frame in 6063-T5 aluminum alloy between Carpet mat and walk off mat.
  2. Finish: Anodized Aluminum

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that the surface beneath the mat or grid is level. Otherwise finish with a leveling screed to ensure optimum performance of the system
- B. Verification of conditions: Examine areas and conditions under which work is to be performed and identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely completion. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations
- B. Set mat/grid at height recommended by manufacturer for most effective cleaning action
- C. Coordinate top of mat/grid surfaces with bottom of doors that swing across to provide ample clearance between door and mat/grid.
- D. Install walk-off surface \_\_\_\_\_ after cleaning of finish flooring.

### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. It is important to the life cycle of the entrance flooring system that a maintenance schedule be developed which includes regular vacuuming and extraction that correctly matches the amount

of traffic the flooring system incurs.

**3.04 PROTECTION**

- A. After completing required frame installation and concrete work, provide temporary filler of plywood or fiberboard in recess, and cover frames with plywood protective flooring. Maintain protection until construction traffic has ended and project is near time of substantial completion.
- B. Defer installation of floor mats/grids until time of substantial completion of project.

**END OF SECTION 124813**





## **SECTION 220500**

### **BASIC PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Requirements applicable to all Division 22 Sections. Also refer to Division 1 - General Requirements.
- B. All materials and installation methods shall conform to the applicable standards, guidelines and codes referenced herein and within each specification section.

##### **1.02 DIVISION OF WORK BETWEEN MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL & CONTROL CONTRACTORS**

A. Definitions:

- 1. "Mechanical Contractors" refers to the following:
  - a. Plumbing Contractor.
  - b. Heating Contractor.
  - c. Air Conditioning and Ventilating Contractor.
  - d. Temperature Control Contractor.
  - e. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Contractor.
- 2. Motor Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the remote operation of the magnetic coils of magnetic motor starters or relays, or the wiring that permits direct cycling of motors by means of devices in series with the motor power wiring. In the latter case the devices are usually single phase and are usually connected to the motor power wiring through a manual motor starter having "Manual-Off-Auto" provisions.
- 3. Control devices such as start-stop push buttons, thermostats, pressure switches, flow switches, relays, etc., generally represent the types of equipment associated with motor control wiring.
- 4. Motor control wiring is single phase and usually 120 volts. In some instances, the voltage will be the same as the motor power wiring. Generally, where the motor power wiring exceeds 120 volts, a control transformer is used to give a control voltage of 120 volts.
- 5. Temperature Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the operation of a motorized damper, solenoid valve or motorized valve, etc., either modulating or two-position, as opposed to wiring which directly powers or controls a motor used to drive equipment such as fans, pumps, etc.
  - a. This wiring will be from a 120 volt source and may continue as 120 volt, or be reduced in voltage (24 volt) in which case a control transformer shall be furnished as part of the temperature control wiring.

6. Control Motor: An electric device used to operate dampers, valves, etc. It may be two-position or modulating. Conventional characteristics of such a motor are 24 volts, 60 cycles, 1 phase, although other voltages may be encountered.
7. Voltage is generally specified and scheduled as distribution voltage. Motor submittals may be based on utilization voltage if it corresponds to the correct distribution voltage.

Distribution/Nominal Voltage	Utilization Voltage
120	115
208	200
240	230
277	265
480	460

B. General:

1. The purpose of these Specifications is to outline the Electrical and Mechanical Contractor's responsibilities related to electrical work required for items such as temperature controls, mechanical equipment, fans, chillers, compressors and the like. The exact wiring requirements for much of the equipment cannot be determined until the systems have been selected and submittals reviewed. Therefore, the electrical drawings show only known wiring related to such items. All wiring not shown on the electrical drawings, but required for mechanical systems, is the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.
2. Where the drawings require the Electrical Contractor to wire between equipment furnished by the Mechanical Contractor, such wiring shall terminate at terminals provided in the equipment. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide complete electrical power/controls wiring diagrams and supervision to the Electrical Contractor and designate the terminal numbers for correct wiring.
3. All electrical work shall conform to the National Electrical Code. All provisions of the Electrical Specifications concerning wiring, protection, etc., apply to wiring provided by the Mechanical Contractor unless noted otherwise.
4. Control low (24V) and control line (120V) voltage wiring, conduit, and related switches and relays required for the automatic control and/or interlock of motors and equipment, including final connection, are to be furnished and installed under Divisions 21, 22 and 23. Materials and installation to conform to Class 1 or 2 requirements.
5. All Contractors shall establish utility elevations prior to fabrication and shall coordinate their material and equipment with other trades. When a conflict arises, priority is as follows:
  - a. Light fixtures.
  - b. Gravity flow piping, including steam and condensate.
  - c. Electrical busduct.
  - d. Sheet metal.
  - e. Electrical cable trays, including access space.

f. Electrical conduits and wireway.

C. Mechanical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Assumes responsibility for internal wiring of all equipment provided by the Mechanical Contractor, for example:
  - a. Package Air Handling Units.
2. Assumes all responsibility for the Temperature Control wiring, when the Temperature Control Contractor is a Subcontractor to the Mechanical Contractor.
3. Shall verify all existing equipment sizes and capacities where units are to be modified, moved or replaced. Contractor shall notify Architect/Engineer of any discrepancies prior to ordering new units or replacement parts, including replacements of equipment motors.
4. Temperature Control Subcontractor's Responsibility:
  - a. Wiring of all devices needed to make the Temperature Control System functional.
  - b. Verifying any control wiring on the electrical drawings as being by the Electrical Contractor. All wiring required for the Control System, but not shown on the electrical drawings, is the responsibility of the Temperature Control Subcontractor.
  - c. Coordinating equipment locations (such as relays, transformers, etc.) with the Electrical Contractor, where wiring of the equipment is by the Electrical Contractor.
5. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

D. Electrical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Provides all combination starters, manual starters and disconnect devices shown on the Electrical Drawings or indicated to be by the Electrical Contractor on the Mechanical Drawings or Specifications.
2. Installs and wires all remote control devices furnished by the Mechanical Contractor or Temperature Control Subcontractor when so noted on the Electrical Drawings.
3. Provides motor control and temperature control wiring, where so noted on the drawings.
4. Coordinate with the Mechanical Contractor for size of motors and/or other electrical devices involved with repair or replacement of existing equipment.
5. Furnishes, installs and connects all relays, etc., for automatic shutdown of certain fans upon actuation of the Fire Alarm System as indicated and specified in Division 28.
6. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

---

### 1.03 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

#### A. Definitions:

1. Coordination Drawings: A compilation of the pertinent layout and system drawings that show the sizes and locations, including elevations, of system components and required access areas to ensure that no two objects will occupy the same space.
  - a. Mechanical trades shall include, but are not limited to, mechanical equipment, ductwork, fire protection systems, plumbing piping, medical gas systems, hydronic piping, steam and steam condensate piping, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - b. Electrical trades shall include, but are not limited to, electrical equipment, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, pull boxes, transformers, raceway, busway, lighting, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - c. Technology trades shall include, but are not limited to, technology equipment, racks, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, ladder rack, pull boxes, raceway, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - d. Maintenance clearances and code-required dedicated space shall be included.
  - e. The coordination drawings shall include all underground, underfloor, in-floor, in chase, and vertical trade items.
2. Spaces with open/cloud ceiling architecture shall indicate the overhead utilities and locate equipment as required to maintain clearance above lights. The intent for the installation is to maintain a maximum allowable vertical clearance and an organized/clean manner in the horizontal. Notify Architect/Engineer of the maximum clearance which can be maintained. Failure to comply will result in modifications with no cost to Owner.
3. The contractors shall use the coordination process to identify the proper sequence of installation of all utilities above ceilings and in other congested areas, to ensure an orderly and coordinated end result, and to provide adequate access for service and maintenance.

#### B. Participation:

1. The contractors and subcontractors responsible for work defined above shall participate in the coordination drawing process.
2. One contractor shall be designated as the Coordinating Contractor for purposes of preparing a complete set of composite electronic CAD coordination drawings that include all applicable trades, and for coordinating the activities related to this process. The Coordinating Contractor for this project shall be the Mechanical Contractor.
  - a. The Coordinating Contractor shall utilize personnel familiar with requirements of this project and skilled as draftspersons/CAD operators, competent to prepare the required coordination drawings.

3. Electronic CAD drawings shall be submitted to the Coordinating Contractor for addition of work by other trades. IMEG will provide electronic file copies of applicable drawings for contractor's use if the contractor signs and returns an "Electronic File Transfer" waiver provided by IMEG. IMEG will not consider blatant reproductions of original file copies an acceptable alternative for coordination drawings.

C. Drawing Requirements:

1. The file format and file naming convention shall be coordinated with and agreed to by all contractors participating in the coordination process and the Owner.
  - a. Scale of drawings:
    - 1) General plans: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 2) Mechanical, electrical, communication rooms, and including the surrounding areas within 10 feet: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 3) Shafts and risers: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 4) Sections of shafts and mechanical and electrical equipment rooms: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 5) Sections of congested areas: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
2. Ductwork layout drawings shall be the baseline system for other components. Ductwork layout drawings shall be modified to accommodate other components as the coordination process progresses.
3. There may be more drawings required for risers, top and bottom levels of mechanical rooms, and shafts.
4. The minimum quantity of drawings will be established at the first coordination meeting and sent to the Architect/Engineer for review. Additional drawings may be required if other areas of congestion are discovered during the coordination process.

D. General:

1. Coordination drawing files shall be made available to the Architect/Engineer and Owner's Representative. The Architect/Engineer will only review identified conflicts and give an opinion, but will not perform as a coordinator.
2. A plotted set of coordination drawings shall be available at the project site.
3. Coordination drawings are not shop drawings and shall not be submitted as such.
4. The contract drawings are schematic in nature and do not show every fitting and appurtenance for each utility. Each contractor is expected to have included in the bid sufficient fittings, material, and labor to allow for adjustments in routing of utilities made necessary by the coordination process and to provide a complete and functional system.
5. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions due to participation in the coordination process.

6. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions for additional fittings, reroutings or changes of duct size, that are essentially equivalent sizes to those shown on the drawings and determined necessary through the coordination process.
7. The Architect/Engineer reserves the right to determine space priority of equipment in the event of spatial conflicts or interference between equipment, piping, conduit, ducts, and equipment provided by the trades.
8. Changes to the contract documents that are necessary for systems installation and coordination shall be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer.
9. Access panels shall preferably occur only in gypsum board walls or plaster ceilings where indicated on the drawings.
  - a. Access to mechanical, electrical, technology, and other items located above the ceiling shall be through accessible lay-in ceiling tile areas.
  - b. Potential layout changes shall be made to avoid additional access panels.
  - c. Additional access panels shall not be allowed without written approval from the Architect/Engineer at the coordination drawing stage.
  - d. Providing additional access panels shall be considered after other alternatives are reviewed and discarded by the Architect/Engineer and the Owner's Representative.
  - e. When additional access panels are required, they shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner.
10. Complete the coordination drawing process and obtain sign off of the drawings by all contractors prior to installing any of the components.
11. Conflicts that result after the coordination drawings are signed off shall be the responsibility of the contractor or subcontractor who did not properly identify their work requirements, or installed their work without proper coordination.
12. Updated coordination drawings that reflect as-built conditions may be used as record documents.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

##### **A. Contractor's Responsibility Prior to Submitting Pricing Data:**

1. The Contractor is responsible for constructing complete and operating systems. The Contractor acknowledges and understands that the Contract Documents are a two-dimensional representation of a three-dimensional object, subject to human interpretation. This representation may include imperfect data, interpreted codes, utility guidelines, three-dimensional conflicts, and required field coordination items. Such deficiencies can be corrected when identified prior to ordering material and starting installation. The Contractor agrees to carefully study and compare the individual Contract Documents and report at once in writing to the Design Team any deficiencies the Contractor may discover. The Contractor further agrees to require each subcontractor to likewise study the documents and report at once any deficiencies discovered.

2. The Contractor shall resolve all reported deficiencies with the Architect/Engineer prior to awarding any subcontracts, ordering material, or starting any work with the Contractor's own employees. Any work performed prior to receipt of instructions from the Design Team will be done at the Contractor's risk.

B. Qualifications:

1. Only products of reputable manufacturers are acceptable.
2. All Contractors and subcontractors shall employ only workers skilled in their trades.

C. Compliance with Codes, Laws, Ordinances:

1. Conform to all requirements of the City of Warren Codes, Laws, Ordinances and other regulations having jurisdiction.
2. Conform to all State Codes.
3. Conform to Federal Act S.3874 requiring the reduction of lead in drinking water.
4. If there is a discrepancy between the codes and regulations and these specifications, the Architect/Engineer shall determine the method or equipment used.
5. If the Contractor notes, at the time of bidding, that any parts of the drawings or specifications do not comply with the codes or regulations, Contractor shall inform the Architect/Engineer in writing, requesting a clarification. If there is insufficient time for this procedure, Contractor shall submit with the proposal a separate price to make the system comply with the codes and regulations.
6. All changes to the system made after letting of the contract, to comply with codes or requirements of Inspectors, shall be made by the Contractor without cost to the Owner.
7. If there is a discrepancy between manufacturer's recommendations and these specifications, the manufacturer's recommendations shall govern.
8. All rotating shafts and/or equipment shall be completely guarded from all contact. Partial guards and/or guards that do not meet all applicable OSHA standards are not acceptable. Contractor is responsible for providing this guarding if it is not provided with the equipment supplied.

D. Permits, Fees, Taxes, Inspections:

1. Procure all applicable permits and licenses.
2. Abide by all laws, regulations, ordinances, and other rules of the State or Political Subdivision where the work is done, or as required by any duly constituted public authority.
3. Pay all charges for permits or licenses.
4. Pay all fees and taxes imposed by the State, Municipal and/or other regulatory bodies.
5. Pay all charges arising out of required inspections by an authorized body.
6. Pay all charges arising out of required contract document reviews associated with the project and as initiated by the Owner or authorized agency/consultant.

7. Where applicable, all fixtures, equipment and materials shall be approved or listed by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.

E. Examination of Drawings:

1. The drawings for the plumbing work are completely diagrammatic, intended to convey the scope of the work and to indicate the general arrangements and locations of equipment, outlets, etc., and the approximate sizes of equipment.
2. Contractor shall determine the exact locations of equipment and rough-ins, and the exact routing of pipes and ducts to best fit the layout of the job.
3. Scaling of the drawings is not sufficient or accurate for determining these locations.
4. Where job conditions require reasonable changes in indicated arrangements and locations, such changes shall be made by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.
5. Because of the scale of the drawings, certain basic items, such as fittings, boxes, valves, unions, etc., may not be shown, but where required by other sections of the specifications or required for proper installation of the work, such items shall be furnished and installed.
6. If an item is either on the drawings or in the specifications, it shall be included in this contract.
7. Determination of quantities of material and equipment required shall be made by the Contractor from the documents. Where discrepancies arise between drawings, schedules and/or specifications, the greater number shall govern.
8. Where used in mechanical documents, the word "furnish" shall mean supply for use, the word "install" shall mean connect complete and ready for operation, and the word "provide" shall mean to supply for use and connect complete and ready for operation.
  - a. Any item listed as furnished shall also be installed, unless otherwise noted.
  - b. Any item listed as installed shall also be furnished, unless otherwise noted.

F. Field Measurements:

1. Verify all pertinent dimensions at the job site before ordering any materials or fabricating any supports, pipes or ducts.

G. Electronic Media/Files:

1. Construction drawings for this project have been prepared utilizing **Revit**.
2. Contractors and Subcontractors may request electronic media files of the contract drawings and/or copies of the specifications. Specifications will be provided in PDF format.
3. Upon request for electronic media, the Contractor shall complete and return a signed "Electronic File Transmittal" form provided by IMEG.
4. If the information requested includes floor plans prepared by others, the Contractor will be responsible for obtaining approval from the appropriate Design Professional for use of that part of the document.



5. The electronic contract documents can be used for preparation of shop drawings and as-built drawings only. The information may not be used in whole or in part for any other project.
6. The drawings prepared by IMEG for bidding purposes may not be used directly for ductwork layout drawings or coordination drawings.
7. The use of these CAD documents by the Contractor does not relieve them from their responsibility for coordination of work with other trades and verification of space available for the installation.
8. The information is provided to expedite the project and assist the Contractor with no guarantee by IMEG as to the accuracy or correctness of the information provided. IMEG accepts no responsibility or liability for the Contractor's use of these documents.

#### **1.05 WEB-BASED PROJECT SOFTWARE**

- A. The General Contractor shall provide a web-based project software site for the purpose of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until completion of the warranty phase.
- B. The web-based project software shall include, at a minimum, the following features: construction schedule, submittals, RFIs, ASIs, construction change directives, change orders, drawing management, specification management, payment applications, contract modifications, meeting minutes, construction progress photos.
- C. Provide web-based project software user licenses for use by the Architect/Engineer. Access will be provided from the start of the project through the completion of the warranty phase.
- D. At project completion, provide digital archive of entire project in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect/Engineer. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. General Submittal Procedures: In addition to the provisions of Division 1, the following are required:
  1. Transmittal: Each transmittal shall include the following:
    - a. Date
    - b. Project title and number
    - c. Contractor's name and address
    - d. Division of work (e.g., plumbing, heating, ventilating, etc.)
    - e. Description of items submitted and relevant specification number
    - f. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
    - g. Other pertinent data
  2. Submittal Cover Sheet: Each submittal shall include a cover sheet containing:

- a. Date
  - b. Project title and number
  - c. Architect/Engineer
  - d. Contractor and subcontractors' names and addresses
  - e. Supplier and manufacturer's names and addresses
  - f. Division of work (e.g., plumbing, heating, ventilating, etc.)
  - g. Description of item submitted (using project nomenclature) and relevant specification number
  - h. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
  - i. Other pertinent data
  - j. Provide space for Contractor's review stamps
3. Composition:
- a. Submittals shall be submitted using specification sections and the project nomenclature for each item.
  - b. Individual submittal packages shall be prepared for items in each specification section. All items within a single specification section shall be packaged together where possible. An individual submittal may contain items from multiple specifications sections if the items are intimately linked (e.g., pumps and motors).
  - c. All sets shall contain an index of the items enclosed with a general topic description on the cover.
4. Content: Submittals shall include all fabrication, erection, layout, and setting drawings; manufacturers' standard drawings; schedules; descriptive literature, catalogs and brochures; performance and test data; electrical power criteria (e.g., voltage, phase, amps, horsepower, kW, etc.) wiring and control diagrams; Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR); dimensions; shipping and operating weights; shipping splits; service clearances; and all other drawings and descriptive data of materials of construction as may be required to show that the materials, equipment or systems and the location thereof conform to the requirements of the contract documents.
5. Contractor's Approval Stamp:
- a. The Contractor shall thoroughly review and approve all shop drawings before submitting them to the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall stamp, date and sign each submittal certifying it has been reviewed.
  - b. Unstamped submittals will be rejected.
  - c. The Contractor's review shall include, but not be limited to, verification of the following:
    - 1) Only approved manufacturers are used.
    - 2) Addenda items have been incorporated.

- 3) Catalog numbers and options match those specified.
  - 4) Performance data matches that specified.
  - 5) Electrical characteristics and loads match those specified.
  - 6) Equipment connection locations, sizes, capacities, etc. have been coordinated with other affected trades.
  - 7) Dimensions and service clearances are suitable for the intended location.
  - 8) Equipment dimensions are coordinated with support steel, housekeeping pads, openings, etc.
  - 9) Constructability issues are resolved (e.g., weights and dimensions are suitable for getting the item into the building and into place, sinks fit into countertops, etc.).
- d. The Contractor shall review, stamp and approve all subcontractors' submittals as described above.
  - e. The Contractor's approval stamp is required on all submittals. Approval will indicate the Contractor's review of all material and a complete understanding of exactly what is to be furnished. Contractor shall clearly mark all deviations from the contract documents on all submittals. If deviations are not marked by the Contractor, then the item shall be required to meet all drawing and specification requirements.
6. Submittal Identification and Markings:
    - a. The Contractor shall clearly mark each item with the same nomenclature applied on the drawings or in the specifications.
    - b. The Contractor shall clearly indicate the size, finish, material, etc.
    - c. Where more than one model is shown on a manufacturer's sheet, the Contractor shall clearly indicate exactly which item and which data is intended.
    - d. All marks and identifications on the submittals shall be unambiguous.
  7. Schedule submittals to expedite the project. Coordinate submission of related items.
  8. Identify variations from the contract documents and product or system limitations that may be detrimental to the successful performance of the completed work.
  9. Reproduction of contract documents alone is not acceptable for submittals.
  10. Incomplete submittals will be rejected without review. Partial submittals will only be reviewed with prior approval from the Architect/Engineer.
  11. Submittals not required by the contract documents may be returned without review.
  12. The Architect/Engineer's responsibility shall be to review one set of shop drawing submittals for each product. If the first submittal is incomplete or does not comply with the drawings and/or specifications, the Contractor shall be responsible to bear the cost for the Architect/Engineer to recheck and handle the additional shop drawing submittals.
  13. Submittals shall be reviewed and approved by the Architect/Engineer before releasing any equipment for manufacture or shipment.

14. Contractor's responsibility for errors, omissions or deviation from the contract documents in submittals is not relieved by the Architect/Engineer's approval.
15. Schedule shall allow for adequate time to perform orderly and proper review of submittals, including time for consultants and Owner if required, and resubmittals by Contractor if necessary, and to cause no delay in Work or in activities of Owner or other contractors.
  - a. Allow at least two weeks for Architect's/Engineer's review and processing of each submittal.
16. Architect/Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal which, in the Architect/Engineer's opinion, requires coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. The Architect/Engineer will notify the Contractor, in writing, when they exercise this right.

**B. Electronic Submittal Procedures:**

1. Distribution: Email submittals as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer, unless a web-based submittal program is used.
2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
  - a. Submittal file name: 22 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
  - b. Transmittal file name: 22 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.

**1.07 CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. A detailed material and labor takeoff shall be prepared for each change order, along with labor rates and markup percentages. Change orders shall be broken down by sheet or associated individual line item indicated in the change associated narrative, whichever provides the most detailed breakdown. Change orders with inadequate breakdown will be rejected.
- B. Itemized pricing with unit cost shall be provided from all distributors and associated subcontractors.
- C. Change order work shall not proceed until authorized.

## **1.08 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING & MAINTENANCE**

- A. Exercise care in transporting and handling to avoid damage to materials. Store materials on the site to prevent damage. Keep materials clean, dry and free from harmful conditions. Immediately remove any materials that become wet or that are suspected of becoming contaminated with mold or other organisms.
- B. Protect equipment, components, and openings with airtight covers and exercise care at every stage of storage, handling, and installation of equipment to prevent airborne dust and dirt from entering or fouling equipment to include, but not limited to:
  - 1. Motor windings and ventilation openings.
  - 2. Bearings.
  - 3. Equipment Pipe and Accessories connection openings. (e.g. boiler connections, coil connections, etc.)
  - 4. Starter and control cabinets.
  - 5. Heat transfer coils.
  - 6. Pump Seals.
  - 7. Combustion burner and blower equipment (e.g. combustion air intake, combustion vent/flue, etc.)
- C. Equipment and components that are visibly damaged or have been subject to environmental conditions prior to building turnover to Owner that could shorten the life of the component (for example, water damage, humidity, dust and debris, excessive hot or cold storage location, etc.) shall be repaired or replaced with new equipment or components without additional cost to the building owner.
- D. Keep all bearings properly lubricated and all belts properly tensioned and aligned.
- E. Coordinate the installation of heavy and large equipment with the General Contractor and/or Owner. If the Mechanical Contractor does not have prior documented experience in rigging and lifting similar equipment, he/she shall contract with a qualified lifting and rigging service that has similar documented experience. Follow all equipment lifting and support guidelines for handling and moving.
- F. Contractor is responsible for moving equipment into the building and/or site. Contractor shall review site prior to bid for path locations and any required building modifications to allow movement of equipment. Contractor shall coordinate the work with other trades.

## **1.09 NETWORK / INTERNET CONNECTED EQUIPMENT**

- A. These specifications may require certain equipment or systems to have network, Internet and/or remote access capability ("Network Capability"). Any requirement for Network Capability shall be interpreted only as a functional capability and is not to be construed as authority to connect or enable any Network Capability. Network Capability may only be connected or enabled with the express written consent of the Owner.

### **1.010 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide one-year warranty, unless otherwise noted, to the Owner for all fixtures, equipment, materials, and workmanship.
- B. The warranty period for all work in this Division of the specifications shall commence on the date of final acceptance, unless a whole or partial system or any separate piece of equipment or component is put into use for the benefit of any party other than the installing contractor with prior written authorization. In this instance, the warranty period shall commence on the date when such whole system, partial system or separate piece of equipment or component is placed in operation and accepted in writing by the Owner.
- C. Warranty requirements shall extend to correction, without cost to the Owner, of all Work found to be defective or nonconforming to the contract documents. The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting all damage resulting from defects or nonconformance with contract documents.

### **1.011 INSURANCE**

- A. Contractor shall maintain insurance coverage as set forth in Division 01 of these specifications.

### **1.012 MATERIAL SUBSTITUTION**

- A. Where several manufacturers' names are given, the first manufacturer is the basis for job design and establishes the quality.
- B. Equivalent equipment manufactured by the other listed manufacturers may be used. Contractor shall ensure that all items submitted by these other manufacturers meet all requirements of the drawings and specifications and fits in the allocated space. When using other listed manufacturers, the Contractor shall assume responsibility for any and all modifications necessary (including, but not limited to structural supports, electrical connections, piping and ductwork connections and arrangement, plumbing connections and rough-in, and regulatory agency approval, etc.) and coordinate such with other contractors.
- C. Any material, article or equipment of other unnamed manufacturers which will adequately perform the services and duties imposed by the design and is of a quality equal to or better than the material, article or equipment identified by the drawings and specifications may be used if approval is secured in writing from the Architect/Engineer not later than ten days prior to the bid opening.
- D. This Contractor assumes all costs incurred as a result of using the offered material, article or equipment, on the Contractor's part or on the part of other Contractors whose work is affected.
- E. This Contractor may list voluntary add or deduct prices for alternate materials on the bid form. These items will not be used in determining the low bidder.
- F. All material substitutions requested later than ten (10) days prior to bid opening must be listed as voluntary changes on the bid form.

---

## **PART 2 - EXECUTION**

### **2.01 JOBSITE SAFETY**

- A. Neither the professional activities of the Architect/Engineer, nor the presence of the Architect/Engineer or the employees and subconsultants at a construction site, shall relieve the Contractor and other entity of their obligations, duties and responsibilities including, but not limited to, construction means, methods, sequence, techniques or procedures necessary for performing, superintending or coordinating all portions of the work of construction in accordance with the contract documents and any health or safety precautions required by any regulatory agencies. The Architect/Engineer and personnel have no authority to exercise any control over any construction contractor or other entity or their employees in connection with their work or any health or safety precautions. The Contractor is solely responsible for jobsite safety. The Architect/Engineer and the Architect/Engineer's consultants shall be indemnified and shall be made additional insureds under the Contractor's general liability insurance policy.

### **2.02 EXCAVATION, FILL, BACKFILL, COMPACTION**

A. General:

1. Prior to the commencement of any excavation or digging, the Contractor shall verify all underground utilities with the regional utility locator. Provide prior notice to the locator before excavations. Contact information for most regional utility locators can be found at the following website (<https://call811.com/>) or by calling 811.
2. The Contractor shall do all excavating, filling, backfilling and compacting associated with the work.

B. Excavation:

1. Make all excavations to accurate, solid, undisturbed earth, and to proper dimensions.
2. Where excavations are made in error below foundations, concrete of same strength as specified for the foundations or thoroughly compacted sand-gravel fill, as determined by the Architect/Engineer, shall be placed in such excess excavations. Place thoroughly compacted, clean, stable fill in excess excavations under slabs on grade, at the Contractor's expense.
3. Trim bottom and sides of excavations to grades required for foundations.
4. Protect excavations against frost and freezing.
5. Take care in excavating not to damage surrounding structures, equipment, or buried pipe. Do not undermine footing or foundation.
6. Perform all trenching in a manner to prevent cave-ins and risk to workers.
7. Where original surface is pavement or concrete, the surface shall be saw cut to provide clean edges and assist in the surface restoration.
8. Where satisfactory bearing soil for foundations is not found at the indicated levels, the Architect/Engineer or their representative shall be notified immediately, and no further work shall be done until further instructions are given by the Architect/Engineer or their representative.

C. Dewatering:

1. Contractor shall furnish, install, operate, and remove all dewatering pumps and pipes needed to keep trenches and pits free of water.

D. Underground Obstructions:

1. Known underground piping, foundations, and other obstructions in the vicinity of construction are shown on the drawings. Use great care in making installations near underground obstruction.
2. If objects not shown on the drawings are encountered, remove, relocate, or perform extra work as directed by the Architect/Engineer.

E. Fill and Backfilling:

1. Utilities Bedding: Lay underground utilities on minimum of 6" sand bedding or CA6 crushed stone. Compact bedding under utilities smooth, with no sharp edges protruding, to protect the utilities from puncture. Shape bedding to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of utilities and for joints and fittings.
2. Envelope Around Utilities to 6" Above Utilities: Place sand or CA6 crushed stone to a height of 6" over utilities in 6" layers. After connection joints are made, any misalignment can be corrected by tamping backfill around the utilities.
3. Backfill From 6" Above Utilities to Earthen Grade: Place all backfill materials above the utilities in uniform layers not exceeding 6" deep.
4. Backfill From 6" Above Utilities to Below Slabs or Paved Area: Where the sand or CA6 crushed stone fill and backfill will ultimately be under a building, floor or paving, each layer of backfill materials shall be compacted to 95% of the maximum density determined by AASHTO Designation T 99 or ASTM Designation D 698. Moisture content of soil at time of compaction shall not exceed plus or minus 2% of optimum moisture content determined by AASHTO T 99 or ASTM D 698 test.
5. Backfill Materials:
  - a. Sand, CA6: Each layer shall be placed, then carefully and uniformly tamped, to eliminate lateral or vertical displacement.
  - b. Native Soil: Native soil materials may be used as backfill if approved by the Geotechnical Engineer. Native soils shall be free of rock or gravel larger than 3" in any dimension and shall be free of debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, high void content, and other deleterious materials. Each layer shall be placed, then carefully and uniformly tamped, to eliminate lateral or vertical displacement.
  - c. Flowable Fill: Cementitious, self-leveling, self-compacting slurry as defined by the ACI with compressive strength of 50-100psi at 28 days; consisting of a mixture of fine aggregate or filler, water and cementitious materials. Filler material consist of sand, fly ash, spent foundry sand, quarry fines, baghouse dust. Cementitious materials consist of Portland cement, pozzolanic materials, and self-cementing materials. Flowable fill may be placed in a pour instead of 6" layers noted above.



6. Water shall not be permitted to rise in unbackfilled trenches.
7. Dispose of excess excavated earth as directed.
8. Backfill all trenches and excavations immediately after installing utilities or removal of forms, unless other protection is provided.
9. Around piers and isolated foundations and structures, backfill and fill shall be placed and consolidated simultaneously on all sides to prevent wedge action and displacement. Fill and backfill materials shall be spread in 6 inch uniform horizontal layers with each layer compacted separately to required density.

F. Surface Restoration:

1. Where trenches are cut through existing graded, planted, or landscaped areas, the areas shall be restored to the original condition. Replace all planting removed or damaged to its original condition. A minimum of 6 inches of topsoil shall be applied where disturbed areas are to be seeded or sodded.
2. Concrete or asphalt type pavement, seal coat, rock, gravel or earth surfaces removed or damaged shall be replaced with comparable materials and restored to original condition.

## **2.03 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER OBSERVATION OF WORK**

A. The Contractor shall provide seven (7) calendar days' notice to the Architect/Engineer prior to:

1. Placing fill over underground and underslab utilities.
2. Covering exterior walls, interior partitions and chases.
3. Installing hard or suspended ceilings and soffits.

B. The Architect/Engineer will have the opportunity to review the installation and provide a written report noting deficiencies requiring correction. The Contractor's schedule shall account for these reviews and show them as line items in the approved schedule.

C. Above-Ceiling Final Observation

1. All work above the ceilings must be complete prior to the Architect/Engineer's review. This includes, but is not limited to:
  - a. Pipe insulation is installed and fully sealed.
  - b. Pipe wall penetrations are sealed.
  - c. Pipe identification and valve tags are installed.
2. In order to prevent the Above-Ceiling Final Observation from occurring too early, the Contractor shall review the status of the work and certify, in writing, that the work is ready for the Above-Ceiling Final Observation.
3. It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the ceilings have been installed prior to this review and prior to 7 days elapsing, the Architect/Engineer may not recommend further payments to the contractor until such time as full access has been provided.

---

## **2.04 PROJECT CLOSEOUT**

- A. The following paragraphs supplement the requirements of Division 1.
- B. Final Jobsite Observation:
  - 1. In order to prevent the Final Jobsite Observation from occurring too early, the Contractor is required to review the completion status of the project and certify that the job is ready for the final jobsite observation.
  - 2. Attached to the end of this section is a typical list of items that represent the degree of job completeness expected prior to requesting a review.
  - 3. Upon Contractor certification that the project is complete and ready for a final observation, the Contractor shall sign the attached certification and return it to the Architect/Engineer so that the final observation can be scheduled.
  - 4. It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the job not ready for the final observation and that additional trips and observations are required to bring the project to completion, the costs incurred by the Architect/Engineer's additional time and expenses will be deducted from the Contractor's contract retainage prior to final payment at the completion of the job.
- C. Before final payment is authorized, this Contractor must submit the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance manuals with copies of approved shop drawings.
  - 2. Record documents including marked-up or drawings and specifications.
  - 3. A report documenting the instructions given to the Owner's representatives complete with the number of hours spent in the instruction. The report shall bear the signature of an authorized agent of This Contractor and shall be signed by the Owner's representatives.
  - 4. Start-up reports on all equipment requiring a factory installation inspection or start-up.
  - 5. Provide spare parts, maintenance, and extra materials in quantities specified in individual specification sections. Deliver to project site and place in location as directed; receipt by Architect/Engineer required prior to final payment approval.

## **2.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide an electronic copy of the O&M manuals as described below for Architect/Engineer's review and approval. The electronic copy shall be corrected as required to address the Architect/Engineer's comments. Once corrected, electronic copies and paper copies shall be distributed as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
  - 2. Approved O&M manuals shall be completed and in the Owner's possession prior to Owner's acceptance and at least 10 days prior to instruction of operating personnel.
- B. Electronic Submittal Procedures:

1. Distribution: Email the O&M manual as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer.
  2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
  3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
  4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
    - a. O&M file name: O&M.div22.contractor.YYYYMMDD
    - b. Transmittal file name: O&Mtransmittal.div22.contractor.YYYYMMDD
  5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.
  6. Provide the Owner with an approved copy of the O&M manual on compact discs (CD), digital video discs (DVD), or flash drives with a permanently affixed label, printed with the title "Operation and Maintenance Instructions", title of the project and subject matter of disc/flash drive when multiple disc/flash drives are required.
  7. All text shall be searchable.
  8. Bookmarks shall be used, dividing information first by specification section, then systems, major equipment and finally individual items. All bookmark titles shall include the nomenclature used in the construction documents and shall be an active link to the first page of the section being referenced.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Instructions shall include:
1. Title Page: Include title page with project title, Architect, Engineer, Contractor, all subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers, with addresses, telephone numbers, website addresses, email addresses and point of contacts. Website URLs and email addresses shall be active links in the electronic submittal.
  2. Table of Contents: Include a table of contents describing specification section, systems, major equipment, and individual items.
  3. Copies of all final approved shop drawings and submittals. Include Architect's/Engineer's shop drawing review comments. Insert the individual shop drawing directly after the Operation and Maintenance information for the item(s) in the review form.
  4. Copy of final approved test and balance reports.
  5. Copies of all factory inspections and/or equipment startup reports.
  6. Copies of warranties.
  7. Schematic electrical power/controls wiring diagrams of the equipment that have been updated for field conditions. Field wiring shall have label numbers to match drawings.

8. Dimensional drawings of equipment.
9. Capacities and utility consumption of equipment.
10. Detailed parts lists with lists of suppliers.
11. Operating procedures for each system.
12. Maintenance schedule and procedures. Include a chart listing maintenance requirements and frequency.
13. Repair procedures for major components.
14. List of lubricants in all equipment and recommended frequency of lubrication.
15. Instruction books, cards, and manuals furnished with the equipment.
16. Owner and Contractor attendance list for domestic water systems operation, maintenance, and flushing training.

## **2.06 INSTRUCTING THE OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVES**

- A. Adequately instruct the Owner's designated representatives in the maintenance, care, and operation of all systems installed under this contract.
- B. Provide verbal and written instructions to the Owner's representatives by FACTORY PERSONNEL in the care, maintenance, and operation of the equipment and systems.
- C. Contractor shall make a DVD video recording of instructions to the Owner while explaining the system so additional personnel may view the instructions at a later date. The video recording shall be the property of the Owner.
- D. The instructions shall include:
  1. Explanation of all system flow diagrams.
  2. Maintenance of equipment.
  3. Start-up procedures for all major equipment.
  4. Explanation of seasonal system changes.
  5. Explanation of Owner's Responsibilities to operate, maintain, and flush domestic water system (i.e., ASHRAE Standard 188).
- E. Notify the Architect/Engineer of the time and place for the verbal instructions to be given to the Owner's representative so a representative can attend if desired.
- F. The Contractor shall prepare a detailed, written training agenda and submit it to the Architect/Engineer a minimum of two weeks prior to the formal training for approval. The written agenda shall include specific training points within the items described above. For example: how to adjust setpoints, troubleshooting, proper start-up, proper shut-down, seasonal changes, draining, venting, changing filters, changing belts, etc. Failure to provide and follow an approved training agenda may result in additional training required at the expense of the Contractor.
- G. Operating Instructions:

1. Contractor is responsible for all instructions to the Owner's representatives for the mechanical and control systems.
2. If the Contractor does not have staff that can adequately provide the required instructions the Contractor shall include in the bid an adequate amount to reimburse the Owner for the Architect/Engineer to perform these services.

## **2.07 SYSTEM STARTING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. The plumbing systems shall be complete and operating. System startup, testing, adjusting, and balancing to obtain satisfactory system performance is the responsibility of the Contractor. This includes calibration and adjustments of all controls, noise level adjustments and final adjustments as required.
- B. Complete all manufacturer-recommended startup procedures and checklists to verify proper motor rotation, electrical power voltage is within equipment limitations, equipment controls maintain pressures and temperatures within acceptable ranges, all filters and protective guards are in-place, acceptable access is provided for maintenance and servicing, and equipment operation does not pose a danger to personnel or property.
- C. Contractor shall adjust the plumbing systems and controls at season changes during the one year warranty period, as required, to provide satisfactory operation and to prove performance of all systems in all seasons.
- D. All operating conditions and control sequences shall be tested during the start-up period. Test all interlocks, safety shutdowns, controls, and alarms.
- E. The Contractor, subcontractors, and equipment suppliers shall have skilled technicians to ensure that all systems perform properly. If the Architect/Engineer is requested to visit the job site for trouble shooting, assisting in start-up, obtaining satisfactory equipment operation, resolving installation and/or workmanship problems, equipment substitution issues or unsatisfactory system performance, including call backs during the warranty period, through no fault of the design; the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner on a time and materials basis for services rendered at the Architect/Engineer's standard hourly rates in effect when the services are requested. The Contractor shall pay the Owner for services required that are product, installation or workmanship related. Payment is due within 30 days after services are rendered.

## **2.08 RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following paragraphs supplement Division 1 requirements.
- B. Maintain at the job site a separate and complete set of plumbing drawings and specifications with all changes made to the systems clearly and permanently marked in complete detail.
- C. Mark drawings to indicate revisions to piping size and location, both exterior and interior; including locations devices, requiring periodic maintenance or repair; actual equipment locations, dimensioned from column lines; actual inverts and locations of underground piping; concealed equipment, dimensioned from column lines; mains and branches of piping systems, with valves and control devices located and numbered, concealed unions located, and with items requiring maintenance located; Change Orders; concealed control system devices.
- D. Before completion of the project, a set of reproducible plumbing drawings will be given to the Contractor for transfer of all as-built conditions from the paper set maintained at the job site. All marks on reproducibles shall be clear and permanent.

- E. Mark specifications to show approved substitutions; Change Orders, and actual equipment and materials used.
- F. Record changes daily and keep the marked drawings available for the Architect/Engineer's examination at any normal work time.
- G. Upon completing the job, and before final payment is made, give the marked-up drawings to the Architect/Engineer.

## **2.09 PAINTING**

- A. Paint all equipment that is marred or damaged prior to the Owner's acceptance. Paint and color shall match original equipment paint and shall be obtained from the equipment supplier if available.
- B. Equipment in finished areas that will be painted to match the room decor will be painted by others. Should this Contractor install equipment in a finished area after the area has been painted, the Contractor shall have the equipment and all its supports, hangers, etc., painted to match the room decor.
- C. Equipment cabinets, casings, covers, metal jackets, etc., in equipment rooms or concealed spaces, shall be furnished in standard or prime finish, free from scratches, abrasions, chips, etc.
- D. Equipment in occupied spaces, or if standard to the unit, shall have a baked primer with baked enamel finish coat free from scratches, abrasions, chips, etc. If color option is specified or is standard to the unit, this Contractor shall, before ordering, verify with the Architect/Engineer the color preference and furnish this color.
- E. Paint all equipment in unfinished areas such as boiler room, mechanical spaces, storage room, etc., furnished by this Contractor. Equipment furnished with a factory coat of paint and enamel need not be painted, provided the factory applied finish is not marred or spattered. If so, equipment shall be refinished with the same paint as was factory applied.
- F. Paint all outdoor uninsulated steel piping the color selected by Owner or Architect/Engineer.
- G. Paint all outdoor exposed natural gas piping the color selected by Owner or Architect/Engineer.
- H. After surfaces have been thoroughly cleaned and are free of oil, dirt, and other foreign matter; paint all pipes and equipment with the following:
  - 1. Bare Metal Surfaces - Apply one coat of primer suitable for the metal being painted. Finish with two coats of Alkyd base enamel paint.
  - 2. Insulated Surfaces - Paint insulation jackets with two coats of semi-gloss acrylic latex paint.
  - 3. Color of paint shall be as follows:

## **2.010 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. Thoroughly clean all equipment and systems prior to the Owner's final acceptance of the project. Clean all foreign paint, grease, oil, dirt, labels, stickers, and other foreign material from all equipment.

- B. Clean all areas where moisture is present. Immediately report any mold, biological growth, or water damage.
- C. Remove all rust, scale, dirt, oils, stickers and thoroughly clean exterior of all exposed piping, hangers, and accessories.
- D. Remove all rubbish, debris, etc., accumulated during construction from the premises.

#### **2.011 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Contractor shall coordinate the installation of all equipment, valves, dampers, operators, etc., with other trades to maintain clear access area for servicing.
- B. All equipment shall be installed in such a way to maximize access to parts needing service or maintenance. Review the final field location, placement, and orientation of equipment with the Owner's designated representative prior to setting equipment.
- C. Installation of equipment or devices without regard to coordination of access requirements and confirmation with the Owner's designated representative will result in removal and reinstallation of the equipment at the Contractor's expense.

#### **2.012 UTILITY REBATE**

- A. Submit utility rebate forms, where offered at project location, with rebate items completed. Rebate may include lighting, lighting controls, variable speed drives, air conditioners, water heaters, programmable thermostats, and motors.
  - 1. Contractor must submit notification of any value engineering or product substitution that will affect the utility rebate amount prior to approval.

READINESS CERTIFICATION PRIOR TO FINAL JOBSITE OBSERVATION

1. All pumps operating and balanced.
2. All plumbing fixtures installed and caulked.
3. Pipe insulation complete, pipes labeled and valves tagged.
4. Owner and Contractor attendance list for domestic water systems operation, maintenance, and flushing training.

Accepted by:

Prime Contractor \_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Upon Contractor certification that the project is complete and ready for a final job observation, we require the Contractor to sign this agreement and return it to the Architect/Engineer so that the final observation can be scheduled.

It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the job not ready for the final observation and that additional trips and observations are required to bring the project to completion, the costs incurred by the Architect/Engineers for additional time and expenses will be deducted from the Contractor's contract retainage prior to final payment at the completion of the job.

**END OF SECTION 220500**



## **SECTION 220529**

### **PLUMBING SUPPORTS AND ANCHORS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Hangers, Supports, and Associated Anchors.
- B. Equipment Bases and Supports.
- C. Sleeves and Seals.
- D. Flashing and Sealing of Equipment and Pipe Stacks.
- E. Cutting of Openings.
- F. Escutcheon Plates and Trim.

##### **1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation.
- B. MSS SP 69 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application.
- C. MSS SP 89 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Fabrication and Installation Practices
- D. MSS SP-127 - Bracing for Piping Systems Seismic-Wind-Dynamic Design, Selection, Application.

##### **1.03 WORK FURNISHED BUT INSTALLED UNDER OTHER SECTIONS**

- A. Furnish sleeves and hanger inserts to General Contractor for placement into formwork.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 HANGER RODS**

- A. Hanger rods for single rod hangers shall conform to the following:
  - 1. Steel and Cast Iron Pipe:
    - a. Hanger Rod Diameter:
      - 1) 2-1/2" and smaller: 3/8"
      - 2) 3" through 3-5/8": 3/8"
      - 3) 4" through 6": 1/2"
  - 2. Copper and Plastic Pipe:

- a. Hanger Rod Diameter:
  - 1) 2-1/2" and smaller: 3/8"
  - 2) 3") through 3-5/8": 3/8"
  - 3) 4") through 6": 1/2"
- B. Rods for double rod hangers may be reduced one size. Minimum rod diameter is 3/8 inches.
- C. Hanger rods and accessories used in mechanical spaces or otherwise dry areas shall have ASTM B633 electro-plated zinc finish.
- D. All hanger rods, nuts, washers, clevises, etc., in damp areas shall have ASTM A123 hot-dip galvanized finish applied after fabrication. This applies to the following areas:

## 2.02 PIPE AND STRUCTURAL SUPPORTS

- A. General:
  - 1. Pipe hangers, clamps, and supports shall conform to Manufacturers Standardization Society MSS SP-58, 69, 89, and 127 (where applicable).
  - 2. On all insulated piping, provide at each support an insert of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation, between the pipe and insulation jacket, to prevent insulation from sagging and crushing. Refer to insulation specifications for materials and additional information.
  - 3. Copper piping located in an exposed area, including indirect waste piping in kitchens janitor's closets, shall use split ring standoff hangers for copper tubing. Support shall include plastic pipe insert similar to Unistrut Cush-A-Clamp, Hydra-Zorb, nVent Cushion Clamp or Eaton Vibra-Clamp. Use electro-galvanized or more corrosion resistant and threaded rod for floor applications. Use anchors applicable to the wall type with corrosion resistant threaded rod for wall applications.
    - a. Products:
      - 1) nVent/M-Co Model #456
      - 2) Eaton Fig. 3198HCT
      - 3) Anvil Fig. CT138R
- B. Hangers and Clamps:
  - 1. Oversize all hangers, clamps, and supports on insulated piping to allow insulation and jacket to pass through unbroken. This applies to both hot and cold pipes.
  - 2. Hangers in direct contact with bare copper pipe shall include plastic pipe insert similar to Unistrut Cush-A-Clamp, Hydra-Zorb, nVent Cushion Clamp or Eaton Vibra-Clamp within their temperature limits of -65°F° to +275°F°.
  - 3. Vertical cold pipe drops and rough-ins to fixtures shall be supported by insulated pipe clamps to prevent thermal bridging and condensation.
  - 4. On all insulated piping, provide a semi-cylindrical metallic shield and vapor barrier jacket.
  - 5. Unless otherwise indicated, hangers shall be as follows:

- a. Clevis Type: Bare Metal Pipe, Rigid Plastic Pipe, Insulated Cold Pipe, Insulated Hot Pipe - 3 inches & Smaller
  - 1) Products: Bare Steel Plastic or Insulated Pipe:
    - a) Anvil Fig. 260
    - b) Eaton Fig. 3100
    - c) nVent Model 400
  - 2) Products: Bare Copper Pipe Felt or PVC Coated:
    - a) Eaton Fig. B3104F or B3100CTC
    - b) Anvil Fig. CT65
    - c) nVent Fig. 402
  - 3) Pads:
    - a) Anvil Fig. 3195
- b. Continuous Channel with Clevis Type: Service: Plastic Tubing, Flexible Hose, Soft Copper Tubing:
  - 1) Products:
    - a) Eaton Fig. B3106, with Fig. B3106V
    - b) nVent Model 104, with Model 104V
    - c) Anvil Fig. 1V
- c. Adjustable Swivel Ring Type: Bare Metal Pipe - 4 inches and Smaller
  - 1) Products: Bare Steel Pipe:
    - a) Anvil Fig. 69
    - b) Eaton Fig. B3170NF
    - c) nVent Model 115
  - 2) Products: Bare Copper Pipe:
    - a) Eaton Fig. B3170CTC
    - b) nVent 102A0 Series
    - c) Anvil Fig. CT-69

6. Support may be fabricated from U-channel strut or similar shapes. Piping less than 4" in diameter shall be secured to strut with clamps of proper design and capacity as required to maintain spacing and alignment. Strut shall be independently supported from hanger drops or building structure. Size and support shall be per manufacturer's installation requirements for structural support of piping. Clamps shall not interrupt piping insulation.
  - a. Strut used in mechanical spaces or otherwise dry areas shall have ASTM B633 electro-plated zinc finish.
  - b. Strut used in damp areas listed in hanger rods shall have ASTM A123 hot-dip galvanized finish applied after fabrication.
7. Unless otherwise indicated, pipe supports for use with struts shall be as follows:
  - a. Clamp Type: Bare Metal Pipe, Rigid Plastic Pipe, Insulated Cold Pipe, Insulated Hot Pipe - 3 inches and smaller
    - 1) Clamps in direct contact with copper pipe shall include plastic pipe insert similar to Unistrut Cush-A-Clamp, Hydra-Zorb, nVent Cushion Clamp or Eaton Vibra-Clamp.
    - 2) Pipes subject to expansion and contraction shall have clamps oversized to allow limited pipe movement.
    - 3) Products: Bare Steel, Plastic or Insulated Pipe:
      - a) Unistrut Fig. P1100 or P2500
      - b) Eaton Fig. B2000 or B2400
      - c) Anvil Fig. AS1200
      - d) nVent USC
    - 4) Products: Bare Copper Pipe:
      - a) Eaton Fig. BVT
      - b) nVent CADDY Cushion Clamp

C. Upper (Structural) Attachments:

1. Unless otherwise shown, upper attachments for hanger rods or support struts shall be as follows:
  - a. Steel Structure Clamps: C-Type Wide Flange Beam Clamps (for use on top and/or bottom of wide flanges. Not permitted for use with bar-joists.):
    - 1) Products:
      - a) Anvil Fig. 86
      - b) Eaton Fig. B3033/B3034
      - c) nVent Model 300 & 310

- b. Steel Structure Clamps: Scissor Type Beam Clamps (for use with bar-joists and wide flange):
  - 1) Products:
    - a) Anvil Fig. 228, 292
    - b) Eaton Fig. B3054
    - c) nVent Model 360
- c. Concentrically Loaded Open Web Joist Hangers (for use with bar joists):
  - 1) Products:
    - a) MCL. M1, M2 or M3
- d. Steel Structure Welding:
  - 1) Unless otherwise noted, hangers, clips, and auxiliary support steel may be welded in lieu of bolting, clamping, or riveting to the building structural frame. Take adequate precautions during all welding operations for fire prevention and protecting walls and ceilings from smoke damage.
- e. Wood Anchors: Tension wood rod hanger for suspending 3/8" threaded rod. Zinc plated carbon steel.
  - 1) Minimum allowable tension loads for Douglass Fir/Southern Pine:
    - a) 3/8" diameter rod; 2-1/2" shank: 600 lb/590 lb.
    - b) Load values are based on full shank penetration into wood member. Minimum edge distance 3/4". Minimum end distance 3-1/4".
  - 2) Limitations:
    - a) Truss: Do not hang from wood trusses without truss manufacturer or Structural Engineer™™s approval.
    - b) Sheetrock/Gypsum Ceiling: When drilling through non-wood materials (e.g., sheet rock, gypsum, etc.), increase shank length by depth of non-wood materials.
    - c) Plywood Flooring/Roofing: Do not hang from plywood floor or roofing.
    - d) Spacing: Refer to wood structure spacing of hangers.
  - 3) Products:
    - a) Simpson RWV
    - b) DeWALT

c) ITI Sammys GT25

## **2.03 FOUNDATIONS, BASES, AND SUPPORTS**

### **A. Basic Requirements:**

1. Furnish and install foundations, bases, and supports (not specifically indicated on the Drawings or in the Specifications of either the General Construction or Mechanical work as provided by another Contractor) for mechanical equipment.
2. All concrete foundations, bases and supports, shall be reinforced. All steel bases and supports shall receive a prime coat of zinc chromate or red metal primer. After completion of work, give steel supports a final coat of gray enamel.

### **B. Concrete Bases (Housekeeping Pads):**

1. Unless shown otherwise on the drawings, concrete bases shall be nominal 4 inches thick and shall extend 3 inches on all sides of the equipment (6 inches larger than factory base), except where pad extension would interfere with working space at equipment control panels and electrical panels.
2. Where a base is less than 12 inches from a wall, extend the base to the wall to prevent a "dirt-trap".
3. Concrete materials and workmanship required for the Contractor's work shall be provided by the Contractor. Materials and workmanship shall conform to the applicable standards of the Portland Cement Association. Reinforce with 6"x6", W1.4-W1.4 welded wire fabric. Concrete shall withstand 3,000 pounds compression per square inch at 28 days.
4. Equipment requiring bases is as follows:
  - a. Water Heater

### **C. Supports:**

1. Provide sufficient clips, inserts, hangers, racks, rods, and auxiliary steel to securely support all suspended material, equipment and conduit without sag.
2. Hang heavy equipment from concrete floors or ceilings with Architect/Engineer-approved concrete inserts, furnished and installed by the Contractor whose work requires them, except where indicated otherwise.

### **D. Grout:**

1. Grout shall be non-shrinking premixed (Master Builders Company "Embecco"), unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or approved by the Architect/Engineer.
2. Use Mix No. 1 for clearances of 1" or less, and Mix No. 2 for all larger clearances.
3. Grout under equipment bases, around pipes, at pipe sleeves, etc., and where shown on the drawings.

## **2.04 OPENINGS IN FLOORS, WALLS AND CEILINGS**

- A. Exact locations of all openings for the installation of materials shall be determined by the Contractor and given to the General Contractor for installation or construction as the structure is built.
- B. Coordinate all openings with other Contractors.
- C. Hire the proper tradesman and furnish all labor, material and equipment to cut openings in or through existing structures, or openings in new structures that were not installed, or additional openings. Repair all spalling and damage to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer. Make saw cuts before breaking out concrete to ensure even and uniform opening edges.
- D. Said cutting shall be at the complete expense of each Contractor. Failure to coordinate openings with other Contractors shall not exempt the Contractor from providing openings at Contractor's expense.
- E. Do not cut structural members without written approval of the Architect or Structural Engineer.
- F. Exposed Housing Penetrations: Seal pipes with surface temperature below 150°F, penetrating housings with conical stepped, white silicone, EPDM or neoprene pipe flashings and stainless steel clamps equal to Portals Plus Pipe Boots or Pipetite.

## **2.05 ESCUTCHEON PLATES AND TRIM**

- A. Fit escutcheons to all insulated or uninsulated exposed pipes passing through walls, floors, or ceilings of finished rooms.
- B. Escutcheons shall be heavy gauge, cold rolled steel, copper coated under a chromium plated finish, heavy spring clip, rigid hinge and latch.
- C. Install galvanized steel (unless otherwise indicated) trim strip to cover vacant space and raw construction edges of all rectangular openings in finished rooms. This includes pipe openings.

## **2.06 PIPE PENETRATIONS**

- A. Seal all pipe penetrations. Seal non-rated walls and floor penetrations with grout or caulk. Backing material may be used.
- B. Seal fire rated wall and floor penetrations with fire seal system as specified.

## **2.07 PIPE ANCHORS**

- A. Provide all items needed to allow adequate expansion and contraction of all piping. All piping shall be supported, guided, aligned, and anchored as required.
- B. Repair all piping leaks and associated damage. Pipes shall not rub on any part of the building.

## **2.08 FINISH**

- A. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. Hangers and supports in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PLUMBING SUPPORTS AND ANCHORS**

#### **A. General Installation Requirements:**

1. Install all items per manufacturer's instructions.
2. Coordinate the location and method of support of piping systems with all installations under other Divisions and Sections of the Specifications.
3. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welding.
4. Supports shall extend directly to building structure. Do not support piping from duct hangers unless coordinated with Sheet Metal Contractor prior to installation. Do not allow lighting or ceiling supports to be hung from piping supports.

#### **B. Supports Requirements:**

1. Set all concrete inserts in place before pouring concrete.
2. Furnish, install and prime all auxiliary structural steel for support of piping systems that are not shown on the Drawings as being by others.
3. Install hangers and supports complete with lock nuts, clamps, rods, bolts, couplings, swivels, inserts and required accessories.
4. Hangers for horizontal piping shall have adequate means of vertical adjustment for alignment.

#### **C. Pipe Requirements:**

1. Support all piping and equipment, including valves, strainers, traps and other specialties and accessories to avoid objectionable or excessive stress, deflection, swaying, sagging or vibration in the piping or building structure during erection, cleaning, testing and normal operation of the systems.
2. Do not, however, restrain piping to cause it to snake or buckle between supports or to prevent proper movement due to expansion and contraction.
3. Support piping at equipment and valves so they can be disconnected and removed without further supporting the piping.
4. Piping shall not introduce strains or distortion to connected equipment.
5. Parallel horizontal pipes may be supported on trapeze hangers made of structural shapes and hanger rods; otherwise, pipes shall be supported with individual hangers.
6. Trapeze hangers may be used where ducts interfere with normal pipe hanging.
7. Provide additional supports where pipe changes direction, adjacent to flanged valves and strainers, at equipment connections and heavy fittings.
8. Provide at least one hanger adjacent to each joint in grooved end steel pipe with mechanical couplings.



- D. Provided the installation complies with all loading requirements of truss and joist manufacturers, the following practices are acceptable:
  - 1. Loads of 100 lbs. or less may be attached anywhere along the top or bottom chords of trusses or joists with a minimum 3' spacing between loads.
  - 2. Loads greater than 100 lbs. must be hung concentrically and may be hung from top or bottom chord, provided one of the following conditions is met:
    - a. The hanger is attached within 6" from a web/chord joint.
    - b. Additional L2x2x1/4 web reinforcement is installed per manufacturer's requirements.
  - 3. It is prohibited to cantilever a load using an angle or other structural component that is attached to a truss or joist in such a fashion that a torsional force is applied to that structural member.
  - 4. If conditions cannot be met, coordinate installation with truss or joist manufacturer and contact Architect/Engineer.
- E. After piping and insulation installation are complete, cut hanger rods back at trapeze supports so they do not extend more than 3/4" below bottom face of lowest fastener and blunt any sharp edges.
- F. Do not exceed 25 lbs. per hanger and a minimum spacing of 2'-0" on center when attaching to metal roof decking (limitation not required with concrete on metal deck). This 25 lbs. load and 2'-0" spacing include adjacent electrical and architectural items hanging from deck. If the hanger restrictions cannot be achieved, supplemental framing off steel framing will need to be added.
- G. Do not exceed the manufacturer's recommended maximum load for any hanger or support.
- H. Wood Structure: Spacing of hangers shall not exceed the compressive strength of the insulation inserts, and in no case shall exceed the following:
  - 1. Steel and Fiberglass (Std. Weight or Heavier - Liquid Service):
    - a. Maximum Spacing:
      - 1) 1-1/4" & under: 7'-0"
      - 2) 1-1/2": 9'-0"
      - 3) 2": 10'-0"
      - 4) 2-1/2": 11'-0"
      - 5) 3": 12'-0"
      - 6) 4" through 6": 12'-0"
  - 2. Steel (Std. Weight or Heavier - Vapor Service):
    - a. Maximum Spacing:
      - 1) 1-1/4" and under: 9'-0"

- 2) 1-1/2": 12'-0"
- 3) 2" & larger: 12'-0"
- 4) 2-1/2": 11'-0"
- 5) 3": 12'-0"
- 6) 4" through 8": 12'-0"
- 3. Hard Drawn Copper & Brass (Liquid Service):
  - a. Maximum Spacing:
    - 1) 3/4" and under: 5'-0"
    - 2) 1": 6'-0"
    - 3) 1-1/4": 7'-0"
    - 4) 1-1/2" 8'-0"
    - 5) 2": 8'-0"
    - 6) 2-1/2": 9'-0"
    - 7) 3": 10'-0"
    - 8) 4": 12'-0"
- 4. Hard Drawn Copper & Brass (Vapor Service):
  - a. Maximum Spacing:
    - 1) 3/4" & under: 7'-0"
    - 2) 1": 8'-0"
    - 3) 1-1/4": 9'-0"
    - 4) 1-1/2": 10'-0"
    - 5) 2": 11'-0"
    - 6) 2-1/2" & larger: 12'-0"
- 5. Plastic Pipe:
  - a. Hangers shall be spaced based on the piping system manufacturer's instructions or, if no system instructions are available, space hangers at 4'-0" maximum centers.
- 6. Ultra-Flexible Pipe, Flexible Hose, and Soft Copper Tubing:
  - a. Continuous channel with hangers maximum 8'-0" OC.
- I. Installation of hangers shall conform to MSS SP-58, 69, 89 and the applicable Plumbing Code.

**END OF SECTION 220529**

## **SECTION 220719**

### **PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Piping Insulation.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in piping insulation application with five years minimum experience.
- B. Materials: Listed and labeled for flame spread/smoke developed rating of no more than 25/50 when tested per ASTM E84 or UL 723 as required by code. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- C. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- B. ANSI/ASTM C533 - Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.
- C. ANSI/ASTM C534 - Elastomeric Foam Insulation.
- D. ASTM C591 - Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Insulation.
- E. ASTM C1126 - Standard Specification for Faced or Unfaced Rigid Cellular Phenolic Thermal Insulation.
- F. ASTM C1729 - Standard Specification for Aluminum Jacketing for Insulation.
- G. ASTM C1767 - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Jacketing for Insulation.
- H. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- I. NFPA 255 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- J. UL 723 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

- K. National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards - 1999 Edition - as published by Midwest Insulation Contractors Association and endorsed by National Insulation Contractors Association.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 INSULATION**

- A. Type A: Glass fiber; ANSI/ASTM C547; 0.24 maximum 'K' value at 75°F°; non-combustible. All-purpose polymer or polypropylene service jacket, listed and labeled at no more than 25/50 when tested per ASTM E84 or UL 723 as required by code.
- B. Type B: Flexible elastomeric foam insulation; closed-cell, sponge or expanded rubber (polyethylene type is not permitted); ANSI/ASTM C534 Grade 1 Type I for tubular materials; flexible plastic; 0.25 maximum 'K' value at 75°F°, listed and labeled at no more than 25/50 when tested per ASTM E84 or UL 723 as required by code. Maximum 1" thick per layer where multiple layers are specified.
- C. Type C: Molded rigid cellular glass; ANSI/ASTM C-552; 0.29 maximum 'K' value at 75°F°; density 7.3lb/ft; minimum compressive strength 90 psi parallel to rise; moisture resistant, non-combustible; suitable for -100°F° to +900°F°. For below grade installations, use asphaltic mastic paper vapor barrier jacket. Use self-seal all-purpose polymer or polypropylene service jacket for above grade installations.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Install insulation after piping has been tested. Pipe shall be clean, dry and free of rust before applying insulation.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:
  - 1. Install materials per manufacturer's instructions, building codes and industry standards.
  - 2. Continue insulation with vapor barrier through penetrations. This applies to all insulated piping. Maintain fire rating of all penetrations.
- B. Insulated Piping Operating Below 60°F°:
  - 1. Insulate fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, flexible hoses, and expansion joints. Seal all penetrations of vapor barrier.
  - 2. On piping operating below 60°F° in locations that are not mechanically cooled (e.g., penthouses, mechanical rooms, tunnels, chases at exterior walls, etc.), Type B insulation shall be used.

3. All balance valves with fluid operating below 60°F° shall be insulated with a removable plug wrapped with vapor barrier tape to allow reading and adjusting of the valve.
- C. Insulated Piping Operating Between 60°F° and 140°F°:
  1. Do not insulate flanges and unions, but bevel and seal ends of insulation at such locations. Insulate all fittings, valves and strainers.
- D. Exposed Piping:
  1. Locate and cover seams in least visible locations.
  2. Where exposed insulated piping extends above the floor, provide a sheet metal guard around the insulation extending 12" above the floor. Guard shall be 0.016" cylindrical smooth or stucco aluminum and shall fit tightly to the insulation.
  3. On exposed piping serving kitchen equipment or plumbing fixtures, the piping shall be insulated unless local code allows it to be uninsulated. In no instance should the uninsulated portion of the piping be more than 4ft in developed length.

### 3.03 SUPPORT PROTECTION

- A. Neatly finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.
- B. Install metal shields between all hangers or supports and the pipe insulation. Shields shall be galvanized sheet metal, half-round with flared edges. Adhere shields to insulation. On cold piping, seal the shields vapor-tight to the insulation as required to maintain the vapor barrier, or add separate vapor barrier jacket.
- C. Shields shall be at least the following lengths and gauges:

Pipe Size	Shield Size
1/2" to 3-1/2"	12" long x 18 gauge
4"	12" long x 16 gauge
5" to 6"	18" long x 16 gauge
8" to 14"	24" long x 14 gauge
16" to 24"	24" long x 12 gauge

- D. Elastomeric foam insulation shields/saddle; molded thermoplastic rigid pipe saddle sized for insulation outside diameter. Length as indicated above.
- E. Ferrous hot piping 4 inches and larger, provide steel saddle at rollers as described in Section 220529 "Plumbing Supports and Anchors".
- F. Minimum 1/4" rolled galvanized steel plates shall be provided in addition to the sleeves as reinforcement on large pipes to reduce point loading on roller, trapeze hanger and strut support locations depending on insulation compressive strength. Refer to section above for exact locations.

### 3.04 INSULATION

- A. Type A Insulation:

1. All Service Jackets: Seal all longitudinal joints with self-seal laps using a single pressure sensitive adhesive system. Do not staple.
2. Insulation without self-seal lap may be used if installed with Benjamin Foster 85-20 or equivalent Chicago Mastic, 3M or Childers lap adhesive.
3. Apply insulation with laps on top of pipe.
4. Fittings, Valve Bodies and Flanges: For 4" and smaller pipes, insulate with 1 lb. density insulation wrapped under compression to a thickness equal to the adjacent pipe insulation. For pipes over 4", use mitered segments of pipe insulation. Finish with preformed plastic fitting covers. Secure fitting covers with pressure sensitive tape at each end. Overlap tape at least 2" on itself. For pipes operating below 60°F° seal fitting covers with vapor retarder mastic in addition to tape.

B. Type B Insulation:

1. Install per manufacturer's instructions or ASTM C1710.
2. Elastomeric Cellular Foam: Where possible, slip insulation over the open end of pipe without slitting. Seal all butt ends, longitudinal seams, and fittings with adhesive. At elbows and tees, use mitered connections. Do not compress or crush insulation at cemented joints. Joints shall be sealed completely and not pucker or wrinkle. Exterior installations shall contain factory applied polymeric, moisture, and UV resistant covering with ends sealed with adhesive and similar cover; or Contractor shall paint the outside of outdoor insulation with two coats of latex enamel paint recommended by the manufacturer.
3. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - a. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  - b. Insulation must be installed in compression to allow for expansion and contraction. Insulation shall be pushed onto the pipe, never pulled. Stretching of insulation may result in open seams and joints.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  - b. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  - c. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

C. Type C Insulation:

1. Seal all longitudinal joints with manufacturer approved adhesive. Secure butt joint strips in a similar manner.

2. Insulate fittings with prefabricated fittings.

### **3.05 SCHEDULE**

- A. Refer to drawings for insulation schedule.

**END OF SECTION 220719**





**SECTION 220900**  
**INSTRUMENTATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Positive Displacement Meters.
- B. Pressure Gauge.
- C. Pressure Gauge Accessories.
- D. Thermometers.
- E. Test Plugs.

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/AWWA C700 - Cold Water Meters - Displacement Type, Bronze Main Case.
- B. ANSI/AWWA C701 - Cold Water Meters - Turbine Type, for Customer Service.
- C. ANSI/AWWA C702 - Cold Water Meters - Compound Type.
- D. ANSI/AWWA C706 - Direct Reading, Remote Registration Systems for Cold Water Meters.
- E. ASME B40.1 - Gauges - Pressure Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element.
- F. ASME MFC-3M - Measurement of Fluid Flow in Pipes Using Orifice, Nozzle and Venturi.
- G. ASTM E1 - Specification for ASTM Thermometers.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 POSITIVE DISPLACEMENT METERS (LIQUID)**

- A. AWWA C700 positive displacement disc type suitable for fluid with hermetically sealed register, remote reading to AWWA C706.
- B. Provide water meters with bronze case with cast iron bottom cap.
- C. Meters downstream of utility company meters shall be same manufacturer as utility company meter.
- D. Meter shall contain an analog 4-20 mA output, scaled and unscaled pulse outputs for connection to the building automation system.
- E. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Neptune
  - 2. Badger

3. Hersey.

## **2.02 PRESSURE GAUGES**

- A. Gauges shall be 4-1/2" diameter with aluminum or stainless steel case with phosphor bronze bourdon tube, brass socket for water or oil application, 1/2" bottom connection. Gauges shall be 1% full scale accurate with bronze bushed brass movement and adjustable pointer. Standard ranges to be either pressure or pressure and vacuum as required of application.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Ashcroft
    - b. Marsh
    - c. Marshalltown
    - d. Miljoco
    - e. Trerice
    - f. U.S. Gauge Figure 1901
    - g. Weksler
    - h. Wika.
- B. Select gauge range for normal reading near center of gauge.

## **2.03 PRESSURE GAUGE ACCESSORIES**

- A. All pressure gauges shall have valves and pressure snubbers. All pressure gauges on steam shall have pigtail syphon.
- B. Shutoff Valve: 1/2" ball valve as specified for each piping system.
- C. Pressure snubber, brass with 1/2" connections, porous metal type.
- D. All pressure gauge piping shall be minimum 1/2" 304 stainless steel pipe or copper tube.

## **2.04 THERMOMETERS**

- A. Alcohol/Spirit Filled Type:
  1. 9" long phenolic case, steel stem, accuracy of 1% full scale. Adjustable elbow joint with 180 degree adjustment in vertical plane, 360 degree adjustment in horizontal plane, and locking device to allow rotation of thermometer to any angle.
  2. Select thermometer for appropriate temperature range.
  3. Stem: Copper plated steel, aluminum, or brass for separable socket. Stem lengths as required for application with minimum insertion of 3-1/2".

4. Thermometers for water shall have brass or steel separable socket. Thermometer wells shall be stainless steel, pressure rated to match piping system design pressure; with 2-inch extension for insulated piping and threaded cap nut with chain permanently fastened to well and cap.
5. Manufacturer:
  - a. Marsh
  - b. Miljoco
  - c. Trerice
  - d. Weksler
  - e. Wika.

B. Select scales to cover expected range of temperatures.

## **2.05 TEST PLUGS**

- A. Test Plug: 1/4" or 1/2" brass fitting and cap, with Nordel core for temperatures up to 275°F°, for receiving 1/8" outside diameter pressure or temperature probe. Plugs shall be rated for zero leakage from vacuum to 500 psi.
- B. Provide extended units for all plugs installed in insulated piping.
- C. Test Kit: Carrying case, internally padded and fitted containing one 3-1/2" diameter pressure gauge with 0-100 psi range, one gauge adapter with 1/8" probes, two 1-1/2" dial thermometers with 0° to 220°F° and -25°F to 125°F° ranges and 5" stems.
- D. Manufacturers:
  1. Sisco
  2. Flow Design
  3. Peterson Equipment
  4. MG Piping Products Co.
  5. Miljoco
  6. Trerice
  7. Watts Regulator.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:
  1. Install per manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Coil and conceal excess capillary on remote element instruments.

3. Install gauges and thermometers in locations where they are easily read from normal operating level.
4. Do not install instrumentation when areas are under construction, except for required rough-in, taps, supports and test plugs.

B. Positive Displacement Meters:

1. Install positive displacement meters with shutoff valves on inlet and outlet. Provide full line size valved bypass with globe valve for liquid service meters.

C. Pressure Gauges:

1. Connect pressure gauges to suction and discharge side of all pumps.
2. Provide 1/2" tubing for pressure gauge and gauge accessories.
3. Provide snubber for each pressure gauge.
4. Provide coil syphon for each pressure gauge connected to steam piping.
5. Install gauges with bottom threaded connections at 6 o'clock position.

D. Thermometers:

1. Install piping system thermometers in sockets with short couplings. Enlarge pipes smaller than 2-1/2" for installation of thermometer sockets.
2. Install thermometer sockets adjacent to control system thermostat, transmitter and sensor sockets.

**END OF SECTION 220900**

## **SECTION 221000**

### **PLUMBING PIPING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Pipe and Pipe Fittings.
- B. Valves.
- C. Check Valves.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Valves: Manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body. Remanufactured valves are not acceptable.
- B. Welding Materials and Procedures: Conform to ASME Code and applicable state labor regulations.
- C. Welders Certification: In accordance with ANSI/ASME Sec 9 or ANSI/AWS D1.1.
- D. All grooved couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be of the same manufacturer as the grooved components.
  - 1. All castings used for couplings housings, fittings, or valve and specialty bodies shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.
- E. Piping, Fittings, Valves, and Flux for Potable Water Systems: All components shall be lead free per Federal Act S.3874, Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Bronze Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings.
- B. ANSI/ASME B16.23 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV.
- C. ANSI/ASME B16.29 - Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings - DWV.
- D. ANSI/ASME B16.5 - Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.
- E. ANSI/ASME Sec 9 - Welding and Brazing Qualifications.
- F. ANSI/ASTM B32 - Solder Metal.
- G. ANSI/AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code.
- H. ASSE 1003 - Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Supply Systems.
- I. ASTM A53 - Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped Zinc Coated, Welded and Seamless.

- J. ASTM A234 - Pipe Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and Elevated Temperatures.
- K. ASTM A888 - Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
- L. ASTM B88 - Seamless Copper Water Tube.
- M. ASTM B306 - Copper Drainage Tube (DWV).
- N. ASTM C564 - Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
- O. ASTM C1540 - Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
- P. AWWA C651 - Disinfecting Water Mains.
- Q. CISPI 301 - Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Hubless Cast Iron Sanitary Systems.
- R. CISPI 310 - Joints for Hubless Cast Iron Sanitary Systems.
- S. FM 1680 - Couplings Used in Hubless Cast Iron Systems.
- T. NFPA 54 - National Fuel Gas Code.
- U. NSF - National Sanitation Foundation

#### **1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store valves in shipping containers with labeling in place.

#### **1.05 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Reference Coordination Drawings article in Section 220500 for required plumbing systems electronic CAD drawings to be provided to Coordinating Contractor for inclusion into composite coordination drawings.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 CAST IRON PIPE**

- A. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets:
  - 1. Pipe: Standard weight no-hub cast iron soil pipe, bituminous corrosion protective coating inside and outside, CISPI 301 or ASTM A888.
  - 2. Design Pressure: Gravity Maximum Design Temperature: 180°F°
  - 3. Joints: ASTM C1540, FM 1680, and ASTM C-564.
    - a. Super Duty, Shielded Stainless Steel Couplings: Neoprene sleeve gasket, 0.015" thick 304 stainless steel shield, stainless steel 3/8" screw type clamps, minimum of four clamps for 1-1/2" to 4" and six clamps for 5" and larger pipe sizes. Clamps shall be tightened to minimum 80 inch pounds or as manufacturer requires. Husky SD-4000 or equal.

- b. Heavy Duty, Shielded Stainless Steel Couplings: Neoprene sleeve gasket, 0.010" thick 304 stainless steel shield, stainless steel 5/16" screw type clamps, minimum of four clamps for 1-1/2" to 4" and six clamps for 5" and larger pipe sizes. Clamps shall be tightened to minimum 80 inch pounds or as manufacturer requires. Husky HD-2000 or equal.
- 4. Restraints: Install pipe and fittings per the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute's Designation 310. Restrain pipe and fittings using an engineered and tested product manufactured for restraining no-hub cast iron soil pipe. Install per manufacturer's recommendations.
- 5. Adapters: Transition from cast iron soil pipe to other pipe materials with manufactured adapters specifically for the application. Adapter must meet the same requirements as the joints listed above. ASTM C1460. Sticker identifying transition fitting application must be visible to view. For example, the most commonly used transition fitting from cast iron no-hub to PVC would be the Husky SD-4200 series.

## **2.02 COPPER PIPE**

### **A. Copper Pipe; Type L; Solder Joints:**

- 1. Pipe: Type L hard drawn seamless copper tube, ASTM B88.
- 2. Design Pressure: 175 psi; Maximum Design Temperature: 200°F°.
- 3. Joints: Solder with 100% lead-free solder and flux, ASTM B32.
- 4. Fittings: Wrought copper solder joint, ANSI B16.22.

### **B. Copper Pipe; Type L; Mechanical Press Connection:**

- 1. Pipe: Type L hard drawn seamless copper tube, ASTM B88.
- 2. Design Pressure: 175 psi; Maximum Design Temperature: 200°F°.
- 3. Joints: Mechanical press connection.
- 4. Fittings: Copper, ANSI B-16.22, with embedded EPDM O-ring / sealing element engineered for this application, NSF-61.
- 5. Fitting Identification: Press ends shall provide the ability to identify an unpressed fitting from the floor prior to testing. The function of this feature is to provide the installer quick and easy identification of connections that have not been pressed prior to putting the system into operation.
- 6. Special Requirements: Mechanical press fitting manufacturer shall provide Contractor training prior to installation.
- 7. Manufacturers:
  - a. Viega ProPress
  - b. Apollo Press, a division of Aalberts - IPS
  - c. NIBCO Press System Fittings and Valves
  - d. Merit Brass

e. Mueller Streamline PRS

C. Copper Pipe; Type K; Solder Joints:

1. Pipe: Type K annealed copper tube, ASTM B88.
2. Design Pressure: 150 psi. Maximum Design Temperature: 200°F°.
3. Joints: Solder with 100% lead-free solder and flux ASTM B32.
4. Fittings: Wrought copper solder joint, ANSI B16.22.
- 5.

D. Copper Pipe; Type K; Mechanical Press Connection:

1. Pipe: Type K annealed copper tube, ASTM B88.
2. Design Pressure: 150 psi. Maximum Design Temperature: 200°F°.
3. Joints: Mechanical press connection.
4. Fittings: Copper, ANSI B-16.22, with embedded EPDM O-ring, NSF-61 / sealing element engineered for this application.
5. Fitting Identification: Press ends shall provide the ability to identify an unpressed fitting from the floor prior to testing. The function of this feature is to provide the installer quick and easy identification of connections that have not been pressed prior to putting the system into operation.
6. Special Requirements: Mechanical press fitting manufacturer shall provide contractor training prior to installation.
7. Manufacturers:
  - a. Viega ProPress
  - b. Apollo Press, a division of Aalberts - IPS
  - c. NIBCO Press System Fittings and Valves
  - d. Merit Brass
  - e. Mueller Streamline PRS.

E. Copper Pipe: Type DWV; Solder Joints:

1. Pipe: Type DWV hard temper seamless copper drainage tube, ASTM B306.
2. Design Pressure: Gravity Maximum Design Temperature: 180°F°
3. Joints: Solder with 100% lead-free solder and flux, ASTM B32.
4. Fittings: Cast brass solder joint drainage type, ANSI B16.23 or wrought copper solder joint drainage type, ANSI B16.29.

F. Copper Pipe: Type M; Solder Joints:



1. Pipe: Type M hard temper seamless copper drainage tube, ASTM B306.
2. Design Pressure: Gravity Maximum Design Temperature: 180°F°
3. Joints: Solder with 100% lead-free solder and flux, ASTM B32.
4. Fittings: Cast brass solder joint drainage type, ANSI B16.23 or wrought copper solder joint drainage type, ANSI B16.29.

## 2.03 VALVES

### A. Shutoff Valves:

1. For pipe systems where mechanical press connections are allowed, shutoff valves with mechanical press connections are acceptable subject to the requirements in the paragraphs below.
2. Butterfly Valves:
  - a. BF-1:
    - 1) 2-1/2" thru 6", 175 psi CWP, elastomers rated for 20°F° to 250°F° at 125 psig, fully lugged end, ductile or cast iron body (not in contact with fluid); bronze, aluminum-bronze or stainless steel disc; EPDM seat, stainless steel stem, lead free NSF-372, extended neck, 175 psi bubble-tight, bi-directional dead-end shutoff without backing flange or nuts and with cap screws extending to centerline of valve body (for pipe extension without draining system), 10 position locking operator up to 6" size. Cv of at least 1580 in 6" size.
    - 2) Manufacturers:
      - a) Victaulic #300
      - b) Apollo Valves; a division of Aalberts-IPS LD141
      - c) Center Line Series 200
      - d) Keystone #222
      - e) Watts #DBF-03-121-1P
      - f) NIBCO N200 Series or LD2000 Series
      - g) Milwaukee CL series
      - h) Hammond 5200 series
      - i) Jomar 600-\_\_DSEL series
      - j) Metraflex #Butterfly Valve, DINC DISK
    - 3) Manufacturers:
      - a) Victaulic #3
      - b) Apollo Valves; a division of Aalberts-IPS LD141
      - c) Center Line Series 200

- d) Keystone #222
  - e) Watts #DBF-03-121-1G
  - f) NIBCO N200 Series or LD2000 Series
  - g) Milwaukee CL series
  - h) Hammond 5200 series
  - i) Jomar 600-\_\_DSEG series
  - j) Metraflex #Butterfly Valve, DINC DISK
- 4) Mechanically coupled grooved end valves are acceptable if they have the features listed above.
- a) Cast brass body to UNS C87850. (Alloy code shall be cast or stamped into the valve body.) Aluminum bronze disc to UNS C95500, with pressure responsive elastomer seat. Stem shall be offset from the disc centerline to provide complete 360-degree circumferential seating. Victaulic #608, Shurjoint; a division of Aalberts-IPS #SJ-C300.
  - b) Grooved end stainless steel body and disc, Grade CF8M, conforming to ASTM A351, with blow-out proof 17-4PH stainless steel stems to ASTM A564. Disc shall be connected to the stem without the use of fasteners or pins, and be offset from the stem centerline to provide a full 360-degree continuous contact with the seating surface when closed. Seat shall be pressure responsive, Grade P fluoroelastomer. Victaulic Series 861 Vic-300 MasterSeal Valve.
3. Ball Valves:
- a. BA-1: 3" and under, 150 psi saturated steam, 600 psi CWP, full port, threaded or solder ends (acceptable only if rated for soldering in line with 470°F° melting point of lead-free solder), stainless steel ball and trim, Teflon seats and seals.
    - 1) Body: Lead free NSF-372, two-piece bronze of a copper alloy containing less than 15% zinc. Apollo Valves; a division of Aalberts-IPS #77CLF140/240 Series, Milwaukee #UPBA450S, Watts #LFB6080G2-SS, NIBCO #T-585-66-LF, Jomar T-200CSSG.
    - 2) Body: Dezincification resistant brass alloy, lead free NSF-372. Jomar T-100CSSG.
    - 3) Provide solid extended shaft for all insulated piping. (For example, Apollo adds option -04 Stem Extension, NIBCO Nib-Seal Handle-NS, and Jomar modifies valve part number with -IH for insulated handle.)
    - 4) Provide lock out trim for all valves opening to atmosphere installed in domestic water piping over 120°F°, heating water piping over 120°F°, steam, condensate, boiler feed water piping, and gasoline/kerosene piping, and as indicated on the drawings. Solid extended shaft is not required on valves with lockout trim. (For example, Jomar and NIBCO modify valve part number with -LH for locking handle.)

- b. BA-11: 2" and under, 300 psig water, standard port, screwed or compression. Bronze body and ball of a copper alloy containing less than 15% zinc, chrome plated, Teflon coated, or stainless steel ball. Teflon or Buna-N seats, lead free NSF-372. One piece "T" style cap and stem. A.Y. McDonald 6100 Series, Mueller 300 Series.

## 2.04 STRAINERS

- A. For pipe systems where mechanical press connections are allowed, strainers with mechanical press connections are acceptable subject to the requirements in the paragraphs below.
- B. ST-1: Threaded Ends, 4" and under, lead free bronze or 304 stainless steel body, threaded connections, threaded removable cover, 0.045" 304 stainless steel perforated screen, 125 psi S @ 350°F, 200 psi CWP @ 150°F. Apollo Valves, a division of Aalberts-IPS YB-LF (59LF), Metraflex SSFT, Mueller / Watts LF351, Watts LF777, Jomar T-651G, Zurn SXL.

## 2.05 CHECK VALVES

- A. For pipe systems where mechanical press connections are allowed, check valves with mechanical press connections are acceptable subject to the requirements in the paragraphs below.
- B. CK-1: Threaded Ends, 2" and under, 125 psi steam @ 406°F°, 200 psi CWP @ 150°F°, threaded connection, lead free bronze body with brass or bronze disc, horizontal swing. Hammond #UP904, Milwaukee #UP509, NIBCO T-413-Y-LF, Jomar T-511G, Apollo Valves, a division of Aalberts-IPS #161T-LF.

## 2.06 CONNECTIONS BETWEEN DISSIMILAR METALS

- A. Connections between dissimilar metals shall be insulating dielectric types that provide a water gap between the connected metals, and that either allow no metal path for electron transfer or that provide a wide water gap lined with a non-conductive material to impede electron transfer through the water path.
- B. Joints shall be rated for the temperature, pressure, and other characteristics of the service in which they are used, including testing procedure.
- C. Aluminum, iron, steel, brass, copper, bronze, galvanized steel and stainless steel are commonly used and require isolation from each other with the following exceptions:
  - 1. Iron and steel connected to each other.
  - 2. Brass, copper, and bronze connected to each other.
  - 3. Brass or bronze valves and specialties connected in closed systems with steel, iron, or stainless steel on both sides of the brass or bronze valves and specialties. Where two or more brass or bronze items occur together, they shall be connected with brass nipples. Brass or bronze valves and specialties cannot be used as a dielectric separation between pipe materials.
- D. Dielectric protection is required at connections to equipment of a material different than the piping.
- E. Screwed and/or Grooved Joints (acceptable up to 4" size):

1. Dielectric waterway rated for 300 psi CWP and 225°F°.
2. Optional: Copper-silicon casting conforming to UNS C87850 with grooved and/or threaded ends.
3. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service.
4. Manufacturers:
  - a. Elster Group ClearFlow fittings
  - b. Victaulic Series 647
  - c. Grinnell Series 407
  - d. Matco-Norca

F. Flanged Joints (any size):

1. Use 1/8" minimum thickness, non-conductive, full-face gaskets.
2. Employ one-piece molded sleeve-washer combinations to break the electrical path through the bolts.
3. Sleeve-washers are required on one side only, with sleeves minimum 1/32" thick and washers minimum 1/8" thick.
4. Install steel washers on both sides of flanges to prevent damage to the sleeve-washer.
5. Separate sleeves and washers may be used only if the sleeves are manufactured to exact lengths and installed carefully so the sleeves must extend partially past each steel washer when tightened.
6. Manufacturers:
  - a. EPCO
  - b. Central Plastics
  - c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator
  - d. F. H. Maloney
  - e. Calpico

G. Grooved Mechanical Transition Couplings (2" thru 6"):

1. Grooved mechanical coupling rated for 300 psi CWP and 180°F. Consisting of two ductile iron housings, Grade P fluoroelastomer gasket, and bolts and hex nuts zinc electroplated, ASTM B-633.
2. Provides a single coupling connection for grooved end stainless steel pipe to grooved end copper tubing of the same nominal size.
3. UL classified in accordance with ANSI / NSF-61 for potable water service.
4. For use only on Types 304 or 316 Schedules 10S and 40S stainless steel pipe, and ASTM B88 Types K, L and M and ASTM B306 Type DWV copper tubing. Victaulic Style 644.

---

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Install all products per manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- C. Remove scale and dirt, on inside and outside, before assembly.
- D. Remove all scale, rust, dirt, oils, stickers and thoroughly clean exterior of all bare metal exposed piping, hangers, and accessories in preparation to be painted.
- E. Connect to equipment with flanges or unions. Unions or flanges for servicing and disconnect are not required in installations using grooved joint couplings.
- F. Use only piping materials rated for the maximum temperature of the application, e.g., do not use PVC for dishwasher drainage or piping that receives boiler blowdown.
- G. Roof Penetration (Vent) Flashing:
  - 1. Built-up Roofing: Flash vents with 3# seamless sheet lead of sufficient size to extend 15" into roofing felts for built-up roofs.
  - 2. Membrane, Metal or Shingled Roofs: Flash vents with premolded pipe flashing cones for single-ply membrane roofs, metal roofs, or shingled roofs.
- H. Existing building sewers or building drains which are shown on the documents to be reused shall be inspected and recorded by closed circuit television for their condition. Report findings back to the Architect, Engineer, and Owner before proceeding with work so any necessary rework can take place if needed.

### **3.02 SYSTEM, PIPING AND VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Cold Water, Hot Water - Potable (Above Ground):
  - 1. Copper Pipe; Type L; Solder Joints: All Sizes
  - 2. Copper Pipe; Type L; Mechanical Press Connection: 4" and Under
  - 3. Shutoff Valves: BF-1, BA-1
  - 4. Check Valves: CK-1, CK-2, CK-3
  - 5. Strainers: ST-1, ST-2, ST-3
- B. Cold Water, Hot Water - Potable (Underground):
  - 1. Copper Pipe; Type K; Solder Joints: All Sizes
  - 2. Copper Pipe; Type K; Mechanical Press Connection: 4" and Under
- C. Sanitary Waste and Vent, Gravity (Above Ground):
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets: 1-1/2" to 15" Copper Pipe: Type DWV; Solder Joints: 1-1/4" to 4"

- D. Sanitary Indirect Drainage (Above Ground):
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets: 1-1/2" to 15" Copper Pipe: Type DWV; Solder Joints: 1-1/4" to 4"
- E. Storm Drainage, Clear Water Waste and Vent, Gravity (Above Ground):
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets: 1-1/2" to 15"
  - 2. Copper Pipe: Type DWV; Solder Joints: 1-1/4" to 4"
- F. Sanitary Waste and Vent, Gravity (Underground - Inside Building):
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets: 1-1/2" to 15"
- G. Storm Drainage, Clear Water Waste and Vent, Gravity (Underground - Inside Building):
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets: 1-1/2" to 15"
- H. Sanitary Waste and Vent, Gravity (Underground - Outside Building):
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets: 1-1/2" to 15"
- I. Storm Drainage, Gravity (Underground - Outside Building):
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets: 1-1/2" to 15"
- J. Condensate/Equipment Drainage:
  - 1. Cast Iron; Standard Weight; Hub and Spigot Joints: All Sizes
  - 2. Copper Pipe: Type DWV; Solder Joints: 1-1/4" to 4"

### **3.03 TESTING PIPING**

- A. **Sanitary Drainage, Sanitary Vent, Storm Drainage:**
  - 1. Test all piping with water to prove tight.
  - 2. Test piping before insulation is applied.
  - 3. Hydrostatically test all soil, waste, and vent piping inside of building with 10 feet head of water for 15 minutes. Inspect before fixtures are connected. If leaks appear, repair them and repeat the test.
  - 4. Hydrostatically test interior downspouts with 10 feet head of water for 15 minutes with no leaks.
  - 5. A smoke/air test at the same pressure may be used in lieu of the hydrostatic water test. Exception: Smoke/air test shall not be performed on plastic piping.
  - 6. Test force mains with water at 105% of the operating pump discharge pressure for 15 minutes.

7. Test pressures stated above shall be as listed or as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, whichever is most stringent.
- B. Hot Water - Potable, Cold Water - Potable:
1. Test pipes underground or in chases and walls before piping is concealed.
  2. Test all pipes before the insulation is applied. If insulation is applied before the pipe is tested and a leak develops which ruins the insulation, replace damaged insulation.
  3. Test the pipe with 100 psig water pressure or equal inert gas such as nitrogen. Exception: Inert gas test shall not be used to test plastic piping.
  4. Hold test pressure for at least 2 hours.
  5. Test to be witnessed by the Architect/Engineer's representative, if requested by the Architect/Engineer.
- C. All Other Piping:
1. Test piping at 150% of normal operating pressure.
  2. Piping shall hold this pressure for one hour with no drop in pressure.
  3. Test piping using water, nitrogen, or air as compatible with the final service of the pipe. Do not use combustible fluids.
  4. Drain and clean all piping after testing is complete.

### **3.04 CLEANING PIPING**

- A. Assembly:
1. Before assembling pipe systems, remove all loose dirt, scale, oil and other foreign matter on internal or external surfaces by means consistent with good piping practice subject to approval of the Architect/Engineer's representative. Blow chips and burrs from machinery or thread cutting operation out of pipe before assembly. Wipe cutting oil from internal and external surfaces.
  2. During fabrication and assembly, remove slag and weld spatter from both internal and external joints by peening, chipping and wire brushing.
  3. Notify the Architect/Engineer's representative before starting any post erection cleaning in sufficient time to allow witnessing the operation. Consult with and obtain approval from the Architect/Engineer's representative regarding specific procedures and scheduling. Dispose of cleaning and flushing fluids properly.
  4. Prior to blowing or flushing erected piping systems, disconnect all instrumentation and equipment, open wide all valves, and be certain all strainer screens are in place.
- B. All Water Piping:
1. Flush all piping using faucets, flush valves, etc. until the flow is clean.
  2. After flushing, thoroughly clean all inlet strainers, aerators, and other such devices.

3. If necessary, remove valves to clean out all foreign material.

### **3.05 INSTALLATION**

#### **A. General Installation Requirements:**

1. Provide dielectric connections between dissimilar metals.
2. Route piping in orderly manner and maintain gradient. Install to conserve building space.
3. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
4. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or equipment.
5. Slope water piping and arrange to drain at low points.
6. Install bell and spigot piping with bells upstream.
7. Where pipe supports are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welds.
8. Seal pipes passing through exterior walls with a wall seal per Section 220529. Provide Schedule 40 galvanized sleeve at least 2 pipe sizes larger than the pipe.
9. All non-potable outlets shall be clearly marked with a permanently affixed laminated sign with 3/8" high lettering saying "Non-Potable Water Not for Human Consumption." Sign shall have black lettering on a yellow background.
10. All vertical pipe drops to sinks or other equipment installed below the ceiling shall be routed within a wall cavity, unless specifically noted otherwise to be surface mounted. For renovation projects, this Contractor is responsible for opening and patching existing walls for installation of piping. Wall patching shall match existing condition.

#### **B. Installation Requirements in Electrical Rooms:**

1. Do not install piping or other equipment above electrical switchboards or panelboards. This includes a dedicated space extending 25 feet from the floor to the structural ceiling with width and depth equal to the equipment.

#### **C. Valves/Fittings and Accessories:**

1. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
2. Provide access doors for concealed valves and fittings.
3. Install valve stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.
4. Provide one plug valve wrench for every ten plug valves 2" and smaller, minimum of one. Provide each plug valve 2-1/2" and larger with a wrench with set screw.
5. Install corrugated, stainless steel tubing system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Include striker plates to protect tubing from puncture where tubing is restrained and cannot move.

#### **D. Underground Piping:**



1. Install buried water piping outside the building with at least 5 feet of cover. Refer to Section 220500 for Excavation, Fill, Backfill and Compaction requirements
2. Install buried borosilicate glass pipe with the protective polystyrene covering intact. Lay the pipe on bedding and backfill per manufacturer instructions.
3. Install thrust blocking and restraints on all underground fire protection service piping per NFPA 24 and as shown on drawings.
4. Install underground, sleeved, corrugated, stainless steel tubing system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Extend vent from sleeve to exterior of building and terminate with screened elbow.
5. Direct buried, uninsulated steel pipe shall have a factory applied external protective coating consisting of two coats with an intermediate layer of 18 mil fibrous glass mat. Coating thickness shall total not less than 3/32". The outer coating shall be further protected by a wrapping of heavy Kraft paper. This external protection shall extend and be exposed for a minimum of 1 foot beyond the buried or concealed portion of the pipe.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) Pipe Line Service Co., Franklin Park, Illinois
    - 2) Lithcote Corp., Melrose Park, Illinois
6. As an option, the Contractor may provide factory applied protective coatings consisting of a polyethylene plastic film bonded to the pipe surface by a hot applied thermo-plastic adhesive.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) Republic Steel Corp. "X-Tru-Coat"
7. Exercise care in handling, storing and laying pipe to avoid damaging factory applied coatings. If any damage occurs, repair the coating to a condition equal to the original.
8. Field application of protective coatings to joints, fittings and to any damaged factory applied coatings shall be similar to factory applied coatings specified above and shall be done in strict accordance with recommendations of the supplier of pipe coatings.
9. After completion of the fabrication, laying and field coating of the joints and fittings, but prior to backfilling, inspect the entire line in the presence of the Architect/Engineer's representative with an electronic holiday detector. Any defects in the protective coatings shall be repaired in accordance with requirements for original coatings.
10. Coat flange bolts and nuts in pits and below ground at the time of installation with a corrosion protective coating.

E. Sanitary and Storm Piping:

1. Install all sanitary and storm piping inside the building with a slope as shown on the drawings.
2. Install horizontal offset at all connections to roof drains to allow for pipe expansion.
3. Slope sanitary and storm piping outside the building to meet invert elevations shown on drawings and to maintain a minimum velocity of 2 feet per second.

4. Sway Bracing: Where horizontal sanitary and/or storm pipes 4 inches and larger change flow direction greater than 45°, rigid bracing or thrust restraints shall be installed to resist movement of the upstream pipe in the direction of pipe flow. The rigid bracing or thrust restraint shall be connected to structure. A change of flow direction from horizontal into a vertical pipe does not require the upstream pipe to be braced.
5. All sanitary and storm piping shall have at least 48 of cover when leaving the building.
6. Starter fittings with internal baffles are not permitted.

### **3.06 PIPE ERECTION AND LAYING**

- A. Carefully inspect all pipe, fittings, valves, equipment and accessories before installation. Any items that are unsuitable, cracked or otherwise defective shall be removed from the job immediately.
- B. All pipe, fittings, valves, equipment and accessories shall have factory applied markings, stampings, or nameplates with sufficient data to determine their conformance with specified requirements.
- C. Exercise care at every stage of storage, handling, laying and erecting to prevent entry of foreign matter into piping, fittings, valves, equipment and accessories. Do not install any item that is not clean.
- D. Until system is fully operational, all openings in piping and equipment shall be kept closed except when actual work is being performed on that item or system. Closures shall be plugs, caps, blind flanges or other items specifically designed and intended for this purpose.
- E. Run pipes straight and true, parallel to building lines with minimum use of offsets and couplings. Provide only offsets required to provide needed headroom or clearance and to provide needed flexibility in pipe lines.
- F. Make changes in direction of pipes only with fittings or pipe bends. Changes in size only with fittings. Do not use miter fittings, face or flush bushings, or street elbows. All fittings shall be of the long radius type, unless otherwise shown on the drawings or specified.
- G. Provide flanges or unions at all final connections to equipment, traps and valves.
- H. Arrange piping and connections so equipment served may be totally removed without disturbing piping beyond final connections and associated shutoff valves.
- I. Use full and double lengths of pipe wherever possible.
- J. Unless otherwise indicated, install all piping, including shutoff valves and strainers, to coils, pumps and other equipment at line size with reduction in size being made only at control valve or equipment.
- K. Cut all pipe to exact measurement and install without springing or forcing except in the case of expansion loops where cold springing is indicated on the drawings.
- L. Underground pipe shall be laid in dry trenches maintained free of accumulated water. Refer to Section 220500 for Excavation, Fill, Backfill and Compaction requirements.
- M. Unless otherwise indicated, branch take-offs shall be from top of mains or headers at either a 45° or 90° angle from the horizontal plane for air lines, and from top, bottom or side for liquids.

---

### 3.07 DRAINING AND VENTING

- A. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, all horizontal water lines, including branches, shall pitch 1" in 40 feet to low points for complete drainage, removal of condensate and venting.
- B. Maintain accurate grade where pipes pitch or slope for venting and drainage. No pipes shall have pockets due to changes in elevation.
- C. Provide drain valves at all low points of water piping systems for complete or sectionalized draining.
- D. Use eccentric reducing fittings on horizontal runs when changing size of pipes for proper drainage and venting. Install gravity drain pipes with bottom of pipe and eccentric reducers in a continuous line; all other liquid lines with top of pipe and eccentric reducers in a continuous line.
- E. Provide air vents at high points and wherever else required to eliminate air in all water piping systems.
- F. Install air vents in accessible locations. If necessary to trap and vent air in a remote location, install an 1/8" pipe from the tapping location to an accessible location and terminate with a venting device.
- G. All vent and drain piping shall be of same materials and construction for the service involved.

### 3.08 PLUMBING VENTS

- A. Vent as shown on the drawings and in accordance with all codes having jurisdiction.
- B. Extend the high side of the soil and waste stacks at least 12" above roof.
- C. Flash pipes at the roof with 3# lead sheet. Extend flashing under roofing 15" in all directions from pipe to be flashed. Extend a lead collar up on the outside of pipe to be flashed and extend 1" beyond the top of the pipe. The 1" excess length of collar shall be turned down into the top of the pipe where it shall fit tight to the inside of the pipe.
- D. Flash pipes at roof with premolded EPDM pipe flashing cones adhered to roof membrane by General Contractor. Secure top of cone with stainless steel clamp and seal watertight.
- E. Increase vent pipes through the roof two pipe sizes with long increasers located at least 12" below the roof.
- F. In no case shall the vent through the roof be less than 4" in diameter.
- G. Vent pipes through the roof shall be located a minimum of from any air intake opening on the roof.

### 3.09 BRANCH CONNECTIONS

- A. For domestic water and vent systems only, make branch connections with standard tee or cross fittings of the type required for the service.
- B. Reducers are generally not shown. Where pipe sizes change at tee, the tee shall be the size of the largest pipe shown connecting to it.
- C. Do not use double wye or double combination wye and eighth bend DWV fittings in horizontal piping.

- D. Branch connections from the headers and mains may be mechanically formed using an extraction device. The branch piping connection shall be brazed connection for the following services only:
  - 1. Domestic water piping above ground.
- E. Further limit use of mechanically formed fittings as follows:
  - 1. Must have at least same pressure rating as the main.
  - 2. Main must be Type K or L copper tubing.
  - 3. Permanent marking shall indicate insertion depth and orientation.
  - 4. Branch pipe shall conform to the inner curve of the piping main.
  - 5. Main must be 1" or larger.
  - 6. Branch must be 3/4" or larger.
- F. Forged weld-on fittings are limited as follows:
  - 1. Must have at least same pressure rating as the main.
  - 2. Main must be 2-1/2" or larger.
  - 3. Branch line is at least two pipe sizes under main size.

### **3.010 JOINING OF PIPE**

- A. Solder Joints (Copper Pipe):
  - 1. Make up joints with 100% lead-free solder, ASTM B32. Cut tubing so ends are perfectly square and remove all burrs inside and outside. Thoroughly clean sockets of fittings and ends of tubing to remove all oxide, dirt and grease just prior to soldering. Apply flux evenly, but sparingly, over all surfaces to be joined. Heat joints uniformly so solder will flow to all mated surfaces. Wipe excess solder, leaving a uniform fillet around cup of fitting.
  - 2. Flux shall be non-acid type.
  - 3. Solder end valves may be installed directly in the piping system if the entire valve is suitable for use with 470°F° melting point solder. Remove discs and seals during soldering if they are not suitable for 470°F°.
- B. Mechanical Press Connection (Copper and Stainless Steel Pipe):
  - 1. Copper press fitting shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 2. Fully insert tubing into the fitting and mark tubing.
  - 3. Prior to making connection, the fitting alignment shall be checked against the mark made on the tube to ensure the tubing is fully engaged in the fitting.
  - 4. Joint shall be pressed with a tool approved by the manufacturer.

5. Installers shall be trained by manufacturer personnel or representative. Provide documentation upon request.
- C. No-Hub Sleeve Gaskets (No-Hub) (Cast Iron Pipe):
1. Gasket shall be heavy weight class, conforming to ASTM C564.
  2. The gasket shall have an internal center stop.
  3. The gasket shall be covered by a stainless steel band secured with a minimum of four stainless steel bands per fitting/joint.
  4. Sleeve gaskets shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
- D. Couplings: Assemblies with combinations of clamps, gaskets, sleeves, and threaded or flanged parts; compatible with piping and system liquid; and made by piping manufacturer for joining system piping.
- E. Adapters and Transition Fittings: Assemblies with combinations of clamps, couplings, adapters, gaskets, and threaded or flanged parts; compatible with piping and system liquid; and made for joining different piping materials.
- F. Flanges: Assemblies of companion flanges and gaskets complying with ASME B16.21 and compatible with system liquid, and bolts and nuts.

### **3.011 DISINFECTION OF DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SYSTEM**

- A. Disinfection of the domestic water piping shall be completed within three (3) weeks prior to building occupancy. Contractor is responsible for disinfecting water piping if used by workers during construction; disinfection during construction does not eliminate the requirement for final disinfection prior to occupancy. Flushing of piping shall be completed within two (2) weeks prior to building occupancy.
- B. Provide necessary connections at the start of individual sections of mains for adding chlorine.
- C. Before starting work, verify system is complete, flushed and clean.
- D. Follow the disinfection of potable water procedure outlined in this project's applicable plumbing code. For example: IPC 610.1, UPC 609.10, CPC 609.9, and Illinois 890.1180. Where local codes do not outline a disinfection procedure, follow the International Plumbing Code procedure 610.1.
- E. Bleed water from all outlets to ensure chlorine distribution throughout the entire domestic water system.
- F. Take water samples, no sooner than 24 hours after flushing, from 2% of outlets and from water entry. Obtain, analyze, and test samples in accordance with AWWA C651, Section 5 - Verification.

### **3.012 SERVICE CONNECTIONS**

- A. Provide new sanitary and/or storm sewer services. Before commencing work check invert elevations needed for sewer connections, confirm inverts and verify these can be properly connected with slope for drainage and cover to avoid freezing.

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---

- B. Provide new water service with water meter with bypass valves. Provide sleeve in wall for service main per Section 220529.

**END OF SECTION 221000**

**SECTION 221023**  
**NATURAL GAS PIPING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Pipe and Pipe Fittings.
- B. Valves.
- C. Natural Gas Piping System.

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Valves: Manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body. Remanufactured valves are not acceptable.
- B. Welding Materials, Procedures, and Operators: Conform to ASME Section 9, ANSI/AWS D1.1, and applicable state labor regulations.
- C. Welders Certification: In accordance with ANSI/ASME Sec 9 or ANSI/AWS D1.1.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code.
- B. ANSI AGA-LC1 - Standards for Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing.
- C. ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11 - Rubber Gasket Joints for Ductile Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings.
- D. ASME - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code - Section 9.
- E. ASME B1.20.1 - Pipe Threads, General Purpose.
- F. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings Class 150 and 300.
- G. ASME B16.5 - Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.
- H. ASME B16.9 - Factory-Made Wrought Steel Butt Welding Fittings.
- I. ASME B16.11 - Forged Steel Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded.
- J. ASME B16.21 - Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipes Flanges.
- K. ASME B16.39 - Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions.
- L. ASME B18.2.1 - Square and Hex Bolts and Screws, Inch Series.
- M. ASME B18.2.2 - Square and Hex Nuts, Inch Series.
- N. ASTM A53 - Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped Zinc Coated, Welded and Seamless.
- O. ASTM A105 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications.

- P. ASTM A181 - Forgings, Carbon Steel for General Purpose Piping.
- Q. ASTM A197 - Standard Specification for Cupola Malleable Iron.
- R. ASTM A234 - Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service.
- S. ASTM A240 - Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications.
- T. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength.
- U. ASTM D2513 - Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing and Fittings.
- V. ASTM D2683 - Socket-Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-Controlled Polyethylene Pipe.
- W. ASTM D2774 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pressure Piping.
- X. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- Y. NFPA 54 - National Fuel Gas Code.

#### **1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store and protect piping to prevent entrance of foreign matter into pipe and to prevent exterior corrosion.
- B. Deliver and store valves in shipping containers with labeling in place.

#### **1.05 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Reference Coordination Drawings article in Section 23 05 00 for the required natural gas piping system electronic CAD drawings to be provided to Coordinating Contractor for inclusion into composite coordination drawings.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 NATURAL GAS (0 to 125 PSI)**

- A. Piping - 2" and Under:
  - 1. Pipe: Standard weight black steel, threaded and coupled, ASTM A53.
  - 2. Joints: Screwed. (NOTE: For below ground, all sizes to have welded joints.)
  - 3. Fittings: 150# steam - 300# CWP, black malleable iron, banded, ASTM A197, ANSI B16.3.
  - 4. Unions: 250# - 500# CWP, black malleable iron, ANSI B16.39, ground joint with brass seat.
- B. Piping - 4" and Under:



1. Pipe: Standard weight black steel, plain end sanded smooth in preparation for press connection, ASTM A53.
  2. Joints: Mechanical press connection.
  3. Fittings, Valves and Unions: ASTM A106 Grade A steel with zinc-nickel coating to reduce corrosion, with embedded HNBR sealing element. ANSI LC 4 approved.
  4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Apollo, a division of Aalberts-IPS (Powerpress)
    - b. Viega (MegaPressG)
    - c. NIBCO (BenchPressG)
- C. Shutoff Valves/Throttling Valves:
1. For pipe systems where mechanical press connections are allowed, shutoff valves with mechanical press connections are acceptable subject to the requirements in the paragraphs below.
  2. BA-13: 2" and under, threaded 600 psi CWP; UL listed for 250# LP, flammable liquid, heating oil, natural and manufactured gases, 150 psi steam, bronze body and chrome plated brass ball, Teflon seats and packing.
    - a. Body: Bronze.
      - 1) Manufacturers:
        - a) Apollo #80-100
        - b) Nibco #T580-70-UL or #T585-70-UL
    - b. Body: Dezincification resistant brass alloy. Jomar T-100NE.
  3. PL-1: 2" and under, 125# steam @ 450°F°, 175# CWP @ 180°F°, cast iron body, screwed, full port.
    - a. Manufacturers:
      - 1) Walworth #1700
      - 2) DeZurik #425, S-RS49

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends, remove burrs, bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.

- C. Remove all scale, rust, dirt, oils, stickers and thoroughly clean exterior of all bare metal exposed piping, hangers, and accessories in preparation to be painted.
- D. Connect to all equipment with flanges or unions.
- E. After completion, fill, clean, and treat systems. Refer to Section 232500 for treatment.

### **3.02 TESTING PIPING**

- A. Low Pressure - Up to 1 psi:
  - 1. Test piping with 20 psi air pressure. System must hold this pressure without adding air for two hours.
- B. A non-combustible odorant, such as oil of wintergreen, may be added to help locate leaks.

### **3.03 CLEANING PIPING**

- A. Assembly:
  - 1. Prior to assembly of pipe and piping components, remove all loose dirt, scale, oil and other foreign matter on internal or external surfaces by means consistent with good piping practice subject to approval of the Architect/Engineer. Blow chips and burrs out of pipe before assembly. Wipe cutting oil from internal and external surfaces.
  - 2. During fabrication and assembly, remove slag and weld spatter from both internal and external joints by peening, chipping and wire brushing to the degree consistent with good piping practices.
  - 3. Notify the Architect/Engineer prior to starting any post erection cleaning operation in time to allow witnessing the operation. Properly dispose of cleaning and flushing fluids.
  - 4. Prior to blowing or flushing erected piping systems, disconnect all instrumentation and equipment, open wide all valves, control valves, and balance valves, and verify all strainer screens are in place.

### **3.04 INSTALLATION**

- A. Route piping in orderly manner, straight, plumb, with consistent pitch, parallel to building structure, with minimum use of offsets and couplings. Provide only offsets required for needed headroom or clearance and needed flexibility in pipe system.
- B. Install piping to conserve building space, and not interfere with other work.
- C. Do not install piping or other equipment above electrical switchboards or panelboards. This includes a dedicated space extending 25 feet from the floor to the structural ceiling with width and depth equal to the equipment.
- D. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- E. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- F. Install thrust blocking and restraints on all buried piping at elbows and other changes in pipe direction.

- G. Provide chain operators for all valves over 2" size that are over 10'-0" above finished floor. Extend to 7'-0" above finished floor.
- H. Provide valve position indicator on all valves 10'-0" or greater above finish floor and not located above ceiling.
- I. Provide clearance for access to valves and fittings.
- J. Provide access doors where valves are not exposed.
- K. Prepare pipe, fittings, supports, and accessories for finish painting.
- L. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.
- M. Provide shutoff valves and flanges or unions at all connections to equipment, traps, and items that require servicing.
- N. Provide shutoff valves to isolate part of systems and vertical risers.
- O. Provide shutoff valves to boilers and water heaters in readily accessible location, maximum 6 feet above finished floor, within 6 feet of boiler connection per ASME CSD-1.
- P. Arrange piping and piping connections so equipment may be serviced or totally removed without disturbing piping beyond final connections and associated shutoff valves.
- Q. Reducers are generally not shown. Where pipe sizes are not shown, the larger size in either direction shall continue through the fitting nearest to the indication of a smaller pipe size.
- R. Lay all underground piping in trenches. Provide and operate pumping equipment to keep trenches free of water.
- S. Seal pipes passing through exterior walls with a wall seal per Section 230529. Provide Schedule 40 galvanized sleeve at least 2 pipe sizes larger than the pipe.
- T. Refer to Section 230500 for Excavation, Fill, Backfill and Compaction requirements.
- U. Install corrugated, stainless steel tubing system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Include striker plates to protect tubing from puncture where tubing is restrained and cannot move.

### **3.05 BONDING AND GROUNDING**

- A. Each above ground portion of a corrugated stainless steel tubing gas piping systems shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system. The bonding jumper shall connect to a metallic pipe or fitting between the point of delivery and the first downstream corrugated stainless steel tube fitting. The bonding jumper shall not be smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent. Gas piping systems that contain one or more segments of corrugated stainless steel tubing shall be bonded in accordance with this section.
- B. Each above ground portion of a gas piping system, other than corrugated stainless steel tubing systems, that is likely to become energized shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground-fault current path. Gas piping, other than corrugated stainless steel tubing, shall be considered to be bonded when it is connected to appliances that are connected to the appliance grounding conductor of the circuit supplying that appliance.
- C. Gas piping shall not be used as a grounding conductor or electrode.

- D. Where a lightning protection system is installed, the bonding of the gas piping shall be in accordance with NFPA 780, Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems.

### **3.06 PIPE ERECTION AND LAYING**

- A. Carefully inspect all pipe, fittings, valves, equipment and accessories prior to installation. Immediately reject and remove from the job any items which are unsuitable, cracked or otherwise defective.
- B. All pipe, fittings, valves, equipment and accessories shall have factory-applied markings, stampings, or nameplates sufficient to determine their conformance with specified requirements.
- C. Exercise care at every stage of storage, handling, laying and erecting to prevent entry of foreign matter into piping, fittings, valves, equipment and accessories. Do not erect or install any unclean item.
- D. During construction, until system is fully operational, keep all openings in piping and equipment closed at all times except when actual work is being performed on that item. Closures shall be plugs, caps, blind flanges or other items designed for this purpose.
- E. Change direction of pipes only with fittings or pipe bends. Change size only with fittings. Do not use miter fittings, face or flush bushings, or street elbows. All fittings shall be long radius type, unless otherwise shown on the drawings or specified. Construct welded elbows of angles not available as standard fittings by cutting and welding standard elbows to form smooth, long radius fittings.
- F. Use full and double lengths of pipe wherever possible.
- G. Cut all pipe to exact measurement and install without springing or forcing.
- H. Do not create, even temporarily, undue loads, forces or strains on valves, equipment or building elements.

### **3.07 DRAINING AND VENTING**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, all horizontal pipes, including branches, shall pitch 1" in 40 feet to low points for complete drainage.
- B. Use eccentric reducing fittings on horizontal runs when changing size for proper drainage and venting. Install gas pipes with bottom of pipe and eccentric reducers in a continuous line.
- C. Provide drip legs at low points and at the base of all risers in gas pipes. Drip legs shall be full line size on pipes through 4" and at least 4", but not less than half line size over 4". Drip legs shall be 12" minimum length, capped with a reducer to a drain valve.

### **3.08 BRANCH CONNECTIONS**

- A. Make branch connections with standard tee or cross fittings of the type required for the service unless otherwise specified herein or detailed on the drawings.
- B. At the option of the Contractor, branch connections from headers and mains may be cut into black steel pipe using forged weld-on fittings.
- C. Use of forged weld-on fittings is also limited as follows:

1. Must have at least same pressure rating as the main.
  2. Header or main must be 2-1/2" or over.
  3. Branch line is at least two pipe sizes under header or main size.
- D. Reducers are generally not shown. Where pipe sizes change at tee, the tee shall be the size of the largest pipe shown connecting to it.
- E. All branch piping connections for natural gas shall take off on the top or on the side of the main.

### 3.09 JOINING OF PIPE

A. Threaded Joints:

1. Ream pipe ends and remove all burrs and chips.
2. Protect plated pipe and valve bodies from wrench marks when making up joints.
3. Apply gas-rated Teflon tape or thread compound to male threads.

B. Flanged Joints:

1. Steel flanges shall be raised face.
2. Bolting for services up to 500°F° shall be ASTM A307 Grade B with square head bolts and heavy hexagonal nuts conforming to ANSI B18.2.1 "Square and Hex Bolts" and B18.2.2 "Square and Hex Nuts".
3. Torque bolts in at least three passes, tightening to 1/3, 2/3, and final torque in a cross pattern with an indicating torque wrench for equal tension in all bolts.
4. Gaskets for flat face flanges shall be full face type. Gaskets for raised faced flanges shall conform to requirements for "Group I Gaskets" in ANSI B16.5. Unless otherwise specified gaskets shall meet the following requirements:
  - a. Gasket material and thickness approved by manufacturer for intended service, chemical compatibility, pipe system test pressure, and operating temperature range.
  - b. Maximum pressure rating of at least 250 psig.
  - c. Minimum temperature rating: -10°F°.
  - d. Maximum temperature rating of at least 170°F° for water systems operating 140°F° and less.

C. Welded Joints:

1. Welding of all pipe joints, both as to procedures and qualification of welders, shall be in accordance with Section IX, ASME "Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code" unless local codes take precedence.
2. Furnish certificates qualifying each welder to the Owner's Representative prior to start of work.

3. The Owner's Representative reserves the right to require qualifying demonstration, at the Contractor's expense, of any welders assigned to the job.
4. Ends of pipe and fittings to be joined by butt-welding shall be beveled, cleaned to bare metal and internal diameters aligned before tack welding.

### **3.010 PAINTING EXPOSED PIPE**

- A. Paint all outdoor exposed natural gas piping the color selected by Owner or Architect/Engineer.

### **3.011 SERVICE CONNECTIONS**

- A. Provide new gas service complete with gas meter and regulators. Verify gas service pressure with the Utility Company.

**END OF SECTION 221023**

**SECTION 221030**  
**PLUMBING SPECIALTIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Cleanouts.
- B. Traps.
- C. Trap Seals and Primers.
- D. Floor Drains and Sinks
- E. Roof Drains.
- F. Backflow Preventers.
- G. Strainers.
- H. Balancing Valves.
- I. Water Hammer Arresters.
- J. Dielectric Fittings (Connections Between Dissimilar Metals).
- K. Air Vents.
- L. Drain Valves.

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer: For each product specified, provide components by same manufacturer throughout.
- B. Piping, Fittings, Valves, and Flux for Potable Water Systems: All components shall be lead free per Federal Act S.3874, Reduction of Lead in Drinking Water Act.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI A112.21.1 - Floor Drains.
- B. ANSI A112.21.2 - Roof Drains.
- C. ASSE 1010 - Water Hammer Arresters.
- D. ANSI A112.6.3 - Floor and Trench Drains; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
- E. ANSI A112.6.4 - Roof, Deck, and Balcony Drains; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
- F. ANSI 1011 - Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers; American Society of Sanitary Engineering.
- G. ANSI 1012 - Backflow Preventer with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent; American Society of Sanitary Engineering.

- H. ASSE 1013 - Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers and Reduced Pressure Fire Protection Principle Backflow Preventers; American Society of Sanitary Engineering; 1.
- I. ASSE 1019 - Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants, Freeze Resistant Automatic Draining Type; American Society of Sanitary Engineering.
- J. ASSE 1047 - Reduced Pressure Detector Assemblies.
- K. ASTM C478 - Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections.
- L. AWWA C506 - Backflow Prevention Devices - Reduced Pressure Principle and Double Check Valve Types.
- M. PDI WH-201 - Water Hammer Arresters.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 CLEANOUTS**

- A. Provide cleanouts as shown and specified on the drawings as well as required by code.
- B. Coordinate floor cleanout cover with surrounding floor finish. Provide either solid, recessed for tile or terrazzo or carpet marker as applicable.
- C. Cleanouts on exposed pipes shall be cast iron with heavy duty cast brass plug with raised head.
- D. Cleanout shall be same size as the pipe up to 6" and 6" for larger pipes.

### **2.02 YARD CLEANOUTS**

- A. Provide yard cleanouts as shown and specified on the drawings as well as required by code.
- B. Cleanout shall be same size as pipe up to 6" and 6" for larger pipes.

### **2.03 TRAPS**

- A. Provide all individual connections to the sanitary system with P-traps, except where such drains discharge directly into a properly trapped collection basin or sump. Unless otherwise specified or shown, traps shall be:
  - 1. Chromium plated cast brass when used with plumbing fixtures or when installed exposed in finished spaces.
  - 2. Insulated at accessible lavatories.
  - 3. Cast iron, deep-seal pattern where concealed above ceiling, below grade or in unfinished areas.
  - 4. Deep-seal pattern of the same material and/or coating where drainage lines are of special materials or coatings such as polypropylene, PVDF, CPVC, etc.
- B. All traps shall have accessible, removable cleanouts, except where installed on floor drains with removable strainers.



- C. Each trap shall be completely filled with water at the end of construction but before building turnover to the Owner. All floor drains, floor sinks, trench drains, etc. shall be filled with water.

#### **2.04 FLOOR DRAINS AND SINKS**

- A. Floor drains and sinks shall be in the form of a receptor with grate/strainer set flush with the surrounding floor.
- B. Provide floor drains and sinks as shown and specified on the drawings as well as required by code.

#### **2.05 ROOF DRAINS**

- A. Provide roof drains as shown and specified on the drawings as well as required by code.

#### **2.06 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS**

- A. Provide backflow preventers as shown and specified on the drawings as well as required by code.

#### **2.07 STRAINERS**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, strainers shall be Y-pattern and have stainless steel screens with perforations as follows:
  - 1. Water:
    - a. 1/4" - 2": 3/64" perforations
    - b. 2-1/2" - 10": 1/16" perforations
- B. Furnish pipe nipple with shutoff valve to blow down all strainer screens.
- C. Use bronze body strainers in copper piping and iron body strainers in ferrous piping.

#### **2.08 BALANCING VALVE**

- A. Rated for 125 psi working pressure and 250°F° operating temperature, taps for determining flow with a portable meter, positive shutoff valves for each meter connection, memory feature, tight shutoff, and a permanent pressure drop between 1' and 2' water column at full flow with valve 100% open. Furnish with molded, removable insulation covers.
- B. Provide a nomograph to determine flow from meter reading (and valve position on units which sense pressure across a valve). Graph shall extend below the specified minimum flow.
- C. Flow rate less than 0.5 GPM: Valves in copper piping shall be brass or bronze. Cv value shall be less than 1.0 when valve is completely open, and minimum balanceable flow rate shall not exceed 0.1 GPM with a meter reading of at least 2.5 feet. Acceptable manufacturers: Bell & Gossett "Circuit Setter RF", Flow Design, Preso, Armstrong, Griswold, Gerand, or Nibco balancing valve.
- D. Manufacturer shall size balancing valves for the scheduled flow rate. Flow rate shall be measurable on manufacturer's standard meters.

## **2.09 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS**

- A. Provide water hammer arresters as shown and specified on the drawings as well as required by code.
- B. ANSI A112.26.1; sized and located in accordance with PDI WH-201, precharged for operation between -100°F and 300°F° and maximum 250 psig working pressure.

## **2.010 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS (CONNECTIONS BETWEEN DISSIMILAR METALS)**

- A. Connections between dissimilar metals shall be insulating dielectric types that provide a water gap between the connected metals, and that either allow no metal path for electron transfer or that provide a wide water gap lined with a non-conductive material to impede electron transfer through the water path.
- B. Joints shall be rated for the temperature, pressure, and other characteristics of the service in which they are used, including testing procedure.
- C. Aluminum, iron, steel, brass, copper, bronze, and stainless steel are commonly used and require isolation from each other with the following exceptions:
  - 1. Iron, steel, and stainless steel connected to each other.
  - 2. Brass, copper, and bronze connected to each other.
  - 3. Brass or bronze valves and specialties connected in closed systems with steel, iron, or stainless steel on both sides of the brass or bronze valves and specialties. Where two or more brass or bronze items occur together, they shall be connected with brass nipples. Brass or bronze valves and specialties cannot be used as a dielectric separation between pipe materials.
- D. Dielectric protection is required at connections to equipment of a material different than the piping.
- E. Screwed Joints (acceptable up to 2" size):
  - 1. Dielectric waterway rated for 300 psi CWP and 225°F°.
  - 2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Elster Group ClearFlow fittings, Victaulic Series 47, Grinnell Series 407, Matco-Norca.
- F. Flanged Joints (any size):
  - 1. Use 1/8" minimum thickness, non-conductive, full-face gaskets.
  - 2. Employ one-piece molded sleeve-washer combinations to break the electrical path through the bolts.
  - 3. Sleeve-washers are required on one side only, with sleeves minimum 1/32" thick and washers minimum 1/8" thick.
  - 4. Install steel washers on both sides of flanges to prevent damage to the sleeve-washer.

5. Separate sleeves and washers may be used only if the sleeves are manufactured to exact lengths and installed carefully so the sleeves must extend partially past each steel washer when tightened.
6. Acceptable Manufacturers: EPCO, Central Plastics, Pipeline Seal and Insulator, F. H. Maloney, or Calpico.

## **2.011 AIR VENTS**

- A. Provide means for venting air at all high points in the piping system and at all other points where air may be trapped.
- B. At end of main and other points where large volume of air may be trapped - Use 1/4" globe valve, angle type, 125 psi, Crane #89, attached to coupling in top of main, 1/4" discharge pipe turned down with cap.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION AND APPLICATION**

- A. Coordinate construction to receive drains at required invert elevations.
- B. Install all items per manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Water Hammer Arresters:
  1. Install water hammer arresters in accessible locations. Provide access doors as required. Coordinate type with Architect/Engineer/Owner.
  2. Water hammer arrestors shall be installed in cold and hot water lines upstream of all plumbing fixtures or equipment, with a quick acting valve or multiple quick acting valves. Quick acting valves shall be defined as solenoid actuated valves, manual flush valves, sensor activated faucets and flush valves, squeeze handle spray faucets, and other similar type valves.
  3. Install multiple water hammer arrestors in toilet group branch piping greater than 20 feet in developed length from the cold and hot water mains.
- D. Cleanouts:
  1. Provide cleanouts where shown on the drawings and as required by code, but in no case farther apart than 50 feet. Provide cleanouts at bases of all sanitary and storm risers as shown on the drawings and as required by code.
  2. Provide a cleanout at the upstream end of a horizontal waste pipe in a plumbing chase serving multiple plumbing fixtures; for example a bank of water closets or lavatories.
  3. Provide cleanouts on the branch line connected to individual plumbing fixtures as required by code; for example just below a sink, lavatory or urinal.
  4. Extend underfloor cleanouts up to the floor with long sweep elbows.
  5. Install a full size, two-way cleanout within 5 feet of the foundation inside or outside of building.

6. Extend cleanouts to finished floor or wall surface. Lubricate threaded cleanout plugs with graphite and linseed oil. Ensure clearance at cleanouts for rodding of drainage system.
7. Wall cleanouts shall be installed above the flow line of the pipe they serve, but no less than 12" above the finished floor.

E. Yard Cleanouts:

1. Install cleanouts on maximum 90 foot centers (including riser) for pipes 8" and smaller.
2. Extend cleanout to grade. Encase cleanout in 5" thick concrete pad extending 6" beyond cleanout, set low enough not to interfere with lawn mowers.

F. Floor Drains and Floor Sinks:

1. Use alternate sealing method when installing drains in existing floor slabs.
2. Coordinate sloping requirements with the architectural plans and specifications.
3. Top of floor drain and sinks grate/strainer shall not extend above the finished floor elevation.
4. Top of floor drain and sink grate/strainer shall not extend above the finished floor elevation. Grate/strainer shall be installed flush with surrounding finished floor. Should the Plumbing Contractor believe this presents a conflict with code, the issue should be evaluated before installation of the floor drain or sink begins. Proceeding with installing a floor drain or sink raised above the finished floor without prior approval will result in the Contractor being required to remove the drain or sink in question and reinstall it at the approved elevation.

G. Roof Drains:

1. Roof drains shall have bearing pans.
2. Provide auxiliary support steel under drains as required to prevent movement of the drain.
3. All roof drains shall have underdeck clamps or a manufacturer provided attachment method for the specific roof style the drain is installed in.
4. Drains in built-up roofing systems shall have a 36" x 36" flashing.

H. Backflow Preventer:

1. Provide an air gap fitting and piping to drain. On 2-1/2" and larger units, install a tail piece from air gap fitting to drain to prevent water from spraying out of drain air gap receptor. Maintain air gap distance required by Code.
2. Units shall be field tested and tagged in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable codes by a certified tester before initial operation.
3. Install unit between 12" and 60" above finish floor in a location that is accessible for annual testing and maintenance.

I. Balancing Valves:

1. Install balancing valves with straight, unobstructed pipe section both upstream and downstream as required, per manufacturer's installation instructions.

**END OF SECTION 221030**



**SECTION 221123**  
**DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Domestic Water In-Line Circulators.

**1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Section 220500.
- B. Submit certified pump performance curves with pump and system operating point plotted. Include NPSH curve when applicable.
- C. Pumps with motors operating above the RPM the pump curves are based on shall have impellers trimmed to deliver GPM and head scheduled.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 GENERAL**

- A. Statically and dynamically balance rotating parts.
- B. Construction shall permit complete servicing without breaking piping or motor connections.
- C. Pumps shall operate at 1750 rpm unless specified otherwise.
- D. Pump connections shall be flanged, whenever available.
- E. Domestic hot water pumps shall be suitable for 225°F water.
- F. Motors shall comply with Section 220513.
- G. Submitted pump selections must have a diameter impeller that meets or exceeds the scheduled pump. The inlet and discharge pipe sizes shall also meet or exceed the scheduled pump.

**2.02 DOMESTIC WATER IN-LINE CIRCULATORS**

- A. Provide pumps as specified on the drawings.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Install all products per manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

B. In-Line Pump:

1. Support in-line pumps individually so there is no strain on the piping. Support pump so no weight is carried on pump casings. Install with a minimum of five diameters of straight pipe on pump suction and discharge.
2. Ensure pumps operate at specified fluid temperatures without vapor binding or cavitation, are non-overloading in parallel or individual operation, and operate within 25% of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve.
3. Pumps shall be factory aligned. If alignment is not satisfactory, as determined by the Architect/Engineer, manufacturer shall provide a factory trained representative to field align the shafts.

C. Pump without VFD or ECM:

1. For pumps not powered by a VFD, trim impeller to meet maximum operating conditions. Coordinate final trimmed diameter with Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Contractor .

**END OF SECTION 221123**



**SECTION 223000**  
**PLUMBING EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Water Heaters.

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Products and installation of specified products shall conform to recommendations and requirements of the following organizations:
  - 1. American Gas Association (AGA).
  - 2. National Sanitation Foundation (NSF).
  - 3. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME).
  - 4. National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors (NBBPVI).
  - 5. National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA).
  - 6. Underwriters' Laboratories (UL).
- B. Water Heater Performance Requirements: Equipment efficiency not less than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1 when tested in accordance with DOE 10 CFR, ANSI Z21.10.1 and ANSI Z21.10.3.
- C. Conform to ASME Section VIII for construction of water heaters and heat exchangers. Provide boilers registered with National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- B. ANSI/ASME Section 8D - Pressure Vessels.
- C. ANSI Section 21.10.1 or Section ANSI 21.10.3 - Gas Water Heaters Ratings 75,000 BTU per Hour and Less.
- D. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- E. ANSI/UL 1453 - Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters.
- F. ASSE 1005 - Water Heater Drain Valves, 3/4" Iron Pipe Size.
- G. UL 174 - Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Section 220500.
- B. Include dimension drawings of water heaters indicating components and connections to other equipment and piping.
- C. Include dimensions of tanks, tank lining methods, anchors, attachments, lifting points, tappings, and drains.
- D. For equipment connected to an electric power source, submit short circuit rating (SCCR) of integrated unit.
- E. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions including control and electrical power/controls wiring diagrams.
- F. Submit manufacturer's certificate that pressure vessels meet or exceed specified requirements.
- G. Submit operation, maintenance, and inspection data, replacement part numbers and availability, and service depot location and telephone number.
- H. Submit a current water analysis from the actual water source serving the project site for softening equipment verification before sending shop drawings to the Architect/Engineer.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Provide temporary inlet and outlet caps. Maintain caps in place until installation.

#### **1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Water heaters shall conform to AGA, ANSI/NFPA 54, ANSI/NFPA 70, ANSI/UL 1453 as applicable.
- B. Conform to ANSI/ASME Section 8 Division 1 for fabrication of steel pressure vessels.
- C. Conform to ANSI/ASME Section 10 for manufacture of fiber-reinforced plastic pressure vessels.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 WATER HEATERS**

- A. All water heaters shall be as scheduled on the drawings.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install all items in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.02 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install water heaters on concrete bases. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Refer to Section 220529.
- B. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to drawings, manufacturer's instructions, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- C. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend drain piping full size from relief valve and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain. Discharge pipe material shall be same as domestic water piping.

**END OF SECTION 223000**



**SECTION 224000**  
**PLUMBING FIXTURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. All plumbing fixtures.

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI A112.6.1M - Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use.
- B. ANSI A112.18.1 - Finished and Rough Brass Plumbing Fixture Fittings.
- C. ANSI A112.19.1M - Enameled Cast Iron Plumbing Fixtures.
- D. ANSI A112.19.2M - Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures.
- E. ANSI A112.19.3 - Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use).
- F. ASME A112.19.4 - Porcelain Enameled Formed Steel Plumbing Fixtures.
- G. ANSI A112.19.5 - Trim for Water-Closet Bowls, Tanks, and Urinals.
- H. AHRI 1010 - Drinking Fountains and Self-Contained Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking Water Coolers.
- I. ASSE 1002 - Water Closet Flush Tank Ball Cocks.
- J. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Title III.
- K. The Energy Policy Act (EPA) of 2005.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 220500. Submittals shall include fixture carriers for record purposes only. Architect/Engineer does not review or approve carriers except for manufacturer.
- B. Include fixtures, sizes, rough-in dimensions, utility sizes, trim, and finishes.
- C. For fixtures and trim requiring electrical connections, submit product data indicating general assembly, components, electrical power/controls wiring diagrams, and service connections.
- D. Manufacturer shall provide special seismic certification per HCAI CAN 2-1708a.5 with submittal. Submittals without certification will be returned and not reviewed.

---

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 DSA FIXTURE REQUIREMENT**

- A. Plumbing fixtures and accessories provided in a toilet room or bathing room are required to comply with CBC Section 11B-213.2 and shall comply with CBC Section 11B-213.3.
- B. Effective March 1, 2017, all single-user toilet facilities shall be identified as Gender-Neutral facilities by a door symbol that complies with CBC Sections 11B-216.8 and 11B-703.2.6.3. No pictogram, text, or braille is required on the symbol. If tactile jamb signage is provided, the signage shall comply with the appropriate technical requirements of CBC Section 11B-703. Examples of appropriate designations are "ALL-GENDER RESTROOM", "RESTROOM" or "UNISEX RESTROOM". DSA BU 17-01.
- C. Accessible plumbing fixtures shall comply with all the requirements in CBC Division 6.
- D. Clearance around accessible water closets and in toilet compartments shall be 60 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall per CBC Section 11B-604.4.1.
- E. Heights and location of all accessible fixtures shall be mounted according to CBC Sections 11B-602 through 11B-612.
- F. Fixture controls shall comply with CBC Sections 11B-601.3 for drinking fountains, 11B-604.6 for water closets, 11B-604.9.5 for children's water closets, 11B-605.4 for urinals, 11B-606.4 for lavatories and sinks, 11B-607.5 for bathtubs, 11B-608.5 for showers, and 11B-611.3 for washing machines and clothes dryers.
- G. Accessible sinks shall be 6-1/2" deep maximum. Sinks shall be mounted with the front of the higher of the rim and counter surface 34" maximum above the finish floor or ground.
- H. Water supply and drain pipes under lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories and sinks. CBC Section 11B-606.

### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. All fixtures shall be as shown on the drawings and as scheduled in the plumbing material list. Additional requirements below:
- B. All vitreous china fixtures shall be from the same manufacturer where possible.
- C. All lavatory and sink trim shall be from the same manufacturer where possible.
- D. All fixtures shall be lead free. Faucets, traps, stops, and other fixture accessories shall not contain more lead than allowed per the latest State or Federal Act.
- E. P-Traps and Tailpieces:
  - 1. Lavatories:
    - a. Accessible Type: 1-1/4" chrome plated 17-gauge cast brass offset tailpiece and p-trap with cleanout on bottom of trap.
    - b. Non-Accessible Type: Offset not required for tailpiece, otherwise same.

2. Sinks:
  - a. Accessible Type: 1-1/2" chrome plated 17-gauge cast brass offset tailpiece and p-trap with cleanout on bottom of trap.
  - b. Non-Accessible Type: Offset not required for tailpiece, otherwise same.
3. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. McGuire
  - b. Keeney
  - c. Dearborn Brass
  - d. Zurn
  - e. Chicago Faucet

F. Insulation Covers and Enclosures for Accessible Lavatories and Sinks:

1. Premanufactured cover for P-trap, stop valves, and supply lines.
  - a. 1/8" thick vinyl construction, paintable, tool free installation,
  - b. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) Truebro (Lav Guard 2)
    - 2) Plumberex (Pro-Extreme)
    - 3) McGuire (Prowrap)
    - 4) Buckaroos Inc.
    - 5) Zurn
2. Premanufactured rigid enclosure for concealing lavatory P-trap, stop valves, and supply lines,
  - a. Rigid, high impact PVC, paintable, stainless steel fasteners for anchoring and removal.
  - b. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) Truebro (Lav Shield #2018)
    - 2) Zurn (Z6900-VG)
    - 3) Approved equal
3. Premanufactured rigid enclosure for concealing sink P-trap, stop valves, supply lines, garbage disposal, etc.
  - a. Rigid, high impact PVC, white or beige (Color by architect), paintable, 36" or 42" widths, stainless steel fasteners for anchoring and removal.
  - b. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) Truebro (Basin Guard)

2) Approved equal

G. Angle Stops and Supplies:

1. Lavatories, Sinks and Tank Type Water Closets:

- a. Lead-free, 3/8" chrome plated brass, quarter turn ball valve type with loose key stops, solder connection type.
- b. Lead-free, 3/8" chrome plated soft copper risers .
- c. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1) McGuire
  - 2) BrassCraft
  - 3) Keeney
  - 4) Zurn
  - 5) Chicago Faucet

H. Wall Hung Fixture Carriers:

- 1. Material: All Metal, ASME/ANSI A112.6.1M.
- 2. Lavatory carrier shall be rated to support 250 lbs unless noted otherwise on the drawings.
- 3. Water closet carrier shall be rated to support 500 lbs unless noted otherwise on the drawings
- 4. Manufacturers:
  - a. Zurn
  - b. JR Smith
  - c. Wade
  - d. Josam
  - e. Watts
  - f. Mifab
  - g. Sun Drainage Products
  - h. Sioux Chief

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

A. General Installation Requirements:



1. Review millwork shop drawings. Confirm location and size of fixtures and openings before rough-in and installation.
2. Install each fixture with trap easily removable for servicing and cleaning. Use screwed tailpiece couplings. Connect fixture waste to stack with slip fitting.
3. Provide fixtures with supply lines, stop valves, reducers, escutcheons, and any other items required for a complete and operational plumbing fixture assembly.
4. Install components level and plumb.
5. Caulk joint between finish floor and floor mounted fixtures and between finish walls and wall mounted fixtures with silicon caulk. Caulk the joint, between rim and fixture where a fixture builds into a counter top, with caulking compound. Refer to DIVISION 7 for "Caulking" requirements. Color to match fixture.
6. Where there is a possibility of water following pipe brackets, etc., into a wall; caulk escutcheons, space around brackets, etc., to exclude water. Refer to DIVISION 7 for "Caulking" requirements.
7. Refer to Plumbing Material List for fixture mounting heights.
8. All non-potable outlets shall be clearly marked with a permanently affixed laminated sign with 3/8" high lettering saying "Non-Potable Water Not for Human Consumption." Sign shall have black lettering on a yellow background.

B. Wall-Mounted Fixture Requirements:

1. All wall-mounted fixtures shall have compatible carriers designed for their intended service and suitable for the space available and configuration of fixtures. All carriers shall extend to the floor and be anchored to the slab as intended by the carrier manufacturer.

C. Floor-Mounted Fixture Requirements:

1. Where floor mounted fixtures are installed on a sloped floor, the open void below the fixture shall be grouted, leveled, and caulked to eliminate stress on the fixture and to prevent water migration to the floor below.

D. Exposed or Inside Accessible Cabinets Traps, Valve and Pipe Requirements:

1. All water or waste piping for plumbing fixtures that is exposed or inside cabinets shall be chrome plated.
2. All exposed flush valves for water closets and urinals shall have a chrome plated hanger to anchor the piping to the wall.
3. All exposed water supply piping and fittings in a finished space to a shower valve, hose bibb, or other water outlet shall be chrome plated.

E. ADA Accessible Exposed Sink and Lavatory Trim:

1. All exposed sink and lavatory traps, piping and angle stops installed at accessible sink and lavatory locations shall include offset style drain tailpiece, p-trap installed near and parallel with back wall, and insulation kit specially manufactured for this installation. Armaflex with duct tape is not acceptable.

F. ADA Accessible Water Closet Requirements:

1. Handicapped accessible water closet flush valve or flush tank handles shall be on the left hand or right hand side of the fixture, whichever is nearer to the center of the stall.
2. Coordinate flush valves in handicap accessible locations with grab bars installed by the General Contractor. Make modifications as necessary to flush valve piping to avoid conflict with grab bars. Common solutions include shortened or offset vacuum breaker tailpieces.

**3.02 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Adjust stops or valves for intended water flow rate to fixtures without splashing, noise, or overflow.
- B. At completion, clean plumbing fixtures, equipment, and faucet aerator screens.

**3.03 FIXTURE ROUGH-IN SCHEDULE**

- A. Rough-in fixture piping connections in accordance with table on plumbing drawings of minimum sizes for particular fixtures.

**END OF SECTION 224000**

## **SECTION 230500**

### **BASIC HVAC REQUIREMENTS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Requirements applicable to all Division 23 Sections. Also refer to Division 01 - General Requirements.
- B. All materials and installation methods shall conform to the applicable standards, guidelines and codes referenced herein and within each specification section.

##### **1.02 DIVISION OF WORK BETWEEN MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL & CONTROL CONTRACTORS**

###### **A. Definitions:**

- 1. "Mechanical Contractors" refers to the following:
  - a. Plumbing Contractor.
  - b. Heating Contractor.
  - c. Air Conditioning and Ventilating Contractor.
  - d. Temperature Control Contractor.
  - e. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Contractor.
- 2. Motor Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the remote operation of the magnetic coils of magnetic motor starters or relays, or the wiring that permits direct cycling of motors by means of devices in series with the motor power wiring. In the latter case the devices are usually single phase and are usually connected to the motor power wiring through a manual motor starter having "Manual-Off-Auto" provisions.
- 3. Control devices such as start-stop push buttons, thermostats, pressure switches, flow switches, relays, etc., generally represent the types of equipment associated with motor control wiring.
- 4. Motor control wiring is single phase and usually 120 volts. In some instances, the voltage will be the same as the motor power wiring. Generally, where the motor power wiring exceeds 120 volts, a control transformer is used to give a control voltage of 120 volts.
- 5. Temperature Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the operation of a motorized damper, solenoid valve or motorized valve, etc., either modulating or two-position, as opposed to wiring which directly powers or controls a motor used to drive equipment such as fans, pumps, etc.

- a. This wiring will be from a 120 volt source and may continue as 120 volt, or be reduced in voltage (24 volt) in which case a control transformer shall be furnished as part of the temperature control wiring.
6. Control Motor: An electric device used to operate dampers, valves, etc. It may be two-position or modulating. Conventional characteristics of such a motor are 24 volts, 60 cycles, 1 phase, although other voltages may be encountered.
7. Voltage is generally specified and scheduled as distribution voltage. Motor submittals may be based on utilization voltage if it corresponds to the correct distribution voltage.

Distribution/Nominal Voltage	Utilization Voltage
120	115
208	200
240	230
277	265
480	460

B. General:

1. The purpose of these Specifications is to outline the Electrical and Mechanical Contractor's responsibilities related to electrical work required for items such as temperature controls, mechanical equipment, fans, chillers, compressors and the like. The exact wiring requirements for much of the equipment cannot be determined until the systems have been selected and submittals reviewed. Therefore, the electrical drawings show only known wiring related to such items. All wiring not shown on the electrical drawings, but required for mechanical systems, is the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.
2. Where the drawings require the Electrical Contractor to wire between equipment furnished by the Mechanical Contractor, such wiring shall terminate at terminals provided in the equipment. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide complete electrical power/controls wiring diagrams and supervision to the Electrical Contractor and designate the terminal numbers for correct wiring.
3. All electrical work shall conform to the National Electrical Code. All provisions of the Electrical Specifications concerning wiring, protection, etc., apply to wiring provided by the Mechanical Contractor unless noted otherwise.
4. Control low (24V) and control line (120V) voltage wiring, conduit, and related switches and relays required for the automatic control and/or interlock of motors and equipment, including final connection, are to be furnished and installed under Divisions 21, 22 and 23. Materials and installation to conform to Class 1 or 2 requirements.
5. All Contractors shall establish utility elevations prior to fabrication and shall coordinate their material and equipment with other trades. When a conflict arises, priority is as follows:
  - a. Light fixtures.

- b. Gravity flow piping, including steam and condensate.
- c. Electrical busduct.
- d. Sheet metal.
- e. Electrical cable trays, including access space.
- f. Sprinkler piping and other piping.
- g. Electrical conduits and wireway.

C. Mechanical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Assumes responsibility for internal wiring of all equipment provided by the Mechanical Contractor, for example:
  - a. Burners.
  - b. Condensing Units.
  - c. Gas Trains.
  - d. Package Air Handling Units.
2. Assumes all responsibility for the Temperature Control wiring, when the Temperature Control Contractor is a Subcontractor to the Mechanical Contractor.
3. Shall verify all existing equipment sizes and capacities where units are to be modified, moved or replaced. Contractor shall notify Architect/Engineer of any discrepancies prior to ordering new units or replacement parts, including replacements of equipment motors.
4. Temperature Control Subcontractor's Responsibility:
  - a. Wiring of all devices needed to make the Temperature Control System functional.
  - b. Verifying any control wiring on the electrical drawings as being by the Electrical Contractor. All wiring required for the Control System, but not shown on the electrical drawings, is the responsibility of the Temperature Control Subcontractor.
  - c. Coordinating equipment locations (such as relays, transformers, etc.) with the Electrical Contractor, where wiring of the equipment is by the Electrical Contractor.
5. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

D. Electrical Contractor's Responsibility:

- E. Provides all combination starters, manual starters and disconnect devices shown on the Electrical Drawings or indicated to be by the Electrical Contractor on the Mechanical Drawings or Specifications.
  - 1. Installs and wires all remote control devices furnished by the Mechanical Contractor or Temperature Control Subcontractor when so noted on the Electrical Drawings.
  - 2. Provides motor control and temperature control wiring, where so noted on the drawings.
  - 3. Coordinate with the Mechanical Contractor for size of motors and/or other electrical devices involved with repair or replacement of existing equipment.
  - 4. Furnishes, installs and connects all relays, etc., for automatic shutdown of certain fans upon actuation of the Fire Alarm System as indicated and specified in Division 28.
  - 5. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

### **1.03 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

#### **A. Definitions:**

- 1. Coordination Drawings: A compilation of the pertinent layout and system drawings that show the sizes and locations, including elevations, of system components and required access areas to ensure that no two objects will occupy the same space.
  - a. Mechanical trades shall include, but are not limited to, mechanical equipment, ductwork, fire protection systems, plumbing piping, medical gas systems, hydronic piping, steam and steam condensate piping, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - b. Electrical trades shall include, but are not limited to, electrical equipment, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, pull boxes, transformers, raceway, busway, lighting, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - c. Technology trades shall include, but are not limited to, technology equipment, racks, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, ladder rack, pull boxes, raceway, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - d. Maintenance clearances and code-required dedicated space shall be included.
  - e. The coordination drawings shall include all underground, underfloor, in-floor, in chase, and vertical trade items.

2. Spaces with open/cloud ceiling architecture shall indicate the overhead utilities and locate equipment as required to maintain clearance above lights. The intent for the installation is to maintain a maximum allowable vertical clearance and an organized/clean manner in the horizontal. Notify Architect/Engineer of the maximum clearance which can be maintained. Failure to comply will result in modifications with no cost to Owner.
  - a. In cloud ceiling architecture, when open cabling/wire and/or cable tray crosses gaps between ceiling clouds and/or walls, cabling is to transition to conduits to span the gaps in order to conceal cabling from below.
3. The contractors shall use the coordination process to identify the proper sequence of installation of all utilities above ceilings and in other congested areas, to ensure an orderly and coordinated end result, and to provide adequate access for service and maintenance.

B. Participation:

1. The contractors and subcontractors responsible for work defined above shall participate in the coordination drawing process.
2. One contractor shall be designated as the Coordinating Contractor for purposes of preparing a complete set of composite electronic CAD coordination drawings that include all applicable trades, and for coordinating the activities related to this process. The Coordinating Contractor for this project shall be the Mechanical Contractor.
  - a. The Coordinating Contractor shall utilize personnel familiar with requirements of this project and skilled as draftspersons/CAD operators, competent to prepare the required coordination drawings.
3. Electronic CAD drawings shall be submitted to the Coordinating Contractor for addition of work by other trades. IMEG will provide electronic file copies of applicable drawings for contractor's use if the contractor signs and returns an "Electronic File Transfer" waiver provided by IMEG. IMEG will not consider blatant reproductions of original file copies an acceptable alternative for coordination drawings.

C. Drawing Requirements:

1. The file format and file naming convention shall be coordinated with and agreed to by all contractors participating in the coordination process and the Owner.
  - a. Scale of drawings:
    - 1) General plans: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 2) Mechanical, electrical, communication rooms, and including the surrounding areas within 10 feet: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 3) Shafts and risers: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 4) Sections of shafts and mechanical and electrical equipment rooms: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 5) Sections of congested areas: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).

2. Ductwork layout drawings shall be the baseline system for other components. Ductwork layout drawings shall be modified to accommodate other components as the coordination process progresses.
3. There may be more drawings required for risers, top and bottom levels of mechanical rooms, and shafts.
4. The minimum quantity of drawings will be established at the first coordination meeting and sent to the Architect/Engineer for review. Additional drawings may be required if other areas of congestion are discovered during the coordination process.

D. General:

1. Coordination drawing files shall be made available to the Architect/Engineer and Owner's Representative. The Architect/Engineer will only review identified conflicts and give an opinion, but will not perform as a coordinator.
2. A plotted set of coordination drawings shall be available at the project site.
3. Coordination drawings are not shop drawings and shall not be submitted as such.
4. The contract drawings are schematic in nature and do not show every fitting and appurtenance for each utility. Each contractor is expected to have included in the bid sufficient fittings, material, and labor to allow for adjustments in routing of utilities made necessary by the coordination process and to provide a complete and functional system.
5. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions due to participation in the coordination process.
6. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions for additional fittings, reroutings or changes of duct size, that are essentially equivalent sizes to those shown on the drawings and determined necessary through the coordination process.
7. The Architect/Engineer reserves the right to determine space priority of equipment in the event of spatial conflicts or interference between equipment, piping, conduit, ducts, and equipment provided by the trades.
8. Changes to the contract documents that are necessary for systems installation and coordination shall be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer.
9. Access panels shall preferably occur only in gypsum board walls or plaster ceilings where indicated on the drawings.
  - a. Access to mechanical, electrical, technology, and other items located above the ceiling shall be through accessible lay-in ceiling tile areas.
  - b. Potential layout changes shall be made to avoid additional access panels.
  - c. Additional access panels shall not be allowed without written approval from the Architect/Engineer at the coordination drawing stage.



- d. Providing additional access panels shall be considered after other alternatives are reviewed and discarded by the Architect/Engineer and the Owner's Representative.
  - e. When additional access panels are required, they shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner.
- 10. Complete the coordination drawing process and obtain sign off of the drawings by all contractors prior to installing any of the components.
  - 11. Conflicts that result after the coordination drawings are signed off shall be the responsibility of the contractor or subcontractor who did not properly identify their work requirements, or installed their work without proper coordination.
  - 12. Updated coordination drawings that reflect as-built conditions may be used as record documents.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

**A. Contractor's Responsibility Prior to Submitting Pricing Data:**

- 1. The Contractor is responsible for constructing complete and operating systems. The Contractor acknowledges and understands that the Contract Documents are a two-dimensional representation of a three-dimensional object, subject to human interpretation. This representation may include imperfect data, interpreted codes, utility guidelines, three-dimensional conflicts, and required field coordination items. Such deficiencies can be corrected when identified prior to ordering material and starting installation. The Contractor agrees to carefully study and compare the individual Contract Documents and report at once in writing to the Design Team any deficiencies the Contractor may discover. The Contractor further agrees to require each subcontractor to likewise study the documents and report at once any deficiencies discovered.
- 2. The Contractor shall resolve all reported deficiencies with the Architect/Engineer prior to awarding any subcontracts, ordering material, or starting any work with the Contractor's own employees. Any work performed prior to receipt of instructions from the Design Team will be done at the Contractor's risk.

**B. Qualifications:**

- 1. Only products of reputable manufacturers are acceptable.
- 2. All Contractors and subcontractors shall employ only workers skilled in their trades.

**C. Compliance with Codes, Laws, Ordinances:**

- 1. Conform to all requirements of the City of Warren Codes, Laws, Ordinances and other regulations having jurisdiction.
- 2. Conform to all State Codes.

3. If there is a discrepancy between the codes and regulations and these specifications, the Architect/Engineer shall determine the method or equipment used.
4. If the Contractor notes, at the time of bidding, that any parts of the drawings or specifications do not comply with the codes or regulations, Contractor shall inform the Architect/Engineer in writing, requesting a clarification. If there is insufficient time for this procedure, Contractor shall submit with the proposal a separate price to make the system comply with the codes and regulations.
5. All changes to the system made after letting of the contract, to comply with codes or requirements of Inspectors, shall be made by the Contractor without cost to the Owner.
6. If there is a discrepancy between manufacturer's recommendations and these specifications, the manufacturer's recommendations shall govern.
7. All rotating shafts and/or equipment shall be completely guarded from all contact. Partial guards and/or guards that do not meet all applicable OSHA standards are not acceptable. Contractor is responsible for providing this guarding if it is not provided with the equipment supplied.

D. Permits, Fees, Taxes, Inspections:

1. Procure all applicable permits and licenses.
2. Abide by all laws, regulations, ordinances, and other rules of the State or Political Subdivision where the work is done, or as required by any duly constituted public authority.
3. Pay all charges for permits or licenses.
4. Pay all fees and taxes imposed by the State, Municipal and/or other regulatory bodies.
5. Pay all charges arising out of required inspections by an authorized body.
6. Pay all charges arising out of required contract document reviews associated with the project and as initiated by the Owner or authorized agency/consultant.
7. Where applicable, all fixtures, equipment and materials shall be approved or listed by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.

E. Utility Company Requirements:

1. Secure from the appropriate private or public utility company all applicable requirements.
2. Comply with all utility company requirements.
3. Make application for and pay for service connections, such as gas.
4. Make application for and pay for all meters and metering systems required by the utility company.

F. Examination of Drawings:

1. The drawings for the mechanical work are completely diagrammatic, intended to convey the scope of the work and to indicate the general arrangements and locations of equipment, outlets, etc., and the approximate sizes of equipment.
2. Contractor shall determine the exact locations of equipment and rough-ins, and the exact routing of pipes and ducts to best fit the layout of the job.
3. Scaling of the drawings is not sufficient or accurate for determining these locations.
4. Where job conditions require reasonable changes in indicated arrangements and locations, such changes shall be made by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.
5. Because of the scale of the drawings, certain basic items, such as fittings, boxes, valves, unions, etc., may not be shown, but where required by other sections of the specifications or required for proper installation of the work, such items shall be furnished and installed.
6. If an item is either on the drawings or in the specifications, it shall be included in this contract.
7. Determination of quantities of material and equipment required shall be made by the Contractor from the documents. Where discrepancies arise between drawings, schedules and/or specifications, the greater number shall govern.
8. Where used in mechanical documents, the word "furnish" shall mean supply for use, the word "install" shall mean connect complete and ready for operation, and the word "provide" shall mean to supply for use and connect complete and ready for operation.
  - a. Any item listed as furnished shall also be installed, unless otherwise noted.
  - b. Any item listed as installed shall also be furnished, unless otherwise noted.

G. Field Measurements:

1. Verify all pertinent dimensions at the job site before ordering any materials or fabricating any supports, pipes or ducts.

H. Electronic Media/Files:

1. Construction drawings for this project have been prepared utilizing Revit.
2. Contractors and Subcontractors may request electronic media files of the contract drawings and/or copies of the specifications. Specifications will be provided in PDF format.
3. Upon request for electronic media, the Contractor shall complete and return a signed "Electronic File Transmittal" form provided by IMEG.

4. If the information requested includes floor plans prepared by others, the Contractor will be responsible for obtaining approval from the appropriate Design Professional for use of that part of the document.
5. The electronic contract documents can be used for preparation of shop drawings and as-built drawings only. The information may not be used in whole or in part for any other project.
6. The drawings prepared by IMEG for bidding purposes may not be used directly for ductwork layout drawings or coordination drawings.
7. The use of these CAD documents by the Contractor does not relieve them from their responsibility for coordination of work with other trades and verification of space available for the installation.
8. The information is provided to expedite the project and assist the Contractor with no guarantee by IMEG as to the accuracy or correctness of the information provided. IMEG accepts no responsibility or liability for the Contractor's use of these documents.

#### **1.05 WEB-BASED PROJECT SOFTWARE**

- A. The General Contractor shall provide a web-based project software site for the purpose of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until completion of the warranty phase.
- B. The web-based project software shall include, at a minimum, the following features: construction schedule, submittals, RFIs, ASIs, construction change directives, change orders, drawing management, specification management, payment applications, contract modifications, meeting minutes, construction progress photos.
- C. Provide web-based project software user licenses for use by the Architect/Engineer. Access will be provided from the start of the project through the completion of the warranty phase.
- D. At project completion, provide digital archive of entire project in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect/Engineer. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. General Submittal Procedures: In addition to the provisions of Division 01, the following are required:
  1. Transmittal: Each transmittal shall include the following:
    - a. Date
    - b. Project title and number
    - c. Contractor's name and address

- d. Division of work (e.g., plumbing, heating, ventilating, etc.)
  - e. Description of items submitted and relevant specification number
  - f. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
  - g. Other pertinent data
2. Submittal Cover Sheet: Each submittal shall include a cover sheet containing:
- a. Date
  - b. Project title and number
  - c. Architect/Engineer
  - d. Contractor and subcontractors' names and addresses
  - e. Supplier and manufacturer's names and addresses
  - f. Division of work (e.g., plumbing, heating, ventilating, etc.)
  - g. Description of item submitted (using project nomenclature) and relevant specification number
  - h. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
  - i. Other pertinent data
  - j. Provide space for Contractor's review stamps
3. Composition:
- a. Submittals shall be submitted using specification sections and the project nomenclature for each item.
  - b. Individual submittal packages shall be prepared for items in each specification section. All items within a single specification section shall be packaged together where possible. An individual submittal may contain items from multiple specifications sections if the items are intimately linked (e.g., pumps and motors).
  - c. All sets shall contain an index of the items enclosed with a general topic description on the cover.

4. Content: Submittals shall include all fabrication, erection, layout, and setting drawings; manufacturers' standard drawings; schedules; descriptive literature, catalogs and brochures; performance and test data; electrical power criteria (e.g., voltage, phase, amps, horsepower, kW, etc.) wiring and control diagrams; Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR); dimensions; shipping and operating weights; shipping splits; service clearances; and all other drawings and descriptive data of materials of construction as may be required to show that the materials, equipment or systems and the location thereof conform to the requirements of the contract documents.
5. Contractor's Approval Stamp:
  - a. The Contractor shall thoroughly review and approve all shop drawings before submitting them to the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall stamp, date and sign each submittal certifying it has been reviewed.
  - b. Unstamped submittals will be rejected.
  - c. The Contractor's review shall include, but not be limited to, verification of the following:
    - 1) Only approved manufacturers are used.
    - 2) Addenda items have been incorporated.
    - 3) Catalog numbers and options match those specified.
    - 4) Performance data matches that specified.
    - 5) Electrical characteristics and loads match those specified.
    - 6) Equipment connection locations, sizes, capacities, etc. have been coordinated with other affected trades.
    - 7) Dimensions and service clearances are suitable for the intended location.
    - 8) Equipment dimensions are coordinated with support steel, housekeeping pads, openings, etc.
    - 9) Constructability issues are resolved (e.g., weights and dimensions are suitable for getting the item into the building and into place, sinks fit into countertops, etc.).
  - d. The Contractor shall review, stamp and approve all subcontractors' submittals as described above.
  - e. The Contractor's approval stamp is required on all submittals. Approval will indicate the Contractor's review of all material and a complete understanding of exactly what is to be furnished. Contractor shall clearly mark all deviations from the contract documents on all submittals. If deviations are not marked by the Contractor, then the item shall be required to meet all drawing and specification requirements.
6. Submittal Identification and Markings:

- a. The Contractor shall clearly mark each item with the same nomenclature applied on the drawings or in the specifications.
    - b. The Contractor shall clearly indicate the size, finish, material, etc.
    - c. Where more than one model is shown on a manufacturer's sheet, the Contractor shall clearly indicate exactly which item and which data is intended.
    - d. All marks and identifications on the submittals shall be unambiguous.
  7. Schedule submittals to expedite the project. Coordinate submission of related items.
  8. Identify variations from the contract documents and product or system limitations that may be detrimental to the successful performance of the completed work.
  9. Reproduction of contract documents alone is not acceptable for submittals.
  10. Incomplete submittals will be rejected without review. Partial submittals will only be reviewed with prior approval from the Architect/Engineer.
  11. Submittals not required by the contract documents may be returned without review.
  12. The Architect/Engineer's responsibility shall be to review one set of shop drawing submittals for each product. If the first submittal is incomplete or does not comply with the drawings and/or specifications, the Contractor shall be responsible to bear the cost for the Architect/Engineer to recheck and handle the additional shop drawing submittals.
  13. Submittals shall be reviewed and approved by the Architect/Engineer before releasing any equipment for manufacture or shipment.
  14. Contractor's responsibility for errors, omissions, or deviation from the contract documents in submittals is not relieved by the Architect/Engineer's approval.
  15. Schedule shall allow for adequate time to perform orderly and proper review of submittals, including time for consultants and Owner if required, and resubmittals by Contractor if necessary, and to cause no delay in Work or in activities of Owner or other contractors.
    - a. Allow at least two weeks for Architect's/Engineer's review and processing of each submittal.
  16. Architect/Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal which, in the Architect/Engineer's opinion, requires coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. The Architect/Engineer will notify the Contractor, in writing, when they exercise this right.
- B. Electronic Submittal Procedures:
1. Distribution: Email submittals as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer, unless a web-based submittal program is used.

2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
  - a. Submittal file name: 23 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
  - b. Transmittal file name: 23 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.

#### **1.07 CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. A detailed material and labor takeoff shall be prepared for each change order, along with labor rates and markup percentages. Change orders shall be broken down by sheet or associated individual line item indicated in the change associated narrative, whichever provides the most detailed breakdown. Change orders with inadequate breakdown will be rejected.
- B. Itemized pricing with unit cost shall be provided from all distributors and associated subcontractors.
- C. Change order work shall not proceed until authorized.

#### **1.08 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING & MAINTENANCE**

- A. Exercise care in transporting and handling to avoid damage to materials. Store materials on the site to prevent damage. Keep materials clean, dry and free from harmful conditions. Immediately remove any materials that become wet or that are suspected of becoming contaminated with mold or other organisms.
- B. Protect equipment, components, and openings with airtight covers and exercise care at every stage of storage, handling, and installation of equipment to prevent airborne dust and dirt from entering or fouling equipment to include, but not limited to:
  1. Motor windings and ventilation openings.
  2. Bearings.
  3. Equipment Pipe and Accessories connections openings. (e.g. boiler connections, coil connections, etc.)



4. Equipment Duct and Accessories connections openings. (e.g. AHU/RTU duct connections; Terminal Air Boxes, etc.)
  5. Starter and control cabinets.
  6. Heat transfer coils.
- C. Equipment and components that are visibly damaged or have been subject to environmental conditions prior to building turnover to Owner that could shorten the life of the component (for example, water damage, humidity, dust and debris, excessive hot or cold storage location, etc.) shall be repaired or replaced with new equipment or components without additional cost to the building owner.
- D. Keep all bearings properly lubricated and all belts properly tensioned and aligned.
- E. Coordinate the installation of heavy and large equipment with the General Contractor and/or Owner. If the Mechanical Contractor does not have prior documented experience in rigging and lifting similar equipment, he/she shall contract with a qualified lifting and rigging service that has similar documented experience. Follow all equipment lifting and support guidelines for handling and moving.
- F. Contractor is responsible for moving equipment into the building and/or site. Contractor shall review site prior to bid for path locations and any required building modifications to allow movement of equipment. Contractor shall coordinate the work with other trades.

#### **1.09 NETWORK / INTERNET CONNECTED EQUIPMENT**

- A. These specifications may require certain equipment or systems to have network, Internet and/or remote access capability ("Network Capability"). Any requirement for Network Capability shall be interpreted only as a functional capability and is not to be construed as authority to connect or enable any Network Capability. Network Capability may only be connected or enabled with the express written consent of the Owner.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide one-year warranty, unless otherwise noted, to the Owner for all fixtures, equipment, materials, and workmanship.
- B. The warranty period for all work in this Division of the specifications shall commence on the date of final acceptance, unless a whole or partial system or any separate piece of equipment or component is put into use for the benefit of any party other than the installing contractor with prior written authorization. In this instance, the warranty period shall commence on the date when such whole system, partial system or separate piece of equipment or component is placed in operation and accepted in writing by the Owner.
- C. Warranty requirements shall extend to correction, without cost to the Owner, of all Work found to be defective or nonconforming to the contract documents. The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting all damage resulting from defects or nonconformance with contract documents.

### **1.11 INSURANCE**

- A. Contractor shall maintain insurance coverage as set forth in Division 0 of these specifications.

### **1.12 MATERIAL SUBSTITUTION**

- A. Where several manufacturers' names are given, the scheduled manufacturer is the basis for job design and establishes the quality required.
- B. Equivalent equipment manufactured by the other listed manufacturers may be used. Contractor shall ensure that all items submitted by these other manufacturers meet all requirements of the drawings and specifications and fits in the allocated space. When using other listed manufacturers, the Contractor shall assume responsibility for any and all modifications necessary (including, but not limited to structural supports, electrical connections, piping and ductwork connections and arrangement, plumbing connections and rough-in, and regulatory agency approval, etc.) and coordinate such with other contractors.
- C. Any material, article or equipment of other unnamed manufacturers which will adequately perform the services and duties imposed by the design and is of a quality equal to or better than the material, article or equipment identified by the drawings and specifications may be used if approval is secured in writing from the Architect/Engineer not later than ten days prior to the bid opening.
- D. This Contractor assumes all costs incurred as a result of using the offered material, article or equipment, on the Contractors part or on the part of other Contractors whose work is affected.
- E. This Contractor may list voluntary add or deduct prices for alternate materials on the bid form. These items will not be used in determining the low bidder.
- F. All material substitutions requested later than ten (10) days prior to bid opening must be listed as voluntary changes on the bid form.

## **PART 2 - EXECUTION**

### **2.01 JOBSITE SAFETY**

- A. Neither the professional activities of the Architect/Engineer, nor the presence of the Architect/Engineer or the employees and subconsultants at a construction site, shall relieve the Contractor and other entity of their obligations, duties and responsibilities including, but not limited to, construction means, methods, sequence, techniques or procedures necessary for performing, superintending or coordinating all portions of the work of construction in accordance with the contract documents and any health or safety precautions required by any regulatory agencies. The Architect/Engineer and personnel have no authority to exercise any control over any construction contractor or other entity or their employees in connection with their work or any health or safety precautions. The Contractor is solely responsible for jobsite safety. The Architect/Engineer and the Architect/Engineer's consultants shall be indemnified and shall be made additional insureds under the Contractor's general liability insurance policy.

## **2.02 EXCAVATION, FILL, BACKFILL, COMPACTION**

### **A. General:**

1. Prior to the commencement of any excavation or digging, the Contractor shall verify all underground utilities with the regional utility locator. Provide prior notice to the locator before excavations. Contact information for most regional utility locators can be found at the following website (<https://call811.com/>) or by calling 811.
2. The Contractor shall do all excavating, filling, backfilling and compacting associated with the work.

### **B. Excavation:**

1. Make all excavations to accurate, solid, undisturbed earth, and to proper dimensions.
2. Where excavations are made in error below foundations, concrete of same strength as specified for the foundations or thoroughly compacted sand-gravel fill, as determined by the Architect/Engineer, shall be placed in such excess excavations. Place thoroughly compacted, clean, stable fill in excess excavations under slabs on grade, at the Contractor's expense.
3. Trim bottom and sides of excavations to grades required for foundations.
4. Protect excavations against frost and freezing.
5. Take care in excavating not to damage surrounding structures, equipment, or buried pipe. Do not undermine footing or foundation.
6. Perform all trenching in a manner to prevent cave-ins and risk to workers.
7. Where original surface is pavement or concrete, the surface shall be saw cut to provide clean edges and assist in the surface restoration.
8. Where satisfactory bearing soil for foundations is not found at the indicated levels, the Architect/Engineer or their representative shall be notified immediately, and no further work shall be done until further instructions are given by the Architect/Engineer or their representative.

### **C. Dewatering:**

1. Contractor shall furnish, install, operate, and remove all dewatering pumps and pipes needed to keep trenches and pits free of water.

### **D. Underground Obstructions:**

1. Known underground piping, foundations, and other obstructions in the vicinity of construction are shown on the drawings. Use great care in making installations near underground obstruction.

2. If objects not shown on the drawings are encountered, remove, relocate, or perform extra work as directed by the Architect/Engineer.

E. Fill and Backfilling:

1. Utilities Bedding: Lay underground utilities on minimum of 6" sand bedding. Compact bedding under utilities smooth, with no sharp edges protruding, to protect the utilities from puncture. Shape bedding to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of utilities and for joints and fittings.
2. Envelope Around Utilities to 6" Above Utilities: Place sand to a height of 6" over utilities in 6" layers. After connection joints are made, any misalignment can be corrected by tamping backfill around the utilities.
3. Backfill From 6" Above Utilities to Earthen Grade: Place all backfill materials above the utilities in uniform layers not exceeding 6" deep.
4. Backfill From 6" Above Utilities to Below Slabs or Paved Area: Where the sand fill and backfill will ultimately be under a building, floor or paving, each layer of backfill materials shall be compacted to 95% of the maximum density determined by AASHTO Designation T 99 or ASTM Designation D 698. Moisture content of soil at time of compaction shall not exceed plus or minus 2% of optimum moisture content determined by AASHTO T 99 or ASTM D 698 test.
5. Backfill Materials:
  - a. Sand, CA6: Each layer shall be placed, then carefully and uniformly tamped, to eliminate lateral or vertical displacement.
  - b. Native Soil: Native soil materials may be used as backfill if approved by the Geotechnical Engineer. Native soils shall be free of rock or gravel larger than 3" in any dimension and shall be free of debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, high void content, and other deleterious materials. Each layer shall be placed, then carefully and uniformly tamped, to eliminate lateral or vertical displacement.
  - c. Flowable Fill: Cementitious, self-leveling, self-compacting slurry as defined by the ACI with compressive strength of 50-100psi at 28 days; consisting of a mixture of fine aggregate or filler, water and cementitious materials. Filler material consist of sand, fly ash, spent foundry sand, quarry fines, baghouse dust. Cementitious materials consist of Portland cement, pozzolanic materials, and self-cementing materials. Flowable fill may be placed in a pour instead of 6" layers noted above.
6. Water shall not be permitted to rise in unbackfilled trenches.
7. Dispose of excess excavated earth as directed.
8. Backfill all trenches and excavations immediately after installing utilities or removal of forms, unless other protection is provided.

9. Around piers and isolated foundations and structures, backfill and fill shall be placed and consolidated simultaneously on all sides to prevent wedge action and displacement. Fill and backfill materials shall be spread in 6 inch uniform horizontal layers with each layer compacted separately to required density.

F. Surface Restoration:

1. Where trenches are cut through existing graded, planted, or landscaped areas, the areas shall be restored to the original condition. Replace all planting removed or damaged to its original condition. A minimum of 6 inches of topsoil shall be applied where disturbed areas are to be seeded or sodded.
2. Concrete or asphalt type pavement, seal coat, rock, gravel or earth surfaces removed or damaged shall be replaced with comparable materials and restored to original condition.

### **2.03 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER OBSERVATION OF WORK**

A. The Contractor shall provide seven (7) calendar days' notice to the Architect/Engineer prior to:

1. Placing fill over underground and underslab utilities.
2. Covering exterior walls, interior partitions and chases.
3. Installing hard or suspended ceilings and soffits.

B. The Architect/Engineer will have the opportunity to review the installation and provide a written report noting deficiencies requiring correction. The Contractor's schedule shall account for these reviews and show them as line items in the approved schedule.

C. Above-Ceiling Final Observation

1. All work above the ceilings must be complete prior to the Architect/Engineer's review. This includes, but is not limited to:
  - a. Pipe insulation is installed and fully sealed.
  - b. Pipe and duct wall penetrations are sealed.
  - c. Pipe identification and valve tags are installed.
  - d. Main, branch and flexible ducts are installed.
  - e. Diffusers, registers and grilles are installed and connected to ductwork.
  - f. Terminal air box reheat coil wiring is complete.
  - g. Terminal air box control wiring is complete and all control boxes are closed.

2. In order to prevent the Above-Ceiling Final Observation from occurring too early, the Contractor shall review the status of the work and certify, in writing, that the work is ready for the Above-Ceiling Final Observation.
3. It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the ceilings have been installed prior to this review and prior to 7 days elapsing, the Architect/Engineer may not recommend further payments to the contractor until such time as full access has been provided.

#### **2.04 PROJECT CLOSEOUT**

- A. The following paragraphs supplement the requirements of Division 01.
- B. Final Jobsite Observation:
  1. In order to prevent the Final Jobsite Observation from occurring too early, the Contractor is required to review the completion status of the project and certify that the job is ready for the final jobsite observation.
  2. Attached to the end of this section is a typical list of items that represent the degree of job completeness expected prior to requesting a review.
  3. Upon Contractor certification that the project is complete and ready for a final observation, the Contractor shall sign the attached certification and return it to the Architect/Engineer so that the final observation can be scheduled.
  4. It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the job not ready for the final observation and that additional trips and observations are required to bring the project to completion, the costs incurred by the Architect/Engineer's additional time and expenses will be deducted from the Contractor's contract retainage prior to final payment at the completion of the job.
- C. Before final payment is authorized, this Contractor must submit the following:
  1. Operation and maintenance manuals with copies of approved shop drawings.
  2. Record documents including marked-up or reproducible drawings and specifications.
  3. A report documenting the instructions given to the Owner's representatives complete with the number of hours spent in the instruction. The report shall bear the signature of an authorized agent of This Contractor and shall be signed by the Owner's representatives.
  4. Inspection by State Boiler Inspector.
  5. Start-up reports on all equipment requiring a factory installation inspection or start-up.
  6. Provide spare parts, maintenance, and extra materials in quantities specified in individual specification sections. Deliver to project site and place in location as directed; receipt by Architect/Engineer required prior to final payment approval.

---

## 2.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

### A. General:

1. Provide an electronic copy of the O&M manuals as described below for Architect/Engineer's review and approval. The electronic copy shall be corrected as required to address the Architect/Engineer's comments. Once corrected, electronic copies and paper copies shall be distributed as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
2. Approved O&M manuals shall be completed and in the Owner's possession prior to Owner's acceptance and at least 10 days prior to instruction of operating personnel.

### B. Electronic Submittal Procedures:

1. Distribution: Email the O&M manual as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer.
2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
  - a. O&M file name: O&M.div23.contractor.YYYYMMDD
  - b. Transmittal file name: O&Mtransmittal.div23.contractor.YYYYMMDD
5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.
6. Provide the Owner with an approved copy of the O&M manual on compact discs (CD), digital video discs (DVD), or flash drives with a permanently affixed label, printed with the title "Operation and Maintenance Instructions", title of the project and subject matter of disc/flash drive when multiple disc/flash drives are required.
7. All text shall be searchable.
8. Bookmarks shall be used, dividing information first by specification section, then systems, major equipment and finally individual items. All bookmark titles shall include the nomenclature used in the construction documents and shall be an active link to the first page of the section being referenced.

### C. Operation and Maintenance Instructions shall include:

1. Title Page: Include title page with project title, Architect, Engineer, Contractor, all subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers, with addresses, telephone numbers, website addresses, email addresses and point of contacts. Website URLs and email addresses shall be active links in the electronic submittal.
2. Table of Contents: Include a table of contents describing specification section, systems, major equipment, and individual items.
3. Copies of all final approved shop drawings and submittals. Include Architect's/Engineer's shop drawing review comments. Insert the individual shop drawing directly after the Operation and Maintenance information for the item(s) in the review form.
4. Refer to Section 230900 for additional requirements for Temperature Control submittals.
5. Copy of final approved test and balance reports.
6. Copies of all factory inspections and/or equipment startup reports.
7. Copies of warranties.
8. Schematic electrical power/controls wiring diagrams of the equipment that have been updated for field conditions. Field wiring shall have label numbers to match drawings.
9. Dimensional drawings of equipment.
10. Capacities and utility consumption of equipment.
11. Detailed parts lists with lists of suppliers.
12. Operating procedures for each system.
13. Maintenance schedule and procedures. Include a chart listing maintenance requirements and frequency.
14. Repair procedures for major components.
15. List of lubricants in all equipment and recommended frequency of lubrication.
16. Instruction books, cards, and manuals furnished with the equipment.

## **2.06 SYSTEM STARTING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. The mechanical systems shall be complete and operating. System startup, testing, adjusting, and balancing to obtain satisfactory system performance is the responsibility of the Contractor. This includes calibration and adjustments of all controls, noise level adjustments and final comfort adjustments as required.



- B. Complete all manufacturer-recommended startup procedures and checklists to verify proper motor rotation, electrical power voltage is within equipment limitations, equipment controls maintain pressures and temperatures within acceptable ranges, all filters and protective guards are in-place, acceptable access is provided for maintenance and servicing, and equipment operation does not pose a danger to personnel or property.
- C. Operate all HVAC systems continuously for at least one week prior to occupancy to bring construction materials to suitable moisture levels. Areas with mechanical cooling shall be maintained below 60% RH.
- D. Contractor shall adjust the mechanical systems and controls at season changes during the one year warranty period, as required, to provide satisfactory operation and to prove performance of all systems in all seasons.
- E. All operating conditions and control sequences shall be tested during the start-up period. Test all interlocks, safety shutdowns, controls, and alarms.
- F. The Contractor, subcontractors, and equipment suppliers shall have skilled technicians to ensure that all systems perform properly. If the Architect/Engineer is requested to visit the job site for trouble shooting, assisting in start-up, obtaining satisfactory equipment operation, resolving installation and/or workmanship problems, equipment substitution issues or unsatisfactory system performance, including call backs during the warranty period, through no fault of the design; the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner on a time and materials basis for services rendered at the Architect/Engineer's standard hourly rates in effect when the services are requested. The Contractor shall pay the Owner for services required that are product, installation or workmanship related. Payment is due within 30 days after services are rendered.

## **2.07 RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following paragraphs supplement Division 01 requirements.
- B. Maintain at the job site a separate and complete set of mechanical drawings and specifications with all changes made to the systems clearly and permanently marked in complete detail.
- C. Mark drawings to indicate revisions to piping and ductwork, size and location, both exterior and interior; including locations of coils, dampers, other control devices, filters, and other units requiring periodic maintenance or repair; actual equipment locations, dimensioned from column lines; actual inverts and locations of underground piping; concealed equipment, dimensioned from column lines; mains and branches of piping systems, with valves and control devices located and numbered, concealed unions located, and with items requiring maintenance located (e.g., traps, strainers, expansion compensators, tanks, etc.); Change Orders; concealed control system devices.
- D. Refer to Section 230900 for additional requirements for Temperature Control documents.
- E. Mark specifications to show approved substitutions; Change Orders, and actual equipment and materials used.
- F. Record changes daily and keep the marked drawings available for the Architect/Engineer's examination at any normal work time.

- G. Upon completing the job, and before final payment is made, give the marked-up drawings to the Architect/Engineer.

## **2.08 PAINTING**

- A. Paint all equipment that is marred or damaged prior to the Owner's acceptance. Paint and color shall match original equipment paint and shall be obtained from the equipment supplier if available.
- B. Equipment in finished areas that will be painted to match the room decor will be painted by others. Should this Contractor install equipment in a finished area after the area has been painted, the Contractor shall have the equipment and all its supports, hangers, etc., painted to match the room decor.
- C. Equipment cabinets, casings, covers, metal jackets, etc., in equipment rooms or concealed spaces, shall be furnished in standard or prime finish, free from scratches, abrasions, chips, etc.
- D. Equipment in occupied spaces, or if standard to the unit, shall have a baked primer with baked enamel finish coat free from scratches, abrasions, chips, etc. If color option is specified or is standard to the unit, this Contractor shall, before ordering, verify with the Architect/Engineer the color preference and furnish this color.
- E. Paint all equipment in unfinished areas such as boiler room, mechanical spaces, storage room, etc., furnished by this Contractor. Equipment furnished with a factory coat of paint and enamel need not be painted, provided the factory applied finish is not marred or spattered. If so, equipment shall be refinished with the same paint as was factory applied.
- F. Paint all outdoor uninsulated steel piping the color selected by Owner or Architect/Engineer.
- G. Paint all outdoor exposed natural gas piping the color selected by Owner or Architect/Engineer.
- H. After surfaces have been thoroughly cleaned and are free of oil, dirt, and other foreign matter; paint all pipes and equipment with the following:
1. Bare Metal Surfaces - Apply one coat of primer suitable for the metal being painted. Finish with two coats of Alkyd base enamel paint.
  2. Insulated Surfaces - Paint insulation jackets with two coats of semi-gloss acrylic latex paint.

## **2.09 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. Thoroughly clean all equipment and systems prior to the Owner's final acceptance of the project. Clean all foreign paint, grease, oil, dirt, labels, stickers, and other foreign material from all equipment.
- B. Clean all drain pans and areas where moisture is present. Immediately report any mold, biological growth, or water damage.

- C. Remove all rust, scale, dirt, oils, stickers and thoroughly clean exterior of all exposed bare metal ductwork, piping, hangers, and accessories.
- D. Remove all rubbish, debris, etc., accumulated during construction from the premises.

## **2.10 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Contractor shall coordinate the installation of all equipment, valves, dampers, operators, etc., with other trades to maintain clear access area for servicing.
- B. All equipment shall be installed in such a way to maximize access to parts needing service or maintenance. Review the final field location, placement, and orientation of equipment with the Owner's designated representative prior to setting equipment.
- C. Installation of equipment or devices without regard to coordination of access requirements and confirmation with the Owner's designated representative will result in removal and reinstallation of the equipment at the Contractor's expense.

## **2.11 MAINTAINING CLEAN DUCTWORK THROUGHOUT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Throughout the duration of construction, all ductwork shall be capped or sealed with sheet metal caps, polyethylene film, or other airtight protective to keep dust, dirt, and construction debris out of ducts. Similar means shall be used to seal air-side connections of HVAC equipment to include, but not limited to, air handling units, fans, terminal air boxes, fan coil units, cabinet heaters, blower coils, and the like.
- B. When air terminal devices are installed, contractors shall seal all supply, return, and exhaust grilles with polyethylene film or other airtight protective to keep dust, dirt, and construction debris out of ducts.
- C. Should HVAC equipment be started during construction, Contractor shall remove airtight protectives and shall install one-inch thick MERV 8 filter media over all return and exhaust grilles to prevent dust, dirt, and construction debris from entering ductwork. Filter media shall cover the entire grille face and shall be secured such that air cannot bypass filter media.
- D. Should filter media become laden with dust and dirt, Contractor shall replace filter media with new media to prevent damage to air distribution system and equipment.
- E. The following steps shall be taken during testing, adjusting, and balancing of each air system:
  - 1. All construction activities in all spaces served by the air system shall stop.
  - 2. All airtight protectives and temporary filter media shall be removed from all portions of the air system.
  - 3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing work shall not commence until all construction activity is stopped and all airtight protectives and temporary filter media is removed.

- 4. Once testing, adjusting, and balancing work is complete for the air system, airtight protectives or temporary filter media shall be installed over all ductwork openings and air terminals on the air system prior to resuming construction activities in any spaces served by the air system.
- F. The Owner shall agree the building is sufficiently clean prior to the removal of any filtration media and airtight protectives from air terminal devices.

## **2.12 UTILITY REBATE**

- A. Submit utility rebate forms, where offered at project location, with rebate items completed. Rebate may include lighting, lighting controls, variable speed drives, heat pumps, package terminal A/C, air conditioners, chillers, water heaters, programmable thermostats, and motors.
- B. Contractor must submit notification of any value engineering or product substitution that will affect the utility rebate amount prior to approval.

#### READINESS CERTIFICATION PRIOR TO FINAL JOBSITE OBSERVATION

To prevent the final job observation from occurring too early, we require that the Contractor review the completion status of the project and, by copy of this document, certify that the job is indeed ready for the final job observation. The following is a typical list of items that represent the degree of job completeness expected prior to your requesting a final job observation.

1. All air handling units operating and balanced.
2. All fans shall be operating and balanced.
3. All miscellaneous mechanical systems (unit heaters, fan coil units, cabinet heaters, etc.) operating.
4. All temperature control systems operating, programmed and calibrated.
5. Pipe insulation complete, pipes labeled and valves tagged.

Accepted by:

Prime Contractor \_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Upon Contractor certification that the project is complete and ready for a final job observation, we require the Contractor to sign this agreement and return it to the Architect/Engineer so that the final observation can be scheduled.

It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the job not ready for the final observation and that additional trips and observations are required to bring the project to completion, the costs incurred by the Architect/Engineers for additional time and expenses will be deducted from the Contractor's contract retainage prior to final payment at the completion of the job.

**END OF SECTION 230500**



## **SECTION 230513**

### **MOTORS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Single Phase and Three Phase Electric Motors.

##### **1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. AFBMA 9 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings.
- B. AFBMA 11 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings.
- C. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- D. ANSI/IEEE 112 - Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators.
- E. ANSI/NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators.
- F. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- G. Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007.

##### **1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect motors stored on site from weather and moisture by maintaining factory covers and suitable weatherproof coverings. For extended outdoor storage, follow manufacturer's recommendations for equipment and motor.

##### **1.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit operation and maintenance data including assembly drawings, bearing data including replacement sizes, and lubrication instructions.

##### **1.05 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in the manufacture of commercial and industrial motors and accessories, with a minimum of three years documented manufacturing experience.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 MOTORS - GENERAL CONSTRUCTION AND REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Refer to the drawings for required electrical characteristics. Voltage is generally specified and scheduled as distribution voltage. Motor submittals may be based on utilization voltage if it corresponds to the correct distribution voltage.

Distribution/Nominal Voltage	Utilization Voltage
120	115
208	200
240	230
277	265
480	460

- B. Design motors for continuous operation in 40°C environment, and for temperature rise in accordance with ANSI/NEMA MG 1 limits for insulation class, service factor, and motor enclosure type.
- C. Visible Nameplate: Indicating horsepower, voltage, phase, hertz, RPM, full load amps, locked rotor amps, frame size, manufacturer's name and model number, service factor, power factor, insulation class.
- D. Electrical Connection: Boxes, threaded for conduit. For fractional horsepower motors where connection is made directly, provide conduit connection in end frame.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, motors 3/4 HP and smaller shall be single phase, 60 hertz, open drip-proof or totally enclosed fan-cooled type.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, motors 1 HP and larger shall be three phase, 60 hertz, squirrel cage type, NEMA Design Code B (low current in-rush, normal starting torque), open drip-proof or totally enclosed fan-cooled type.
- G. Each contractor shall set all motors furnished by him.
- H. All motors shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.
- I. All motors shall have ball or roller bearings with a minimum L-10 fatigue life of 150,000 hours in direct-coupled applications and 50,000 hours for belted applications. Belted rating shall be based on radial loads and pulley sizes called out in NEMA MG1-14.43.
- J. Bearings shall be sealed type for 10 HP and smaller motors. Bearings shall be regreasable type for larger motors.
- K. Aluminum end housings are not permitted on motors 15 HP or larger.
- L. Motor Driven Equipment:
  - 1. No equipment shall be selected or operate above 90% of its motor nameplate rating. Motor size may not be increased to compensate for equipment with efficiency lower than that specified.
  - 2. If a larger motor than specified is required on equipment, the contractor supplying the equipment is responsible for all additional costs due to larger starters, wiring, etc.
- M. Provide all belted motors with a means of moving and securing the motor to tighten belts. Motors over 2 HP shall have screw type tension adjustment. Motors over 40 HP shall have dual screw adjusters. Slide bases shall conform to NEMA standards.



- N. Motors for fans and pumps 1/12 HP or greater and less than 1 HP shall be electronically-commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70% when rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431. These motors shall also have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. Belt-driven fans may use sheave adjustments for airflow balancing in lieu of varying motor speed.

## 2.02 ELECTRONICALLY COMMUTATED MOTORS (ECM)

- A. Motor shall be variable speed, constant torque, brushless DC motor for direct-drive applications. Electronics shall be encapsulated for moisture protection and shall integral surge protection. Motor shall be pre-wired for specific voltage and phase.
- B. Motor frame shall be NEMA 48; UL recognized components shall be provided for the motor construction.
- C. All EC motors shall be a minimum of 85% efficient at all speeds.
- D. Motors shall be permanently lubricated; utilize ball bearings to match with the connected driven equipment.
- E. Provide motor with on-board motor control module. Motor speed shall be limited to provide electronic over current protection. Starter shall provide soft start to reduce inrush current and shall be controllable from 20% to 100% of full rated speed.
- F. Operational mode shall be as scheduled and shall be one of the following:
1. Constant Flow
  2. Constant Temperature
  3. Constant Pressure

## 2.03 PREMIUM EFFICIENCY MOTORS (INCLUDING MOST 3-PHASE GENERAL PURPOSE MOTORS)

- A. All motors, unless exempted by EPA legislation that became federal law on December 19, 2010, shall comply with the efficiencies listed in that standard, which are reprinted below. These match the 2010 NEMA premium efficiency ratings. All ratings listed are nominal full load efficiencies, verified in accordance with IEEE Standard 112, Test Method B. Average expected (not guaranteed minimum) power factors shall also be at least the following:

HP (kW)	Full-Load Efficiencies %			Totally Enclosed Fan Cooled		
	Open Drip-Proof					
	1200 rpm	1800 rpm	3600 rpm	1200 rpm	1800 rpm	3600 rpm
1.0 (0.75)	82.5	85.5	77.0	82.5	85.5	77.0
1.5 (1.1)	86.5	86.5	84.0	87.5	86.5	84.0
2.0 (1.5)	87.5	86.5	85.5	88.5	86.5	85.5
3.0 (2.2)	88.5	89.5	85.5	89.5	89.5	86.5
5.0 (4.0)	89.5	89.5	86.5	89.5	89.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	90.2	91.0	88.5	91.0	91.7	89.5
10.0 (7.5)	91.7	91.7	89.5	91.0	91.7	90.2

- B. Motor nameplate shall be noted with the above ratings.

## **2.04 MOTORS ON VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES**

- A. All motors driven by VFDs shall be premium efficiency type.
- B. Motors shall be designed for use with VFDs in variable torque applications with 1.15 service factor. Motors shall not be equipped with auxiliary blowers.
- C. Motors driven by VFDs shall have Class F or H insulation and be designated by the motor manufacturer to be suitable for inverter duty service in accordance with NEMA MG 1 Section IV, "Performance Standards Applying to All Machines," Part 31 "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. All rotating shafts and/or equipment shall be completely guarded from all contact. Partial guards and/or guards that do not meet all applicable OSHA standards are not acceptable. Contractor is responsible for providing this guarding if it is not provided with the equipment supplied.
- B. For flexible coupled drive motors, mount coupling to the shafts in accordance with the coupling manufacturer's recommendations. Align shafts to manufacturer's requirements or within 0.002 inch per inch diameter of coupling hub.
- C. For belt drive motors, mount sheaves on the appropriate shafts per manufacturer's instructions. Use a straight edge to check alignment of the sheaves. Reposition sheaves as necessary so the straight edge contacts both sheave faces squarely. After sheaves are aligned, loosen the adjustable motor base so the belt(s) can be added, and tighten the base so the belt tension is in accordance with the drive manufacturer's recommendations. Frequently check belt tension and adjust if necessary during the first day of operation and again after 80 hours of operation.

**END OF SECTION 230513**

## **SECTION 230529**

### **HVAC SUPPORTS AND ANCHORS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Hangers, Supports, and Associated Anchors.
- B. Equipment Bases and Supports.
- C. Sleeves and Seals.
- D. Flashing and Sealing of Equipment and Pipe Stacks.
- E. Cutting of Openings.

##### **1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/ASME B31.1 - Power Piping.
- B. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation.
- C. MSS SP 69 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application.
- D. MSS SP 89 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Fabrication and Installation Practices.

##### **1.03 WORK FURNISHED BUT INSTALLED UNDER OTHER SECTIONS**

- A. Furnish sleeves and hanger inserts to General Contractor for placement into formwork.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 PIPE AND STRUCTURAL SUPPORTS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Pipe hangers, clamps, and supports shall conform to Manufacturers Standardization Society MSS SP-58, 69, 89, and 127 (where applicable).
  - 2. On all insulated piping, provide at each support an insert of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation, between the pipe and insulation jacket, to prevent insulation from sagging and crushing. Refer to insulation specifications for materials and additional information.
- B. Hangers and Clamps:

1. Oversize all hangers, clamps, and supports on insulated piping to allow insulation and jacket to pass through unbroken. This applies to both hot and cold pipes.
2. Hangers in direct contact with bare copper pipe shall include plastic pipe insert similar to Unistrut Cush-A-Clamp, Hydra-Zorb, nVent Cushion Clamp or Eaton Vibra-Clamp within their temperature limits of -65°F° to +275°F°.
3. On all insulated piping, provide a semi-cylindrical metallic shield and vapor barrier jacket.
4. Unless otherwise indicated, hangers shall be as follows:
  - a. Clevis Type: Service: Bare Metal Pipe, - 3 inches and Smaller:
    - 1) Products: Bare Steel, Plastic or Insulated Pipe:
      - a) Anvil Fig. 260
      - b) Eaton Fig. 3100
      - c) nVent Model 400
    - 2) Products: Bare Copper Pipe:
      - a) Eaton Fig. B3104F or B3100CTC
      - b) Anvil Fig. CT65
      - c) nVent Fig. 402
  - b. Adjustable Swivel Ring Type: Service: Bare Metal Pipe - 4 inches and Smaller:
    - 1) Products: Bare Steel Pipe:
      - a) Anvil Fig. 69
      - b) Eaton Fig. B3170NF
      - c) nVent Model 115
    - 2) Products: Bare Copper Pipe:
      - a) Eaton Fig. B3170CTC
      - b) nVent 102A0 Series
      - c) Anvil Fig. CT-69
5. Support may be fabricated from U-channel strut or similar shapes. Piping less than 4" in diameter shall be secured to strut with clamps of proper design and capacity as required to maintain spacing and alignment. Strut shall be independently supported from hanger drops or building structure. Size and support shall be per manufacturer's installation requirements for structural support of piping. Clamps shall not interrupt piping insulation.
  - a. Strut used in mechanical spaces or otherwise dry areas shall have ASTM B633 electro-plated zinc finish.

- b. Strut used in damp areas listed in hanger rods shall have ASTM A123 hot-dip galvanized finish applied after fabrication.
  - 6. Unless otherwise indicated, pipe supports for use with struts shall be as follows:
    - a. Clamp Type: Service: Bare Metal Pipe, Rigid Plastic Pipe, Insulated Cold Pipe, Insulated Hot Pipe - 3 inches and smaller:
      - 1) Clamps in direct contact with copper pipe shall include plastic pipe insert similar to Unistrut Cush-A-Clamp, Hydra-Zorb, nVent Cushion Clamp or Eaton Vibra-Clamp.
      - 2) Pipes subject to expansion and contraction shall have clamps oversized to allow limited pipe movement.
      - 3) Products: Bare Steel, Plastic or Insulated Pipe:
        - a) Unistrut Fig. P1100 or P2500
        - b) Eaton Fig. B2000 or B2400
        - c) Anvil Fig. AS1200
        - d) nVent USC
      - 4) Products: Bare Copper Pipe:
        - a) Eaton Fig. BVT
        - b) nVent CADDY Cushion Clamp
- C. Upper (Structural) Attachments:
- 1. Unless otherwise shown, upper attachments for hanger rods or support struts shall be as follows:
    - a. Steel Structure Clamps: C-Type Wide Flange Beam Clamps (for use on top and/or bottom of wide flanges. Not permitted for use with bar-joists.):
      - 1) Products:
        - a) Anvil Fig. 86
        - b) Eaton Fig. B3033/B3034
        - c) nVent Model 300 & 310
    - b. Scissor Type Beam Clamps (for use with bar-joists and wide flange):
      - 1) Products:
        - a) Anvil Fig. 228, 292
        - b) Eaton Fig. B3054

- c) nVent Model 360
- c. Concentrically Loaded Open Web Joist Hangers (for use with bar joists):
  - 1) Products:
    - a) MCL. M1, M2 or M3
  - d. Wood Anchors: Tension wood rod hanger for suspending 3/8" threaded rod. Zinc plated carbon steel.
    - 1) Minimum allowable tension loads for Douglass Fir/Southern Pine:
      - a) 3/8" diameter rod; 2-1/2" shank: 600 lb/590 lb.
      - b) Load values are based on full shank penetration into wood member. Minimum edge distance 3/4". Minimum end distance 3-1/4".
    - 2) Limitations:
      - a) Truss: Do not hang from wood trusses without truss manufacturer or Structural Engineer's approval.
      - b) Sheetrock/Gypsum Ceiling: When drilling through non-wood materials (e.g., sheet rock, gypsum, etc.), increase shank length by depth of non-wood materials.
      - c) Plywood Flooring/Roofing: Do not hang from plywood floor or roofing.
      - d) Spacing: Refer to wood structure spacing of hangers.
    - 3) Products:
      - a) Simpson RWV
      - b) DeWALT
      - c) ITI Sammys GT25

## **2.02 FOUNDATIONS, BASES, AND SUPPORTS**

### **A. Basic Requirements:**

1. Furnish and install foundations, bases, and supports (not specifically indicated on the Drawings or in the Specifications of either the General Construction or Mechanical work as provided by another Contractor) for mechanical equipment.
2. All concrete foundations, bases and supports, shall be reinforced. All steel bases and supports shall receive a prime coat of zinc chromate or red metal primer. After completion of work, give steel supports a final coat of gray enamel.

### **B. Concrete Bases (Housekeeping Pads):**

1. Unless shown otherwise on the drawings, concrete bases shall be nominal 4 inches thick and shall extend 3 inches on all sides of the equipment (6 inches larger than factory base), except where pad extension would interfere with working space at equipment control panels and electrical panels.
2. Where a base is less than 12 inches from a wall, extend the base to the wall to prevent a "dirt-trap".
3. Concrete materials and workmanship required for the Contractor's work shall be provided by the Contractor. Materials and workmanship shall conform to the applicable standards of the Portland Cement Association. Reinforce with 6"x6", W1.4-W1.4 welded wire fabric. Concrete shall withstand 3,000 pounds compression per square inch at 28 days (be 20 MPa strength).
4. Equipment requiring bases is as follows:
  - a. Air Handling Unit

C. Supports:

1. Provide sufficient clips, inserts, hangers, racks, rods, and auxiliary steel to securely support all suspended material, equipment and conduit without sag.
2. Hang heavy equipment from concrete floors or ceilings with Architect/Engineer-approved concrete inserts, furnished and installed by the Contractor whose work requires them, except where indicated otherwise.

### 2.03 OPENINGS IN FLOORS, WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Exact locations of all openings for the installation of materials shall be determined by the Contractor and given to the General Contractor for installation or construction as the structure is built.
- B. Coordinate all openings with other Contractors.
- C. Hire the proper tradesman and furnish all labor, material and equipment to cut openings in or through existing structures, or openings in new structures that were not installed, or additional openings. Repair all spalling and damage to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer. Make saw cuts before breaking out concrete to ensure even and uniform opening edges.
- D. Said cutting shall be at the complete expense of each Contractor. Failure to coordinate openings with other Contractors shall not exempt the Contractor from providing openings at Contractor's expense.
- E. Do not cut structural members without written approval of the Architect or Structural Engineer.
- F. Exposed Housing Penetrations: Seal pipes with surface temperature below 150°F, penetrating housings with conical stepped, white silicone, EPDM or neoprene pipe flashings and stainless steel clamps equal to Portals Plus Pipe Boots or Pipetite.

Model	Service	Element Material	Temperature Range
S	Standard (Stainless)	EPDM	-40°F to 250°F
T	High/Low Temperature (Steam)	Silicone	-67°F to 400°F

---

T	Fire Seals (1 hour)	Silicone	-67°F to 400°F
FS	Fire Seals (3 hours)	Silicone	-67°F to 400°F
OS	Oil Resistant/Stainless	Nitrile	-40°F to 210°F

## 2.04 PIPE PENETRATIONS

- A. Seal all pipe penetrations. Seal non-rated walls and floor penetrations with grout or caulk. Backing material may be used.

## 2.05 PIPE ANCHORS

- A. Provide all items needed to allow adequate expansion and contraction of all piping. All piping shall be supported, guided, aligned, and anchored as required.
- B. Repair all piping leaks and associated damage. Pipes shall not rub on any part of the building.

## 2.06 FINISH

- A. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. Hangers and supports in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 HVAC SUPPORTS AND ANCHORS

- A. General Installation Requirements:
1. Install all items per manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Coordinate the location and method of support of piping systems with all installations under other Divisions and Sections of the Specifications.
  3. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welding.
  4. Supports shall extend directly to building structure. Do not support piping from duct hangers unless coordinated with Sheet Metal Contractor prior to installation. Do not allow lighting or ceiling supports to be hung from piping supports.
- B. Supports Requirements:
1. Where building structural steel is fireproofed, all hangers, clamps, auxiliary steel, etc., which attach to it shall be installed prior to application of fireproofing. Repair all fireproofing damaged during pipe installation.
  2. Set all concrete inserts in place before pouring concrete.
  3. Furnish, install and prime all auxiliary structural steel for support of piping systems that are not shown on the Drawings as being by others.



4. Install hangers and supports complete with lock nuts, clamps, rods, bolts, couplings, swivels, inserts and required accessories.
5. Hangers for horizontal piping shall have adequate means of vertical adjustment for alignment.

C. Pipe Requirements:

1. Support all piping and equipment, including valves, strainers, traps and other specialties and accessories to avoid objectionable or excessive stress, deflection, swaying, sagging or vibration in the piping or building structure during erection, cleaning, testing and normal operation of the systems.
2. Do not, however, restrain piping to cause it to snake or buckle between supports or to prevent proper movement due to expansion and contraction.
3. Support piping at equipment and valves so they can be disconnected and removed without further supporting the piping.
4. Piping shall not introduce strains or distortion to connected equipment.
5. Parallel horizontal pipes may be supported on trapeze hangers made of structural shapes and hanger rods; otherwise, pipes shall be supported with individual hangers.
6. Trapeze hangers may be used where ducts interfere with normal pipe hanging.
7. Provide additional supports where pipe changes direction, adjacent to flanged valves and strainers, at equipment connections and heavy fittings.
8. Provide at least one hanger adjacent to each joint in grooved end steel pipe with mechanical couplings.

D. Provided the installation complies with all loading requirements of truss and joist manufacturers, the following practices are acceptable:

1. Loads of 100 lbs. or less may be attached anywhere along the top or bottom chords of trusses or joists with a minimum 3' spacing between loads.
2. Loads greater than 100 lbs. must be hung concentrically and may be hung from top or bottom chord, provided one of the following conditions is met:
  - a. The hanger is attached within 6" from a web/chord joint.
  - b. Additional L2x2x1/4 web reinforcement is installed per manufacturer's requirements.
3. It is prohibited to cantilever a load using an angle or other structural component that is attached to a truss or joist in such a fashion that a torsional force is applied to that structural member.
4. If conditions cannot be met, coordinate installation with truss or joist manufacturer and contact Architect/Engineer.

E. After piping and insulation installation are complete, cut hanger rods back at trapeze supports so they do not extend more than 3/4" below bottom face of lowest fastener and blunt any sharp edges.

- F. Do not exceed 25 lbs. per hanger and a minimum spacing of 2'-0" on center when attaching to metal roof decking (limitation not required with concrete on metal deck). This 25 lbs. load and 2'-0" spacing include adjacent electrical and architectural items hanging from deck. If the hanger restrictions cannot be achieved, supplemental framing off steel framing will need to be added.
- G. Do not exceed the manufacturer's recommended maximum load for any hanger or support.
- H. Installation of hangers shall conform to MSS SP-58, 69, and 89.

**END OF SECTION 230529**

## **SECTION 230593**

### **TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of air systems.
- B. Measurement of final operating condition of HVAC systems.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Agency shall be a company specializing in the adjusting and balancing of systems specified in this section with minimum three years' experience. Perform work under supervision of AABC Certified Test and Balance Engineer, NEBB Certified Testing, Balancing and Adjusting Supervisor, or TABB Certified Supervisor.
- B. Work shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the references listed at the start of this section.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. AABC - National Standards for Total System Balance, Seventh Edition.
- B. ADC - Test Code for Grilles, Registers, and Diffusers.
- C. AMCA - Publication 203-90; Field Performance Measurement of Fan Systems.
- D. ASHRAE - 2019 HVAC Applications Handbook; Chapter 39, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing.
- E. ASHRAE/ANSI - Standard 111-2008; Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building HVAC&R Systems.
- F. SMACNA - HVAC Systems; Testing, Adjusting and Balancing (latest edition).

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit copies of report forms, balancing procedures, and the name and qualifications of testing and balancing agency for approval within 30 days after award of Contract.
- B. Electronic Copies:
  - 1. Submit a certified copy of test reports to the Architect/Engineer for approval. Electronic copies shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Copies that are not legible will be returned to the Contractor for resubmittal. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
  - 2. Electronic file size shall be limited to a maximum of 10MB. Larger files shall be divided into files that are clearly labeled as "1 of 2", "2 of 2", etc.

3. All text shall be searchable.
4. Bookmarks shall be used. All bookmark titles shall be an active link to the index page and index tabs.

#### **1.05 REPORT FORMS**

- A. Submit reports on AABC, SMACNA or NEBB forms. Use custom forms approved by the Architect/Engineer when needed to supply specified information.
- B. Include in the final report a schematic drawing showing each system component, including balancing devices, for each system. Each drawing shall be included with the test reports required for that system. The schematic drawings shall identify all testing points and cross-reference these points to the report forms and procedures.
- C. Refer to PART 4 for required reports.

#### **1.06 WARRANTY/GUARANTEE**

- A. The TAB Contractor shall include an extended warranty of 90 days after owner receipt of a completed balancing report, during which time the Owner may request a recheck of terminals, or resetting of any outlet, coil, or device listed in the test report. This warranty shall provide a minimum of 24 manhours of onsite service time. If it is determined that the new test results are not within the design criteria, the balancer shall rebalance the system according to design criteria.
- B. Warranty/Guarantee must meet one of the following programs: TABB International Quality Assurance Program, AABC National Project Performance Guarantee, NEBB's Conformance Certification.

#### **1.07 SCHEDULING**

- A. Coordinate schedule with other trades. Provide a minimum of seven days' notice to all trades and the Architect/Engineer prior to performing each test.

### **PART 2 - EXECUTION**

#### **2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. All procedures must conform to a published standard listed in the References article of this section. All equipment shall be adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Any system not listed in this specification but installed under the contract documents shall be balanced using a procedure from a published standard listed in the References article.
- B. The Balancing Contractor shall incorporate all pertinent documented construction changes (e.g. submittals/shop drawings, change orders, RFIs, ASIs, etc.) and include in the balancing report.
- C. Recorded data shall represent actual measured or observed conditions.

- D. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing is complete, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials as specified. Restore vapor barrier and finish as specified.
- E. Permanently mark setting of valves, dampers, and other adjustment devices allowing for settings to be restored. Set and lock memory stops.
- F. Leave systems in proper working order, replacing belt guards, closing access doors, closing doors to electrical switch boxes, plugging test holes, and restoring thermostats to specified settings.
- G. The Balancing Contractor shall measure terminal air box air flow, and the TCC shall adjust DDC readout to match. Refer to Section 230900 for additional information.
- H. Installations with systems consisting of multiple components shall be balanced with all system components operating.

## **2.02 EXAMINATION**

- A. Before beginning work, verify that systems are complete and operable. Ensure the following:
  - 1. General Equipment Requirements:
    - a. Equipment is safe to operate and in normal condition.
    - b. Equipment with moving parts is properly lubricated.
    - c. Temperature control systems are complete and operable.
    - d. Proper thermal overload protection is in place for electrical equipment.
    - e. Direction of rotation of all fans and pumps is correct.
    - f. Access doors are closed and end caps are in place.
  - 2. Duct System Requirements:
    - a. All filters are clean and in place. If required, install temporary media.
    - b. Duct systems are clean and free of debris.
    - c. Fire/smoke and manual volume dampers are in place, functional and open.
    - d. Air outlets are installed and connected.
    - e. Duct system leakage has been minimized.
- B. Report any defects or deficiencies to Architect/Engineer.
- C. Promptly report items that are abnormal or prevent proper balancing.
- D. If, for design reasons, system cannot be properly balanced, report as soon as observed.
- E. Beginning of work means acceptance of existing conditions.

## **2.03 PREPARATION**

- A. Provide instruments required for testing, adjusting, and balancing operations. Make instruments available to the Architect/Engineer for spot checks during testing.
- B. Instruments shall be calibrated within six months of testing performed for project, or more recently if recommended by the instrument manufacturer.

## **2.04 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES**

- A.  $\pm 10\%$  of scheduled values:
  - 1. Adjust air inlets and outlets to  $\pm 10\%$  of scheduled values.
- B. Adjust supply, return, and exhaust air-handling systems to  $+10\%$  /  $-5\%$  of scheduled values.

## **2.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. After adjustment, take measurements to verify balance has not been disrupted or that disruption has been rectified.
- B. Once balancing of systems is complete, at least one damper or valve must be 100% open.
- C. After testing, adjusting and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify system is operating as reported in the report. Document any discrepancies.
- D. Contractor responsible for each motor shall also be responsible for replacement sheaves. Coordinate with contractor.
- E. Contractor responsible for pump shall trim impeller to final duty point as instructed by this contractor on all pumps not driven by a VFD. Coordinate with contractor.

## **2.06 SUBMISSION OF REPORTS**

- A. Fill in test results on appropriate forms.

# **PART 3 - SYSTEMS TO BE TESTED, ADJUSTED AND BALANCED**

## **3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Title Page:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Project location.
  - 3. Project Architect.
  - 4. Project Engineer (IMEG Corp.).
  - 5. Project General Contractor.
  - 6. TAB Company name, address, phone number.

7. TAB Supervisor's name and certification number.
  8. TAB Supervisor's signature and date.
  9. Report date.
- B. Report Index
- C. General Information:
1. Test conditions.
  2. Nomenclature used throughout report.
  3. Notable system characteristics/discrepancies from design.
  4. Test standards followed.
  5. Any deficiencies noted.
  6. Quality assurance statement.
- D. Instrument List:
1. Instrument.
  2. Manufacturer, model, and serial number.
  3. Range.
  4. Calibration date.

### **3.02 AIR SYSTEMS**

- A. Air Moving Equipment:
1. General Requirements:
    - a. Drawing symbol.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Manufacturer, model, arrangement, class, discharge.
    - d. Fan RPM.
    - e. Multiple RPM fan curve with operating point marked. (Obtain from equipment supplier).
    - f. Final frequency of motor at maximum flow rate (on fans driven by VFD).
  2. Flow Rate:
    - a. Supply flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
    - b. Return flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
    - c. Outside flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.

- d. Exhaust flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
- 3. Pressure Drop and Pressure:
  - a. Filter pressure drop: specified and actual.
  - b. Total static pressure: specified and actual. (Indicate if across fan or external to unit).
  - c. Inlet pressure.
  - d. Discharge pressure.
- B. Fan Data:
  - 1. Drawing symbol.
  - 2. Location.
  - 3. Manufacturer and model.
  - 4. Flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
  - 5. Total static pressure: specified and actual. (Indicate measurement locations).
  - 6. Inlet pressure.
  - 7. Discharge pressure.
  - 8. Fan RPM.
- C. Electric Motors:
  - 1. Drawing symbol of equipment served.
  - 2. Manufacturer, Model, Frame.
  - 3. Nameplate: HP, phase, service factor, RPM, operating amps, efficiency.
  - 4. Measured: Amps in each phase.
- D. Air Terminal (Inlet or Outlet):
  - 1. Drawing symbol.
  - 2. Room number/location.
  - 3. Terminal type and size.
  - 4. Velocity: specified and actual.
  - 5. Flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
  - 6. Percent of design flow rate.
- E. Air Terminal Unit (Terminal Air Box) Data:
  - 1. General Requirements:



- a. Drawing symbol.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Manufacturer and model.
    - d. Size.
    - e. Type: constant, variable, single, dual duct.
  - 2. Flow Rate:
    - a. Cooling maximum flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
    - b. Heating maximum flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
    - c. Minimum flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
  - 3. Temperature:
    - a. Entering air temperature: specified and actual.
    - b. Leaving air temperature (in minimum airflow/heating mode): specified and actual.
  - 4. Pressure Drop and Pressure:
    - a. Inlet static pressure during testing cooling maximum airflow rate (maximum and minimum).
- F. Air Flow Measuring Station:
- 1. Drawing symbol.
  - 2. Service.
  - 3. Location.
  - 4. Manufacturer and model.
  - 5. Size.
  - 6. Flow rate (cfm): specified and actual.
  - 7. Pressure drop: specified and actual.

**END OF SECTION 230593**



## **SECTION 230713**

### **DUCTWORK INSULATION**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Ductwork Insulation.
- B. Insulation Jackets.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in ductwork insulation application with five years minimum experience. When requested, installer shall submit manufacturer's certificate indicating qualifications.
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Listed and labeled for flame spread/smoke developed rating of no more than 25/50 when tested per ASTM E84 or UL 723 as required by code.
  - 2. Fungal Resistance: No growth when tested in accordance with ASTM G21 (antifungal test).
  - 3. Rated velocity on coated air side for air erosion in accordance with UL 181 at 5,000 fpm minimum.
- C. Adhesives: UL listed, meeting NFPA 90A/90B requirements.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- B. ANSI/ASTM C553 - Mineral Fiber Blanket and Felt Insulation.
- C. ANSI/ASTM C612 - Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation.
- D. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- E. ASTM E136 - Standard Test Method for the Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C.
- F. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi.
- G. National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards - 1999 Edition - as published by Midwest Insulation Contractors Association and endorsed by National Insulation Contractors Association.
- H. NFPA 255 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

- I. UL 181 - Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors.
- J. UL 723 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Type A: Flexible Fiberglass - Outside Wrap; ANSI/ASTM C553; commercial grade; 0.28 / 0.26 (Out-Of-Package/Installed-Compressed 25%) maximum 'K' value at 75°F°; foil scrim Kraft facing, 1.0 lb./cu. ft. density. Submit both "Out of Package" and "Installed-Compressed 25%" K and R-values.
- B. Type C: Flexible Fiberglass Liner; ANSI/ASTM C1071; 0.28 maximum 'K' value at 75°F°; 1.5 lb/cu ft minimum density; coated air side for 5000 fpm air velocity.
- C. Type E: Double wall ductwork insulation; fiberglass; 0.27 maximum 'K' value at 75°F° mean temperature; 1.5 lb/cu ft density.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, codes, and industry standards.
- B. Install materials after ductwork has been tested.
- C. Clean surfaces for adhesives.
- D. Provide insulation with vapor barrier when air conveyed may be below ambient temperature.
- E. Exterior Duct Wrap - Flexible, Type A:
  - 1. Apply with edges tightly butted.
  - 2. Cut slightly longer than perimeter of duct to insure full thickness at corners. Do not wrap excessively tight.
  - 3. Seal joints with adhesive backed tape.
  - 4. Apply so insulation conforms uniformly and firmly to duct.
  - 5. Seal all penetrations of the vapor barrier by strap hangers or slip cable hangers with adhesive backed tape.
  - 6. Provide high-density insulation inserts on rectangular ducts at trapeze duct hangers to prevent crushing of insulation. Provide high-density insulation inserts with clamp-on round ducts requiring two (2) rods or straps to prevent crushing of insulation. Maintain continuous vapor barrier through the hanger.
  - 7. Tape all joints with Royal Tapes #RT 350 (216-439-7229), Venture Tape 1525CW, or Compac Type FSK. No substitutions will be accepted without written permission from the Architect/Engineer.

F. Interior Insulation - Flexible Duct Liner, Type C:

1. Observation of Duct Lining:
  - a. After installation of ductwork, Architect/Engineer may select random observation points in each system.
    - 1) At each observation point, cut and remove an 18" x 18" section of ductwork and liner for verification of installation.
    - 2) Random observation points based on one opening per 75 lineal ft. of total duct run.
  - b. When any of the observation points shows non-compliance, additional points will be designated by the Architect/Engineer, and observation repeated.
  - c. If 20% of points observed do not comply, remove and replace all lined ducts and repeat tests. Where replacement is not required, correct all non-compliances.
  - d. At end of observation, repair all duct lining and observation holes by installing standard, insulated, hinged access doors per Section 233300.
  - e. Paint or finish to match adjacent duct surfaces.
2. Impale on spindle anchors welded or mechanically fastened to the duct. Adhesive or glue fastened anchors are not acceptable. Maximum anchor spacing per SMACNA Duct Construction Standards or manufacturer's recommendations, whichever is more restrictive. Locate pins less than 3" from corners and at intervals not over 6" around the perimeter at leading and trailing edges. Locate pins within 3" of transverse joints and at intervals not over 16" long the length of the duct. Pins must be long enough to prevent compressing the insulation.
3. In addition to anchors, secure liner with UL listed adhesive covering over 90% of the duct surface.
4. Install per the latest edition of the SMACNA Manual.
5. Leading edges shall be covered as follows:
  - a. For duct velocities below 3000 fpm, coat leading edges with adhesive. Neatly butt liner without gaps at transverse joints. Cut liner flush with end of the duct section for tight joints with no exposed duct. If adhesive is shop installed, field apply additional adhesive to the end of each duct section for complete adhesion of the liner. Protect edges from dirt and debris.
  - b. For duct velocities above 3000 fpm, cover leading edges with metal nosing. Use nosing on upstream edges of each section of duct. If the duct can be installed in either direction, provide nosing on each end or clearly mark the duct to allow visual verification after installation. Verify duct velocities based on the scheduled air flow rates and determine where metal nosing is required.
  - c. Install metal nosing in the following locations (regardless of velocity):
    - 1) The first three fittings downstream of all fans.

- 2) At all duct liner interruptions. This includes fire dampers, access doors, branch connections, and all other locations where the edge of the liner is exposed.
- 3) Trailing edges of transverse joints do not require metal nosings.
- 6. Overlap liner at longitudinal joints. Make longitudinal joints at corners of the duct unless the duct size does not allow this. Coat longitudinal joints with adhesive at velocities over 2500 fpm.
- 7. Seal all damaged duct liner with adhesive and glass cloth. Do not damage duct liner surface coatings.
- 8. Duct dimensions given are net inside dimensions. Increase sheet metal to allow for insulation thickness.
- G. Continue insulation with vapor barrier through penetrations unless code prohibits.
- H. Provide 2" wide, 24" high, 26 gauge, galvanized sheet metal corner protection angles for all externally insulated ductwork extending to a floor or curb.

### **3.02 SCHEDULE**

- A. Refer to M000 for scheduling of insulation.

**END OF SECTION 230713**

## **SECTION 230719**

### **HVAC PIPING INSULATION**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Piping Insulation.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in piping insulation application with five years minimum experience.
- B. Materials: Listed and labeled for flame spread/smoke developed rating of no more than 25/50 when tested per ASTM E84 or UL 723 as required by code. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- C. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- B. ANSI/ASTM C195 - Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulation Cement.
- C. ANSI/ASTM C533 - Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.
- D. ANSI/ASTM C534 - Elastomeric Foam Insulation.
- E. ANSI/ASTM C547 - Mineral Fiber Preformed Pipe Insulation.
- F. ANSI/ASTM C552 - Cellular Glass Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.
- G. ASTM C449 - Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement.
- H. ASTM C591 - Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Insulation.
- I. ASTM C578 - Preformed Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation.
- J. ASTM C1126 - Standard Specification for Faced or Unfaced Rigid Cellular Phenolic Thermal Insulation.
- K. ASTM C1729 - Standard Specification for Aluminum Jacketing for Insulation.

- L. ASTM C1767 - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Jacketing for Insulation.
- M. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- N. NFPA 255 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- O. UL 723 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- P. National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards - 1999 Edition - as published by Midwest Insulation Contractors Association and endorsed by National Insulation Contractors Association.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 INSULATION**

- A. Type A: Glass fiber; ANSI/ASTM C547; 0.24 maximum 'K' value at 75°F; non-combustible. All-purpose polymer or polypropylene service jacket, listed and labeled at no more than 25/50 when tested per ASTM E84 or UL 723 as required by code.
- B. Type B: Flexible elastomeric foam insulation; closed-cell, sponge or expanded rubber (polyethylene type is not permitted); ANSI/ASTM C534, Grade 1 Type I for tubular materials; flexible plastic; 0.25 maximum 'K' value at 75°F, listed and labeled at no more than 25/50 when tested per ASTM E84 or UL 723 as required by code. Maximum 1" thick per layer where multiple layers are specified.
- C. Type C: Molded rigid cellular glass; ANSI/ASTM C-552; 0.29 maximum 'K' value at 75°F; density 7.3lb/ft; minimum compressive strength 90 psi parallel to rise; moisture resistant, non-combustible; suitable for -100°F to +900°F. For below grade installations use asphaltic mastic paper vapor barrier jacket. Use self-seal all-purpose polymer or polypropylene service jacket for above grade installations.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Install insulation after piping has been tested. Pipe shall be clean, dry and free of rust before applying insulation.
- B. Patch and repair torn insulation. Paint to match adjacent insulation surface.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:
  - 1. Install materials per manufacturer's instructions, building codes and industry standards.
  - 2. Continue insulation with vapor barrier through penetrations. This applies to all insulated piping. Maintain fire rating of all penetrations.



3. All piping and insulation that does not meet 25/50 that is in an air plenum shall have written approval from the Authority Having Jurisdiction and the local fire department for authorization and materials approval. If approval has been allowed, the non-rated material shall be wrapped with a product that has been listed and labeled having a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested as a composite in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
4. On 1" and smaller piping routed through metal wall studs, provide a plastic grommet to protect the piping. The piping shall be insulated between the wall studs, and the insulation shall butt up to each stud.

B. Refrigerant Piping:

1. On refrigerant piping (25°F and above) and not required to meet the 25/50 flame/smoke, provide at each strut or clevis support an insulation coupling to support pipe and to accept insulation thickness of adjoining insulation, to prevent insulation from sagging and crushing. The coupling shall be suitable for planned temperatures, use with specified pipe material, and shall be a 360°, one-piece cylindrical segment. Use mechanical fasteners where coupling cannot be installed on pipe during installation. Contractor shall apply adhesive to ends of insulation entering insulation coupling to maintain vapor barrier.

### 3.03 SUPPORT PROTECTION

- A. Provide a shield on all insulated piping at each support between the insulation jacket and the support.
- B. On all insulated piping greater than 1-1/2", provide shield with insulation insert of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation at each support, between the pipe and insulation jacket, to prevent insulation from sagging and crushing. Inserts shall be as follows:
  1. The insert shall be suitable for planned temperatures, be suitable for use with specific pipe material, and shall be a minimum 180° cylindrical segment the same length as metal shields. Inserts shall be:
    - a. As an alternative to separate pipe insulation insert and saddle, properly sized manufactured integral rigid insulation insert and shield assemblies may be used.
      - 1) Products:
        - a) Buckaroo CoolDry
        - b) Cooper/B-Line Fig. B3380 through B3384
        - c) Pipe Shields A1000, A2000
      - b. Insulation Couplings:
        - 1) Molded thermoplastic slip coupling, -65°F to 275°F, sizes up to 4-1/8" OD, and receive insulation thickness up to 1". Suitable for use indoors or outdoors with UV stabilizers. Vertical insulation riser clamps shall have a 1,000lb vertical load rating. On cold pipes operating below 60°F, cover joint and coupling with vapor barrier mastic to ensure continuous vapor barrier.

- 2) PET thermoplastic foam load bearing core with elastomeric foam ends and lap-seal jacket.
- 3) Horizontal Strut Mounted Insulated Pipe Manufacturers:
  - a) Klo-Shure or equal
  - b) Armafix Ecolight
- 4) Vertical Manufacturers:
  - a) Manufacturers: Klo-Shure Titan or equal
- c. Rectangular blocks, plugs, or wood material are not acceptable.
- d. Temporary wood blocking may be used by the Piping Contractor for proper height; however, these must be removed and replaced with proper inserts by the Insulation Contractor. Refer to Supports and Anchors specification section for additional information.
- C. Neatly finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.
- D. Install metal shields between all hangers or supports and the pipe insulation. Shields shall be galvanized sheet metal, half-round with flared edges. Adhere shields to insulation. On cold piping, seal the shields vapor-tight to the insulation as required to maintain the vapor barrier, or add separate vapor barrier jacket.
- E. Shields shall be at least the following lengths and gauges:

Pipe Size	Shield Size
1/2" to 3-1/2"	12" long x 18 gauge
- F. Elastomeric foam insulation shields/saddle; molded thermoplastic rigid pipe saddle sized for insulation outside diameter. Length as indicated above.
- G. Minimum 1/4" rolled galvanized steel plates shall be provided in addition to the sleeves as reinforcement on large pipes to reduce point loading on roller, trapeze hanger and strut support locations depending on insulation compressive strength. Refer to section above for exact locations.

### 3.04 INSULATION

- A. Type A Insulation:
  - 1. All Service Jackets: Seal all longitudinal joints with self-seal laps using a single pressure sensitive adhesive system. Do not staple.
  - 2. Insulation without self-seal lap may be used if installed with Benjamin Foster 85-20 or equivalent Chicago Mastic, 3M or Childers lap adhesive.
  - 3. Apply insulation with laps on top of pipe.

4. Fittings, Valve Bodies and Flanges: For 4" and smaller pipes, insulate with 1 lb. density insulation wrapped under compression to a thickness equal to the adjacent pipe insulation. For pipes over 4", use mitered segments of pipe insulation. Finish with preformed plastic fitting covers. Secure fitting covers with pressure sensitive tape at each end. Overlap tape at least 2" on itself. For pipes operating below 60°F°, seal fitting covers with vapor retarder mastic in addition to tape.

B. Type B Insulation:

1. Install per manufacturer's instructions or ASTM C1710.
2. Elastomeric Cellular Foam: Where possible, slip insulation over the open end of pipe without slitting. Seal all butt ends, longitudinal seams, and fittings with adhesive. At elbows and tees, use mitered connections. Do not compress or crush insulation at cemented joints. Joints shall be sealed completely and not pucker or wrinkle. Exterior installations shall contain factory applied polymeric, moisture, and UV resistant covering with ends sealed with adhesive and similar cover; or Contractor shall paint the outside of outdoor insulation with two coats of latex enamel paint recommended by the manufacturer.
3. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - a. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  - b. Insulation must be installed in compression to allow for expansion and contraction. Insulation shall be pushed onto the pipe, never pulled. Stretching of insulation may result in open seams and joints.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  - b. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  - c. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

C. Type C Insulation:

1. Seal all longitudinal joints with manufacturer approved adhesive. Secure butt joint strips in a similar manner.
2. Insulate fittings with prefabricated fittings.

### 3.05 SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to drawings for insulation schedule.

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**END OF SECTION 230719**

## **SECTION 230900**

### **CONTROLS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Complete System of Automatic Controls.
- B. Control Devices, Components, Wiring and Material.
- C. Instructions for Owners.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this Section with minimum five years' experience.
- B. TCC: Company specializing in the work of this section with minimum five years temperature control experience.
- C. Technician: Minimum five years' experience installing commercial temperature control systems.
- D. TCCs are limited to firms regularly employing a minimum of five full-time temperature control technicians within 100 miles of the job site.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. AMCA 500 - Test Methods for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters.
- B. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- C. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135-2020: BACnet® - A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks, including all amendments.
- D. ANSI/NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 volts Maximum).
- E. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- F. ANSI/NFPA 90A - Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilation Systems.
- G. ASHRAE 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.
- H. ASHRAE 85 - Automatic Control Terminology for Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Equipment Coordination:
  - 1. The Controls Contractor shall obtain approved equipment submittals from other contractors to determine equipment wiring connections, to choose appropriate controllers, and to provide programming.

- B. Control valve selections shall be based on flow rates shown in approved shop drawings.
  - 1. Coordinate the control interface of all equipment with the equipment manufacturers prior to submittal submission.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Submit shop drawings per Section 230500. In addition, submit an electronic copy of the shop drawings in Adobe Acrobat (.pdf) format to the Owner for review.
  - 2. Cross-reference all control components and point names in a single table located at the beginning of the submittal with the identical nomenclature used in this section.
  - 3. Submittal shall also include a trunk cable schematic diagram depicting operator workstations, control panel locations and a description of the communication type, media and protocol.
  - 4. System Architecture: Provide riser diagrams of wiring between central control unit and all control panels. This shall include specific protocols associated with each level within the architecture. Identify all interface equipment between CPU and control panels. The architecture shall include interface requirements with other systems including, but not limited to, security systems, lighting control, fire alarm, elevator status, and power monitoring system.
  - 5. Diagrams shall include:
    - a. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel showing all termination numbers.
    - b. Schematic diagrams for all control, communication, and power wiring. Provide a schematic drawing of the central system installation. Label all cables and ports with computer manufacturers' model numbers and functions. Show all interface wiring to the control system.
    - c. Identification of all control components connected to emergency power.
    - d. Schematic diagrams for all field sensors and controllers.
    - e. A schematic diagram of each controlled system. The schematics shall have all control points labeled. The schematics shall graphically show the location of all control elements in the system.
    - f. A schematic wiring diagram for each controlled system. Each schematic shall have all elements labeled. Where a control element is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, label it with the same name. Label all terminals.
    - g. A tabular instrumentation list for each controlled system. The table shall show element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number and product data sheet number.
    - h. All installation details and any other details required to demonstrate that the system will function properly.
    - i. All interface requirements with other systems.

6. The network infrastructure shall conform to the published guidelines for wire type, length, number of nodes per channel, termination, and other relevant wiring and infrastructure criteria as published. The number of nodes per channel shall be no more than 80% of the defined segment (logical or physical) limit in order to provide future system enhancement with minimal infrastructure modifications.
7. Sequences: Submit a complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. The description shall include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system. The wording of the control sequences in the submittal shall match verbatim that included in the construction documents to ensure there are no sequence deviations from that intended by the Architect/Engineer. Clearly highlight any deviations from the specified sequences on the submittals.
8. Points List Schedule: Submit a complete points list of all points to be connected to the TCS and FMCS. The points list for each system controller shall include both inputs and outputs (I/O), point number, the controlled device associated with the I/O point, the location of the I/O device, and reference drawings. Where a control point is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, label it with the same name. Points list shall specifically identify alarms, trends, event history, archive, totalization, graphic points, and all mapped points from other systems (security systems, lighting control, fire alarm, etc.). Provide points lists, point naming convention, and factory support information for systems provided and integrated into the FMCS.
9. Damper Schedule: Schedule shall include a separate line for each damper and a column for each of the damper attributes:
  - a. Damper Identification Tag.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Damper Type.
  - d. Damper Size.
  - e. Duct Size.
  - f. Arrangement.
  - g. Blade Type.
  - h. Velocity.
  - i. Pressure Drop.
  - j. Fail Position.
  - k. Actuator Identification Tag.
  - l. Actuator Type.
  - m. Mounting.
10. Airflow Measuring Station Schedule:

- a. The manufacturer's authorized representative shall prepare the airflow measuring station submittal, or review and approve in writing the submittal prepared by the TCC prior to submission to the Architect/Engineer and prior to installation. The representative shall review air handling equipment submittals and duct fabrication drawings to ensure that all AFMS locations meet the appropriate parameters to achieve proper installation and the specified accuracy. Comply with all manufacturer's installation requirements including straight up and downstream duct lengths. Install airflow straighteners if required by the manufacturer based on installation constraints. The Architect/Engineer shall be notified for approval of any deviations.
  - b. Submit product data sheets for airflow measuring devices indicating minimum placement requirements, sensor density, sensor distribution, and installed accuracy to the host control system.
  - c. Submit installation, operation, and maintenance documentation.
11. Product Data Sheets: Required for each component that includes: unique identification tag that is consistent throughout the submittal, manufacturer's description, technical data, performance curves, installation/maintenance instructions, and other relevant items. When manufacturer's literature applies to a product series rather than a specific product, the data specifically applicable to the project shall be highlighted or clearly indicated by other means. Each submitted piece of literature and drawings shall clearly reference the specification and/or drawing that the submittal is to cover. General catalogs shall not be accepted as cutsheets to fulfill submittal requirements.
12. Provide PICS files indicating the BACnet functionality and configuration of each device.
13. Provide documentation of submitted products that have been tested and listed by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL), or provide a letter on the manufacturer's company letterhead indicating the anticipated date by which testing is expected to be completed. If, for any reason, BTL testing and listing has not been completed, a written commitment to upgrade installed controls to a version that meets BTL testing and listing requirements if problems are found during BTL testing is required.
14. Graphic Display: Include a sample graphic of each system and component identified in the points list with a flowchart (site map) indicating how the graphics are to be linked to each other for system navigation.
15. Software: A list of operating system software, operator interface software, color graphic software, and third-party software.
16. Control System Demonstration and Acceptance: Provide a description of the proposed process, along with all reports and checklists to be used.
17. Clearly identify work by others in the submittal.
18. Quantities of items submitted may be reviewed but are the responsibility of the Contractor to verify.



D. Operation and Maintenance Manual:

1. In addition to the requirements of Section 230500, submit an electronic copy of the O&M manuals in PDF format.
2. Provide three complete sets of manuals.
3. Each O&M manual shall include:
  - a. Table of contents with indexed tabs dividing information as outlined below.
  - b. Definitions: List of all abbreviations and technical terms with definitions.
  - c. Warranty Contacts: Names, addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of contractors installing equipment and controls and service representatives of each.
  - d. Licenses, Guarantees, and Warranties: Provide documentation for all equipment and systems.
  - e. System Components: Alphabetical list of all system components, with the name, address, and telephone number of the vendor.
  - f. Operating Procedures: Include procedures for operating the control systems; logging on/off; enabling, assigning, and reporting alarms; generating reports; collection, displaying, and archiving of trended data; overriding computer control; event scheduling; backing up software and data files; and changing setpoints and other variables.
  - g. Programming: Description of the programming language (including syntax), statement descriptions (including algorithms and calculations used), point database creation and modification, program creation and modification, and use of the editor.
  - h. Engineering, Installation, and Maintenance: Explain how to design and install new points, panels, and other hardware; recommended preventive maintenance procedures for all system components, including a schedule of tasks (inspection, cleaning, calibration, etc.), time between tasks, and task descriptions; how to debug hardware problems; and how to repair or replace hardware. A list of recommended spare parts.
  - i. Original Software: Complete original issue CDs for all software provided, including operating systems, programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
  - j. Software: One set of CDs containing an executable copy of all custom software created using the programming language, including the setpoints, tuning parameters, and object database.
  - k. Graphics: A glossary or icon symbol library detailing the function of each graphic icon and graphics creation and modification. One set of CDs containing files of all color graphic screens created for the project.

E. Training Manual:

1. Provide a course outline and training manuals for each training class.

F. Record Documents:

1. Submit record documentation per Section 230500.
2. Provide a complete set of "as-built" drawings and application software on CDs. Provide drawings as AutoCAD or Visio compatible files. Provide two copies of the "as-built" drawings with revisions clearly indicated in addition to the documents on compact disk. All as-built drawings shall also be installed on the FMCS server in a dedicated directory. Provide all product data sheets in PDF format.
3. Submit two hard copies and one electronic copy of as-built versions of the shop drawings, including product data and record drawings with revisions clearly indicated. Provide floor plans showing actual locations of control components including panels, thermostats, sensors, and hardware.
4. Provide all completed testing and commissioning reports and checklists, along with all trend logs for each system identified in the points lists.
5. Submit printouts of all graphic screens with current values (temperatures, pressures, etc.) to the Architect/Engineer verifying completion and proper operation of all points.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Provide factory-shipping cartons for each piece of equipment and control device. Maintain cartons through shipping, storage, and handling as required to prevent equipment damage. Store equipment and materials inside and protected from weather.
- B. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping control devices to unit manufacturer.

#### **1.06 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION**

- A. Flow Switches.
- B. Temperature Sensor Sockets.
- C. Gauge Taps.
- D. Automatic Dampers.

#### **1.07 AGENCY AND CODE APPROVALS**

- A. All products shall have the following agency approvals. Provide verification that the approvals exist for all submitted products with the submittal package.
  1. UL-916; Energy Management Systems.
  2. C-UL listed to Canadian Standards Association C22.2 No. 205-M1983 "Signal Equipment."
  3. EMC Directive 89/336/EEC (European CE Mark).

4. FCC, Part 15, Subpart J, Class A Computing Devices.

## **1.08 ACRONYMS**

A. Acronyms used in this specification are as follows:

1. B-AAC BACnet Advanced Application Controller
2. B-ASC BACnet Application Specific Controller
3. BTL BACnet Testing Laboratories
4. DDC Direct Digital Controls
5. FMCS Facility Management and Control System
6. GUI Graphic User Interface
7. IBC Interoperable BACnet Controller
8. IDC Interoperable Digital Controller
9. LAN Local Area Network
10. NAC Network Area Controller
11. ODBC Open DataBase Connectivity
12. OOT Object Oriented Technology
13. OPC Open Connectivity via Open Standards
14. PICS Product Interoperability Compliance Statement
15. PMI Power Measurement Interface
16. POT Portable Operator's Terminal
17. TCC Temperature Control Contractor
18. TCS Temperature Control System
19. WAN Wide Area Network
20. WBI Web Browser Interface

## **1.09 SUMMARY**

- A. Provide new standalone FMCS for this project.
- B. TCC shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and service necessary for a complete and operating Temperature Control System (TCS) and Facility Management and Control System (FMCS) using Direct Digital Controls as shown on the drawings and as described herein.
- C. All labor, material, equipment and software not specifically referred to herein or on the plans that is required to meet the intent of this specification shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner.
- D. The Owner shall be the named license holder of all software associated with any and all incremental work on the project.

---

## 1.10 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

### A. Connection:

1. Wireless control systems/functions are acceptable.
  - a. Wireless System Architecture:
    - 1) The system communications between the network controller(s) and the thermostats shall be a wireless mesh network architecture.
    - 2) The wireless mesh network configuration must adhere to the IEEE 802.15.4 specification and operate in the band of 2.4GHz as a frequency hopping, spread spectrum network.
    - 3) The wireless mesh network shall constitute a wireless communications path between the wireless coordinator(s) and wireless thermostat backplates.
    - 4) The line of site (LOS) range from a wireless coordinator and the wireless thermostat backplate shall be specified at 3,000 feet or greater, and the LOS range from backplate to backplate shall be specified at 1,000 ft.
    - 5) Each wireless thermostat backplate shall incorporate wireless mesh network 'hopping' technology, allowing the communications to 'hop' from one backplate to the next.
    - 6) The wireless mesh network configuration must be 'self-healing', attempting to finding alternate paths to the end destination of the communications in the event a known primary path is unavailable.
    - 7) Contractor is responsible to add all equipment necessary (e.g., repeaters) to make system complete and operating. Wireless repeaters shall extend the range of the mesh network and shall provide multiple data routes. Repeaters shall have 15 user-selectable channels. Wireless repeaters shall support up to 15 devices. Power requirements shall be 110 VAC standard outlet (converted to 3.3 VDC by repeater internal adaptor) or 5-30 VDC external DC power supply. Operating frequency band shall be 2.4 GHz ISM Band. Repeaters shall be equipped with omni-directional dipole antennas at 2.4 to 2.5 GHz. Units shall operate at 32degF to 122degF conditions.
  - b. Components allowed for wireless:
    - 1) Room sensors (e.g., thermostats, RH, CO2).
    - 2) Application specific controllers.
  - c. Battery shall be replaceable with expected operating life of 15 years based on 30-second transmission frequency.
  - d. Wireless Testing: The Contractor shall conduct all system testing. This shall include all calibration and adjustments of equipment controls, troubleshooting, and final adjustments or corrective action that may be required to provide a complete system that provides the specified performance and all required system features and functions listed herein and as further detailed on the drawings.
    - 1) At a minimum, the installer shall perform the following inspections and tests of the installed wireless controls system:

- a) Verify that all features and functionality are operating properly.
- b) Verify that the system receives signal from source and synchronizes all devices as specified. If not, Contractor is responsible to add all equipment necessary (e.g., repeaters) to make system complete and operating.
- c) Verify that each device receives proper signals.
- d) Verify that all controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.

#### **1.11 SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT**

- A. The Owner shall be the named license holder of all software associated with any and all incremental work on the project(s). In addition, the Owner shall receive ownership of all job-specific configuration documentation, data files, configuration tools, and application-level software developed for the project. This shall include, but is not limited to, all custom, job-specific software code and documentation for all configuration and programming that is generated for a given project and/or configured for use with the NAC, FMCS Server(s), and any related LAN/WAN/intranet and/or Internet connected routers and devices. Provide the Owner with all required IDs and passwords for access to any component or software program. The Owner shall determine which organizations shall be named in the SI organization ID ("orgid") of all software licenses. Owner shall be free to direct the modification of the "orgid" in any software license, regardless of supplier.

#### **1.12 JOB CONDITIONS**

- A. Cooperation with Other Trades: Coordinate the Work of this section with that of other sections to ensure that the Work will be carried out in an orderly fashion. It is this Contractor's responsibility to check the Contract Documents for possible conflicts between the Work of this section and that of other crafts in equipment location; pipe, duct and conduit runs; electrical outlets and fixtures; air diffusers; and structural and architectural features.

#### **1.13 WARRANTY**

- A. Refer to Section 230500 for warranty requirements.
- B. Within the warranty period, any defects in the work provided under this section due to faulty materials, methods of installation or workmanship shall be promptly (within 48 hours after receipt of notice) repaired or replaced by this Contractor at no expense to the Owner.
- C. Warranty requirements include furnishing and installing all FMCS software upgrades issued by the manufacturer during the one-year warranty period.
- D. Update all software and back-ups during warranty period and all user documentation on the Owner's archived software disks.

#### **1.14 WARRANTY ACCESS**

- A. The Owner shall grant to this Contractor reasonable access to the TCS and FMCS during the warranty period.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. BACnet Protocol:
  - 1. Johnson Controls: Metasys Extended Architecture

#### **2.02 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE**

- A. General:
  - 1. The Temperature Control System (TCS) and Facility Management Control System (FMCS) shall consist of a network of interoperable, standalone digital controllers, a computer system, graphic user interface software, printers, network devices, valves, dampers, sensors, and other devices as specified herein.
  - 2. The installed system shall provide secure password access to all features, functions and data contained in the overall FMCS.
- B. Open, Interoperable, Integrated Architectures:
  - 1. All components and controllers supplied under this Division shall be true "peer-to-peer" communicating devices. Components or controllers requiring "polling" by a host to pass data are not acceptable.
  - 2. The supplied system must be able to access all data using standard Web browsers without requiring proprietary operator interface and configuration programs. An Open DataBase Connectivity (ODBC) or Structured Query Language (SQL) compliant server database is required for all system database parameter storage. This data shall reside on a supplier-installed server for all database access. Systems requiring proprietary database and user interface programs are not acceptable.
  - 3. Hierarchical or "flat" topologies are required to have system response times as indicated below and to manage the flow and sharing of data without unduly burdening the customer's internal intranet network.
    - a. Maximum acceptable response time from any alarm occurrence (at the point of origin) to the point of annunciation shall not exceed 5 seconds for network connected user interfaces.
    - b. Maximum acceptable response time from any alarm occurrence (at the point of origin) to the point of annunciation shall not exceed 60 seconds for remote or dial-up connected user interfaces.

## **2.03 NETWORKS**

- A. The Local Area Network (LAN) shall be a 100 megabits/sec Ethernet network supporting BACnet, Java, XML, HTTP, and SOAP. Provide support for multiple Network Area Controllers (NACs), user workstations and, if specified, a local server.
- B. Local area network minimum physical and media access requirements:
  - 1. Ethernet; IEEE Standard 802.3.
  - 2. Cable; 100 Base-T, UTP-8 wire, Category 6.
  - 3. Minimum throughput; 100 Mbps.
- C. Communication conduits shall not be installed closer than six feet from 110VAC or higher transformers or run parallel within six feet of electrical high-power cables. Route the cable as far from interference generating devices as possible. Where communication wire must cross 110VAC or higher wire, it must do so at right angles.
- D. Ground all shields (earth ground) at one point only to eliminate ground loops. Provide all shield grounding at the controller location, with the shield at the sensor/device end of the applicable wire being left long and "safed" off in an appropriate manner.
- E. There shall be no power wiring more than 30 VAC rms run in conduit with communications wiring. In cases where signal wiring is run in conduit with communication wiring, run all communication wiring and signal wiring using separate twisted pairs (24awg) in accordance with the manufacturer's wiring practices.

## **2.04 REMOTE NETWORK ACCESS**

- A. For Local Area Network installations, provide access to the LAN from a remote location via the Internet. The Owner shall provide a connection to the Internet to enable this access via high speed cable modem, asynchronous digital subscriber line (ADSL) modem, ISDN line, T1 Line or via the customer's intranet to a corporate server providing access to an Internet Service Provider (ISP). Customer agrees to pay monthly access charges for connection and ISP.

## **2.05 NETWORK AREA CONTROLLER (NAC)**

- A. The TCC shall supply one or more Network Area Controllers (NAC) as part of this contract. Number of NACs required depends on the type and quantity of devices provided under Divisions 23 and 26. The TCC shall determine the quantity and type of devices.
- B. NAC shall be provided with open connectivity to any manufacturer's BACnet programmable or application specific direct digital controllers. These controllers shall be JACE 8000 Series models or the identical hardware private label equivalent. The programmable controllers and application specific controllers provided under this section shall be able to be programmed by their respective engineering software application tools through the Niagara-based supervisory controllers from the Ethernet level network. The engineering software application tools shall be able to be loaded on a personal computer with Ethernet connectivity, and no additional hardware shall be required to connect to and download any programmable or application specific controller.

- C. Each NAC shall provide the interface between the LAN or WAN and the field control devices and shall provide global supervisory control functions over the control devices connected to the NAC. It shall execute application control programs to provide:
  - 1. Calendar functions.
  - 2. Scheduling.
  - 3. Trending.
  - 4. Alarm monitoring and routing.
  - 5. Time synchronization.
  - 6. Integration of all controller data.
  - 7. Network Management functions.
- D. The Network Area Controller shall provide the following hardware features as a minimum:
  - 1. One Ethernet Port - 10/100 Mbps.
  - 2. One RS-232 port.
  - 3. One LonWorks Interface Port - 78KB FTT-10A (for LonWorks systems only).
  - 4. One RS-485 port.
  - 5. Battery backup.
  - 6. Flash memory for long-term data backup. (If battery backup or flash memory is not supplied, the controller shall contain a hard disk with at least 1 gigabyte storage capacity.)
  - 7. The NAC must be capable of operation over a temperature range of 32°F° to 122°F°.
  - 8. The NAC must be capable of withstanding storage temperatures of between 0°F° and 158°F°.
  - 9. The NAC must be capable of operation over a humidity range of 5% RH to 95% RH, non-condensing.
- E. The NAC shall provide multiple user access to the system and support for ODBC or SQL. Databases resident on the NAC shall be ODBC-compliant or must provide an ODBC data access mechanism to read and write data stored within it.
- F. The NAC shall support standard Web browser access via the Internet or an intranet and a minimum of five (5) simultaneous users.
- G. Event Alarm Notification and Actions:
  - 1. The NAC shall provide alarm recognition, storage; routing, management, and analysis to supplement distributed capabilities of equipment or application specific controllers.
  - 2. The NAC shall be able to route any alarm condition to any defined user location whether connected to a LAN, remote via dial-up telephone connection, or WAN.
  - 3. Alarm generation shall be selectable for annunciation type and acknowledgement requirements including, but not limited to:



- a. Alarm
    - b. Normal
  - 4. Provide for the creation of a minimum of eight alarm classes with different routing and acknowledgement properties, e.g. security, HVAC, Fire, etc.
  - 5. Provide timed (scheduled) routing of alarms by class, object, group, or node.
  - 6. Provide alarm generation from binary object "runtime" and/or event counts for equipment maintenance. The user shall be able to reset runtime or event count values with appropriate password control.
- H. Treat control equipment and network failures as alarms and annunciated.
- I. Annunciate alarms in any of the following manners as defined by the user:
- 1. Screen message text.
  - 2. E-mail of the complete alarm message to multiple recipients. Provide the ability to route and e-mail alarms based on:
    - a. Day of week.
    - b. Time of day.
    - c. Recipient.
  - 3. Pagers via paging services that initiate a page on receipt of e-mail message.
  - 4. Graphic with flashing alarm object(s).
  - 5. Printed message, routed directly to a dedicated alarm printer.
- J. The FMCS shall record the following for each alarm:
- 1. Time and date.
  - 2. Location (building, floor, zone, office number, etc.).
  - 3. Equipment tag.
  - 4. Acknowledge time, date, and user who issued acknowledgement.
  - 5. Number of occurrences since last acknowledgement.
- K. Give defined users proper access to acknowledge any alarm.
- L. A log of all alarms shall be maintained by the NAC and/or a server (if configured in the system) and shall be available for review by the user.
- M. Provide a "query" feature to allow review of specific alarms by user-defined parameters.
- N. A separate log for system alerts (controller failures, network failures, etc.) shall be provided and available for review by the user.

- O. An error log to record invalid property changes or commands shall be provided and available for review by the user.

## **2.06 BACNET FMCS**

- A. The intent of this specification is to provide a peer-to-peer networked, standalone, distributed control system with the capability to integrate ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135-2001 BACnet, MODBUS, OPC, and other open and proprietary communication protocols in one open, interoperable system.
- B. The supplied computer software shall employ object-oriented technology (OOT) for representation of all data and control devices in the system. Adherence to industry standards including the latest ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135 (BACnet) to assure interoperability between all system components is required. For each BACnet device, the device supplier must provide a PICS document showing the installed device's compliance level. Minimum compliance is Level 3; with the ability to support data read and write functionality. Physical connection of BACnet devices shall be via Ethernet (BACnet Ethernet/IP) and/or RS-485 (BACnet MSTP).
- C. Interoperable BACnet Controller (IBC):
  - 1. Controls shall be microprocessor based Interoperable BACnet Controllers (IBC) in accordance with the latest ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135. Provide IBCs for unit ventilators, fan coils, heat pumps, terminal air boxes (TAB) and other applications. The application control program shall reside in the same enclosure as the input/output circuitry that translates the sensor signals. Provide a PICS document showing the installed system's compliance level to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135. Minimum compliance is Level 3.
  - 2. The IBCs shall be listed by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) as follows:
    - a. BACnet Building Controller(s) (B-BC).
    - b. BACnet Advanced Application Controller(s) (B-AAC).
    - c. BACnet Application Specific Controller(s) (B-ASC).
  - 3. The IBCs shall communicate with the NAC.
  - 4. Each IBC sensor shall connect directly to the IBC and shall not use any of the I/O points of the controller. The IBC Sensor shall provide a two-wire connection to the controller that is polarity and wire type insensitive. The IBC sensor shall provide a communications jack for connection to the BACnet communication trunk to which the IBC controller is connected. The IBC sensor, the connected controller, and all other devices on the BACnet bus shall be accessible by the POT.
  - 5. All IBCs shall be fully application programmable and shall at all times maintain their BACnet Level 3 compliance. Controllers offering application selection only (non-programmable) require a 10% spare point capacity to be provided for all applications. Store all control sequences within or programmed into the IBC in non-volatile memory that does not depend on a battery to be retained.
  - 6. The Contractor supplying the IBCs shall provide documentation for each device, with the following information at a minimum:
    - a. BACnet Device; MAC address, name, type and instance number.

- b. BACnet Objects; name, type and instance number.
- 7. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the proper BACnet objects are provided in each IBC.
- D. Object Libraries:
  - 1. A standard library of objects shall be included for development and setup of application logic, user interface displays, system services, and communication networks.
  - 2. The objects in this library shall be capable of being copied and pasted into the user's database and shall be organized according to their function. In addition, the user shall have the capability to group objects created in their application and store the new instances of these objects in a user-defined library.
  - 3. In addition to the standard libraries specified here, the system supplier shall maintain an on-line accessible (over the Internet) library, available to all registered users, to provide new or updated objects and applications as they are developed.
  - 4. All control objects shall conform to the control objects specified in the BACnet specification.
  - 5. The library shall include applications or objects for the following functions, at a minimum:
    - a. Scheduling Object: The schedule must conform to the schedule object as defined in the BACnet specification, providing seven-day plus holiday and temporary scheduling features and a minimum of 10 on/off events per day. Data entry to be by graphic sliders to speed creation and selection of on-off events.
    - b. Calendar Object: The calendar must conform to the calendar object as defined in the BACnet specification, providing 12-month calendar features to allow for holiday or special event data entry. Data entry to be by graphic "point-and-click" selection. This object must be "linkable" to any or all scheduling objects for effective event control.
    - c. Override Object: Provide override object that is capable of restarting equipment turned off by other energy saving programs to maintain occupant comfort or for equipment protection.
    - d. Start-Stop Time Optimization Object: Provide a start-stop time optimization object to start equipment just early enough to bring space conditions to desired conditions by the scheduled occupancy time. Also, allow equipment to be stopped before the scheduled unoccupied time just far enough ahead to take advantage of the building's "flywheel" effect for energy savings. Provide automatic tuning of all start-stop time object properties based on historical performance.

- e. Demand Limiting Object: Provide a demand-limiting object that is capable of controlling demand for any selected energy utility (electric, oil, gas, etc.). The object shall be able to monitor a demand value and predict (using a sliding window prediction algorithm) the demand at the end of the user-defined interval period (1 to 60 minutes). This object shall also accommodate a utility meter time sync pulse for fixed interval demand control. Upon a prediction that will exceed the user-defined demand limit (supply a minimum of 6 per day), the demand limiting object shall issue shed commands to either turn off user specified loads or modify equipment setpoints to provide the desired energy reduction. If the list of sheddable equipment is not enough to reduce the demand to below the setpoint, display a message on the user's screen (as an alarm) instructing the user to take manual actions to maintain the desired demand. The shed lists are specified by the user and shall be selectable to be shed in either a fixed or rotating order to control which equipment is shed the most often. Upon suitable reductions in demand, the demand-limiting object shall restore the equipment that was shed in the reverse order in which it was shed. Each sheddable object shall have a minimum and maximum shed time property to provide both equipment protection and occupant comfort.
6. The library shall include control objects for the following functions:
- a. Analog Input Object: Minimum requirement is to comply with the BACnet standard for data sharing. Allow high, low and failure limits to be assigned for alarming. Also, provide a time delay filter property to prevent nuisance alarms caused by temporary excursions above or below the user defined alarm limits.
  - b. Analog Output Object: Minimum requirement is to comply with the BACnet standard for data sharing.
  - c. Binary Input Object: Minimum requirement is to comply with the BACnet standard for data sharing. The user must be able to specify either input condition for alarming. This object must also include the capability to record equipment runtime by counting the amount of time the hardware input is in an "on" condition. The user must be able to specify either input condition as the "on" condition.
  - d. Binary Output Object: Minimum requirement is to comply with the BACnet standard for data sharing. Properties to enable minimum on and off times for equipment protection as well as start-to-start delay must be provided. Incorporate the BACnet Command Prioritization priority scheme to allow multiple control applications to execute commands on this object with the highest priority command being invoked. Provide 16 levels of priority as a minimum. Systems not employing the BACnet method of contention resolution are not acceptable.
  - e. PID Control Loop Object: Minimum requirement is to comply with the BACnet standard for data sharing. Each individual property must be adjustable to allow proportional control only, or proportional with integral control, or proportional, integral and derivative control.
  - f. Comparison Object: Allow a minimum of two analog objects to be compared to select either the highest, lowest, or equality between the two linked inputs. Also, allow limits to be applied to the output value for alarm generation.
  - g. Math Object: Allow a minimum of four analog objects to be tested for the minimum or maximum, or the sum, difference, or average of linked objects. Also, allow limits to be applied to the output value for alarm generation.

- h. Custom Programming Objects: Provide a blank object template for the creation of new custom objects to meet specific user application requirements. This object must provide a simple BASIC-like programming language that is used to define object behavior. Provide a library of functions including, but not limited to, math and logic functions and string manipulation. Also, provide a comprehensive on-line debug tool to allow complete testing of the new object. Allow new objects to be stored in the library for reuse.
  - i. Interlock Object: Provide an interlock object that provides a means of coordination of objects within a piece of equipment, such as an air handler or other similar types of equipment. An example is to link the return fan to the supply fan such that, when the supply fan is started, the return fan object is also started automatically without the user having to issue separate commands or to link each object to a schedule object. In addition, the control loops, damper objects, and alarm monitoring (such as return air, supply air, and mixed air temperature objects) will be inhibited from alarming during a user-defined period after startup to allow for stabilization. When the air handler is stopped, the interlocked return fan is also stopped, the outside air damper is closed, and other related objects within the air handler unit are inhibited from alarming, thereby eliminating nuisance alarms during the off period.
  - j. Temperature Override Object: Provide an object whose purpose is to override a binary output to an "on" state in the event a user-specified high or low limit value is exceeded. Link this object to the desired binary output object as well as to an analog object for temperature monitoring to cause the override to be enabled. This object will execute a start command at the Temperature Override level of start/stop command priority, unless changed by the user.
  - k. Composite Object: Provide a container object that allows a collection of objects representing an application to be encapsulated to protect the application from tampering or to more easily represent large applications. This object must have the ability to allow the user to select the appropriate parameters of the "contained" application that are represented on the graphic shell of this container.
7. The object library shall include objects to support the integration of devices connected to the Network Area Controller (NAC). Provide the following as part of the standard library included with the programming software:
- a. LonMark/LonWorks Devices: These devices shall include, but not be limited to, devices for control of HVAC, lighting, access, and metering. Provide LonMark manufacturer-specific objects to facilitate simple integration of these devices. Support all network variables defined in the LonMark profile. The device manufacturer shall provide information (type and function) regarding network variables not defined in the LonMark profile.
  - b. For devices not conforming to the LonMark standard, provide a dynamic object that can be assigned to the device based on network variable information provided by the device manufacturer. Device manufacturer shall provide an XIF file, resource file, and documentation for the device to facilitate device integration.
  - c. For BACnet devices, provide the following objects:
    - 1) Analog In.
    - 2) Analog Out.

- 3) Analog Value.
- 4) Binary.
- 5) Binary In.
- 6) Binary Out.
- 7) Binary Value.
- 8) Multi-State In.
- 9) Multi-State Out.
- 10) Multi-State Value.
- 11) Schedule Export.
- 12) Calendar Export.
- 13) Trend Export.
- 14) Device.
- d. For each BACnet object, provide the ability to assign the object a BACnet device and object instance number.
- e. For BACnet devices, provide the following support at a minimum:
  - 1) Segmentation.
  - 2) Segmented Request.
  - 3) Segmented Response.
  - 4) Application Services.
  - 5) Read Property.
  - 6) Read Property Multiple.
  - 7) Write Property.
  - 8) Write Property Multiple.
  - 9) Confirmed Event Notification.
  - 10) Unconfirmed Event Notification.
  - 11) Acknowledge Alarm.
  - 12) Get Alarm Summary.
  - 13) Who-has.
  - 14) I-have.
  - 15) Who-is.
  - 16) I-am.
  - 17) Subscribe COV.
  - 18) Confirmed COV notification.
  - 19) Unconfirmed COV notification.

- 20) Media Types.
- 21) Ethernet.
- 22) BACnet IP Annex J.
- 23) MSTP.
- 24) BACnet Broadcast Management Device (BBMD) function.
- 25) Routing.

## **2.07 TERMINAL AIR BOX (TAB) CONTROLLERS**

- A. FMCS Volume Controller: Electronic, furnished and installed by TCC. Boxes shall have pressure independent control to maintain constant air volume regardless of duct pressure changes up to 6 inches w.c. and shall be accurate down to 0.004" velocity pressure. Provide velocity and static sensor at box inlet for use by unit controller. Set boxes for maximum and minimum settings shown on the drawings. Refer to Section 233600 for additional information.
- B. The controller shall support various digital and analog inputs and outputs as needed for damper control, control valves, electric coils, airflow sensors, remote heating, occupancy sensors, etc. and shall be capable of independent occupancy scheduling.
- C. Controller shall provide continuous zone temperature histories internal to device for up to 24 hours and perform its own limit and status monitoring and alarms to limit unnecessary communications.
- D. Operator interface to any ASC point data or programs shall be through network resident programs or portable operator's terminal connected to the specific controller.
- E. Store all system setpoints, proportional bands, control algorithms, and other programmable parameters such that a power failure of any duration does not necessitate reprogramming of the controller.
- F. BACnet TAB controllers shall either be B-AAC devices or B-ASC devices as required to meet the performance and BTL listing.

## **2.08 DATA COLLECTION AND STORAGE (TRENDING REQUIREMENTS)**

- A. The NAC shall be able to collect data for any property of any object and store resident in the NAC that shall have, at a minimum, the following configurable properties:
  - 1. Designating the log as interval or deviation.
  - 2. For interval logs, configure the object for time of day, day of week and the sample collection interval.
  - 3. For deviation logs, configure the object for the deviation of a variable to a fixed value. This value, when reached, will initiate logging of the object.
  - 4. For all logs, provide the ability to set the maximum number of data stores for the log and to set whether the log will stop collecting when full or rollover the data on a first-in, first-out basis.

5. Each log shall have the ability to have its data cleared on a time-based event or by a user-defined event or action.
- B. Store all log data in a relational database in the NAC that is accessible from a server (if the system is so configured) or a standard Web browser.
- C. All log data, when accessed from a server, shall be capable of being manipulated using standard SQL statements.
- D. All log data shall be available to the user in ALL the following data formats:
  1. HTML.
  2. XML.
  3. Plain text.
  4. Comma or tab separated values.
- E. The NAC shall archive its log data either locally (to itself) or remotely to a server or other NAC on the network. Provide the ability to configure the following archiving properties:
  1. Archive on time of day.
  2. Archive on user-defined number of data stores in the log (buffer size).
  3. Archive when log has reached its user-defined capacity of data stores.
  4. Provide ability to clear logs once archived.

## **2.09 AUDIT LOG**

- A. Provide and maintain an audit log that tracks all activities performed on the NAC. Provide the ability to specify a buffer size for the log and the ability to archive log based on time or when the log has reached its user-defined buffer size. Provide the ability to archive the log locally (to the NAC), to another NAC on the network, or to a server. For each log entry, provide the following data:
  1. Time and date.
  2. User ID.
  3. Change or activity: i.e., change setpoint, add or delete objects, commands, etc.

## **2.10 DATABASE BACKUP AND STORAGE**

- A. The NAC shall automatically backup its database on a user-defined time interval.
- B. Store copies of the current database and, at the most, the recently saved database in the NAC. The age of the most recently saved database shall depend on the user-defined database save interval.
- C. Store the NAC database in XML format to allow viewing and editing. Other formats are acceptable as long as XML format is supported.



---

## 2.11 GRAPHIC USER INTERFACE SOFTWARE

### A. Operating System:

1. Provide computer with the most current Microsoft-based operating system with which the GUI has proven compatibility.

B. The GUI shall employ browser-like functionality for ease of navigation. It shall include a tree view (similar to Windows Explorer) for quick viewing of, and access to, the hierarchical structure of the database. In addition, menu pulldowns and toolbars shall employ buttons, commands and navigation to permit the operator to perform tasks with basic computing skills. These shall include, but are not limited to, forward/backward buttons, home button, and a context sensitive locator line (similar to a URL line) that displays the location and the selected object identification.

C. Point Organization: Organize points by equipment categories, location, or other means acceptable to Owner.

D. Real-Time Displays: The GUI shall support the following graphic features and functions:

1. Graphic screens shall be developed using any drawing package capable of generating a GIF, BMP, or JPG file. Use of proprietary graphic file formats is not acceptable. In addition to, or in lieu of, a graphic background, the GUI shall support the use of scanned pictures.
2. Graphic screens shall be able to contain objects for text, real-time values, animation, color spectrum objects, logs, graphs, HTML or XML document links, schedule objects, hyperlinks to other URLs, and links to other graphic screens.
3. Graphics shall support layering, and each graphic object shall be configurable for assignment to a layer. A minimum of six layers shall be supported.
4. Modifying common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and setpoints, shall be accomplished graphically.
  - a. Schedule times shall be adjusted using a graphic slider without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
  - b. Holidays shall be set by using a graphic calendar without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
5. Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be made by selecting the object and the appropriate command from a pop-up menu. No text entry shall be required.
6. Adjustments to analog objects, such as setpoints, shall be made by selecting the object and using a graphic slider to adjust the value. No text entry shall be required.

E. System Configuration: At a minimum, the GUI shall include the necessary software and components to enable the operator to perform the following tasks with proper password access:

1. Create, delete or modify control strategies.
2. Add/delete objects.
3. Tune control loops by adjusting control loop parameters.
4. Enable or disable control strategies.

5. Generate hard copy records or control strategies on a printer.
  6. Select alarm points and define the alarm state.
  7. Select points to be trended and initiate the recording of values automatically.
  8. View any trend as a graph.
- F. Security: Each operator shall be required to log on to that system with a user name and password to view, edit, add, or delete data. System security shall be selectable for each operator. The system administrator shall be able to set passwords and security levels for all other operators. Each operator password shall be able to restrict the operator's access for viewing and/or changing each system application, full screen editor, and object. Each operator shall be automatically logged off the system if no keyboard or mouse activity is detected. This auto log-off time shall be set per operator password. Store all system security data in an encrypted format.
- G. System Diagnostics: The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all workstations, printers, modems, network connections, building management panels, and controllers. Annunciate the failure of any device to the operator.
- H. Alarm Console:
1. The system shall have a dedicated alarm window or console. This window will notify the operator of an alarm condition, and allow the operator to view details of the alarm and to acknowledge the alarm.
  2. When the alarm console is enabled, a separate alarm notification window will supersede all other windows on the desktop and shall not be capable of being minimized or closed by the operator. This window will notify the operator of new alarms and un-acknowledged alarms. Alarm notification windows or banners that can be minimized or closed by the operator are not acceptable. The use of the alarm console can be enabled or disabled by the system administrator.

## 2.12 WEB BROWSER CLIENTS

- A. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard Web browser such as Internet Explorer, Firefox, or Chrome. Systems requiring additional software to enable a standard Web browser to reside on the client machine, or manufacturer-specific browsers, are not acceptable.
- B. The Web browser shall provide the same view of the system, in terms of graphics, schedules, calendars, logs, etc., and provide the same interface methodology as is provided by the Graphic User Interface. Systems that require different views or that require different means of interacting with objects, such as schedules or logs, are not permitted.
- C. The Web browser client shall provide:
1. User log-on identification and password shall be required. If an unauthorized user attempts access, display a blank web page. Implement security using Java authentication and encryption techniques to prevent unauthorized access.
  2. Graphic screens developed for the GUI shall be the same screens used for the Web browser client. The web browser interface shall support all animated graphic objects supported by the GUI.

3. HTML programming shall not be required to display system graphics or data on a Web page. HTML editing of the Web page shall be allowed if the user desires a specific look or format.
4. Store all graphic screens in the Network Area Controller (NAC) without requiring any graphics storage on the client machine.
5. Real-time values displayed on a Web page shall update automatically without requiring a manual "refresh" of the Web page.
6. Users shall have administrator-defined access privileges. Depending on the access privileges assigned, the user shall be able to perform the following:
  - a. Modify common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and setpoints, graphically.
    - 1) Schedule times shall be adjustable using a graphic slider, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
    - 2) Holidays shall be set using a graphic calendar, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
  - b. Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be made by right-clicking the selected object and selecting the appropriate command from a pop-up menu. No text entry shall be required.
  - c. View logs and charts.
  - d. View and acknowledge alarms.
  - e. Setup and execute SQL queries on log and archive information
7. The system shall be able to specify a user's (as determined by the log-on user identification) home page. Provide the ability to limit a specific user to just his/her defined home page. From the home page, links to other views or pages in the system shall be possible, if allowed by the system administrator.
8. Graphic screens on the Web Browser client shall support hypertext links to other locations on the Internet or on intranet sites by specifying the Uniform Resource Locator (URL) for the desired link.

### **2.13 GRAPHIC USER INTERFACE COMPUTER HARDWARE (LAPTOP COMPUTER)**

- A. Provide a High-Mid Range CPU as defined by [www.cpubenchmark.net](http://www.cpubenchmark.net) with Intel or AMD processor and SSD hard drive of at least 1-terabyte minimum hard drive and 16.0 GB RAM. Laptop computer shall be equipped with minimum 15" screen.
- B. The workstation operating system shall be the latest version of Microsoft Windows and Microsoft internet browser.
- C. Connect to the FMCS network via a 10/100 Mbps Ethernet network interface card.
- D. Provide a color laser system printer with a minimum 600 x 600-dpi resolution and 12 ppm print speed.

---

## 2.14 SYSTEM PROGRAMMING

- A. The GUI software shall perform system programming and graphic display engineering. Access to the GUI software shall be through password access as assigned by the system administrator.
- B. Provide a library of control, application, and graphic objects to enable creation of all applications and user interface screens. Applications shall be created by selecting the control objects from the library, dragging or pasting them on the screen, and linking them together using a built-in graphic connection tool. Completed applications may be stored in the library for future use. GUI screens shall be created in the same fashion. Data for the user displays shall be obtained by graphically linking the user display objects to the application objects to provide "real-time" data updates. Any real-time data value or object property may be connected to display its current value on a user display. Provide all software tools or processes to create applications and user interface displays.
- C. Programming Methods:
  - 1. Provide the capability to copy objects from the supplied libraries or from a user-defined library to the user's application. Link objects with a graphic linking scheme by dragging a link from one object to another. Object links will support one-to-one, many-to-one, or one-to-many relationships. Linked objects shall maintain their connections to other objects regardless of where they are positioned on the page and shall show link identification for links to objects on other pages for easy identification. Links will vary in color depending on the type of link; e.g., internal, external, hardware, etc.
  - 2. Configuration of each object shall be done through the object's property sheet using fill-in-the-blank fields, list boxes, and selection buttons. Use of custom programming, scripting language, or a manufacturer-specific procedural language for configuration is not acceptable.
  - 3. The software shall provide the ability to view the logic in a monitor mode. When on-line, the monitor mode shall provide the ability to view the logic in real time for easy diagnosis of the logic execution. When off-line (debug), the monitor mode shall allow the user to set values to inputs and monitor the logic for diagnosing execution before it is applied to the system.
  - 4. All programming shall be done in real time. Systems requiring the uploading, editing, and downloading of database objects are not allowed.
  - 5. The system shall support object duplication in a customer's database. An application, once configured, can be copied and pasted for easy reuse and duplication. All links, other than to the hardware, shall be maintained during duplication.

## 2.15 DDE DEVICE INTEGRATION

- A. The NAC shall support the integration of device data via Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) over the Ethernet network. The NAC shall act as a DDE client to another software application that functions as a DDE server.
- B. Provide the required objects in the library included with the Graphic User Interface programming software to support the integration of these devices into the FMCS. Objects provided shall include, at a minimum:

1. DDE Generic AI Object.
2. DDE Generic AO Object.
3. DDE Generic BO Object.
4. DDE Generic BI Object.

## **2.16 MODBUS SYSTEM INTEGRATION**

- A. The NAC shall support integration of device data from Modbus RTU, ASCII, and TCP control system devices. Connect to the Modbus system via an RS-232, RS485, or Ethernet IP as required by the device.
- B. Provide the required objects in the library included with the GUI programming software to support the integration of the Modbus system data into the FMCS. Objects provided shall include, at a minimum:
  1. Read/Write Modbus AI Registers.
  2. Read/Write Modbus AO Registers.
  3. Read/Write Modbus BI Registers.
  4. Read/Write Modbus BO Registers.
- C. The NAC shall perform all scheduling, alarming, logging and global supervisory control functions of the Modbus system devices.
- D. The FMCS supplier shall provide a Modbus system communications driver. The equipment system vendor that provided the equipment using Modbus shall provide documentation of the system's Modbus interface and shall provide factory support at no charge during system commissioning.

## **2.17 SOFTWARE**

- A. IDC/IBCs shall operate totally standalone and independent of a central computer for all specified control applications.
- B. Software shall include a complete operating system (OS), communications handler, point processing, energy management application packages as specified herein, standard control algorithms and specific control sequences (IDC/IBC) and an Owner/user custom control calculation package complete with interpreter.
- C. OS software shall be PROM resident, operate in real time, provide prioritized task scheduling, control time programs, monitor and manage communications, and scan inputs and outputs.
- D. Each IDC/IBC panel shall include the following energy management routines:
  1. Time of day scheduling.
  2. Optimum start/stop.
  3. Peak demand limiting.

4. Economizer control.
  5. PID control.
  6. Supply air reset.
  7. Outdoor air reset.
- E. Input/output point processing software shall include:
1. Update of all connected input and output points at least once per second.
  2. Analog to digital conversion, scaling and offset, correction of sensor non-linearity, sensing no response or failed sensors, and conversion of values to 32-bit floating point format. Retain both the maximum and minimum values sensed for each analog input in memory. It shall be possible to input subsets of standard sensor ranges to the A/D converter and assign gains to match the full-scale 32-bit conversion to achieve high accuracy readout.
  3. A reasonability check on all analog inputs against previous values and discarding of values falling outside preprogrammed reasonability limits.
  4. Assignment of proper engineering units and status conditions to all inputs and outputs.
  5. Analog input alarm comparison with the ability to assign two individual sets of high and low limits (warning and alarm) to an input or to assign a set of floating limits (alarm a reset schedule or FMCS control point) to the input. Assign each alarm a unique differential to prevent a point from oscillating in and out of alarm. Make alarm comparisons of each scan cycle.
  6. Adjustment of timing from two seconds to two minutes in one-second increments to eliminate nuisance alarms on startup.
- F. Command Control software shall manage the receipt of commands from the server and from control programs.
1. Provide command delay to prevent simultaneous energizing of loads. Delay must be programmable from 0 to 30 seconds.
  2. Assign each command a command and residual priority to manage conflicts created by multiple programs having access to the same command point. Allow only outputs with a higher command priority to execute. Whenever a command is allowed to execute, its assigned residual priority shall replace the existing residual priority.
  3. A "fixed mode" option (override) shall allow inputs to and outputs from control programs to set to a fixed state or value. When in the "fixed mode", assign inputs and outputs high residual command priority to prevent override by application programs.
- G. Alarm lockout software shall prevent nuisance alarms. On initial start-up of mechanical equipment, assign a "timed lockout" period to analog points to allow them to reach a stable condition before activating alarm comparison logic. Lockout period shall be programmable for each point from 0 to 90 minutes in one-minute increments.
- H. A "hard lockout" shall also be provided to positively lock out alarms when equipment is turned off or when a true alarm depends on the condition of an associated point. Hard lockout points and lockout initiators shall be operator programmable.

- 
- I. Runtime shall be accumulated based on the status of a digital input point. It shall be possible to totalize either on time or off time up to 10,000 hours with one-minute resolution. Runtime counts shall reside in non-volatile memory and have DCP resident runtime limits assignable through the operator's terminal.
  - J. A transition counter shall count the number of times a device is cycled on or off. Counter shall be non-volatile and capable of counting 600,000 cycles. Limits shall be assignable to counts to provide maintenance alarm printouts.
  - K. Custom IDC/IBC programs shall meet the control strategies called for in the sequence of operation of these specifications. Each IDC/IBC shall have resident in its memory and available to the programs a full library of IDC/IBC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic, and relational operators. Provide the following features:
    - 1. Proportional Control, Proportional plus Integral (PI), Proportional plus Integral plus Derivative (PID), and Adaptive Control (self-learning). Use Adaptive Control where the controlled flow rate is variable (such as TAB units and variable flow pumping loops). The adaptive control algorithm shall monitor the loop response to output corrections and adjust the loop response characteristics in accordance with the time constant changes imposed by variable flow rates. The algorithm shall operate in a continuous self-learning manner and shall retain in memory a stored record of the system dynamics so that, on system shutdown and restart, the learning process starts from where it left off. Standard PID algorithms are not acceptable substitutes for variable flow applications since they will provide satisfactory control at only one flow rate and will require continued manual fine tuning.
    - 2. All IDC/IBC setpoints, gains and time constants associated with IDC/IBC programs shall be available to the operator for display and modification via the operator workstation.
    - 3. The execution interval of each IDC/IBC loop shall be adjustable from 2 to 120 seconds in one-second increments.
    - 4. IDC/IBC control programs shall assign initialization values to all outputs so controlled devices assume a failsafe position on start-up.
  - L. Provide time and event programming (TEP) capability to initiate a controlled sequence of events for execution at a specific time or upon the occurrence of an event. Minimum program features required are:
    - 1. Analog points commandable to a specific value.
    - 2. Digital points commandable to a specific state; e.g. on or off; fast, slow or off.
    - 3. Initiator to be a specific day and time or a specific event; e.g. an alarm.
    - 4. Manual initiation via operator's command.
    - 5. Commands must honor command delays (to prevent current surges), and assigned minimum ON and OFF times.
    - 6. Commands must honor command and residual priority structures allowing higher priority commands (like smoke control) to override lower priority commands (like time of day scheduling) and residual priority.
    - 7. Ability to chain TEPs.

8. Ability to enable and disable TEPs individually.
  9. Ability to enable/disable TEP initiators.
- M. Store Energy Management application programs and associated data files in non-volatile or 72-hour battery backed RAM memory. Individual programs shall be accessible from the operator workstation for enabling/disabling and program parameter modification and shall include:
1. Time Programs:
    - a. Provide an independent start and stop program time for each system identified in the points list.
    - b. It shall be possible to assign two independent start and stop times/days to any equipment connected to a controller.
  2. Exception Day Scheduling:
    - a. Provide an Exception Day program for holiday and other planned exceptions to time programs. Exception schedules shall be DSC resident and operator programmable up to one year in advance.
    - b. The program shall allow definition of up to 32 exception time spans. Define each span by calendar start day and calendar stop day.
  3. An IDC/IBC resident temporary scheduler shall allow operators to modify present time program control of equipment. Minimum feature set required is:
    - a. Ability to alter time schedules as much as six days in advance.
    - b. Ability to alter either start time, stop time or both for each day.
    - c. Temporary schedule shall be in effect for all days specified.
    - d. Automatically delete the temporary schedule and restore program to normal schedule after execution.
    - e. Ability to assign schedule changes as permanent as well as temporary.
- N. The IDC/IBC shall have built-in, non-descriptive, self-test procedure for checking the indication lights, digital display, and memory. It shall display advisories for maintenance, performance, and/or software problems.
- O. All electronics shall be:
1. Standard locally stocked modular boards.
  2. Plug-in type.
  3. Furnish all ROM programs unlocked.

## **2.18 DAMPER ACTUATORS**

- A. Damper Actuators - Electronic:



1. Actuator shall be UL 873 or 60730 listed and provided with NEMA housing for applicable environment, electronic overload protection to prevent actuator damage due to over-rotation. Mount actuator by means of a V-bolt dual nut clamp with a V-shaped toothed cradle, directly couple and mount to the valve bonnet stem, or ISO-style direct-coupled mounting pad. Actuators shall be capable of being mechanically and electrically paralleled to increase torque, if required.
2. Actuators shall be warranted for a period of five (5) years from the date of production, with the first two (2) years unconditional.
3. Proportional actuator position shall be proportional to analog or pulse width modulating signal from electronic control system.
4. Damper End Switches: Where shown on the drawings or sequences, provide end switches to prove damper reaches open/closed position.

## 2.19 CONTROL INSTRUMENTATION

### A. Temperature Sensors:

1. Room Temperature Sensor:
  - a. Sensor Only: Two-piece construction, ventilated plastic enclosure, off-white color, thermistor sensing element or resistance temperature device (RTD), 45°F° to 90°F° operating range,  $\pm\pm 0.50^\circ\text{F}^\circ$  accuracy, no setpoint adjustment or override button.
  - b. Sensor with Setpoint Adjustment: Two-piece construction, ventilated plastic enclosure, off-white color, thermistor sensing element or resistance temperature device (RTD), 45°F° to 90°F° operating range,  $\pm\pm 0.50^\circ\text{F}^\circ$  accuracy, with exposed single setpoint adjustment (no numeric temperature scale - provide with a single warmer/cooler or red/blue visual scale), no override button.
  - c. Sensor with Override: Two-piece construction, ventilated plastic enclosure, off-white color, thermistor sensing element or resistance temperature device (RTD), 45°F° to 90°F° operating range,  $\pm\pm 0.50^\circ\text{F}^\circ$  accuracy, occupied/unoccupied override button with LED, no setpoint adjustment.
  - d. Sensor with Setpoint Adjustment and Override: Two-piece construction, ventilated plastic enclosure, off-white color, thermistor sensing element or resistance temperature device (RTD), 45°F° to 90°F° operating range,  $\pm\pm 0.50^\circ\text{F}^\circ$  accuracy, with exposed single setpoint adjustment (no numeric temperature scale - provide with a warmer/cooler or red/blue visual scale), occupied/unoccupied override button with LED.
2. Duct Temperature Sensor:
  - a. RTD type averaging sensor. 1000 ohm platinum RTD; accuracy: minimum +/- 1.2°F; range -40°F-220°F.
  - b. Sensing element shall have a minimum of 1 foot of sensor length for each 2 square feet of duct or coil area. Sensor shall be arranged evenly across the duct or coil such that no point in the duct or coil is more than 1 foot away from the sensor.

- 
- c. Probe type thermistors are acceptable in VAV box duct applications downstream of reheat coils.
- B. Enthalpy Sensors: Duct-mounted enthalpy sensor shall include solid state temperature and humidity sensors with electronics that shall output a 4-20 ma signal input to the controller upon a varying enthalpy (total heat) to enable economizer modes of operation when outside air enthalpy is suitable for free cooling.
- C. Flow Measuring Devices:
- 1. Insertion Type Vortex Flow Meters:
    - a. General:
      - 1) Each flow meter shall be an insertion type vortex style flow meter for volumetric or mass flow.
    - b. Construction:
      - 1) Wetted materials constructed of 316 stainless steel.
      - 2) Connection: Flanged.
      - 3) Each meter shall be wet calibrated against a primary volumetric standard that is accurate to within 0.1% and traceable to NIST.
      - 4) FM Class I, Div. 1 Groups B, C, D.
    - c. Output:
      - 1) Each transmitter shall produce an analog output signal, 4-20 mA that is directly proportional to volumetric flow rate.
      - 2) Alarm: Solid state relay, 40VDC
      - 3) Totalizer Pulse: 50 millisecond pulse, 40VDC.
      - 4) Volumetric or LP Mass: One analog, one totalizer pulse, Hart.
      - 5) Multi-variable: Up to 3 analog signals, 3 alarms, one totalizer pulse, HART.
      - 6) Modbus or BACnet process monitoring.
      - 7) Turndown up to 100:1.
      - 8) The output shall be connected with display unit.
      - 9) All wire shall be carried into 1/2" NPTM conduit connection. The meter shall include 25 feet of cable to connect with a remotely mounted display unit.
      - 10) Unless scheduled or indicated otherwise, the initial span adjustment of each transmitter shall be 0-120% of the scheduled maximum flow rate.
    - d. Accuracy:
      - 1) Volumetric Flow Rate: Liquids -  $\pm\pm 0.7\%$  of rate; Gas/Steam -  $\pm\pm 1\%$  of rate.
    - e. Repeatability:
      - 1) Volumetric Flow Rate:  $\pm\pm 0.2\%$  of rate.

- f. Display Unit:
  - 1) Pair with display unit described below.
- g. Warranty:
  - 1) Provide performance warranty of at least two years from the date of installation and startup. Warranty shall cover parts and labor for repair or replacement of the meter assembly. Performance during the warranty period shall satisfy the above-stated requirements for accuracy and repeatability.
- h. Manufacturers:
  - 1) Armstrong AVF
  - 2) Siemens Sitrans

D. Current Measuring Devices:

- 1. Current Switches for Constant Speed Motors:
  - a. Digital device rated for amperage load of motor or device with split core design, adjustable high and low trip points, 600 VAC rms isolation, induced power from the monitored load, LED indicator lamps for output status and sensor power. The device shall sense overloading, belt-loss, and power failure with a single signal.
- 2. Current Switches for Motors Controlled by VFD:
  - a. Digital device rated for amperage load of motor or device with split core design, factory programmed to detect motor undercurrent conditions on variable or constant volume loads, self-calibrating, positive status indication, LED indicator lamps, 600 VAC rms isolation, induced power from the monitored load with NO output. The current sensor shall store the motor current operating parameters in non-volatile memory and have a pushbutton reset to clear the memory if the operating parameters change or the sensor is moved to another load. The device shall sense overloading, belt-loss, and power failure with a single signal. The sensor shall be mounted on the load side of variable frequency drives.

E. Miscellaneous Devices:

- 1. Application Specific Controller Power Supply:
  - a. For use with terminal air box.
  - b. Provide multiple enclosures with the following accessories and components as required to provide 24VAC power to terminal air boxes, differential pressure monitors, damper actuators, valve actuators, and other components and devices as required.
  - c. NEMA-1 steel enclosures (12"x12"x6") with separate high and low voltage compartments and separate access covers.
  - d. Either one 300 VA power supply with three 100 VA Class 2 outputs, or one 500 VA power supply with five 100 VA Class 2 outputs.

- e. Primary side shall receive 480/277/240/120 input to 24 VAC ungrounded, isolated output on the secondary side.
  - f. Each secondary output shall include a 4 amp breaker, on/off switch, and LED indicator. Terminal blocks shall accept 16-22 AWG wire.
  - g. Acceptable Manufacturer:
    - 1) RIB Functional Devices Model MSH300A-LVC or PSH500A-LVC
  - 2. Control Relays:
    - a. Form "C" contacts rated for the application with "push-to-test" contact transfer feature and an integral LED to indicate coil energization.
    - b. Mount all relays and power supplies in a NEMA 1 enclosure beside the FMCS panel or controlled device and clearly label their functions.
  - 3. Drain Pan Condensate Overflow Switch: Float with integral magnet overflow switch conforming to UL508. No standby power required.
- F. Outdoor Weather Station:
- 1. Outdoor rated ventilated plastic enclosure, off-white color, radiation shield including the following parameters.
  - 2. Measured Parameters:
    - a. Temperature Sensor: Thermistor sensing element or resistance temperature device (RTD).
      - 1) Operating Range: -40°F to 140°F
      - 2) Accuracy:  $\pm 0.54^{\circ}\text{F}$  at 68°F
    - b. Humidity Sensors: Fully electronic with no moving parts or parts requiring periodic service.
      - 1) Measurement Range: 0-100% RH
      - 2) Accuracy:
        - a)  $\pm 3\%$  of reading from 0%-90% RH at 50°F to 86°F
        - b)  $\pm 5\%$  of reading from 0%-90% RH at -4°F to 50°F and 86°F to 140°F.
  - 3. Calculated Parameters:
    - a. Dew Point Temperature in °F
    - b. Wet Bulb Temperature in °F
    - c. Enthalpy. Enthalpy sensor shall output a 4-20 ma signal input to the controller upon a varying enthalpy (total heat) to enable economizer modes of operation when outside air enthalpy is suitable for free cooling.

## **2.20 CONDUIT AND BOXES**

- A. Conduit and Boxes: Refer to Electrical Section 260533 for materials, sizing, and other requirements
- B. Conduit and Box Identification (Color and Labeling):
  - 1. Refer to the Temperature Control Contractor notes located on the mechanical cover sheet for raceway and box color requirements.
  - 2. Refer to Electrical Section 260553 for raceway and box labeling requirements.

## **2.21 WIRE AND CABLE**

- A. Wire and Cable: Refer to Electrical Section 260513 for wire and cable materials.
  - 1. Wire and Cable Color: Refer to the Temperature Control Contractor notes located on the mechanical cover sheet for wire and cable color requirements.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.01 GENERAL INSTALLATION**

- A. Verify that systems are ready to receive work. Beginning of installation means installer accepts existing conditions.
- B. Install system and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Drawings of the TCS and FMCS network are diagrammatic only. Any apparatus not shown but required to meet the intent of the project documents shall be furnished and installed without additional cost.
- D. Install all operators, sensors, and control devices where accessible for service, adjustment, calibration, and repair. Do not install devices where blocked by piping or ductwork. Devices with manual reset or limit adjustments shall be installed below 6'-0" if practical to allow inspection without using a ladder.
- E. Verify locations of wall-mounted devices (such as thermostats, temperature and humidity sensors, and other exposed sensors) with drawings and room details before installation. Coordinate mounting heights to be consistent with other wall-mounted devices. Maximum height above finished floor shall not exceed ADA mounting requirements.
- F. Mount control panels adjacent to associated equipment on vibration-free walls or freestanding angle iron supports. One cabinet may accommodate more than one system in same equipment room.
- G. After completion of installation, test and adjust control equipment.
- H. Check calibration of instruments. Recalibrate or replace.

- I. Furnish and install conduit, wire, and cable per the National Electric Code, unless noted otherwise in this section.
- J. All controls associated with the proper operation of air handling units, pumps, or other mechanical equipment served by emergency power shall be connected to the emergency power system. Control components shall be powered from the equipment branch. In no instance shall panel be connected to the life safety branch of the emergency power system. Panels may be connected to a common 20 amp, 120 volt circuit provided the total load on the circuit does not exceed 16 amps. Circuit conductors shall be sized per the table below. All power connections to the control panels shall be performed by a licensed electrician at the cost of this Contractor. Submit circuit information (total amperage on circuit, conductors length, and panel) for control panels to the Architect/Engineer for approval.

Circuit Load (Amps)	Circuit Max Length	Feeder Size
≤ 5	≤ 200ft	2#12 & 1#12 ground in 3/4" conduit.
≤ 10	≤ 100ft	2#12 & 1#12 ground in 3/4" conduit.
≤ 16	≤ 75ft	2#12 & 1#12 ground in 3/4" conduit.
≤ 200	≤ 325ft	2#10 & 1#10 ground in 3/4" conduit.
≤ 100	≤ 160ft	2#10 & 1#10 ground in 3/4" conduit.
≤ 75	≤ 100ft	2#10 & 1#10 ground in 3/4" conduit.

- K. All hardware, software, equipment, accessories, wiring (power and sensor), piping, relays, sensors, power supplies, transformers, and instrumentation required for a complete and operational FMCS system, but not shown on the electrical drawings, are the responsibility of the TCC.
- L. Labels For Control Devices:
1. Provide labels indicating service of all control devices in panels and other locations.
  2. Labels may be made with permanent marking pen in the control panels if clearly legible.
  3. Use engraved labels for items outside panel such as outside air thermostats.
  4. Labels are not required for room thermostats, damper actuators and other items where their function is obvious.
- M. VFDs:
1. This project includes several variable frequency drives to control the flow of fans and/or pumps based on a control variable.
  2. Verify output signal required, 4-20 mA or 0-10V dc, with the EC.
  3. If VFD has a bypass feature, auxiliary contacts on the drive may not be used for motor status. A separate relay must be used to indicate motor rotation in either hand or auto positions.

4. If a separate current transmitter or switch is indicated for status, install this device between the VFD and the motor. In this case, the drive status may be connected to the auxiliary contacts in the VFD.
5. Some devices, such as low limits and fire alarm shutdown relays, must be hardwired to the fan motor. Make connections such that fan will shut down whether in hand or auto position if the unit has a bypass feature.

### **3.02 GRAPHIC DISPLAY**

- A. Create a customized graphic for each piece of equipment indicated on the itemized points list.
- B. Components shall be arranged on graphic as installed in the field.
- C. Include each graphic point listed in the itemized points list using real time data.
- D. Provide a graphic representation of the following:
  1. Where there are multiple buildings, color code the campus map by the systems serving that building. The building graphic shall be linked to the graphic for that building's systems.
  2. Provide an overall floor plan of each floor of the building color coded by zone linked to the TAB for that zone. The zone shall be linked to the graphic for that zone's TAB graphic.
  3. Show the location of each thermostat on the floor plan.
- E. The FMCS shall include full graphic operator interface to display the following graphics as a minimum:
  1. Home page to include a minimum of six critical points: Outside Air Temperature, Outside Air Relative Humidity, Enthalpy, KWH, KW, etc.
  2. Graphic floor plans accurately depicting rooms, walls, hallways, and showing accurate locations of space sensors and major mechanical equipment.
  3. Detailed graphics for each mechanical system including AHUs, ERUs, EFs, chillers, and boilers, as a minimum.
  4. Access corresponding system drawings, technical literature, and sequences of operations directly from each system graphic.
- F. The FMCS shall include individual graphical buttons to access the following data stored in PDF format:
  1. Project control as-built documentation including all TCS drawings, diagrams and sequences of operation.
  2. TCS Bill of Material for each system, e.g. AHU, RTU, FCU, boiler, etc.
  3. Technical literature specification data sheets for all components listed in the TCS Bill of Material.

### **3.03 CONDUIT AND BOXES INSTALLATION**

- A. Conduit and Box Installation: Refer to Electrical Section 260533 for execution and installation.

- B. Conduit and Box Identification (color and labeling) installation. Refer to Electrical Section 260553 for raceway and box identification installation.
- C. Outlet Box Schedule: Thermostat/temperature sensor:
  - 1. Dry Interior Locations: Provide 4" square galvanized steel with raised cover to fit flush with finished wall line. When located in concrete block walls, provide square edge title cover of sufficient depth to extend out to face of block or masonry boxes.
  - 2. Other Conditions: Refer to Electrical Section 260533 for requirements.

### **3.04 WIRE AND CABLE INSTALLATION**

- A. Wire and Cable Installation: Refer to Electrical Section 260513 for execution and installation.
- B. Field Quality Control:
  - 1. Inspect wire and cable for physical damage and proper connection.
  - 2. Torque test conductor connections and terminations to manufacturer's recommended values.
  - 3. Perform continuity test on all conductors.
  - 4. Protection of cable from foreign materials:
    - a. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide adequate physical protection to prevent foreign material application or contact with any cable type. Foreign material is defined as any material that would negatively impact the validity of the manufacturer's performance warranty. This includes, but is not limited, to overspray of paint (accidental or otherwise), drywall compound, or any other surface chemical, liquid or compound that could come in contact with the cable, cable jacket or cable termination components.
    - b. Overspray of paint on any cable, cable jacket or cable termination component will not be accepted. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to replace any component containing overspray, in its entirety, at no additional cost to the project. Cleaning of the cables with harsh chemicals is not allowed. This requirement is regardless of the PASS/FAIL test results of the cable containing overspray. Should the manufacturer and warrantor of the structured cabling system desire to physically inspect the installed condition and certify the validity of the structured cabling system (via a signed and dated statement by an authorized representative of the structured cabling manufacturer), the Owner may, at their sole discretion, agree to accept said warranty in lieu of having the affected cables replaced. In the case of plenum cabling, in addition to the statement from the manufacturer, the Contractor shall also present to the Owner a letter from the local Authority Having Jurisdiction stating that they consider the plenum rating of the cable to be intact and acceptable.
- C. Installation Schedule:



1. Conduit terminations to all devices installed in applications with rotating equipment, expansion/contraction or vibration shall be made with flexible metallic conduit, unless noted otherwise. Final terminations to exterior devices installed in damp or wet locations shall be made with liquidtight flexible metallic conduit. Terminations in hazardous areas, as defined in the National Electrical Code, shall be made with flexible conduit rated for the environment.

### **3.05 FMCS INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate voltage and ampacity of all contacts, relays, and terminal connections of equipment being monitored or controlled. Voltage and ampacity shall be compatible with equipment voltage and be rated for full ampacity of wiring or overcurrent protection of circuit controlled.
- B. Naming Conventions: Coordinate all point naming conventions with Owner standards. In the absence of Owner standards, naming conventions shall use equipment designations shown on plans.

### **3.06 PREPARATION FOR BALANCING**

- A. Verify that all dampers are in the position indicated by the controller (e.g., open, closed or modulating).
- B. Check the calibration and setpoints of all controllers.
- C. Check the locations of all thermostats and humidistats for potential erratic operation from outside influences such as sunlight, drafts, or cold walls.
- D. Check that all sequences operate as specified. Verify that no simultaneous heating and cooling occurs, unless specified. Observe that heating cannot begin at TAB reheat terminals until the unit is at the minimum CFM.
- E. Verify the operation of all interlock systems.

### **3.07 TEST AND BALANCE COORDINATION**

- A. The Contractor shall furnish a single set of all tools necessary to interface to the control system for test and balance purposes.
- B. The Contractor shall provide a minimum of four (4) hours training for the Balancing Contractor in the use of these tools.
- C. In addition, the Contractor shall provide a qualified technician to assist in the test and balance process until the first 20 terminal units are balanced.
- D. The tools used during the test and balance process shall be returned at the completion of the testing and balancing.

---

### 3.08 DEMONSTRATION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. At completion of installation, provide two days minimum instruction for operators. Demonstrate operation of all controls and systems. Describe the normal operation of all equipment.

### 3.09 TRAINING

A. On-Site:

1. After completion of commissioning, the manufacturer shall provide 8 hours of training on consecutive days for 4 Owner's representatives. The training course shall enable the Owner's representatives to perform Day-to-Day Operations as defined herein. A factory-trained instructor with experience in presenting the training material and the system programmer for this project shall perform the training.
2. One month after completion of commissioning, the manufacturer shall provide 16 hours of training on consecutive days for 2 Owner's representatives. The training course shall enable the Owner's representatives to perform Advanced Operations and System Management as defined herein. A factory-trained instructor with experience in presenting the training material and the system programmer for this project shall perform the training.
3. Six months after completion of commissioning or one month prior to the end of the warranty period, the manufacturer shall provide 8 hours of training on consecutive days for 4 Owner's representatives. The training course shall update the Owner's representatives on Day-to-Day Operations as defined herein. A factory-trained instructor with experience in presenting the training material and the system programmer for this project shall perform the training.

B. Day-to-Day Operations - Training Description:

1. Proficiently operate the system.
2. Understand control system architecture and configuration.
3. Understand FMCS systems components.
4. Understand system operation, including FMCS system control and optimizing routines (algorithms).
5. Operate the workstation and peripherals.
6. Log-on and off the system.
7. Access graphics, point reports, and logs.
8. Adjust and change system setpoints, time schedules, and holiday schedules.
9. Recognize malfunctions of the system by observation of the printed copy and graphic visual signals.
10. Understand system drawings and Operation and Maintenance manual.
11. Understand the job layout and location of control components.
12. Access data from FMCS controllers and ASCs.
13. Operate portable operator's terminals.

C. Advanced Operations - Training Description:

1. Make and change graphics on the workstation.
2. Create, delete, and modify alarms, including annunciation and routing of these.
3. Create, delete and modify point trend logs and graph or print these both on and ad-hoc basis and at user-definable time intervals.
4. Create, delete, and modify reports.
5. Add, remove, and modify system's physical points.
6. Create, modify and delete programming.
7. Add panels when required.
8. Add operator interface stations.
9. Create, delete, and modify system displays, both graphic and others.
10. Perform FMCS system field checkout procedures.
11. Perform FMCS controller unit operation and maintenance procedures.
12. Perform workstation and peripheral operation and maintenance procedures.
13. Perform FMCS system diagnostic procedures.
14. Configure hardware including PC boards, switches, communication, and I/O points.
15. Maintain, calibrate, troubleshoot, diagnose, and repair hardware.
16. Adjust, calibrate, and replace system components.

D. System Management - Training Description:

1. Maintain software and prepare backups.
2. Interface with job-specific, third-party operator software.
3. Add new users and understand password security procedures.

- E. Provide course outline and materials in accordance with the "SUBMITTALS" article in Part 1 of this section. The instructor(s) shall provide one copy of training material per student.

### **3.10 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS**

- A. Install sensors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for the environment within which the sensor operates.
- C. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported by the wall framing.
- D. All wires attached to sensors shall be air sealed in their raceways or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas affecting sensor readings.

- E. Install outdoor air temperature sensors on exterior of north wall, complete with sun shield at designated location approved by Architect/Engineer. TCC shall prime and paint the device enclosure. Color selection by Architect.

### **3.11 INSTALLATION OF FLOW METERS**

- A. Provide manufacturer's recommended lengths of straight piping upstream and downstream of the flow meter. Up to 30 diameters upstream of the flow meter may be required depending on the piping arrangement and flow meter type.
- B. Maintain adequate pull/service space.

**END OF SECTION 230900**

**SECTION 233100**

**DUCTWORK**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Galvanized Ductwork
- B. Phenolic Non-Fibrous Closed Cell Ductwork
- C. Ductwork Reinforcement
- D. Ductwork Sealants
- E. Rectangular Ductwork
- F. Round and Flat Oval Ductwork
- G. Exposed Ductwork (Rectangular, Round, or Oval)
- H. Flexible Duct
- I. Ductwork Penetrations
- J. Duct Cleaning

**1.02 REFERENCES: Conform to all applicable requirements of the following publications:**

- A. ADC Flexible Duct Performance and Installation Standards, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition 1996.
- B. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- C. ASHRAE - Handbook 2020 Systems and Equipment; Chapter 19 - Duct Construction.
- D. ASHRAE - Handbook 2021 Fundamentals; Chapter 21 - Duct Design.
- E. ASTM A90 - Standard Test Method for Weight (Mass) of Coating on Iron and Steel Articles with Zinc or Zinc-Alloy Coatings.
- F. ASTM A167- Stainless & Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, & Strip.
- G. ASTM A653 - Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
- H. ASTM A924 - Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process.
- I. ASTM E90-02 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions.
- J. ASTM E413-87 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation.
- K. AWS D9.1M/D9.1 - Sheet Metal Welding Code.

- L. IECC - International Energy Conservation Code (latest published edition)
- M. NADCA Standard 05 1997 - Requirements for the Installation of Service Openings in HVAC Systems.
- N. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.
- O. NFPA 90B - Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air- Conditioning Systems.
- P. SMACNA - Air Duct Leakage Test Manual.
- Q. SMACNA - HVAC Duct Construction Standards.
- R. SMACNA - Phenolic Duct Construction Standard 022.
- S. SMACNA - Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards - 1999 Edition.
- T. UL 181 - Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors.
- U. UL 181A - Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors
- V. UL 181B - Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors.

### **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Duct Sizes shown on drawings are inside clear dimensions. Maintain clear dimensions inside any lining.
- B. Transitions are generally not shown in single-line ductwork. Where sizes change at a divided flow fitting, the larger size shall continue through the fitting.
- C. Exterior Duct: Ductwork located outside the conditioned envelope including exposed ductwork above the roof, outside exterior walls, in attics above insulated ceilings, inside parking garages, and crawl spaces.
- D. Interior Duct: Ductwork located within the conditioned envelope including return air plenums and indirectly conditioned spaces.

### **1.04 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Reference Coordination Drawings article in Section 230500 for required duct systems electronic CAD drawings to be provided to Coordinating Contractor for inclusion into composite coordination drawings.
- B. Duct drawings shall be at 1/4" minimum scale complete with the following information:
  - 1. Actual duct routing, ductwork fittings, actual sheet metal dimensions including insulation liner and wrap, duct hanger and support types, ductwork accessories, etc. with lengths and weights noted.
  - 2. Differentiate ducts that are lined or wrapped. Include insulation thickness, type of insulation, and acoustical lagging.
  - 3. Location and size of all duct access doors.
  - 4. Room names and numbers, ceiling types, and ceiling heights.
  - 5. Indicate location of all beams, bar joists, etc. along with bottom of steel elevations for each member.

6. IMEG will provide electronic file copies of ventilation drawings for contractor's use if the contractor signs and returns an "Electronic File Transfer" waiver provided by IMEG. IMEG will not consider blatant reproductions of original file copies an acceptable alternative for coordination drawings. Architectural plans will need to be obtained from the Architect.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND SUPPORTS**

#### **A. Rectangular Duct - Single Wall:**

1. General Requirements:
  - a. All ductwork gauges and reinforcements shall be as listed in SMACNA Duct Construction Standards Chapter 2. Where necessary to fit in confined spaces, furnish heaviest duct gauge and least space consuming reinforcement.
  - b. Transitions shall not exceed the angles in Figure 4-7.
2. Exceptions and modifications to the 2005 HVAC Duct Construction Standards are:
  - a. All ducts shall be cross-broken or beaded.
  - b. Snap lock seams are not permitted.
  - c. Turning vanes shall be used in all 90° mitered elbows, unless clearly noted otherwise on the drawings. Vanes shall be as follows:
    - 1) Type 1:
      - a) Description: Single wall type with 22-gauge (0.029") or heavier vanes, 3-1/4" blade spacing, and 4" to 4-1/2" radius. Vanes hemmed if recommended by runner manufacturer. Runners shall have extra-long locking tabs. C-value independently tested at below 0.26. EZ Rail II by Sheet Metal Connectors or equal.
      - b) Usage: Limited to 3,000 fpm and vane lengths 36" and under.
    - 2) Type 2:
      - a) Description: Double wall type with 3-1/4" blade spacing, 4-1/2" radius, 24-gauge minimum, and SMACNA Type 1 runners. C-value below 0.27.
      - b) Usage: No limits other than imposed by the manufacturer. Provide intermediate support for vanes over 48" long.
    - 3) Turning vanes shall operate quietly. Repair or replace vanes that rattle or flutter.
    - 4) Runners must be installed at a 45° angle. Elbows with different size inlet and outlet must be radius type.
    - 5) Omitting every other vane is prohibited.

- d. Where smooth radius rectangular elbows are shown, they shall be constructed per SMACNA Figure 4-2. Type RE1 shall be constructed with a centerline duct radius R/W of 1.0. Where shown on drawings, Type RE3 elbows with 3 vanes shall be used with centerline duct radius R/W of 0.6 (SMACNA r/W=0.1). RE1 or RE3 elbows may be used where mitered elbows are shown if space permits. Mitered elbows (with or without turning vanes) may not be substituted for radius elbows. Do not make branch takeoffs within 4 duct diameters on the side of the duct downstream from the inside radius of radius elbows.
- e. Rectangular branch and tee connections in ducts over 1" pressure class shall be 45° entry type per Figs. 4-5 and 4-6. Rectangular straight taps are not acceptable above 1" pressure class.
- f. Bellmouth fittings shown on return duct inlets shall expand at a 60-degree total angle horizontally and vertically (space permitting) and have length of at least 25% of the smallest duct dimension.
- g. Round taps off rectangular unlined ducts shall be flanged conical or bellmouth type (equal to Buckley Bellmouth or Sheet Metal Connectors E-Z Tap), or 45° rectangular with transition to round (equal to Sheet Metal Connectors Inc. High Efficiency Takeoff). Straight taps are acceptable if pressure class is 1" or less, round duct is 12" diameter or less, and the tap is not located between fans and TAB devices.
- h. Duct offsets shall be constructed as shown on drawings. Additional offsets required in the field shall be formed of mitered elbows without turning vanes for offsets up to 30° maximum angle in accordance with SMACNA offset Type 2. Offsets of greater than 30° angle shall be formed of radius elbows with centerline radius R/W=1.0 or greater. SMACNA Type 1 offsets are not permitted.
- i. All lined duct shall utilize dovetail joints where round or conical taps occur. The dovetail joints shall extend past the liner before being folded over.
- j. Cushion heads are acceptable only downstream of TAB devices in ducts up to ± 2" pressure class, and must be less than 6" in length.
- k. Slide-on flanged transverse joint systems are acceptable provided they are a manufactured product that has been tested for conformance with Chapter 2 of the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards for sheet and joint deflection at the specified pressure class.
  - 1) Apply sealant to all inside corners. Holes at corners are not acceptable.
  - 2) Manufacturers:
    - a) Ductmate Industries - 25/35/45
    - b) Nexus
    - c) Mez
    - d) WDCI
    - e) Other manufacturers must submit test data and fabrication standards and receive Architect/Engineer's approval before any fabrication begins.



- I. Formed-on flanged transverse joint systems are acceptable provided they are a manufactured product that has been tested for conformance with Chapter 2 of the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards for sheet and joint deflection at the specified pressure class.
  - 1) Apply sealant to all inside corners. Holes at corners are not acceptable.
  - 2) Flanges shall be 24-gauge minimum (not 26 gauge).
  - 3) Manufacturers:
    - a) Lockformer TDC
    - b) TDF
    - c) United McGill
    - d) Sheet Metal Connectors
    - e) Other manufacturers must submit test data and fabrication standards and receive Architect/Engineer's approval before any fabrication begins.
- B. Round and Flat Oval Spiral Seam Ductwork - Double Wall:
  1. Conform to applicable portions of Rectangular Duct Section. Spiral seam round or flat oval double wall ductwork may be substituted for double wall rectangular ductwork where approved by the Architect/Engineer. Double wall spiral seam ductwork shall meet the standards set forth in this specification. Ductwork shall meet or exceed the specified cross-sectional area and insulation requirements. The substitution shall be coordinated with all other trades prior to installation.
  2. Interior ducts shall have an airtight outer pressure shell, a 1" insulation layer, and a perforated inner wall that completely covers the insulation.
  3. All perforated inner walls shall have a 25/50 compliant liner between the insulation and the perforated inner wall to prevent contact between fiberglass and air stream. For exterior ductwork this shall form a continuous vapor barrier.
  4. Insulation shall have flame spread/smoke developed ratings of under 25/50 per ASTM E84, NFPA 255, or UL 723.
  5. 90° elbows shall be smooth radius or have a minimum of 5 mitered joints, and R/D of at least 1.5.
  6. Duct and Fittings shall meet the required minimum gauges listed in chapter 3 of the SMACNA standards for the specified pressure class. Ribbed and lightweight duct are not permitted.
  7. Ductwork shall be suitable for up to 5,000 fpm velocity.
  8. Divided flow fittings may be separate fittings or factory installed taps with the following construction requirements:
    - a. Sound airtight, continuous welds at intersection of fitting body and tap.
    - b. Tap liner welded to inner liner with weld spacing not over 3".
    - c. Insulation packed around the tap area for complete cavity filling.

- d. Carefully fit branch connections to cut-out openings in inner liner without spaces for air erosion of insulation or sharp projections for noise and airflow disturbance.
- 9. Spot weld and bond all fitting seams in the pressure shell. Coat galvanizing damaged by welding with corrosion resistant paint to match galvanized duct color.
- 10. Support inner liner of ducts and fittings with metal spacers welded to maintain spacing and concentricity.
- 11. Ducts with minor axis under 22" shall be spiral seam type. Larger ducts may be rolled, longitudinal welded seam type. SMACNA seams RL-2 and RL-3 are not permitted.
- 12. Transverse Joint Connections:
  - a. Crimped joints are not permitted.
  - b. Provide couplings to align the inner liners. Butt joints are not permitted for inner liners. Make alignment by extending the liner of the fitting into the duct or by using a double concentric coupling with the two couplings held by spacers for rigidity and wall spacing.
  - c. Above 34" ID provide a separate coupling for inner alignment with the pressure shells joined by angle ring flanged connections.
  - d. Use outside slip couplings for fitting-to-fitting joints.
  - e. Secure all joints with at least 3 sheet metal screws before sealing.
  - f. Manufacturers, Slide-on Flanges:
    - 1) Ductmate Industries - SpiralMate
    - 2) Accuflange
    - 3) Sheet Metal Connectors
  - g. Manufacturers, Self-Sealing Duct System:
    - 1) Lindab
    - 2) Ward "Keating Coupling"

C. Hangers and Supports General Requirements:

- 1. Hanger and support materials shall be as defined within Materials and Application Specific section below.
- 2. Strap Hangers: Strap hanger shall be a minimum of 1 inch, 18 gauge attached to the bottom of ducts.
- 3. Cable Hangers:
  - a. Aircraft cable and slip cable hangers are acceptable for ducts up to 18" diameter. Protective sleeve tubing shall be used on the cable when supporting duct with exterior insulation. Corner saddles are required when supporting rectangular ductwork.
  - b. Manufacturers; Supports:

- 1) Gripple
  - 2) Ductmate
  - 3) Duro Dyne
  - 4) Architect/Engineer approved
4. Integral Corner Connector Hanger: Integral hanger and corner assembly for use with TDC/TDF style duct flanges. Die stamped offset hanger connects to the flanged corner assembly. For use with aircraft cable or 1/4" or 3/8" diameter threaded rods. Tested to hold up to 1,400 lbs.. Install per manufacturer's ratings and instructions.
- a. Manufacturers; Supports:
    - 1) EZ Hanger

## 2.02 MATERIAL AND APPLICATION SPECIFIC

### A. Galvanized Steel:

1. General Requirements:
  - a. Duct and reinforcement materials shall conform to ASTM A653 and A924.
  - b. Interior Ductwork and reinforcements: G60 galvanized (0.60 ounces per square foot total zinc coating for two sides per ASTM A90) unless noted otherwise.
  - c. Exterior Ductwork: G90 galvanized (0.90 ounces per square foot total zinc coating for two sides per ASTM A90) unless noted otherwise. G60 is not acceptable for exterior use.
  - d. Ductwork reinforcement shall be of galvanized steel.
2. Duct Hangers and Support Material:
  - a. Ductwork hangers and supports shall be of galvanized or painted steel.
  - b. All fasteners shall be galvanized or cadmium plated.

### B. Phenolic Non-Fibrous Closed Cell Ductwork - Outdoor:

1. General Requirements:
  - a. Material: CFC-free, closed cell rigid thermoset resin, 3.4 lb./cu.ft.. Minimum compressive strength of 28 psi. Inner shell shall be thermally bonded aluminum foil faced fiberglass scrim. Outer shell shall be white UV resistant 0.039" high impact resistant vinyl or 200-micron aluminum wrap.
  - b. Insulation:
    - 1) Thermal conductivity: 0.130.018 W/(m K) maximum 'K' value at 75°F.
    - 2) Minimum R-Value = 8.0

- c. Rated Velocity:  $\geq$  5000 FPM
  - 1) Rated Pressure:
  - 2) Positive: 4"w.c.
  - 3) Negative: 3"w.c.
- d. Flame spread/smoke developed ratings of less than 25/50 per ASTM E84.
- 2. Closure Materials:
  - a. Duct system shall be connected and sealed per manufacturer's recommendations to meet the leakage, pressure class, and velocity noted within these specifications.
- 3. Install hangers and supports per manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Exposed Ductwork (Rectangular, Round, and Flat Oval):
  - 1. The following applies to all ductwork exposed in finished areas in addition to requirements noted above:
    - a. Provide extra shipping protection. Use Cardboard or other protective means to prevent dents and deformed ends.
    - b. Provide cardboard or other means of protection during field fabrication. Protect from scratches. Provide stiffeners to retain shape during fabrication.
    - c. Remove all identification stickers and thoroughly clean exterior of all ducts.
    - d. Locate fitting seams on least visible side of duct.
    - e. Provide exterior finish suitable for field painting without further oil removal.
    - f. Provide ramp-type internal joint couplings. Provide bead of sealant around the inside of the duct about 1/2" from the end of the duct.
    - g. Manufacturers, Slide-on Flanges:
      - 1) Ductmate Industries
      - 2) Accuflange
      - 3) Sheet Metal Connectors
    - h. Manufacturers, Self-Sealing Duct System:
      - 1) Lindab
      - 2) Ward "Keating Koupling"
    - i. The system shall be free of visible dents and scratches when viewed from normal occupancy.
    - j. All insulation shall be internal, except at reheat coils.
  - 2. In addition to the paragraphs above, this section applies to all ductwork specified or shown as "Architecturally Exposed":

- a. All spiral ductwork fittings shall be carbon arc welded.
  - b. Grind all welds to remove irregularities.
  - c. Conical taps shall be one piece. Taps for grilles and takeoffs shall be factory installed with a continuous weld and ground smooth.
  - d. Welds shall be ground smooth and painted.
  - e. All architecturally exposed ducts shall be round or flat oval except where not possible (grilles, reheat coils, etc.).
3. Alternate manufacturers, including shop fabricated duct, must be reviewed before installation. The following information is required:
- a. Metal gauge of duct and fittings.
  - b. Fitting type and construction.
  - c. Type and size of reinforcement.
4. Hangers for Exposed Ductwork:
- a. Round Ducts:
    - 1) Threaded rod with duct fixing bracket and metal strap. Provide single threaded rod centered on the duct. Strap hanger shall be a minimum of 1 inch, 18 gauge galvanized steel wrapping the circumference of the duct. Spacing as required by SMACNA guidelines.
    - 2) Aircraft cable and slip cable hangers are acceptable for ducts up to 18" diameter. Spacing and cable size as required by SMACNA guidelines.
      - a) Manufacturers, Supports: Gripple, Ductmate, Duro Dyne, Architect/Engineer approved.
    - 3) Aircraft cable with 2-point support in standard horseshoe arrangement. Spacing and cable size as required by SMACNA guidelines.
  - b. Rectangular Ducts:
    - 1) Aircraft cable and slip cable hangers are acceptable for ducts up to 18" in maximum dimension. Corner saddles are required when supporting rectangular ductwork. Spacing and cable size as required by SMACNA guidelines.
      - a) Manufacturers, Supports: Gripple, Ductmate, Duro Dyne, Architect/Engineer approved.
    - 2) Aircraft cable with 2-point support in standard horseshoe arrangement. Corner saddles are required when supporting rectangular ductwork. Spacing and cable size as required by SMACNA guidelines.
  - c. Strut-channel and all-thread rod is not acceptable for exposed ductwork.
  - d. All fasteners shall be galvanized or cadmium plated.

---

### 2.03 DUCTWORK REINFORCEMENT

- A. All reinforcement shall be external to the duct except that tie rods may be used with the following limitations.
  - 1. Ducts must be over 18" wide.
  - 2. Duct dimensions must be increased 2" in one dimension (h or w) for each row of tie rods installed.
  - 3. Tie rods must not exceed 1/2" diameter.
  - 4. Manufacturer of tie rod system must certify pressure classifications of various arrangements, and this must be in the shop drawings.

### 2.04 DUCTWORK SEALANTS

- A. One-part joint sealers shall be water-based mastic systems that meet the following requirements: maximum 48-hour cure time, service temperature of -20°F to +175°F, resistant to mold, mildew and water, flame spread rating below 25 and smoke-developed rating below 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, suitable for all SMACNA seal classes and pressure classes. Mastic used to seal flexible ductwork shall be marked UL 181B-M. Joint sealers for use on exterior weather exposed ductwork shall be rated for -30°F to +175°F and 2000-hour minimum UV resistance per ASTM G-53.
- B. Two-part joint sealers shall consist of a minimum 3" wide mineral-gypsum compound impregnated fiber tape and a liquid sealant. Sealant system shall meet the following requirements: maximum 48-hour cure time, service temperature of 0°F to 200°F, resistant to mold, mildew, and water, flame spread rating below 25 and smoke developed rating below 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, suitable for all SMACNA seal classes and pressure classes. Joint sealers for use on exterior weather exposed ductwork shall be rated for -30°F to +175°F and 2000-hour minimum UV resistance per ASTM G-53.
- C. Pressure sensitive tape used for sealing ductwork shall be minimum 2.5-inch wide, listed and marked UL 181A-P, having minimum 60 oz/inch peel adhesion to steel, and service temperature range from -20°F to +250°F.
- D. Where pressure sensitive tape is called for on drawings and specifications for sealing flexible ductwork, tape shall be minimum 2.5-inch wide, UL 181 B-FX listed, and marked tape having minimum 60 oz/inch peel adhesion to steel and service temperature range from -20°F to +250°F.
  - 1. Manufacturers, Pressure-Sensitive Tape:
    - a. Venture Tape 1581A
    - b. Compac #340
    - c. Scotch Foil Tape 3326
    - d. Polyken 339

## 2.05 FLEXIBLE DUCT

- A. Flexible duct shall be listed and labeled as UL 181 Class 1 Air Duct Material, and shall comply with NFPA 90A and 90B, and meet GSA, FHA and other U.S. Government agency standards. Flexible duct shall bear the ADC Seal of Certification.
- B. Flame Spread/Smoke Developed: Not over 25/50.
- C. Stretch all flexible duct to prevent sags and reduce air friction. Shorten and reinstall all sagging or loose flexible duct. Avoid sharp elbows. Elbows shall maintain 1.5 diameter centerline turning radius.
- D. Install per the SMACNA Flexible Duct Manual. Secure inner layer with draw band. Wrap with pressure sensitive tape for protection prior to installing draw band. Pressure sensitive tape alone is not acceptable.
- E. Acoustic:
1. Flexible duct shall be acoustic rated in accordance with ASTM E477 and ADC Test Code FD 72-RI by ETL. Insertion loss values noted below are for flow velocities less than 2,500 fpm. Submittals shall include insertion losses ratings per sizes and lengths listed below regardless of sizes shown on the drawings.
  2. Flexible have corrosion-resistant wire helix, bonded to a nylon fabric core inner liner that prevents air from contacting the insulation, covered with minimum 1-1/2", 3/4 lb/cf density fiberglass insulation blanket, sheathed in a vapor barrier of metalized polyester film laminated to glass mesh. Usage: All areas unless noted otherwise.
  3. Inner liner shall be airtight and suitable for 6" WC static pressure. Outer jacket shall act as a vapor barrier only with permeance not over 0.1 perm per ASTM E96, Procedure A. "R" value shall not be less than 4.0 ft<sup>2</sup>\*°F\*hr/Btuh. Temperature range of at least 0-180°F. Maximum velocity of 4,000 fpm. "R" value shall not be less than 4.0 ft<sup>2</sup>\*°F\*hr/Btuh. Ducts in unconditioned spaces and ventilated attics: "R" value shall not be less than 6.0 ft<sup>2</sup>\*°F\*hr/Btuh.
  4. Minimum Acoustic Insertion Losses per octave band:
    - a. Straight Duct:

	Length	63hz	125hz	250hz	500hz	1000hz	2000hz	4000hz
6" ø	6 ft	4.0	13	15	15	16	17	16
6" ø	3 ft	2.3	4.9	5.3	5.3	5.5	5.8	5.4
8" ø	6 ft	5.7	14	13	15	16	18	16
8" ø	3 ft	2.9	5.0	4.9	5.7	5.6	5.8	5.6
12" ø	6 ft	5.5	13	12	15	15	18	13
12" ø	3 ft	2.8	4.8	4.7	5.3	5.3	5.8	4.9

- b. 90deg Elbow:

	Length	63hz	125hz	250hz	500hz	1000hz	2000hz	4000hz
6" ø	6 ft	10	15	16	17	18	17	18

	Length	63hz	125hz	250hz	500hz	1000hz	2000hz	4000hz
6" ø	3 ft	3.8	5.4	5.5	5.7	5.9	5.8	5.9
8" ø	6 ft	10	15	16	17	16	18	18
8" ø	3 ft	2.4	5.3	5.6	5.8	5.6	5.9	6.0
12" ø	6 ft	11	14	15	16	15	16	15
12" ø	3 ft	4.4	5.1	5.3	5.5	5.4	5.6	5.3

5. Usage:

- a. Take-offs from supply ducts to inlets of terminal air boxes. Do not exceed 36" in length.
- b. Connections to air inlets and outlets. Do not exceed 5'-0" in length.
- c. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1) Flexmaster USA - Type 6
  - 2) Thermaflex M-Ke

F. Radius Forming Elbows:

1. Flexible plastic radius forming elbow for use with flexible ducts to create 90deg elbow. One size for 6" to 16" diameter ducts. UL listed for return plenum spaces.
2. Usage: All supply air terminals with flexible ductwork connection.
3. Installation: Attach to flex duct and secure draw bands without crushing flex duct to form smooth radius elbow. Suspend radius forming elbow to structure. Install per manufacturer's instructions.
4. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Hart & Cooley - Smartflow
  - b. Thermaflex - Flexflow
  - c. Titus - Flexright

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide openings in ducts for thermometers and controllers.
- B. Locate ducts with space around equipment for normal operation and maintenance.
- C. Do not install ducts or other equipment above electrical switchboards or panelboards. This includes a dedicated space extending 25 feet from the floor to the structural ceiling with width and depth equal to the electrical equipment. Unless intended to serve these rooms, do not install any ductwork or equipment in electrical rooms, transformer rooms, electrical closets, telephone rooms or elevator machine rooms.



- D. Provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ducts to prevent dust from entering ductwork.
- E. Supply ductwork shall be free of construction debris, and shall comply with Level "C" of the SMACNA Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines.
- F. Repair all duct insulation and liner tears.
- G. Install manual volume dampers in branch supply ducts so all outlets can be adjusted. Do not install dampers at air terminal device or in outlets, unless specifically shown.
- H. Insulate terminal air box reheat coils. Seal insulation tight to form a tight vapor barrier.
- I. Install flexible duct in accordance with the ADC Flexible Duct Performance and Installation Standards.
- J. Install all exterior ductwork per SMACNA Fig. 6-3. Where drawings do not indicate otherwise, ductwork seams and joints shall be sealed watertight and pitched to shed water.
- K. Support all duct systems in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards: Metal and Flexible and the SMACNA Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems, where applicable. Refer to Section 230550 for seismic requirements.
- L. All duct support shall extend directly to building structure. Do not support ductwork from pipe hangers unless coordinated with piping contractor prior to installation. Do not allow lighting or ceiling supports to be hung from ductwork or ductwork supports.

### 3.02 DUCTWORK APPLICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to Ductwork Application Schedule **on drawings** for specific requirements for system, material, shape, pressure class, seal class and insulation application.

### 3.03 SPECIAL INSULATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Ductwork Accessories (Fabric Flex Connectors, Equipment Flanges, etc.):
  - 1. Insulation:
    - a. ASHRAE 90.1-2022: 1-1/2" thick Type A (R=4.5)
    - b. IECC-2021: 1-1/2" thick Type A (R=4.5)
- B. All Terminal Air Box/ Reheat Coil Headers and Duct Mounted Coil Headers:
  - 1. Insulation: 1-1/2" thick Type A (R=4.5)

### 3.04 DUCTWORK SEALING

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Openings, such as rotating shafts, shall be sealed with bushings or similar.
  - 2. Pressure sensitive tape shall not be used as the primary sealant unless it has been certified to comply with UL-181A or UL-181B by an independent testing laboratory and the tape is used in accordance with that certification.

3. All connections shall be sealed including, but not limited to, taps, other branch connections, access doors, access panels, and duct connections to equipment. Sealing that would void product listings is not required. Spiral lock seams need not be sealed.
  4. Mastic-based duct sealants shall be applied to joints and seams in minimum 3 inch wide by 20 mil thick bands using brush, putty knife, trowel, or spray, unless manufacturer's data sheet specifies other application methods or requirements.
- B. All ducts systems, regardless of pressure class, shall be Seal Class A as defined by Section 5-1 of SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual per the Energy Code, unless specifically noted otherwise. Seal Class A shall include sealing of all transverse joints, longitudinal seams, and duct wall penetrations with welds, gaskets, mastics, or fabric-embedded mastic system. Joints are inclusive of, but not limited to, girth joints, branch and sub-branch intersections, duct collar tap-ins, fitting subsections, louver and air terminal connections to ducts, access door and access panel frames and jambs, duct, plenum, and casing abutments to building structures.
- C. Double-wall ductwork: Install insulation end fittings at all transitions from double to single-wall construction.

### 3.05 TESTING

- A. Interior Duct - Less than 3" WG (positive or negative):
1. Leak testing of these pressure classes is not normally required for interior ductwork (inside the building envelope). However, leak tests will be required if, in the opinion of the Architect/Engineer, the leakage appears excessive. All exterior ductwork shall be tested. If duct has outside wrap, testing shall be done before it is applied.
  2. Leak test shall be at the Contractor's expense and shall require capping and sealing all openings.
  3. Seal ducts to bring the air leakage into compliance.
  4. Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer five business days prior to pressurizing ductwork for testing.
- B. Test Procedure:
1. Testing shall be as listed in the latest edition of the SMACNA HVAC Duct Leakage Manual, with the following additional requirements:
    - a. The required leakage class for Seal Class A, rectangular ducts, shall be 4; round shall be 2.
    - b. Test pressure shall be the specified duct pressure class. Testing at reduced pressures and converting the results mathematically is not acceptable. This is required to test the structural integrity of the duct system.
    - c. If any leak causes discernible noise at a distance of 3 feet, that leak shall be eliminated, regardless of whether that section of duct passed the leakage test.
    - d. All joints shall be felt by hand, and all discernible leaks shall be sealed.

- e. Totaling leakage from several tested sections and comparing them to the allowable leakage for the entire system is not acceptable. Each section must pass the test individually.
- f. Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer five business days prior to pressurizing ductwork for testing. Failure to notify the Architect/Engineer of pressure testing may require the contractor to repeat the duct pressure test after proper notification.
- g. Upon completion of the pressure test, the contractor shall submit an air duct leakage test summary report as outlined in the SMACNA HVAC Duct Leakage Test Manual.
- h. All access doors, taps to terminal air boxes, and other accessories and penetrations must be installed prior to testing. Including terminal air boxes in the test is not required.
- i. Positive pressure leakage testing is acceptable for negative pressure ductwork.

### **3.06 DUCTWORK PENETRATIONS**

- A. All duct penetrations of firewalls shall have fire or fire/smoke dampers where required by code.
- B. Dampers shall be compatible with fire rating of wall assembly. Verify actual rating of any wall being penetrated with Architect/Engineer.
- C. Seal all duct penetrations of walls that are not fire rated by caulking or packing with fiberglass. Install trim strip to cover vacant space and raw construction edges of all openings in finished rooms. Install escutcheon ring at all round duct openings in finished rooms. Trim strips and rings shall be same material and finish as exposed duct.

**END OF SECTION 233100**



## **SECTION 233300**

### **DUCTWORK ACCESSORIES**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Manual Volume Dampers.
- B. Duct Silencers.

##### **1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. ASTM E477-20 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Acoustical and Airflow Performance of Duct Liner Materials and Prefabricated Silencers.
- B. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.
- C. SMACNA - HVAC Duct Construction Standards (latest edition).

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS**

- A. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA Duct Construction Standards, and as indicated.
- B. Fabricate single blade dampers for duct sizes to 9-1/2 x 30 inches.
- C. Fabricate multi-blade damper of opposed blade pattern with maximum blade sizes 12" x 72". Assemble center and edge crimped blades in prime coated or galvanized channel frame with suitable hardware.
- D. Except in round ductwork 12 inches and smaller, provide end bearings. On multiple blade dampers, provide molded synthetic or oil-impregnated nylon or sintered bronze bearings.
- E. Provide locking quadrant regulators on single and multi-blade dampers.
- F. On insulated ducts, mount quadrant regulators on stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters.
- G. If blades are in open position and extend into the main duct, mount damper so blades are parallel to airflow.
- H. Contractor assembled modular manual dampers are acceptable as long as it contains the components listed above.

##### **2.02 DUCT SILENCERS**

- A. Straight Silencer

1. All silencers shall be factory fabricated by the same manufacturer, except that 'No-Loss' silencers (thicker than normal double-wall ducts) may be Contractor fabricated.
2. Duct silencers shall have length, air pressure drop, and self-generated sound ratings not to exceed the values scheduled on the drawings. Dynamic insertion ratings shall not be less than those scheduled on the drawings. Silencer inlet and outlet dimensions must match the sizes on the drawings. Transitions are not acceptable unless shown on the drawings.
3. All silencer ratings shall be determined in accordance with the ASTM E477-20 test standard. The test set-up, procedure and facility shall eliminate all effects due to flanking, directivity, end reflection, standing waves and reverberation room absorption.
4. Silencers shall be constructed of galvanized steel, have 26 gauge minimum perforated interior (22 gauge for transitional silencers), be able to withstand 8" of positive and 4" of negative pressure, and shall have inorganic, bacteria, and fungus resistant glass fiber filler [with not less than 5% compression]. Silencers shall meet SMACNA standards for the duct pressure class specified. . Fiberglass cloth or other scheduled liners shall completely separate the media from the airstream. No-media silencers shall not contain absorptive packing of any kind.
5. Silencers shall not exceed 25/50 flame spread/smoke developed per ASTM E84, NFPA 255, or UL 723.
6. All silencers shall be by the same manufacturer.
7. Manufacturers:
  - a. Vibro-Acoustics
  - b. VAW
  - c. United McGill
  - d. Semco
  - e. Ruskin Sound Control (Rink)
  - f. Dynasonics
  - g. Price
  - h. All silencers shall be by the same manufacturer

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

#### **A. General Installation Requirements:**

1. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Where duct access doors are located above inaccessible ceilings, provide ceiling access doors. Coordinate location with the Architect/Engineer.
3. Coordinate and install access doors provided by others.

4. Provide access doors for all equipment requiring maintenance or adjustment above an inaccessible ceiling. Minimum size shall be 24" x 24".
5. Provide duct test holes where indicated and as required for testing and balancing purposes.

**END OF SECTION 233300**





**SECTION 233416**  
**CENTRIFUGAL FANS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. In-line Centrifugal Fans.
- B. Performance Ratings: Bear the AMCA Certified Rating Seal - Air Performance.
- C. Fabrication: Conform to AMCA 99.

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook.
- B. AMCA 208 - Calculation of the Fan Energy Index (FEI).
- C. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating Purposes.
- D. AMCA 300 - Test Code for Sound Rating Air Moving Devices.
- E. AMCA 301 - Method of Publishing Sound Ratings for Air Moving Devices.
- F. ANSI/AFBMA 9 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings.
- G. ANSI/AFBMA 11 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings.
- H. SMACNA - HVAC Duct Construction Standards (latest edition).

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings per Section 230500. Include data on all fans and accessories. Submit sound power levels for both fan inlet and outlet at rated capacity. Submit motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories. Submit multi-speed fan curves including minimum and maximum fan speed with specified operating points clearly plotted. Submit the Fan Energy Index (FEI) at the selected duty point.
- B. Submit operation and maintenance data. Include instructions for lubrication, motor and drive replacement, and spare parts list.

**1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect motors, shafts, and bearings from weather and construction dust.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FAN**

- A. Fan Description: In-Line Single inlet, single width. backward inclined wheel.
- B. Construction:

1. Wheel: Backward inclined, non-overloading, all aluminum wheel and hub. Dynamically balanced.
  2. Housing: Galvanized steel construction with stainless steel or cadmium plated fasteners and galvanized steel belt guard.
  3. Drive: Belt drive with motor mounted on top of housing. Cast iron, adjustable pitch sheaves. V-belt drive sized for 1.5 of maximum horsepower. Screw adjustment belt tightener.
  4. Support: Steel or aluminum mounting frame with baked enamel finish. Steel mounting brackets suitable for any mounting position.
- C. Protection:
1. Belt guards with tachometer knockouts on indoor fans. Removable weather covers on outdoor fans.
- D. Motor (as scheduled on the drawings):
1. Induction: Furnish externally mounted open drip-proof, ball bearing motor, with adjustable mounts for belt tightening. Refer to motor specification for motor requirements.
    - a. Disconnect as scheduled on drawings.
- E. Bearings: Regreasable bearings rated for 40,000 hour B-10 life at specified operating point. Extend lubrication lines outside of housing.
- F. Manufacturers:
1. Jenco Fan
  2. Carnes
  3. Cook
  4. PennBarry
  5. Greenheck
  6. FloAire

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:
1. Prime all fan parts after cleaning, but prior to assembly. Apply a second finish coat to all exterior surfaces and all accessible interior surfaces after assembly. Apply rust preventative coating to shafts.
  2. Do not operate fans for any purpose until ductwork is clean, filters are in place, bearings lubricated, and fan has been test run under observation.

3. Install flexible connections between fan and ductwork. Install metal bands of connectors parallel with minimum 1" flex between ductwork and fan while running.
4. Provide safety screen where inlet or outlet is exposed. Screens shall meet OSHA regulations for size of openings.

**END OF SECTION 233416**



**SECTION 233600**  
**AIR TERMINAL UNITS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Single Duct Variable Air Volume Terminal Box.
- B. Fan Powered Variable Air Volume Terminal Box.

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- B. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilation Systems.
- C. UL 181 - Factory-Made Air Ducts and Connectors.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Section 230500.
- B. Submit shop drawings indicating configuration, general assembly, and materials used in fabrication.
- C. Submit product data indicating configuration, general assembly, and materials used in fabrication. Include catalog performance ratings which indicate airflow, static pressure, and NC designation.
- D. Include schedules listing discharge and radiated sound power level for each of second through sixth octave bands at inlet static pressures of one to 4 inch WG.
- E. Submit electrical power/controls wiring diagrams and product data indicating general assembly, components, safety controls, and service connections.
- F. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit operation and maintenance data.
- B. Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts lists.
- C. Include directions for resetting constant volume regulators.

---

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 ACOUSTICAL CONSIDERATIONS (THIS APPLIES TO ALL UNITS)**

- A. All units shall have noise data certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 885-98 with 5/8" 20-lb. density mineral fiber ceiling tile and shall not produce space noise values over NC-35 due to radiated and airborne noise combined. Acoustical considerations shall take priority over sizes noted in schedule. It is the manufacturer's responsibility to increase inlet size to meet acoustic levels scheduled.

### **2.02 SINGLE DUCT VARIABLE AIR VOLUME TERMINAL BOX**

- A. Casing: Minimum 22 gauge galvanized steel.
  - 1. Insulation: Insulation shall be UL listed and meet NFPA 90A requirements. Fully insulated with:
    - a. 3/4" elastomeric closed cell insulation liner.
    - b. Usage: All supply air systems.
- B. Damper Blade: Extruded aluminum or minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel. Nylon or bronze bushings on damper shafts. Dampers shall seal against gasketed stops. Leakage shall not exceed 4% of unit nominal cfm at 3.0 inches WG inlet static pressure.
- C. Inlet Flow Sensor: Provide "cross" □□ or "ring□□" style velocity and static sensor at inlet to box for use by unit controller.
- D. Damper Operators: Furnish all mounting brackets, relays, and linkages. Damper operator shall be provided as follows:
  - 1. Electronic: Provided by the manufacturer and installed in the factory. Operator shall be UL listed, electronic direct coupled with spring return to normal position for modulating or two-position control as noted in the sequence of control. Actuator shall be 24 VAC with proportional control, electronic overload protection to prevent actuator damage due to over-rotation and "V" bolt clamp with matching "V" toothed cradle (single bolt or setscrew fasteners not acceptable).
- E. Electronic Volume Regulator/Controller: Set boxes for maximum and minimum settings shown on the drawings. Electronic volume regulator/controller shall be provided as follows:
  - 1. Provided by the manufacturer and installed in the factory.
  - 2. Provided by the TCC and installed by the manufacturer. Refer to Section 230900 for additional information.
  - 3. Provided and installed by the TCC in the field.
- F. Electric Heating Coil: Open nichrome type electric resistance coils, automatic reset thermal cutout primary safety device, manual reset thermal cutout secondary safety device, airflow switch interlock, disconnect switch on face of integral control panel, magnetic mercury contactors, 24-volt control, control voltage transformer and fusing. Capacity and voltage shall be as scheduled on the drawings. Capacity control shall be as follows:

1. Modulating SCR electric control
- G. Boxes shall not exceed the static pressure drop and N.C. level scheduled on the drawings. It is the manufacturer's responsibility to increase inlet size to meet pressure drop and N.C. levels scheduled.
- H. Refer to control diagrams and notes on control drawings for complete sequence of control.
- I. Manufacturers:
  1. Carrier
  2. Titus
  3. Trane
  4. Krueger
  5. Carnes
  6. E.H. Price
  7. Tuttle & Bailey
  8. Nailor
  9. Enviro-Tec
  10. Johnson Controls Inc.
  11. Metalaire.
  12. Anemostat.

### **2.03 FAN POWERED VARIABLE AIR VOLUME TERMINAL BOX**

- A. Casing: Series minimum 22 gauge galvanized steel. Factory mounted access panel to provide access to air valve and fan.
  1. Insulation: Insulation shall be UL listed and meet NFPA 90A requirements. Fully insulated with:
    - a. 3/4" elastomeric closed cell insulation liner.
    - b. Usage: All supply air systems.
- B. Fan: FC style, galvanized steel fan wheel. Fan housing shall be 22 gauge steel and fan board shall be 18 gauge steel. Maximum motor temperature rise on all speeds of 50°F (10°C). Fan motor voltage shall be as scheduled on the drawings. Motors shall be permanently lubricated, direct drive.
  1. Pemanent split capacitor type motor.
  2. ECM set for constant CFM.

- C. Damper Blades: Extruded aluminum or minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel. Nylon or bronze bushings on damper shafts. Dampers shall seal against gasketed stops. Leakage shall not exceed 4% of unit nominal cfm at 3.0 inches WG inlet static pressure.
- D. Inlet Flow Sensor: Provide "cross" or "ring" style velocity and static sensor at inlet to box for use by unit controller.
- E. Damper Operators: Furnish all mounting brackets, relays, and linkages. Damper operator shall be provided as follows:
  - 1. Electronic: Provided by the manufacturer and installed in the factory. Operator shall be UL listed, electronic direct coupled with spring return to normal position for modulating or two-position control as noted in the sequence of control. Actuator shall be 24 VAC with proportional control, electronic overload protection to prevent actuator damage due to over-rotation and "V" bolt clamp with matching "V" toothed cradle (single bolt or setscrew fasteners not acceptable).
- F. Electronic Volume Regulator/Controller: Set boxes for maximum and minimum settings shown on the drawings. Electronic volume regulator/controller shall be provided as follows:
  - 1. Provided by the manufacturer and installed in the factory.
  - 2. Provided by the TCC and installed by the manufacturer. Refer to Section 230900 for additional information.
  - 3. Provided and installed by the TCC in the field.
- G. Electric Heating Coil: Open nichrome type electric resistance coils, automatic reset thermal cut-out primary safety device, manual reset thermal cut-out secondary safety device, airflow switch interlock, disconnect switch on face of integral control panel, magnetic [mercury] contactors, 24-volt control, control voltage transformer and fusing. Capacity and voltage shall be as scheduled on the drawings. Coil position in the discharge air position. Capacity control shall be as follows:
  - 1. Modulating SCR electric control.
- H. Fan Inlet:
  - 1. Flanged inlet for field installed elbow and filter.
  - 2. Flanged inlet for field installed ducted return and filter.
  - 3. Factory provided induced air acoustic attenuator inlet with filter.
- I. Boxes shall not exceed the static pressure drop and N.C. level scheduled on the drawings. It is the manufacturer's responsibility to increase inlet size to meet pressure drop and N.C. levels scheduled.
- J. Refer to control diagrams and notes on control drawings for complete sequence of control.
- K. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Carrier
  - 2. Titus



3. Trane
4. Krueger
5. Carnes
6. E.H. Price
7. Nailor
8. Enviro-Tec
9. Johnson Controls Inc.
10. Anemostat
11. Metalaire

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Maintain minimum working clear space for all electrical connections in accordance with NFPA 70, National Electrical Code.
- C. Provide ceiling access doors or locate units above easily removable ceiling components.
- D. Support units individually from structure. Do not support from adjacent ductwork.
- E. Where boxes are located adjacent to a wall or joist, the damper motors and control valves shall be located on the side of the box away from the wall or joist to permit easy access.
- F. Comb fins on coils to repair bent fins.
- G. Insulate terminal air box hydronic reheat coils to prevent condensation. Tape insulation tight to box. Do not insulate or interfere with actuator, access panel and control panel.

#### **3.02 ADJUSTING**

- A. All boxes shall be set to the cfm shown on the drawings. TCC shall be responsible to field recalibrate all boxes that are not set correctly.

**END OF SECTION 233600**



## **SECTION 233700**

### **AIR INLETS AND OUTLETS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Grilles And Registers.
- B. Architectural Square Panel Diffusers.
- C. Louvers.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Test and rate performance of air inlets and outlets per ASHRAE 70.
- B. Test and rate performance of louvers per AMCA 500L-99.
- C. All air handling and distribution equipment mounted outdoors shall be designed to prevent rain intrusion into the airstream when tested at design airflow and with no airflow, using the rain test apparatus described in Section 58 of UL 1995.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. AMCA 500-L-12 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Louvers for Rating.
- B. ANSI/ASHRAE 70 - Method of Testing for Rating the Air Flow Performance of Inlets and Outlets.
- C. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- D. SMACNA - Duct Construction Standards.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 230500.
- B. Submit schedule of inlets and outlets indicating type, size, location, application, and noise level.
- C. Review requirements of inlets and outlets as to size, finish, and type of mounting prior to submitting product data and schedules of inlets and outlets.
- D. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- E. Submit electrical power/controls wiring diagrams and product data indicating general assembly, components, safety controls, and service connections.

##### **1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to ANSI/NFPA 90A.

- B. Conform to ASHRAE 90.1.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 AIR TERMINALS - GRILLES AND REGISTERS**

- A. Reference to a grille means an air supply, exhaust or transfer device without a damper.
- B. Reference to a register means an air supply, exhaust or transfer device with a damper.
- C. The type of unit, margin, material, finish, etc., shall be as shown on the drawing schedule and suitable for the intended use.
- D. All margins shall be compatible with ceiling types specified (including 'Thin-Line' T-bar lay-in grid system). Any discrepancies in contract documents shall be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer, in writing, prior to Bid Date. Submission of Bid indicates ceiling and air inlet and outlet types have been coordinated.
- E. The capacity and size of the unit shall be as shown on the drawings.
- F. All units shall handle the indicated cfm as shown on the drawings while not exceeding an NC level of 25, referenced to 10-12 watts with a 10 dB room effect. .
- G. Refer to the drawings for construction material, color and finish, margin style, deflection, and sizes of grilles and registers.
- H. Provide with 3/4" blade spacing. Blades shall have steel friction pivots to allow for blade adjustment, plastic pivots are not acceptable.
- I. Corners of steel grilles and registers shall be welded and ground smooth before painting. Aluminum grilles and registers shall have staked corners.
- J. Where specified to serve registers, provide opposed blade volume dampers operable from the face of the register.
- K. Where specified to have filters, provide with filter rack suitable for 1" thick MERV-8 pleated media filters. Grille border shall be fabricated from minimum 22 gauge steel or minimum 0.040-inch thick for aluminum grilles. Provide removable grille face with metal knurled knob or quarter turn fastener to allow for filter media replacement.
- L. Screw holes for surface fasteners shall be countersunk for a neat appearance. Provide concealed fasteners for installation in lay-in ceilings and as specified on the drawings.
- M. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tuttle & Bailey
  - 2. Titus
  - 3. Price
  - 4. Nailor
  - 5. Carnes
  - 6. Metalaire
  - 7. Krueger

- 8. Anemostat
- 9. Raymon Donco

## **2.02 AIR TERMINALS - ARCHITECTURAL SQUARE PANEL DIFFUSERS**

- A. Reference to a diffuser means an air supply device, ceiling mounted, that shall diffuse air uniformly throughout the conditioned space.
- B. The type of unit, margin, material, finish, etc., shall be as shown on the drawing schedule. Flat-oval inlets are not acceptable for connection to flexible ducts.
- C. All margins shall be compatible with ceiling types specified (including 'Thin-Line' T-bar lay-in grid system). Any discrepancies in contract documents should be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer, in writing, prior to Bid Date. Submission of Bid indicates ceiling and air inlet and outlet types have been coordinated.
- D. The capacity and size of the unit shall be as shown on the drawings.
- E. All units shall handle the indicated cfm as shown on the drawings while not exceeding an NC level of 25, referenced to 10-12 watts with a 10 dB room effect. .
- F. Diffusers shall be architectural solid square panel and flush with ceiling.
- G. The exposed surface shall be smooth, flat and free of visible fasteners. The face panel shall be 22 gauge steel with a rolled edge or shall be 18 gauge with a smooth ground, uniform edge.
- H. The back pan shall be one piece 22 gauge stamped and shall include an integral inlet. (Welded inlets and corner joints are not acceptable).
- I. Diffusers with a 24x24 back pan shall have a minimum 18x18 face panel size. Diffusers with a 12x12 back pan shall have a minimum 9x9 face panel size.
- J. The face panel shall be mechanically fastened to the back panel with steel components. (Plastic fasteners are not acceptable.)
- K. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tuttle & Bailey
  - 2. Titus
  - 3. Price
  - 4. Nailor
  - 5. Carnes
  - 6. Metalaire
  - 7. Krueger
  - 8. Anemostat
  - 9. Raymon Donco

## **2.03 LOUVERS - FIXED - ALUMINUM**

- A. Louvers shall be minimum 4" deep and constructed of extruded aluminum. Blade, jamb and sill thickness shall be minimum 0.081". Blades shall be spaced at a maximum of 5.1" apart.
- B. Louvers shall be of the drainable blade design with water collected on the leading edge of the blade and diverted to the jamb.
- C. Louvers shall be furnished with aluminum bird screen mounted on the inside surface.
- D. Size, cfm, finish and pressure drop for louvers shall be as scheduled on the drawings.
- E. AMCA Certified performance for 48" x 48" samples with intake airflow of 8,000 cfm shall not exhibit more than 0.19" pressure drop. Maximum water penetration shall be 0.01 ounces per square foot at the scheduled intake velocity based on 15 minute test duration when subjected to a water flow rate of 0.25 gal/min as described under the Water Penetration Test in AMCA 500-L-07.
- F. Contractor shall provide the General Contractor with the correct sizes and locations of all louvers required in masonry walls.
- G. Louvers shall be sealed around perimeter to avoid moisture penetration between the louver frame and wall.
- H. Louvers shall be suitable for duct connection.
- I. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Air Flow - "EA-403"
  - 2. Arrow - "EA-415-D"
  - 3. American Warming & Ventilating - "LE-21"
  - 4. Construction Specialties - "A4097"
  - 5. Dowco - "DBE-4"
  - 6. Louvers & Dampers, Inc. - "IL-23"
  - 7. Ruskin - "ELF375DX"
  - 8. Vent Products - "2760"
  - 9. Greenheck - ESD "403"
  - 10. Pottorff - EFD
  - 11. United Enertech FL-D-4

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:
  - 1. Install items in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.

2. Install seismic restraints according to SMACNA's "Kitchen Equipment Fabrication Guidelines, Appendix 1, Guidelines for Seismic Restraints for Kitchen Equipment".
3. Check location of inlets and outlets and make necessary adjustments in position to conform to architectural features, symmetry, and lighting arrangement.
4. Install diffusers to ductwork with air tight connections.
5. Flexible ducts shall NOT be joined to flat-oval connections. Provide sheet metal oval-to-round transitions where required.
6. Supply air diffusers in operating rooms (Class B and C surgery) shall be opened and cleaned before the space is used.
7. Supply grille and register blades shall be aimed in the field to provide adequate air distribution in the space. All return grilles and registers blades shall be oriented to minimize sight distance beyond installed device.

B. Volume Damper:

1. Provide manual volume dampers on duct take-off to diffusers when there are multiple connections to a common duct. Locate volume dampers as far as possible from the air inlet or outlet.

C. Maintaining Duct Cleanliness:

1. When grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed, Contractor shall prevent construction dust, dirt, and debris from entering ductwork as required by Section 230500.

**END OF SECTION 233700**





## **SECTION 237416.12**

### **PACKAGED AIR CONDITIONING UNITS 25 TON AND BELOW**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Packaged Unit.
- B. Unit Controls.
- C. Economizers.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All insulation inside the unit and in the air stream must comply with the requirement of NFPA 90A (maximum flame spread of 25 and maximum smoke developed of 50).
- B. All units must be UL or ETL listed and must contain UL labeled components.
- C. Fans shall be tested and rated in cabinet in accordance with AMCA Standard 210. All fan assemblies shall be dynamically balanced in cabinet at final assembly.
- D. Conform to ASHRAE 90.1 IECC.
- E. All air handling and distribution equipment mounted outdoors shall be designed to prevent rain intrusion into the airstream when tested at design airflow and with no airflow, using the rain test apparatus described in Section 58 of UL 1995.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. AHRI 210 - Unitary Air Conditioning Equipment.
- B. AHRI 240 - Air Source Unitary Heat Pump Equipment.
- C. AHRI 270 - Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment.
- D. ASHRAE 37 - Methods of Testing for Rating Unitary Air Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment.
- E. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- G. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating System.
- H. UL - Underwriters' Laboratory.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 230500.
- B. Indicate electrical service and duct connections on shop drawings or product data.

- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- D. Submit electrical power/controls wiring diagrams and product data indicating general assembly, components, safety controls, and service connections.
- E. Submit fan curves, including minimum and maximum fan speed, with specified operating points clearly plotted.
- F. Provide 8 octave maximum sound power levels at unit discharge and return connection.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect units from physical damage by storing off site until roof mounting frames are in place, ready for immediate installation of units.

#### **1.06 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit operation and maintenance data.
- B. Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listing.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide five (5) year manufacturer's warranty for compressors.
- B. Provide standard year manufacturer's warranty for heat exchanger.
- C. Provide standard year manufacturer's warranty for controls and electrical components (thermostats, VFD, etc.).

#### **1.08 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Contractor shall furnish complete service and maintenance of packaged roof top units for one year from Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Provide maintenance service with a two-month interval as maximum time period between calls. Provide 24-hour emergency service on breakdowns and malfunctions.
- C. Include maintenance items as outlined in manufacturer's operating and maintenance data, including minimum of four (quarterly) filter replacements, minimum of one fan belt replacement, and controls checkout, seasonal adjustments, and recalibrations.
- D. Submit copy of service call work order or report and include description of work performed to Owner and Architect/Engineer.

---

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Basis of Design: The scheduled manufacturer is the Basis of Design. The Contractor is responsible for all costs, schedule impacts, and construction coordination, including design costs and regulatory agency approvals, related to using a specified alternate product other than the Basis of Design. Refer to Section 230500 for additional information.
- B. Daikin
- C. Trane
- D. York
- E. Carrier
- F. Valent
- G. Aeon
- H. Annexair

### **2.02 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Provide units having gas burner and electric refrigeration.
- B. Unit shall be self-contained, packaged, factory assembled, pre-wired and tested, consisting of cabinet and frame, supply fan, exhaust fan, heat exchanger and burner, electric heating elements, controls, air filters, refrigerant cooling coil and compressor, condenser coil, condenser fan, and a full refrigerant charge.
- C. Unit shall be furnished with non-fused disconnect switch, short fuse protection of all internal electrical components, and all necessary motor starters, contactors, and over-current protection.
  - 1. AHRI rated for direct expansion use with R-32 or R-454B.

### **2.03 FABRICATION**

- A. Cabinet: Galvanized steel with baked enamel finish, access doors with quick fasteners. Access doors shall be provided at each section (e.g., filter section, supply fan section, etc.). All exterior access must be permanently labeled on the outside indicating what is behind the panel. Structural members shall be minimum 18 gauge, with access doors of minimum 20 gauge.
- B. Outside Air Intakes: The outside air intakes shall be located a minimum of 15 inches above the roof mounting curb to minimize the effect of heat pickup from the roof during the natural cooling cycle and the effects of snow on the roof during winter operation. Each air intake shall be furnished with rain eliminators.
- C. Insulation: Minimum of 1/2" thick, 1.5 lb./cu.ft. density coated glass fiber insulation on surfaces where conditioned air is handled. Protect edges from erosion.
- D. Heat Exchangers: Aluminized steel, of welded construction.
- E. Air Filters: One inch thick glass fiber disposable media in metal frames.

## **2.04 FANS/MOTORS**

### **A. Fans:**

1. Supply Fans: centrifugal; SWSI plenum or vane axial fan.
2. Exhaust Fans: Propeller or SWSI plenum fan.
3. All fans shall be aluminum or composite construction with fan shaft: turned, ground and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
4. Fan and motor assemblies shall be resiliently mounted.
5. Direct drive motor.
6. All fan bearings must be capable of being lubricated by easily accessible grease fittings.
7. All fans must be statically and dynamically balanced.

### **B. Motors:**

1. Motors shall be open drip-proof with grease lubricated bearings.
2. Motors shall be "variable frequency drive rated" when controlled by VFDs. Refer to Section 230513.
3. No equipment shall be selected or operate above 90% of its motor nameplate rating.
4. Motor shall have 1.15 service factor.
5. ECM motors may be provided.

## **2.05 BURNER**

- A. Gas Burner: Atmospheric OR Induced draft type burner with adjustable combustion air supply, pressure regulator, gas valves, manual shutoff, intermittent spark or glow coil ignition, flame sensing device, and automatic 100 percent shutoff pilot. fully modulating gas valve with minimum 4:1 turndown.
- B. Gas Burner Safety Controls: Energize ignition, limit time for establishment of flame, prevent opening of gas valve until pilot flame is proven, stop gas flow on ignition failure, energize blower motor, and after airflow proven and slight delay, allow gas valve to open.
- C. High Limit Control: Temperature sensor with fixed stop at maximum permissible setting, de-energize burner on excessive bonnet temperature and energize burner when temperature drops to lower safe value.
- D. Supply Fan Control: Temperature sensor sensing bonnet temperatures and independent of burner controls, or adjustable time delay relays with switch for continuous fan operation.

## **2.06 EVAPORATOR COIL**

- A. Provide copper tube with aluminum fin coil assembly.

- B. Install a drain pan under each cooling coil meeting requirements as outlined in ASHRAE 62.1. The drain pans shall extend the entire width of each coil, including piping and header if in the air stream. The length shall be as necessary to limit water droplet carryover beyond the drain pan to 0.0044oz per ft<sup>2</sup> of face area per hour under peak sensible and peak dew point design conditions, considering both latent load and coil face velocity. Pitch drain pans in two directions towards the outlet, with a slope of at least 1/8" per foot.
- C. Provide capillary tubes or thermostatic expansion valves for units of 6 tons capacity and less, and thermostatic expansion valves and alternate row circuiting for units 7.5 tons cooling capacity and larger.
- D. Provide insulation on liquid refrigerant and suction piping between compressor and evaporator coil where not protected by drain pans. Insulation shall be elastomeric cellular foam; ANSI/ASTM C534; flexible plastic; 0.27 maximum 'K' value at 75°F°, 25/50 flame spread/smoke developed rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 (UL 723). Maximum 1" thick per layer where multiple layers are specified.
- E. Drain Pan Condensate Overflow Switch: Float with integral magnet overflow switch conforming to UL508. Factory installed in drain pan and wired to shut the rooftop unit down with a fault alarm. No standby power required.

## 2.07 COMPRESSOR

- A. Provide hermetic or semi-hermetic compressors (quantity as scheduled on drawings), 3600 rev/min maximum, resiliently mounted with positive lubrication, crankcase heater for operation down to 0 high and low pressure safety controls, motor overload protection, suction and discharge service valves and gauge ports, and filter drier.
- B. Provide capacity control by staging multiple compressors with minimum 25% turndown.
- C. Five minute timed off circuit shall delay compressor start.
- D. For heat pump units, provide reversing valve, suction line accumulator, flow control check valve, and solid-state defrost control utilizing thermistors.
- E. The use of hydrochlorofluorocarbon (HCFC) or chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) based refrigerants is prohibited.
- F. Refrigerant type and quantities shall meet the ozone depletion and global climate change limits of LEED credit EAc4, Enhanced Refrigerant Management (follow the latest edition at the time of bidding or as referenced in these specifications).

## 2.08 CONDENSER

- A. Condenser shall provide design capacity between the minimum and maximum ambient conditions scheduled on the drawings.
- B. Condenser Coil:
  - 1. Round Copper Tube and Aluminum Fins: Construct condenser coils of aluminum fins mechanically bonded to seamless copper tubing. Air test under water to 450 psig.
  - 2. Microchannel: All aluminum brazed fin construction. The maximum allowable working pressure of the condenser is 450 psig. Air test under water to 450 psig. Coils and frame shall include 5000+ hour salt spray resistance (ASTM B117-90).

- C. Condenser Fans: Provide direct drive propeller fans, resiliently mounted with fan guard, motor overload protection, wired to operate with compressor. Fan blade shall be aluminum or composite material.
- D. Condenser Motors: Fan motors shall be an ECM type motor for proportional control. The motor shall include thermal overload protection and protect the motor in the case of excessive motor temperatures. The motor shall have phase failure protection and prevent the motor from operation in the event of a loss of phase.
- E. Entire fan assembly shall be statically and dynamically balanced.
- F. Provide outdoor thermostat to cycle condenser fans.
- G. Liquid and discharge isolation valves with staged and digital scrolls.

## **2.09 MIXING SECTION**

- A. Dampers: Provide outside, return, and relief dampers with damper operator and control package to automatically vary outside air quantity. Outside air damper shall fail to closed position. Relief dampers may be gravity balanced.
- B. Gaskets: Provide tight fitting dampers with edge gaskets. Gaskets must be mechanically fastened (use of adhesive alone shall not be acceptable). Damper blades shall be gasketed with side seals to provide an air leakage rate of Class 1A at 1" w.c. pressure differential for a 24"x 24" damper. A barometric exhaust damper shall be provided to exhaust air out the back of the unit. A bird screen shall be provided to prevent infiltration of rain and foreign materials. Exhaust damper blades shall be lined with vinyl gasketing on contact edges. Control of the dampers shall be by a factory installed direct coupled actuator.
- C. Damper Actuator: 24 volt with gear train sealed in oil, with spring return on units 7.5 tons cooling capacity and larger.

## **2.010 ECONOMIZERS**

- A. Factory installed by approved rooftop unit manufacturer with fully modulating motorized outside air and return air dampers.
- B. To be controlled by differential enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb controller with minimum position setting.
- C. Shall be equipped with 100% capable relief barometric damper relieving up to 100% return air and sealed to meet ASHRAE 90.1 requirements.
- D. Shall be capable of introducing up to 100% outside air.
- E. Shall maintain minimum airflow into the building during occupied period and provide design ventilation rate for full occupancy.
- F. Dampers shall be capable of completely closing when unit is in unoccupied mode.
- G. Outside air damper normally closed and return air damper normally open.
- H. Provide factory installed and tested, outdoor air monitor that controls outdoor air  $\pm 15\%$  accuracy down to 40 CFM per ton.
- I. Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD):

1. Air-cooled unitary direct-expansion units that are equipped with an economizer shall include a fault detection and diagnostics system complying with the following:
  - a. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:
    - 1) Outside air.
    - 2) Supply air.
    - 3) Return air.
  - b. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of  $\pm 2^{\circ}\text{F}$  over the range of  $40^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $80^{\circ}\text{F}$ .
  - c. Refrigerant pressure sensors, where used, shall have an accuracy of  $\pm 3$  percent of full scale.
  - d. The unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:
    - 1) Free cooling available.
    - 2) Economizer enabled.
    - 3) Compressor enabled.
    - 4) Heating enabled.
    - 5) Mixed air low limit cycle active.
    - 6) The current value of each sensor.
  - e. The unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans, and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.
  - f. The fault detection and diagnostics system shall be configured to detect the following faults:
    - 1) Air temperature sensor failure/fault.
    - 2) Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.
    - 3) Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.
    - 4) Damper not modulating.
    - 5) Excess outdoor air.
  - g. The unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application available for access by day-to-day operating or service personnel or annunciated locally on zone thermostats.

## **2.011 POWER EXHAUST**

- A. Factory installed by economizer supplier or compatible equivalent.
- B. Controlled by economizer controls.

- C. Power exhaust shall be factory wired to electrical section complete with conduit, feeders, disconnect, and overcurrent protection. Power exhaust shall be energized based on building pressure or when dampers open past the adjustable setpoint of the economizer control.
- D. Must comply with Energy Code Fan Power Limitation formula.
- E. Fans:
  - 1. Exhaust Fans: Propeller
  - 2. All fans shall be aluminum or composite construction with fan shaft: turned, ground and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  - 3. Fan and motor assemblies shall be resiliently mounted
  - 4. Direct drive motor.
  - 5. All fan bearings must be capable of being lubricated by easily accessible grease fittings.
  - 6. All fans must be statically and dynamically balanced.
- F. Motors:
  - 1. Motors shall be open drip-proof with grease lubricated bearings.
  - 2. Motors shall be "variable frequency drive rated" when controlled by VFDs. Refer to Section 230513.
  - 3. No equipment shall be selected or operate above 90% of its motor nameplate rating.
  - 4. Motor shall have 1.15 service factor.
  - 5. ECM motors may be provided.

## **2.012 ELECTRICAL**

- A. Provide with single point power connection to service all controls, dampers, outlet, and fans, complete with non-fused disconnect switch, short circuit protection of all internal electrical components, and all necessary motor starters, contactors, and over-current protection, transformer, and convenience outlet.
- B. All units must be so constructed that when the electrical section access panel is opened, all electrical power to the unit (with the exception of the 120 volt duplex convenience outlet) is disconnected by means of a single disconnect.
- C. All wiring must be labeled, numbered, and terminate in "spade clips". All terminal strips must be keyed to the wiring numbers. Each control device must be permanently labeled to indicate its function.
- D. Wiring diagrams for all circuits must be permanently affixed to the inside of the electrical section access panel. The markings of terminal strips and wiring must agree with the numbering on the wiring diagrams.
- E. All units shall include a transformer for controls and convenience outlet.
- F. Only one power cable connection to the unit shall be necessary.



- G. Motor shall include phase failure protection and prevent the motor from operation in the event of phase loss.

## **2.013 DDC TEMPERATURE CONTROLS**

- A. Install standalone control module providing communication between unit controls and packaged DDC temperature control system.
- B. Control module shall be compatible with temperature control system specified in Section 230900. Provide BACnet gateway for communication.

## **2.014 REMOVABLE FILTER SCREEN**

- A. Description: Removable, washable cottonwood airborne matter screen compatible with equipment intake.
- B. Submittal: Filter screen shall be included by equipment manufacturer to ensure equipment airflow capacity is coordinated with screen.
- C. Filter Material: Flexible, UV resistant fine polyester screen.
- D. Fasteners: Commercial plastic/polyester twist lock fasteners fastened to equipment using self-tapping screws w/ bonded washer.
- E. Approved Manufacturers:
  - 1. By Equipment Manufacturer
  - 2. Air Solution Company

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that roof is ready to receive work and opening dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings and illustrated by the manufacturer.
- B. Verify that proper power supply is available.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. All field wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code.
- C. P-traps must be provided for all drain pans.
- D. Comb all coils to repair bent fins.

### **3.03 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES**

- A. Provide initial start-up and shutdown during first year of operation.

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**END OF SECTION 237416.12**

## **SECTION 238126**

### **SPLIT SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONING UNITS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Split system air conditioning wall unit.

##### **1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. ARI 210 - Unitary Air Conditioning Equipment
- B. ARI 240 - Air Source Unitary Heat Pump Equipment
- C. ANSI NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems.
- D. ANSI/ASHRAE 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.
- E. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- F. ANSI/NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- G. ASTM B1003 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Linesets.
- H. UL - Underwriters' Laboratories.

##### **1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Section 230500.
- B. Indicate drain, electrical, and refrigeration rough-in connections on shop drawings or product data.
- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

##### **1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Accept units and components on site in factory protective containers, with factory shipping skids and lifting lugs. Inspect for damage.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's installation instruction for rigging, unloading, and transporting units.
- C. Protect units from weather and construction traffic by storing in dry, roofed location until units are ready for immediate installation.

##### **1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to ANSI/NFPA 90A for the installation of computer room air conditioning units.
- B. Conform to ASHRAE 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.

## **1.06 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit operation and maintenance data.
- B. Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, and maintenance and repair data.

## **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide five (5) year manufacturer's warranty on all compressors.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 SPLIT SYSTEM WALL AND CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS**

#### **A. Manufacturers:**

- 1. Carrier/Toshiba
- 2. LG
- 3. Panasonic/Sanyo
- 4. Samsung
- 5. Daikin Applied
- 6. Trane/Mitsubishi
- 7. York/Hitachi
- 8. Lennox

#### **B. Manufactured Units:**

- 1. Provide packaged, air-cooled, factory assembled, pre-wired and pre-piped unit consisting of cabinet, fans, filters, remote condensing unit, and controls. Wall-mounted units shall be furnished with integral wall mounting bracket and mounting hardware.
- 2. Assemble unit for wall-mounted or ceiling installation with service access required.
- 3. Performance shall be as scheduled on the drawings.
- 4. Unit shall be rated per AHRI Standards 210/240 and listed in the AHRI directory as a matched system.
- 5. Provide unit with factory-supplied cleanable air filters.
- 6. The units shall be listed by Electrical Laboratories (ETL) in accordance with UL-1995 certification and bear the ETL label.
- 7. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC).

#### **C. Evaporator Cabinet and Frame:**

- 1. Cabinet:

- a. Exposed units shall have a finished appearance with concealed refrigerant piping, condensate drain piping, and wiring connections.

D. Evaporator Fans and Motors:

1. Fans:

- a. The evaporator fan shall be direct drive with a single motor having permanently lubricated bearings.
- b. The fan shall be statically and dynamically balanced.
- c. The indoor fan shall have at least three speeds.

2. Motor:

- a. Direct driven, digitally controlled with multiple speeds. Permanently lubricated with internal overload protection.

E. Evaporator Coils (Direct Expansion):

- 1. Direct expansion cooling coil of seamless copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins.
- 2. Single refrigeration circuit with externally equalized expansion valve.
- 3. Coils shall be pressure tested at the factory.
- 4. A sloped, corrosion-resistant condensate pan with drain shall be provided under the coil.

F. Electrical Panel:

- 1. Service Connections, Wiring, and Disconnect Requirements: Conform to the National Electrical Code and local electrical codes.

G. Control:

- 1. The unit shall have a wireless 7-day programmable remote controller to operate the system. Provide wall mounting bracket for controller.
- 2. Remote controller shall have "automatic", "dry" (dehumidification), and "fan only" operating modes.
- 3. The remote controller shall have the following features:
  - a. On/Off power switch.
  - b. Mode Selector to operate the system in auto, cool, heat, fan, or dehumidification (dry) operation.
  - c. Fan Setting to provide multiple fan speeds.
  - d. Swing Louver for adjusting supply louver discharge.
  - e. On/Off Timer for automatically switching the unit off or on.

- f. Temperature Adjustment allows for the increase or decrease of the desired temperature.
  - g. Powerful Operation to allow quick cool down or heating up in the desired space to achieve maximum desired temperature in the shortest allowable time.
- 4. The remote controller shall perform fault diagnostic functions that may be system related, indoor or outdoor unit related depending on the fault code.
- 5. Temperature range on the remote controller shall be 64°F° to 90°F° in cooling mode and 50°F° to 86°F° in heating mode.
- 6. The indoor unit microprocessor shall have the capability to receive and process commands via return air temperature and indoor coil temperature sensors enabled by commands from the remote controller.
- 7. Integration: Manufacturer shall provide a BACnet interface with the building automation system in accordance with ASHRAE/ANSI Standard 135. This may be accomplished through a system integration panel or "gateway". Integration panels shall be provided as part of the split system.

H. Outdoor Unit:

- 1. General:
  - a. The outdoor unit shall be specifically matched to the corresponding indoor unit size. The outdoor unit shall be completely factory assembled and pre-wired with all necessary electronic and refrigerant controls.
- 2. Cabinet:
  - a. The outdoor unit shall be fabricated of galvanized steel, bonderized and coated with a baked enamel finish for corrosion protection.
- 3. Fan:
  - a. The fan shall be direct drive, propeller type fan with fan guard.
  - b. Fan blades shall be statically and dynamically balanced.
  - c. The fan shall have permanently lubricated type bearings.
  - d. Motor shall be protected by internal thermal overload protection.
  - e. Airflow shall be horizontal discharge.
- 4. Coil:
  - a. The outdoor coil shall be nonferrous construction with corrugated fin tube.
  - b. The coil shall be protected with an internal guard.
  - c. Refrigerant flow from the condenser shall be controlled via a metering device.
- 5. Compressor:

- a. Hermetic or scroll refrigerant compressors with resilient suspension system, inverter driven, oil strainer, sight glass/moisture indicator, internal motor protection, high pressure switch, and crankcase heater.
  - b. The outdoor unit shall have an accumulator and four-way reversing valve.
- 6. Refrigerant:
  - a. Unit shall use R-32 or R-454B.
  - b. The use of chlorofluorocarbon (CFC)-based refrigerants is prohibited.

## **2.02 PIPING**

- A. Design Pressure: 450 psig; Maximum Design Temperature: 250°F°
- B. Type ACR Seamless Copper Tube Linesets; Brazed Joints:
  - 1. 3/4" and under.
  - 2. Tubing: Type ACR seamless copper tube linesets, ASTM B1003. Sizes indicated are nominal designation.
  - 3. Joints: Brazed with silver solder.
  - 4. Fittings: Wrought copper solder joint, ANSI B16.22.
  - 5. Special Requirements: All tubing shall be cleaned, dehydrated, pressurized with dry nitrogen, plugged, and tagged by manufacturer "for refrigeration service". During brazing operations, continuously purge the interior of the pipe with nitrogen to prevent oxide formation.
  - 6. Limitations:
    - a. Only between refrigerant splitter box and indoor terminal unit.
    - b. For use above ceiling only. Do not use in exposed areas.
- C. Type ACR Hard Drawn Seamless Copper Tube; Brazed Joint:
  - 1. 4" and under.
  - 2. Tubing: Type ACR hard drawn seamless copper tube, ASTM B280. Sizes indicated are nominal designation.
  - 3. Joints: Brazed with silver solder.
  - 4. Fittings: Wrought copper solder joint, ANSI B16.22.
  - 5. Special Requirements: All tubing shall be cleaned, dehydrated, pressurized with dry nitrogen, plugged and tagged by manufacturer "for refrigeration service". During brazing operations, continuously purge the interior of the pipe with nitrogen to prevent oxide formation.
- D. Piping - 1-3/8" and Under; Dual Concentric Crimp Mechanical Press Connection (Contractor's Option):

1. Tubing: Type ACR hard drawn seamless copper tube, ASTM B280. Sizes indicated are nominal designation.
  2. Joints: Dual concentric crimp band mechanical press connection.
  3. Fittings: Refrigerant grade copper in accordance with ASTM B75 or ASTM B743 with embedded HNBR O-ring.
  4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Rapid Locking System (RLS)
    - b. Conex Banninger
    - c. Parker Hannifin
    - d. MaxiPro ACR
    - e. Nibco ACR Press
- E. Piping - 1-3/8" and Under; Mechanically Attached, Axially Swaged Compression Connection (Contractor's Option):
1. Tubing: Type ACR hard drawn seamless copper tube, ASTM B280. Sizes indicated are nominal designation.
  2. Joints: Mechanically attached connector, axially swaged compression connection.
  3. Fittings: Refrigerant grade copper in accordance with ASTM B75 or ASTM B743. Brass body with two stabilization inserts in accordance with ASTM B15/B16M, two steel rings in accordance with ASTM A108-13, anaerobic adhesive sealant.
  4. Manufacturers:
    - a. VULKAN Lokring
- F. Refrigerant linesets are permitted.
1. Provide manufacturer-packaged refrigerant linesets and accessories of sizes needed for installation. Verify lengths of piping required for installation.

## **2.03 INSULATION**

- A. EPDM (NBR/PVC Blend is not permitted) elastomeric cellular foam; ANSI/ASTM C534; flexible plastic; 0.25 maximum 'K' value at 75°F°, 25/50 flame spread/smoke developed rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 (UL 723). Minimum 1/2" thick for pipe sizes less than 1-1/4" and 3/4" thick for pipe sizes 1-1/4" and above.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that proper power supply is available.



---

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
2. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Install all units level and plumb. Indoor units shall be installed using manufacturer's standard mounting hardware securely fastened to building structure.
3. Refer to Section 230529 for concrete base for outdoor unit.
4. Coordinate the exact mounting location of all indoor and outdoor units with architectural and electrical work. Coordinate installation of ceiling-mounted units with ceiling grid layout. Provide additional ceiling grid reinforcement or modification as required and coordinate the work with the GC. Locate the indoor unit where it is readily accessible for maintenance and filter changes. Where outdoor units are located on the roof, locate at least 10' from the roof edge.
5. Verify locations of wall-mounted remote controllers with drawings and room details before installation. Coordinate mounting heights to be consistent with other wall-mounted devices. Height above finished floor shall not exceed 48".
6. Maintain minimum clearances to all equipment. Maintain manufacturer's minimum maintenance, and airflow clearances, and maintain minimum spaces about electrical equipment, whichever is greater.
  - a. 120V: 36" deep x 30" wide or the width of the panel whichever is wider.
  - b. 208V: 42" deep x 30" wide or the width of the panel whichever is wider.

B. Condensate Removal:

1. Install condensate piping with trap and route from drain pan to nearest drain. Discharge to nearest code-approved receptor or to a properly vented indirect waste fitting. Flush all piping before making final connections to units.

C. Comb all coils to repair bent fins.

D. Install new filters in the unit at Substantial Completion.

E. A factory-authorized service agent shall assist in commissioning the unit and inspecting the installation prior to startup. Submit startup report with O&M manuals.

### 3.03 REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Install refrigerant piping from the indoor unit(s) to the condensing unit. Refrigerant pipe sizes, lengths, specialties and configurations shall be as recommended by the manufacturer. Evacuate refrigerant piping and fully charge system with refrigerant per manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Provide weather-tight insulated roof curb to accommodate refrigerant piping and conduit roof penetrations.

- C. Insulate all refrigerant piping. Both liquid and suction lines shall be insulated between the indoor and outdoor units.
- D. Joining of Piping:
  - 1. Brazed Joints:
    - a. Make up joints with brazing filler metal conforming to ANSI/AWS A5.8. Cut copper tubing ends perfectly square and remove all burrs inside and outside. Thoroughly clean sockets of fittings and ends of tubing to remove all oxide, dirt, and grease just prior to brazing. Apply flux evenly, but sparingly, to all surfaces to be joined. Brazing filler metal with a flux coating may also be used. Heat joints uniformly to proper brazing temperature so braze filler metal flows to all mated surfaces. Wipe excess braze filler metal, leaving a uniform fillet around cup of fitting.
    - b. Flux shall conform to ANSI/AWS A5.31.
    - c. Remove composition discs and all seals during brazing if not suitable for a minimum of 840°F or greater than the melting temperature of the brazing filler metal, whichever is greater.
  - 2. Mechanical Press Connection:
    - a. Copper press fitting shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - b. Examination: Upon delivery to the jobsite, examine copper tubing and fittings for debris, defects, incise marks (manufacturer's engraving on tube), holes, or cracks.
    - c. Fully insert tubing into the fitting and mark tubing.
    - d. Prior to making connection, the fitting alignment shall be checked against the mark made on the tube to ensure the tubing is fully engaged in the fitting.
    - e. Joint shall be pressed with a tool approved by the manufacturer.
    - f. Installers shall be trained by manufacturer personnel or representative. Provide documentation upon request.
  - 3. Axially Swaged Connection:
    - a. Brass axially swaged connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - b. Installers shall be trained by a certified Vulkan LOKRING trainer. Provide proof of certification upon request.
- E. Insulation:

1. Insulate all refrigerant pipes between the heat pump and indoor units. This includes the liquid pipe, the suction pipe, the hot gas pipe, and the high/low pressure gas pipe. All fittings, valves, and specialty refrigerant components in the piping between the indoor and heat pump units shall also be insulated. The insulation shall have a continuous vapor barrier and shall pass through hangers and supports unbroken. All exterior insulated piping shall be painted with minimum of one (1) coat of UV resistant paint. Over size hangers and supports to allow the insulation to pass through unbroken. Following are the minimum insulation thicknesses unless noted otherwise in the manufacturer's literature or required by local AHJ:
  - a. Code/Year: ASHRAE 2013
  - b. Refrigerant Suction (40°F° & Below):
    - 1) Up to 1": 1/2"
    - 2) 1" and up: 1"
  - c. Refrigerant Suction (41°F° to 60°F°):
    - 1) Up to 1-1/2": 1/2"
    - 2) 1-1/2" and up: 1"
  - d. Refrigerant Low Pressure Gas (141°F° to 200°F°):
    - 1) Up to 1-1/2": 1-1/2"
    - 2) 1-1/2" and up: 2"
  - e. Refrigerant Liquid:
    - 1) Up to 1-1/2": 1"
    - 2) 1-1/2" and up: 1-1/2"

**END OF SECTION 238126**



**SECTION 238200**

**TERMINAL HEAT TRANSFER UNITS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Cabinet Heaters.
- B. Electric Unit Heaters.

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All filters shall be UL listed Class 1 or Class 2.
- B. All electrical equipment shall have a UL label.
- C. Factory wired equipment shall conform to ANSI/NFPA 70.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/ASHRAE 62.1 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.
- B. ANSI/ASHRAE/IES Standard 90.1 (latest published edition) - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- C. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings per Section 230500.
- B. Submit catalog data including arrangements, cross sections of cabinets, grilles, bracing, typical elevations.
- C. Submit schedules of equipment and enclosures indicating length, number of pieces of element and enclosure, corner pieces, end caps, cap strips, access doors, and comparison of specified to actual heat output.
- D. Indicate mechanical and electrical service locations and requirements. Show deviations from scheduled products.
- E. Submit manufacturers' installation instructions.
- F. Submit electrical power/controls wiring diagrams and product data indicating general assembly, components, safety controls, and service connections.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect units from physical damage by storing in protected areas and leaving factory covers in place.

## **1.06 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to ASHRAE 90.1.

## **1.07 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit manufacturer's operation and maintenance data. Include operating, installation, maintenance and repair data, and parts listings.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 ELECTRIC CABINET HEATERS**

- A. Forced air wall mounted heaters shall include cabinet, fan, motor, coil, inlet grille and discharge grille.
- B. Coil: Electric dual element with finned steel sheaths.
- C. Fans: Centrifugal forward-curved, double-width with galvanized steel scrolls. Fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced to reduce noise levels.
- D. Motor: Fan motor voltage shall be as scheduled on the drawings. Motors shall be permanently lubricated, direct drive.
  - 1. Electronically commutated motor (ECM).
  - 2. Permanent split capacitor type motor.
- E. Power connections, circuit breaker, or disconnect shall be provided by the E.C.
- F. Units shall have 1" disposable filters ahead of all coils.
- G. Cabinets shall have 16 gauge exposed surfaces, 18 gauge concealed surfaces, and no exposed plastic parts.
- H. Baked enamel finish. Color selected by Architect.
- I. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Berko
  - 2. Trane
  - 3. Redd-i
  - 4. QMark

### **2.02 ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS**

- A. Horizontal or vertical discharge as scheduled on the drawings.
- B. Horizontal units shall have adjustable outlet louvers.
- C. Metal sheathed fin tube electric heating elements.

- D. Casing: Heavy gauge steel with baked enamel finish.
- E. Automatic reset thermal overload wired for instantaneous pilot operation of contactor holding coil.
- F. Motors shall be totally enclosed continuous duty with built-in thermal overload protection.
- G. Provide unit mounted and wired disconnect.
- H. Provide resiliently mounted fan guard/motor support.
- I. Fans: Direct drive propeller type, factory balanced.
- J. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Berko
  - 2. Trane
  - 3. Chromalox
  - 4. Modine
  - 5. Reznor
  - 6. Redd-i
  - 7. QMark

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. General Installation Requirements:
- B. Install all products per manufacturers' instructions.
  - 1. Coordinate recess sizes for recessed equipment.
  - 2. Protect units with protective covers during construction.
  - 3. Comb all coils to repair bent fins.
- C. Unit Heater:
  - 1. Hang unit heaters from building structure, not from piping. Mount as high as possible within manufacturer's recommended mounting height requirements. If unit heaters cannot be installed within manufacturer's recommended range, notify Architect/Engineer prior to mounting.

#### **3.02 CLEANING**

- A. After construction is complete, including painting, clean exposed surfaces of units. Vacuum clean coils and inside of cabinets.
- B. Touch-up marred or scratched surfaces of factory-finished cabinets, with materials furnished by manufacturer.

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---

C. Install new filters.

**END OF SECTION 238200**



**SECTION 260500**

**BASIC ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Requirements applicable to all Division 26 Sections. Also refer to Division 1 - General Requirements. This section is also applicable to Interior Communications Pathways Section 270528.
- B. All materials and installation methods shall conform to the applicable standards, guidelines and codes referenced herein and within each specification section.

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)

**1.03 SCOPE OF WORK**

- A. This Specification and the associated drawings govern furnishing, installing, testing and placing into satisfactory operation the Electrical Systems.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish and install all new materials as indicated on the drawings, and/or in these specifications, and all items required to make the portion of the Electrical Work a finished and working system.
- C. All work will be awarded under a single General Contract. The division of work listed below is for the Contractor's convenience and lists normal breakdown of the work.
- D. Description of Systems shall be as follows:
  - 1. Electrical power system to and including luminaires, equipment, motors, devices, etc.
  - 2. Electrical power service system from the Utility Company to and including service entrance equipment, distribution and metering.
  - 3. Grounding system.
  - 4. Wiring system for temperature control system as shown on the drawings.
  - 5. Wiring of equipment furnished by others.
  - 6. Technology Systems as described in Division 27/28 and on the T-series documents as described in the Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility.
  - 7. Furnish and install firestopping systems for penetrations of fire-rated construction associated with this Contractor's work.
- E. Work Not Included:
  - 1. Telecommunications cabling will be by Division 27, in raceways and conduits furnished and installed as part of the Electrical work.

2. Temperature control wiring for plumbing and HVAC equipment (unless otherwise indicated) will be by other Contractors.

#### **1.04 DIVISION OF WORK BETWEEN MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL, and CONTROL CONTRACTORS**

- A. Division of work is the responsibility of the Prime Contractor. Any scope of work described at any location on the contract document shall be sufficient for including said requirement in the project. The Prime Contractor shall be solely responsible for determining the appropriate subcontractor for the described scope. In no case shall the project be assessed an additional cost for scope that is described on the contract documents on bid day. The following division of responsibility is a guideline based on typical industry practice.
- B. Definitions:
  1. "Mechanical Contractors" refers to the Contractors listed in Division 21/22/23 of this Specification.
  2. "Technology Contractors" refers to the Contractors furnishing and installing systems listed in Division 27/28 of this Specification.
  3. Motor Power Wiring: The single phase or 3 phase wiring extending from the power source (transformer, panelboard, feeder circuits, etc.) through disconnect switches and motor controllers to, and including the connections to the terminals of the motor.
  4. Motor Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the remote operation of the magnetic coils of magnetic motor starters or relays, or the wiring that permits direct cycling of motors by means of devices in series with the motor power wiring. In the latter case, the devices are usually single phase, have "Manual-Off-Auto" provisions, and are usually connected into the motor power wiring through a manual motor starter.
  5. Control devices such as start-stop push buttons, thermostats, pressure switches, flow switches, relays, etc., generally represent the types of equipment associated with motor control wiring.
  6. Motor control wiring is single phase and usually 120 volts. In some instances, the voltage will be the same as the motor power wiring. When the motor power wiring exceeds 120 volts, a control transformer is usually used to give a control voltage of 120 volts.
  7. Temperature Control Wiring: The wiring associated with the operation of a motorized damper, solenoid valve or motorized valve, etc., either modulating or two-position, as opposed to wiring that directly powers or controls a motor used to drive equipment such as fans, pumps, etc. This wiring will be from a 120-volt source and may continue as 120 volt, or be reduced in voltage (24 volt), in which case a control transformer shall be furnished as part of the temperature control wiring.
  8. Control Motor: An electric device used to operate dampers, valves, etc. It may be two-position or modulating. Conventional characteristics of such a motor are 24 volts, 60 cycles, 1 phase, although other voltages may be encountered.
  9. Low Voltage Technology Wiring: The wiring associated with the technology systems, used for analog or digital signals between equipment.

10. Telecommunications/Technology Rough-in: Relates specifically to the backboxes, necessary plaster rings and other miscellaneous hardware required for the installation or mounting of telecommunications/technology information outlets.

C. General:

1. The purpose of these Specifications is to outline the Electrical and Mechanical Contractors' responsibilities related to electrical work required for items such as temperature controls, mechanical equipment, fans, chillers, compressors, etc. The exact wiring requirements for much of the equipment cannot be determined until the systems have been selected and submittals approved. Therefore, the electrical drawings show only known wiring related to such items. All wiring not shown on the electrical drawings, but required for mechanical systems, is the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.
2. Where the drawings require the Electrical Contractor to wire between equipment furnished by the Mechanical Contractor, such wiring shall terminate at terminals provided in the equipment. The Mechanical Contractor shall furnish complete wiring diagrams and supervision to the Electrical Contractor and designate the terminal numbers for correct wiring.
3. The Electrical Contractor shall establish electrical utility elevations prior to fabrication and installation. The Electrical Contractor shall coordinate utility elevations with other trades. When a conflict arises, priority shall be as follows:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Gravity flow piping, including steam and condensate.
  - c. Sheet metal.
  - d. Cable trays, including access space.
  - e. Other piping.
  - f. Conduits and wireway.

D. Mechanical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Assumes responsibility for internal wiring of all equipment furnished by the Mechanical Contractor.
2. Assumes all responsibility for miscellaneous items furnished by the Mechanical Contractor that require wiring but are not shown on the electrical drawings or specified in the Electrical Specification. If items such as relays, flow switches, or interlocks are required to make the mechanical system function correctly or are required by the manufacturer, they are the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.
3. Assumes all responsibility for Temperature Control wiring, if the Temperature Control Contractor is a Subcontractor to the Mechanical Contractor.
4. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

E. Temperature Control Contractor's or Subcontractor's Responsibility:

1. Wiring of all devices needed to make the Temperature Control System functional.
2. Verifying any control wiring on the electrical drawings as being by the Electrical Contractor. All wiring required for the Control System, but not shown on the electrical drawings, is the responsibility of the Temperature Control Contractor or Subcontractor.
3. Coordinating equipment locations (such as PE's, EP's, relays, transformers, etc.) with the Electrical Contractor, where wiring of the equipment is by the Electrical Contractor.

F. Electrical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Furnishes and installs all combination starters, manual starters and disconnect devices shown on the Electrical Drawings or indicated to be by the Electrical Contractor in the Mechanical Drawings or Specifications.
2. Installs and wires all remote-control devices furnished by the Mechanical Contractor or Temperature Control Contractor when so noted on the Electrical Drawings.
3. Furnishes and installs motor control and temperature control wiring, when noted on the drawings.
4. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

G. General (Electrical/Technology):

1. "Electrical Contractor" as referred to herein shall be responsible for scope listed in Division 27/28 of this specification when the "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility" indicated work shall be furnished and installed by the EC. Refer to the Contract Documents for this "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility".
2. The purpose of these Specifications is to outline the Electrical and Technology Contractor's work responsibilities as related to Telecommunications Rough-in, conduit, cable tray, power wiring and Low Voltage Technology Wiring.
3. The exact wiring requirements for much of the equipment cannot be determined until the systems have been purchased and submittals approved. Therefore, only known wiring, conduits, raceways and electrical power related to such items is shown on the Technology drawings. Other wiring, conduits, raceways, junction boxes and electrical power not shown on the Technology Drawings but required for operation of the systems is the responsibility of the Technology Contractor and included in said Contractor's bid.
4. Where the Electrical Contractor is required to install conduit, conduit sleeves and/or power connections in support of Technology systems, the final installation shall not be until a coordination meeting between the Electrical Contractor and the Technology Contractor has convened to determine the exact location and requirements of the installation.
5. Where the Electrical Contractor is required to install cable tray that will contain Low Voltage Technology Wiring, installation shall not begin prior to a coordination review of the cable tray shop drawings by the Technology Contractor.

H. Technology Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Assumes all responsibility for the low voltage technology wiring of all systems, including cable support where open cable is specified.
2. Assumes all responsibility for all required backboxes, conduit and power connections not specifically shown as being furnished and installed by the Electrical Contractor on the "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility".
3. Assumes all responsibility for providing and installing all ladder rack and other cable management hardware (as defined herein).
4. Responsible for providing the Electrical Contractor with the required grounding lugs or other hardware for each piece of technology equipment which is required to be bonded to the telecommunications ground bar.
5. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

## **1.05 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

### **A. Definitions:**

1. Coordination Drawings: A compilation of the pertinent layout and system drawings that show the sizes and locations, including elevations, of system components and required access areas to ensure that no two objects will occupy the same space.
  - a. Mechanical trades shall include, but are not limited to, mechanical equipment, ductwork, fire protection systems, plumbing piping, medical gas systems, hydronic piping, steam and steam condensate piping, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - b. Electrical trades shall include, but are not limited to, electrical equipment, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, pull boxes, transformers, raceway, busway, lighting, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - c. Technology trades shall include, but are not limited to, technology equipment, racks, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, ladder rack, pull boxes, raceway, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - d. Maintenance clearances and code-required dedicated space shall be included.
  - e. The coordination drawings shall include all underground, underfloor, in-floor, in chase, and vertical trade items.
2. Spaces with open ceiling architecture shall indicate the overhead utilities and locate equipment as required to maintain clearance above lights. The intent for the installation is to maintain a maximum allowable vertical clearance and an organized/clean manner in the horizontal. Notify Architect/Engineer of the maximum clearance which can be maintained. Failure to comply will result in modifications with no cost to Owner.
3. The contractors shall use the coordination process to identify the proper sequence of installation of all utilities above ceilings and in other congested areas, to ensure an orderly and coordinated end result, and to provide adequate access for service and maintenance.

B. Participation:

1. The contractors and subcontractors responsible for work defined above shall participate in the coordination drawing process.
2. One contractor shall be designated as the Coordinating Contractor for purposes of preparing a complete set of composite electronic CAD coordination drawings that include all applicable trades, and for coordinating the activities related to this process. The Coordinating Contractor for this project shall be the Mechanical Contractor.
  - a. The Coordinating Contractor shall utilize personnel familiar with requirements of this project and skilled as draftspersons/CAD operators, competent to prepare the required coordination drawings.
3. Electronic CAD drawings shall be submitted to the Coordinating Contractor for addition of work by other trades. IMEG will provide electronic file copies of ventilation drawings for contractor's use if the contractor signs and returns an "Electronic File Transfer" waiver provided by IMEG. IMEG will not consider blatant reproductions of original file copies an acceptable alternative for coordination drawings.

C. Drawing Requirements:

1. The file format and file naming convention shall be coordinated with and agreed to by all contractors participating in the coordination process and the Owner.
  - a. Scale of drawings:
    - 1) General plans: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 2) Mechanical, electrical, communication rooms, and including the surrounding areas within 10 feet: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 3) Shafts and risers: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 4) Sections of shafts and mechanical and electrical equipment rooms: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 5) Sections of congested areas: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
2. Ductwork layout drawings shall be the baseline system for other components. Ductwork layout drawings shall be modified to accommodate other components as the coordination process progresses.
3. There may be more drawings required for risers, top and bottom levels of mechanical rooms, and shafts.
4. The minimum quantity of drawings will be established at the first coordination meeting and sent to the Architect/Engineer for review. Additional drawings may be required if other areas of congestion are discovered during the coordination process.

D. General:

1. Coordination drawing files shall be made available to the Architect/Engineer and Owner's Representative. The Architect/Engineer will only review identified conflicts and give an opinion, but will not perform as a coordinator.
2. A plotted set of coordination drawings shall be available at the project site.
3. Coordination drawings are not shop drawings and shall not be submitted as such.
4. The contract drawings are schematic in nature and do not show every fitting and appurtenance for each utility. Each contractor is expected to have included in the bid sufficient fittings, material, and labor to allow for adjustments in routing of utilities made necessary by the coordination process and to provide a complete and functional system.
5. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions due to participation in the coordination process.
6. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions for additional fittings, reroutings or changes of duct size, that are essentially equivalent sizes to those shown on the drawings and determined necessary through the coordination process.
7. The Architect/Engineer reserves the right to determine space priority of equipment in the event of spatial conflicts or interference between equipment, piping, conduit, ducts, and equipment provided by the trades.
8. Changes to the contract documents that are necessary for systems installation and coordination shall be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer.
9. Access panels shall preferably occur only in gypsum board walls or plaster ceilings where indicated on the drawings.
  - a. Access to mechanical, electrical, technology, and other items located above the ceiling shall be through accessible lay-in ceiling tile areas.
  - b. Potential layout changes shall be made to avoid additional access panels.
  - c. Additional access panels shall not be allowed without written approval from the Architect/Engineer at the coordination drawing stage.
  - d. Providing additional access panels shall be considered after other alternatives are reviewed and discarded by the Architect/Engineer and the Owner's Representative.
  - e. When additional access panels are required, they shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner.
10. Complete the coordination drawing process and obtain sign-off of the drawings by all contractors prior to installing any of the components.
11. Conflicts that result after the coordination drawings are signed off shall be the responsibility of the contractor or subcontractor who did not properly identify their work requirements, or installed their work without proper coordination.
12. Updated coordination drawings that reflect as-built conditions may be used as record documents.

## **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Contractor's Responsibility Prior to Submitting Pricing/Bid Data:

1. The Contractor is responsible for constructing complete and operating systems. The Contractor acknowledges and understands that the Contract Documents are a two-dimensional representation of a three-dimensional object, subject to human interpretation. This representation may include imperfect data, interpreted codes, utility guides, three-dimensional conflicts, and required field coordination items. Such deficiencies can be corrected when identified prior to ordering material and starting installation. The Contractor agrees to carefully study and compare the individual Contract Documents and report at once in writing to the Architect/Engineer any deficiencies the Contractor may discover. The Contractor further agrees to require each subcontractor to likewise study the documents and report at once any deficiencies discovered.
2. The Contractor shall resolve all reported deficiencies with the Architect/Engineer prior to awarding any subcontracts, ordering material, or starting any work with the Contractor's own employees. Any work performed prior to receipt of instructions from the Architect/Engineer will be done at the Contractor's risk.

B. Qualifications:

1. Only products of reputable manufacturers as determined by the Architect/Engineer are acceptable.
2. All Contractors and subcontractors shall employ only workmen who are skilled in their trades. At all times, the number of apprentices at the job site shall be less than or equal to the number of journeymen at the job site.

C. Compliance with Codes, Laws, Ordinances:

1. Conform to all requirements of the State of Michigan Codes, Laws, Ordinances and other regulations having jurisdiction.
2. If the Contractor notes, at the time of bidding, that any parts of the drawings or specifications do not comply with the codes or regulations, Contractor shall inform the Architect/Engineer in writing, requesting a clarification. If there is insufficient time for this procedure, Contractor shall submit with the proposal a separate price to make the system comply with the codes and regulations.
3. All changes to the system made after the letting of the contract to comply with codes or the requirements of the Inspector, shall be made by the Contractor without cost to the Owner.
4. If there is a discrepancy between manufacturer's recommendations and these specifications, the manufacturer's recommendations shall govern.
5. If there are no local codes having jurisdiction, the current issue of the National Electrical Code shall be followed.

D. Permits, Fees, Taxes, Inspections:

1. Procure all applicable permits and licenses.
2. Abide by all laws, regulations, ordinances, and other rules of the State or Political Subdivision where the work is done, or as required by any duly constituted public authority.



3. Pay all charges for permits or licenses.
4. Pay all fees and taxes imposed by State, Municipal, and other regulatory bodies.
5. Pay all charges arising out of required inspections by an authorized body.
6. Pay all charges arising out of required contract document reviews associated with the project and as initiated by the Owner or authorized agency/consultant.
7. Where applicable, all fixtures, equipment and materials shall be listed by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. or a nationally recognized testing organization.
8. Pay all telephone company charges related to the service or change in service.

E. Utility Company Requirements:

1. Secure from the private or public utility company all applicable requirements.
2. Comply with all utility company requirements.
3. The Owner shall make application for and pay for new electrical service equipment and installation. The Contractor shall coordinate schedule and requirements with the Owner and Utility Company.
4. The contractor is responsible for completing utility requested forms and sharing utility requested load data from the construction documents.
5. Furnish the meter socket. Verify approved manufacturers and equipment with the Utility Company.

F. Examination of Drawings:

1. The drawings for the electrical work are completely diagrammatic, intended to convey the scope of the work and to indicate the general arrangements and locations of equipment, outlets, etc., and the approximate sizes of equipment.
2. Contractor shall determine the exact locations of equipment and rough-ins, and the exact routing of raceways to best fit the layout of the job. Conduit entry points for electrical equipment including, but not limited to, panelboards, switchboards, switchgear and unit substations, shall be determined by the Contractor unless noted in the contract documents.
3. Scaling of the drawings will not be sufficient or accurate for determining these locations.
4. Where job conditions require reasonable changes in arrangements and locations, such changes shall be made by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.
5. Because of the scale of the drawings, certain basic items, such as junction boxes, pull boxes, conduit fittings, etc., may not be shown, but where required by other sections of the specifications or required for proper installation of the work, such items shall be furnished and installed.
6. If an item is either shown on the drawings or called for in the specifications, it shall be included in this contract.

7. The Contractor shall determine quantities and quality of material and equipment required from the documents. Where discrepancies arise between drawings, schedules and/or specifications, the greater and better-quality number shall govern.
8. Where used in electrical documents the word "furnish" shall mean supply for use, the word "install" shall mean connect up complete and ready for operation, and the word "provide" shall mean to supply for use and connect up complete and ready for operation.
9. Any item listed as furnished shall also be installed unless otherwise noted.
10. Any item listed as installed shall also be furnished unless otherwise noted.

G. Electronic Media/Files:

1. Construction drawings for this project have been prepared utilizing Revit.
2. Contractors and Subcontractors may request electronic media files of the contract drawings and/or copies of the specifications. Specifications will be provided in PDF format.
3. Upon request for electronic media, the Contractor shall complete and return a signed "Electronic File Transmittal" form provided by IMEG.
4. If the information requested includes floor plans prepared by others, the Contractor will be responsible for obtaining approval from the appropriate Design Professional for use of that part of the document.
5. The electronic contract documents can be used for preparation of shop drawings and as-built drawings only. The information may not be used in whole or in part for any other project.
6. The drawings prepared by IMEG for bidding purposes may not be used directly for ductwork layout drawings or coordination drawings.
7. The use of these CAD documents by the Contractor does not relieve them from their responsibility for coordination of work with other trades and verification of space available for the installation.
8. The information is provided to expedite the project and assist the Contractor with no guarantee by IMEG as to the accuracy or correctness of the information provided. IMEG accepts no responsibility or liability for the Contractor's use of these documents.

H. Field Measurements:

1. Verify all pertinent dimensions at the job site before ordering any conduit, conductors, wireways, bus duct, fittings, etc.

## **1.07 WEB-BASED PROJECT SOFTWARE**

- A. The General Contractor shall provide a web-based project software site for the purpose of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until completion of the warranty phase.

- B. The web-based project software shall include, at a minimum, the following features:  
construction schedule, submittals, RFIs, ASIs, construction change directives, change orders,  
drawing management, specification management, payment applications, contract modifications,  
meeting minutes, construction progress photos.
- C. Provide web-based project software user licenses for use by the Architect/Engineer. Access will  
be provided from the start of the project through the completion of the warranty phase.
- D. At project completion, provide digital archive of entire project in format that is readable by  
common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect/Engineer. Provide data  
in locked format to prevent further changes.

#### 1.08 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall be required for the following items, and for additional items where required  
elsewhere in the specifications or on the drawings.

- 1. Submittals list:

Referenced Specification Section	Submittal Item
26 05 17	Electric Heat Trace and Snow Melt
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding
26 05 53	Electrical Identification
26 05 73	Power System Study
26 09 33	Lighting Control System
26 20 00	Service Entrance
26 24 16	Panelboards
26 24 19	Motor Control
26 27 26	Wiring Devices
26 28 13	Fuses
26 28 16	Disconnect Switches
26 51 19	LED Lighting
26 52 15	Emergency Lighting Inverter

- B. General Submittal Procedures: In addition to the provisions of Division 1, the following are  
required:

- 1. Transmittal: Each transmittal shall include the following:

- a. Date
- b. Project title and number
- c. Contractor's name and address
- d. Division of work (e.g., electrical, plumbing, heating, ventilating, etc.)
- e. Description of items submitted and relevant specification number
- f. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
- g. Other pertinent data

2. Submittal Cover Sheet: Each submittal shall include a cover sheet containing:
  - a. Date
  - b. Project title and number
  - c. Architect/Engineer
  - d. Contractor and subcontractors' names and addresses
  - e. Supplier and manufacturer's names and addresses
  - f. Division of work (e.g., electrical, plumbing, heating, ventilating, etc.)
  - g. Description of item submitted (using project nomenclature) and relevant specification number
  - h. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
  - i. Other pertinent data
  - j. Provide space for Contractor's review stamps
3. Composition:
  - a. Submittals shall be submitted using specification sections and the project nomenclature for each item.
  - b. Individual submittal packages shall be prepared for items in each specification section. All items within a single specification section shall be packaged together where possible. An individual submittal may contain items from multiple specifications sections if the items are intimately linked (e.g., pumps and motors).
  - c. All sets shall contain an index of the items enclosed with a general topic description on the cover.
4. Content: Submittals shall include all fabrication, erection, layout, and setting drawings; manufacturers' standard drawings; schedules; descriptive literature, catalogs and brochures; performance and test data; wiring and control diagrams; dimensions; shipping and operating weights; shipping splits; service clearances; and all other drawings and descriptive data of materials of construction as may be required to show that the materials, equipment or systems and the location thereof conform to the requirements of the contract documents.
5. Contractor's Approval Stamp:
  - a. The Contractor shall thoroughly review and approve all shop drawings before submitting them to the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall stamp, date and sign each submittal certifying it has been reviewed.
  - b. Unstamped submittals will be rejected.
  - c. The Contractor's review shall include, but not be limited to, verification of the following:
    - 1) Only approved manufacturers are used.
    - 2) Addenda items have been incorporated.

- 3) Catalog numbers and options match those specified.
- 4) Performance data matches that specified.
- 5) Electrical characteristics and loads match those specified.
- 6) Equipment connection locations, sizes, capacities, etc. have been coordinated with other affected trades.
- 7) Dimensions and service clearances are suitable for the intended location.
- 8) Equipment dimensions are coordinated with support steel, housekeeping pads, openings, etc.
- 9) Constructability issues are resolved (e.g., weights and dimensions are suitable for getting the item into the building and into place, sinks fit into countertops, etc.).
- d. The Contractor shall review, stamp and approve all subcontractors' submittals as described above.
- e. The Contractor's approval stamp is required on all submittals. Approval will indicate the Contractor's review of all material and a complete understanding of exactly what is to be furnished. Contractor shall clearly mark all deviations from the contract documents on all submittals. If deviations are not marked by the Contractor, then the item shall be required to meet all drawing and specification requirements.
6. Submittal Identification and Markings:
  - a. The Contractor shall clearly mark each item with the same nomenclature applied on the drawings or in the specifications.
  - b. The Contractor shall clearly indicate the size, finish, material, etc.
  - c. Where more than one model is shown on a manufacturer's sheet, the Contractor shall clearly indicate exactly which item and which data is intended.
  - d. All marks and identifications on the submittals shall be unambiguous.
7. Schedule submittals to expedite the project. Coordinate submission of related items.
8. Identify variations from the contract documents and product or system limitations that may be detrimental to the successful performance of the completed work.
9. Reproduction of contract documents alone is not acceptable for submittals.
10. Incomplete submittals will be rejected without review. Partial submittals will only be reviewed with prior approval from the Architect/Engineer.
11. Submittals not required by the contract documents may be returned without review.
12. The Architect/Engineer's responsibility shall be to review one set of shop drawing submittals for each product. If the first submittal is incomplete or does not comply with the drawings and/or specifications, the Contractor shall be responsible to bear the cost for the Architect/Engineer to recheck and handle the additional shop drawing submittals.
13. Submittals shall be reviewed and approved by the Architect/Engineer before releasing any equipment for manufacture or shipment.

14. Contractor's responsibility for errors, omissions or deviation from the contract documents in submittals is not relieved by the Architect/Engineer's approval.
15. Schedule shall allow for adequate time to perform orderly and proper review of submittals, including time for consultants and Owner if required, and resubmittals by Contractor if necessary, and to cause no delay in Work or in activities of Owner or other contractors.
  - a. Allow at least two weeks for Architects/Engineer's review and processing of each submittal, excluding mailing.
16. Architect/Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal which, in the Architect/Engineer's opinion, requires coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. The Architect/Engineer will notify the Contractor, in writing, when they exercise this right.

C. Electronic Submittal Procedures:

1. Distribution: Email submittals as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer, unless a web-based submittal program is used.
2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
  - a. Submittal file name: 26 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
  - b. Transmittal file name: 26 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.

**1.09 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. The requirements herein are in addition to the provisions of Division 1.
- B. Format:
  1. Use AIA Document Continuation Sheets G703 or another similar form approved by the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
  2. Submit in Excel format.
  3. Support values given with substantiating data.
- C. Preparation:

1. Itemize work required by each specification section and list all providers. All work provided by subcontractors and major suppliers shall be listed on the Schedule of Values. List each subcontractor and supplier by company name.
  2. Break down all costs into:
    - a. Material: Delivered cost of product with taxes paid.
    - b. Labor: Labor cost, excluding overhead and profit.
  3. Itemize the cost for each of the following:
    - a. Overhead and profit.
    - b. Bonds.
    - c. Insurance.
    - d. General Requirements: Itemize all requirements.
  4. For each line item having an installed cost of more than \$5,000, break down costs to list major products or operations under each item. At a minimum, provide material and labor cost line items for the following:
    - a. Each piece of equipment requiring shop drawings. Use the equipment nomenclature (SB-1, PANEL P-1, etc.) on the Schedule of Values.
    - b. Each type of small unitary equipment (e.g., FDS, FCS, CS, etc.). Multiple units of the same type can be listed together provided quantities are also listed so unit costs can be determined.
    - c. Each conduit system (medium voltage, normal, emergency, low voltage systems, etc.). In addition, for larger projects breakdown the material and labor for each conduit system based on geography (building, floor, and/or wing).
    - d. Site utilities (5' beyond building)
    - e. Seismic design
    - f. Testing
    - g. Commissioning
    - h. Record drawings
    - i. Punchlist and closeout
- D. Update Schedule of Values when:
1. Indicated by Architect/Engineer.
  2. Change of subcontractor or supplier occurs.
  3. Change of product or equipment occurs.

### **1.010 CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. A detailed material and labor takeoff shall be prepared for each change order, along with labor rates and markup percentages. Change orders shall be broken down by sheet or associated individual line item indicated in the change associated narrative, whichever provides the most detailed breakdown. Change orders with inadequate breakdown will be rejected.
- B. Itemized pricing with unit cost shall be provided from all distributors and associated subcontractors.
- C. Change order work shall not proceed until authorized.

### **1.011 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING and MAINTENANCE**

- A. Exercise care in transporting and handling to avoid damage to materials. Store materials on the site to prevent damage.
- B. Protect equipment, components, and openings with airtight covers and exercise care at every stage of storage, handling, and installation of equipment to prevent airborne dust and dirt from entering or fouling equipment to include, but not limited to:
  - 1. Distribution equipment - branch panels, distribution panels, switchboards, motor control centers, etc.
  - 2. Transformers, ventilated.
  - 3. Lighting luminaires and lighting control systems.
- C. Equipment and components that are visibly damaged or have been subject to environmental conditions prior to building turnover to Owner that could shorten the life of the component (for example, water damage, humidity, dust and debris, excessive hot or cold storage location, etc.) shall be repaired or replaced with new equipment or components without additional cost to the building owner.
- D. Keep all materials clean, dry and free from damaging environments.
- E. Coordinate the installation of heavy and large equipment with the General Contractor and/or Owner. If the Electrical Contractor does not have prior documented experience in rigging and lifting similar equipment, he/she shall contract with a qualified lifting and rigging service that has similar documented experience. Follow all equipment lifting and support guidelines for handling and moving.
- F. Contractor is responsible for moving equipment into the building and/or site. Contractor shall review site prior to bid for path locations and any required building modifications to allow movement of equipment. Contractor shall coordinate the work with other trades.

### **1.012 NETWORK / INTERNET CONNECTED EQUIPMENT**

- A. These specifications may require certain equipment or systems to have network, Internet and/or remote access capability ("Network Capability"). Any requirement for Network Capability shall be interpreted only as a functional capability and is not to be construed as authority to connect or enable any Network Capability. Network Capability may only be connected or enabled with the express written consent of the Owner.
- B. The following network connected equipment shall be equipped with restricted access protocols:



1. Adjustable trip overcurrent protection devices
2. Power monitoring and control
3. Electrical controls
4. Lighting control system

#### **1.013 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide one-year warranty for all fixtures, equipment, materials, and workmanship.
- B. The warranty period for all work in this specification Division shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion or successful system performance whichever occurs later. The warranty may also commence if a whole or partial system or any separate piece of equipment or component is put into use for the benefit of any party other than the installing contractor with prior written authorization of the Owner. In this instance, the warranty period shall commence on the date when such whole system, partial system or separate piece of equipment or component is placed in operation and accepted in writing by the Owner.
- C. Warranty requirements extend to correction, without cost to the Owner, of all work found to be defective or nonconforming to the contract documents. The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting all damage due to defects or nonconformance with contract documents excluding repairs required as a result of improper maintenance or operation, or of normal wear as determined by the Architect/Engineer.

#### **1.014 INSURANCE**

- A. This Contractor shall maintain insurance coverage as set forth in Division 1 of these specifications.

#### **1.015 MATERIAL SUBSTITUTION**

- A. Where several manufacturers' names are given, the manufacturer for which a catalog number is given is the basis for job design and establishes the quality.
- B. Equivalent equipment manufactured by the other listed manufacturers may be used. Contractor shall ensure that all items submitted by these other manufacturers meet all requirements of the drawings and specifications and fits in the allocated space. When using other listed manufacturers, the Contractor shall assume responsibility for any and all modifications necessary (including, but not limited to structural supports, electrical connections and rough-in, and regulatory agency approval, etc.) and coordinate such with other contractors. The Architect/Engineer shall make the final determination of whether a product is equivalent.
- C. Any material, article or equipment of other unnamed manufacturers which will adequately perform the services and duties imposed by the design and is of a quality equal to or better than the material, article or equipment identified by the drawings and specifications may be used if approval is secured in writing from the Architect/Engineer via addendum. The Contractor assumes all costs incurred as a result of using the offered material, article or equipment, on the Contractor's part or on the part of other Contractors whose work is affected.

- D. Voluntary add or deduct prices for alternate materials may be listed on the bid form. These items will not be used in determining the low bidder. This Contractor assumes all costs incurred as a result of using the offered material or equipment on the Contractors part or on the part of other Contractors whose work is affected.
- E. All material substitutions requested after the final addendum must be listed as voluntary changes on the bid form.

#### **1.016 PROJECT COMMISSIONING**

- A. The Contractor shall work with the Commissioning Agent (CxA) as described in Section 01 91 00 and provide all services as described in the Commissioning Plan.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 GENERAL**

- A. All items of material having a similar function (e.g., safety switches, panelboards, switchboards, contactors, motor starters, dry type transformers) shall be of the same manufacturer unless specifically stated otherwise on drawings or elsewhere in specifications.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 JOBSITE SAFETY**

- A. Neither the professional activities of the Architect/Engineer, nor the presence of the Architect/Engineer or the employees and subconsultants at a construction site, shall relieve the Contractor and any other entity of their obligations, duties and responsibilities including, but not limited to, construction means, methods, sequence, techniques or procedures necessary for performing, superintending or coordinating all portions of the work of construction in accordance with the contract documents and any health or safety precautions required by any regulatory agencies. The Architect/Engineer and personnel have no authority to exercise any control over any construction contractor or other entity or their employees in connection with their work or any health or safety precautions. The Contractor is solely responsible for jobsite safety. The Architect/Engineer and the Architect/Engineer's consultants shall be indemnified and shall be made additional insureds under the Contractor's general liability insurance policy.

#### **3.02 EXCAVATION, FILL, BACKFILL, COMPACTION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Prior to the commencement of any excavation or digging, the Contractor shall verify all underground utilities with the regional utility locator. Provide prior notice to the locator before excavations. Contact information for most regional utility locators can be found by calling 811.
  - 2. The Contractor shall do all excavating, filling, backfilling, compacting, and restoration in connection with the work.

B. Excavation:

1. Make all excavations to accurate, solid, undisturbed earth, and to proper dimensions.
2. If excavations are carried in error below indicated levels, concrete of same strength as specified for the foundations or thoroughly compacted sand-gravel fill, as determined by the Architect/Engineer shall be placed in such excess excavations under the foundation. Place thoroughly compacted, clean, stable fill in excess excavations under slabs on grade, at the Contractor's expense.
3. Trim bottom and sides of excavations to grades required for foundations.
4. Protect excavations against frost and freezing.
5. Take care in excavating not to damage surrounding structures, equipment or buried pipe. Do not undermine footing or foundation.
6. Perform all trenching in a manner to prevent cave-ins and risk to workmen.
7. Where original surface is pavement or concrete, the surface shall be saw cut to provide clean edges and assist in the surface restoration.
8. If satisfactory bearing soil is not found at the indicated levels, immediately notify the Architect/Engineer or their representative, and do no further work until the Architect/Engineer or their representative gives further instructions.
9. Excavation shall be performed in all ground conditions, including rock, if encountered. Bidders shall visit the premises and determine the soil conditions by actual observations, borings, or other means. The cost of all such inspections, borings, etc., shall be borne by the bidder.
10. If a trench is excavated in rock, a compacted bed with a depth of 3" (minimum) of sand and gravel shall be used to support the conduit unless masonry cradles or encasements are used.
11. Mechanical excavation of the trench to line and grade of the conduit or to the bottom level of masonry cradles or encasements is permitted, unless otherwise indicated on the electrical drawings.
12. Mechanical excavation of the trench to line and grade where direct burial cables are to be installed is permitted provided the excavation is made to a depth to permit installation of the cable on a fine sand bed at least 3 inches deep.

C. Dewatering:

1. Furnish, install, operate and remove all dewatering pumps and pipes needed to keep trenches and pits free of water.

D. Underground Obstructions:

1. Known underground piping, conduit, feeders, foundations, and other obstructions in the vicinity of construction are shown on the drawings. Review all Bid Documents for all trades on the project to determine obstructions indicated. Take great care in making installations near underground obstructions.

2. If objects not shown on the drawings are encountered, remove, relocate, or perform extra work as directed by the Architect/Engineer.

E. Fill and Backfilling:

1. No rubbish or waste material is permitted for fill or backfill.
2. Provide all necessary sand and/or CA6 for backfilling.
3. Native soil materials may be used as backfill if approved by the Geotechnical Engineer.
4. Dispose of the excess excavated earth as directed.
5. Backfill materials (native soil material, sand, and/or CA6) shall be suitable for required compaction, clean and free of perishable materials, frozen earth, debris, earth with a high void content, and stones greater than 4 inches in diameter. Water is not permitted to rise in unbackfilled trenches.
6. Backfill all trenches and excavations immediately after installing of conduit, or removing forms, unless other protection is directed.
7. Around piers and isolated foundations and structures, backfill and fill shall be placed and consolidated simultaneously on all sides to prevent wedge action and displacement. Spread fill and backfill materials in 6" uniform horizontal layers with each layer compacted separately to required density.
8. For conduits that are not concrete encased, lay all conduits on a compacted bed of sand at least 3" deep. Backfill around conduits with sand, in 6" layers and compact each layer.
9. Conduits that are concrete encased or in a ductbank, conduit spacers, and cradles shall be installed on a bed of compacted CA-6 gravel. Refer to conduit section for backfilling and ductbank requirements.
10. Backfill with native soil material (if approved) or sand up to grade for all conduits under slabs or paved areas. All other conduits shall have sand backfill to 6" above the top of the conduit.
11. Place all backfill above the sand in uniform layers not exceeding 6" deep. Place then carefully and uniformly tamp each layer to eliminate lateral or vertical displacement.
12. Where the fill and backfill will ultimately be under a building, floor or paving, each layer of fill shall be compacted to 95% of the maximum density as determined by AASHTO Designation T-99 or ASTM Designation D-698. Moisture content of soil at time of compaction shall not exceed plus or minus 2% of optimum moisture content as determined by AASHTO T-99 or ASTM D-698 test.
13. After backfilling of trenches, no superficial loads shall be placed on the exposed surface of the backfill until a period of 48 hours has elapsed.

F. Surface Restoration:

1. Where trenches are cut through graded, planted or landscaped areas, the areas shall be restored to the original condition. Replace all planting and landscaping features removed or damaged to its original condition. At least 6" of topsoil shall be applied where disturbed areas are to be seeded or sodded. All lawn areas shall be sodded unless seeding is called out in the drawings or specifications.

2. Concrete or asphalt type pavement, seal coat, rock, gravel or earth surfaces removed or damaged shall be replaced with comparable materials and restored to original condition. Broken edges shall be saw cut and repaired as directed by Architect/Engineer.

### **3.03 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER OBSERVATION OF WORK**

- A. The contractor shall provide seven (7) calendar days' notice to the Architect/Engineer prior to:
  1. Placing fill over underground and underslab utilities.
  2. Covering exterior walls, interior partitions and chases.
  3. Installing hard or suspended ceilings and soffits.
- B. The Architect/Engineer will review the installation and provide a written report noting deficiencies requiring correction. The contractor's schedule shall account for these reviews and show them as line items in the approved schedule.
- C. Above-Ceiling Final Observation:
  1. All work above the ceilings must be complete prior to the Architect/Engineer's review. This includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. All junction boxes are closed and identified in accordance with Section 260553 Electrical Identification.
    - b. Luminaires, including ceiling-mounted exit and emergency lights, are installed and operational.
    - c. Luminaire whips are supported above the ceiling.
    - d. Conduit identification is installed in accordance with Section 260553 Electrical Identification.
    - e. Luminaires are suspended independently of the ceiling system when required by these contract documents.
    - f. All wall penetrations have been sealed.
  2. To prevent the Above-Ceiling Final Observation from occurring too early, the Contractor shall review the status of the work and certify, in writing, that the work is ready for the Above-Ceiling Final Observation.
  3. It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the ceilings have been installed prior to this review and prior to seven days elapsing, the Architect/Engineer may not recommend further payments to the contractor until full access has been provided.

### **3.04 PROJECT CLOSEOUT**

- A. The following paragraphs supplement the requirements of Division 1.
- B. Final Jobsite Observation:

1. To prevent the Final Jobsite Observation from occurring too early, the Contractor shall review the completion status of the project and certify that the job is ready for the final jobsite observation.
  2. Attached to the end of this section is a typical list of items that represent the degree of job completeness expected prior to requesting a review. The Contractor shall sign the attached certification and return it to the Architect/Engineer so that the final observation can be scheduled.
  3. It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the job not ready for the final observation and additional trips and observations are required to bring the project to completion, the cost of the additional time and expenses incurred by the Architect/Engineer will be deducted from the Contractor's final payment.
  4. Contractor shall notify Architect/Engineer 48 hours prior to installation of ceilings or lay-in ceiling tiles.
- C. The following must be submitted before Architect/Engineer recommends final payment:
1. Operation and maintenance manuals with copies of approved shop drawings.
  2. Record documents including reproducible drawings and specifications.
  3. A report documenting the instructions given to the Owner's representatives complete with the number of hours spent in the instruction. The report shall bear the signature of an authorized agent of this Contractor and shall be signed by the Owner's representatives.
  4. Provide spare parts, maintenance, and extra materials in quantities specified in individual specification sections. Deliver to project site and submit receipt to Architect/Engineer.
  5. Start-up reports on all equipment requiring a factory installation or start-up.

### **3.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

A. General:

1. Provide an electronic copy of the O&M manuals as described below for Architect/Engineer's review and approval. The electronic copy shall be corrected as required to address the Architect/Engineer's comments. Once corrected, electronic copies and paper copies shall be distributed as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
2. Approved O&M manuals shall be completed and in the Owner's possession prior to Owner's acceptance and at least 10 days prior to instruction of operating personnel.

B. Electronic Submittal Procedures:

1. Distribution: Email the O&M manual as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer.
2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.

4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
    - a. O&M file name: O&M.div26.contractor.YYYYMMDD
    - b. Transmittal file name: O&Mtransmittal.div26.contractor.YYYYMMDD
  5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.
  6. Provide the Owner with an approved copy of the O&M manual on compact discs (CD), digital video discs (DVD), or flash drives with a permanently affixed label, printed with the title "Operation and Maintenance Instructions", title of the project and subject matter of disc/flash drive when multiple disc/flash drives are required.
  7. All text shall be searchable.
  8. Bookmarks shall be used, dividing information first by specification section, then systems, major equipment and finally individual items. All bookmark titles shall include the nomenclature used in the construction documents and shall be an active link to the first page of the section being referenced.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Instructions shall include:
1. Title Page: Include title page with project title, Architect, Engineer, Contractor, all subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers, with addresses, telephone numbers, website addresses, email addresses and point of contacts. Website URLs and email addresses shall be active links in the electronic submittal.
  2. Table of Contents: Include a table of contents describing specification section, systems, major equipment, and individual items.
  3. Copies of all final approved shop drawings and submittals. Include Architect's/Engineer's shop drawing review comments. Insert the individual shop drawing directly after the Operation and Maintenance information for the item(s) in the review form.
  4. Copies of all factory inspections and/or equipment startup reports.
  5. Copies of warranties.
  6. Schematic wiring diagrams of the equipment that have been updated for field conditions. Field wiring shall have label numbers to match drawings.
  7. Dimensional drawings of equipment.
  8. Detailed parts lists with lists of suppliers.
  9. Operating procedures for each system.
  10. Maintenance schedule and procedures. Include a chart listing maintenance requirements and frequency.
  11. Repair procedures for major components.

12. Replacement parts and service material requirements for each system and the frequency of service required.
13. Instruction books, cards, and manuals furnished with the equipment.
14. Include record drawings of the one-line diagrams for each major system. The graphic for each piece of equipment shown on the one-line diagram shall be an active link to its associated Operation & Maintenance data.
15. Copies of all panel schedules in electronic Microsoft Excel spreadsheet (.xlsx) file. Each panelboard shall be a separate tab in the workbook.

### **3.06 INSTRUCTING THE OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE**

- A. Adequately instruct the Owner's designated representatives in the maintenance, care, and operation of the complete systems installed under this contract.
- B. Provide verbal and written instructions to the Owner's representatives by FACTORY PERSONNEL in the care, maintenance, and operation of the equipment and systems.
- C. The Owner has the option to make a video recording of all instructions. Coordinate schedule of instructions to facilitate this recording.
- D. The instructions shall include:
  1. Maintenance of equipment.
  2. Start-up procedures for all major equipment.
  3. Description of emergency system operation.
- E. Notify the Architect/Engineer of the time and place for the verbal instructions to be given to the Owner's representative so a representative can be present if desired.
- F. Minimum hours of instruction time for each item and/or system shall be as indicated in each individual specification section.
- G. Operating Instructions:
  1. Contractor is responsible for all instructions to the Owner's representatives for the electrical and specialized systems.
  2. If the Contractor does not have staff that can adequately provide the required instructions, the Contractor shall include in the bid an adequate amount to reimburse the Owner for the Architect/Engineer to perform these services.

### **3.07 RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following paragraphs supplement Division 1 requirements.
- B. Maintain at the job site a separate and complete set of electrical drawings and specifications with all changes made to the systems clearly and permanently marked in complete detail.



- C. Mark drawings and specifications to indicate approved substitutions; Change Orders, and actual equipment and materials used. All Change Orders, RFI responses, Clarifications and other supplemental instructions shall be marked on the documents. Record documents that merely reference the existence of the above items are not acceptable. Should this Contractor fail to complete Record Documents as required by this contract, this Contractor shall reimburse Architect/Engineer for all costs to develop record documents that comply with this requirement. Reimbursement shall be made at the Architect/Engineer's hourly rates in effect at the time of work.
- D. Record changes daily and keep the marked drawings available for the Architect/Engineer's examination at any normal work time.
- E. Upon completing the job, and before final payment is made, give the marked-up drawings to the Architect/Engineer.
- F. Record actual routing of conduits exceeding 2 inches.

### **3.08 PAINTING**

- A. This Contractor shall paint the following items:
  - 1. Touch up on equipment damaged during construction..
- B. Paint all equipment that is marred or damaged prior to the Owner's acceptance. Paint and color shall match original equipment paint and shall be obtained from the equipment supplier if available. All equipment shall have a finished coat of paint applied unless specifically allowed to be provided with a prime coat only.
- C. Equipment in finished areas that will be painted to match the room decor will be painted by others. Should this Contractor install equipment in a finished area after the area has been painted, the Contractor shall have the equipment and all its supports, hangers, etc., painted to match the room decor. Painting shall be performed as described in project specifications.
- D. Equipment cabinets, casings, covers, metal jackets, etc., located in equipment rooms or concealed spaces, shall be furnished in standard finish, free from scratches, abrasions, chippings, etc.
- E. Equipment in occupied spaces, or if standard to the unit, shall have a baked primer with baked enamel finish coat free from scratches, abrasions, chipping, etc. If color option is specified or is standard to the unit, verify with the Architect the color preference before ordering.
- F. After surfaces have been thoroughly cleaned and are free of oil, dirt or other foreign matter, paint all raceway and equipment with the following:
  - 1. Bare Metal Surfaces - Apply one coat of metal primer suitable for the metal being painted. Finish with two coats of Alkyd base enamel paint.
  - 2. Plastic Surfaces - Paint plastic surfaces with two coats of semi-gloss acrylic latex paint.
    - a. Color of paint shall be as follows:Color of paint shall be verified with the architect.

### **3.09 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. Thoroughly clean all equipment and systems prior to the Owner's final acceptance of the project.
- B. Clean all foreign paint, grease, oil, dirt, labels, stickers, etc. from all equipment.
- C. Remove all rubbish, debris, etc., accumulated during construction from the premises.

### **3.010 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate the installation of all equipment, controls, devices, etc., with other trades to maintain clear access area for servicing.
- B. Install all equipment to maximize access to parts needing service or maintenance. Review the final location, placement, and orientation of equipment with the Owner's representative prior to setting equipment.
- C. Installation of equipment or devices without regard to coordination of access requirements and confirmation with the Owner's representative will result in removal and reinstallation of the equipment at the Contractor's expense.
- D. Raceway and Cable Routing Restrictions: Raceways and cable are restricted from being routed in the following locations, unless serving the space or permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Exit enclosures.
  - 2. Other areas restricted by code.
  - 3. Technology, data, server rooms.

### **3.011 SYSTEM STARTING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. The electrical systems shall be complete and operating. System startup, testing, adjusting, and balancing to obtain satisfactory system performance is the responsibility of the Contractor. This includes all calibration and adjustment of electrical controls, balancing of loads, troubleshooting and verification of software, and final adjustments that may be needed.
- B. Complete all manufacturer-recommended startup procedures and checklists to verify proper equipment operation and does not pose a danger to personnel or property.
- C. All operating conditions and control sequences shall be tested during the start-up period. Testing all interlocks, safety shut-downs, controls, and alarms.
- D. The Contractor, subcontractors, and equipment suppliers shall have skilled technicians to ensure that all systems perform properly. If the Architect/Engineer is requested to visit the job site for trouble shooting, assisting in start-up, obtaining satisfactory equipment operation, resolving installation and/or workmanship problems, equipment substitution issues or unsatisfactory system performance, including call backs during the warranty period, through no fault of the design; the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner on a time and materials basis for services rendered at the Architect/Engineer's standard hourly rates in effect when the services are requested. The Contractor shall pay the Owner for services required that are product, installation or workmanship related. Payment is due within 30 days after services are rendered.

---

### 3.012 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. General:

1. Conduct all tests required during and after construction. Submit test results in NETA format, or equivalent form, that shows the test equipment used, calibration date, tester's name, ambient test conditions, humidity, conductor length, and results corrected to 40°C.
2. Supply necessary instruments, meters, etc., for the tests. Supply competent technicians with training in the proper testing techniques.
3. All cables and wires shall be tested for shorts and grounds following installation and connection to devices. Replace shorted or grounded wires and cables.
4. Any wiring device, electrical apparatus or luminaire, if grounded or shorted on any integral "live" part, shall have all defective parts or materials replaced.
5. Test cable insulation of service and panel feeder conductors for proper insulation values. Tests shall include the cable, all splices, and all terminations. Each conductor shall be tested and shall test free of short circuits and grounds and have an insulation value not less than Electrical Code Standards. Take readings between conductors, and between conductors and ground.
6. If the results obtained in the tests are not satisfactory, make adjustments, replacements, and changes as needed. Then repeat the tests, and make additional tests, as the Architect/Engineer or authority having jurisdiction deems necessary.

#### B. Ground Resistance:

1. Conduct service ground resistance tests using an approved manufactured ground resistance meter. Submit to the Architect/Engineer a proposed test procedure including type of equipment to be used. (The conventional ohmmeter is not an acceptable device.)
2. Make ground resistance measurements during normal dry weather and not less than 48 hours after a rain.
3. If the ground resistance value obtained is more than the value set forth in Section 260526, the following shall be done to obtain the value given:
  - a. Verify that all connections in the service ground system are secure.
  - b. Increase the depth to which ground rods are driven by adding section lengths to the rods and retest. If the resistance is still excessive increase the depth by adding an additional rod section and retest.
  - c. If the resistance is still excessive, furnish and install additional ground rods, spaced not less than 20 feet from other ground rods unless otherwise noted on plans, and connect into the ground electrode system. Retest.
  - d. Review results with the Architect/Engineer.
4. Before final payment is made to the Contractor submit a written report to the Architect/Engineer including the following:
  - a. Date of test.

- b. Number of hours since the last rain.
- c. Soil condition at the time of the test in the ground electrode location. That is: dry, wet, moist, sand, clay, etc.
- d. Diagram of the test set-up showing distances between test equipment, ground electrode, auxiliary electrodes, etc.
- e. Make, model, and calibration date of test equipment.
- f. Tabulation of measurements taken and calculations made.

C. Ground-Fault Equipment Performance Testing:

- 1. Test: Perform ground-fault performance testing when system is installed. The test process shall use primary current injection per manufacturer instruction and procedures. Perform test for the following:
  - a. Service disconnects
  - b. Solid state molded case circuit breakers and solid-state insulated case circuit breakers equipped with ground fault protection.
  - c. Fusible switches with ground fault relay protection.
  - d. Outside branch circuits and feeders.
  - e. Code required.
- 2. Report: Provide copy of test result report with Operation and Maintenance manuals. Provide report to Authority Having Jurisdiction when requested.

D. Other Equipment:

- 1. Give other equipment furnished and installed by the Contractor all standard tests normally made to assure that the equipment is electrically sound, all connections properly made, phase rotation correct, fuses and thermal elements suitable for protection against overloads, voltage complies with equipment nameplate rating, and full load amperes are within equipment rating.
- E. If any test results are not satisfactory, make adjustments, replacements and changes as needed and repeat the tests and make additional tests as the Architect/Engineer or authority having jurisdiction deem necessary.

#### **READINESS CERTIFICATION PRIOR TO FINAL JOBSITE OBSERVATION**

**To prevent the final job observation from occurring too early, we require that the Contractor review the completion status of the project and, by copy of this document, certify that the job is indeed ready for the final job observation. The following is a typical list of items that represent the degree of job completeness expected prior to your requesting a final job observation.**

1. Electrical panels have typed circuit identification.
2. Per Section 260500, cable insulation test results have been submitted.
3. Per Section 260500, ground resistance test results have been submitted.
4. Operation and Maintenance manuals have been submitted as per Section 260500.
5. Bound copies of approved shop drawings have been submitted as per Section 260500.
6. Report of instruction of Owner's representative has been submitted as per Section 260500.
7. Start-up reports from factory representative have been submitted as per Section 260500.

Accepted by:

Prime Contractor \_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Upon Contractor certification that the project is complete and ready for a final job observation, we require the Contractor to sign this agreement and return it to the Architect/Engineer so that the final observation can be scheduled.

It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds the job not ready for the final observation and that additional trips and observations are required to bring the project to completion, the costs incurred by the Architect/Engineers for additional time and expenses will be deducted from the Contractor's contract retainage prior to final payment at the completion of the job.

**END OF SECTION 260500**



## **SECTION 260513**

### **WIRE AND CABLE**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Building wire
- B. Cabling for remote control, signal, and power limited circuits
- C. Metal-clad cable (MC)

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification: Refer to electrical identification for color and identification labeling requirements.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2,000V or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
- C. UL 44 - Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables
- D. UL 83 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables
- E. UL 854 - Service-Entrance Cables
- F. UL 1581 - Standard for Electrical Wires, Cables, and Flexible Cords

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 BUILDING WIRE**

- A. Feeders and Branch Circuits 8 AWG and larger: Copper, stranded conductor, 600-volt insulation, THHN/THWN or XHHW-2.
- B. Feeders and Branch Circuits 8 AWG and larger in Underground Conduit: Copper, stranded conductor, 600-volt insulation, THWN or XHHW-2.
- C. Feeders and Branch Circuits 10 AWG and Smaller: Copper, solid or stranded conductor, 600-volt insulation, THHN/THWN, unless otherwise noted on the drawings.
- D. Control Circuits: Copper, stranded conductor 600-volt insulation, THHN/THWN.
- E. Aluminum conductors are not to be used.
- F. Each 120 and 277-volt branch circuit shall have a dedicated neutral conductor. Neutral conductors shall be considered current-carrying conductors for wire derating.

## **2.02 CABLING FOR REMOTE CONTROL, SIGNAL, AND POWER LIMITED CIRCUITS**

- A. Wire for the following specialized systems shall be as designated on the drawings, or elsewhere in these specifications. If not designated on the drawings or specifications, the system manufacturer's recommendations shall be followed.
  - 1. Low voltage switching and lighting control
  - 2. Other specialized cabling, signal, and power limited cabling. Refer to the appropriate Division 23, 27, or 28 requirements; including, but not limited, to the following:
    - a. Building Automation Systems and Controls, Division 23.
    - b. Information Technology Backbone and Horizontal Cabling, Division 27.
    - c. Electronic Access Control, Intrusion Detection Systems, Video Surveillance, Division 28.
- B. Control Cable for Class 1 Remote Control and Signal Circuits: Copper conductor, 600-volt insulation, rated 60°C, individual conductors twisted together, shielded, and covered with a PVC jacket.
- C. Control Cable for Class 2 or Class 3 Remote Control and Signal Circuits: Copper conductor, 300-volt insulation, rated 60°C, individual conductors twisted together, shielded, and covered with a PVC jacket; UL listed.
- D. Plenum Cable for Class 2 or Class 3 Remote Control and Signal Circuits: Copper conductor, 300-volt insulation, rated 60°C, individual conductors twisted together, shielded, and covered with a nonmetallic jacket; UL listed for use in air handling ducts, hollow spaces used as ducts, and plenums.

## **2.03 METAL-CLAD CABLE (MC)**

- A. Conductors shall be copper, 600-volt insulation, THHN. Metal clad cable shall be constructed in strict accordance with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. Standard for Metal-Clad Cables, UL 15694, exterior of metal interlocked armor.
- B. Minimum conductor size for branch circuit wiring shall be 12 AWG, with larger wires used where specified.
- C. Metal-clad cables may be used for branch circuit wiring within structurally insulated panels as defined in the Electrical Code, subject to acceptance by State and local codes.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 WIRE AND CABLE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Above Accessible Ceilings:
  - 1. Building wire shall be installed in raceway, except for installations in structurally insulated panels.



2. Metal clad cable, Type MC, 1/2" size with minimum #12 conductors and ground, shall be allowed for flexible whips to individual luminaires on non-essential circuits. The flexible whips shall be between 18" to 72" in length per Electrical Code.
- B. All Other Locations: Building wire in raceway.
- C. Above Grade: All conductors installed above grade shall be type "THHN".
- D. Underground or In Slab: All conductors shall be type "THWN".

### **3.02 CONTRACTOR CHANGES**

- A. The basis of design is copper conductors installed in raceway based on ambient temperature of 30°C, NEC Table 310.16 (2011 - 2017 edition 310.15(B)(16)). Service entrance conductors are based on copper conductor installed in underground electrical ducts, NEC Table B.2(7) (2011 - 2017 edition Table B310.15(B)(2)(7); 2008 or later edition B.301.7) or calculated in accordance with Annex B Application Information for Ampacity Calculation.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for derating and sizing conductors and conduits to equal or exceed the ampacity of the basis of design circuits, if he/she chooses to use methods or materials other than the basis of design.
- C. Underground electrical duct ampacity rating shall be in accordance with NEC Table 310.16 (2011 - 2017 edition 310.15(B)(16)) or calculated in accordance with Annex B Application Information for Ampacity Calculation NEC Table B.2(7) (2011 - 2017 edition Table B310.15(B)(2)(7); 2008 or later edition B.301.7) or calculated in accordance with Annex B Application Information for Ampacity Calculation.. The calculations and a sketch of the proposed installation shall be submitted prior to any conduit being installed.
- D. Conductor length(s) listed on plans and schedules. The drawings are diagrammatic with intent to convey the components of the electrical distribution system. Conductor length(s) when listed on plans and schedules are for engineering calculation purposes. Conductor length(s) shall NOT be used for bidding purposes.
- E. Record drawing shall include the calculations and sketches.

### **3.03 GENERAL WIRING METHODS**

- A. Use no wire smaller than 12 AWG for power and lighting circuits, and no smaller than 14 AWG for control wiring.
- B. Use no wire smaller than 18 AWG for low voltage control wiring below 100 volts.
- C. Use 10 AWG conductor for 20 ampere, 120-volt branch circuit home runs longer than 75 feet, and for 20 ampere, 277-volt branch circuit home runs longer than 200 feet.
- D. Use no wire smaller than 8 AWG for outdoor lighting circuits.
- E. The ampacity of multiple conductors in one conduit shall be derated per the Electrical Code. In no case shall more than 4 conductors be installed in one conduit to such loads as motors larger than 1/4 HP, panelboards, motor control centers, etc.
- F. Where installing parallel feeders, place an equal number of conductors for each phase of a circuit in same raceway or cable.
- G. Splice only in junction or outlet boxes.

- H. Neatly train and lace wiring inside boxes, equipment, and panelboards.
- I. Make conductor lengths for parallel circuits equal.
- J. All conductors shall be continuous in conduit from last outlet to their termination.
- K. Terminate all spare conductors on terminal blocks, and label the spare conductors.
- L. Cables or wires shall not be laid out on the ground before pulling.
- M. Cables or wires shall not be dragged over earth or paving.
- N. Care shall be taken so as not to subject the cable or wire to high mechanical stresses that would cause damage to the wire and cable.
- O. At least six (6)-inch loops or ends shall be left at each outlet for installation connection of luminaires or other devices.
- P. All wires in outlet boxes not connected to fixtures or other devices shall be rolled up, spliced if continuity of circuit is required, and insulated.

### **3.04 WIRING INSTALLATION IN RACEWAYS**

- A. Pull all conductors into a raceway at the same time. Use UL listed wire pulling lubricant for pulling 4 AWG and larger wires.
- B. Install wire in raceway after interior of building has been physically protected from the weather and all mechanical work likely to injure conductors has been completed.
- C. Pulling shall be continuous without unnecessary stops and starts with wire or cable only partially through raceway.
- D. Where reels of cable or wire are used, they shall be set up on jacks close to the point where the wire or cable enters the conduit or duct so that the cable or wire may be unreeled and run into the conduit or duct with a minimum of change in the direction of the bend.
- E. Conductors shall not be pulled through conduits until plastering or masonry work is completed and conduits are free from moisture. Care shall be taken so that long pulls of wire or pulls around several bends are not made where the wire may be permanently stretched and the insulation damaged.
- F. Only nylon rope shall be permitted to pull cables into conduit and ducts.
- G. Completely and thoroughly swab raceway system before installing conductors.

### **3.05 CABLE INSTALLATION**

- A. Provide protection for exposed cables where subject to damage.
- B. Use suitable cable fittings and connectors.
- C. Run all open cable parallel or perpendicular to walls, ceilings, and exposed structural members. Follow the routing as illustrated on the drawings as closely as possible. Cable routing on drawings scaled 1/4"=1'-0" or less shall be considered diagrammatical, unless noted otherwise. The correct routing, when shown diagrammatically, shall be chosen by the Contractor based on information in the contract documents; in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, applicable codes, the NECA's "Standard of Installation", recognized industry standards; and coordinated with other contractors.

- D. Open cable shall be supported by the appropriate size J-hooks or other means if called for on the drawings. Wire and cable from different systems shall not be installed in the same J-hook. J-hooks shall be sized with 20% spare capacity. J-hooks shall provide proper bend radius support for data cable and fiber cables.
- E. Open cable installed above suspended ceilings shall not rest on the suspended ceiling construction, nor utilize the ceiling support system for wire and cable support.
- F. J-hook support spans shall be based on the smaller of the manufacturer's load ratings and code requirements. In no case shall horizontal spans exceed 5 feet and vertical spans exceed 4 feet. All J-hooks shall be installed where completely accessible and not blocked by piping, ductwork, inaccessible ceilings, etc. J-hooks shall be independently rigidly attached to a structural element. J-hooks shall be installed to provide 2" horizontal separation and 6" vertical separation between systems.
- G. Open cable shall only be installed where specifically shown on the drawings, or permitted in these specifications.

### **3.06 WIRING CONNECTIONS AND TERMINATIONS**

- A. Splice and tap only in accessible junction boxes.
- B. Use solderless, tin-plated copper, compression terminals (lugs) applied with circumferential crimp for conductor terminations, 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Use solderless, tin-plated, compression terminals (lugs) applied with indenter crimp for copper conductor terminations, 10 AWG and smaller.
- D. Use solderless pressure connectors with insulating covers for copper wire splices and taps, 8 AWG and smaller. For 10 AWG and smaller, use insulated spring wire connectors with plastic caps.
- E. Use compression connectors applied with circumferential crimp for conductor splices and taps, 6 AWG and larger. Tape uninsulated conductors and connectors with electrical tape to 150 percent of the insulation value of conductor. Cold shrink connector insulator with 1kV rating shall be used in damp and wet locations.
- F. Thoroughly clean wires before installing lugs and connectors.
- G. Make splices, taps and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors without perceptible temperature rise.
- H. Phase Sequence: All apparatus shall be connected to operate in the phase sequence A-B-C representing the time sequence in which the phase conductors so identified reach positive maximum voltage.
- I. As a general rule, applicable to switches, circuit breakers, starters, panelboards, switchgear and the like, the connections to phase conductors are intended thus:
  - 1. Facing the front and operating side of the equipment, the phase identification shall be:
    - a. Left to Right - A-B-C
    - b. Top to Bottom - A-B-C

- J. Connection revisions as required to achieve correct rotation of motors shall be made at the load terminals of the starters or disconnect switches.

### **3.07 AC, MC CABLE INSTALLATION**

- A. Cable shall be supported by an approved means every 4.5' and within 12" of outlet boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, or fittings.
- B. Cable may be unsupported in the following conditions:
1. Cable is no longer than 2' in length at terminals where flexibility is necessary.
  2. Cable is not more than 4.5' from the last point of support for connections within an accessible ceiling to light fixtures or equipment.
- C. Conductor ampacity shall be derated as required by the Electrical Code where more than three current carrying conductors are used.
- D. Each 120 and 277-volt circuit shall have a dedicated neutral conductor. Neutral conductors shall be considered current-carrying conductors for cable derating.
- E. Cables shall be cut using a rotary cutter as recommended by the manufacturer to eliminate nicking and cutting of the conductors.
- F. Bending radius shall comply with the requirements listed in the Electrical Code for the type and size of cable being installed, but shall not be less than 5-times the diameter of the cable in any case.
- G. At cable terminations, a fitting shall be provided to protect wires from abrasion, unless the design of the outlet boxes or fittings is such as to afford equivalent protection, and, in addition, an insulating bushing or its equivalent protection shall be provided between the conductors and the armor.

### **3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of Division 1.
- B. Building Wire and Power Cable Testing: Perform an insulation-resistance test on each conductor with respect to ground and adjacent conductors. Test shall be made by means of a low-resistance ohmmeter, such as a "Megger". The applied potential shall be 500 volts dc for 300 volt rated cable and 1000 volts dc for 600 volt rated cable. The test duration shall be one minute. Insulation resistance must be greater than 100 mega-ohm for 600 volt and 25 mega-ohm for 300 volt rated cables per NETA Acceptance Testing Standard. Verify uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
- C. Inspect wire and cable for physical damage and proper connection.
- D. Torque test conductor connections and terminations to manufacturer's recommended values.
- E. Perform continuity test on all power and equipment branch circuit conductors. Verify proper phasing connections.
- F. Provide documentation of the manufacturer's recommended lug torque value for copper conductors, the date the lugs were torqued, and installed torque readings. Documentation indicating that the torque wrench has been calibrated not more than 30 days prior to tightening of lugs shall be provided.

G. Protection of wire and cable from foreign materials:

1. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide adequate physical protection to prevent foreign material application or contact with any wire or cable type. Foreign material is defined as any material that would negatively impact the validity of the manufacturer's performance warranty. This includes, but is not limited to, overspray of paint (accidental or otherwise), drywall compound, or any other surface chemical, liquid, or compound that could come in contact with the cable, cable jacket, or cable termination components.

- H. Overspray of paint on any wire or cable will not be accepted. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to replace any component containing overspray, in its entirety, at no additional cost to the project. Cleaning of the cables with harsh chemicals is not allowed.

**END OF SECTION 260513**



**SECTION 260517**

**ELECTRIC HEAT TRACE AND SNOW MELT**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Heat tracing cables
- B. Controls

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
- B. ASTM 2633 - Standard Test Method for Thermoplastic Insulations
- C. ASTM B193 - Standard Test Method for Resistivity of Electrical Conductor Materials
- D. UL 746B - Polymeric Materials - Long Term Property Evaluations

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - 1. Field Test Reports: Submit written test reports to include test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- C. Submit manufacturer's instructions under provisions of Section 260500.

**1.04 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of electrical heating cables and system components with General Contractor.

**1.05 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide a five (5) year warranty under provisions of Section 260500.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 HEAT-TRACING CABLE**

- A. Self-Regulating Heating Cable:

1. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself without overheating.
2. Provide power end seals and splices as required.
  - a. Each circuit shall be protected by a 30-mA ground-fault protection device. Provide number of breakers based on manufacturer's maximum length for startup at 0°F. Identify breaker in panel directory as "HEAT TAPE".
3. Heat tape shall be meggered prior to insulating piping.
4. HT-1; Suitable for freeze protection of above grade insulated metal or plastic piping, valves, and equipment to maintain fluid temperature above 40°F. 8 watts per foot @ 50°F, 120 V.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) Ray-Chem XL1
    - 2) Chromalox SRL
    - 3) Thermon BSX
    - 4) Delta-Therm IN

## **2.02 CONTROLS**

### **A. Pipe Thermostat:**

1. Ambient sensing unit with adjustable temperature range from 15°F to 150°F snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole double throw switch with 22A 125/250/480VAC ratings; and remote bulb for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature. Provide one pipe thermostat for each circuit of heat trace.
2. Manufacturer:
  - a. Pentair AMC-1A

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine surface and substrates to receive heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation, tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.
  1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electrical heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
  2. Ensure pipe testing is complete.
  3. Ensure surfaces and substrates are level and plumb.
- B. Test cables for electrical continuity before installing.
- C. Test cables for insulation resistance before installing.



- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- E. Verify field measurements are as shown on the Drawings.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. The heating cable shall be protected from where it leaves the pavement to the junction box by installing the cable in rigid metal conduit. Use one conduit for each heating cable.
- C. Avoid crossing expansion, construction, or control joints with heating cables. Provide sufficient slack conductor in expansion loop.
- D. Do not energize cables embedded in concrete, asphalt, or plaster until those assemblies are cured, except for brief testing.
- E. Provide labeling to outside of the pipe thermal insulation weather barrier to indicate the presence of electric heating tracing. Labeling should contain the name of the heat trace company, the word "CAUTION" and the phrase "ELECTRIC HEAT TRACE". Labels should be placed every ten feet of pipe alternating on either side of the pipe.

### **3.03 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Cable splices and repairs shall be made using a splice kit provided by the manufacturer and specifically designed for that purpose.
- B. Power connection and end seal junction box shall be mounted above grade. The junction box shall be installed in such a way so that water cannot enter it.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect cable for physical damage before installation.
- B. Test cables for electrical continuity before energizing.
- C. Test cables for insulation resistance before energizing. Remove cables if measured resistance is less than 10 megohms to ground.
- D. Repeat test for continuity and insulation resistance after applying thermal insulation.

**END OF SECTION 260517**



## **SECTION 260526**

### **GROUNDING AND BONDING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Equipment grounding system
- B. Bonding system
- C. Grounding electrode system

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 or a member company of the International Electrical Testing Association and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the International Electrical Testing Association to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in Electrical Code, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Comply with UL 467 Grounding and Bonding Equipment.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Ground rods.
- C. Field Test Reports: Submit written test reports to include the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- D. Indicate layout of ground field, location of system grounding electrode connections, and routing of grounding electrode conductor and ground ring.

---

## 1.05 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes grounding of electrical systems and equipment. Grounding requirements specified in this Section may be supplemented by special requirements of systems described in other Sections.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. For insulated conductors, comply with Division 26 Section 260513 "Wire and Cable".
- B. Material: Copper.
- C. Equipment Grounding Conductors: Insulated. Refer to Section 260553 for insulation color.
- D. Grounding Electrode Conductors: Stranded cable.
- E. Underground Conductors: Bare, tinned, stranded, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Copper Bonding Conductors: As follows:
  - 1. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG copper conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
  - 2. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded copper conductor.
  - 3. Bonding Jumper: Bare copper tape, braided bare copper conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
  - 4. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided copper conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- G. IBT; Intersystem Bonding Termination:
  - 1. Copper bar, 1/4" x 2" x 24". Provide with wall mounting brackets, insulators and pre-tapped holes.
  - 2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Harger GBI Series.
    - b. Erico EGB Series.

### 2.02 CONNECTOR PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with UL 467; listed for use for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and connected items.
- B. Connectors: Hydraulic compression type, in kit form, and selected per manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Bolted Connectors: Bolted-pressure-type connectors.

### 2.03 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods Copper-clad steel.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONNECTIONS**

- A. General: Make connections so galvanic action or electrolysis possibility is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
  - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer to order of galvanic series.
  - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
- B. Compression-Type Connections: Use hydraulic compression tools to provide correct circumferential pressure for compression connectors. Use tools and dies recommended by connector manufacturer. Provide embossing die code or other standard method to make a visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on grounding conductor.
- C. Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: For No. 8 AWG and larger, use pressure-type grounding lugs. No. 10 AWG and smaller grounding conductors may be terminated with winged pressure-type connectors.
- D. Noncontact Metal Raceway Terminations: If metallic raceways terminate at metal housings without mechanical and electrical connection to housing, terminate each conduit with a grounding bushing. Connect grounding bushings with a bare grounding conductor to grounding bus or terminal in housing. Bond electrically non-continuous conduits at entrances and exits with grounding bushings and bare grounding conductors, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Underground Connections: Exothermic-welded connections. Use for underground connections, except those at test wells.
- F. Connections at back boxes, junction boxes, pull boxes, and equipment terminations: The equipment grounding conductor(s) associated with all circuits in the box shall be connected together and to the box using a suitable grounding screw. The removal of the respective receptacle, luminaire, or other device served by the box shall not interrupt the grounding continuity. The connection to the non-metallic boxes shall be made to any metallic fitting or device requiring grounding.
- G. Tighten screws and bolts for grounding and bonding connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A.
- H. Moisture Protection: If insulated grounding conductors are connected to ground rods or grounding buses, insulate entire area of connection and seal against moisture penetration of insulation and cable.

---

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Use only copper conductors for both insulated and bare grounding conductors in direct contact with earth, concrete, masonry, crushed stone, and similar materials.
- B. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage. Each grounding conductor that passes through a below grade wall must be provided with a waterstop.
- C. Grounding electrode conductor (GEC) shall be protected from physical damage by rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit (PVC) in exposed locations.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install so vibration by equipment mounted on vibration isolation hangers and supports is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, unless a disconnect-type connection is required; then use a bolted clamp. Bond straps directly to the basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts. Install straps only in locations accessible for maintenance.
- E. In raceways, use insulated equipment grounding conductors.
- F. Underground Grounding Conductors: Use copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum. Bury at least 24 inches below grade or bury 12 inches above duct bank when installed as part of the duct bank.

### 3.03 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING SYSTEM

- A. Comply with Electrical Code, for types, sizes, and quantities of equipment grounding conductors, unless specific types, larger sizes, or more conductors than required by Electrical Code are indicated.
- B. Install equipment grounding conductors in all feeders and circuits. Terminate each end on a grounding lug or bus.
- C. Nonmetallic Raceways: Install an equipment grounding conductor in nonmetallic raceways unless they are designated for telephone or data cables.

### 3.04 BONDING SYSTEM

- A. At building expansion joints, provide flexible bonding jumpers to connect to columns or beams on each side of the expansion joint.
- B. Exterior Metallic Pull and Junction Box Covers, Metallic Hand Rails: Bond to grounding system using flexible grounding conductors.
- C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, Metal Well Casing, and Heating Cables: Install a separate equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater, heat-tracing, and anti-frost heating cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, well casing, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Connect bonding conductors to metal water pipe using a suitable ground clamp. Make connections to flanged piping at street side of flange. Provide bonding jumper around water meter.
- E. Signal and Communication Systems: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication systems, provide No. 6 AWG minimum insulated bonding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location. Leave 10 feet of slack conductor at terminal board.

- F. Telecom Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bar.
- G. Equipment Ground Conductor Continuity: All spliced equipment grounding conductors in junction boxes, cabinets, and distribution equipment shall be connected together and bonded to the metal enclosure.
- H. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures > 15 feet: Provide a grounding electrode in addition to installing a separate equipment grounding conductor with supply branch-circuit conductors.

### **3.05 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM**

- A. Supplementary Grounding Electrode: Use driven ground rod on exterior of building.
- B. Ground Rods: Install at least two rods spaced at least 20 feet from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes.
  - 1. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductors. Use exothermic welds, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging copper coating.
- C. Metal Water Service Pipe: Provide insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes by grounding clamp connectors. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor to street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
- D. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters, filtering devices, and similar equipment. Connect to pipe with grounding clamp connectors.

### **3.06 CONCRETE OR WOOD BUILDING GROUNDING SYSTEM**

- A. Provide a copper common grounding electrode conductor for the attachment of multiple separately derived systems in accordance with Electrical Code. Individual grounding conductor taps from the separately derived systems to the common grounding electrode shall be sized in accordance with Electrical Code. All tap connections shall be made in an accessible location in such a manner that common grounding electrode conductor remains without a splice or joint.

### **3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect grounding and bonding system conductors and connections for tightness and proper installation.
  - 1. Measure ground resistance from system neutral connection at service entrance to convenient ground reference points using suitable ground testing equipment. Resistance shall not exceed 5 ohms.
  - 2. Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field quality-control testing:

- a. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
- b. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at ground test wells. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after the last trace of precipitation, and without the soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance. Perform tests, by the fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
- c. Provide drawings locating each ground rod and ground rod assembly and other grounding electrodes, identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
  - 1) Equipment Rated 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
- d. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect/Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

### **3.08 GRADING AND PLANTING**

- A. Restore surface features, including vegetation, at areas disturbed by Work of this Section. Reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. If sod has been removed, replace it as soon as possible after backfilling is completed. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other activities to their original condition. Include application of topsoil, fertilizer, lime, seed, sod, sprig, and mulch. Comply with Division 2. Maintain restored surfaces. Restore disturbed paving.

**END OF SECTION 260526**



**SECTION 260527**  
**SUPPORTING DEVICES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Conduit and Equipment Supports
- B. Fastening Hardware
- C. Concrete Housekeeping Pads

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Support systems shall be adequate for weight of equipment and conduit, including wiring, which they carry.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. UL 62275 - Cable Management Systems - Cables Ties for Electrical Installations

**1.04 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size, shape and location of concrete pads with section on Cast-in-Place Concrete or Concrete Topping.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Allied Support Systems
- B. Cooper B-Line
- C. Erico, Inc.
- D. Hilti
- E. Power Fasteners
- F. Orbit Industries

**2.02 MATERIAL**

- A. Support Channel: Stainless steel for wet/damp locations; painted steel for interior/dry locations. All field cut ends shall be touched up with matching finish to inhibit rusting.
- B. Hardware: Corrosion resistant.
- C. Anchorage and Structural Attachment Components:

1. Strength: Defined in reports by ICBO Evaluation Service or another agency acceptable to Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
  - a. Structural Safety Factor: Strength in tension and shear of components used shall be at least two times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
2. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts and Assemblies.
3. Welding Lugs: Comply with MSS-SP-69, Type 57.
4. Beam clamps for Steel Beams and Joists: Double sided or concentric open web joist hangers. Single-sided type is not acceptable.
5. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchors: Neoprene units designed for seismically rated rigid equipment mountings, and matched to the type and size of anchor bolts and studs used.
6. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for seismically rated rigid equipment mountings, and matched to the type and size of attachment devices used.
7. Concrete Anchors: Fasten to concrete using cast-in or post-installed anchors designed per the requirements of Appendix D of ACI 318-05. Post-installed anchors shall be qualified for use in cracked concrete by ACI-355.2.
8. Masonry Anchors: Fasten to concrete masonry units with expansion anchors or self-tapping masonry screws. For expansion anchors into hollow concrete block, use sleeve-type anchors designed for the specific application. Do not fasten in masonry joints. Do not use powder actuated fasteners, wooden plugs, or plastic inserts.

D. Conduit Sleeves and Lintels:

1. Each Contractor shall provide, to the General Contractor for installation, lintels for all openings required for the Contractor's work in masonry walls and conduit sleeves for floors, unless specifically shown as being by others.
2. Refer to Structural General Notes for lintel requirements in masonry construction.
3. Fabricate all lintels from structural steel shapes or as indicated on the drawings. All lintels and grouped wall openings shall be approved by the Architect or Structural Engineer.
4. Fabricate all sleeves from standard weight black steel pipe. Provide continuous sleeve. Cut or split sleeves are not acceptable. Sleeves through concrete walls may be high density polyethylene pipe penetration sleeve with a water stop collar, suitable for use with Link-Seal mechanical seals. Century-Line Model CS.
5. Sleeves through the floors on exposed risers shall be flush with the ceiling, with planed squared ends extending 1" above the floor in unfinished areas, and flush with the floor in finished areas, to accept spring closing floor plates.
6. Sleeves shall not penetrate structural members without approval from the Structural Engineer.
7. Openings through unexcavated floors and/or foundation walls below the floor shall have a smooth finish with sufficient annular space around material passing through opening so slight settling will not place stress on the material or building structure.

8. Install all sleeves concentric with conduits. Secure sleeves in concrete to wood forms. This Contractor is responsible for sleeves dislodged or moved when pouring concrete.
9. Where conduits rise through concrete floors that are on earthen grade, provide 3/4" resilient expansion joint material (asphalt and cork) wrapped around the pipe, the full depth of concrete, at the point of penetration. Secure to prevent shifting during concrete placement and finishing.
10. Size sleeves large enough to allow expansion and contraction movement.

E. Concrete Housekeeping Pads:

1. Concrete bases for all floor mounted equipment and wall mounted equipment which is surface mounted and extends to within 6" of the finished floor, unless shown otherwise on the drawings, shall be 3-1/2" thick concrete.
2. Bases shall extend 3" on all sides of the equipment (6" larger than factory base).
3. Where the base is less than 12" from a wall, the base shall be carried to the wall to prevent a "dirt-trap".
4. Concrete materials and workmanship required for the Contractor's work shall be provided by the Contractor. Materials and workmanship shall conform to the applicable standards of the Portland Cement Association. Reinforce with 6" x 6", W1.4-W1.4 welded wire fabric. Concrete shall withstand 3,000 pounds compression per square inch at twenty-eight days.

F. Rooftop Support System:

1. Provide pre-fabricated roof supports for all conduit and equipment installed above the roof. Support all conduit and equipment a minimum of 4" above roof.
2. Support system shall be compatible with single ply, bituminous, metal, and spray foam roof systems. The base shall be rounded to prevent damage to the roof, and drainage holes shall prevent ponding of water in the support.
3. All metal components shall be hot dipped galvanized. Mounting hardware shall be stainless steel or hot dipped galvanized. Support shall be UV, corrosion, and freeze/thaw resistant. Support shall include orange paint, reflective safety orange accents, or similar markings for increased visibility.
4. Products:
  - a. Anvil International HBS-Base Series
  - b. Cooper B-Line Dura-Blok
  - c. Erico Caddy Pyramid 50, 150, 300, or 600 (to match load).

G. Truss and Joist Support System: Provided the installation complies with all loading requirements of truss and joist manufacturers, the following practices are acceptable:

1. Loads of 100 lbs. or less may be attached anywhere along the top or bottom chords of trusses or joists with a minimum 3' spacing between loads.
2. Loads greater than 100 lbs. must be hung concentrically and may be hung from top or bottom chord, provided one of the following conditions is met:

- a. The hanger is attached within 6" from a web/chord joint.
  - b. Additional L2x2x1/4 web reinforcement is installed per manufacturer's requirements.
- 3. It is prohibited to cantilever a load using an angle or other structural component that is attached to a truss or joist in such a fashion that a torsional force is applied to that structural member.
- 4. If conditions cannot be met, coordinate installation with truss or joist manufacturer and contact Architect/Engineer.
- H. Cable Ties for Cable Management Systems:
  - 1. Cables ties, UL Listed, Type 21 or Type 21S, and test to UL Standard 62275 for Cable Management Systems.
  - 2. Acceptable Applications: Low Voltage Wire and Cabling.
    - a. Bundle wires and cables within cable trays, auxiliary gutters, and similar applications.
    - b. Organize and support wiring and cables within equipment and distribution systems.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Fasten hanger rods, conduit clamps, and outlet and junction boxes to building structure using expansion anchors in concrete and beam clamps on structural steel.
- B. Trapeze support installation: Cut hanger rods back at trapeze supports so they do not extend more than 3/4" below bottom face of lowest fastener and blunt any sharp edges.
- C. Use toggle bolts or hollow wall fasteners in hollow masonry, plaster, or gypsum board partitions and walls; expansion anchors or preset inserts in solid masonry walls; self-drilling anchors or expansion anchor on concrete surfaces; sheet metal screws in sheet metal studs; and wood screws in wood construction.
- D. Do not fasten supports to ceiling systems, piping, ductwork, mechanical equipment, or conduit, unless otherwise noted.
- E. Do not use powder-actuated anchors without specific permission.
- F. Do not drill structural steel members.
- G. Fabricate supports from structural steel or steel channel, rigidly welded or bolted to present a neat appearance. Use hexagon head bolts with spring lock washers under all nuts.
- H. In wet locations and on all building floors below exterior earth grade install free-standing electrical equipment on concrete pads.
- I. Install cabinets and panelboards with minimum of four anchors. Provide horizontal backing/support framing in stud walls for rigid mounting. Provide steel channel supports to stand surface-mounted panelboard or cabinet one inch off wall.
- J. Bridge studs top and bottom with channels to support flush-mounted cabinets and panelboards in stud walls.

- K. Do not exceed 25 lbs. per hanger and a minimum spacing of 2'-0" on center when attaching to metal roof decking (excludes concrete on metal deck). This 25 lbs. load and 2'-0" spacing include adjacent electrical and mechanical items hanging from deck. If the hanger restrictions cannot be achieved, supplemental framing off steel framing will need to be added.
- L. Refer to Section 260533 for special conduit supporting requirements.

### **3.02 FINISH**

- A. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. Hangers and supports in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and above suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.
- B. Trim all ends of exposed field fabricated steel hangers, slotted channel and threaded rod to within 1" of support or fastener to eliminate potential injury to personnel unless shown otherwise on the drawings. Smooth ends and install elastomeric insulation with two coats of latex paint if exposed steel is within 6'-6" of finish floor and presents potential injury to personnel.

**END OF SECTION 260527**



**SECTION 260533**  
**CONDUIT AND BOXES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Rigid metallic conduit and fittings (RMC)
- B. Electrical metallic tubing and fittings (EMT)
- C. Flexible metallic conduit and fittings (FMC)
- D. Liquidtight flexible metallic conduit and fittings (LFMC)
- E. Rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit and fittings (PVC)
- F. Wall and ceiling outlet boxes
- G. Electrical connection
- H. Pull and junction boxes
- I. Handholes
- J. Foundation - Underground Sleeves and Seals
- K. Raceway Seals and Sealant
- L. Accessories

**1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification: Refer to electrical identification for color and identification labeling requirements.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI C80.1 - Rigid Steel Conduit, Zinc-Coated
  - 2. ANSI C80.3 - Electrical Metallic Tubing, Zinc-Coated and Fittings
  - 3. ANSI C80.4 - Fittings for Rigid Metal Conduit and Electrical Metallic Tubing
  - 4. ANSI/NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-Steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers and Box Supports
  - 5. ANSI/NEMA OS 2 - Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers and Box Supports
- B. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - 1. A-A-50553A - Fittings for Conduit, Metal, Rigid, (Thick-Wall and Thin-Wall (EMT) Type
  - 2. A-A-55810 - Specification for Flexible Metal Conduit
- C. NECA "Standards of Installation"

D. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

1. ANSI/NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing and Cable
2. RN 1 - Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit, Rigid Aluminum Conduit, and Intermediate Metal Conduit
3. TC 2 - Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit
4. TC 9 - Fittings for PVC Plastic Utilities Duct for Underground Installation

E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)

F. Underwriters Laboratories (UL): Applicable Listings

1. UL 1 - Flexible Metal Conduit
2. UL 6 - Rigid Metal Conduit
3. UL 360 - Liquid Tight Flexible Steel Conduit
4. UL514-B - Conduit Tubing and Cable Fittings
5. UL651-A - Type EB and a PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit
6. UL746A - Standard for Polymeric Materials - Short Term Property Evaluations
7. UL797 - Electrical Metal Tubing

G. Definitions:

1. Fittings: Conduit connection or coupling.
2. Body: Enlarged fittings with opening allowing access to the conductors for pulling purposes only.
3. Mechanical Spaces: Enclosed areas, usually kept separated from the general public, where the primary use is to house service equipment and to route services. These spaces generally have exposed structures, bare concrete and non-architecturally emphasized finishes.
4. Finished Spaces: Enclosed areas where the primary use is to house personnel and the general public. These spaces generally have architecturally emphasized finishes, ceilings and/or floors.
5. Concealed: Not visible by the general public. Often indicates a location either above the ceiling, in the walls, in or beneath the floor slab, in column coverings, or in the ceiling construction.
6. Above Grade: Not directly in contact with the earth. For example, an interior wall located at an elevation below the finished grade shall be considered above grade but a wall retaining earth shall be considered below grade.
7. Slab: Horizontal pour of concrete used for a floor or sub-floor.



---

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 RIGID METALLIC CONDUIT (RMC) AND FITTINGS**

A. Manufacturers:

1. Atkore Allied Tube & Conduit
2. Nucor
3. Electroline
4. Western Tube
5. Wheatland Tube Co
6. or approved equal.

B. Manufacturers of RMC Conduit Fittings:

1. ABB/Thomas & Betts
2. Eaton/Crouse-Hinds
3. Electroline
4. Emerson Appleton & OZ Gedney
5. Hubbell Raco and Killark
6. NSI Bridgeport
7. Orbit Industries
8. Wesco Regal
9. or approved equal.

C. Minimum Size Galvanized Steel: 3/4 inch, unless otherwise noted.

D. Fittings and Conduit Bodies:

1. End Bell Fittings: Malleable iron, hot dip galvanized, threaded flare type with provisions for mounting to form.
2. Expansion Joints: Malleable iron and hot dip galvanized providing a minimum of 4 inches of movement. Fitting shall be watertight with an insulating bushing and a bonding jumper.
3. Expansion Joint for Concrete Encased Conduit: Neoprene sleeve with bronze end coupling, stainless steel bands and tinned copper braid bonding jumper. Fittings shall be watertight and concrete-tight.
4. Conduit End Bushings: Malleable iron type with molded-on high impact phenolic thermosetting insulation. Where required elsewhere in the contract documents, bushing shall be complete with ground conductor saddle and clamp. High impact phenolic threaded type bushings are not acceptable.
5. All other fittings and conduit bodies shall be of malleable iron construction and hot dip galvanized.

---

## **2.02 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT) AND FITTINGS**

- A. Minimum Size Electrical Metallic Tubing: 3/4 inch, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Manufacturers of EMT Conduit:
  - 1. Allied Tube & Conduit
  - 2. Calbond Calpipe
  - 3. Nucor
  - 4. Electroline
  - 5. Western Tube
  - 6. Wheatland Tube Co
  - 7. or approved equal.
- C. Fittings and Conduit Bodies:
  - 1. 2" Diameter or Smaller: steel set screw type of steel designed for their specific application.
  - 2. 1/2" and 3/4" Conduit: Push-on connectors and couplers with locking ring and washer of zinc plated steel, listed for use in dry locations.
  - 3. Larger than 2": steel set screw type of steel designed for their specific application.
  - 4. Manufacturers of EMT Conduit Fittings:
    - a. ABB/Thomas & Betts
    - b. Eaton/Crouse-Hinds
    - c. Electroline
    - d. Emerson Appleton & OZ Gedney
    - e. Hubbell Raco and Killark
    - f. NSI Bridgeport
    - g. Orbit Industries
    - h. Wesco Regal
    - i. or approved equal.

## **2.03 FLEXIBLE METALLIC CONDUIT (FMC) AND FITTINGS**

- A. Minimum Size Galvanized Steel: 3/4 inch, unless otherwise noted. Lighting branch circuit wiring to an individual luminaire may be a manufactured, UL listed 3/8" flexible metal conduit and fittings with #14 AWG THHN conductors and an insulated ground wire. Maximum length of 3/8" FMC shall be six (6) feet.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. ABB/Thomas & Betts
  - 2. Anamet Electrical

3. Atkore American Flex AFC and Flexicon
  4. Electri-Flex Co
  5. Electroline
  6. Southwire Alflex
  7. or approved equal.
- C. Construction: Flexible steel, approved for conduit ground, zinc coated, threadless type formed from a continuous length of spirally wound, interlocked zinc coated strip steel. Provide a separate equipment grounding conductor when used for equipment where flexibility is required.
- D. Fittings and Conduit Bodies:
1. Fittings and conduit bodies shall include plastic or cast metal inserts supplied by the manufacturer to protect conductors from sharp edges.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. ABB/Thomas & Betts
    - b. Eaton/Crouse-Hinds
    - c. Electroline
    - d. Emerson Appleton & OZ Gedney
    - e. Hubbell Raco and Killark
    - f. NSI Bridgeport
    - g. Orbit Industries
    - h. Wesco Regal
    - i. or approved equal.

#### **2.04 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METALLIC CONDUIT (LFMC) AND FITTINGS**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. ABB/Thomas & Betts
  2. Anamet Electrical
  3. Atkore American Flex AFC and Flexicon
  4. Electri-Flex Co
  5. Electroline
  6. Southwire Alflex
  7. or approved equal.
- B. Construction: Flexible steel, approved for conduit ground, zinc coated, threadless type formed from a continuous length of spirally wound, interlocked zinc coated strip steel and an extruded PVC cover.
- C. Fittings and Conduit Bodies:

1. Watertight, compression type, galvanized zinc coated cadmium plated malleable cast iron, UL listed.
2. Fittings and conduit bodies shall include plastic or cast metal inserts supplied by the manufacturer to protect conductors from sharp edges.
3. Manufacturers:
  - a. ABB/Thomas & Betts
  - b. Eaton/Crouse-Hinds
  - c. Electroline
  - d. Emerson Appleton & OZ Gedney
  - e. Hubbell Raco and Killark
  - f. NSI Bridgeport
  - g. Orbit Industries
  - h. Wesco Regal
  - i. or approved equal.

## **2.05 RIGID NON-METALLIC CONDUIT (PVC) AND FITTINGS**

- A. Minimum Size Rigid Smooth-Wall Nonmetallic Conduit: 3/4 inch, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. ABB/Carlson
  2. Chevron Phillips Chemical Company
  3. Cantex, J.M. Mfg.
  4. Atkore Heritage Plastics
  5. or approved equal.
- C. Construction: Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), UL labeled for 90°C.
- D. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA TC 3; sleeve type suitable for and manufactured especially for use with the conduit by the conduit manufacturer.
- E. Plastic cement for joining conduit and fittings shall be provided as recommended by the manufacturer.

## **2.06 OUTLET BOXES**

- A. Sheet Metal Outlet Boxes: ANSI/NEMA OS 1; galvanized steel, 16 gauge (approximately 0.0625 inches), with 1/2-inch male fixture studs where required.
- B. Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes: ANSI/NEMA OS 2.
- C. Cast Boxes: NEMA FB1, Type FD, Aluminum, cast ferrous alloy, or stainless steel deep type, gasketed cover, threaded hubs.

- D. Outlet boxes for luminaires to be not less than 1-1/2" deep, deeper if required by the number of wires or construction. The box shall be coordinated with surface luminaires to conceal the box from view or provide a finished trim plate.
- E. Switch outlet boxes for local light control switches, dimmers and occupancy sensors shall be 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep, with raised cover to fit flush with finish wall line. Multiple gang switch outlets shall consist of the required number of gang boxes appropriate to the quantity of switches comprising the gang. Where walls are plastered, provide a plaster raised cover. Where switch outlet boxes occur in exposed concrete block walls, boxes shall be installed in the block cavity with a raised square edge tile cover of sufficient depth to extend out to face of block or masonry boxes.
- F. Wall or column receptacle outlet boxes shall be 4 inches square with raised cover to fit flush with finished wall line. Boxes in concrete block walls shall be installed the same as for switch boxes in block walls.

## **2.07 ECONN; ELECTRICAL CONNECTION**

- A. Electrical connection to equipment and motors, sized per Electrical Code. Coordinate requirements with contractor furnishing equipment or motor. Refer to specifications and general installation notes for terminations to motors.

## **2.08 JB; PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES**

- A. Sheet Metal Boxes: ANSI/NEMA OS 1; galvanized steel.
- B. Sheet metal boxes larger than 12 inches in any dimension that contain terminations or components: Continuous hinged enclosure with 1/4 turn latch and white back panel for mounting terminal blocks and electrical components.
- C. Cast Metal Boxes for Outdoor and Wet Location Installations: NEMA 250; Type 4 and Type 6, flat-flanged, surface-mounted junction box, UL listed as raintight. Galvanized cast iron box and cover with ground flange, neoprene gasket, and stainless steel cover screws.
- D. Cast Metal Boxes for Underground Installations: NEMA 250; Type 4, inside flanged, recessed cover box for flush mounting, UL listed as raintight. Galvanized cast iron box and plain cover with neoprene gasket and stainless steel cover screws.
- E. Flanged type boxes shall be used where installed flush in wall.

## **2.09 HANDHOLES**

- A. HH-#; Handhole, composite polymer concrete body and cover. Stainless steel hardware. Bolted non-skid cover rated for 5,000 pounds. Design load occasional non-deliberate vehicular traffic. Stack units to achieve depth shown on plans. Units in landscaped areas shall be green in color. 11"W, 18"L, 18"D
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hubbell/Quazite PG####BB18, PG####HA00
    - b. Carson Industries H Series
    - c. Armorcast
    - d. Highline Products

- 
- e. Synertech
- 

## 2.010 FOUNDATION - UNDERGROUND SLEEVES AND SEALS

### A. Wall Seals ("Link-Seals"):

1. Where shown on the drawings, raceways passing through foundation walls to an underground condition shall have their annular space (sleeve or drilled hole - not tapered hole made with knockout plug) sealed by properly sized sealing element consisting of a synthetic rubber material compounded to resist aging, ozone, sunlight, water and chemical action.
2. Sleeves, if used, shall be standard weight steel with primed finish and waterstop/anchor continuously welded to sleeve.
3. Sleeves shall be at least 2 trade sizes larger than the penetrating raceway.
4. Pressure shall be maintained by stainless steel bolts and accessories. Pressure plates may be of composite materials for Models S and OS.
5. Sealing Elements shall be as follows:

Model	Service	Element Material	Temperature Range
S	Standard (Stainless)	EPDM	-40°F to 250°F
T	Fire Seals (1 hour)	Silicone	-67°F to 400°F
FS	Fire Seals (3 hours)	Silicone	-67°F to 400°F
OS	Oil Resistant / Stainless	Nitrile	-40°F to 210°F

6. Approved Manufacturers:
  - a. Thunderline Corporation "Link-Seals"
  - b. O-Z/Gedney Company
  - c. Calpico, Inc
  - d. Innerlynx
  - e. Polywater PGKD Series

## 2.011 RACEWAY SEALS AND SEALANT

- A. Duct Sealant: Field applied expandable duct sealant, closed cell field cured, water tight, air tight. Identified for use with electrical cables, conductors, and raceways. Minimum liquid withstanding of 10-feet head of water (5 PSI). Compatible with conductors and raceways, UL94 Flammability Certified.
  1. NOT ALLOWED. Duct seal putty, all-purpose construction sealant.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Polywater FST / AFT Series
    - b. Approved equal

- 
- B. Duct Seal Bushing: Custom mechanical seal, liquid tight, gas tight, stainless steel hardware. Minimum liquid withstanding of 10-feet head of water (5 PSI). Coordinate product with raceway size, cable quantities, and cable sizes.
    - 1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Polywater PHRD / PHSD Series Varia /PHSI Module Series
      - b. Jackmoon Commscope DuctPlug Series
      - c. CalAm Manufacturing WedgeSeal Series
  - C. Wall Sleeve Duct Seal System: Cast-in-place or Core-Drill two piece push-in- place construction, gasketed seal to prevent entry of water and gases.
    - 1. Cable: Duct Seal Bushing, provide interior sleeve duct seal bushing for each duct entry. Provide duct seal bushings with individual seals for each applicable cable.
    - 2. Manufacturers:
      - a. Polywater Varia PHSI Series
      - b. Approved equal

## **2.012 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Sound Barrier Insulation Pads: Mastic, non-hardening, sheet material, minimum 1/8" thickness applied to all five sides of back boxes. Kinetics Noise Control - SealTight Backer Pad, L.H. DOTTIE Co., #68 or equal.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CONDUIT INSTALLATION SCHEDULE AND SIZING**

- A. In the event the location of conduit installation represents conflicting installation requirements as specified in the following schedule, a clarification shall be obtained from the Architect/Engineer. If this Contractor is unable to obtain a clarification as outlined above, concealed rigid galvanized steel conduit installed per these specifications and the Electrical Code shall be required.
- B. Installation Schedule: Refer to drawings.
- C. Size conduit as shown on the drawings and specifications. Where not indicated in the contract documents, conduit size shall be according to the Electrical Code. Conduit and conductor sizing shall be coordinated to limit conductor fill to less than 40%, maintain conductor ampere capacity as required by the Electrical Code (to include enlarged conductors due to temperature and quantity derating values) and to prevent excessive voltage drop and pulling tension due to long conduit/conductor lengths.
- D. Minimum Conduit Size (Unless Noted Otherwise):
  - 1. Above Grade: 3/4 inch. (The use of 1/2 inch would be allowed for installation conduit to individual light switches, individual receptacles and individual fixture whips from junction box.)

- 
2. Below Grade 5' or less from Building Foundation: 1 inch.
  3. Below Grade More than 5' from Building Foundation: 1 inch.
  4. Controls Conduit: 1/2 inch.
- E. Conduit sizes shall change only at the entrance or exit to a junction box, unless specifically noted on the drawings.

### **3.02 CONDUIT ARRANGEMENT**

- A. In general, conduit shall be installed concealed in walls, in finished spaces and where possible or practical, or as noted otherwise. Conduit shall be installed parallel or perpendicular to walls, ceilings, and exposed structural members. In unfinished spaces, mechanical and utility areas, conduit may run either concealed or exposed as conditions dictate and as practical unless noted otherwise on drawings. Installation shall maintain headroom in exposed vicinities of pedestrian or vehicular traffic.
- B. Exposed conduit on exterior walls or above roof will not be allowed without prior written approval of Architect/Engineer. A drawing of the proposed routing and a photo of the location shall be submitted 14 days prior to start of conduit rough-in. Routing shall be shown on coordination drawings.
- C. Conduit shall not share the same cell as structural reinforcement in masonry walls.
- D. Conduit runs shall be routed as shown on large scale drawings. Conduit routing on drawings scaled 1/4"=1'-0" or less shall be considered diagrammatic, unless noted otherwise. The correct routing, when shown diagrammatically shall be chosen by the Contractor based on information in the contract documents, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, applicable codes, the NECA's "Standard of Installation", in accordance with recognized industry standards, and coordinated with other contractors.
- E. Contractor shall adapt Contractor's work to the job conditions and make such changes as required and permitted by the Architect/Engineer, such as moving to clear beams and joists, adjusting at columns, avoiding interference with windows, etc., to permit the proper installation of other mechanical and/or electrical equipment.
- F. Contractor shall cooperate with all contractors on the project. Contractor shall obtain details of other contractor's work to ensure fit and avoid conflict. Any expense due to the failure of This Contractor to do so shall be paid for in full by Contractor. The other trades involved as directed by the Architect/Engineer shall perform the repair of work damaged as a result of neglect or error by This Contractor. The resultant costs shall be borne by This Contractor.

### **3.03 CONDUIT SUPPORT**

- A. Conduit runs installed above a suspended ceiling shall be properly supported. In no case shall conduit rest on the suspended ceiling construction, nor utilize ceiling support system for conduit support.
  1. Support wire used to independently support raceway and wiring systems above suspending ceilings shall be supported on both ends, minimum 12 gauge suspended ceiling support wire, and distinguishable from ceiling support systems by color (field paint), tagging, or equivalent means.



- B. Conduit shall not be supported from ductwork, water, sprinkler piping, or other non-structural members, unless approved by the Architect/Engineer. All supports shall be from structural slabs, walls, structural members, and bar joists, and coordinated with all other applicable contractors, unless noted otherwise.
- C. Conduit shall be held in place by the correct size of galvanized one-hole conduit clamps, two-hole conduit straps, patented support devices, clamp back conduit hangers, or by other means if called for on the drawings.
- D. Support individual horizontal raceways with separate, malleable-iron pipe hangers or clamps.
- E. Spring-steel conduit clips specifically designed for supporting single conduits or tubing may be used in lieu of malleable-iron hangers for 1-1/2" and smaller raceways serving lighting and receptacle branch circuits above accessible ceilings and for securing raceways to slotted channel and angle supports.
- F. Group conduits in parallel runs where practical and use conduit racks or trapeze hangers constructed of steel channel, suspended with threaded solid rods or wall mounted from metal channels with conduit straps or clamps. Provide space in each rack or trapeze for 25% additional conduits.
- G. Do not exceed 25 lbs. per hanger and a minimum spacing of 2'-0" on center when attaching to metal roof decking (excludes concrete on metal deck). This 25 lbs. load and 2'-0" spacing include adjacent electrical and mechanical items hanging from deck. If the hanger restrictions cannot be achieved, supplemental framing off steel framing will need to be added.
- H. Arrange supports in vertical runs so the weight of raceways and enclosed conductors is carried entirely by raceway supports, with no weight load on raceway terminals.
- I. Supports for metallic conduit shall be no greater than 10 feet. A smaller interval may be used if necessitated by building construction, but in no event shall support spans exceed the Electrical Code requirements. Conduit shall be securely fastened within 3 feet of each outlet box, junction box, device box, cabinet, or fitting.
- J. Supports of flexible conduit shall be within 12 inches of each outlet box, junction box, device box, cabinet, or fitting and at intervals not to exceed 4.5 feet.
- K. Supports for non-metallic conduit shall be at sufficiently close intervals to eliminate any sag in the conduit. The manufacturer's recommendations shall be followed, but in no event shall support spans exceed the Electrical Code requirements.
- L. Where conduit is to be installed in poured concrete floors or walls, provide concrete-tight conduit inserts securely fastened to forms to prevent conduit misplacement.
- M. Finish:
  - 1. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. Hangers and supports in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and above suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.
  - 2. Trim all ends of exposed field fabricated steel hangers, slotted channel and threaded rod to within 1" of support or fastener to eliminate potential injury to personnel unless shown otherwise on the drawings. Smooth ends and install elastomeric insulation with two coats of latex paint if exposed steel is within 6'-6" of finish floor and presents potential injury to personnel.

### 3.04 CONDUIT INSTALLATION

- A. Conduit Connections:

- 
1. Shorter than standard conduit lengths shall be cut square using industry standards. The ends of all conduits cut shall be reamed or otherwise finished to remove all rough edges.
  2. Metallic conduit connections in slab on grade installation shall be sealed and one coat of rust inhibitor primer applied after the connection is made.
  3. Where conduits with tapered threads cannot be coupled with standard couplings, then approved split or Erickson couplings shall be used. Running threads will not be permitted.
  4. Install expansion/deflection joints where conduit crosses structure expansion/seismic joints.
- B. Conduit terminations for all low voltage wiring shall have nylon bushings installed on each end of every conduit run.
- C. Conduit Bends:
1. Use a hydraulic one-shot conduit bender or factory elbows for bends in conduit 2" in size or larger. All steel conduit bending shall be done cold; no heating of steel conduit shall be permitted.
  2. All bends of rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit (PVC) shall be made with the manufacturer's approved bending equipment. The use of spot heating devices will not be permitted (i.e. blow torches).
  3. A run of conduit shall not contain more than the equivalent of four (4) quarter bends (360°), including those bends located immediately at the outlet or body.
  4. Telecommunications conduits shall have no more than two (2) 90-degree bends between pull points and contain no continuous sections longer than 100 feet. Insert pull points or pull boxes for conduits exceeding 100 feet in length.
    - a. A third bend is acceptable if:
      - 1) The total run is not longer than (33) feet.
      - 2) The conduit size is increased to the next trade size.
  5. Telecommunications pull boxes shall not be used in lieu of a bend. Align conduits that enter the pull box from opposite ends with each other. Pull box size shall be twelve (12) times the diameter of the largest conduit. Slip sleeves or gutters can be used in place of a pull box.
  6. Telecommunications Conduit(s): Maintain appropriate conduit bend radius at all times. For conduits with an internal diameter of less than 2", maintain a bend radius of at least 6 times the internal diameter. For conduits with an internal diameter 2" or greater, maintain a bend radius of at least 10 times the internal diameter.
  7. Rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit (PVC) runs longer than 100 feet or runs which have more than two 90° equivalent bends (regardless of length) shall use rigid metal or RTRC factory elbows for bends.
  8. Use conduit bodies to make sharp changes in direction (i.e. around beams).
- D. Conduit Placement:

1. Conduit shall be mechanically continuous from source of current to all outlets. Conduit shall be electrically continuous from source of current to all outlets, unless a properly sized grounding conductor is routed within the conduit. All metallic conduits shall be bonded per the Electrical Code.
2. Route exposed conduit and conduit above suspended ceilings (accessible or not) parallel/perpendicular to the building structural lines, and as close to building structure as possible. Wherever possible, route horizontal conduit runs above water and steam piping.
3. Route conduit through roof openings provided for piping and ductwork where possible. If not provided or routing through provided openings is not possible, route through roof jack with pitch pocket. Coordinate roof penetrations with other trades.
4. Conduits, raceway, and boxes shall not be installed in concealed locations in metal deck roofing or less than 1.5" below bottom of roof decking.
5. Avoid moisture traps where possible. Where unavoidable, provide a junction box with drain fitting at conduit low point.
6. All conduits through walls shall be grouted or sealed into openings..
7. CONTRACTOR SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ALL OPENINGS REQUIRED IN MASONRY OR EXTERIOR WALLS UNDER THIS DIVISION. A QUALIFIED MASON AT THE EXPENSE OF THIS CONTRACTOR SHALL REPAIR ALL OPENINGS TO MATCH EXISTING CONDITIONS.
8. Seal interior of conduit at exterior entries, air handling units, coolers/freezers, etc., and where the temperature differential can potentially be greater than 20°F, to prevent moisture penetration. Seal shall be placed where conduit enters warm space. Conduit seal fitting shall be a drain/seal, with sealing compound, identified for use with cable and raceway system.
9. Do not route conduits across each other in slabs on grade.
10. Contractor shall provide suitable mechanical protection around all conduits stubbed out from floors, walls or ceilings during construction to prevent bending or damaging of stubs due to carelessness with construction equipment.
11. Contractor shall provide a polypropylene pull cord with 2000 lbs. tensile strength in each empty conduit (indoor and outdoor), except in sleeves and nipples.
12. Telecommunications conduits that protrude through the structural floor shall be installed 1 to 3" above finished floor (AFF).
13. Telecommunications conduits that enter into Telecommunications rooms below the finished ceiling shall terminate a minimum of 4" below ceiling and as close to the wall as possible.
14. Telecommunications conduits that are below grade and enter into a building shall terminate a minimum of 4" above finished floor (AFF) and as close to the wall as possible.

### **3.05 CONDUIT TERMINATIONS**

- A. Where conduit bonding is indicated or required in the contract documents, the bushings shall be a grounding type sized for the conduit and ground bonding conductor as manufactured by O-Z/Gedney, Appleton, Thomas & Betts, Burndy, Regal, Orbit Industries or approved equal.
- B. Conduits with termination fittings shall be threaded for one (1) lock nut on the outside and one (1) lock nut and bushing on the inside of each box.

- C. Where conduits terminate in boxes with knockouts, they shall be secured to the boxes with lock nuts and provided with approved screw type tinned iron bushings or fittings with plastic inserts.
- D. Where conduits terminate in boxes, fittings, or bodies with threaded openings, they shall be tightly screwed against the shoulder portion of the threaded openings.
- E. Conduit terminations to all motors shall be made with flexible metallic conduit (FMC), unless noted otherwise. Final connections to roof exhaust fans, or other exterior motors and motors in damp or wet locations shall be made with liquidtight flexible metallic conduit (LFMC). Motors in hazardous areas, as defined in the Electrical Code, shall be connected using flexible conduit rated for the environment. Flexible conduit shall not exceed 6' in length. Route equipment ground conductors from circuit ground to motor ground terminal through flexible conduit.
- F. Rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit (PVC) shall be terminated using fittings and bodies produced by the manufacturer of the conduit, unless noted otherwise. Prepare conduit as per manufacturer's recommendations before joining. All joints shall be solvent welded by applying full even coat of plastic cement to the entire areas that will be joined. Turn the conduit at least a quarter to one half turn in the fitting and let the joint cure for 1-hour minimum or as per the manufacturer's recommendations.
- G. All conduit ends shall be sealed with plastic immediately after installation to prevent the entrance of any foreign matter during construction. The seals shall be removed and the conduits blown clear of all foreign matter prior to any wires or pull cords being installed.

### **3.06 UNDERGROUND CONDUIT INSTALLATION**

- A. Conduit Connections:
  - 1. Conduit joints in a multiple conduit run shall be staggered at least one foot apart.
- B. Conduit Bends (Lateral):
  - 1. Conduits shall have long sweep radius elbows instead of standard elbows wherever special bends are indicated and noted on the drawings, or as required by the manufacturer of the equipment or system being served.
- C. Conduit Elbows (Vertical):
  - 1. Minimum metal or RTRC elbow radiuses shall be 30 inches for primary conduits (greater than 600V) and 18 inches for secondary conduits (less than 600V). Increase radius, as required, based on pulling tension calculation requirements.
- D. Expansion Fittings at Finished Grade: Provide underground raceways with an expansion fitting after emerging from finished grade and exterior equipment pads. Field locate the expansion fitting above and within 24 inches of finished grade. Raceways extending less than 12 inches above finished grade, transitioning to LFMC within 12 inches of finished grade, and interior concrete building slabs do not require an expansion fitting unless required by code.
- E. Conduit Placement:
  - 1. Conduit runs shall be pitched a minimum of 4" per 100 feet to drain toward the terminations. Duct runs shall be installed deeper than the minimum wherever required to avoid any conflicts with existing or new piping, tunnels, etc.

2. For parallel runs, use suitable separators and chairs installed not greater than 4' on centers. Band conduit together with suitable banding devices. Securely anchor conduit to prevent movement during concrete placement or backfilling.
3. Where concrete is required, the materials for concreting shall be thoroughly mixed to a minimum  $f_c = 2500$  and immediately placed in the trench around the conduits. No concrete that has been allowed to partially set shall be used.
4. Conduit terminations in manholes, masonry pull boxes, or masonry walls shall be with malleable iron end bell fittings.
5. All spare conduits not terminated in a covered enclosure shall have its terminations plugged as described above.
6. Ductbanks and conduit shall be installed a minimum of 24" below finished grade, unless otherwise noted on the drawings or elsewhere in these specifications.
7. All non-metallic conduit installed underground outside of a slab shall be rigid.

F. Raceway Seal (Exterior to Raceway):

1. All power, telecommunication, electrical conduits and innerducts shall be sealed between the raceway and the building foundation. The raceway penetration shall be sealed liquid-tight, water-tight, non-corrosive.
2. Below Grade Installation Options:
  - a. Cast-in-place concrete installation.
  - b. Hydraulic cement, hydraulic grout, hydraulic epoxy.
  - c. Foundation - Underground Sleeves and Seals; refer to Part 2-Products for product information.
3. Above Grade Installation Options:
  - a. Masonry grout for masonry applications.
  - b. Caulk Sealant, interior/exterior rated, color per architect. Refer to architectural specifications for additional requirements. Approved Manufacturers include Sachco, Tremco Vulkem, Sika or approved equal when not specified by architectural scope.

G. Raceway Seal (Interior to Raceway, with Cables or Empty):

1. All power, telecommunication, electrical conduits and innerducts, including those with cables, shall be sealed at the building and vault entry. The seal shall prevent the entry of liquids or gases. Seal must be compatible with conductors and raceway system. Spare or unused raceways shall also be sealed.
2. Installation Schedule, nominal size:
  - a. 2" or less: Duct Seal Bushing or Duct Sealant
  - b. 2-1/2" through 4": Duct Seal Bushing
  - c. 5" and 6": Wall Sleeve Duct Seal System

---

### **3.07 BOX INSTALLATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Galvanized steel boxes may be used in:
  - 1. Concealed interior locations above ceilings and in hollow studded partitions.
  - 2. Exposed interior locations in mechanical rooms and in rooms without ceilings; higher than 8' above the highest platform level.
  - 3. Direct contact with concrete except slab on grade.
- B. Cast boxes shall be used in:
  - 1. Exterior locations.
  - 2. Direct contact with earth.
  - 3. Direct contact with concrete in slab on grade.
  - 4. Wet locations.

### **3.08 COORDINATION OF BOX LOCATIONS**

- A. Provide electrical boxes as shown on the drawings, and as required for splices, taps, wire pulling, equipment connections, and code compliance.
- B. Electrical box locations shown on the Contract Drawings are approximate, unless dimensioned. Verify location of floor boxes and outlets in offices and work areas prior to rough-in.
- C. Locate and install boxes to allow access. Avoid interferences with ductwork, piping, structure, equipment, etc. Recessed luminaires shall not be used as access to outlet, pull, and junction boxes. Where installation is inaccessible, provide access doors. Coordinate locations and sizes of required access doors with the Architect/Engineer and General Contractor.
- D. Locate and install to maintain headroom and to present a neat appearance.
- E. Coordinate locations with Heating Contractor to avoid baseboard radiation cabinets.

### **3.09 OUTLET BOX INSTALLATION**

- A. Do not install boxes back-to-back in walls.
  - 1. Provide a minimum horizontal separation of 6 inches between boxes installed on opposite sides of non-rated stud walls. When the minimum separation cannot be maintained, install sound insulation pads on all five sides of the back box in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install sound insulation pads on all five sides of the back of all boxes in sound-rated wall assemblies. Sound-rated wall assemblies are defined as partition types carrying a Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating.
- C. The Contractor shall anchor switch and outlet box to wall construction so that it is flush with the finished masonry, paneling, drywall, plaster, etc. The Contractor shall check the boxes as the finish wall surface is being installed to assure that the box is flush. (Provide plaster rings as necessary.)
- D. Mount at heights shown or noted on the drawings or as generally accepted if not specifically noted.

- E. Locate boxes in masonry walls to require cutting of masonry unit corner only. Coordinate masonry cutting to achieve neat openings for boxes.
- F. Provide knockout closures for unused openings.
- G. Support boxes independently of conduit.
- H. Use multiple-gang boxes where more than one device is mounted together; do not use sectional boxes. Provide barriers to separate wiring of different voltage systems.
- I. Install boxes in walls without damaging wall insulation.
- J. Coordinate mounting heights and locations of outlets mounted above counters, benches, backsplashes, and below baseboard radiation.
- K. Position outlets to locate luminaires as shown on reflected ceiling drawings.
- L. Provide recessed outlet boxes in finished areas; secure boxes to interior wall and partition studs, accurately positioned to allow for surface finish thickness. Use stamped steel stud bridges for flush outlets in hollow stud wall, and adjustable steel channel fasteners for flush ceiling outlet boxes.
- M. Align wall-mounted outlet boxes for switches, thermostats, and similar devices.
- N. Provide cast outlet boxes in exterior locations and wet locations, and where exposed rigid or intermediate conduit is used.

### **3.010 PULL AND JUNCTION BOX INSTALLATION**

- A. Locate pull boxes and junction boxes above accessible ceilings or in unfinished areas.
- B. Support pull and junction boxes independent of conduit.
- C. Do not install boxes back-to-back in walls.
  - 1. Provide a minimum horizontal separation of 6 inches between boxes installed on opposite sides of non-rated stud walls. When the minimum separation cannot be maintained, install sound insulation pads on all five sides of the back box in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install sound insulation pads on all five sides of the back of all boxes in sound-rated wall assemblies. Sound-rated wall assemblies are defined as partition types carrying a Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating.

### **3.011 EXPOSED BOX INSTALLATION**

- A. Boxes shall be secured to the building structure with proper size screws, bolts, hanger rods, or structural steel elements.
- B. On brick, block and concrete walls or ceilings, exposed boxes shall be supported with no less than two (2) Ackerman-Johnson, Paine, Phillips, or approved equal screw anchors or expansion shields and round head machine screws. Cast boxes shall not be drilled.
- C. On steel structures, exposed boxes shall be supported to the steel member by drilling and tapping the member and fastening the boxes by means of round head machine screws.
- D. Boxes may be supported on steel members by APPROVED beam clamps if conduit is supported by beam clamps.

- E. Boxes shall be fastened to wood structures by means of a minimum of two (2) wood screws adequately large and long to properly support. (Quantity depends on size of box.)
- F. Wood, plastic, or fiber plugs shall not be used for fastenings.
- G. Explosive devices shall not be used unless specifically allowed.

**END OF SECTION 260533**



## **SECTION 260553**

### **ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Adhesive Markings and Field Labels
- B. Nameplates and Signs
- C. Product Colors

##### **1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. NFPA 70E - National Electrical Safety Code
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
- C. ANSI A13.1 - Standard for Pipe Identification
- D. ANSI Z535.4 - Standard for Product Safety Signs and Labels

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical identification products shall be suitable for the environment installed. Identification labels damaged by the environment due to ultraviolet light fading, damp or wet conditions, physical damage, corrosion, or other conditions shall be replaced with labels suitable for the environment.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 ADHESIVE MARKINGS AND FIELD LABELS**

- A. Adhesive Marking Labels for Raceway: Pre-printed, flexible, self-adhesive vinyl labels with legend indicating voltage and service (Emergency, Lighting, Power, HVAC, Communications, Control, Fire).
  - 1. Label Size as follows:
    - a. Raceways: Kroy or Brother labels 1-inch high by 12-inches long (minimum).
  - 2. Color: As specified for various systems.
- B. Colored Adhesive Marking Tape for banding Raceways, Wires, and Cables: Self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 inch to 2 inches in width.
- C. Pretensioned Flexible Wraparound Colored Plastic Sleeves for Cable Identification: flexible acrylic bands sized to suit the cable diameter and arranged to stay in place by pre-tensioned gripping action when coiled around the cable.

- D. Wire/Cable Designation Tape Markers: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive, wraparound, cable/conductor markers with preprinted numbers and letter.
- E. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, one-piece, self-locking nylon cable ties, 0.18-inch minimum width, 50-lb minimum tensile strength, and suitable for a temperature range from -40°F to 185°F (-40°C to 85°C), type 2/2S or type 21/21S based on application. Provide ties in specified colors when used for color coding. Cable ties shall be listed and identified for the application, securement, and support.
- F. Underground Plastic Markers: Bright colored continuously printed plastic ribbon tape of not less than 6 inches wide by 4 mil thick, printed legend indicating type of underground line, manufactured for direct burial service. Tape shall contain a continuous metallic wire to allow location with a metal detector.
- G. Aluminum, Wraparound Marker Bands: 1-inch width, 0.014 (5mm) inch thick aluminum bands with stamped or embossed legend, and fitted with slots or ears for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.
- H. Brass or Aluminum Tags: 2" (50mm) by 2" (50mm) by .05-inch metal tags with stamped legend, punched for fastener.
- I. Indoor/Outdoor Number and Letters: Outdoor grade vinyl label with acrylic adhesive designed for permanent application in severe indoor and outdoor environments.
- J. Text Sizes:
  - 1. The following information shall be used for text heights, fonts, and size, unless otherwise noted.
    - a. Font: Normal 721 Swiss Bold
    - b. Adhesive Labels: 3/16 inch minimum text height
    - c. Vinyl / Plastic Laminate Labels: 3/4" inch minimum text height

## 2.02 NAMEPLATES AND SIGNS

- A. Engraved, Plastic-Laminated Labels, Signs and Instruction Plates: Engraving stock melamine plastic laminate, 1/16-inch minimum thick for signs up to 20 square inches, or 8 inches in length; 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes. Labels shall be punched for mechanical fasteners.
- B. Text Sizes:
  - 1. The following information shall be used for text heights, fonts, and size, unless otherwise noted.
    - a. Text Height: 3/8 inch minimum
- C. Baked-Enamel Signs for interior Use: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched, or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. Mounting 1/4" grommets in corners.
- D. Exterior, Metal-Backed, Butyrate Signs: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396 inch galvanized-steel backing: and with colors, legend, and size required for application. Mounting 1/4" grommets in corners.
- E. Safety Signs: Comply with 29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1910.145.

- 
- F. Fasteners for Plastic-Laminated Signs; Self-tapping stainless steel screws or number 10/32 stainless steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## **2.03 PRODUCT COLORS**

A. Adhesive Markings and Field Labels:

1. All Labels: Black letters on clear face

B. Nameplates and Signs:

1. NORMAL POWER: Black letters on white face
2. Control Labels: Black letters on white face
3. EMERGENCY: White letters on red face
4. GROUNDING: White letters on green face.
5. CAUTION or UPS: Black letters on yellow face

C. Raceways and Conduit:

1. Provide color coded conduit as indicated below. Conduit shall be colored by the manufacturer:
  - a. Normal Power and General Distribution: Silver

D. Box Covers:

1. Box covers shall be painted to correspond with system type as follows:
  - a. Normal Power and General: Silver
  - b. Emergency Power and Distribution:
    - 1) Emergency Inverter: Orange

E. Conductor Color Identification: Refer to Part 3 for additional information.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, colors, and other designations used in electrical identification work with corresponding designations specified or indicated. Install numbers, lettering, and colors as required by code.
- B. Exposed Ceilings and Finished Spaces: The project includes exposed ceilings in finished spaces. The installation of colored raceways and labeling may not be aesthetically desirable in finished spaces. The contractor shall coordinate identification requirements in exposed ceilings of finished spaces with the Architect/Engineer prior to installation and ordering of materials.

- 
- C. Install identification devices in accordance with manufacturer's written instruction and requirements of Electrical Code.
  - D. Sequence of Work: Where identification is to be applied to surfaces that require finish, install identification after completion of finish work. All mounting surfaces shall be cleaned and degreased prior to identification installation.
  - E. Circuit Identification: Tag or label conductors as follows:
    - 1. Multiple Power or Lighting Circuits in Same Enclosure: Where multiple branch circuits are terminated or spliced in a box or enclosure, label each conductor with source and circuit number.
    - 2. Multiple Control Wiring and Communication/Signal Circuits in Same Enclosure: For control and communications/signal wiring, use wire/cable marking tape at terminations in wiring boxes, troughs, and control cabinets. Use consistent letter/number conductor designations throughout on wire/cable marking tape.
    - 3. Match identification markings with designations used in panelboards shop drawings, Contract Documents, and similar previously established identification schemes for the facility's electrical installations.
  - F. Apply Danger, Warning, Caution and instruction signs as follows:
    - 1. Install Danger, Warning, Caution or instruction signs where required by Electrical Code, where indicated, or where reasonably required to assure safe operation and maintenance of electrical systems and of the items to which they connect. Install engraved plastic-laminated instruction signs with approved legend where instructions or explanations are needed for system or equipment operation. Install metal-backed butyrate signs for outdoor items.
    - 2. 'Danger' indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury. ANSI standard red background, white letters.
    - 3. 'Warning' indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury. ANSI standard orange background, black letters.
    - 4. 'Caution' indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. ANSI standard yellow background, black letters.
    - 5. Emergency Operating Signs: Install, where required by Electrical Code, where indicated, or where reasonably required to assure safe operation and maintenance of electrical systems and of the items to which they connect, engraved laminate signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8-inch high lettering for emergency instructions on power transfer, load shedding, or other emergency operations.
  - G. Apply circuit/control/item designation labels of engraved plastic laminate for pushbuttons, pilot lights, alarm/signal components, and similar items, except where labeling is specified elsewhere.
  - H. Install labels parallel to equipment lines at locations as required and at locations for best convenience of viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
  - I. Install ARC FLASH WARNING signs on all power distribution equipment per Section 260573.

- 
- J. Underground Electrical Lines: For exterior underground power, control, signal, and communication lines, install continuous underground plastic line marker located directly above line at 6 (150mm) to 8 (205mm) inches below grade. A single plastic line marker is permitted when the width of the common trench does not exceed 16 inches; provide a second plastic line marker to mark each edge of the trench when 16 inches of width is exceeded.

### **3.02 FEEDER AND BRANCH CIRCUIT DIRECTORIES**

- A. Product:
1. Adhesive labels and field markings
  2. Nameplates and signs
- B. Feeder Directories Branch: Provide each feeder, branch circuit, feeder modification, and branch circuit modification with a typed circuit directory label. Refer to technical equipment specification sections for additional requirements. Include the following with each label:
1. Load Description: Lighting, receptacles, specific equipment, spare, space, or similar description.
  2. Location: Room name, number, location.
- C. Provide a factory or custom clear plastic sleeve for each branch panel directory and secure to inside panel cover.

### **3.03 LIGHTING CONTROL AND RECEPTACLE COVER PLATES**

- A. Product:
1. Adhesive labels and field markings
- B. Identification material to be a clear, 3/8-inch Kroy tape or Brother self-laminating vinyl label with black letters. Embossed Dymo-Tape labels are not acceptable. Permanently affix identification label to cover plates, centered above the receptacle openings.
- C. Provide identification on all switch and receptacle cover plates. Identification shall indicate source and circuit number serving the device (e.g. "C1A #24").

### **3.04 CONDUIT AND EXPOSED CABLE LABELING**

- A. Product:
1. Adhesive labels and field markings
- B. Conduit Identification: Pre-printed, flexible, self-adhesive vinyl labels with legend at 25foot (7.5 meter) intervals to identify all conduits run exposed or located above accessible ceilings. Conduits located above non-accessible ceiling or in floors and walls shall be labeled within 3 feet of becoming accessible, or separated by enclosures, walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors. Labels for multiple conduits shall be aligned. Refer to color requirements in Part 2 when applicable in addition to the following:
1. Emergency Power: Indicate feeder identification and voltage.

- 
2. Grounding: Indicate "GROUND" and equipment and designation.
  3. Security System: Indicate "Security".
- C. Blank conduit ends or outlet boxes for future extension of system shall have permanent identification marker indicating purpose of conduit or box and where the raceway originated.

### **3.05 BOX LABELING**

- A. Products:
1. Adhesive labels and field markings
- B. Identify Junction, Pull and Connection Boxes: Labeling shall be 3/8-inch Kroy tape OR Brother self-laminating vinyl label, letters/numbers color coded same as conduits. In rooms that are painted out, provide labeling on inside of cover.
- C. All junction, pull, and connection boxes shall be identified as follows:
1. For power and lighting circuits, indicate system voltage and identity of contained circuits ("120V, 1LA1-3,5,7").
  2. For other wiring, indicate system type and description of wiring ("FIRE ALARM NAC #1").

### **3.06 CONDUCTOR COLOR CODING**

- A. Products:
1. All wire and cables shall be color coded by the manufacturer.
- B. Color coding shall be applied at all panels, switches, junction boxes, pull boxes, vaults, manholes etc., where the wires and cables are visible and terminations are made. The same color coding shall be used throughout the entire electrical system, therefore maintaining proper phasing throughout the entire project.
- C. Colored cable ties shall be applied in groups of three ties of specified color to each conductor at each terminal or splice point starting 3 inches from the termination and spaced at 3- inches centers. Tighten to a snug fit, and cut off excess length.
- D. Where more than one nominal voltage system exists in a building or facility, each ungrounded conductor of a multi-wire branch circuit, where accessible, shall be identified by phase and system.
- E. Conductors shall be color coded as follows:
1. 208Y/120 Volt, 4-Wire:
    - a. A-Phase - Black
    - b. B-Phase - Red
    - c. C-Phase - Blue
    - d. Neutral - White
    - e. Ground Bond - Green

- 
2. 0 to 1500 Volt, Direct Current DC Power System:
    - a. Ungrounded Positive Polarity: Red or black with permanent red stripe marked along the entire length. Provide shrink wrap sleeves at terminations indication (POS, POSITIVE, or POS (+)).
    - b. Ungrounded Negative Polarity: Black. Provide shrink wrap sleeves at terminations indication (NEG, NEGATIVE, or NEG (-)).
    - c. Grounded Conductor in Grounded DC systems (refer to paragraphs a and b above for marking of ungrounded conductors):
      - 1) When Positive Polarity is Grounded: White along entire length. Provide shrink wrap sleeves at terminations indication (POS, POSITIVE, or POS (+)).
      - 2) When Negative Polarity is Grounded: White along entire length. Provide shrink wrap sleeves at termination indication (NEG, NEGATIVE, or NEG (-)).
  3. Grounding Conductors:
    - a. Equipment grounding conductors, main/system/supply-side bonding jumpers: Green.
  4. Cabling for Remote Control, Signal, and Power Limited Circuits:
    - a. Low Voltage Switching: Per manufacturer recommendations and code requirements.
    - b. Building Automation Systems and Control: Refer to the Temperature Control Contactor notes located on the mechanical cover sheet.
    - c. Electronic Control: Per manufacturer recommendations and code requirements.
    - d. Structured Cabling: Refer to Division 27.

### **3.07 CONTROL EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Products:
  1. Nameplates and signs
- B. Provide identification on the front of all control equipment such as combination starters, starters, VFDs, contactors, motor control centers, etc.
- C. Identification shall be provided for all connections to equipment furnished by this Contractor, other contractors, or the Owner.
- D. Labeling shall include:
  1. Equipment type and contract documents designation of equipment being served.
  2. Location of equipment being served if it is not located within sight.
  3. Voltage and phase of circuit(s).
  4. Panel and circuit number(s) serving the equipment.
  5. Method of automatic control, if included ("AUTO CONTROL BY FMCS").
  6. Available fault current; refer to one-line diagram or panel schedule of panel serving equipment.

7. Date of fault current study, refer to one-line diagram
8. Sample Label:

EXHAUST FAN EF-1 ("LOCATED ON ROOF")  
480V, 3-PHASE  
FED FROM "1HA1-1"  
AUTO CONTROL BY FMCS  
22,000 AMPS AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT  
DATE OF STUDY: 1 JAN 2017

### **3.08 EQUIPMENT CONNECTION IDENTIFICATION**

A. Products:

1. Nameplates and signs
- B. Provide identification for hard wired electrical connections to equipment such as disconnects switches, starters, etc. Plug and cord type connections do not require this specific label.
- C. Identification shall be provided for all connections to equipment furnished by this Contractor, other contractors, or the Owner. The following list of equipment is specifically being listed to receive an equipment connection label; this list does not limit the equipment that shall receive a label:
1. Mechanical heating, ventilation, and air conditioning equipment; chillers, boilers, pumps, air handling ventilation units, condensing units, unit heaters, and similar equipment
  2. Plumbing equipment

D. Labeling shall include:

1. Equipment type and contract documents designation of equipment being served
2. Location of equipment being served if it is not located within sight.
3. Voltage and rating of the equipment.
4. Panel and circuit numbers(s) serving the equipment
5. Sample Label:

UNIT HEATER UH-1 ("LOCATED IN STORAGE ROOM 200")  
480V: 3-PHASE  
FED FROM "1HA1-1"

### **3.09 POWER DISTRIBUTION EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION**

A. Products:

1. Nameplates and signs



- 
- B. Provide identification on the front of all power distribution equipment such as panelboards, switchboards, switchgear, motor control centers, generators, UPS, storage battery disconnects, transfer switches, etc. Labels shall be visible on the exterior of the gear, correspond to the one-line diagram nomenclature, and identify each cubicle of multi-section gear.
1. Interior Equipment: The identification material shall be engraved plastic-laminated labels.
  2. Exterior Equipment: The identification material shall be engraved vinyl labels.
  3. Labeling shall include:
    - a. Equipment type and contract documents designation of equipment.
    - b. Voltage of the equipment.
    - c. Sample Label:

DISTRIBUTION PANEL DP-H1  
480Y/277V
  4. Provide the following on a separate label, installed below the label above:
    - a. Available fault current; refer to one-line diagram or panel schedules
    - b. Date of fault current study; refer to one-line diagram
    - c. Sample Label:

22,000 AMPS AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT  
DATE OF STUDY: 1 JAN 2017
- C. Service Equipment Label: A separate nameplate for the service entrance equipment and include:
1. Nominal system voltage, service wire size, quantity, material, distance
  2. Maximum available fault current; refer to one-line diagram for values
  3. Clearing time of overcurrent protection devices based on available fault current. Refer to calculations and report from Section 260573 for value.
  4. Date of fault current study; refer to one-line diagram
  5. Date of label
  6. Sample Label:

480Y/277V, 6 SETS 4#750KCM CU, 75FT  
39,800 AMPS AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT  
0.07 SECOND CLEARING TIME  
DATE OF STUDY: 1 JAN 2017  
DATE OF LABEL: 4 JUL 2017

- D. Branch panelboards shall be provided with typed panel schedules upon completion of the project. Existing panelboards shall have their existing panel schedules typed, with all circuit changes, additions or deletions also typed on the panel schedules. A copy of all panel schedules for the project shall be turned over as part of the O&M Manuals. Refer to Section 260500 for other requirements.

### **3.010 ELECTRICAL WORKING CLEARANCE IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Products:
  - 1. Safety Yellow paint and custom stencils
- B. Provide custom identification of electrical equipment working clearances in mechanical, electrical, storage, janitorial, and similar non-public areas.
- C. Identification shall include a painted rectangular box (on the finished floor) in front of the electrical equipment to define the code-required working clearance. Provide additional diagonal stripping inside the rectangle box. All painted stripping shall be safety yellow paint with 3 inch wide stripes.
  - 1. Width of area: Width of equipment or as required by code
  - 2. Depth of area: Depth as required by code

### **3.011 POLE IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Product:
  - 1. Nameplates and signs
- B. Lighting poles, bollards and overhead distribution poles shall be individually identified with a unique number, for maintenance purposes. Apply the vinyl label number above the hand hole cover or 24" (610mm) above grade. Bollards may be identified with a number applied inside the luminaire that is visible from the exterior.

**END OF SECTION 260553**

## **SECTION 260573**

### **POWER SYSTEM STUDY**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Short-circuit analysis and report.

##### **1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 260500 - Basic Electrical Requirements
- B. Section 262416 - Panelboards

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Analyses shall be performed by an agent authorized by the manufacturer of equipment specified in the related specification sections.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Documentation shall bear the seal/signature of the licensed Professional Engineer who performed the analysis.
- B. The input for the power system study shall be based on the contract documents, with estimated conductor lengths provided by the Electrical Contractor.
- C. Documentation of the analyses shall be submitted in a single bound electronic (PDF or equal) format and shall accompany the shop drawing submittals for equipment provided under the related work specification sections. The submittal of these related specification sections will not be reviewed without this documentation.
- D. Power system study project model shall be submitted on electronic media for review and the Owner's operating and maintenance records.

##### **1.05 REFERENCES**

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
- B. IEEE 1584 - IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations, latest version
- C. ANSI Z535.4 - Products Safety Signs and Labels

##### **1.06 SCOPE**

- A. Provide a power system study of the electrical system shown on the plans. .

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 POWER SYSTEM STUDY**

- A. Power systems study shall be completed in Power Tools for Windows (PTW) version 11 or pre-approved equivalent program.
- B. Power system studies including, but not limited to short-circuit analysis, selective coordination, and arc-flash analysis are inherently iterative in nature. The initial and subsequent analysis commonly requires engineering evaluation, equipment modification, setting adjustments, and revised analysis report. The power system analysis scope shall not be considered complete until all outstanding engineering, equipment and device setting solutions have been resolved and documented by a final report. The power system study vendor shall provide inclusive bid provisions for the initial, subsequent, final analysis and associated reports.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 SHORT-CIRCUIT ANALYSIS**

- A. Provide a complete short-circuit analysis from the utility service to and including the entire building distribution as shown on the drawings.
- B. Analysis shall include the entire distribution system from the point of connection to the utility power source to the distribution panels and branch circuit panelboards.
- C. Short-circuit analysis documentation shall be made in one-line diagram form showing the magnitude and location of each calculated fault. Fault current calculations shall be made at the main bus of each switchboard, distribution panel, and branch circuit panel. A summary of the fault currents available shall also be submitted and made available to the AHJ if requested.

**END OF SECTION 260573**

**SECTION 260933**  
**LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Lighting Control Overview
- B. Electrical Plan Symbols
- C. Device Color and Coverplates
- D. Standalone Line and Low Voltage Lighting Controls
  - 1. Wall switches and wall dimmers
  - 2. Sensors (occupancy, vacancy, daylighting, photocell, auxiliary power packs, etc.)
- E. Room-Based Lighting Controls (specification grade, commonly distributed controllers, occasionally networked, 'intelligent' controls)
- F. Automatic Load Control Relays
  - 1. Automatic Load Control Relay, Individual Luminaire - Integral (ALCR3)
  - 2. Automatic Load Control Relay (ALCR20)
- G. DC Lighting Control System

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. The lighting system design includes a combination of luminaire sources, lighting control components, programming sequences, and supplementary components for building and energy code compliance. The design uses performance-based specifications for portions of the lighting system to account for the limitation of directly comparable product solutions available by competitive manufacturers. The Contractor shall reference related specification sections, plans, schedules, and details prior to submitting pricing, submittals, and installation. The Contractor shall coordinate system component compatibility among various manufacturers and suppliers for a turnkey lighting system. Referenced sections include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Specification Section 262416 Panelboards (panelboard enclosure and interior bussing used for lighting control panels)
  - 2. Specification Section 265119 LED Lighting
  - 3. Specification Section 265215 Emergency Lighting Inverter
  - 4. Electrical Drawings: Electrical Coversheet, plans, luminaire schedules, lighting control sequence of operations, diagrams, and details.

### **1.03 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 019100 - Commissioning

### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturers shall be regularly engaged in the manufacture of lighting control equipment and ancillary equipment, of types and capacities required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than five (5) years.
- B. All components and assemblies are to be factory pre-tested prior to delivery and installation.

### **1.05 REFERENCES**

- A. FCC Rules and Regulations, Part 15, Subpart J - Radio Frequency Interference
- B. FS W S 896 Switch, Toggle
- C. Michigan Energy Code
- D. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices
- E. NEMA WD 7 - Occupancy Motion Sensors
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
- G. UL Standard 916 Energy Management Equipment
- H. UL 924 - Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment
- I. UL 20 - Standards for General-Use Snap Switches
- J. UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches
- K. UL 917 - Clock Operated Switches
- L. UL 1008 - Transfer Switch Equipment
- M. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls

### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Submit a comprehensive package including devices, hardware, software, product specification, finishes, dimensions, installation instructions, component replacement instructions, warranty, system software requirements.
- C. Provide floor plan showing location, orientation, and coverage area of each control device, sensor, and controller/interface. For areas requiring multiple sensor devices for appropriate coverage, submit specific manufacturer-approved sensor layout as an overlay directly on the project drawings, either in print or approved electronic form. Sensor coverage patterns shall have a 20% overlap.
- D. Submit a list of devices and equipment that will be installed for each sequence of operation.

- E. Submit project specific control wiring diagrams showing all equipment, line voltage, and control wiring requirements for all components including, but not limited to, dimmers, relays, low voltage switches, occupancy sensors, control stations, and communication interfaces and programming instructions for each sequence of operation. Include network cable specification and end-of-line termination details, if required.
- F. Programming Sequences: Provide a copy of the initial lighting control programming sequences in narrative and manufacturer/vendor format.
- G. Lighting Control Stations: The manufacturer/vendor shall provide control station shop drawings showing arrangement of controls, dimensioned elevations, wiring diagram, and recommended backboxes. Label each applicable submittal with the applicable Sequence Of Operation SOO description. Submit data sheets on the switches, dimmers, sensors, buttons, etc. contained in the control station.
- H. Nameplate Labels and Custom Engraving: Submit sample label/engraving text for review for each applicable Lighting Sequence Of Operation SOO. Include reference to applicable SOO description. Provide stencil templates for each device requiring stenciling.
- I. Network / Internet Connected Equipment: These specifications may require certain equipment or systems to have network, Internet and/or remote access capability ('Network Capability'). Any requirement for Network Capability shall be interpreted only as a functional capability and is not to be constructed as authority to connect or enable any Network Capability. Network Capability may only be connected or enabled with the express written consent of the Owner. Provide Owner written consent and instructions as a submittal.

#### **1.07 EXTRA STOCK**

- A. Provide extra stock under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Sensors, Controls, Power Supplies, and Relays: Five (5) percent of quantity installed. Minimum of three (3) of each configuration and type.
- C. Relays and Dimmer Modules: Five (5) percent of quantity installed. Minimum of three (3) of each size and type.

#### **1.08 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. Submit project record documents under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Accurately record location of all controls and devices. Include description of switching sequences and circuiting arrangements.

#### **1.09 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit emergency, operation, and maintenance data under provisions of Section 260500. Data shall also include the following:
  - 1. Schedule for routine maintenance, inspection, and calibration of all lighting control devices and system components. Recommended schedule for inspection and recalibration of sensors.
  - 2. Complete narrative describing intended operation and sequence for each control scenario and system component, updated to reflect all changes resulting from commissioning of systems. Narrative shall indicate recommended settings for devices where applicable.

3. Replacement part numbers for all system components.
- B. Identify installed location and labeling for each luminaire controlled by automated lighting controls.
- C. Submit software operating and maintenance manuals, program software backup on compact disc or compatible media with data files, device address list, and a printout of software application and graphic screens, where applicable.

#### **1.010 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Performance Statement: The specification section and lighting design documents describe the minimum material quality, required features, and operational performance requirements of the lighting control system. The documents do not convey every component, relay, wire, and equipment connection required. The Contractor and lighting control manufacturer/vendor are solely responsible for determining all system components, wiring, and programming required for a complete and operational system based on the performance based requirements of the documents.
- B. Lighting Sequence Of Operation (SOO): The Sequence Of Operation (SOO) describes the required lighting control operation and performance in each space. The Sequence Of Operation descriptions are included on the drawings.
- C. Drawings: The drawings include the Sequence Of Operation (SOO), luminaire schedule, location of control devices, sensors, and identification of control zones, and branch power circuiting. Control wiring and manufacturer/vendor specific components are NOT shown, but shall be submitted with the shop drawing submittals.

#### **1.011 COMMISSIONING**

- A. The Contractor shall provide all services necessary for compliance with the IECC Section C408 Commissioning. The commissioning shall include, but not be limited to, a commissioning plan, preliminary commissioning report, construction documents, manuals, final commissioning report, and lighting system functional testing.
- B. The Contractor shall notify the Commissioning Agent, Architect/Engineer and Owner's Representative ten (10) working days prior to scheduled commissioning date.
- C. The system shall be functionally tested by a factory-authorized engineer and comply with the Sequence of Operation prior to system commissioning. All loads shall be tested live for continuity and freedom from defects, and all control wiring shall be tested for continuity and connections prior to energizing the system.

#### **1.012 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer shall warrant products under normal use and service to be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of two (2) years from date of commissioning.
- B. Occupancy, vacancy, daylight sensors and controls shall have a five (5) year warranty from date of Substantial Completion.



## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 LIGHTING CONTROL OVERVIEW**

- A. Lighting Control System: As defined in the System Description, the design documents describe the operational performance requirements of the lighting control system. The Lighting Control System has been categorized into the following groups. Refer to the Electrical Symbol Key, this specification section, and the drawings to determine the appropriate lighting control category when more than one is applicable to the project:
  - 1. Standalone Lighting Control Devices: Independent (standalone) devices traditionally operating at line or low voltage, field configurable with other standalone devices to provide an overall lighting control system.
  - 2. Room-Based Lighting Controls: Integrated system comprised of switch stations, sensors, room controllers, control panels, and accessories, operating at line and/or low voltage, configured as an integrated overall 'intelligent' lighting control system. Lighting control zones and power circuits commonly align.
- B. All system components and materials of similar function (e.g., switches, dimmers, sensors, contactors, relays, etc.) shall be of the same manufacturer, unless specifically stated otherwise on drawings or elsewhere in the specifications. Lighting control switches, systems, and components shall be listed.
- C. The functions described in the lighting sequence of operation shall dictate the actual lighting control device required to accomplish the functions described for the space, unless otherwise noted.
- D. Emergency Lighting Override Control (UL924 and UL1008): Lighting Control Equipment coupled with remote emergency power sources (external to the luminaire) require ALCR (UL924) or BCELTS (UL1008) devices for emergency (life safety) compliance. An emergency lighting control bypass is required for every individual lighting control zone-circuit but NOT shown on the plans. Refer to this specification for ALCR and BCELTS descriptions. Refer to the sequence of operation lighting control descriptions on the plans for additional requirements. (For additional explanation purposes: Integral emergency power sources like battery drivers inside the luminaire are commonly provided with a switch and non-switched portion of the circuit allowing compliance without an ALCR nor BCELTS device to bypass the lighting controls).

### **2.02 ELECTRICAL PLAN SYMBOLS**

- A. Refer to Electrical Coversheet for Electrical Symbols list and device specification tag.
  - 1. Standalone Lighting Control Devices: Control station commonly defined by an alpha character with subscripts.
    - a. Example symbol "S", tagged "SW-1P", description "switch- single pole switch".
    - b. Example Control Designation: a, b, c (when required to clarify design intent).
  - 2. Room-Based Lighting Controls: Control station commonly defined by a rectangle symbol.

- a. Example Control Station: symbol "#B", tagged "SW-LV", description "Lighting Control Station".
  - b. Example Panel/Rack/Cabinet: tagged "LCPR#", description Room-Based lighting control panel/rack/cabinet.
  - c. Example Control Designations: a, b, c
3. Sensors, Relays, Accessories: Common plan symbols are used for occupancy, vacancy, and daylighting sensors. The control designations (a, b, c or z1, z2, z3) and identification of a standalone or #B type control station in the space defines the basis-of-design intent category of the lighting control sensors and accessories.
  - a. Example, a standalone occupancy sensor SW-OC-## device is the basis of design when shown in the same room as a standalone S (SW-1P) single pole light switch with or without a, b, c control designations.
  - b. Example, a Room-Based Lighting occupancy sensor SW-OC-## device is the basis of design when shown in the same room as a #B (SW-#B) lighting control station with or without a, b, c control designations.

### **2.03 DEVICE COLOR AND COVERPLATES**

- A. All switches and lighting controls shall be complete with coverplates that match material and color of the wiring device coverplates in the space. When the coverplate is proprietary to the device/manufacture and do not match the wiring device coverplates, the architect shall select the coverplate color and materials from the standard coverplate options.
- B. Where several devices are ganged together, the coverplate shall be of the ganged style for the number of devices used.
- C. Install nameplate identification as indicated in Section 260553.
- D. Plate-securing screws shall be metal with head color matching the wall plate finish.

### **2.04 STANDALONE LINE AND LOW VOLTAGE LIGHTING CONTROLS**

- A. Overview:
  1. Wall Switches and Wall Dimmers:
    - a. UL listed with integral air-gap switch for on/off control, integral EMI/RFI suppression, non-viewable heat sink, dimmer to match device color.
    - b. Dimmer compatibility and wiring with the load being controlled shall be verified by Contractor prior to purchase and installation.
- B. SW-1P; Single Pole Switch:
  1. Single throw, 120/277-volt, 20-amp maintained contact. Toggle handle, side and back wired.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Hubbell HBL1221

- b. Leviton 1221-2
- c. Pass & Seymour PS20AC1
- d. Cooper AH1221

C. SW-O; Dual Technology Occupancy Sensor with Wall Switch (Standalone):

- 1. Wall switch with manual on/auto/off. 120/277 VAC load rating of 0-800 W for ballast, LED or tungsten. 5-, 15-, 20-minute adjustable OFF delay. Dual technology ultrasonic and PIR coverage of minor motion in 12' x 15' pattern and occupancy detection in area based on half-step walking motion. Sensitivity adjustments separate for each sensing technology.
- 2. Manufacturers:
  - a. Watt Stopper DW-100 Series
  - b. Hubbell LHMTS
  - c. Leviton OSSMT Series
  - d. Sensor Switch WSX-PDT SA Series (acoustic approved when listed in above description)

**2.05 ROOM-BASED LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM ('INTELLIGENT CONTROLS')**

- A. Manufacturers: Manufacturers as listed below meet the qualifications as outlined in this specification. Contractor is responsible for verifying that selected manufacturer is capable of furnishing the complete system as specified herein.
  - 1. Acuity Controls nLight Series
  - 2. Eaton Greengate RC3 Series (room-based system)
  - 3. Hubbell Automation NX Series
  - 4. Legrand Watt Stopper DLM Series
  - 5. Lutron
  - 6. Osram Encelium Series
- B. Room-Based Lighting Control System Description: The room-based lighting control system is a distributed network of devices, components, and accessories for lighting controls and integrated control with other systems. The system includes system room controllers (network hubs), control stations, sensors (occupancy, vacancy, daylighting, etc.), switching/dimming modules, programming, 365/7 day scheduling, and associated wiring.
- C. The lighting control system manufacturer shall be responsible to assure coordination and network compatibility between all system devices, components, and accessories.

- D. Global System Typography: The system shall be provided with the following global system characteristics. When multiple exclusive options are listed the manufacturer/vendor may submit a system based on either criterion unless otherwise noted. When the drawings identify a specific option (typically identified with a subscript) provide the specific option as scheduled on the drawings. (Example, a control station (SW-#B) shown with a "W□□" subscript on the plans shall be provided in a wireless configuration regardless if the following specification descriptions allow both low voltage or wireless network.)
1. System Controllers (Room Controllers): Room-based controllers located above accessible ceilings.
  2. Interior Lighting Control System Network Connectivity for System Devices, Components, and Accessories: wireless network.
  3. Exterior (Site) Lighting Control System Network Connectivity for System Devices, Components, and Accessories: wireless network.
  4. Power Source for System Devices, Components, and Accessories: AC power pack supply.
- E. Lighting Control System Programming Protocol: Manufacturer's protocol.
- F. Lighting Control System (Room-Based Controller):
1. Lighting Control System Room-Based Controller: Provide with data network to all lighting control system components, devices, and accessories. Provide network interface with other systems via BACnet IP communication or alternative protocol acceptable to the other system. System communication protocol shall be compatible with the building automation system.
- G. Time Clock and Scheduling: Provide 24 astronomical hour-based scheduling for interior lighting controls.
- H. Room-Based System Controllers (Room Controllers): Distributed room-based controller, integral switching relays and dimmers, network connected.
1. Installation: Provide a dedicated controller for each space; not shared with adjacent rooms. Locate the controller near the associated wall controller, near the entry door when applicable, and above the finished accessible ceiling. As an alternative, the controller may be mounted above the finished accessible ceiling of the adjacent space when the associated ceiling space is not accessible. Example, located in adjacent corridor.
- I. Programming and Commissioning Dongle (Removable Style): Provide and permanently install a programming dongle for each room controller when a field removable dongle type device is required for programming and commissioning of the system. The programming dongle shall be permanently installed to allow for ease of programming the controller without above ceiling access.

- J. Interior Lighting - Wireless Network: A wireless mesh network is an acceptable lighting control option when included in the list of acceptable Global System Typography descriptions listed above. Provide and field coordinate wireless antennas (or room controllers) based on manufacturer requirements and field conditions. The system shall allow room controllers, control stations, sensors, and other components of the system to remain functional based on previous programming criteria if the wireless network is lost. Example, Wireless lighting control networks are commonly configured between sensors, control stations, devices, components, and other accessories and room controllers or system antennas. Room controllers and system antennas are commonly connected via low-voltage cabling or a mesh wireless network.
- K. Control Devices: All occupancy, vacancy sensors (ultrasonic, PIR, dual technology, daylighting, photocell, timers), control stations, and other system components shall be provided with the system and designed to operate on system network. Sensors shall be powered from power supplies, modules, packs, or Power Over Ethernet POE.
- L. Power Supplies (Modules, Packs, etc.): Provide power supplies for control devices. Power supply shall provide physical separation of 120/277 volt line voltage wiring and low voltage control wiring. Provide supplementary power supplies when required for multiple control devices. Provide switch or dimmed control as required by the Sequence Of Operation SOO.
  - 1. Installation: Install adjacent to wall room controller when applicable, near the entry door when applicable, and above the finished accessible ceiling. As an alternative, the controller may be mounted above the finished accessible ceiling of the adjacent space when the associated ceiling space is not accessible. Provide low voltage wiring to applicable control devices and control stations.
- M. Device Relays: Mechanically held unless otherwise indicated; split-coil, momentary-pulsed type, rated 20 A, 125-volt AC for tungsten filaments and 20 A, 277-volt AC for electronic ballasts, minimum 50,000 cycles at rated capacity. Provide supplemental relays when required. (Example, occupancy sensor control of receptacle outlets or VAV/TAB HVAC units located in the same space.)
  - 1. Receptacle Outlet Control: Provide auxiliary relay to control receptacle outlets located in the control space. Refer to the drawings and sequence of operation schedule for requirements.
  - 2. Building Automation Interface: Provide auxiliary relay to report occupancy status of each individual space to the building automation system. Refer to the drawings and sequence of operation schedule for requirements.
- N. SW-LCPR-#, Room-Based Lighting Control Panel (LCPR-#):
  - 1. Room-Based type controllers are the preferred basis-of-design. Centralized wall or floor mounted panels may be required pending manufacturer specific product offerings. Panel is shown on floor plans for possible physical space planning purposes. Contractor shall coordinate final mounting location with available space and approved shop drawings. Refer to approved shop drawings for additional information.

2. Control Panel Configuration: Group mounted individual control zones (relay switch, dimmer, other), non-overcurrent protection type, with lighting control network-based communication. Overcurrent protection of circuits provided by scheduled panels and circuits shown on drawings. Panels configurations with branch overcurrent protection, main circuit breaker, main bus, and a single feeder-based power source are not acceptable in the base bid unless otherwise noted. The contractor may submit a voluntary alternate for a single feeder-based power source type lighting control panel with bid for consideration. The voluntary alternate must include provisions for the required feeder and associated post bid design modifications.
  3. Dimmer / Relay capacity: Refer to plans for quantity required. The minimum quantity shall be 12.
  4. Dimmer / Relay Modules: Match load types and sequence of operation descriptions.
  5. Cabinet: Steel with hinged, locking door. Barriers separate low-voltage and line-voltage components.
- O. SW-#B; Lighting Control Station, Default Dimming Control Raise/Lower/Fade: The lighting control station shall comply with the performance requirements of the lighting sequence of operation. The control station may consist of switches, pushbuttons, sliders, dimming functions, etc. Provide a common coverplate for lighting control stations.
1. #B: The '#' indicates the minimum quantity of unique lighting control scenes when shown plus raise/lower and lights 'off' scene. Refer to the Lighting Sequence Of Operation (SOO) for the minimum quantity of scenes required (when a number is not designated) and a description of each control scene.
  2. Subscripts:
    - a. (BLANK) = Dimming Control (Default)
    - b. S = Switch Control
    - c. W = Wireless w/ battery
    - d. # = Unique ID when applicable
  3. Manufacturer: Room-Based Lighting Controller Manufacturer:
    - a. Dimming (Blank) or Switch (S) Control Station: Modular, momentary pushbutton, with addressable capabilities to control the scene or luminaires assigned to the switch. The switch shall be able to actuate the functions based on the described sequence of operation and intended functions.
      - 1) Preset/fader stations shall operate using programmable buttons and/or faders as indicated on drawings.
      - 2) Raise, Lower, Integral Fader Control: Provide control station with manual raise and lower fader control for each control zone of lighting control. Manual raise/lower shall be separate buttons from scene control; hold and dim scene control buttons not acceptable. Faders may be physical sliders or up/down buttons. Fader range shall provide continuous even dimming matching full range of dimmer specification.

- 3) Integral Pilot Light or LED: Indicate that controls are active or powered by being on continuously when powered or when pushbuttons are actuated.
  - 4) Labeling of buttons and faders shall be engraved/screened by manufacturer, using approved text returned with shop drawing submittals.
  - 5) Station control components shall be designed to operate standard default or custom system functions. Components shall operate default functions unless re-assigned via direct or network connection. Function options include: preset selection, manual mode, record mode, station lockout, raise/lower, macro, cue, and room join/separate.
  - 6) Multiple stations (shown in same space): When multiple control stations are shown in the same space the sequence of operation shall be the same at all locations unless noted otherwise.
  - 7) Multiple stations (movable partitions in same space): When multiple control stations are shown in the same space with movable partitions the sequence of operations shall be the same at all locations unless noted otherwise. A wall partition switch shall monitor the status of the movable partitions and automatically associated the control station(s) with the appropriate space based on the status of the wall partition.
- P. Additional Network-Based Characteristics for Room-Based Control Systems: The following network-based lighting control system characteristics and capabilities shall be provided with the room-based lighting control system. The following ADDITIONAL requirements supplement the system description included above.
1. Additional Remote / Cloud System Access Requirements: Remote monitoring of occupancy and lighting status. Remote 365/7 day scheduling, holiday, and custom event scheduling. Remote override and control of lighting control system.
  2. Additional System Controllers (Room Controllers) Options for Networks: Room-based controllers located above accessible ceilings.
  3. Additional Time Clock and Scheduling Requirements: Astronomical based scheduling for exterior site controls. Provide 365/7 day scheduling, with holiday events, with custom events, with on/off master override.
  4. Additional NETWORK: Room-Based Lighting Control with Network:
    - a. The independent room-based control systems shall be connected via a system network. The following requirements supplement the room-based requirements listed above.
    - b. Monitoring and Reporting: Provide monitoring and historical reporting of system events and components via password secured server or cloud-based interface.
    - c. Master Remote Control: Provide control of devices, components, accessories for scheduling timeouts, and light blink notifications.

5. Additional Master Lighting Control System / Room-Based Controllers / Centralized Control Panels - Network Mesh and Independent Operation: The system network shall allow distributed room-based controllers and centralized control panels to continue local control station functionality and previously scheduled events if disconnected from the master system network. Sensors, wall stations, devices, components, and accessories supported by the local room controllers and centralized control panels shall also remain functional based on previously programmed criteria.
6. SW-WG; Exterior Site Lighting - Wireless Network: A wireless mesh network is an acceptable lighting control option when included in the list of acceptable Global System Typography descriptions listed above. Provide each applicable exterior site luminaire with a wireless receiver/repeater to establish a wireless mesh network. Wireless systems without a mesh network protocol are not acceptable.
  - a. Installation: Provide a manufacturer wireless antenna and gateway. Coordinate the gateway and antenna mounting locations based on manufacturer requirements and distance limitations to site luminaires. Provide a weather-proof penetration when a roof mounted antenna is required.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify field dimensions and coordinate physical size of all equipment with the architectural requirements of the spaces into which they are to be installed. Allow space for adequate ventilation and circulation of air.
- C. Verify that required utilities are available, in proper location, and ready for use.
- D. Beginning of installation means installer accepts existing conditions.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings.
- B. Class II low voltage control wiring may be open wiring and shall maintain 6 inch spacing from electronic ballast and other RFI/EMI sources.
- C. Low Voltage Cabling (less than 100 volts): Low voltage lighting control cabling shall be plenum listed. Low voltage cables in non-accessible areas shall be installed in conduit. Low voltage lighting control cable may be installed without conduit in accessible areas using the following types of cable supports. Cable support types/systems shall comply with the warranty requirements of the low voltage cable manufacturer.
  1. J-hooks; batwing type.
  2. Bridle rings with saddle supports.
  3. Low voltage cable batwings supported by independent luminaire support systems (luminaire support cabling); use of batwings on ceiling support systems not allowed.
  4. Listed cable ties. Low voltage cabling secured to exterior of luminaire power raceway.



- D. All branch load circuits shall be live tested before connecting the loads to the lighting control panel.
- E. Lighting Control Station Wiring: Provide the grounded (neutral) conductor portion of the branch circuit with the line voltage phase conductors at each lighting control station.
- F. Lighting Control Panel Directories: Provide a typewritten directory for each lighting control panel indicating relay/dimmer and description of load controlled.

### **3.03 INTEGRATION WITH OTHER SYSTEMS**

- A. The Room-Based lighting control system interacts, is controlled by, or controls the following other systems per the design documents and lighting sequence of operations descriptions. The contractor shall provide the necessary communication gateways, relays, cabling, and programming to interact with the following systems.
  - 1. Building Automation System

### **3.04 BRANCH CIRCUIT POWER WIRING FOR CONTROLLERS**

- 1. Branch circuit power for the following lighting control system components shall be provided from the following branches. Lighting control power shall originate from the same branch circuits serving the controlled luminaires:
  - a. Room controllers, lighting control power supplies, devices, components, and accessories when an associated (ALCR) device is applicable to the lighting control sequence of operation: Emergency Lighting Inverter.
  - b. The contractor shall coordinate the branch circuit power source required with the Engineer when required for unique lighting control system devices, components, and accessories.

### **3.05 LOW VOLTAGE LIGHTING CONTROL CABLING**

- A. Control Cable Raceway Routing: Class II low voltage control wiring may be open wiring, independently supported, and shall maintain 150 mm (6 inch) spacing from luminaire drivers and other RFI/EMI sources.
- B. Control Cabling Installed with Line Voltage Wiring: When low voltage control cabling is installed with line-voltage wiring, the control wiring shall be, copper conductors, minimum 16 AWG or per manufacturer, with cable insulation equal to the line-voltage rating (voltage, temp rating, etc.) and comply with Specification Section 260513 "Wire and Cable."
- C. Network Cabling: As required by manufacturer.
- D. Splices and Taps: Tapping or wire trap connectors shall be used to splice all Class 1 and Class 2 control wiring. Twist-on, wire-nut type connectors are not allowed.

### **3.06 Automatic Load Control Relays (ALCR20, ALCR3) and Branch circuit emergency lighting transfer switch (bcelts)**

- A. Field install per manufacturer requirements.

### **3.07 SUPPORT SERVICES**

A. System Startup:

1. Manufacturer shall provide factory authorized technician to confirm proper installation and operation of all system components.

B. Pre-Program, Testing, Training Coordination:

1. The construction documents and sequence of operations define the original design intent of the lighting controls as coordinated between the owner and the design team. The definition of the scope is intended to identify the hardware and programming flexibility required prior to programming, system testing, and owner training.
2. The final system programming, control station labels, scene presets, dimmer presets, dimmer range limits, fade times, etc. are subject to on site coordination between the design team, owner, contractor, and manufacturer. Contractor/manufacturer programming of the system prior to an onsite coordination with the owner and design team shall not be considered final programming nor commissioning.
3. The contractor and manufacturer shall provide on site representatives to provide final programming including preset, scene, switch labeling, and other programming adjustments based on owner and design team onsite observation and verbally requested adjustments as part of the based bid scope of work.
4. The contractor shall document onsite requested changes and update operation and maintenance manuals to match final programming.

C. Testing:

1. System shall be completely functional tested by a factory-authorized technician. All loads shall be tested live for continuity and freedom from defects, and all control wiring shall be tested for continuity and connections prior to energizing the system components.
2. Programming of initial zones, schedules, lighting levels, control station groups, and sensor settings shall be performed by a factory-authorized technician. Lighting Control Sequence of Operation shall serve as a basis for programming, However, all final decisions regarding groups and schedules shall be at the direction of the Owner. The following procedures shall be performed at a minimum:
  - a. Confirm occupancy sensor placement, sensitivity, and time delay settings to meet specified performance criteria.
  - b. Confirm daylight sensor placement, sensitivity, deadband, and delay settings to meet specified performance criteria.
  - c. Confirm that schedules and time controls are configured to meet specified performance criteria and Owner's operating requirements.
  - d. Confirm control station labeling, presets, switch labels, and scenes.
3. Verify occupancy/vacancy and daylight sensor operation is correct after furniture and equipment is installed in each area. Make adjustments to sensor settings and time delays to allow proper operation.

4. Verify occupancy/vacancy sensors are located to provide complete coverage for the area served with no nuisance switching.
  - a. Relocate sensors or provide additional sensors as necessary to provide adequate coverage.
  - b. Mask occupancy sensors where necessary to prevent nuisance switching from adjacent areas.

D. Training:

1. Manufacturer shall provide competent factory-authorized technician to train Owner personnel in the operation, maintenance and programming of the lighting control system. Submit training plan with notification seven (7) days prior to proposed training dates.
2. Training duration shall be no less than three (3) days, with one (1) day being scheduled at least two (2) weeks after initial training.

E. Documentation:

1. Manufacturer shall provide system documentation including:
  - a. System one-line showing all panels, number and type of control stations and sensors, communication line, and network or building automation system BAS interface unit.
  - b. Drawings for each panel showing hardware configuration and numbering.
  - c. Panel wiring schedules.
  - d. Typical diagrams for each component.

### **3.08 SYSTEM COMMISSIONING**

- A. Contractors' tests shall be scheduled and documented in accordance with the commissioning requirements. Refer to Section 010900, General Commissioning, for further details.
- B. Mask sensors where necessary to prevent nuisance switching from adjacent areas.
- C. System verification testing is part of the commissioning process. Verification testing shall be performed by the Contractor and witnessed and documented by the Commissioning Agent. Refer to Section 010900, General Commissioning, for system verification tests and commissioning requirements.
- D. Training of the Owner's operation and maintenance personnel is required in cooperation with the Owner's Representative. The instruction shall be scheduled in coordination with the Owner's Representative after submission and approval of formal training plans. Refer to Section 010900, General Commissioning, for Contractor training requirements.

**END OF SECTION 260933**



**SECTION 262000**  
**SERVICE ENTRANCE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Arrangement with Utility Company for permanent electric service.
- B. Underground service entrance

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS AND WORK**

- A. Refer to the One-Line Diagram for additional information.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Utility Company: DTE.
- B. Contact: Danielle Clark.
- C. Install service entrance in accordance with Utility Company's rules and regulations.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Submit Utility Company prepared drawings (if applicable).

**1.05 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. System Voltage: 208Y/120 volts, three phase, four-wire, 60 Hertz.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 METERING EQUIPMENT**

- A. Meter: Furnished by the Utility Company.
- B. Meter Base: Furnished by the Contractor, as approved by the Utility Company. (Manufacturers: Milbank, Superior, Duncan, or Anchor).
- C. MC-1; Exterior Mounted Metering Cabinets: Furnished and installed by the Contractor to Utility Company's specifications. Conduit and conductors between metering cabinets and instrumentation shall be by the Contractor. Connections as required by the Utility Company.

## **2.02 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Provide a permanent plaque or sign denoting all services, feeders, and branch circuits supplying the building or structure and the area served by each. Install plaque or sign at each service disconnecting means.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Make arrangements with Utility Company to obtain permanent electric service to the Project.
- B. Primary distribution equipment and pad-mounted transformers shall be furnished and installed by the Utility Company.
- C. Primary conductors shall be furnished, installed, and terminated by the Utility Company. Primary conduit shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor, as shown on the drawings, to the Utility Company's requirements.
- D. Underground: Install service entrance conduits in concrete envelope from Utility Company's pad mounted transformer to meter cabinet and building service entrance equipment. Utility Company will connect service conductors to transformer secondary lugs.
- E. Concrete Pad for Transformer: Furnished and installed by the Contractor to Utility Company's specifications.

**END OF SECTION 262000**

## **SECTION 262416**

### **PANELBOARDS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Service and distribution panelboards: MDP-1
- B. Lighting and appliance branch circuit panelboards: **Panel 'LP-1'**

##### **1.02 RELATED SECTIONS AND WORK**

- A. Refer to the Electrical Distribution Diagram and Electrical Schedules for size, rating, and configuration.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. NEMA AB 1 - Molded Case Circuit Breakers
- B. NEMA FU 1 - Low voltage cartridge fuses
- C. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches
- D. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards
- E. NEMA PB 1.1 - Instructions for Safe Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or Less
- F. NEMA PB 1.2 - Application Guide for Ground-fault Protective Devices for Equipment
- G. UL 248 - Low-Voltage Fuses
- H. UL 67 - Panelboards

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings for equipment and component devices under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Include outline and support point dimensions, voltage, main bus ampacity, integrated short circuit ampere rating, circuit breaker and fusible switch arrangement and sizes.
- C. Submit manufacturer's instructions under provisions of Section 260500.

##### **1.05 SPARE PARTS**

- A. Keys: Furnish four (4) each to the Owner.

---

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 RATINGS**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Series rated equipment shall be defined as equipment that can achieve a required UL AIC rating with an upstream device such as a main breaker or a combination of devices to meet or exceed a required UL AIC rating. All series rated equipment shall have a permanently attached nameplate indicating that device rating must be maintained. See Section 260553 for additional requirements.
  - 2. Fully rated equipment shall be defined as equipment where all devices in that equipment shall carry a minimum of the AIC rating that is specified.
- B. The panelboards for this project shall be fully rated unless otherwise specifically noted in the Drawings or Specifications.

### **2.02 MAIN AND DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS**

- A. General
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Square D QMB, I-Line
    - b. ABB ReliaGear neXT
    - c. Siemens F2, P4
    - d. Eaton PRL4, PRL5
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; type as shown on the drawings.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA PB 1; Type 1.
- D. Provide cabinet front with hinged trim on door to allow access to wiring gutters without removal of trim and flush lock. Door hardware shall provide swing clear operation (180-degree swing). Finish in manufacturer's standard gray enamel.
- E. Provide panelboards with copper bus, ratings as scheduled on the drawings. Provide copper ground bus in all panelboards.
- F. All spaces shown on the one-line diagram shall be fully prepared spaces for future breakers.
- G. Minimum Integrated Short Circuit Rating: 100,000 amperes rms symmetrical for 240-volt panelboards; 50,000 amperes rms symmetrical for 480-volt panelboards, or as shown on the drawings.
- H. Molded Case Circuit Breakers: Provide circuit breakers with integral thermal and instantaneous magnetic trip in each pole.
- I. Molded Case Circuit Breakers with Current Limiters: Provide circuit breakers with replaceable current limiting elements, in addition to integral thermal and instantaneous magnetic trip in each pole.
- J. Suitable for use as service entrance equipment. Provide line side (service style) barriers.



---

## 2.03 BRANCH CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

### A. General

#### 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Square D NQ, NF
- b. ABB ReliaGear Series
- c. Siemens P1
- d. Eaton PRL1, PRL2

- B. Lighting and Appliance Branch Circuit Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; circuit breaker type.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA PB 1; Type 1.
- D. Provide cabinet front with door-in-door construction, concealed hinge, and flush lock all keyed alike. Door hardware shall provide swing clear operation (180-degree swing). Finish in manufacturer's standard gray enamel.
- E. Provide panelboards with copper bus, ratings as scheduled on the drawings. Provide copper ground bus in all panelboards.
- F. All unlabeled circuits shown on the panelboard schedule shall be fully prepared spaces for future breakers.
- G. All multiple-section panelboards shall have the same dimensional back box and cabinet front size.
- H. Minimum Integrated Short Circuit Rating: As shown on the drawings.
- I. Provide handle lock-on devices for all breakers serving exit sign and lighting circuits with emergency battery units.
- J. Molded Case Circuit Breakers: Bolt-on type thermal magnetic trip circuit breakers, with common trip handle for all poles. Provide circuit breakers UL listed as Type SWD for lighting circuits. Provide UL Class A ground fault interrupter circuit breakers where scheduled on the drawings. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.
- K. Suitable for use as service entrance equipment. Provide line side (service style) barriers.

## 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide REQUIRED accessories as described below. Provide SCHEDULED accessories when listed with plan schedules. Refer to plan schedules for additional requirements.
- B. Barriers: Provide finger safe barriers for lineside uninsulated and ungrounded terminations and components which remain energized when the main disconnecting device is 'open'.  
REQUIRED
- C. Barriers (Service Equipment): Provide solid barriers for lineside uninsulated and ungrounded terminations and components which remain energized when the main disconnecting device is 'open'.  
REQUIRED

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install panelboards plumb as indicated on the drawings in conformance with NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Height: 6 feet to handle of highest device.
- C. Provide filler plates for unused spaces in panelboards.
- D. Provide custom typed circuit directory for each branch circuit panelboard. Label shall include equipment name or final approved room name, room number, and load type for each circuit (examples: SUMP SP-1 or ROOM 101 RECEPT). Revise directory to reflect circuit changes required to balance phase loads. Printed copies of the bid document panel schedules are not acceptable as circuit directories.
- E. Install fuses in fusible switch assemblies.

### **3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Measure steady state load currents at each panelboard feeder. Should the difference at any panelboard between phases exceed 20 percent, rearrange circuits in the panelboard to balance the phase loads within 20 percent. Take care to maintain proper phasing for multi-wire branch circuits.
- B. Visual and Mechanical Inspection: Inspect for physical damage, proper alignment, anchorage, and grounding. Check proper installation and tightness of connections for circuit breakers, fusible switches, and fuses.

**END OF SECTION 262416**

## **SECTION 262419**

### **MOTOR CONTROL**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Manual motor starters and switches
- B. Magnetic motor starters
- C. Combination magnetic motor starters

##### **1.02 RELATED SECTIONS AND WORK**

- A. Refer to the Disconnect and Starter Schedule for rating and configuration.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/UL Standard 508. Standard for Industrial Control Equipment
- B. FCC Rules and Regulations, Part 15, Subpart J- Radio Frequency Interference
- C. FS W-C-375 - Circuit Breakers, Molded Case; Branch Circuit and Service
- D. FS W-F-870 - Fuseholders (For Plug and Enclosed Cartridge Fuses)
- E. FS W-P-115 - Power Distribution Panel
- F. FS W-S-865 - Switch, Box, (Enclosed), Surface-Mounted
- G. IEEE Standard 519-1981 - Guide for Harmonic Control and Reactive Compensation of Static Power Converters
- H. NEMA AB 1 - Molded Case Circuit Breakers
- I. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control Devices, Controllers, and Assemblies
- J. NEMA ICS 6 - Enclosures for Industrial Controls and Systems
- K. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches
- L. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards
- M. NEMA PB 1.1 - Instructions for Safe Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or less

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Provide product data on motor starters and combination motor starters, relays, pilot devices, and switching and over-current protective devices.
- C. Submit manufacturer's instructions under provisions of Section 260500.

### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to site under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Deliver in 60-inch maximum width shipping splits, individually wrapped for protection, and mounted on shipping skids.
- C. Store and protect products under provisions of Section 260500.
- D. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from fumes, dirt, water, construction debris, traffic, and physical damage.
- E. Handle in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Lift only with lugs provided for the purpose. Handle carefully to avoid damage to motor control center components, enclosure, and finish.

### **1.06 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit operation and maintenance data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Include spare parts data listing; source and current prices of replacement parts and supplies; and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUAL MOTOR SWITCHES MX-#**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Square D 2500 Series
  - 2. Eaton MS Series
  - 3. ABB
  - 4. Siemens SMF / MMS Series
- B. Motor Starting Switch: NEMA ICS 2; AC general-purpose Class A manually operated, full-voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors, without thermal overload unit, and toggle operator.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6; Type 1.

### **2.02 MAGNETIC MOTOR STARTERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Square D
  - 2. Eaton
  - 3. ABB
  - 4. Siemens
  - 5. Franklin Control

- B. Magnetic Motor Starters: NEMA ICS 2; AC general-purpose Class A magnetic controller for induction motors rated in horsepower.
- C. Full Voltage Starting: Non-reversing type, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Coil Operating Voltage: 120 volts, 60 Hertz, obtained from integral control power transformer of sufficient capacity to operate connected pilot, indicating, and control devices, plus 100% spare capacity.
- E. Size: NEMA ICS 2; size as shown on the drawings.
- F. Overload Relay:
  - 1. Overload Relay: Ambient-compensated type with inverse-time-current characteristic and NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristic. Provide with heaters or sensors in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of specific motor to which they connect and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
- G. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6; Type 1.
- H. Combination Motor Starters: Combine motor starters with disconnect switch in common enclosure. Provide with disconnecting means as indicated on drawings.
- I. Auxiliary Contacts: NEMA ICS 2; two normally open, field convertible contacts in addition to seal-in contact.
- J. Pushbuttons: NEMA ICS 2; START/STOP in front cover.
- K. Indicating Lights: NEMA ICS 2; RUN: red in front cover.
- L. Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2; HAND/OFF/AUTO, in front cover.

## **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Provide REQUIRED accessories as described below. Provide SCHEDULED accessories when listed with plan schedules. Refer to plan schedules for additional requirements.
- B. Barriers: Provide finger safe barriers for lineside uninsulated and ungrounded terminations and components which remain energized when the main disconnecting device is 'open'.  
REQUIRED

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install motor control equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions on concrete bases.
- B. Install fuses in fusible switches.
- C. Select and install heater elements in motor starters to match installed motor characteristics.
- D. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- E. Motor Data: Provide neatly typed label inside each motor starter enclosure door identifying motor served, nameplate horsepower, full load amperes, code letter, service factor, and voltage/phase rating.

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---

**END OF SECTION 262419**

## **SECTION 262726**

### **WIRING DEVICES**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Device plates and box covers
- B. Receptacles (REC-#)
- C. Countertop and furniture receptacle assemblies (REC-#)
- D. Floor boxes and floor box with service fitting (FB-#)

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Provide similar devices from a single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in the Electrical Code, by a testing agency to Authorities Having Jurisdiction and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with the Electrical Code.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. DSCC W-C-896F - General Specification for Electrical Power Connector
- B. FS W-C-596 - Electrical Power Connector, Plug, Receptacle, and Cable Outlet
- C. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices
- D. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Requirements
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
- F. UL 498 - Standard for Attachment Plugs and Receptacles
- G. UL 943 - Standard for Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Provide product data showing configurations, finishes, dimensions, and manufacturer's instructions.

##### **1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Receptacles for Owner Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
- B. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

- C. Coordinate installation of receptacle assemblies in furniture with the Contractor providing the furniture. Contractor shall coordinate penetrations and conduit routing in furniture with drawings and other obstacles below the installation surface.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 DEVICE COLOR**

- A. All switch, receptacle, and outlet colors shall be white , verified with Architect, unless indicated otherwise.

### **2.02 COVERPLATES**

- A. All switches, receptacles, and outlets shall be complete with the following:
  - 1. Unbreakable thermoplastic/thermoset plastic and match device color coverplates in finished spaces where walls are finished.
  - 2. Decorator Grade - Public: Decorator thermoset plastic and match device color wallplates in public finished spaces where walls are finished.
    - a. Manufacturer:
      - 1) Leviton Decora
      - 2) Hubbell Decorator
      - 3) Cooper Decorator
      - 4) or approved equal
- B. Where several devices are ganged together, the coverplate shall be of the ganged style for the number of devices used.
- C. Install nameplate identification as indicated in Section 260553.
- D. Plate securing screws shall be metal with head color matching the wall plate finish.

### **2.03 MODULAR CONNECTORS**

- A. Devices listed below are traditional wired devices. Contractor option to provide equivalent modular connector-type devices (Hubbell Snap Connect, Pass & Seymour Plug Tail, Leviton Lev-Lock, Copper ArrowLink) where applicable.
- B. Wiring devices with modular wiring type quick connectors shall comply with the following in addition to the above:
  - 1. Wired with #12 THHN Cu, stranded or solid, 3 or 4 wire as required for device, minimum 6" lead length.
  - 2. Connector contacts shall be crimped or welded.



## 2.04 RECEPTACLES

- A. Refer to Electrical Symbols List for device type.
- B. REC-DUP: NEMA 5-20R Duplex Receptacle:
  - 1. Spec Grade: 125-volt, 20 amp, 3-wire grounding type with impact resistant thermoplastic face and brass back strap.
    - a. Manufacturers:
      - 1) Hubbell 5352
      - 2) Leviton 5362-S
      - 3) Pass & Seymour 5362
      - 4) Cooper 5362
- C. REC-DUP-GFI: NEMA 5-20R Ground Fault Duplex Receptacle:
  - 1. Standard Grade: 125-volt, 20 amp, 3-wire grounding type with test and reset buttons in impact resistant thermoplastic face, listed.
    - a. Device shall perform self-test of GFCI circuitry in accordance with UL 943.
    - b. Manufacturers:
      - 1) Hubbell GF20L
      - 2) Leviton GFNT2
      - 3) Pass & Seymour 2097
      - 4) Cooper SGF20
- D. REC-DUP-GFI-R: Remote Ground Fault Device:
  - 1. Ground fault device for remote downstream receptacles. 125-volt, 20 amp. Test and reset buttons in impact resistance thermoplastic face, listed.
    - a. Manufacturers:
      - 1) Hubbell GFBF20
      - 2) Leviton 6895
      - 3) Pass & Seymour 2085
      - 4) Cooper VGFD20
- E. REC-DUP-W: NEMA 5-20R Weatherproof While-In-Use Ground Fault Duplex Receptacle:
  - 1. 125-volt, 20 amp, 3-wire grounding type with test and reset buttons in impact resistant thermoplastic face, weather resistant WR listed. Provide extra-duty NEMA 3R rated while-in-use clear lockable outlet box hood.
  - 2. Device shall perform self-test of GFCI circuitry in accordance with UL 943.

a. Manufacturers:

1) Hubbell:

- a) GFTWRST20 with clear housing RW57300
- b) GFCI type devices are not allowed. Contractor may substitute an alternative manufacturer when Hubbell is the basis of submittal for all other wiring devices.

2) Leviton GFWT2 with clear housing 5977-CL

3) Pass & Seymour 2097TRWR with clear housing WIUC10-C

4) Cooper WRSGF20 with clear housing WIU-1

F. REC-USB: NEMA 5-20R Receptacle with USB Charger:

- 1. Standard Grade Type A USB: 125-volt, 20-amp, tamper resistant, 3-wire grounding type with impact resistant thermoplastic face. Type A USB charging rated at 5VDC 3.0A minimum. Mounted in double gang backbox.

a. Manufacturers:

1) Hubbell USB20X2

2) Pass & Seymour TR5362USB

3) Cooper TR7766

G. REC-TAMP: NEMA 5-20R Tamper Resistant Duplex Receptacle:

- 1. Standard Grade: 125-volt, 20 amp, 3-wire grounding type with impact resistant thermoplastic face.

a. Manufacturers:

1) Hubbell BR20TR

2) Leviton TBR20

3) Pass & Seymour TR5362

4) Cooper TRBR20

H. REC-TAMP-GFI: NEMA 5-20R GFI Tamper Resistant Receptacle:

- 1. Standard Grade: 125-volt, 20 amp, 3-wire grounding type tamper-resistant with test and reset buttons in impact resistant thermoplastic face, listed.

a. Device shall perform self-test of GFCI circuitry in accordance with UL 943.

b. Manufacturers:

1) Hubbell GFTR20

2) Cooper TRSGF20

- 
- 3) Pass & Seymour 2097TR
  - 4) Leviton GFTR2
  - I. REC-TAMP-QUAD: NEMA 5-20R Double Duplex Tamper Resistant Receptacle:
    - 1. Consists of two duplex tamper resistant receptacles, double gang box, plaster ring and faceplate.
      - a. Manufacturers:
        - 1) Refer to Tamper Resistant Receptacle above.
  - J. REC-QUAD: NEMA 5-20R Double Duplex Receptacle:
    - 1. Consists of two duplex receptacles, double gang box, plaster ring and faceplate.
      - a. Manufacturers:
        - 1) Refer to Duplex Receptacle above.
  - K. Back wired devices shall be complete with eight holes that are screw activated with metal clamps for connection to #12 or #10 copper conductors.
  - L. Side wired devices shall have four binding screws that are undercut for positive wire retention.
  - M. Ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) receptacles shall be listed and comply with UL 943 requiring increased surge immunity, improved corrosion resistance, improved resistance to false tripping and diagnostic indication for miswiring if the line and load conductors are reversed during installation.
  - N. Hazardous (Classified) location receptacles shall comply with NEMA FB 11.

## **2.05 FLOOR BOXES**

- A. Cover Color and Style: Verify with Architect from premium heavy duty traffic rated options.
- B. Refer to Technology drawings for voice/data, Audio/Video outlet, and coordination requirements.
- C. Floor Boxes Housing Material Based on Cast-in-Place Floor Type:
  - 1. Slab on Grade: Cast Iron; corrosion resistant.
- D. FB-1: Concealed Center Compartment:
  - 1. Floor Box, flush-mounted hinged cover, square/rectangular center service area with closed while-in-use cover and cable egress doors in cover, provide complete with appropriate outlet cover plates and hardware. For use with 4-inch minimum concrete pour floors, fully adjustable, UL 514 scrub water listed.
  - 2. Gang / Outlet Descriptions:
    - a. 2 gang, 125 Volt, 20 amp, NEMA 5-20R duplex receptacle with 3/4-inch conduit.

3. Manufacturers:
  - a. Hubbell CFB Series
  - b. Legrand Wiremold RFB Series
  - c. ABB Steel City 664/665/667 Series
4. Installation: Group route raceway conduits under slab on grade or in ceiling space below to nearest wall or as shown on plans. Provide provisions to core drill elevated floors and route conduits to ceiling space of associated floor box. Provide hub reducers when applicable.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install convenience receptacles at elevations indicated in the General Installation Notes on the contract drawings.
- B. Install specific-use receptacles at heights shown on the contract drawings. Install devices level, plumb, and square with building lines. Coordinate installation of adjacent devices of separate systems with common mounting heights, including lighting, power, systems, technology, and temperature control device rough-ins.
- C. Ground Fault Protection: Provide ground fault protection for all branch circuit breakers serving 120/208 receptacles and electrical outlets rated 50 amps or less single-phase and 100 amps or less three-phase in the following locations, as shown on drawings, or required by adopted code:
  1. Bathrooms, locker rooms, shower rooms
  2. Kitchens' all 120-volt through 250-volt receptacles
  3. Interior/Exterior locations subject to damp/wet conditions
  4. When located within 6 feet of sinks, bathtubs, and shower stalls
  5. Plug-and-cord receptacles when the utilization appliance is located within 6 feet of a sink edge.
  6. Specific Appliances: Auto vacuum machines, water drink/bottle fill coolers, pressure staying machines, tire inflation machines, vending machines, sump pumps, dishwashers, electric ranges, ovens, clothes dryers, microwave ovens
- D. Tamper Resistant Protection: Provide tamper resistant protection for all 15 / 20-amp 120/208 straight blade wiring devices in the following locations, as shown on the drawings, or required by adopted code.
  1. Public Buildings: Corridors, waiting rooms, common areas
- E. Install decorative plates on switch, receptacle, and blank outlets in finished areas, using jumbo size plates for outlets installed in masonry walls.
- F. Install galvanized steel plates on outlet boxes and junction boxes in unfinished areas, above accessible ceilings, and on surface-mounted outlets.

- G. Install devices and wall plates flush and level.
- H. Install nameplate identification to receptacle cover plates indicated. Identification shall identify panel name and circuit number. Refer to Specification Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.
- I. Test receptacles and modular wiring connectors for proper polarity, ground continuity and compliance with requirements.
- J. Floor Box Installation:
  - 1. Set boxes level and flush with finish flooring material.
  - 2. Use cast iron floor boxes for installations in slab on grade. Trim shall match floor covering to be used.
  - 3. Provide a minimum horizontal offset of 24 inches between boxes.
  - 4. Provide saw-cutting and patching of existing concrete floors as necessary for floor box installations within existing floors.

**END OF SECTION 262726**



## **SECTION 262813**

### **FUSES**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fuses
- B. Spare Fuse Cabinet

##### **1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. UL 198C - High-Interrupting Capacity Fuses; Current Limiting Types
- B. UL 198E - Class R Fuses
- C. FS W-F-870 - Fuseholders (For Plug and Enclosed Cartridge Fuses)
- D. NEMA FU 1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)

##### **1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 260500.

##### **1.04 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Provide two fuse pullers.
- B. Provide three of each size and type of fuse installed.

##### **1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40°F or more than 100°F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS - FUSES**

- A. Bussman, Division of Eaton
- B. Edison Fuse, Division of Cooper Industries
- C. Mersen
- D. Littelfuse Inc

## **2.02 FUSES**

- A. Dimensions and Performance: NEMA FU 1, Class as specified or indicated.
- B. Voltage: Provide fuses with voltage rating suitable for circuit phase-to-phase voltage.
- C. Fuses with ratings less than or equal to 200 amperes (not including control transformer fuses): Class RK-5, unless otherwise noted on the drawings.
- D. Control transformer fuses: Class CC (time delay).
- E. Fuses for packaged equipment: Size and type as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

## **2.03 SPARE FUSE CABINET**

- A. Cabinet: Wall-mounted, 0.05-inch- thick steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
  - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
  - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
  - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- high letters on exterior of door.
  - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install fuses where indicated on the drawings and specifications.
- B. Install fuses in accordance with manufacturer's instruction.
- C. Install fuses in packaged equipment as required by equipment manufacturer.
- D. Install fuse with label oriented such that manufacturer, type, and size are easily read.
- E. Install spare fuse cabinet in the Main Electrical Room.

**END OF SECTION 262813**



**SECTION 262816**  
**DISCONNECT SWITCHES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Non-fusible switches
- B. Enclosures

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS AND WORK**

- A. Refer to the Disconnect and Starter Schedule for rating and configuration.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breakers, accessory and component indicated, include dimensions, weights, and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, and ratings.
- C. Electrical Characteristics: For each type of enclosed switch, enclosure types, current and voltage ratings, short-circuit current ratings, UL listing for series rating of installed devices, features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

**1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with other construction, including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 NON-FUSIBLE SWITCHES**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Square D 3110 Series
  - 2. Eaton DH Series
  - 3. ABB TH Series

- 4. Siemens HNF / HF Series
- B. DS-#; Non-fusible Switch Assemblies: NEMA KS 1; Type heavy duty, quick-make, quick-break, load interrupter enclosed knife switch with externally operable handle interlocked to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position without a tool. Handle lockable in OFF position.
- C. Enclosures: Type as indicated on the disconnect schedule.
- D. Accessories: Provide the following accessories. Refer to Disconnect Schedule for additional requirements for each application.
  - 1. Lockable
  - 2. Provide finger safe barriers for exposed line-side terminations and energized components when the switch is in the open position.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install disconnect switches where indicated on the drawings.
- B. Field coordinate installation with other contractors and equipment to maintain code required working space requirements.
- C. Provide adhesive label on inside door of each switch indicating UL fuse class and size for replacement.

**END OF SECTION 262816**

## **SECTION 265119**

### **LED LIGHTING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Interior luminaires and accessories
- B. Exterior luminaires and accessories
- C. Light-emitting diode (LED) luminaire systems
- D. Emergency exit signs
- E. Lighting poles

##### **1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. The lighting system design includes a combination of luminaire sources, lighting control components, programming sequences, and supplementary components for building and energy code compliance. The design uses performance-based specifications for portions of the lighting system to account for the limitation of comparable product solutions available by competitive manufacturers. The Contractor shall reference related specification sections, plans, schedules, and details prior to submitting pricing, submittals, and installation. The Contractor shall coordinate system component compatibility among various manufacturers and suppliers for a turnkey lighting system. Referenced sections include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. 26 09 33 Lighting Control Systems
    - a. Automatic load control relay (ALCR) (individual luminaire - integral) (ALCR3)
  - 2. 26 52 15 Emergency Lighting Inverter
  - 3. Electrical drawings: Plans, luminaire schedules, lighting control sequence of operations, diagrams, and details.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI C78.377 - Specifications for the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting Products
- B. ANSI C82.16 - Light-Emitting Diode Drivers - Method of Measurement
- C. ANSI C82.77 - Standard for Harmonic Emission Limits and Related Power Quality Requirements for Lighting Equipment
- D. NFPA 70E - National Electrical Safety Code
- E. NEMA SSL1 - Electronic Drivers for LED Devices, Arrays or System
- F. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for use in Lighting Products

- G. LM-79 - Approved Method: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products
- H. LM-80 - Measuring Luminous Flux and Color Maintenance of LED
- I. FS W-L-305 - Light Set, General Illumination (Emergency or Auxiliary)
- J. UL 924 - Standard for Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment
- K. Project site classification as defined in IESNA RP-33 LZ1.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Basic Requirements of Submittal:
  - 1. Submit product data sheets for luminaires, LED light engines, drivers and poles. Include complete product model number with all options as specified. Submittal shall be arranged with luminaires listed in ascending order, and with each luminaire's, LED light engine, driver, or pole information following luminaire's product data. Failure to organize submittal in this manner will result in the submittal being rejected.
  - 2. Submit lens product data, dimensions and weights if not included in product data sheet submittal.
  - 3. Include outline drawings, support points, weights, and accessory information for each luminaire.
  - 4. Submit manufacturer origin of LED chipset and driver.
- C. LED Lighting - Control Compatibility Submittal:
  - 1. Submit lighting control capability data for each LED luminaire. The submittal shall clearly identify device data proposed by the Contractor and approved by the luminaire manufacturer for dimming, switching, addressable, wireless, and similar control characteristics.

#### **1.05 EXTRA STOCK**

- A. Provide extra stock under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. LED Light Engines or Modules: three(3) percent of quantity installed, minimum one (1) of each size and type of field replaceable light engine or module. Provide field replacement installation instructions.
- C. Lenses: Three (3) percent of quantity installed, minimum one (1) of each size and type.
- D. LED Drivers: Five (5) percent of quantity installed, minimum one (1) of each size and type.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to site. Store and protect under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Protect luminaire finishes, lenses, and trims from damage during storage and installation. Do not remove protective films until construction cleanup within each area is complete.

- C. Handle site lighting poles carefully to prevent breakage and damage to finish.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. The warranty period begins at the date of Substantial Completion.
- B. LED Light Engines and Drivers:
  - 1. LED Drivers and Dimming Drivers: Five (5) years
  - 2. Light Emitting Diode (LED) Light Engines: Five (5) years
- C. Exit Signs:
  - 1. Exit Signs: Three (3) year, non-prorated
- D. Emergency Drivers:
  - 1. Emergency LED Driver: Three (3) years
- E. Automatic Load Control Relay (ALCR): Five (5) year
- F. Pole Finish: Three (3) year warranty of pole color and finish

#### **1.08 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to NFPA 101 for installation requirements.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 INTERIOR LUMINAIRES AND ACCESSORIES - GENERAL**

- A. Lensed Troffers: Provide hinged frames with latches and 0.125-inch thick virgin acrylic lenses. Prismatic lenses shall have depth of no less than 0.080", KSH12 or equal. Other lenses as scheduled.
- B. Recessed Luminaires: Confirm ceiling and wall type and furnish trim and accessories necessary to permit proper installation in each system. Where fire-rated ceiling or wall assemblies are specified, furnish and install listed enclosures around luminaires that maintain the system rating.
- C. Luminaires: Louvers shall be anodized low iridescent specular aluminum with mitered corners and interlocking construction.
- D. Suspended Luminaires: Coordinate power feed and suspension canopies with ceiling type and architectural RCP for proper fit and location. Ensure finished installations are plumb and level at elevations specified. Verify suspension length prior to submittal.
- E. Painted reflector surfaces shall have a minimum reflectance of 90%.

## **2.02 EXTERIOR LUMINAIRES AND ACCESSORIES - GENERAL**

- A. Listed for wet or damp location as scheduled. Provide ingress protection (IP) rating when scheduled.
- B. Provide low temperature LED drivers, with reliable starting to -20°F.
- C. In-grade luminaires shall have lamp/optic separation to prevent surface temperature from exceeding 115°F. Compartment separation of wire entry and control gear/lamp chamber.
- D. Exterior LED luminaires shall contain separate, easily accessible and replaceable Category C surge protection device.

## **2.03 LIGHT EMITTING DIODE (LED) LUMINAIRE SYSTEMS**

- A. Refer to the luminaire schedule for color temperature and minimum color rendering index CRI requirements. Provide light source color consistency by utilizing a binning tolerance within a maximum 3-step McAdam ellipse unless noted otherwise.
- B. LED chip arrays specified as color changing shall have chip colors as noted on the luminaire schedule.
- C. Rated life shall be minimum of 50,000 hours at L70.
- D. LED chips shall be wired so that failure of one chip does not prohibit operation of the remainder of the chip array.
- E. Luminaire delivered lumens is defined as the absolute lumens per the manufacturers LM-79-08 test report.
- F. LED luminaires shall be designed for ease of component replacement including modular replaceable boards or Zhaga sockets. Luminaires that are factory sealed and do not have field replaceable parts shall provide a 10-year warranty.
- G. LED light engine shall have a maximum LLD of 0.85 at 50,000 hours at 25°C ambient.
- H. LED Driver:
  - 1. Solid state driver with integral heat sink. Driver shall have over-heat, short-circuit and overload protection, power factor 0.90 or above and maximum total harmonic distortion of 10%. Driver shall have a voltage fluctuation tolerance of +/- 10%.
  - 2. Drivers shall have dimming capabilities as outlined in the luminaire schedule for each luminaire type. Dimming shall control light output in a continuous curve from 100% to 10% unless noted otherwise.
  - 3. Driver shall have a minimum of 50,000 hours rated life.
  - 4. Driver shall be tested to ANSI C82-16 for input current inrush, total harmonic distortion (THD), and power factor. Driver start time shall be less than 0.5 seconds to 98% of initial light output. Flicker should be less than 30% throughout the operating range.
  - 5. Driver shall be field replaceable without removal of the luminaire.
  - 6. Class A sound rating; inaudible in a 27 dBA ambient.
  - 7. Demonstrate no visible change in light output with a variation of plus or minus 10 percent change in line-voltage input.

## **2.04 EMERGENCY EXIT SIGNS**

- A. Exit Signs: Stencil face, 6-inch high letters, directional arrows as indicated, universal mounting type as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Directional Indicators: The directional indicator for exit signage shall be of a chevron type meeting all requirements of NFPA 101.

## **2.05 LIGHTING POLES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer of luminaire (metallic pole)
  - 2. Valmont Poles (metallic pole)
  - 3. U.S. Pole Company (metallic pole)
  - 4. KW Industries (metallic pole)
- B. Metal Poles: Square straight steel lighting pole with embedded base.
  - 1. Painted steel poles shall have electrostatic applied polyester powder coated paint finish thermally cured with UV protection. Interior of pole shall be coated with same coating for a minimum of 12" from base plate.
- C. Wind Load: 100 MPH velocity, with 1.14 percent three-second gust factor with luminaires and brackets mounted.
- D. Hand Hole: 2 x 4 inches with removable weatherproof cover installed at manufacturer's standard location. Provide matching gasketed cover plate.
- E. Anchor Bolts: As recommended by pole manufacturer. Provide template, flat washers, lock washers, and hex nuts for each pole. Grout between anchor plate and concrete base with non-shrink grout after pole is plumbed.
- F. Vibration Damper: Canister or snake type second mode vibration damper internal to the metal pole as recommended by pole manufacturer. Provide additional pole top damper for first mode vibration on single-head metal poles where recommended by manufacturer.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Securely fasten luminaires to the listed and labeled ceiling framing member by mechanical means such as bolts, screws, rivets or listed clips identified for use with the type of ceiling framing members. The architectural ceiling framing system may be used in lieu of independent support with prior written approval by the ceiling system manufacturer and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). Luminaires and wiring installed in fire-rated ceiling assemblies shall be independently supported for all applications.
  - 1. Install recessed flanged luminaires to permit removal from below. Use manufacturer-supplied plaster frames and swing gate supports. Provide independent support as follows:

- a. Luminaires less than 56 lbs: Provide a minimum of two (2) #12 gauge suspended ceiling support wires located on diagonal corners of the luminaires.
  - b. Luminaires 56 lbs or greater: Provide a minimum of four (4) #12 gauge suspended ceiling support wires located on diagonal corners of the luminaires. Support luminaire independent of the ceiling system.
  - c. Luminaires larger than eight square feet (8 ft<sup>2</sup>): Support luminaire independent of the ceiling system.
- B. Do not fasten luminaire supports to piping, ductwork, mechanical equipment, or conduit, unless otherwise noted. Support wires shall be tightly wrapped (minimum of three turns within 3 inches of the connection) and sharply bend to prevent vertical movement.
  - C. Support suspended or pendant mounted luminaires independent of ceiling grid with adjustable stainless steel aircraft cables or per luminaire schedule mounting requirements. Suspension assembly and anchors shall be capable of supporting 300 pounds dead load at each suspension point.
  - D. Support wire used to independently support luminaires, raceways, and wiring systems shall be distinguishable from ceiling support systems by color (field paint), tagging or equivalent means.
  - E. Install lamps in lamp holders of luminaires.
  - F. Adjust aimable luminaires to obtain lighting levels on objects and areas as directed to obtain desired lighting levels.
  - G. Recessed luminaires and other optical accessories shall remain in protective wraps or films until construction in area is complete and area has been cleaned.
  - H. Industrial Pendant Luminaires: Use power hook hangers rated 500 pounds minimum or provide safety chain between driver and structure. Provide safety chain between reflector and driver.
  - I. Luminaire Pole Bases: Sized and constructed as indicated on the drawings. Project anchor bolts 2 inches minimum above base. Install poles plumb with double nuts for adjustment. Grout around pole anchor base.
  - J. Embedded Luminaire Poles: Depth as indicated. Install plumb.
  - K. Use belt slings or non-chafing ropes to raise and set pre-finished luminaire poles.

### **3.02 CONSTRUCTION USE OF PROJECT LUMINAIRES**

- A. The Contractor shall provide temporary construction lighting per the requirements of Division 1.
- B. The project luminaires shown on the construction documents shall not be used for temporary construction purposes without providing a plan for Owner approval that addresses energy and luminaire operating hours.

### **3.03 AUTOMATIC LOAD CONTROL RELAYS**

- A. Factory or field installation per manufacturer requirements.

### **3.04 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS AND EXIT SIGNS**

- A. Install units plumb and level.



### **3.05 RELAMPING**

- A. Replace failed LED light engine modules or arrays at completion of work.

### **3.06 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Align luminaires and clean lenses and diffusers at completion of work. Clean paint splatters, dirt, and debris from installed luminaires.
- B. Touch up luminaire and pole finish at completion of work.

### **3.07 OWNER TRAINING**

- A. Test emergency lighting equipment for 60 minutes to determine proper operation, prior to Substantial Completion, with the Owner's Representative.
- B. Provide electronic copy of periodic test log form to Owner's Representative. Explain and instruct Owner's Representative of requirements for testing and maintenance. Refer to latest adopted NFPA 101 for testing and logging requirements.

### **3.08 LUMINAIRE SCHEDULE**

- A. As shown on the drawings.

**END OF SECTION 265119**



**SECTION 265215**  
**EMERGENCY LIGHTING INVERTER**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Emergency lighting inverter INV-1

**1.02 REFERENCE AND REGULATORY**

- A. UL924 - Standard Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment
- B. UL924A - Auxiliary Lighting
- C. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code
- D. NFPA 111 - Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems
- E. ANSI C62.41 (IEEE 587)
- F. ANSI C62.42.45 (Cat A & B)
- G. OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration

**1.03 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. The lighting system design includes a combination of luminaire sources, lighting control components, programming sequences, and supplementary components for building and energy code compliance. The design uses performance-based specifications for portions of the lighting system to account for the limitation of comparable product solutions available by competitive manufacturers. The Contractor shall reference related specification sections, plans, schedules, and details prior to submitting pricing, submittals, and installation. The Contractor shall coordinate system component compatibility among various manufacturers and suppliers for a turnkey lighting system. Referenced sections include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. 26 09 33 Lighting Controls
  - 2. 26 51 19 LED Lighting
  - 3. Electrical drawings: Plans, luminaire schedules, lighting control sequence of operations, diagrams, and details

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Indicate unit ratings, dimensions, and finishes. Include performance data for batteries.
- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 260500.

### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to site under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Store and protect products under provisions of Section 260500.

### **1.06 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. System Configuration: Emergency lighting inverter, line interactive, solid-state power supply with cabinet enclosure.
- B. Operating Sequence: When utility power is available, it is supplied by the normal power source. When utility power fails, the load is transferred to the emergency battery. When utility is restored, load is retransferred and battery charger restores battery charge.

### **1.07 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit data under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Include battery maintenance and unit testing procedures.

### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. Emergency Lighting Inverter: Five (5) year
- B. Battery: Sealed lead calcium VRLA, ten (10) year

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Myers Emergency Power System Illuminator Series
- B. Signify Chloride
- C. Acuity Lithonia Lighting Iota IIS Series

### **2.02 EMERGENCY LIGHTING INVERTER**

- A. Emergency lighting inverter, line interactive, solid-state power supply with cabinet enclosure. The system shall be suitable LED and fluorescent lamp sources without extinguishing the illumination arc upon load transfer. UL924 listed latest edition.
- B. Input Voltage: 120 volts, 60 Hertz, single phase
- C. Output Voltage: 120
- D. Output Power: 1.6 Kw at 1.0 power factor. The inverter shall have the ability to supply the rated Kw from a power factor of 0.7 lagging to 0.7 leading. Overload capability of 115% for 2 minutes.
- E. Battery Operating Time: 90 minutes at full load and within output voltage limits.
- F. Recharge Time: 24 hours maximum after full discharge.

- G. Inverter Output:
1. Voltage Stability: +/- 5%
  2. Frequency: +/- 1%
  3. Harmonic Distortion: 10% maximum at full load
  4. Crest Factor: 3 to 1
- H. Battery: Lead calcium, sealed maintenance-free type. Low voltage battery disconnect protects the battery from "deep discharge" during prolonged power outages.
- I. Charger: Designed to maintain battery in full-charge condition during normal conditions.
- J. Control and Interface: Provide operation monitoring and control with audible alarm, visual indicators, manual test switch, and alarm silence button. Systems exceeding 500VA shall have the following individual visual indicators with common audible annunciator and monitoring:
1. Instrument display monitoring: Battery voltage, system output voltage and current per leg, system output frequency.
  2. Visual Indicators:
    - a. Load on normal power
    - b. Load on emergency power
    - c. Output circuit breaker open
    - d. Output overload/overcurrent
    - e. High temperature
    - f. ECE in bypass mode
    - g. Low battery
    - h. Major alarm
    - i. Minor alarm
- K. Self-Test and Self-Diagnostics: Provide unit with self-test and self-diagnostics capability. Include the following automatically programmed tests and diagnostics:
1. Monthly Test and Diagnostics: NFPA compliant
  2. Yearly Test and Diagnostics: 90 minutes NFPA compliant
  3. History and Recording: History log shall maintain at least three (3) years of test, diagnostic, and alarm event data.
- L. Output Circuit Breakers:
1. Provide output circuit breakers: 4 single pole circuit breakers.
  2. Circuit Breakers: 20 amp, single pole, voltage to match output voltage.

M. Accessories:

1. Maintenance Bypass: Internal maintenance bypass switch.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install units plumb and level with required clearances.
- B. Provide interconnection between cabinets.
- C. Branch Circuit: The manufacturer recommended input circuit breaker size may vary between manufacturers. Provide branch circuit breaker and wire size per manufacturer recommendations in lieu of the scheduled sizes when applicable.

**3.02 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES**

- A. Provide manufacturer's field services under provisions of Section 260500.
- B. Include services of technician to supervise adjustments, final connections, and system start-up.

**END OF SECTION 265215**

## **SECTION 270500**

### **BASIC COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS REQUIREMENTS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Basic Communications Systems Requirements specifically applicable to Division 27 sections, in addition to Division 1 - General Requirements.
- B. All materials and installation methods shall conform to the applicable standards, guidelines and codes referenced herein and within each specification section.

##### **1.02 SCOPE OF WORK**

- A. This Specification and the associated drawings govern furnishing, installing, testing and placing into satisfactory operation the Communications Systems.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish and install all new materials as indicated on the drawings, and/or in these specifications, and all items required to make the portion of the Communications Work a finished and working system.
- C. All work will be awarded under a single General Contract. The division of work listed below is for the Contractor's convenience and lists normal breakdown of the work.
- D. Description of Systems include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Complete Structured Cabling System including, but not limited to:
    - a. Horizontal cabling and terminations.
    - b. Information outlets (IOes) including faceplates, jacks and labeling.
    - c. Equipment racks, cable management, and equipment.
    - d. Telecommunication Room equipment including patch panels.
    - e. Cabling pathways.
    - f. Grounding and bonding
    - g. Testing
  - 2. Complete Audio/Visual Systems.
  - 3. Complete Equipment Tracking Systems.
  - 4. Mounting and patching of wireless access points provided by owner IT.
  - 5. Low Voltage Communications Wiring (less than +120VAC) as specified and required for proper system control and communications.

6. All associated electrical backboxes, conduit, miscellaneous cabling, and power supplies required for proper system installation and operation as defined in the "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility".
7. Firestopping of penetrations as described in Section 270503.

### **1.03 WORK SEQUENCE**

- A. All construction work that will produce excessive noise levels and interference with normal building operations, as determined by the Owner, shall be scheduled with the Owner. It may be necessary to schedule such work during non-occupied hours. The Owner shall reserve the right to set policy as to when restricted construction hours will be required.

### **1.04 DIVISION OF WORK BETWEEN ELECTRICAL AND COMMUNICATIONS CONTRACTORS**

- A. Division of work is the responsibility of the Prime Contractor. Any scope of work described in the contract document shall be sufficient for including said requirement in the project. The Prime Contractor shall be solely responsible for determining the appropriate subcontractor for the described scope. In no case shall the project be assessed an additional cost for scope that is described in the contract documents. The following division of responsibility is a guideline based on typical industry practice.
- B. Definitions:
  1. "Electrical Contractor" as referred to herein refers to the Contractors listed in Division 26 of this Specification.
  2. "Electrical Contractor" shall also refer to the Contractor listed in Division 27 of this specification when the "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility" indicates the work shall be provided by the EC. Refer to the Contract Documents for the "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility".
  3. "Technology Contractor" as referred to herein refers to the Contractors listed in Division 27 of this Specification.
  4. Low Voltage Technology Wiring: The wiring (less than 120VAC) associated with the Technology Systems, used for analog and/or digital signals between equipment.
  5. Telecommunications/Technology Rough-in: Relates specifically to the backboxes, necessary plaster rings and other miscellaneous hardware required for the installation and mounting of the telecommunications/technology outlet. Rough-in shall include conduit from the information outlet backbox to above the lay-in ceiling. Where surface mounted backboxes are required, conduit shall be routed to above the lay-in ceiling.
- C. General:
  1. The purpose of these specifications is to outline typical Electrical and Technology Contractor's work responsibilities as related to technology systems including telecommunications rough-in, audio/visual systems rough-in, conduit, power wiring, and low voltage communications and technology wiring. The prime contractor is responsible for all divisions of work.



2. The exact wiring requirements for much of the equipment cannot be determined until the systems have been purchased and submittals are approved. Therefore, only known wiring, conduits, raceways, and electrical power as related to such items, is shown on the technology drawings. Other wiring, conduits, raceways, junction boxes, and electrical power not shown on the technology drawings but required for the successful operation of the systems shall be the responsibility of the Technology Contractor and included in the Contractor's bid.
3. Where the Electrical Contractor is required to install conduit, conduit sleeves and/or power connections in support of technology systems, the final installation shall not begin until a coordination meeting between the Electrical Contractor and the Technology Contractor has convened to determine the exact location and requirements of the installation.
4. Where the Electrical Contractor is required to install cable tray that will contain low voltage technology wiring, the installation shall not begin until the Technology Contractor has completed a coordination review of the cable tray shop drawing.
5. This Contractor shall establish electrical and technology utility elevations prior to fabrication and installation. The Technology Contractor shall cooperate with the Electrical Contractor and the determined elevations in accordance with the guidelines below. This Contractor shall coordinate utility elevations with other trades. When a conflict arises, priority shall be as follows:
  - a. Lighting Fixtures
  - b. Gravity Flow Piping, including Steam and Condensate
  - c. Sheet Metal
  - d. Electrical Busduct
  - e. Cable Trays, including 12" access space
  - f. Sprinkler Piping and other Piping
  - g. Conduit and Wireway
  - h. Open Cabling

D. Electrical Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Assumes all responsibility for all required conduit and power connections when shown on the "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility" to be provided by the Electrical Contractor.
2. Responsible for Communications Systems grounding and bonding.
3. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

E. Technology Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Assumes all responsibility for the low voltage technology wiring of all systems, including cable support where open cable is specified.

2. Assumes all responsibility for all required backboxes, conduit and power connections not specifically shown as being provided by the Electrical Contractor on the "Suggested Matrix of Scope Responsibility."
3. Assumes all responsibility for providing and installing all ladder rack and other cable management hardware (as defined herein).
4. Responsible for providing the Electrical Contractor with the required grounding lugs or other hardware for each piece of technology equipment which is required to be bonded to the technology bonding system.
5. This Contractor is responsible for coordination of utilities with all other Contractors. If any field coordination conflicts are found, the Contractor shall coordinate with other Contractors to determine a viable layout.

## **1.05 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

### **A. Definitions:**

1. Coordination Drawings: A compilation of the pertinent layout and system drawings that show the sizes and locations, including elevations, of system components and required access areas to ensure that no two objects will occupy the same space.
  - a. Mechanical trades shall include, but are not limited to, mechanical equipment, ductwork, fire protection systems, plumbing piping, medical gas systems, hydronic piping, steam and steam condensate piping, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - b. Electrical trades shall include, but are not limited to, electrical equipment, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, pull boxes, transformers, raceway, busway, lighting, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - c. Technology trades shall include, but are not limited to, technology equipment, racks, conduit 1.5" and larger, conduit racks, cable trays, ladder rack, pull boxes, raceway, ceiling-mounted devices, and any item that may impact coordination with other disciplines.
  - d. Maintenance clearances and code-required dedicated space shall be included.
  - e. The coordination drawings shall include all underground, underfloor, in-floor, in chase, and vertical trade items.
2. Spaces with open/cloud ceiling architecture shall indicate the overhead utilities and locate equipment as required to maintain clearance above lights. The intent for the installation is to maintain a maximum allowable vertical clearance and an organized/clean manner in the horizontal. Notify Architect/Engineer of the maximum clearance which can be maintained. Failure to comply will result in modifications with no cost to Owner.
  - a. In cloud ceiling architecture, when open cabling/wire and/or cable tray crosses gaps between ceiling clouds and/or walls, cabling is to transition to conduits to span the gaps in order to conceal cabling from below.

3. The contractors shall use the coordination process to identify the proper sequence of installation of all utilities above ceilings and in other congested areas, to ensure an orderly and coordinated end result, and to provide adequate access for service and maintenance.

B. Participation:

1. The contractors and subcontractors responsible for work defined above shall participate in the coordination drawing process.
2. One contractor shall be designated as the Coordinating Contractor for purposes of preparing a complete set of composite electronic CAD coordination drawings that include all applicable trades, and for coordinating the activities related to this process. The Coordinating Contractor for this project shall be the Mechanical Contractor.
  - a. The Coordinating Contractor shall utilize personnel familiar with requirements of this project and skilled as draftspersons/CAD operators, competent to prepare the required coordination drawings.
3. Electronic CAD drawings shall be submitted to the Coordinating Contractor for addition of work by other trades. IMEG will provide electronic file copies of applicable drawings for contractor's use if the contractor signs and returns an "Electronic File Transfer" waiver provided by IMEG. IMEG will not consider blatant reproductions of original file copies an acceptable alternative for coordination drawings.

C. Drawing Requirements:

1. The file format and file naming convention shall be coordinated with and agreed to by all contractors participating in the coordination process and the Owner.
  - a. Scale of drawings:
    - 1) General plans: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 2) Mechanical, electrical, communication rooms, and including the surrounding areas within 10 feet: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 3) Shafts and risers: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 4) Sections of shafts and mechanical and electrical equipment rooms: 1/4 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
    - 5) Sections of congested areas: 1/2 Inch = 1'-0" (minimum).
2. Ductwork layout drawings shall be the baseline system for other components. Ductwork layout drawings shall be modified to accommodate other components as the coordination process progresses.
3. There may be more drawings required for risers, top and bottom levels of mechanical rooms, and shafts.
4. The minimum quantity of drawings will be established at the first coordination meeting and sent to the Architect/Engineer for review. Additional drawings may be required if other areas of congestion are discovered during the coordination process.

D. General:

1. Coordination drawing files shall be made available to the Architect/Engineer and Owner's Representative. The Architect/Engineer will only review identified conflicts and give an opinion, but will not perform as a coordinator.
2. A plotted set of coordination drawings shall be available at the project site.
3. Coordination drawings are not shop drawings and shall not be submitted as such.
4. The contract drawings are schematic in nature and do not show every fitting and appurtenance for each utility. Each contractor is expected to have included in his/her bid sufficient fittings, material, and labor to allow for adjustments in routing of utilities made necessary by the coordination process and to provide a complete and functional system.
5. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions due to participation in the coordination process.
6. The contractors will not be allowed additional costs or time extensions for additional fittings, reroutings or changes of duct size, that are essentially equivalent sizes to those shown on the drawings and determined necessary through the coordination process.
7. The Architect/Engineer reserves the right to determine space priority of equipment in the event of spatial conflicts or interference between equipment, piping, conduit, ducts, and equipment provided by the trades.
8. Changes to the contract documents that are necessary for systems installation and coordination shall be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer.
9. Access panels shall preferably occur only in gypsum board walls or plaster ceilings where indicated on the drawings.
  - a. Access to mechanical, electrical, technology, and other items located above the ceiling shall be through accessible lay-in ceiling tile areas.
  - b. Potential layout changes shall be made to avoid additional access panels.
  - c. Additional access panels shall not be allowed without written approval from the Architect/Engineer at the coordination drawing stage.
  - d. Providing additional access panels shall be considered after other alternatives are reviewed and discarded by the Architect/Engineer and the Owner's Representative.
  - e. When additional access panels are required, they shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner.
10. Complete the coordination drawing process and obtain signoff of the drawings by all contractors prior to installing any of the components.
11. Conflicts that result after the coordination drawings are signed off shall be the responsibility of the contractor or subcontractor who did not properly identify their work requirements, or installed their work without proper coordination.
12. Updated coordination drawings that reflect as-built conditions may be used as record documents.

---

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Telecommunications Structured Cabling System Standards:

1. All work and equipment shall conform to the most current ratified version of the following published standards unless otherwise indicated that draft standards are to be followed:
  - a. ANSI/NECA/BICSI 568 - Standard for Installing Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling
  - b. ANSI/TIA-568-0-D - Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises
    - 1) 1-D - Commercial Building Telecommunications Standard
    - 2) 2-D - Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standard
    - 3) 4-D - Broadband Coaxial Cabling and Components Standard
  - c. ANSI/TIA-569-E - Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
  - d. ANSI/TIA-606-C - Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure
  - e. ANSI/TIA-607-D - Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications
  - f. ANSI/TIA-1152 - Requirements for Field Test Instruments and Measurements for Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling
  - g. NFPA 70 (NEC) - National Electrical Code (Current Edition)

### B. Refer to individual sections for additional Quality Assurance requirements.

### C. Qualifications:

1. Only products of reputable manufacturers as determined by the Architect/Engineer will be acceptable.
2. The installing Contractor shall be certified by the manufacturer of the structured cabling system. Certification of Contractor shall have been in place for a minimum of one (1) year prior to bidding this project. Documentation of certification is required at the time of bid. Shop drawings will not be approved until proof of certification is submitted. Refer to the end of this specification section for certification documentation requirements.
3. Each Contractor and their subcontractors shall employ only workers who are skilled in their respective trades and fully trained. All workers involved in the termination of cabling shall be individually certified by the manufacturer.
4. The Contractor shall be experienced in all aspects of this work and shall be required to demonstrate direct experience on recent systems of similar type and size.
5. The Contractor shall own and maintain tools and equipment necessary for successful installation and testing of optical and copper structured cabling systems and have personnel adequately trained in the use of such tools and equipment.

6. The Contractor must have a BICSI RCDD (Registered Communications Distribution Designer) or CNet CNIDP (Certified Network Infrastructure Design Professional) on-staff serving as a project manager. Project shop drawings and test reports shall be stamped by the RCDD or CNIDP.
7. The Contractor shall have certified BICSI installation technicians or CNet CNIT (Certified Network Infrastructure Technician) on staff to perform the following tasks on the project:
  - a. Act as the field superintendent or job foreman with the responsibility of monitoring the daily work of each technician.
  - b. Oversee all testing and termination of cabling.
8. A resume of qualification shall be submitted with the Contractor's bid indicating the following:
  - a. Documentation of certification of This Contractor by the proposed structured cabling system manufacturer as required at the end of this specification section.

D. Compliance with Codes, Laws, Ordinances:

1. Conform to all requirements of the City of Warren, Mi Codes, Laws, Ordinances and other regulations having jurisdiction.
2. In the event there are no local codes having jurisdiction over this job, the current issue of the National Electrical Code shall be followed.
3. If there is a discrepancy between the codes and regulations having jurisdiction over this installation, and these specifications, Architect/Engineer shall determine the method or equipment used.
4. If the Contractor notes, at the time of bidding, any parts of the drawings and specifications which are not in accordance with the applicable codes or regulations, he shall inform the Architect/Engineer in writing, requesting a clarification. If there is insufficient time to follow this procedure, he shall submit with the proposal, a separate price required to make the system shown on the drawings comply with the codes and regulations.
5. Verify the installation environment prior to purchasing or installing any cable. Cable installed in a plenum environment shall be appropriately rated. Bring all discrepancies between the contract documents and installation conditions to the attention of the Architect/Engineer prior to purchase or installation.
6. All changes to the system made after the letting of the contract, in order to comply with the applicable codes or the requirements of the Inspector, shall be made by the Contractor without cost to the Owner.

E. Permits, Fees, Taxes, Inspections:

1. Procure all applicable permits and licenses.
2. Abide by all applicable laws, regulations, ordinances, and other rules of the State or Political Subdivision wherein the work is done, or as required by any duly constituted public authority.
3. Pay all applicable charges for such permits or licenses that may be required.

4. Pay all applicable fees and taxes imposed by the State, Municipal and/or other regulatory bodies.
5. Pay all charges arising out of required inspections due to codes, permits, licenses or as otherwise may be required by an authorized body.
6. Pay all charges arising out of required contract document reviews associated with the project and as initiated by the Owner or authorized independent agency/consultant.
7. Pay any charges by the service provider related to the service or change in service to the project.
8. All equipment and materials shall be as approved or listed by the following (unless approval or listing is not applicable to an item by all acceptable manufacturers):
  - a. Factory Mutual
  - b. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.

F. Service Provider Requirements:

1. Secure from the telecommunications service provider all applicable requirements.
2. Comply with all service provider requirements.
3. The Owner shall make application for and pay for new telecommunications service equipment and installation. The Contractor shall coordinate schedule and requirements with the Owner and service provider.

G. Examination of Drawings:

1. The drawings for the technology systems work are diagrammatic, intended to convey the scope of the work and to indicate the general arrangements and locations of equipment etc., and the approximate sizes of equipment.
2. Contractor shall determine the exact locations of equipment and the exact routing of cabling to best fit the layout of the job. Scaling of the drawings will not be sufficient or accurate for determining this layout. Where a specific route is required, such route will be indicated on the drawings.
3. Where job conditions require reasonable changes in indicated arrangements and locations, such changes shall be made by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.
4. If an item is either shown on the drawings, called for in the specifications or required for proper operation of the system, it shall be considered sufficient for including same in this contract.
5. The determination of quantities of material and equipment required shall be made by the Contractor from the drawings. Schedules on the drawings and in the specifications are completed as an aid to the Contractor but where discrepancies arise, the greater number shall govern.
6. Where words "provide", "install", or "furnish" are used on the drawings or in the specifications, it shall be taken to mean, to furnish, install and terminate completely ready for operation, the items mentioned.

H. Electronic Media/Files:

1. Construction drawings for this project have been prepared utilizing Revit.
2. Contractors and Subcontractors may request electronic media files of the contract drawings and/or copies of the specifications. Specifications will be provided in PDF format.
3. Upon request for electronic media, the Contractor shall complete and return a signed "Electronic File Transmittal" form provided by IMEG. If the information requested includes floor plans prepared by others, the Contractor will be responsible for obtaining approval from the appropriate Design Professional for use of that part of the document.
4. The electronic contract documents can be used for preparation of shop drawings and as-built drawings only. The information may not be used in whole or in part for any other project.
5. The drawings prepared by IMEG for bidding purposes may not be used directly for ductwork layout drawings or coordination drawings.
6. The use of these CAD documents by the Contractor does not relieve them from their responsibility for coordination of work with other trades and verification of space available for the installation.
7. The information is provided to expedite the project and assist the Contractor with no guarantee by IMEG as to the accuracy or correctness of the information provided. IMEG accepts no responsibility or liability for the Contractor's use of these documents.

I. Field Measurements:

1. Before ordering any materials, this Contractor shall verify all pertinent dimensions at the job site and be responsible for their accuracy.
2. Field conditions that will result in telecommunications drops that exceed the length limitations identified in the contract documents shall be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer prior to installation. The cost of reworking cabling that is too long, that was not brought to the written attention of the Architect/Engineer will be borne entirely by the Contractor.
3. This Contractor shall provide the Architect/Engineer with written documentation of any cabling drops that will not be able to use the cable tray (where cable tray is available) due to the resulting cabling lengths. This documentation shall be submitted prior to installation and installation shall not commence until approved by the Architect/Engineer.

#### **1.07 WEB-BASED PROJECT SOFTWARE**

- A. The General Contractor shall provide a web-based project software site for the purpose of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until completion of the warranty phase.
- B. The web-based project software shall include, at a minimum, the following features: construction schedule, submittals, RFIs, ASIs, construction change directives, change orders, drawing management, specification management, payment applications, contract modifications, meeting minutes, construction progress photos.
- C. Provide web-based project software user licenses for use by the Architect/Engineer. Access will be provided from the start of the project through the completion of the warranty phase.



- D. At project completion, provide digital archive of entire project in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect/Engineer. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.

#### **1.08 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submittals shall be required for the following items, and for additional items where required elsewhere in the specifications or on the drawings.

1. Submittals list:

Referenced Specification Section	Submittal Item	Coordination Drawings
--	----------------	--------------------------

- B. General Submittal Procedures: In addition to the provisions of Division 1, the following are required:

1. Transmittal: Each transmittal shall include the following:

- a. Date
- b. Project title and number
- c. Contractor's name and address
- d. Description of items submitted and relevant specification number
- e. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
- f. Other pertinent data

2. Submittal Cover Sheet: Each submittal shall include a cover sheet containing:

- a. Date
- b. Project title and number
- c. Architect/Engineer
- d. Contractor and subcontractors' names and addresses
- e. Supplier and manufacturer's names and addresses
- f. Description of item submitted (using project nomenclature) and relevant specification number
- g. Notations of deviations from the contract documents
- h. Other pertinent data
- i. Provide space for Contractor's review stamps

3. Composition:

- a. Submittals shall be submitted using specification sections and the project nomenclature for each item.
  - b. Individual submittal packages shall be prepared for items in each specification section. All items within a single specification section shall be packaged together where possible. An individual submittal may contain items from multiple specifications sections if the items are intimately linked (e.g., pumps and motors).
  - c. All sets shall contain an index of the items enclosed with a general topic description on the cover.
4. Content: Submittals shall include all fabrication, erection, layout, and setting drawings; manufacturers' standard drawings; schedules; descriptive literature, catalogs and brochures; performance and test data; wiring and control diagrams; dimensions; shipping and operating weights; shipping splits; service clearances; and all other drawings and descriptive data of materials of construction as may be required to show that the materials, equipment or systems and the location thereof conform to the requirements of the contract documents.
5. Contractor's Approval Stamp:
  - a. The Contractor shall thoroughly review and approve all shop drawings before submitting them to the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall stamp, date and sign each submittal certifying it has been reviewed.
  - b. Unstamped submittals will be rejected.
  - c. The Contractor shall provide proof of RCDD or CNIDP review on the submittal.
  - d. The Contractor's review shall include, but not be limited to, verification of the following:
    - 1) Only approved manufacturers are used.
    - 2) Addenda items have been incorporated.
    - 3) Catalog numbers and options match those specified.
    - 4) Performance data matches that specified.
    - 5) Electrical characteristics and loads match those specified.
    - 6) Equipment connection locations, sizes, capacities, etc. have been coordinated with other affected trades.
    - 7) Dimensions and service clearances are suitable for the intended location.
    - 8) Equipment dimensions are coordinated with support steel, housekeeping pads, openings, etc.
    - 9) Constructability issues are resolved (e.g., weights and dimensions are suitable for getting the item into the building and into place, sinks fit into countertops, etc.).
  - e. The Contractor shall review, stamp and approve all subcontractors' submittals as described above.

- f. The Contractor's approval stamp is required on all submittals. Approval will indicate the Contractor's review of all material and a complete understanding of exactly what is to be furnished. Contractor shall clearly mark all deviations from the contract documents on all submittals. If deviations are not marked by the Contractor, then the item shall be required to meet all drawing and specification requirements.
- 6. Submittal Identification and Markings:
  - a. The Contractor shall clearly mark each item with the same nomenclature applied on the drawings or in the specifications.
  - b. The Contractor shall clearly indicate the size, finish, material, etc.
  - c. Where more than one model is shown on a manufacturer's sheet, the Contractor shall clearly indicate exactly which item and which data is intended.
  - d. All marks and identifications on the submittals shall be unambiguous.
- 7. Schedule submittals to expedite the project. Coordinate submission of related items.
- 8. Identify variations from the contract documents and product or system limitations that may be detrimental to the successful performance of the completed work.
- 9. Reproduction of contract documents alone is not acceptable for submittals.
- 10. Incomplete submittals will be rejected without review. Partial submittals will only be reviewed with prior approval from the Architect/Engineer.
- 11. Submittals not required by the contract documents may be returned without review.
- 12. The Architect/Engineer's responsibility shall be to review one set of shop drawing submittals for each product. If the first submittal is incomplete or does not comply with the drawings and/or specifications, the Contractor shall be responsible to bear the cost for the Architect/Engineer to recheck and handle the additional shop drawing submittals.
- 13. Submittals shall be reviewed and approved by the Architect/Engineer **before** releasing any equipment for manufacture or shipment.
- 14. Contractor's responsibility for errors, omissions or deviation from the contract documents in submittals is not relieved by the Architect/Engineer's approval.
- 15. Schedule shall allow for adequate time to perform orderly and proper review of submittals, including time for consultants and Owner if required, and resubmittals by Contractor if necessary, and to cause no delay in Work or in activities of Owner or other contractors.
  - a. Allow at least two weeks for Architect's/Engineer's review and processing of each submittal.
- 16. Architect/Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal which, in the Architect/Engineer's opinion, requires coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. The Architect/Engineer will notify the Contractor, in writing, when they exercise this right.

C. Electronic Submittal Procedures:

1. Distribution: Email submittals as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer, unless a web-based submittal program is used.
2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
  - a. Submittal file name: 27 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
  - b. Transmittal file name: 27 XX XX.description.YYYYMMDD
5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.

#### **1.09 CHANGE ORDERS**

- A. A detailed material and labor takeoff shall be prepared for each change order, along with labor rates and markup percentages. Change orders shall be broken down by sheet or associated individual line item indicated in the change associated narrative, whichever provides the most detailed breakdown. Change orders with inadequate breakdown will be rejected.
- B. Itemized pricing with unit cost shall be provided from all distributors and associated subcontractors.
- C. Change order work shall not proceed until authorized.

#### **1.010 EQUIPMENT SUPPLIERS' INSPECTION**

- A. The following equipment shall not be placed in operation until a representative of the manufacturer has inspected the installation and certified that the equipment is properly installed and that the equipment is ready for operation:
  1. Firestopping, including mechanical firestop systems.

#### **1.011 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING & MAINTENANCE**

- A. Exercise care in transporting and handling to prevent damage to fixtures, equipment and materials.
- B. Store materials on the site to prevent damage.
- C. Keep fixtures, equipment and materials clean, dry and free from deleterious conditions.

#### **1.012 NETWORK / INTERNET CONNECTED EQUIPMENT**

- A. These specifications may require certain equipment or systems to have network, Internet and/or remote access capability ("Network Capability"). Any requirement for Network Capability shall be interpreted only as a functional capability and is not to be construed as authority to connect or enable any Network Capability. Network Capability may only be connected or enabled with the express written consent of the Owner.

#### **1.013 WARRANTY**

- A. At a minimum, provide a one (1) year warranty for all equipment, materials, and workmanship. Individual specifications sections within Division 27 may require additional warranty requirements for specific equipment or systems.
- B. The warranty period for the entire installation described in this Division of the specifications shall commence on the date of substantial completion unless a whole or partial system or any separate piece of equipment or component is put into use for the benefit of any party other than the installing contractor with prior written authorization. In this instance, the warranty period shall commence on the date when such whole system, partial system or separate piece of equipment or component is placed in operation and accepted in writing by the Owner or their representative.
- C. Warranty requirements shall extend to correction, without cost to the final user, of all work and/or equipment found to be defective or nonconforming to the contract documents. The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting all damage resulting from such defects or nonconformance with contract documents exclusive of repairs required as a result of improper maintenance or operation, or of normal wear as determined by the Architect/Engineer.

#### **1.014 INSURANCE**

- A. Contractor shall maintain insurance coverage as set forth in Division 1 of these specifications.

#### **1.015 MATERIAL SUBSTITUTION**

- A. Where several manufacturers' names are given, the first named manufacturer constitutes the basis for job design and establishes the equipment quality required.
- B. Equivalent equipment manufactured by the other named manufacturers may be used. Contractor shall ensure that all items submitted by these other manufacturers meets all requirements of the drawings and specifications and fits in the allocated space. When using other listed manufacturers, the Contractor shall assume responsibility for any and all modifications necessary (including, but not limited to structural supports, electrical connections and rough-in, and regulatory agency approval, etc.) and coordinate such with other contractors. The Architect/Engineer shall make the final determination of whether a product is equivalent.

- C. Any material, article or equipment of other unnamed manufacturers which will adequately perform the services and duties imposed by the design and is of a quality equal to or better than the material, article or equipment identified by the drawings and specifications may be used if approval is secured in writing from the Architect/Engineer via addendum. The Contractor bears full responsibility for the unnamed manufacturers equipment adequately meeting the intent of design. The Architect/Engineer may reject manufacturer at time of shop drawing submittal. The Contractor assumes all costs incurred by other trades on the project as a result of changes necessary to accommodate the offered material, equipment or installation method.
- D. Should this Contractor be unable to secure approval from the Architect/Engineer for other unnamed manufacturers as outlined above, this Contractor may list voluntary add or deduct prices for alternate materials on the bid form. These items will not be used in determining the low bidder. Should a voluntary alternate material be accepted, This Contractor shall assume all costs that may be incurred as a result of using the offered material, article or equipment necessitating extra expense on This Contractor or on the part of other Contractors whose work is affected.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 CABLE JACKET RATING**

- A. This project requires all cable jackets to carry a plenum rating.

### **2.02 Refer to individual sections.**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 JOBSITE SAFETY**

- A. Neither the professional activities of the Architect/Engineer, nor the presence of the Architect/Engineer or his or her employees and subconsultants at a construction site, shall relieve the Contractor and any other entity of their obligations, duties and responsibilities including, but not limited to, construction means, methods, sequence, techniques or procedures necessary for performing, superintending or coordinating all portions of the work of construction in accordance with the contract documents and any health or safety precautions required by any regulatory agencies. The Architect/Engineer and his or her personnel have no authority to exercise any control over any construction contractor or other entity or their employees in connection with their work or any health or safety precautions. The Contractor is solely responsible for jobsite safety. The Architect/Engineer and the Architect/Engineer's consultants shall be indemnified and shall be made additional insureds under the Contractor's general liability insurance policy.

### **3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Installation of all conduit and cabling shall comply with Sections 26 05 33 and 26 05 13. Additional conduit requirements described within this Division shall be supplemental to the requirement described in Section 260533. Should conflicts exist between the two Divisions the more stringent (more expensive material and labor) condition shall prevail until bidding addendum or construction clarification or RFI can be submitted and responded to. In no case shall the Contractor carry the least stringent condition in the pricing.
- B. It is the Contractor's responsibility to survey the site and include all necessary costs to perform the installation as specified.
- C. All cables and devices installed in damp or wet locations, including any underground or underslab location, shall be listed as suitable for use in such environments. Follow manufacturer's recommended installation practices for installing cables and devices in damp or wet locations. Any cable or device that fails as a result of being installed in a damp or wet location shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense.

### **3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. General:
  - 1. Refer to specific Division 27 sections for further requirements.
  - 2. The Contractor shall conduct all tests required and applicable to the work both during and after construction of the work.
  - 3. The necessary instruments and materials required to conduct or make the tests shall be supplied by the Contractor who shall also supply competent personnel for making the tests who has been schooled in the proper testing techniques.
  - 4. In the event the results obtained in the tests are not satisfactory, This Contractor shall make such adjustments, replacements and changes as are necessary and shall then repeat the test or tests which disclose faulty or defective work or equipment, and shall make such additional tests as the Architect/Engineer or code enforcing agency deems necessary.
  - 5. All communications cable tests that fail, including those due to excessive cabling lengths, shall be remedied by the Contractor without cost to the project.
- B. Protection of cable from foreign materials:
  - 1. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide adequate physical protection to prevent foreign material application or contact with any cable type. Foreign material is defined as any material that would negatively impact the validity of the manufacturer's performance warranty. This includes, but is not limited, to overspray of paint (accidental or otherwise), drywall compound, or any other surface chemical, liquid or compound that could come in contact with the cable, cable jacket or cable termination components.

2. Application of foreign materials of any kind on any cable, cable jacket or cable termination component will not be accepted. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to replace any component containing overspray, in its entirety, at no additional cost to the project. Cleaning of the cables with harsh chemicals is not allowed. This requirement is regardless of the PASS/FAIL test results of the cable containing overspray. Should the manufacturer and warrantor of the structured cabling system desire to physically inspect the installed condition and certify the validity of the structured cabling system (via a signed and dated statement by an authorized representative of the structured cabling manufacturer), the Owner may, at their sole discretion, agree to accept said warranty in lieu of having the affected cables replaced. In the case of plenum cabling, in addition to the statement from the manufacturer, the Contractor shall also present to the Owner a letter from the local Authority Having Jurisdiction stating that they consider the plenum rating of the cable to be intact and acceptable.

### **3.04 PROJECT CLOSEOUT**

- A. Refer to the Division 1 Section: PROJECT CLOSEOUT for requirements. The following paragraphs supplement the requirements of Division 1.
- B. Final Jobsite Observation:
  1. The Architect/Engineer will not perform a final jobsite observation until the project is ready. This is not dictated by schedule, but rather by completeness of the project.
  2. Refer to the end of this specification section for a "STATEMENT INDICATING READINESS FOR FINAL JOBSITE OBSERVATION."
  3. The Contractor shall sign this form and return it to the Architect/Engineer so that the final observation can commence.
- C. Before final payment will be authorized, this Contractor must have completed the following:
  1. Submitted operation and maintenance manuals to the Architect/Engineer for review.
  2. Submitted bound copies of approved shop drawings.
  3. Record documents including edited drawings and specifications accurately reflecting field conditions, **inclusive** of all project revisions, change orders, and modifications.
  4. Submitted a report stating the instructions given to the Owner's representative complete with the number of hours spent in the instruction. The report shall bear the signature of an authorized agent of This Contractor and shall be signed by the Owner's representative as having received the instructions.
  5. Submitted testing reports for all systems requiring final testing as described herein.
  6. Submitted start-up reports on all equipment requiring a factory installation inspection and/or start.
  7. Provide System Assurance Warranty certificate for the telecommunications system.

### **3.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. General:



1. Provide an electronic copy of the O&M manuals as described below for Architect/Engineer's review and approval. The electronic copy shall be corrected as required to address the Architect/Engineer's comments. Once corrected, electronic copies and paper copies shall be distributed as directed by the Architect/Engineer.
2. Approved O&M manuals shall be completed and in the Owner's possession prior to Owner's acceptance and at least 10 days prior to instruction of operating personnel.

B. Electronic Submittal Procedures:

1. Distribution: Email the O&M manual as attachments to all parties designated by the Architect/Engineer.
2. Transmittals: Each submittal shall include an individual electronic letter of transmittal.
3. Format: Electronic submittals shall be in PDF format only. Scanned copies, in PDF format, of paper originals are acceptable. Submittals that are not legible will be rejected. Do not set any permission restrictions on files; protected, locked, or secured documents will be rejected.
4. File Names: Electronic submittal file names shall include the relevant specification section number followed by a description of the item submitted, as follows. Where possible, include the transmittal as the first page of the PDF instead of using multiple electronic files.
  - a. O&M file name: O&M.div27.contractor.YYYYMMDD
  - b. Transmittal file name: O&Mtransmittal.div27.contractor.YYYYMMDD
5. File Size: Files shall be transmitted via a pre-approved method. Larger files may require an alternative transfer method, which shall also be pre-approved.
6. Provide the Owner with an approved copy of the O&M manual on compact discs (CD), digital video discs (DVD), or flash drives with a permanently affixed label, printed with the title "Operation and Maintenance Instructions", title of the project and subject matter of disc/flash drive when multiple disc/flash drives are required.
7. All text shall be searchable.
8. Bookmarks shall be used, dividing information first by specification section, then systems, major equipment and finally individual items. All bookmark titles shall include the nomenclature used in the construction documents and shall be an active link to the first page of the section being referenced.

C. Operation and Maintenance Instructions shall include:

1. Title Page: Include title page with project title, Architect, Engineer, Contractor, all subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers, with addresses, telephone numbers, website addresses, email addresses and point of contacts. Website URLs and email addresses shall be active links in the electronic submittal.
2. Table of Contents: Include a table of contents describing specification section, systems, major equipment, and individual items.

3. Copies of all final approved shop drawings and submittals. Include Architect's/Engineer's shop drawing review comments. Insert the individual shop drawing directly after the Operation and Maintenance information for the item(s) in the review form.
4. Copy of final approved test and balance reports.
5. Copies of all factory inspections and/or equipment startup reports.
6. Copies of warranties.
7. Schematic wiring diagrams of the equipment that have been updated for field conditions. Field wiring shall have label numbers to match drawings.
8. Dimensional drawings of equipment.
9. Capacities and utility consumption of equipment.
10. Detailed parts lists with lists of suppliers.
11. Operating procedures for each system.
12. Maintenance schedule and procedures. Include a chart listing maintenance requirements and frequency.
13. Repair procedures for major components.
14. List of lubricants in all equipment and recommended frequency of lubrication.
15. Instruction books, cards, and manuals furnished with the equipment.

### **3.06 INSTRUCTING THE OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE**

- A. Adequately instruct the Owner's designated representative or representatives in the maintenance, care, and operation of the complete systems installed under this contract.
- B. Provide verbal and written instructions to the Owner's representative or representatives by FACTORY PERSONNEL in the care, maintenance, and operation of the equipment and systems.
- C. The Architect/Engineer shall be notified of the time and place for the verbal instructions to be given to the Owner's representative so that their representative can be present if desirable.
- D. Refer to the individual specification sections for minimum hours of instruction time for each system.
- E. Operating Instructions:
  1. The Contractor is responsible for all instructions to the Owner and/or Owner's operating staff on the Communications Systems.
  2. If the Contractor does not have Engineers and/or Technicians on staff who can adequately provide the required instructions on system operation, performance, troubleshooting, care and maintenance, they shall include in the bid an adequate amount to reimburse the Owner for the Architect/Engineer to perform these services.

### 3.07 SYSTEM STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. The Communications Systems included in the construction documents are to be complete and operating systems. The Architect/Engineer will make periodic job site observations during the construction period. The system start-up, testing, configuration, and satisfactory system performance is the responsibility of the Contractor. This shall include all calibration and adjustments of electrical equipment controls, equipment settings, software configuration, troubleshooting and verification of software, and final adjustments that may be required.
- B. All operating conditions and control sequences shall be simulated and tested during the start-up period.
- C. The Contractor, subcontractors, and equipment suppliers are expected to have skilled technicians to ensure that the system performs as designed. If the Architect/Engineer is requested to visit the job site for the purpose of trouble shooting, assisting in the satisfactory start-up, obtaining satisfactory equipment operation, resolving installation and/or workmanship problems, equipment substitution issues or unsatisfactory system performance, including call backs during the warranty period through no fault of the design; the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner on a time and material basis for services rendered at the Architect/Engineer's standard hourly rates in effect at the time the services are requested. The Contractor shall be responsible for making payment to the Owner for services required that are product, installation or workmanship related. Payment is due within 30 days after services are rendered.

### 3.08 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Refer to the Division 1 Section: PROJECT CLOSEOUT for requirements. The following paragraphs supplement the requirements of Division 1.
- B. Mark specifications to indicate approved substitutions, change orders, and actual equipment and materials used.
- C. This Contractor shall maintain at the job site, a separate and complete set of technology drawings which shall be clearly and permanently marked and noted in complete detail any changes made to the location and arrangement of equipment or made to the Technology Systems and wiring as a result of building construction conditions or as a result of instructions from the Architect or Engineer. All Change Orders, RFI responses, Clarifications and other supplemental instructions shall be marked on the documents. Record documents that merely reference the existence of the above items are not acceptable. Should This Contractor fail to complete Record Documents as required by this contract, This Contractor shall reimburse Architect/Engineer for all costs to develop record documents that comply with this requirement. Reimbursement shall be made at the Architect/Engineer's hourly rates in effect at the time of work.
- D. Record actual routing of all conduits sized 2" or larger.
- E. The above record of changes shall be made available for the Architect and Engineer's examination during any regular work time.
- F. Upon completion of the job, and before final payment is made, This Contractor shall give the marked-up drawings to the Architect/Engineer.

### **3.09 ADJUST AND CLEAN**

- A. Contractor shall thoroughly clean all equipment and systems prior to the Owner's final acceptance of the project.
- B. Contractor shall clean all foreign paint, grease, oil, dirt, labels, stickers, and other foreign material from equipment.
- C. Contractor shall remove all rubbish, debris, etc., accumulated during the Contractor's operations from the premises.

---

#### STATEMENT INDICATING READINESS FOR FINAL JOBSITE OBSERVATION

To assist the contractor in a timely close-out of the project, it is crucial that the final jobsite observation is not conducted prior to the project being ready. The contractor is required to review the completion status of the project at the time the observation is scheduled. This review, and the subsequent submittal of this form to the Architect/Engineer, shall indicate the contractor's agreement that the area of the project being requested for final observation is ready as defined below. The following list represents the degree of completeness required prior to requesting a final observation:

1. All cabling pathways (cable tray, ladder rack, conduit sleeves, etc.) are installed and all cabling has been pulled through them.
2. All mechanical firestop products are installed and all other penetrations have been sealed.
3. All telecommunications jacks are installed in the faceplates.
4. All telecommunications cabling is pulled and at least 90% of all jacks have been terminated at the jack and at the telecom room.
5. Telecommunications testing is in progress and at least 50% of testing has been completed.
6. Telecommunications labeling has been provided on at least 50% of each type of component requiring a label.
7. All telecommunications related grounding is complete.
8. All Audio/Visual components, cabling and control systems are installed, programmed and operational.

Prime Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Requested Observation Date \_\_\_\_\_

Today's Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor shall sign this readiness statement and transmit to Architect/Engineer at least 10 days prior to the requested date of observation.

It is understood that if the Architect/Engineer finds that the project is not complete as defined above and that the final jobsite observation cannot be completed on the requested date, the Architect/Engineer will return to the site at a later date. All additional visits to the site for the purposes of completing the final observation will be billed T&M to the Contractor at our standard hourly rates, including travel expenses or the contractor's retainage may be deducted for the same amount.

#### TELECOMMUNICATIONS - PROOF OF CERTIFICATION

There are specific Contractor qualification requirements for this project as defined in Section 270500, which may include Manufacturer Certification and RCDD or CNIDP credentials. This Proof of Certification document, and the supporting documentation require herein, is required to be submitted at the time of bid to show compliance with the requirements of 27 05 00.

**Statement of Compliance:**

The named Contractor's base bid is a structured cabling solution from the connectivity manufacturer: \_\_\_\_\_. Named Contractor is trained and certified, under the named manufacturer's formal certification program to provide and install all materials and work required by this project. Further, said Contractor is authorized, by the named manufacturer, to offer all product, labor and system assurance warranties required for this project by these contract documents.

The certification of this named manufacturer is valid, current and in effect as of the bid day of this project, the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_.

The named Contractor is not employing any other sub-contractor on the telecommunications portion of this project that does not also meet this certification requirement.

Contractor Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Authorized Representative: (print) \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Manufacturer Certification Number (if any): \_\_\_\_\_

If this project requires RCDD certification, complete the following:

RCDD or CNIDP Name: \_\_\_\_\_

RCDD #: \_\_\_\_\_ Expiration: \_\_\_\_\_

Submit the following with the bid:

This form.

Proof of Manufacturer Certification indicated above.

Proof of RCDD or CNIDP status.

**END OF SECTION 270500**

## **SECTION 270526**

### **COMMUNICATIONS BONDING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Bonding Conductors
- B. Bonding Connectors
- C. Grounding Busbar (PBB and SBB)

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 260533 - Conduit and Boxes
- B. Section 260536 - Cable Trays
- C. Section 260513 - Wire and Cable
- D. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding
- E. Section 264100 - Lightning Protection Systems
- F. Section 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements
- G. Section 271100 - Communication Equipment Rooms
- H. Section 270528 - Interior Communication Pathways
- I. Section 270553 - Identification and Administration

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Refer to Section 270500 for relevant standards.
- B. Communications bonding system component, device, equipment, and material manufacturer(s) shall have a minimum of five (5) years documented experience in the manufacture of communications bonding products.
- C. The entire installation shall comply with all applicable electrical codes, safety codes, and standards. All applicable components, devices, equipment, and material shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.

##### **1.04 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/IEEE 1100 - Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Sensitive Electronic Equipment in Industrial and Commercial Power Systems
- B. ANSI/TIA 568-C - Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard
- C. ANSI/TIA 569-A - Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces

- D. ANSI/TIA 606 - Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
- E. ANSI/TIA 758 - Customer Owned Outside Plant
- F. ANSI/TIA-607-D - Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises
- G. IEEE 81 - IEEE Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System Part 1: Normal Measurements
- H. IEEE 837 - IEEE Standard for Qualifying Permanent Connections Used in Substation Grounding
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code
- J. NFPA 780 - Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems
- K. UL 96 - Lightning Protection Components
- L. UL 96A - Installation Requirements for Lightning Protection Systems
- M. UL 467 - Grounding and Bonding Equipment

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit product data and shop drawings under provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to the site under the provisions of Section 270500.
- B. Store and protect products under the provisions of Section 270500.
- C. Contractor shall exercise care to prevent corrosion of any products prior to installation. Corroded products shall not be acceptable for use on this project.

#### **1.07 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. This section describes the requirements for the furnishing, installation, adjusting, and testing of a complete turnkey communications bonding system, including connection to the electrical ground grid.
- B. Performance Statement: This specification section and the accompanying drawings are performance based, describing the minimum material quality, required features, operational requirements, and performance of the system. These documents do not convey every wire that must be installed, every equipment connection that must be made, or every feature and function that must be configured. Based on the equipment constraints described and the performance required of the system as presented in these documents, the Contractor is solely responsible for determining all components, devices, equipment, wiring, connections, and terminations required for a complete and operational system that provides the required performance.
- C. This document describes the major components of the system. All additional hardware, subassemblies, supporting equipment, and other miscellaneous equipment required for complete, proper system installation and operation shall be provided by the Contractor.



D. Basic System Requirements:

1. A complete communications bonding infrastructure is required for this project. Refer to the drawings and the requirements of ANSI-J-STD-607-D and NFPA 70 for complete information.
2. The bonding system shall include, but not be limited to, the following major components:
  - a. Telecommunications Bonding Conductor (TBC)
  - b. Primary Bonding Busbar (PBB)
  - c. Bonding Conductor(s) (BC)
  - d. Bonding Connectors
  - e. Bonding system labeling and administration as defined in Section 270553.

**1.08 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. Submit documents under the provisions of Section 270500.
- B. Provide final system block diagram showing any deviations from approved shop drawing submittal.
- C. Provide floor plans that document the following:
  1. Actual locations of system components, devices, and equipment.
  2. Actual conductor routing.
  3. Actual system component, device, equipment, and conductor labels.
- D. Provide statement that system checkout test, as outlined in the approved shop drawing submittal, is complete and test results were satisfactory.
- E. Complete all operation and maintenance manuals as described below.

**1.09 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 270500.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 BONDING CONDUCTORS**

- A. Insulated Copper:
  1. Annealed uncoated stranded conductor.
  2. Insulation:
    - a. PVC insulation with nylon outer jacket.
    - b. Rated at 600 volts.

- c. Green.
- 3. Minimum size 6 AWG.
- B. All bonding conductors shall be listed and recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory as being suitable for the intended purpose and for installation in the space in which they are installed.
- C. Bonding Conductor Sizing:
  - 1. All communications bonding system conductors shall be sized by length as follows:

Length Linear ft (m)	Size (AWG)
Less than 13 (4)	6
14 - 20 (4 - 6)	4
21 - 26 (6 - 8)	3
27 - 33 (8 - 10)	2
34 - 41 (10 - 13)	1
42 - 52 (13 - 16)	1/0
53 - 66 (16 - 20)	2/0
67 - 84 (20 - 26)	3/0
85 - 105 (26 - 32)	4/0
106 - 125 (32 - 38)	250 kcmil
126 - 150 (38 - 46)	300 kcmil
151 - 175 (46 - 53)	350 kcmil
176 - 250 (53 - 76)	500 kcmil
251 - 300 (76 - 91)	600 kcmil
Greater than 301 (91)	750 kcmil

- 2. The TBC shall be the same size as the TBB or larger.

## 2.02 BONDING CONNECTORS

- A. Acceptable Types:
  - 1. Two-hole compression lug
  - 2. Exothermic weld
  - 3. Irreversible compression
- B. Connectors shall be provided in kit form and selected per manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Connectors shall comply with IEEE 837 and UL 467 and be listed for use for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and connected items.

## 2.03 GROUNDING BUSBAR (PBB AND SBB)

- A. Features:

1. Wall-mount configuration.
2. Listed and recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory as being suitable for intended purpose.
3. Hole patterns compliant with BICSI recommendations and ANSI-J-STD-607-D standards.
4. Predrilled holes.
5. Integral insulators.
6. Stainless steel offset mounting brackets.

B. Specifications:

1. Material: Electrolytic tough pitch copper bar with tin plating.
2. Refer to drawings for grounding busbar size(s).
  - a. Minimum Dimensions: Refer to drawings.
  - b. Increase dimensions and/or quantity furnished and installed as required to accommodate all terminations required by the project, plus 20% spare capacity.
  - c. Hole patterns on busbars accommodate two-hole lugs per the recommendation of ANSI/BICSI N3-20 and ANSI/TIA-607 standards.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

A. General Bonding Requirements:

1. The communications bonding system shall be a complete system. Contractor shall furnish and install all necessary miscellaneous components, devices, equipment, material, and hardware, including, but not limited to, lock washers, paint-piercing washers, hex nuts, compression lugs, insulators, mounting screws, lugs, etc., to provide a complete system.
2. A licensed electrician shall perform all bonding.
3. Comply with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of all products.

B. Main Cross Connect and Service Entrance Room Bonding Requirements:

1. Locate the PBB in the service entrance room unless otherwise noted on the drawings.
2. The location of the PBB shall be the shortest practical distance from the telecommunications primary lightning protection devices.
3. Bond the telecommunications primary protectors to the PBB. Maintain a minimum 1 foot separation of the bonding conductor from all DC power cables, switchboard cable, and high frequency cable.

- 
4. In service entrance rooms where the entrance pathway contains an isolation gap, the pathway on the facility side of the gap shall be bonded to the PBB.
- C. Where the service entrance cable contains a shield, the shield(s) shall be bonded to the PBB using manufacturer-approved hardware.
- D. Primary Bonding Busbar (PBB) Requirements:
1. Install PBB such that it is insulated from its support with a minimum 2" standoff.
  2. Bond the PBB to the electrical service ground via the TBC.
    - a. A minimum of 1 foot separation shall be maintained between the TBC and any DC power cables, switchboard cable, or high frequency cables.
  3. Where backbone or horizontal cabling contains a shield, the shield(s) shall be bonded to the PBB.
  4. PBB shall be bonded to all electrical panels located in the same room or space as the PBB. PBB shall be bonded to all electrical panels providing electrical power to communications equipment located in the same room or space as the PBB.
  5. PBB shall be bonded to accessible metallic building structure located within the same room or space as the PBB.
  6. All metallic continuous cable pathways, including, but not limited to, cable trays, basket trays, ladder racks, raceways, conduits, conduit sleeves, and fire-rated cable pathway devices, located within the same room or space as the PBB, shall be bonded to the PBB.
  7. All metallic communications equipment, including, but not limited to, cable pair protectors, surge suppressors, cross-connect frames, patch panels, equipment cabinets, etc., located within the same room or space as the PBB, shall be bonded to the PBB.
- E. Metallic Interior Communication Pathway Bonding Requirements:
1. All metallic interior continuous communication cable pathways, including, but not limited to, conduit, conduit sleeves, fire-rated cable pathway devices, cable tray, basket tray, and ladder rack, shall be bonded to the communications bonding system.
- F. Bonding Conductor Requirements:
1. Bonding conductors shall be green or marked with a distinctive green color.
  2. Bonding conductors shall be routed parallel and perpendicular to building structure along shortest and straightest paths possible. Number of bends and changes in direction should be minimized. Install and secure conductors in a manner that protects the conductors from impact and from physical or mechanical strain or damage.
  3. Bonding conductors shall not be installed in metallic conduit.
  4. All conductors, including, but not limited, to the TBC, TBB, BBC, and TEBC(s), shall be installed splice-free. If the Contractor believes that site conditions do not allow a splice-free installation, the Contractor may request permission from the Architect/Engineer to splice a specific communications bonding system conductor.

- a. Where documented permission to splice a conductor is granted:
  - 1) The number of splices shall be limited to as few as possible.
  - 2) Splices shall be made using exothermic welding or irreversible compression-type connections only. Splice hardware shall be listed for grounding and bonding. Solder is not an acceptable means of splicing conductors.
  - 3) Splices shall be made in telecommunications spaces in accessible locations to facilitate future inspection and maintenance.
  - 4) Splices shall be adequately supported and protected from impact and from physical or mechanical strain or damage.
5. All bonding conductors shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements of Section 270553. In addition to the requirements of Section 270553:
  - a. Labels shall be nonmetallic.
  - b. Labels shall be printer-generated.
  - c. Labels shall be located on conductors as close as is practical to their point of termination in a readable position.
  - d. Additionally, conductors shall be labeled as follows:
    - 1) "IF THIS CONNECTOR OR CABLE IS LOOSE OR MUST BE REMOVED, PLEASE CALL THE BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS MANAGER."
6. Interior water piping is not acceptable for use as a communications bonding system bonding conductor.
7. Metallic cable shields are not acceptable for use as communications bonding system bonding conductors.

G. Bonding Connection Requirements:

1. Make all connections in accessible locations to facilitate future inspection and maintenance.
2. Communications bonding system connections shall be made using exothermic welding, two-hole compression lugs, or other irreversible compression-type connections. The use of 1-hole lugs is prohibited, except for connections to a rack-mount telecommunications ground bar. Connection hardware shall be listed for grounding and bonding. Sheet metal screws shall not be used to make communications bonding system connections.
3. Thoroughly clean conductors before installing lugs and connectors.
4. Install and tighten all connectors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using the appropriate purpose-designed tool(s) recommended by the manufacturer for that purpose. Exercise care not to tighten connectors beyond manufacturer's recommendations.
5. Where necessary, remove paint and/or use paint-piercing washers to provide proper electrical bond at all connections.

6. All bonding connections shall be coated in anti-oxidant joint compound that is purpose-designed and purpose-manufactured for that use. Anti-oxidant joint compound shall be applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.
7. All installed connectors on conductors installed in damp locations shall be sealed with dielectric grease and then covered with heat shrink tubing to protect against moisture ingress. Applied heat shrink tubing shall overlap conductor's outer jacket a minimum of four (4) inches past connector and be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

### **3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field testing shall be performed under provisions of Section 270500.
- B. Where these specifications require a product or assembly without the use of a brand or trade name, provide a product from a reputable manufacturer that meets the requirements of the specifications.
- C. Periodic observations will be performed during construction to verify compliance with the requirements of the specifications. These services do not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the contract documents.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust work under provisions of Section 270500.
- B. Contractor shall make any and all adjustments to the communications bonding system necessary to ensure that the installed system meets all requirements listed herein. Modifications necessary to comply with listed requirements or to provide specified performance shall be completed by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

### **3.04 TESTING**

- A. Measure and document resistance to ground at PBB, each SBB, each RBB, and each electrical distribution panel bonded to the PBB or a SBB.
  1. Measurements shall be made not less than two full days after the last trace of precipitation, and without the soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage, and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance. Perform tests by the fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
  2. The preferred measured resistance to ground for the grounding electrode system is 5 ohms or less. Refer to Division 26 for exact project requirements.
  3. Under no circumstances shall any point in the communications bonding system have a lower resistance to ground than that of nearby electrical distribution system components that it is bonded to.
- B. Two-point Ground/Continuity Test:
  1. Two-point ground continuity test shall be performed per TIA-607D standards.

2. Contractor shall use an earth ground resistance tester to confirm a resistance of less than 100 milliohms between the building's electrical grounding electrode system and any other point in the telecommunications bonding system.
  3. At a minimum, perform tests in the following areas:
    - a. PBB to the electrical ground in distributors
    - b. Each SBB to the electrical ground in distributors
    - c. PBB/SBB to the structural metal (if present)
    - d. PBB to SBB(s)
    - e. Structural metal (if present) to the electrical ground
  4. Complete testing prior to installation of Owner-provided equipment.
- C. Measure and document voltage between screen of installed and terminated ScTP, FTP, and/or SSTP horizontal cables and electrical ground of electrical outlet(s) serving the information outlet location area.
- D. Include measurement documentation in test data submitted at completion of project under provisions of Section 271710.

**END OF SECTION 270526**





## **SECTION 270528**

### **INTERIOR COMMUNICATION PATHWAYS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. The work covered under this section consists of the furnishing of all necessary labor, supervision, materials, equipment, tests and services to install complete wire mesh support systems, conduits, sleeves, innerduct, etc. for an interior cabling plant as shown on the drawings.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 260533 - Conduit and Boxes
- B. Section 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements
- C. Section 270526 - Communications Bonding

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Refer to Section 270500 for requirements.

##### **1.04 REFERENCES**

- A. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code

##### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Under the provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1, prior to the start of work the Contractor shall submit:
  - 1. Manufacturer's data covering all products proposed, including construction, materials, ratings and all other parameters identified in Part 2 - Products, below.
  - 2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Coordination Drawings:
  - 1. Include cable tray and conduit sleeve layout in composite electronic coordination files. Refer to Section 270500 for coordination drawing requirements.

## **1.06 DRAWINGS**

- A. The drawings, which constitute a part of these specifications, indicate the general route of the wire mesh support systems, conduit, sleeves, etc. Data presented on these drawings is as accurate as preliminary surveys and planning can determine until final equipment selection is made. Accuracy is not guaranteed and field verification of all dimensions, routing, etc., is required.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 CONDUIT**

- A. Refer to Section 26 05 33 for conduit requirements for this project.

### **2.02 CABLE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Provide a non-continuous cable support system suitable for use with open cable.
- B. Cable Hooks:
  - 1. Construction: Flat bottom design with a minimum cable bearing surface of 1-5/8". Hooks shall have 90-degree radius edges.
  - 2. All cable hook mounting hardware shall be recessed to prevent damage to cable during installation. Installed cabling shall be secured using a cable latch retainer that shall be removable and reusable.
  - 3. Finish: Pre-galvanized steel, ASTM A653 suitable for general duty use.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CABLE HOOK SUPPORT SYSTEM**

- A. In areas where cabling is not supported by cable tray, ladder rack, enclosed wireway or installed in conduit, such cabling shall be supported by an approved cable hook support system.
- B. Refer to manufacturer's requirements for allowable fill capacity for selected cable hook. In no case shall a 40% fill capacity be exceeded.
- C. Cable hooks shall be securely mounted per manufacturer's instructions. In no case shall the side-to-side travel of any cable hook exceed 6".
- D. Cable hooks shall be selected based on the contractor's cable routing. Hooks shall be capable of supporting a minimum of 30 pounds with a safety factor of 3.
- E. J-hook support spans shall be based on the smaller of the manufacturer's load ratings and code requirements. In no case shall horizontal spans exceed 5 feet and vertical spans exceed 4 feet.
- F. The resting and supporting of cabling on structural members shall not meet the requirements for cabling support specified herein.

- G. The use of tie-wraps or hook and loop type fasteners is specifically prohibited as a substitute for cable hooks specified herein.

### **3.02 CONDUIT AND CABLE ROUTING**

- A. Refer to Section 260533 for additional requirements.
- B. All conduits shall be reamed and shall be installed with a nylon bushing.
- C. Maintain appropriate conduit bend radius at all times. For conduits with an internal diameter of less than 2", maintain a bend radius of at least 6 times the internal diameter. For conduits with an internal diameter 2" or greater, maintain a bend radius of at least 10 times the internal diameter.
- D. No conduit or sleeve containing more than two (2) cables shall exceed 40% fill ratio, regardless of length.
- E. Any conduit exceeding 90' in length or containing more than two (2) 90-degree bends shall contain a pull box sized per ANSI/TIA/EIA 569 requirements.
1. A separate pull box is required for each 90' (or greater) length section.
  2. A separate pull box is required after any two (2) consecutive 90-degree bends.
  3. Pull box shall be located in an area that maintains accessibility of box, including the ability to remove box lid without removal or relocation of any other materials.
- F. Any conduit with bends totaling 90 degrees or more shall have the fill capacity derated by 15% for each 90 degrees of cumulative bend.
- G. Cables installed in any conduits that do not meet the above requirements shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense, after the conduit condition has been remedied.

### **3.03 ATTACHMENT TO METAL DECKING**

- A. Where supports for cable trays and cable hook systems attach to metal roof decking, excluding concrete on metal decking, do not exceed 25 lbs. per hanger and a minimum spacing of 2'-0" on center. This 25-lb. load and 2'-0" spacing include adjacent electrical and mechanical items hanging from deck. If the hanger restrictions cannot be achieved, supplemental framing off steel framing will need to be added.

**END OF SECTION 270528**



## **SECTION 270543**

### **EXTERIOR COMMUNICATION PATHWAYS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section describes the products and execution requirements relating to furnishing and installing exterior racks, ladders, conduits, sleeves, innerduct, etc. for an exterior cabling plant.

##### **1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Refer to Section 270500 for relevant standards.
- B. Precast Manufacturer (if applicable): Company specializing in precast concrete structures with three (3) years documented experience.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Section 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements.
- B. AASHTO HS-20 - Standard Specification for Highway Bridges.
- C. ANSI/ASTM A153 - Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
- D. ANSI/ASTM A569 - Steel, Sheet and Strip, Carbon (0.15 Maximum Percent), Hot-Rolled, Commercial Quality.
- E. ASTM A48 - Gray Iron Castings.
- F. ASTM A123 - Zinc (Hot-Galvanized) Coatings on Products Fabricated from Rolled, Pressed, and Forged Steel Shapes, Plates, Bars, and Strips.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Under the provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1, prior to the start of work the Contractor shall submit:
  - 1. Manufacturer's data covering all products proposed, including construction, materials, ratings and all other parameters identified in Part 2 - Products, below.
  - 2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 270500.
- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 270500.
- D. Coordination Drawings:

1. Include manholes, hand holes, and conduits 1.5" and larger in coordination files. Include all in-floor and underfloor conduit in coordination files. Refer to Section 270500 for coordination drawing requirements.

## 1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Equipment and material shall be UL (Underwriters Laboratory) listed and labeled.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 OUTSIDE PLANT CONDUIT

- A. High-Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Conduit:

1. Minimum Size: 2 inches, unless noted otherwise.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Carlon
  - b. Chevron Phillips Chemical Company
  - c. or pre-approved equal.
3. Materials used for the manufacture of polyethylene pipe and fittings shall be extra high molecular weight, high-density polyethylene resin. The material shall be listed by PPI (Plastic Pipe Institute) and shall meet the following resin properties:

ASTM Test	Description	Values HDPE
D-1505	Density g/CM 3	Less than 0.941
D-1238	Melt Index, g/10 min Condition E	Greater than 0.55 grams/10 min.
D-638	Tensile Strength at yield (psi)	3000 min.
D-1693	Environmental Stress Crack Resistance Condition B, F 20	96 hrs.
D-790	Flexural Modulus, MPa (psi)	Less than 80,000
D-746	Brittleness Temperature	-75°C Max

4. The pipe shall contain no recycled compound except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same raw material, including both the base resin and coextruded resin. The pipe shall be homogeneous throughout and free of visible cracks, holes, voids, foreign inclusions, or other defects that may affect the wall integrity.
5. Fitting and Conduit Bodies:
  - a. Directional Bore and Plow Type Installation: Electrofusion or universal aluminum threaded couplings. Tensile strength of coupled pipe must be greater than 2,000 lbs.
  - b. E-loc type couplings are not acceptable in any situations.
  - c. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- 1) ARCON
- 2) Carlon
- 3) or approved equal.

B. Fittings:

1. Sweeps: Factory manufactured RMC wrapped with 4 mil vinyl tape with a bend radius as follows:
  - a. Conduit internal diameter of 2" or less is 6 times the internal conduit diameter.
  - b. Conduit internal diameter of more than 2" is 10 times the internal conduit diameter.
2. End Caps (Plugs): Pre-manufactured and watertight. Tape is not an acceptable end cap or cover.

## 2.02 HAND-HOLES

A. Type:

1. Polymer concrete

B. Dimensions:

1. As indicated on the drawings.

C. Requirements:

1. Includes polymer concrete cover.

D. Acceptable Manufacturers

1. Quazite

## 2.03 TEXTILE INNERDUCT

- A. Contractor shall provide and install innerduct in each conduit identified to have copper and fiber optic cable installed.
- B. Innerduct shall have an 18 gauge solid copper core tracer wire installed into each cell to allow for detection by industry standard toning equipment.
- C. Each innerduct cell shall have a pull tape installed.
- D. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. Maxcell
  2. or pre-approved equal.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION - DUCTBANK**

- A. Make duct bank installations and penetrations through foundation walls watertight.
- B. Top of duct banks shall be a minimum of 24 inches below grade, unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
- C. Assemble duct banks using non-magnetic saddles, spacers and separators. Position separators to provide 3-inch minimum separation between the outer surfaces of the ducts.
- D. Transition from non-metallic to galvanized rigid steel conduit where duct banks enter buildings, manholes, and hand-holes.
- E. Where ducts enter structures such as manholes, hand-holes, pullboxes and buildings, terminate the ducts in suitable end bells.
- F. Slope duct runs for drainage toward manholes and away from buildings with a slope of approximately 3-inches per 100 feet.
- G. After completion of the duct bank and prior to pulling cable, pull a mandrel, not less than 12 inches long and with a cross section approximately 1/4 inch less than the inside cross section of the duct, through each duct. Then pull a rag swab or sponge through to make certain that no particles of earth, sand, or gravel have been left in the duct.
- H. Plug and seal empty spare ducts entering buildings and structures. Seal watertight all ducts in use entering buildings and structures.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION - HAND-HOLES**

- A. Install gravel drainage bed a minimum of 6" depth below hand-hole using a minimum gravel size of 1 inch.
- B. Provide units and/or extensions as required by conduit depth for hand-hole cover to be flush with finished grade.
- C. Slope grade away from cover with a slope of approximately 1 inch in 3 feet.
- D. Conduit entry penetrations shall not exceed 25% of side wall area.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION - TEXTILE INNERDUCT**

- A. Provide two (2) 3-cell innerducts per 4" conduit or as recommended by the manufacturer.
- B. Install innerduct per manufacturer's guidelines.
- C. Cut and tie off innerduct and pull tape inside each communications vault or Entrance Room.

### **3.04 EXCAVATION, FILL, BACKFILL, COMPACTION**

- A. General:
  - 1. The Contractor shall do all necessary excavating, securing, filling, backfilling, compacting, and restoration in connection with their work.



B. Excavation:

1. Excavations for trenches shall be excavated to proper dimensions to permit installation and inspection of work.
2. Where excavations are carried in error below indicated levels, thoroughly compacted sand-gravel fill, shall be placed in such excess excavations.
3. Excavations shall be protected against frost action and freezing.
4. Care shall be exercised in excavating so as to not damage surrounding structures, equipment, and buried utilities. In no case shall any major structural footing or foundation be undermined.
5. Excavation shall be performed in all ground characteristics, including rock, if encountered. Each bidder shall visit the premises and determine, by actual observations, borings, or other means, the nature of the soil conditions. The cost of all such inspections, borings, etc., shall be borne by the bidder.
6. In the case where the trench is excavated in rock, a compacted bed with a depth of 3" (minimum) of sand and gravel shall be used to support the conduit unless masonry cradles or encasements are used.
7. Where satisfactory bearing soil is not found at the indicated levels, the Architect/Engineer or their representative shall be notified immediately and no further work shall be done until further instructions are given.
8. Mechanical excavation of the trench to line and grade of the conduit, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.

C. Dewatering:

1. The Contractor shall be responsible for the furnishing, installation, operation and removal of all dewatering pumps and lines necessary to keep the excavation free of water at all times.

D. Underground Obstructions:

1. Prior to the commencement of any excavation or digging, the Contractor shall verify all underground utilities with the regional utility locator. Provide prior notice to the locator before excavations. Contact information for most regional utility locaters can be found by calling 811. The Contractor is responsible for obtaining all utility locates for all trades on the project to determine obstructions indicated. The Contractor shall use great care in installing in the vicinity of underground obstruction.

E. Fill and Backfilling:

1. No rubbish or waste material shall be permitted in excavations for trench fill and backfill.
2. The Contractor shall provide the necessary sand for backfilling.
3. Dispose of the excess excavated earth as directed.

4. Soils for backfill shall be suitable for required stability and compaction, clean and free from perishable materials, frozen earth, debris or earth with an exceptionally high void content, and free from stones greater than 4 inches in diameter. Under no circumstances shall water be permitted to rise in unbackfilled trenches after installation has been placed.
5. All trenches shall be backfilled immediately after installation of conduit, unless other protection is directed.
6. All conduit shall be laid on a compacted bed of sand at least 3" deep. Backfill around the conduit with sand, spread in 6" layers, then compact each layer.
7. Use sand for backfill up to grade for all conduit located under building slabs or paved areas. Native soil materials may be used as backfill if approved by the Geotechnical Engineer. All other conduit shall have sand backfill to 6" above the top of the conduit.
8. The backfilling above the sand shall be placed in uniform layers not exceeding 6" in depth. Each layer shall be placed, then carefully and uniformly tamped, so as to eliminate the possibility of lateral or vertical displacement.
9. Install a warning tape approximately 12 inches below finished grade over all underground duct banks. The identifying warning tape shall be as specified above.
10. Where the fill and backfilling will ultimately be under a building, floor or paving, each layer of fill shall be compacted to 95% of the maximum density as determined by AASHTO Designation T-99 or ASTM Designation D-698. Moisture content of soil at time of compaction shall not exceed plus or minus 2% of optimum moisture content as determined by AASHTO T-99 or ASTM D-698 test.
11. After backfilling of trenches, no superficial loads shall be placed on the exposed surface of the backfill until a period of 48 hours has elapsed.

### **3.05 RESTORATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Where soil and sod has been removed, it shall be replaced as soon as possible after backfilling is completed. All areas disturbed by work shall be restored to their original condition. The restoration shall include any necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, or mulching,

**END OF SECTION 270543**

## **SECTION 270553**

### **IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section describes the identification requirements relating to the structured cabling system and its termination components and related subsystems.
- B. Identification and labeling.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements

##### **1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Under the provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1, prior to the start of work the Contractor shall submit:
  - 1. Documentation of labeling scheme.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 LABELING**

- A. Adhesive labels shall meet the requirements of UL 969 (Ref D-16) for legibility, defacement and adhesion. Exposure requirements of UL 969 for indoor and outdoor (as applicable) use shall be met.
- B. Insert labels shall meet the requirements of UL 969 for legibility, defacement and general exposure.
- C. Labeling shall be consistent for all common elements in the project. This consistency shall include label size, color, typeface and attachment method.
- D. Labels incorporating bar codes shall be either Code 39 conforming to USS-39 or Code 128 conforming to USS-128.
  - 1. All Code 39 bar codes shall have a ratio between 2.5:1 and 3.0:1. Provide a minimum "quiet zone" of 0.25" on each side of the bar code.
  - 2. A descriptive label for reading by personnel shall be provided with any bar code. Bar codes by themselves are not acceptable.
- E. Tag all CAT 3, CAT 5E, CAT 6, and optical fiber cables at both the Communications Equipment Room and the information outlets using the following alphanumeric labeling system:
  - 1. (Room Number) - (Outlet Number) - (Jack Number) - (Use).

2. "Outlet Number" shall start with 1 in each room, with additional outlets in each room numbered sequentially.
3. "Jack Number" shall start with 1 for the upper left jack in each outlet, increasing sequentially from left to right and top to bottom across the outlet face.
4. "Use" shall be designated by the following:
  - a. "V" for voice (RJ-45)
  - b. "D" for data (RJ-45)
  - c. "C" for video (coax)
  - d. "M" for multimedia retrieval (coax)
  - e. "S" for speaker (RCA)
5. Example #1: "106-1-1-V" indicates the top left voice jack in outlet #1 in Room 106.
6. Example #2: "109-3-4-D" indicates the bottom right data jack (assuming a 4-port faceplate) in outlet #3 in Room 109.

## **2.02 DOCUMENTATION/AS-BUILTS/RECORDS**

### **A. General:**

1. Upon completion of the installation, the Contractor shall submit as-builts per the requirements of Section 270500 and Division 1. Documentation shall include the items detailed in the subsections below.
2. All documentation, including hard copy and electronic forms shall become the property of the Owner.

### **B. Record Drawings:**

1. The drawings are to include cable routes and outlet locations. Outlet locations shall be identified by their sequential number as defined elsewhere in this document. Numbering, icons and drawing conventions used shall be consistent throughout all documentation provided.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 IDENTIFICATION AND LABELING**

#### **A. Cable Labeling:**

1. Horizontal cables shall be labeled at each end.
  - a. Cables that differ only by performance class shall have a suitable marking or label to indicate the higher performance class. For example, station cabling utilizing the blue color may include blue with a white stripe to indicate the higher performance class station cabling.

- B. Information Outlet Labeling: Tag all voice and data jacks as defined herein.
- C. Termination Hardware Labeling:
  - 1. An identifier shall be provided at each termination hardware location or its label.
- D. Grounding/Bonding Labeling:
  - 1. The PBB shall be labeled "PBB." There shall be only one PBB in the facility.
  - 2. Label all TBB conductors connecting to the PBB with a unique label, located at both ends of the TBB.
  - 3. Each SBB shall be labeled with a unique label.
  - 4. All TBB conductors connecting to the SBB shall be labeled uniquely at each end of the cable.

**END OF SECTION 270553**



## **SECTION 271100**

### **COMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT ROOMS (CER)**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section describes the products and execution requirements related to furnishing and installing equipment for communication equipment rooms.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements
- B. Section 270526 - Communications Bonding
- C. Section 270528 - Interior Communication Pathways
- D. Section 271500 - Horizontal Cabling Requirements

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Refer to Section 270500 for applicable standards.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Under the provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1, prior to the start of work the Contractor shall submit:
  - 1. Manufacturer's data covering all products including construction, materials, ratings and all other parameters identified in Part 2 - Products, below.
  - 2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Coordination Drawings:
  - 1. Include ladder racking, equipment racks, cable tray and conduit sleeve layout in composite electronic coordination files. Refer to Section 270500 for coordination drawing requirements.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING**

- A. Refer to specification section 270526 for grounding requirements.
- B. All equipment required to be grounded shall be provided with a grounding lug suitable for termination of the specified size electrode conductor.

---

## 2.02 EQUIPMENT RACKS AND CABINETS

- A. Where identified on the drawings in Communication Equipment Rooms, equipment racks and/or equipment cabinets shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor to house cable termination components (e.g., copper, optical fiber, coax) and network electronics.
- B. The equipment rack shall conform to the following requirements:
  - 1. Standard TIA/EIA 19" Floor Rack:
    - a. Equipment rack shall be 84" in height, self-supporting and provide a useable mounting height of 45 rack units (RU) (1 RU = 1 3/4").
    - b. Channel uprights shall be spaced to accommodate industry standard 19" mounting.
    - c. Equipment rack shall be double side drilled and tapped to accept 12-24 screws. Uprights shall also be drilled on back to accept cable brackets, clamps, power strip(s), etc. Hole pattern on rack front shall be per TIA/EIA specifications (5/8"-5/8"-1/2"). Hole pattern on the rear shall be at 3" intervals to accept cable brackets.
    - d. Equipment racks shall be provided with a supply of spare screws (minimum of 24).
    - e. Equipment racks shall be provided with a ground bar and #6 AWG ground lug.
    - f. Provide all mounting hardware and accessories as required for a complete installation.

## 2.03 CABLE MANAGEMENT - VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL

- A. Equipment Racks:
  - 1. Equipment racks shall be equipped with vertical and horizontal cable management hardware in the form of rings and guides. Racks shall incorporate vertical and horizontal covers, to allow an orderly, hidden, routing of copper, optical fiber, and coax jumpers from the modular patch panels and/or 110-type termination blocks to the customer provided network electronics. Vertical and horizontal cable management hardware shall be as follows:
    - a. Horizontal cable management hardware shall be 16 gauge cold rolled steel construction with six (6) pass-thru holes and seven (7) front-mounted 3.5" steel rod D-rings. Provide with cover designed to conceal and protect cable.
    - b. At a minimum, horizontal cable management hardware shall be positioned above and below (a) each grouping of two rows of jacks on modular patch panels, and (b) above and below each optical fiber patch panel and (c) each grouping of two rows of F-type connectors on coax patch panels.
    - c. Vertical cable management hardware shall provide for cable routing on front and rear of each rack and be 14" deep x 6" wide (minimum). Where multiple equipment racks are to be installed, this hardware shall be mounted between the uprights of adjacent equipment racks. Equipment rack uprights and the spacers shall be secured together per manufacturer's recommendations. Provide with cover designed to conceal and protect cable.



2. Each equipment rack shall be supplied with a minimum of 12 releasable (e.g., "hook and loop") cable support ties.
3. Where cable termination hardware is wall-mounted, the Contractor shall be responsible for establishing a cable pathway for jumpers routed from the equipment rack(s) to the wall. This shall be in the form of slotted ducts or troughs. Routing of jumpers via the overhead cable tray or ladder rack system is NOT acceptable. The proposed method shall be included in the submittals required by this document and shall be approved by the Architect/Engineer prior to installation.

#### **2.04 PATCH PANELS**

- A. Where identified on the drawings in Communication Equipment Rooms, modular patch panels shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor for termination of copper cable.
- B. Copper cabling shall be terminated in Communication Equipment Rooms on modular patch panels consisting of a modular connector system incorporating modular jacks meeting the specifications for the jacks detailed in Section 271500.
- C. The largest single modular patch panel configuration shall not exceed 48-Ports. Modular patch panels shall be fully populated (all ports occupied by jacks) and be provided in increments of no less than 12 jacks. High-density modular patch panels will not be accepted.
- D. The modular patch panel blocks shall have the ability to seat and cut eight (8) conductors (4 pairs) at a time and shall have the ability of terminating 22- through 26-gauge plastic insulated, solid and stranded copper conductors. Modular patch panel blocks shall be designed to maintain the cables' pair twists as closely as possible to the point of mechanical termination.
- E. Modular patch panels shall incorporate cable support and/or strain relief mechanisms to secure the horizontal cables at the termination block and to ensure that all manufacturers minimum bend radius specifications are adhered to.

#### **2.05 LADDER RACK**

- A. Provide complete ladder rack system including metallic ladder rack, splice connectors, fastening hardware and other miscellaneous materials as required for a complete installation per manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Tubing Style Ladder Rack:
  1. Rolled steel siderail stringer, minimum 1.5" stringer height, 9" spaced welded rungs.
  2. Steel shall meet the requirements of ASTM A1011 SS Grade 33.
  3. Loading limits shall be 185 lbs/ft for 4 ft spans.
- C. Ladder rack finish shall be .

#### **2.06 D-RINGS**

- A. Rounded edge D-rings for support of cabling in vertical and horizontal configurations.

- B. EIA 310D compliant, manufactured from materials meeting UL94-V0 specifications.
- C. Provide 1/4" screw holes for wall mounting.

## **2.07 COPPER PATCH CORDS**

- A. Modular Patch Panel:
  - 1. Provide Category 6 Enhanced copper patch cords for 50% of all assigned ports on the modular patch panel. Of these cords, 60% shall be 3' in length and 40% shall be 5' in length. These patch cords shall be the cross-connect between the network electronics and the horizontal RJ-45 modular patch panel. Copper patch cords shall be equipped with a 4-pair RJ-45 connector on each end.
  - 2. Refer to Section 271500 for cable and connector performance requirements.
  - 3. Patch cords shall not be made-up in the field.
  - 4. Basis of Design (Refer to 27 17 20 for Acceptable Manufacturers):
    - a. Hubbell HC Series

## **2.08 DEMARCATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Contractor shall coordinate all requirements for the demarcation point with the Owner's selected service provider.
- B. The Contractor shall not proceed with any installation without written communication with the Architect/Engineer should the service provider's requirements differ from the work shown on the contract documents.
- C. Refer to the drawings for further requirements.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EQUIPMENT RACKS**

- A. Equipment racks shall be furnished and installed as shown on the drawings.
- B. The Contractor shall bolt the rack to the floor as recommended by the manufacturer. Multiple racks shall be joined and the ground made common on each. The rack shall be stabilized by extending a brace to the wall. Alternately, overhead ladder rack by which the cabling accesses the equipment rack(s) may provide this function.
- C. A space between the rack upright and the wall (approximately 4") should be provided to allow for cabling in that area. The rear of the rack should be approximately 40" from the wall to allow for access by maintenance personnel. In all cases, a minimum of 40" workspace in front of the rack is also required. Locations where these guidelines cannot be followed should be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer for resolution prior to installation.

- D. All hardware and equipment is to be mounted between 18" and 79" above floor level. This is to afford easy access and, in the case of the lower limit, prevent damage to the components. Positioning of hardware should be reviewed and approved by the Architect/Engineer and Site Coordinator(s) prior to installation.
- E. Equipment racks shall be equipped with cable management hardware as to allow an orderly and secure routing of optical fiber and/or copper cabling to the optical fiber distribution cabinets and/or modular patch panels. At minimum, one such horizontal jumper management panel shall be placed below each optical fiber distribution cabinet installed by the Contractor. Additional Jumper Management panels may be required pending installation of other cable types on the equipment rack.
- F. Each rack shall be grounded to the telecommunications ground bar (GND) using a #6 AWG (or larger) insulated stranded copper conductor (GREEN jacket) directly or via an adjacent grounded equipment rack. Refer to grounding requirements below.

### **3.02 LADDER RACK**

- A. Provide support for ladder rack on 4 ft centers.
- B. Maintain a 1.5 safety factor on all load limits specified herein.
- C. Ladder rack support shall be by 5/8" diameter threaded rod when ceiling mounted. Ladder rack requiring wall mounting shall utilize accessories supplied by the ladder rack manufacturer specifically for the purpose of wall mounting ladder rack.

### **3.03 D-RINGS**

- A. Provide D-rings for cable routing and management in all areas where open cabling is routed along the wall in an Equipment Room.
- B. Locate D-rings on 24" centers vertically and horizontally.
- C. Securely attach D-rings to the wall as required by the manufacturer.

### **3.04 GROUNDING**

- A. Provide a complete grounding system in accordance with the requirements of Section 270526.

### **3.05 CROSS CONNECT INSTALLATION**

- A. Bend radius of cable shall not exceed 4 times the outside cable diameter or manufacturer's recommendation, whichever is less.
- B. Cables shall be neatly bundled and dressed to their respective panels and/or blocks. Each shall be fed by an individual bundle separated and dressed to the point of cable entrance into the rack and/or frame.
- C. The cable jacket shall be maintained as close as possible to the termination point.
- D. Each cable shall be clearly labeled on the cable jacket behind the patch panel at a location that is visible without removing the bundle support.

### **3.06 CONDUITS AND CABLE ROUTING**

- A. Refer to Section 260533 for additional requirements.
- B. Where conduits enter a telecommunications room, conduits shall be terminated on the wall where shown on the contract documents. Conduits entering the room from the floor shall extend 3" above the floor slab 3" into the room below the raised floor.
- C. Where cabling rises vertically in a telecommunications rooms, provide vertical cable management to support the cabling from floor to ceiling level.
- D. All conduits shall be reamed and shall be installed with a nylon bushing.
- E. Maintain appropriate conduit bend radius at all times. For conduits with an internal diameter of 2" or less, maintain a bend radius of at least 6 times the internal diameter. For conduits with an internal diameter greater than 2", maintain a bend radius of at least 10 times the internal diameter.

**END OF SECTION 271100**

## **SECTION 271500**

### **HORIZONTAL CABLING REQUIREMENTS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section describes the products and execution requirements relating to furnishing and installing horizontal communications cabling and termination components and related subsystems as part of a cabling plant. The cabling plant consists of copper cabling.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements
- B. Section 271720 - Structured Cabling System Warranty

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Refer to Section 270500 for relevant standards and plenum or non-plenum cable requirements.
- B. The channel shall be required to meet the performance requirements indicated herein. The manufacturer shall warranty the performance of their system to the required performance (and not just to the Standard, should the required performance exceed the Standard).
- C. Specific components of the channel shall be required, at a minimum, to meet the Standard component requirements for that particular component.
- D. The installing contractor must be certified by the manufacturer of the structured cabling system.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Under the provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1, prior to the start of work the Contractor shall submit:
  - 1. Manufacturer's data covering all products proposed, including construction, materials, ratings and all other parameters identified in Part 2 - Products, below.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 HORIZONTAL CABLE**

- A. CAT 6 Enhanced Cable:
  - 1. The horizontal cable requirements must be met as well as the following channel requirements.

2. CAT 6 cable shall terminate on rack-mounted modular patch panels in their respective communication equipment room as indicated on the drawings.
3. Performance Tests shall be conducted using swept frequency testing through 250 MHz for the channel. All numbers given are for a 4-connection channel. Discrete frequency testing results at 250 MHz is not acceptable.
4. Performance data shall be characterized as "Guaranteed Headroom" and shall be guaranteed by the manufacturer to perform at guaranteed margins over ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.2. Performance data that is not warranted by the manufacturer will not be considered.
5. The structured cabling and connectivity must be provided by the same company. For the purpose of this specification that shall mean that the cabling and connectivity must be marketed, branded, supported, warranted, and distributed by the same company. Specifically, ally or partnerships between cabling manufacturers and connectivity manufacturers do not meet this requirement unless otherwise listed below. Specifically, products made by others through an OEM relationship are acceptable if the products are marketed, branded, supported, warranted, and distributed by the same company.
6. The 4-connector channel performance margins listed in the below criteria shall be guaranteed minimum margins above ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.2 with electrical parameters between 1-250 MHz.
  - a. Insertion Loss: 14.0%
  - b. NEXT: 7.0 dB
  - c. PS NEXT: 8.0 dB
  - d. ACR-F (ELFEXT): 8.0 dB
  - e. PS ACR-F (PS ELFEXT): 8.0 dB
  - f. Return Loss: 4.0 dB
7. The jacket color for CAT 6 cable shall be blue for all applications.
8. Basis of Design:
  - a. Hubbell C6ESP Series
9. Manufacturer:
  - a. Hubbell C6ESP Series
  - b. No exceptions allowed

## **2.02 CONNECTORS/COUPLERS/ADAPTERS**

- A. Refer to Section 271100 for requirements and 27 13 00 for requirements.

## **2.03 FACEPLATES/JACKS**

- A. CAT 6 Jacks:

1. CAT 6 horizontal cable shall each be terminated at their designated work area location on RJ-45 modular jacks. These modular jack assemblies shall snap into a modular mounting frame. The combined modular jack assembly is referred to as an information outlet.
2. The same orientation and positioning of modular jacks shall be utilized throughout the installation. Prior to installation, the Contractor shall submit the proposed configuration for each information outlet type for review by the Architect/Engineer.
3. Information outlet faceplates shall incorporate recessed designation strips at the top and bottom of the frame for identifying labels. Designation strips shall be fitted with clear plastic covers.
4. Where standalone CAT 6 only modular jacks are identified, the information outlet faceplate shall be configured as to allow for the addition of one (1) additional modular jack (CAT 3, CAT 5E, or CAT 6) to be installed to supplement each such modular jack as defined by this project. The installation of these supplemental modular jacks is NOT part of this project.
5. Any unused modular jack positions on an information outlet faceplate shall be fitted with a removable blank inserted into the opening.
6. All modular jacks will be fitted with a dust cover. Modular jacks shall incorporate a dust cover that fits over and/or into the modular jack opening. The dust cover shall be designed to remain with the modular jack assembly when the modular jack is in use. No damage to the modular jack pinning shall result from insertion or removal of these covers. Dust covers that result in deformation of the modular jack pinning, will not be accepted.
7. The information outlet faceplate shall be constructed of high impact plastic (except where noted otherwise). The information outlet faceplate color shall:
  - a. Match the receptacle color used for other utilities in the building, or
  - b. When installed in surface raceway (if applicable), match the color of that raceway.
8. Different faceplate and frame designs for locations, which include optical fiber cabling relative to those, that terminate only copper cabling are acceptable. Information outlets that incorporate optical fiber shall be compliant with the above requirements plus:
  - a. Be a low-profile assembly.
  - b. Incorporate a mechanism for storage of cable and fiber slack needed for termination.
  - c. Position the optical fiber couplings to face downward or at a downward angle to prevent contamination.
  - d. Incorporate a shroud that protects the optical fiber couplings from impact damage.
9. All information outlets and the associated modular jacks shall be of the same manufacturer throughout the project.
10. The CAT 6 modular jacks shall be non-keyed 8-pin modular jacks.
11. The interface between the modular jack and the horizontal cable shall be a 110-type termination block or insulation displacement type contact. Termination components shall be designed to maintain the horizontal cable's pair twists as closely as possible to the point of mechanical termination.

12. CAT 6 modular jacks shall be pinned per TIA-568B.
13. CAT 6 termination hardware shall, as a minimum, meet all the mechanical and electrical performance requirements of the following standards:
  - a. ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-A-5
  - b. ANSI/TIA/EIA-568A
  - c. ISO/IEC 11801
  - d. IEC 603-7
  - e. FCC PART 68 SUBPART F
14. The color for CAT 6 jacks shall be white for all applications.

## **2.04 COPPER WORK AREA CORDS**

### **A. RJ-45:**

1. Provide the same quantity of Category 6 copper work area cords as copper patch panel cords specified in Section 271100. Copper work area cords shall be equipped with an 8-pin modular RJ-45 connector on each end.
2. Work area cords shall be 10' in length.
3. Manufacturer of copper patch cable shall be the same as the manufacturer of the horizontal copper cable.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 CABLE INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

#### **A. Horizontal Cabling:**

1. The maximum horizontal cable drop length for Data UTP shall not exceed 295 feet in order to meet data communications performance specifications. This length is measured from the termination panel in the wiring closet to the outlet and must include any slack required for the installation and termination. The Contractor is responsible for installing horizontal cabling in a fashion so as to avoid unnecessarily long runs. Any area that cannot be reached within the above constraints should be identified and reported to the Architect/Engineer prior to installation. Changes to the contract documents shall be approved by the Architect/Engineer.
2. All cable shall be free of tension at both ends. In cases where the cable must bear some stress, Kellum grips may be used to spread the strain over a longer length of cable.
3. Manufacturer's minimum bend radius specifications shall be observed in all instances.
4. Horizontal cabling installed as open cabling shall be supported at a maximum of 5' between supports. Refer to the specifications for required cable supports.



- 
5. Horizontal cabling installed as open cable or in cable tray shall be bundled at not less than 10' intervals with hook-and-loop tie wraps. The use of plastic cable ties is strictly prohibited.
  6. The maximum conduit fill for horizontal cabling shall not exceed 40% regardless of conduit length.
  7. Cable sheaths shall be protected from damage from sharp edges. Where a cable passes over a sharp edge, a bushing or grommet shall be used to protect the cable.
- B. A coil of 3 feet in each cable shall be placed in the ceiling at the last support (e.g., J-hook, bridle ring, etc.) before the cables enter a fishable wall, conduit, surface raceway or box. At any location where cables are installed into movable partition walls or modular furniture via a service pole, approximately 15-feet of slack shall be left in each horizontal cable under 250 feet in length to allow for change in the office layout without re-cabling. These "service loops" shall be secured at the last cable support before the cable leaves the ceiling and shall be coiled from 100% to 200% of the cable recommended minimum bend radius.
1. To reduce or eliminate EMI, the following minimum separation distances from 480V power lines shall be adhered to:
    - a. Twelve (12) inches from power lines of less than 5-kVa.
    - b. Eighteen (18) inches from high-voltage lighting (including fluorescent).
    - c. Thirty-nine (39) inches from power lines of 5-kVa or greater.
    - d. Thirty-nine (39) inches from transformers and motors.
  2. Information outlets shown on floor plans with the subscript "W" are intended to be used for wall mounted telephones. Back boxes for wall mounted telephones shall not be located within 12" vertically, or horizontally, from any light switches, power receptacles, nurse call devices, thermostats, or any other architectural element that would otherwise prevent the installation of a wall mounted telephone on the mating lugs.
- C. Horizontal Cabling in Modular Furniture:
1. This Contractor shall be responsible for providing and installing cable completely to the information outlet in the furniture. This Contractor's responsibility does not end at the furniture feed point.
  2. Where furniture panels are installed to include contact with a wall, cabling shall be fed to the furniture panels via conduit.
  3. Where modular furniture is installed without wall contact, the Contractor shall install cabling through floor fittings as shown on the drawings.
  4. Cabling shall be protected in the transition from the floor or wall fittings to the modular furniture via a length of flexible plastic conduit or other approved protective means. Conduit fittings shall be compatible with the Floor and Wall Fittings proposed. There shall be no exposed cable in the transition to the modular furniture. Fill ratio (cable area vs. conduit area) in each feed shall not exceed 40%.

5. For purposes of bidding, it is to be assumed that the cable pathway shall be limited to the bottom panel of the modular furniture only. Communications cables would be run through these channels to the jack location.
6. For purposes of bidding, it is to be assumed that it will be the responsibility of the Contractor to punch and reinstall the bottom molding panels on the modular furniture as required to accommodate the communications cabling and information outlets. The panels shall be marked prior to installation by the Owner to identify the desired location of the information outlets.
7. The information outlet shall be secured to the panel via mounting tabs, pop-rivets, screws or other approved method. Use of adhesive tape is not acceptable. The method of securing the information outlet to the panel shall not result in sharp protrusions (e.g., sheet metal screw tip) into the channel behind the panel.

### **3.02 CABLE TERMINATION REQUIREMENTS**

#### **A. Cable Terminations - Data UTP:**

1. Modular patch panels shall be designed and installed in a fashion as to allow future horizontal cabling to be terminated on the panel without disruption to existing connections.
2. If the "last" patch (per rack) is greater than 50% utilized, one additional patch panel shall be provided for future use..
3. At information outlets and modular patch panels, the Contractor shall ensure that the twists in each cable pair are preserved to within 0.5-inch of the termination for data cables. The cable jacket shall be removed only to the extent required to make the termination.

#### **B. Cable Terminations - Shielded (T1):**

1. Shielded cabling shall be terminated on 110-type termination blocks. The blocks shall be wall-mounted at all locations.
2. Blocks shall be sized to provide for a minimum 20% growth in capacity relative to the initial installation.
3. Consistency shall be maintained throughout the installation relative to conductor sequence on the blocks. Building ground and cable shield drain wire shall be terminated immediately to the left of each two data pairs on the cross-connect fields.
4. Designation labels shall be color-coded YELLOW to identify the cabling as a Network Connection. Pairs shall be identified on the labels numerically. Ground and shield shall be identified for each pair.

**END OF SECTION 271500**

## **SECTION 271710**

### **TESTING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section describes the testing requirements relating to the structured cabling system and its termination components and related subsystems.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 270500 - Basic Communications Systems Requirements

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Refer to Section 270500 for relevant standards.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Under the provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1, prior to the start of work, the Contractor shall submit:
  - 1. Complete information on testing procedure as described herein.
  - 2. Test plan summary for each cable type to be tested including equipment to be used, setup, test frequencies or wavelengths, results format, etc.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 TESTING COPPER**

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Perform acceptance tests as indicated below for each sub-system (e.g., backbone, horizontal, etc.) as it is completed.
  - 2. Supply all equipment and personnel necessary to conduct the acceptance tests. The method of testing shall be approved by the Architect/Engineer.
  - 3. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein. Provide the Architect/Engineer with a written certification that this inspection has been made.

4. Conduct acceptance testing according to a schedule coordinated with the Owner/Architect/Engineer. Representatives of the Owner may be in attendance to witness the test procedures. Provide a minimum of one (1) week's advance notice to the Architect/Engineer to allow for such participation. The notification shall include a written description of the proposed conduct of the tests, including copies of blank test result sheets to be used.
5. Tests related to connected equipment of others shall only be done with the permission and presence of the Contractor involved. The Contractor shall ascertain that testing only is required to prove the wiring connections are correct.
6. Provide test results and describe the conduct of the tests including the date of the tests, the equipment used, and the procedures followed. At the request of the Architect/Engineer, provide copies of the original test results in their native format.
7. All cabling shall be 100% fault-free unless noted otherwise. If any cable is found to be outside the specification defined herein, that cable and the associated termination(s) shall be replaced at the expense of the Contractor. The applicable tests shall then be repeated.
8. Should it be found by the Architect/Engineer that the materials or any portion thereof furnished and installed under this Contract fail to comply with the specifications and drawings with respect or regard to the quality, amount, or value of materials, appliances, or labor used in the work, it shall be rejected and replaced by the Contractor and all work disturbed by changes necessitated in consequence of said defects or imperfections shall be made good at the Contractor's expense.
  - a. CAT 6 Cable:
    - 1) Testing shall be from the modular jack at the information outlet to the modular patch panel in the communication equipment room.
    - 2) Horizontal cable shall be free of shorts within the pairs, and be verified for continuity, pair validity and polarity, and conductor position on the modular jack (e.g., wire map). Any defective, split, or mis-positioned pairs must be identified and corrected.
    - 3) CAT 6 horizontal cable shall be tested to 250 MHz as defined by TIA/EIA-568-C.2. Measurements shall be of the "Channel Link", including patch cords, cabling and modular jacks at the information outlet and modular patch panel. Parameters to be tested must include:
      - a) Wire Map
      - b) Length
      - c) NEXT Loss (Pair-to-Pair)
      - d) NEXT (Power Sum)
      - e) ELFEXT (Pair-to-Pair)
      - f) ELFEXT (Power Sum)
      - g) Return Loss
      - h) Attenuation
      - i) Propagation Delay

j) Delay Skew

- 4) The maximum length of horizontal cable shall not exceed 295 feet, which allows 33 feet for technology equipment and modular patch cords.
- 5) To establish testing baselines, cable samples of known length and of the cable type and lot installed shall be tested. The cable may be terminated with an eight-position CAT 6 modular connector (8-pin) to facilitate testing. Nominal Velocity of Propagation (NVP) and nominal attenuation values shall be calculated based on this test and be utilized during the testing of the installed cable plant. This requirement can be waived if NVP and nominal attenuation data is available from the cable manufacturer for the exact cable type under test.
- 6) CAT 6 horizontal cable testing shall be performed using a test instrument designed for testing to 250 MHz or higher. Test records shall verify, "PASS" on each cable and display the specified parameters, comparing test values with standards based "templates" integral to the unit. Test records that report a PASS\*, FAIL\*, or FAIL result for any of the parameters will not be accepted.
- 7) In the event results of the tests are not satisfactory, the Contractor shall make adjustments, replacements, and changes as necessary and shall then repeat the test or tests that disclosed faulty or defective material, equipment, or installation methods, and shall make additional tests as the Architect/Engineer deems necessary at no additional expense to the project or user agency.

## 2.02 DOCUMENTATION/AS-BUILTS/RECORDS

A. General:

1. Upon completion of the installation, submit as-builts per the requirements of Section 270500 and Division 1. Documentation shall include the items detailed in the subsections below.
2. All documentation, including hard copy and electronic forms, shall become the property of the Owner.
3. The Architect/Engineer may request that a 10% random field retest be conducted on the cable system at no additional cost to verify documented findings. Tests shall be a repeat of those defined above. If findings contradict the documentation submitted by the Contractor, additional testing can be requested to the extent determined necessary by the Architect/Engineer, including a 100% retest. This retest shall be at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Copper Media Test Data:

1. Test results shall include a record of test frequencies, cable type, conductor pair and cable (or Outlet) I.D., measurement direction, test equipment type, model and serial number, date, reference setup, and crew member name(s).

2. Printouts generated for each cable by the wire test instrument shall be submitted as part of the documentation package. The Contractor shall furnish this information in electronic form (USB thumb drive). The thumb drive shall contain the electronic equivalent of the test results as defined by the bid specification and be in the tester's native format as well as summaries of each test in pdf format. Provide a licensed copy of the software required to view and print the data that is provided in a proprietary format. Furnish one (1) copy of the data and display (if applicable) software.

C. Record Drawings:

1. The drawings are to include cable routes and outlet locations. Outlet locations shall be identified by their sequential number as defined elsewhere in this document. Numbering, icons, and drawing conventions used shall be consistent throughout all documentation provided.

**END OF SECTION 271710**

## **SECTION 271720**

### **STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM WARRANTY**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. This section describes support and warranty requirements relating to the structured cabling system and related subsystems.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Section 270500 - Basic Technology Systems Requirements.
- B. Section 271100 - Communication Equipment Room (CER).
- C. Section 271500 Horizontal Cabling Requirements.

##### **1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Refer to Section 270500 for relevant standards.

##### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Under the provisions of Section 270500 and Division 1, prior to close of the project the Contractor shall submit:
  - 1. A numbered certificate from the manufacturing company registering the installation.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 WARRANTY**

- A. A twenty-five (25) year Product Installation Warranty and System Assurance Warranty shall be provided for the structured cabling system as described in the contract documents.
- B. The Product Installation Warranty shall cover the replacement or repair of the defective product(s) and labor for the replacement or repair of such defective product(s).
- C. The system assurance warranty shall cover the failure of the wiring system to support the application it was designed to support, as well as additional applications introduced in the future by recognized standards or user forums that use the TIA/EIA 568A component and link/channel specifications for cabling.
- D. Upon successful completion of the installation and subsequent inspection, the Owner shall be provided with a numbered certificate from the manufacturing company registering the installation.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 WARRANTY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. This Contractor shall be responsible for providing, installing and testing a structured cabling system that will meet the manufacturer's warranty requirements.

**END OF SECTION 271720**



## **SECTION 311000**

### **SITE CLEARING**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
  2. Removing existing vegetation.
  3. Clearing and grubbing.
  4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
  5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
  6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.
  7. Temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.
- B. Related Sections:
- a. Section 017300 "Execution" for field engineering and surveying.

##### **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.
- B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other non-soil materials.
- D. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.

- E. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
- F. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

#### **1.04 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP**

- A. Except for stripped topsoil and other materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
  - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.
  - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.
- B. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### **1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Store Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
  - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Engineer.
- C. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on site.
- D. Utility Locator Service: Notify 811 Call Before You Dig for area where Project is located before site clearing.

- E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place.
- F. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  - 3. Foot traffic.
  - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
  - 5. Impoundment of water.
  - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- H. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.
- I. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

### **3.02 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL**

- A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

### **3.03 EXISTING UTILITIES**

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
  - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
  - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
- D. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Engineer not less than 2 days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Engineer's written permission.
- E. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.
- F. Removal of underground utilities is included in earthwork sections and with applicable fire suppression, plumbing, HVAC, electrical, communications, electronic safety and security and utilities sections and Section 024116 "Structure Demolition" and Section 024119 "Selective Demolition."

### **3.04 CLEARING AND GRUBBING**

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
  - 1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
  - 2. Grind down stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 18 inches below exposed subgrade.
  - 3. Use only hand methods for grubbing within protection zones.
  - 4. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
  - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

### **3.05 TOPSOIL STRIPPING**

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip all topsoil for full depth of all organic material in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
  - 1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
  - 1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 10 feet.
  - 2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
  - 3. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
  - 4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for resspreading deeper topsoil.

### **3.06 SITE IMPROVEMENTS**

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.

1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

### **3.07 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS**

- A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

**END OF SECTION 311000**

**SECTION 312000**

**EARTH MOVING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns and grasses, and exterior plants.
  2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
  3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
  4. Subbase course for concrete walks.
  5. Subbase and base course for asphalt and concrete paving.
  6. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
  7. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
  8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for buried mechanical and electrical utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
  2. Division 31 Section "Erosion and Sedimentation Controls" for erosion control measures.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

- 
- E. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
  - F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
    - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Engineer. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
    - 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
    - 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Engineer. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Engineer, shall be without additional compensation.
  - G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
  - H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
  - I. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
  - J. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
  - K. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.
  - L. Topsoil: Topsoil for lawns, seeded or sodded, shall be reused from existing materials. Topsoil to be free of roots, rocks larger than one-half inch (1 /2") diameter, subsoil, debris, large weeds.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Each type of plastic warning tape.
  - 2. Geotextile fabric.
  - 3. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
  - 4. Compaction results of each base layer (for all surfaces), per compaction requirements.
  - 5. Aggregate base material sieve analysis and gradation.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:



- 
1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
  2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 1557 for each borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
- C. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, which might be misconstrued as damage caused by earthwork operations. Submit before earthwork begins.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.
- B. Preexcavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Sections.
- C. Clay subgrade to be inspected and tested for wet or soft soil by testing agency. Test with a hand penetrometer. Soil is defined as soil with a shear strength of less than 1000 pounds per square foot.
- D. Subbase, Aggregate base, finishing stone placements shall not take place until testing agency and engineer have accepted each base layer. Contractor to coordinate with testing and inspection providers to fulfill this requirement.

#### **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Engineer and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
  1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Engineer's written permission.
  3. Contact utility-locator service (MISS DIG) for area where Project is located before excavating.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 SOIL / AGGREGATE MATERIALS**

- 
- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
  - B. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
  - C. Bituminous Pavement Base: MDOT Class 21AA Gravel.
  - D. Bituminous Pavement Subbase: MDOT Class II Sand.
  - E. Concrete Pavement Base: MDOT Class II Sand.
  - F. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control," during earthwork operations
- D. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost.

#### **3.02 EXCESS WATER CONTROL**

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
  - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required. Surface runoff being pumped or removed from excavated areas must be filtered through erosion control measures prior to discharging off site through storm sewers or overland flow.

- C. Regulations and permits: Comply with soil erosion control permit, and all pertinent rules, laws, and regulations.
- D. Unfavorable weather:
  - 1. Do not place, spread or roll any fill material during unfavorable weather conditions.
  - 2. Do not resume operations until moisture content and fill density are satisfactorily to independent testing laboratory.
- E. Pumping and drainage:
  - 1. Provide, maintain and use at all times during construction adequate means and devices to promptly remove and dispose of all water from every source entering the excavations or other parts of the Work.
  - 2. Dewater by means which will ensure dry excavations, preserve final lines and grades, and do not disturb or displace adjacent soil. Use wells, portable pumps, temporary underdrains, or other methods as necessary.
  - 3. Perform pumping and drainage:
    - a. In such a manner to cause no damage to property or structures and without interference to the rights of the public, owners of private property, pedestrians, vehicular traffic, or the work of other contractors.
    - b. In accordance with all pertinent laws, rules, ordinances, and regulations.
  - 4. Do not overload or obstruct existing drainage facilities.
  - 5. Surface runoff being pumped or removed from excavated areas must be filtered through erosion control measures prior to discharging off site through storm sewers or overland flow.
- F. General:
  - 1. Keep excavations dry during construction.
  - 2. Remove water by use of wells, well points, portable pumps, bailing, drains, underdrains or other acceptable methods.
  - 3. Provide crushed stone or gravel as required to aid dewatering operations. Divert or temporarily reroute existing sewers and drainage of discharge lines to adequate and acceptable outlets during construction. Contractor responsible to ascertain availability of outlets.
  - 4. Divert surface water from entering excavations by construction and maintenance of channels or berms.
  - 5. Sediment traps and other soil erosion control measures shall prevent soil particles from entering any sewer, watercourse or similar conveyance.

- 
6. Protect all utilities, utility structures, and structures, existing and new, from hydrostatic uplift.

### **3.03 EXPLOSIVES**

- A. Do not use explosives.

### **3.04 EXCAVATION, GENERAL**

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
  1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
- B. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Engineer. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract time may be authorized for rock excavation.
  1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
  2. Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.

### **3.05 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES**

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
  1. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

### **3.06 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS**

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

### **3.07 SUBGRADE INSPECTION**

- A. Notify Engineer when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. Clay subgrade to be inspected and tested for wet or soft soil by testing agency. Test with a hand penetrometer. Soil is defined as soil with a shear strength of less than 1000 pounds per square foot.
- C. Regular visual inspections should be made by testing engineer and contractors to identify soft or unsatisfactory soil areas. Areas should be identified and tested for shear strength.
- D. If testing engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- E. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- F. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Engineer, without additional compensation.

### **3.08 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION**

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Engineer.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Engineer.

### **3.09 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and install silt fence as required.
  - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

### **3.10 BACKFILL**

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.

- 
- 
4. Removing concrete formwork.
  5. Removing trash and debris.
  6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### **3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL**

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. General:
1. By open cut from surface unless designated otherwise.
  2. Slope sides of trench adequately for protection of the Work and safety of workers.
- C. Maximum length of open trench: 200 feet.
- D. Width:
1. Minimum clearance on each side of utility: 6 inches.
  2. Maximum width of trench at top of bedding:
    - a. Up through 30-inch diameter utility: 16 inches plus utility diameter.
    - b. Greater than 30-inch diameter utility: 24 inches plus utility diameter.
  3. Maximum width of trench at ground surface:
    - a. Not outside of the site boundary.
    - b. As required for protection of the Work and safety of workers.
    - c. Use sheeting, bracing and shoring if required.
  4. Provide sufficient space in the trench to permit the joint to be properly made.
- E. Depth:
1. Excavate to provide the elevations, grades, and depths of cover indicated on the drawings and herein specified.
  2. The 4 inches of required bedding material below the utility may be omitted if:
    - a. Approved by Engineer.
    - b. Contractor arranges and pays for testing of the native material.
    - c. The native material complies with MDOT Granular Material Class II material, modified so that 100% passes a 1/2-inch sieve.
    - d. The material is compacted as specified herein.
  3. Excavate to the normal trench bottom elevation with an accuracy of  $\pm 0.10$  feet.
- F. Rock excavation:

1. Where rock excavation is encountered within the excavation, expose the surface of the rock sufficient to permit adequate measurements to be taken before the rock excavation is started.
2. Notify Engineer prior to removal if rock is encountered.
3. No utility shall be within 6 inches of rock.

G. Bedding:

1. Place the bedding material up to 1/4 the height of the utility. Compact as herein specified.
2. Accurately shape the bedding material to fit the pipe shape. Recess the bedding to relieve the pressure on the bell or other projecting utility joint.
3. After laying out the utility, tamp additional bedding in place up to the midpoint of the utility. Use hand-operated compactors to achieve the required compaction.
4. Place additional bedding up to 12 inches above the top of the utility. Use hand operated compactors to achieve required compaction.
5. Place all bedding in maximum lifts of 10 inches.
6. No payment shall be made for aggregate or stone bedding when used for Contractor convenience unless called for on drawings or in specifications.

H. Trench backfill:

1. Use backfill material as each Drawing detail indicates and as the material is defined herein.
2. Place all backfill in 12-inch lifts and compact as herein specified. Engineer will consider greater lifts if testing indicates that the required compaction is being achieved.
3. Where existing material is allowed for backfill, it must be compacted completely and evenly to avoid settling after completion. In the event that trench backfill settles under vehicle loading, or frost heave/thaw, the backfill will be compacted again at no cost to the owner. Contractor to compact backfill and replace finished surface, including pavements, topsoil and seeding/mulch, at no cost to the owner.

I. Utility Structures:

1. Place and compact specified bedding below all utility structures.
2. Backfill around utility structures shall be of the same type backfill as that required for the trench in accordance with these Contract Documents.
3. Place all backfill in 12-inch lifts and compact as herein specified.

### **3.12 SOIL FILL**

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:

1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
2. Under walks and pavements, use engineered fill.
3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

**3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL**

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

**3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS**

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent or as indicated otherwise.
2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent.

D. Where existing material is allowed for backfill, it must be compacted completely and evenly to avoid settling after completion. In the event that trench backfill settles under vehicle loading, or



---

frost heave/thaw, the backfill will be compacted again at no cost to the owner. Contractor to compact backfill and replace finished surface, including pavements, topsoil and seeding/mulch, at no cost to the owner.

### **3.15 GRADING**

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

### **3.16 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE FOR MAINTENANCE STRIPS AND SITE CONCRETE**

#### **UNDERDRAINS**

- A. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Division 33 Section "Site Storm Utility Drainage Piping."

### **3.17 SUBBASE**

- A. Smooth, spread and compact.
- B. Place in one layer, provided that the depth of the compacted layer does not exceed 15 inches.
- C. Construct to the grade and cross section as indicated on the Drawings.
- D. Should the subgrade at any time prior to or during the placing of subbase become soft or unstable to the extent that rutting occurs in the subgrade or to the extent that subgrade material is forced up into the subbase materials, the operation of hauling and placing subbase shall be immediately discontinued. Where subgrade material has become mixed with the subbase material, the mixed material shall be removed and disposed of. After the subgrade has been corrected as directed by Engineer, new subbase material shall be placed and compacted as specified above.
- E. Shape to specified crown and grade and maintain in smooth condition.
- F. Do not place on a frozen subgrade.
- G. Proof roll subbase prior to installation of base course.

---

### **3.18 BASE COURSES**

- A. Place in uniform layers to such a depth that when compacted, the course will have the thickness indicated on the Drawings.
- B. The compacted depth of any layer shall not be more than 6 inches nor less than 3 inches.
- C. Compact each layer of aggregate.
- D. Place aggregate shoulder material in conjunction with the top layer of aggregate base material.
- E. Shape to the crown and grade within a tolerance of  $\pm 0.05$  feet unless otherwise specified. The surface of each spreading operation shall be continuously maintained in a smooth condition.
- F. Roll the shaped surface, when required, to provide thorough compaction.
- G. Where the existing surface is very irregular, the use of a scarifier may be required. Wetting may be required to facilitate shaping the surface and to assist in providing compaction.
- H. Final shaping and compacting shall be accomplished by use of a subgrade machine operating on crawler tracks, or by the use of a maintainer or surface planer, with a rigid frame.

### **3.19 DRAINAGE COURSE**

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs on-grade as follows:
  - 1. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  - 2. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 10 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  - 3. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### **3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Construction manager will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Engineer.

- 
- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1557, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
    - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: In accordance with structural drawings and specifications.
    - 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: In accordance with structural drawings and specifications.
  - E. Site Work and Utility Compaction:
    - 1. Determine density by the modified Proctor method, ASTM D1557.
    - 2. Compact subbase and base course to at least 95% maximum density.
    - 3. Compact trench backfill and bedding to at least 95% maximum density. At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least 1 test for each 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than 2 tests.
    - 4. Compact suitable material to at least 95% maximum density.
    - 5. The first 12 inches of native material at the bottom of utility trenches:
      - a. Test for density.
      - b. Compact to at least 95% maximum density if the existing density is below 95%.
  - F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

### **3.21 PROTECTION**

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Engineer; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

### **3.22 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS**

- A. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated location on site. Excess materials to be removed from site. Contractor is responsible for creating separate stockpile for topsoil storage.

- 
- B. If unsatisfactory soils are encountered, the contractor is responsible for notifying the Engineer prior to removal and disposal.
  - C. Remove waste material, including trash and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.
  - D. Separate recyclable materials produced during construction activities and dispose of materials in accordance with contract documents.

**END OF SECTION 312000**

## **SECTION 312020**

### **STRUCTURAL EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Excavate for structure(s) and removal of excess subsoil from site stockpile subsoil on site.
- B. Cap off and seal discontinued utility services and remove portions of lines within excavated areas as noted.
- C. Shore and brace excavations as required.
- D. Place and compact fills to rough grade elevations.
- E. Dewater excavations as required.
- F. Over excavate, if required per the Soils Report.
- G. Compacting fill material.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 FILL MATERIALS**

- A. Granular Material: Michigan Department of Transportation (M.D.O.T.) Class II Fill.
- B. Pea Gravel: MDOT 34R material.
- C. Subsoil: Existing site material, free from roots, rocks larger than 3 inches in size, organic material, and building debris as approved by the on-site Soils Engineer.

#### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

##### **3.01 EXCAVATION**

- A. Excavate subsoil in accordance with lines and levels shown on the Drawings for construction of the work, including space for forms, bracing and shoring, foundation drainage system, applying dampproofing, and to permit inspection.
- B. Over excavation below bearing elevations may be required for this construction and shall be included in base bid. In case it is found necessary to excavate deeper than is indicated on the Drawings in order to reach firm ground, do said work only upon written order from the Architect.
  - 1. Hand trim excavations and leave free from loose or organic matter.
  - 2. When complete, verify soil bearing capacities, depths and dimensions.
  - 3. Correct unauthorized excavation as directed, at no cost to the Owner.
  - 4. Fill over-excavated areas under structure bearing surfaces with Class II engineered fill and compacted to 95% Modified Proctor.

Structural Excavation and Backfill

5. Excavations shall not interfere with normal 45 bearing splay of any foundation, unless said foundations have been underpinned.
6. Stockpile excavated subsoil that is approved for re-use during construction by the on-site Soils Engineer where directed. Remove excess or unsuitable excavated subsoil from site. Provide soil erosion control measures per Section 314000 for the stock piled subsoil.
7. Typically 1-1/2 c.y. used, but review soil report before assuming a volume.
8. Removal of boulders or buried rock in excess of one (1) cu. yd. shall be authorized as an extra; other work is deemed to be within the scope of this section.
9. Coordinate excavation with piling work for special requirements and arrangements regarding excavation to rough out elevations.
10. Do not disturb soil within branch spread of existing trees or shrubs that are to remain.
11. Excavate for all walls, footings, piers, floors and other below grade excavation indicated on Drawings. Grading in the vicinity of structure shall be controlled to prevent surface water from running into excavated areas.

### **3.02 BACKFILLING**

- A. Stockpile off-site materials in area(s) designated by Site Engineer.
- B. Do not start backfilling operations until building drainage system has been inspected.
- C. Ensure areas to be backfilled are free from debris, snow, ice and water, and that ground surfaces are not in a frozen condition.
- D. Do not backfill over existing sub-grade surfaces which are porous, wet, or spongy.
- E. Compact existing sub-grade surfaces to a depth of 12" to the densities specified in Section 312020.
- F. Cut out soft areas of existing sub-grade. Backfill with Granular MDOT Class II fill and compact to the density specified in Section 312020.3.3.
- G. Backfill areas to grades, contours, levels and elevations shown on the Drawings.
- H. Backfill systematically and as early as possible to allow maximum time for natural settlement and compaction.
- I. Place and compact fill materials in continuous layers not exceeding 9" loose depth. Use methods that do not disturb or damage building drainage system and foundation dampproofing or foundation waterproofing.
- J. All fills shall be compacted within 25% of the percentage at optimum moisture content. (For example, if optimum moisture content is 10%, fill can be compacted at from 7.5% to 12.5% moisture). If fill material is too wet, the Contractor shall provide and operate approved means

to assist the drying of the fill until suitable for compaction. If fill material is too dry, the Contractor shall provide and operate approved means to add moisture to the fill layers.

- K. The moisture content shall be checked by the Engineer and/or Testing Laboratory and operations concerning placing fill shall be under their control.
- L. Wherever possible, backfilling shall be done simultaneously on both sides of walls to equalize lateral pressures. Do not backfill on only one (1) side of vertically spanning walls unless walls are adequately shored or permanent construction is in place to furnish lateral support at both top and bottom of wall.
- M. No broken concrete, brick bats, or similar unsuitable material will be permitted as backfill.
- N. Backfill for exterior building foundation walls shall be bank run gravel or sand or material as approved by the Testing Laboratory. Provide 6" thick, clay seal on top of exterior backfill immediately below 6" topsoil layer.
- O. All fill material shall be obtained from cut areas on the site as designated on the Drawings, or from borrow areas outside the site according to the Contractor's sources of supply, but with the approval of the Testing Laboratory. Borrow material shall be equal to M.D.O.T. Class II material. The borrow material required from off the site shall be included in the Base Bid of this contract.
- P. Compacting around concrete pedestals and next to foundation walls shall be with hand operated vibrating compactors for granular soils and Barco rammer type compactors for clay soils.

### **3.03 FILL TYPES AND COMPACTION**

- A. Exterior Side of Foundation Walls
  - 1. Gravel or granular M.D.O.T. Class II fill to top of sub-grade elevation.
  - 2. Provide 6" thick, clay seal on top of granular material and below topsoil.
  - 3. Compact to 95% Modified Proctor.
- B. Stabilizing Base Course Under Concrete Slabs Within Building Area
  - 1. Suitable native soils approved by the Testing Laboratory shall be compacted to 95% Modified Proctor.
  - 2. Unsuitable native soils shall be over excavated removed and replaced with a minimum 24 inches of granular, M.D.O.T. Class II fill to underside of slabs and compacted to a 95% Modified Proctor.
- C. Retaining Walls
  - 1. Granular, M.D.O.T. Class II fill to top of subgrade elevation.

2. Compact to 95% Modified Proctor.
- D. Fill Under Landscaped Areas
  1. Subsoil to top of subgrade elevation.
  2. Compact to 90% Modified Proctor.
- E. Trench Drains
  1. Fill with gravel to trench limits shown on the Drawings.
  2. Compact to 90% Modified Proctor.
  3. Fill remainder, to top of subgrade elevation with subsoil.
  4. Compact to 95% Modified Proctor.

#### **3.04 SURPLUS MATERIALS**

- A. After all Civil/Site Plans and specification have been completed, remove surplus or unsuitable backfill materials from site.
- B. Leave stockpile areas completely free of all excess fill materials.

**END OF SECTION 312020**



## **SECTION 312300**

### **FOUNDATION EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Foundation, excavating, and backfilling within five feet of the building perimeter. Work shall include, but not be limited to, the following items:
  - 1. Removal of all unacceptable soil.
  - 2. Furnish and install acceptable fill.
  - 3. Prepare subgrade for footings and slab on grade.
- B. For overlap in scope between Section 31 20 20, Contractor to inform Architect.
- C. The following items are not a part of this specification:
  - 1. Utility trenching and related backfilling outside the building footprint.
  - 2. Subgrade for exterior walks and paving.
- D. Structural notes indicated on the drawings regarding foundation excavating and backfilling shall be considered part of this specification.

##### **1.02 RELATED WORK**

- A. Pertinent Sections of Division 01.
- B. Pertinent Sections of Division 31.

##### **1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified. Where any provisions of other pertinent codes and standards conflict with this specification, the more stringent provision shall govern.
  - 1. ASTM C136 - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.
  - 2. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort.
  - 3. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using the Modified Effort.
  - 4. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System).

5. ASTM D2940 - Standard Specification for Graded Aggregate Material for Bases or Subbases for Highways or Airports.
6. ASTM D4253 - Standard Test Methods for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table.
7. ASTM D4254 - Standard Test Methods for Minimum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils and Calculation of Relative Density.
8. ASTM D4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.
9. ASTM D6938 - Standard Test Methods for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).
10. Department of Transportation (DOT): DOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction.

#### 1.04 TESTING

A. Minimum testing frequency and locations:

1. Laboratory Testing:
  - a. Granular fill: One representative gradation test for each type of material.
  - b. Cohesive soils: One representative set of Atterberg limits and moisture density test for each type of material used.
  - c. Non-cohesive soils: One representative moisture density test for each type of material used.
2. Field Testing:
  - a. The Special Inspector shall determine the location of testing.
  - b. Testing of final utility trench backfill shall begin at a depth of 2 feet above the top of the pipe.
  - c. In-place field density test and moisture content tests shall be performed as follows:
    - 1) Fills not within the influence of building foundations and slab on grade: Per civil specifications.
    - 2) For fills within the influence of building foundations and slab on grade, the following criteria shall apply: One test for each 8-inch vertical lift of compacted fill placed per 2,500 square feet of fill area (minimum of two tests per lift per structure for areas smaller than 5,000 square feet).
  - d. Additional testing may be required by the Special Inspector if noncompliance or a change in conditions occurs.
  - e. If a test fails, the Contractor shall rework the material, recompact and retest as necessary until specific compaction is achieved in all areas of the trench. All costs associated with this work, including retesting, shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

---

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Test Reports: Provide the Owner and Architect with the on-site material test reports from the Special Inspection Agency indicating the interpreting test results for compliance with this specification.

## 1.06 PROTECTION

- A. Contractor shall provide for design, permits and installation of all cribbing, bracing, shoring and other methods required to safely retain earth banks and excavations.
- B. Notify the Architect immediately and discontinue work in affected area if adjacent existing footings are encountered during excavation. Underpin other adjacent structures that may be damaged by excavation work, including service utilities and pipe chases.
- C. Notify the Architect of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue work in affected areas until notification to resume.
- D. Protect benchmarks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, curbing, etc., from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.
- E. Maintain and protect above and below grade utilities that are to remain.
- F. Provide temporary heating or protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundations soils against freezing temperatures or frost during cold weather conditions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient acceptable soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Acceptable soils shall comply with the following:
  - 1. Meet ASTM D2487 soil classification groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, SM or a combination of these group symbols.
  - 2. Be free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension.
  - 3. Be free of debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation and other deleterious materials.
  - 4. Have a liquid limit less than 45 and a plasticity index less than 20.
  - 5. Be approved by the Special Inspection Agency.
- C. Unacceptable soils shall be defined as following:
  - 1. ASTM D2487 soil classification groups GC, SC, ML, MH, CL, CH, OL, OH, PT or a combination of these group symbols.
  - 2. Unacceptable soils also to include acceptable soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

D. Free-Draining Granular Fill: Free-draining granular fill shall comply with the following:

1. Be a naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone.
2. Be clean and free of fines.
3. Comply with ASTM D2940.
4. Be uniformly graded as follows:

Coarse Aggregate Gradations						
Sieve Size - Percent Passing						
Grade No.	1-1/2"	1"	3/4"	1/2"	3/8"	No. 4
CA7	100	95 ± 5	-	45 ± 15	-	5 max

5. Be approved by the Special Inspection Agency.

E. Engineered Fill and Utility Base Course shall comply with the following:

1. Be a naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, natural or crushed sand.
2. Comply with ASTM D2940.
3. Be uniformly graded as follows:

Coarse Aggregate Gradations						
Sieve Size - Percent Passing						
Grade No.	1-1/2"	1"	1/2"	No. 4	No. 16	No. 200
CA6	100 to 90	95 ± 5	75 ± 15	43 ± 13	25 ± 15	8 ± 4

Coarse Aggregate Gradations						
Sieve Size - Percent Passing						
Grade No.	1-1/2"	1"	1/2"	No. 4	No. 30	No. 200
IN#53	100	90 ± 10	67 ± 13	47 ± 13	21 ± 9	7 ± 3

4. Be approved by the Special Inspection Agency.

F. Material Applications: Provide and install material meeting with the above requirements as follows:

1. General fill: Acceptable soils.
2. Backfill against basement and retaining walls for 2 feet directly adjacent to wall: Free-draining granular fill.
3. Backfill at over-excavated areas beneath footings: Engineered fill.
4. Sub-grade layer beneath slabs-on-grade: Refer to drawings.

- G. Spoil material displaced by drilled pier installation is unacceptable as fill material and shall be disposed of offsite.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Identify and verify required lines, levels, contours and benchmark elevations for the work are as indicated.
- B. Protect plant life, lawns, other features and vegetation to remain as a portion of the final landscaping.
- C. Free groundwater is not expected during excavation. Contractor shall provide for de-watering of excavations from surface water, ground water or seepage. Where ground water occurs during excavation, special procedures shall be implemented as recommended by the Geotechnical Engineer of Record.
- D. Identify known underground utility locations with stakes and flags.

### **3.02 EXCAVATION**

- A. All excavations shall be safely and properly backfilled.
- B. All abandoned footings, utilities and other structures that interfere with new construction shall be removed.
- C. All unacceptable material and organic material shall be removed from below all proposed slabs-on-grade and the exposed natural soil shall be proof rolled and the compaction verified by the soils testing firm prior to placing fill. Proof-roll with a loaded tandem dump truck, loaded ready-mix truck, roller, or equivalent weight vehicle. Materials exhibiting weakness, such as those exhibiting rutting or pumping, shall be removed and replaced with acceptable compacted fill material.
- D. Do not excavate within the 45-degree bearing splay of any adjacent foundations.
- E. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders and rock up to 1/3 cubic yard (measured by volume). Provide Owner with unit price per cubic yard for obstructions larger than 1/3 cubic yard.
- F. Outside 45-degree bearing splay of foundations, correct areas over excavated with aggregate at no additional cost to the Owner.
- G. Within the 45-degree bearing splay of foundations, correct areas over excavated with 2000 psi concrete fill at no additional cost to the Owner. Notify the Architect prior to performing such work.
- H. Hand trim final excavation to remove all loose material.
- I. Contractor shall form all dams and perform other work necessary for keeping the excavation clear of water during the progress of the work and, at Contractor's expense, shall pump or otherwise remove all surface and perched water which accumulates in the excavations. Perched water that cannot be de-watered in 48 hours of continuous pumping at a minimum rate of 60 gpm in dry weather shall be considered ground water.

- J. If de-watering is required to lower the static level of the ground water, it will be paid for by the Owner on a unit price basis per hour as extra compensation.
- K. Stockpile excavated material in the area designated and remove excess material not being used, from the site.

### **3.03 BACKFILLING**

- A. Verify foundation perimeter drainage system is complete and has been inspected prior to backfilling against foundation walls.
- B. Support pipe and conduit during placement and compaction of bedding fill.
- C. Systematically backfill to allow necessary time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, spongy, or frozen subgrade surfaces.
- D. Backfill areas to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.
- E. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, make grade changes gradual.
- F. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, slope grade away from the building a minimum of 2 inches in 10 feet.
- G. Contractor shall procure the approval of the subgrade from the Special Inspection Agency prior to the start of any filling or bedding operations.
- H. Place a minimum width of 24 inches of free-draining granular fill against all basement and retaining walls for the full height of the wall.
- I. Do not begin any backfill operations against any concrete walls until the concrete has achieved its specified strength.
- J. Do not backfill against below grade walls without necessary bracing to support the walls.
- K. Place and mechanically compact granular fill in continuous layers not to exceed 6 inches compacted depth.
- L. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage adjacent utilities, vapor barriers, foundation perimeter drainage and foundation waterproofing.
- M. All surplus fill materials are to be removed from the site.
- N. Fill material stockpiles shall be free of unacceptable soil materials.
- O. After work is complete, remove all excess stockpile material and repair stockpile area to its original condition.

### **3.04 COMPACTION**

- A. Compact all fill that will support building footings or floor slabs to 95 percent of the maximum dry density in accordance with ASTM D1557. For relative cohesionless fill materials, where the percent passing the #200 sieve is less than 10 and the moisture density curve indicates only slight sensitivity to changing moisture content, compaction requirements should be changed to 75 percent relative density in accordance with ASTM D4253 and ASTM D4254.
- B. Compact all fills that support paving and landscape per civil specifications.

---

### 3.05 FOUNDATIONS

- A. Each footing excavation should be cleared of all obstructions and other organic or deleterious materials.
- B. Localized areas of unstable or unacceptable material may be discovered during the stripping and excavation operation and may require over-excavation and backfilling. The Special Inspection Agency shall be present during the proof rolling to evaluate any localized areas and make recommendations regarding over-excavation, backfilling and recompaction of these areas. Fill placement and compaction shall be inspected and tested by the Special Inspection Agency.
- C. Footing elevations shown on the drawings designate a minimum depth of footing where an appropriate soil bearing pressure is expected. Footings, piers and/or walls shall be lowered or extended as required to reach soil meeting the design bearing pressure. This work shall be performed per the recommendations of the Special Inspection Agency.
- D. All footing excavations shall be recompacted by hand-operated, vibratory compaction equipment, except where compaction will degrade the integrity of subgrade soils. In these instances, bottom of footing excavations should be hand-trimmed to remove loosened material.
- E. All excavation and recompacted surfaces shall be inspected and tested to a depth of 2.0 feet below the excavated elevation by the Special Inspection Agency. Additional field density tests should be performed for each one foot of fill material placed. Any areas not in compliance with the compaction requirements should be corrected and re-tested prior to placement of fill material.
- F. For foundation areas where over excavation is performed, place and mechanically compact Engineered fill material in continuous layers not to exceed 6 inches compacted depth.

### 3.06 SLAB-ON-GRADE

- A. All disturbed areas after the clearing and stripping operation should be proof-rolled and recompacted with a heavy vibratory drum roller (approved by the Special Inspection Agency) in the static mode. The compactor should make a minimum of 10 passes, with a minimum of one foot overlap of each pass. The compactor speed should be less than 0.2 MPH.
- B. The Special Inspection Agency shall monitor proof-rolling and compaction operations. This area should then be tested for compaction to a depth of 2.0 feet below the compacted surface prior to the placement of any structural fill material.
- C. Refer to drawings for required sub-grade preparation beneath slabs-on-grade.

### 3.07 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL (AT SLAB-ON-GRADE LOCATIONS)

- A. Excavate and backfill utility trenches under wall footings as shown on the drawings.
- B. Place utility base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- C. Place and compact utility base course on trench bottoms and where indicated.
- D. Lay underground utilities on 6" sand bedding, which meets the acceptable criteria of Section 2.1B.
- E. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

- F. After connection joints are made, any misalignment can be corrected by tamping the sand around the utilities.
- G. Place and compact initial backfill of acceptable sand to a height of 6 inches over the utility pipe or conduit in 6 inch layers meeting specified compaction requirements.
- H. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit.
- I. Place and compact final backfill using acceptable soil to final subgrade elevation meeting specified compaction requirements.
- J. Backfill voids with acceptable soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.
- K. Special Inspection Agency shall monitor and test compacted backfill to verify final compaction meets the specified requirement.

### **3.08 TOLERANCES**

- A. Top surface of backfilling under paved areas: Plus or minus 1/2 inch from required elevation.
- B. Top surface of general backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevation.

**END OF SECTION 312300**



## **SECTION 312319**

### **DEWATERING**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes construction dewatering.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, backfilling, site grading, and controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.

##### **1.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Verify availability of Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 2. Review condition of site to be dewatered including coordination with temporary erosion-control measures and temporary controls and protections.
  - 3. Review geotechnical report.
  - 4. Review proposed site clearing and excavations.
  - 5. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
  - 6. Review observation and monitoring of dewatering system.

##### **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Shop Drawings: For dewatering system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of wells and well points; locations of risers, headers, filters, pumps, power units, and discharge lines; and means of discharge, control of sediment, and disposal of water.
  - 3. Include layouts of piezometers and flow-measuring devices for monitoring performance of dewatering system.

4. Include written plan for dewatering operations including sequence of well and well-point placement coordinated with excavation shoring and bracings and control procedures to be adopted if dewatering problems arise.

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Existing Conditions: Using photographs or video recording to show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by dewatering operations. Submit before Work begins.
- D. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped wells and well points and other abandoned-in-place dewatering equipment.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer that has specialized in design of dewatering systems and dewatering work.

#### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of a geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.
  1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for dewatering according to the performance requirements.
  2. The geotechnical report is included elsewhere in Project Manual.
- B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Dewatering Performance: Design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower,

control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.

1. Design dewatering system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
  2. Continuously monitor and maintain dewatering operations to ensure erosion control, stability of excavations and constructed slopes, prevention of flooding in excavation, and prevention of damage to subgrades and permanent structures.
  3. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
  4. Accomplish dewatering without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
  5. Remove dewatering system when no longer required for construction.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with water- and debris-disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by dewatering operations.
1. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding site or surrounding area.
  2. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.
- B. Install dewatering system to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Provide temporary grading to facilitate dewatering and control of surface water.
- D. Protect and maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified on the plans during dewatering operations.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls.
  - 1. Space well points or wells at intervals required to provide sufficient dewatering.
  - 2. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.
- B. Place dewatering system into operation to lower water to specified levels before excavating below ground-water level.
- C. Provide sumps, sedimentation tanks, and other flow-control devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Provide standby equipment on-site, installed and available for immediate operation, to maintain dewatering on continuous basis if any part of system becomes inadequate or fails.

### **3.03 OPERATION**

- A. Operate system continuously until drains, sewers, and structures have been constructed and fill materials have been placed or until dewatering is no longer required.
- B. Operate system to lower and control ground water to permit excavation, construction of structures, and placement of fill materials on dry subgrades. Drain water-bearing strata above and below bottom of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
  - 1. Do not permit open-sump pumping that leads to loss of fines, soil piping, subgrade softening, and slope instability.
  - 2. Reduce hydrostatic head in water-bearing strata below subgrade elevations of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
  - 3. Maintain piezometric water level a minimum of 24 inches below bottom of excavation.
- C. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.
- D. Remove dewatering system from Project site on completion of dewatering. Plug or fill well holes with sand or cut off and cap wells a minimum of 36 inches below overlying construction.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Observation Wells: Provide observation wells or piezometers, take measurements, and maintain at least the minimum number indicated; additional observation wells may be required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Observe and record daily elevation of ground water and piezometric water levels in observation wells.

2. Repair or replace, within 24 hours, observation wells that become inactive, damaged, or destroyed. In areas where observation wells are not functioning properly, suspend construction activities until reliable observations can be made. Add or remove water from observation-well risers to demonstrate that observation wells are functioning properly.
  3. Fill observation wells, remove piezometers, and fill holes when dewatering is completed.
- B. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks weekly during dewatering and maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify Engineer if changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.
- C. Provide continual observation to ensure that subsurface soils are not being removed by the dewatering operation.
- D. Prepare reports of observations.

### **3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect and maintain dewatering system during dewatering operations.
- B. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering.

**END OF SECTION 312319**



## **SECTION 315000**

### **EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes temporary excavation support and protection systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating and backfilling and for controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.
  - 2. Section 312319 "Dewatering" for dewatering excavations.

##### **1.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review geotechnical report.
  - 2. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
  - 3. Review coordination for interruption, shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 4. Review proposed excavations.
  - 5. Review proposed equipment.
  - 6. Review monitoring of excavation support and protection system.
  - 7. Review coordination with waterproofing.
  - 8. Review abandonment or removal of excavation support and protection system.

##### **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, performance properties, and dimensions of individual components and profiles, and calculations for excavation support and protection system.
- B. Shop Drawings: For excavation support and protection system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of soldier piles, piling, lagging, tiebacks, bracing, and other components of excavation support and protection system according to engineering design.
3. Indicate type and location of waterproofing.
4. Include a written plan for excavation support and protection, including sequence of construction of support and protection coordinated with progress of excavation.

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- B. Contractor Calculations: For excavation support and protection system. Include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Existing Conditions: Using photographs or video recordings, show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by inadequate performance of excavation support and protection systems. Submit before Work begins.
- D. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped utilities, abandoned-in-place support and protection systems, and other subsurface structural, electrical, or mechanical conditions.

#### **1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Owner no fewer than 2 days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without Owner's written permission.
- B. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of a geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the data.
  1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for excavation support and protection according to the performance requirements.
  2. The geotechnical report is included elsewhere in Project Manual.
- C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.



## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide, design, monitor, and maintain excavation support and protection system capable of supporting excavation sidewalls and of resisting earth and hydrostatic pressures and superimposed and construction loads.
  - 1. Contractor Design: Design excavation support and protection system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 2. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
  - 3. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
  - 4. Continuously monitor vibrations, settlements, and movements to ensure stability of excavations and constructed slopes and to ensure that damage to permanent structures is prevented.

### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide materials that are either new or in serviceable condition.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, ASTM A 690/A 690M, or ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- C. Steel Sheet Piling: ASTM A 328/A 328M, ASTM A 572/A 572M, or ASTM A 690/A 690M; with continuous interlocks.
  - 1. Corners: Roll-formed corner shape with continuous interlock.
- D. Wood Lagging: Lumber, mixed hardwood, nominal rough thickness of size and strength required for application.
- E. Shotcrete: Comply with Section 033713 "Shotcrete" for shotcrete materials and mixes, reinforcement, and shotcrete application.
- F. Cast-in-Place Concrete: ACI 301, of compressive strength required for application.
- G. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- H. Tiebacks: Steel bars, ASTM A 722/A 722M.
- I. Tiebacks: Steel strand, ASTM A 416/A 416M.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.

1. Shore, support, and protect utilities encountered.
- B. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction so that construction and finishing of other work is not impeded.

### **3.02 SOLDIER PILES AND LAGGING**

- A. Install steel soldier piles before starting excavation. Extend soldier piles below excavation grade level to depths adequate to prevent lateral movement. Space soldier piles at regular intervals not to exceed allowable flexural strength of wood lagging. Accurately align exposed faces of flanges to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.
- B. Install wood lagging within flanges of soldier piles as excavation proceeds. Trim excavation as required to install lagging. Fill voids behind lagging with soil, and compact.
- C. Install wales horizontally at locations indicated on Drawings and secure to soldier piles.

### **3.03 SHEET PILING**

- A. Before starting excavation, install one-piece sheet piling lengths and tightly interlock vertical edges to form a continuous barrier.
- B. Accurately place the piling, using templates and guide frames unless otherwise recommended in writing by the sheet piling manufacturer. Limit vertical offset of adjacent sheet piling to 60 inches. Accurately align exposed faces of sheet piling to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.
- C. Cut tops of sheet piling to uniform elevation at top of excavation.

### **3.04 TIEBACKS**

- A. Drill, install, grout, and tension tiebacks.
- B. Test load-carrying capacity of each tieback and replace and retest deficient tiebacks.
  1. Have test loading observed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for design of excavation support and protection system.
- C. Maintain tiebacks in place until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

### **3.05 BRACING**

- A. Bracing: Locate bracing to clear columns, floor framing construction, and other permanent work. If necessary to move brace, install new bracing before removing original brace.
  - 1. Do not place bracing where it will be cast into or included in permanent concrete work unless otherwise approved by Engineer.
  - 2. Install internal bracing if required to prevent spreading or distortion of braced frames.
  - 3. Maintain bracing until structural elements are supported by other bracing or until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

### **3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks weekly during installation of excavation support and protection systems, excavation progress, and for as long as excavation remains open. Maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations and positions for comparison with original elevations and positions. Promptly notify Engineer if changes in elevations or positions occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.
- B. Promptly correct detected bulges, breakage, or other evidence of movement to ensure that excavation support and protection system remains stable.
- C. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by installation or faulty performance of excavation support and protection systems.

### **3.07 REMOVAL AND REPAIRS**

- A. Remove excavation support and protection systems when construction has progressed sufficiently to support excavation and earth and hydrostatic pressures. Remove in stages to avoid disturbing underlying soils and rock or damaging structures, pavements, facilities, and utilities.
  - 1. Remove excavation support and protection systems to a minimum depth of 48 inches below overlying construction and abandon remainder.
  - 2. Fill voids immediately with approved backfill compacted to density specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Repair or replace, as approved by Engineer, adjacent work damaged or displaced by removing excavation support and protection systems.
- B. Leave excavation support and protection systems permanently in place.

**END OF SECTION 315000**



**SECTION 321313**  
**CONCRETE PAVING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Driveways.
  - 2. Roadways.
  - 3. Parking lots.
  - 4. Curbs and gutters.
  - 5. Walks.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in expansion and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

**1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product, ingredient, or admixture requiring color selection.
- D. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: None.
- B. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - 3. Fiber reinforcement.
  - 4. Admixtures.
  - 5. Curing compounds.
  - 6. Applied finish materials.
  - 7. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
  - 8. Joint fillers.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
  - 1. Aggregates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Detectable Warning Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer of stamped concrete paving systems.
- B. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
- D. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- E. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to concrete paving, including but not limited to, the following:

- a. Concrete mixture design.
  - b. Quality control of concrete materials and concrete paving construction practices.
- 2. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with concrete paving to attend, including the following:
  - a. Contractor's superintendent.
  - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
  - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
  - d. Concrete paving subcontractor.
  - e. Manufacturer's representative of stamped concrete paving system used for detectable warnings.

#### **1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-based materials [55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 FORMS**

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

#### **2.02 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, fabricated from steel wire into flat sheets.
- C. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.

- D. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, plain steel.
- E. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- F. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed bars.
- G. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed bars.
- H. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed bars; assembled with clips.
- I. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M.
- J. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.
- K. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated plain.
- L. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 plain-steel bars. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- M. Epoxy-Coated, Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars.
- N. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- O. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against paving form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
- P. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
  - 1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
  - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- Q. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.
- R. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780.

## **2.03 CONCRETE MATERIALS**



- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray portland cement
  - 2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Exposed Aggregate: Selected, hard, and durable; washed; free of materials with deleterious reactivity to cement or that cause staining; from a single source, with gap-graded coarse aggregate as follows:
  - 1. Aggregate Sizes: 1/2 to 3/4 inch nominal.
  - 2. Aggregate Source, Shape, and Color: gray/white
- D. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- F. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

#### **2.04 FIBER REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or Fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete paving, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, [1/2 to 1-1/2 inches long].
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Monofilament Fibers:
      - 1) Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; FIBRASOL II P.

- 2) Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Fiberstrand 100, Fiberstrand 150.
- 3) FORTA Corporation;
- 4) Grace, W. R. & Co. - Conn.; Grace MicroFiber.
- 5) Metalcrete Industries; Polystrand 1000.
- 6) QC Construction Products; QC FIBERS.
- b. Fibrillated Fibers:
  - 1) Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; FIBRASOL F.
  - 2) Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Fiberstrand F.
  - 3) FORTA Corporation; FORTA Econo-Net.
  - 4) Grace, W. R. & Co. - Conn.; Grace Fibers.
  - 5) Propex Concrete Systems Corp.; Fibermesh 300.

## **2.05 CURING MATERIALS**

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; Caltexol CIMFILM.
    - b. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Confilm.
    - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
    - d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.
    - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
    - f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; BurkeFilm.
    - g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
    - h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; VaporAid.
    - i. Lambert Corporation; LAMBCO Skin.
    - j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-CON.
    - k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.

- l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
  - m. Nox-Crete Products Group; MONOFILM.
  - n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
  - o. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
  - p. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid.
  - q. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2120 TRI-FILM.
  - r. Unitex; PRO-FILM.
  - s. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; A-H Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
    - b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
    - c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; D.O.T. Resin Cure.
    - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
    - e. Edoco by Dayton Superior; DSSCC Clear Resin Cure.
    - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX.
    - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfil 420.
    - h. Lambert Corporation; AQUA KURE - CLEAR.
    - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M CURE R.
    - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100-CLEAR SERIES.
    - k. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.
    - l. SpecChem, LLC; PaveCure Rez.
    - m. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem Clear.
    - n. Tamms Industries, Inc., Euclid Chemical Company (The); TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
    - o. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation;
    - p. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.
- F. White, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B, dissipating.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; A-H Curing Compound #2 WP WB.

- b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure 2000.
- c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; D.O.T. Resin Cure White.
- d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem White Pigmented Cure (J-10-W).
- e. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Resin Emulsion Cure V.O.C. (Type II).
- f. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez VOX White Pigmented.
- g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 450.
- h. Lambert Corporation; AQUA KURE - WHITE.
- i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M CURE R-2.
- j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100-WHITE SERIES.
- k. SpecChem, LLC; PaveCure Rez White.
- l. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem White.
- m. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure White 100.

## 2.06 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber in preformed strips.
- B. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
  - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- E. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. ChemMasters; Exposee.
    - b. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Delay S.

- c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Etch (J-73).
- d. Edoco by Dayton Superior; True Etch Surface Retarder.
- e. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Surface Retarder Formula S.
- f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Expose.
- g. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; TOP-STOP.
- h. Metalcrete Industries; Surfard.
- i. Nox-Crete Products Group; CRETE-NOX TA.
- j. Scofield, L. M. Company; LITHOTEX Top Surface Retarder.
- k. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Rugasol-S.
- l. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Etch.
- m. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-6000 Concrete Surface Retarder.
- n. Unitex; TOP-ETCH Surface Retarder.
- o. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Envioset.

## **2.07 DETECTABLE WARNING MATERIALS**

- A. Detectable Warning Plates: Rigid cast iron plates embedded into concrete surface.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. East Jordan Iron Works.
  - 2. Size of Stamp: One piece complying with ADA requirements a minimum of 24 by 36 inches.
- B. Liquid Release Agent: Manufacturer's standard, clear, evaporating formulation designed to facilitate release of stamp mats.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. Advanced Surfaces Inc.; Liquid Release.
    - b. Matcrete Precision Stamped Concrete Tools; Liquid Release Agent.
    - c. Southern Color N.A., Inc.; SCC Clear Liquid Release.
    - d. Stampcrete International Ltd.; Stampcrete Liquid Release.
    - e. Superior Decorative by Dayton Superior; Pro Liquid Release.

## **2.08 PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.

1. Color: White

## **2.09 CONCRETE MIXTURES**

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4,000 psi.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
1. Air Content: 4-1/2 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing admixture in concrete as required for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- F. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
- G. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd.

## **2.10 CONCRETE MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  1. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  2. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
  3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
  1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  2. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
  3. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch according to requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

#### **3.03 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

### **3.04 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
- F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
- G. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch overlap of adjacent mats.

### **3.05 JOINTS**

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.



1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
  3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
    - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch wide joints into concrete when cutting action

will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.

- a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
- 3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

### **3.06 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating joint devices.
- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further

disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

- J. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
- K. Slip-Form Paving: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
  - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.
- L. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
- M. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - 3. Fog-spray forms and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### **3.07 FLOAT FINISHING**

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces

to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.

1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

### **3.08 SPECIAL FINISHES**

- A. Monolithic Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Expose coarse aggregate in paving surface as follows:
  1. Immediately after float finishing, spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove when ready to continue finishing operations.
  3. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.
  4. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
- B. Seeded Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Immediately after initial floating, spread a single layer of aggregate uniformly on paving surface. Tamp aggregate into plastic concrete and float finish to entirely embed aggregate with mortar cover of 1/16 inch.
  1. Spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove sheeting when ready to continue finishing operations.
  3. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.

4. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
- C. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Before final floating, spread slip-resistive aggregate finish on paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  1. Uniformly spread 35 lb/100 sq. ft. of dampened, slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface in two applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface using a steel trowel, but do not force below surface.
  2. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface with mechanical spreader, allow to absorb moisture, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second slip-resistive aggregate application, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform coverage, and embed by power floating.
  3. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by slip-resistive aggregate manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
  4. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or abrasive stone and water to expose nonslip aggregate.
- D. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  1. Uniformly spread dry-shake hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft., unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match paving color required.
  2. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over the concrete surface with mechanical spreader; allow hardener to absorb moisture and embed it by power floating. Follow power floating with a second application of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed hardener by final power floating.
  3. After final power floating, apply a hand-trowel finish followed by a broom finish.
  4. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.

### **3.09 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING**

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.

- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound or a combination of these as follows:
  - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

### **3.10 PAVING TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
  - 1. Elevation: 3/4 inch.
  - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch.
  - 4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches of tie bar.
  - 5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch.
  - 6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch.

7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches of dowel.
8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### **3.11 PAVEMENT MARKING**

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Engineer.
- B. Allow concrete paving to cure for a minimum of 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
  1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.
  2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

### **3.12 CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.

4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
  - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Engineer, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Engineer but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Engineer.
- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.13 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Engineer.



- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Engineer when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

**END OF SECTION 321313**



## **SECTION 321373**

### **CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cold-applied joint sealants.
  - 2. Hot-applied joint sealants.
  - 3. Cold-applied, fuel-resistant joint sealants.
  - 4. Hot-applied, fuel-resistant joint sealants.
  - 5. Joint-sealant backer materials.
  - 6. Primers.

##### **1.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at the location determined by the Owner.

##### **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch wide joints formed between two 6-inch long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Paving-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

##### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory.

##### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.

## **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

### **2.02 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM D 5893/D 5893M, Type NS.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafco Inc; RoadSaver Silicone.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 888.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 301 NS.
- B. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM D 5893/D 5893M, Type SL.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafco Inc; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 300 SL.

- C. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Meadows, W.R.,Inc; Pourthane NS.
- D. Single Component, Pourable, Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Meadows, W.R.,Inc; Pourthane SL.
- E. Multicomponent, Pourable, Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatred, Dynatrol II-SG, Urexpan NR-200.

## **2.03 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690, Type I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafco Inc; Asphalt Rubber Plus, Asphalt Rubber Plus Type 2, RoadSaver 203, RoadSaver 211, RoadSaver 515.
    - b. Meadows, W.R.,Inc; Sealtight 1190, Sealtight 164.
    - c. Right Pointe.
- B. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690, Type I or Type II.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafco Inc; RoadSaver 201, RoadSaver 220, RoadSaver 221, RoadSaver 534.
    - b. Right Pointe; JTS 3405 Parking Lot Sealant 007, JTS 3405 Rubber 009.
- C. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690, Type I, II, or III.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafco Inc; RoadSaver 222.

- b. Meadows, W.R.,Inc; Sealtight 3405.
    - c. Right Pointe; JTS 3405 Regular 003, JTS 3405 Rubber 009.
  - D. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690, Type IV.
    - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Crafco Inc; RoadSaver 231.
      - b. Meadows, W.R.,Inc; Sealtight 3405M.

#### **2.04 COLD-APPLIED, FUEL-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Fuel-Resistant, Single-Component, Pourable, Modified-Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonomeric 1.
- B. Fuel-Resistant, Multicomponent, Pourable, Modified-Urethane, Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 12-1/2 or 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Meadows, W.R.,Inc; Sealtight Gardox.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-300.

#### **2.05 HOT-APPLIED, FUEL-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Hot-Applied, Fuel-Resistant, Single-Component Joint Sealants: ASTM D 7116, Type I or Type II.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafco Inc; Superseal 1614A, Superseal 444/777.
- B. Hot-Applied, Fuel-Resistant, Single-Component Joint Sealants: ASTM D 7116, Type III.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafco Inc; Superseal Low-Mod.

#### **2.06 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS**

- A. Joint-Sealant Backer Materials: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- D. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

## **2.07 PRIMERS**

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine joints to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Before installing joint sealants, clean out joints immediately to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions.
- C. Install joint-sealant backings to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install joint sealants immediately following backing installation, using proven techniques that comply with the following:
  - 1. Place joint sealants so they fully contact joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
  - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

#### **3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean off excess joint sealant as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturers.
- B. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such



protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

### **3.05 PAVING-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE**

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints within concrete paving[ <PJS-#>].
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Expansion and isolation joints in concrete paving.
    - b. Contraction joints in concrete paving.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Single-component, nonsag, silicone joint sealant.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints within concrete paving and between concrete and asphalt paving.
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Joints between concrete and asphalt paving.
    - b. Joints between concrete curbs and asphalt paving.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Hot-applied, single-component joint sealant.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Fuel-resistant joints within concrete paving.
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Expansion and isolation joints in concrete paving.
    - b. Contraction joints in concrete paving.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Fuel-resistant, single-component, pourable, modified-urethane, elastomeric joint sealant.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard.

**END OF SECTION 321373**



## SECTION 321413

### CONCRETE PAVER MATERIALS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following:
1. Concrete Pavers
  2. Joint Sand
  3. Setting Bed Sand
  4. Base Aggregate
  5. [Subbase Aggregate](#)

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

Note: Design street, industrial, port and airport pavement thicknesses in consultation with a qualified civil engineer, in accordance with established flexible pavement design procedures, LOCKPAVE® software, and in accordance with Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute Technical Bulletins. Sample construction detail drawings are available from Unilock®. This specification may require modifications.

- A. ASTM International, latest edition:
1. C 33, Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
  2. C 136, Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.
  3. C 140, Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units.
  4. C 144 Standard Specifications for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
  5. D 448, Standard Classification for Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction.
  6. C 936, Standard Specification for Solid Concrete Interlocking Paving Units.
  7. C 979, Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.
  8. D 698 Test Methods for Moisture Density Relations of Soil and Soil Aggregate Mixtures Using a 5.5 lb (24.4 N) Rammer and 12 in. (305 mm) drop.
  9. D 1557 Test Methods for Moisture Density Relations of Soil and Soil Aggregate Mixtures Using a 10-lb (44.5 N) Rammer and 18 in. (457 mm) drop.

10. C1645 Standard Test Method for Freeze-thaw and De-icing Salt Durability of Solid Concrete Interlocking Paving Units
  11. D 2940 Graded Aggregate Material for Bases or Subbases for Highways or Airports.
  12. D 4632, Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles
  13. D 4533, Standard Test Method for Index Trapezoidal Tearing Strength of Geotextiles
  14. D 4833, Standard Test Method for Index Puncture Resistance of Geotextiles, Geomembranes and Related Products
  15. D 4491, Standard Test Method for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
  16. D 4751, Standard Test Method for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile
- Note: In order to determine the latest version of the listed specifications and standards, please consult the ASTM web page ([www.astm.com](http://www.astm.com))

- B. U.S. Green Building Council Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED)
1. Building Design + Construction, latest edition

### **1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Concrete Pavers:
1. Samples for verification: Three representative full-size samples of each paver type, thickness, color and finish that indicate the range of color variation and texture expected upon project completion.
  2. Accepted samples become the standard of acceptance for the product produced.
  3. Test results from an independent testing laboratory for compliance of concrete pavers with ASTM C 936.
  4. Manufacturer's catalog product data, installation instructions, and material safety data sheets for the safe handling of the specified materials and products.
- B. Joint and Setting Bed Sand:
1. Provide three representative one pound samples in containers of Joint Sand materials.
  2. Provide three representative one pound samples in containers of Setting Bed Sand materials.
  3. Test results from an independent testing laboratory for sieve analysis per ASTM C 136 conforming to the grading requirements of ASTM C 144.
- C. Polymeric Joint Sand:
1. Test results from an independent testing laboratory for sieve analysis per ASTM C 136 conforming to the grading requirements of ASTM C 144.

2. Samples for Initial Selection: Provide three representative samples in containers of Polymeric Joint Sand material, cured and dried, for color selection.
  3. Samples for Verification: Provide three one pound samples in containers of Polymeric Joint Sand.
- D. Base and Subbase Aggregate:
1. Test results from an independent testing laboratory for sieve analysis per ASTM C 136.
- E. Paving Installation Contractor:
1. Job references from a minimum of three projects similar in size and complexity. Provide Owner/Client/General Contractor names, postal address, phone, fax, and email address.

#### **1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Utilize a Manufacturer having at least ten years of experience manufacturing concrete pavers on projects of similar nature or project size.
- B. Source Limitations:
1. Obtain Concrete Pavers from one source location with the resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
  2. Obtain Joint and Setting Bed Sands from one source with the resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
  3. Obtain Polymeric Joint Sand from one source with the resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- C. Paving Contractor Qualifications:
1. Utilize an installer having successfully completed concrete paver installation similar in design, material, and extent indicated on this project.
- D. Mockups:
1. Install a 5 ft x 5 ft paver area per each paving pattern.
  2. Use this area to determine surcharge of the Setting Bed Sand layer, joint sizes, lines, laying pattern(s) and levelness. This area will serve as the standard by which the workmanship will be judged.
  3. Subject to acceptance by owner, mock-up may be retained as part of finished work.
  4. If mock-up is not retained, remove and dispose legally.

#### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING**

- A. In accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Product Requirement Section.

- B. Deliver Concrete Pavers in manufacturer's original, unopened and undamaged container packaging with identification labels intact.
  - 1. Coordinate delivery and paving schedule to minimize interference with normal use of streets and sidewalks adjacent to paver installation.
  - 2. Deliver Concrete Pavers to the site in steel banded, plastic banded or plastic wrapped packaging capable of transfer by forklift or clamp lift.
  - 3. Unload Concrete Pavers at job site in such a manner that no damage occurs to the product or adjacent surfaces.
- C. Store and protect materials free from mud, dirt and other foreign materials.
- D. Prevent Joint and Setting Bed Sand from exposure to rainfall or removal by wind with secure, waterproof covering.
- E. Store Polymeric Joint Sand on elevated platforms, under a cover and/or in a dry location.

#### **1.06 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Requirements:
  - 1. Install Concrete Pavers only on unfrozen and dry Setting Bed Sand.
  - 2. Install Setting Bed Sand only on unfrozen and dry Base or Subbase Aggregate materials.
  - 3. Install Base or Subbase Aggregates only over unfrozen subgrade.
  - 4. Install Setting Bed Sand or Concrete Pavers when no heavy rain or snowfall are forecast within 24 hours.
- B. Weather Limitations for Polymeric Jointing Sand:
  - 1. Install Polymeric Joint Sand only when ambient temperature is above 40°F (5°C), under dry conditions with no rain forecast for 24 hours and when surface of pavement is completely dry.

#### **1.07 CONCRETE PAVER OVERAGE AND ATTIC STOCK**

- A. Provide a minimum of 5% additional material for overage to be used during construction.
- B. Contractor to provide 100 square feet of each product and size used to owner for maintenance and repair. Furnish Pavers from the same production run as installed materials.
- C. Manufacture to supply maintenance and reinstatement manuals for Concrete Paver units.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

## 2.01 CONCRETE PAVERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The Concrete Paver shapes are based on:
1. Unilock:
    - a. ECO-PROMENADE®
  2. As manufactured by:

Unilock

12591 Emerson Dr., Brighton, MI 48116

Contact: Emily Moed email: emily.moed@unilock.com
  3. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 – Product Requirements
- B. Product requirements:
1. Concrete Paver Type 1: ECO-PROMENADE®
    - a. Finish: Umbriano – Mottled
    - b. Color: WINTER MARVEL
    - c. Edge: Rounded Bevel Edge
    - d. Size: Manufacture the sizes indicated with a maximum tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch for length and width. Maximum height tolerance of plus or minus 1/8 inch.
    - e. 3 7/8 x 11 7/8 x 3 1/8" (100 x 300 x 80mm)
      - 1) Note: Imperial dimensions are nominal equivalents to the metric dimensions
- C. Provide pavers meeting the minimum material and physical properties set forth in ASTM C 936, Standard Specification for Interlocking Concrete Paving Units. Efflorescence is not a cause for rejection.
1. Average compressive strength 8000 psi (55MPa) with no individual unit under 7,200 psi (50 MPa).
  2. Average absorption of 5% with no unit greater than 7% when tested according to ASTM C 140.
  3. Conforming to ASTM C 1645 when tested for freeze-thaw requirements.
  4. Height tolerances +/- 3.2 mm (1/8 in).

Note: Efflorescence is a whitish powder-like deposit that sometimes appears on concrete products. Calcium hydroxide and other water-soluble materials form or are present during the hydration of Portland cement. Pore water becomes saturated with

these materials, and diffuses to the surface of the concrete. When this water evaporates, the soluble materials remain as a whitish deposit on the concrete surface. The calcium hydroxide is converted to calcium carbonate during a reaction with carbon dioxide from the atmosphere. The calcium carbonate is difficult to remove with water. However, the efflorescence will wear off with time, and it is advisable to wait a few months before attempting to remove any efflorescence. Commercially available cleaners can be used, provided directions are carefully followed. Some cleaners contain acids that may alter the color of the pavers.

- D. Accept only pigments in concrete pavers conforming to ASTM C 979.
  - 1. Note: ACI Report No. 212.3R provides guidance on the use of pigments.
- E. Maximum allowable breakage of product is 5%.

## 2.02 JOINT SAND

- A. Provide natural Joint Sand as follows:
  - 1. Washed, clean, non-plastic, free from deleterious or foreign matter, symmetrically shaped, natural or manufactured from crushed rock.
  - 2. Do not use limestone screenings, stone dust, or sand for the Joint Sand material that does not conform to the grading requirements of ASTM C 33.
  - 3. Utilize sands that are as hard as practically available where concrete pavers are subject to vehicular traffic.
  - 4. Gradation as shown in Table 1 below:

**TABLE 1 – JOINT SAND**

**GRADATION REQUIREMENTS FOR JOINT SAND**

ASTM C 144		
Sieve Size	Natural Sand Percent Passing	Manufactured Sand Percent Passing
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	100	100
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	95 to 100	95 to 100



No. 16 (1.18 mm)	70 to 100	70 to 100
No. 30 (0.600 mm)	40 to 75	40 to 75
No. 50 (0.300 mm)	10 to 30	20 to 40
No. 100 (0.150 mm)	2 to 15	10 to 25
No. 200 (0.075)	0 to 1	0 to 10

## 2.03 POLYMERIC JOINT SAND

### A. Provide Polymeric Joint Sand as manufactured by:

1. Alliance Gator G2
  - a. Product Type: Dry mix, contains polymeric binding agent, activated with water.
  - b. Color: (Insert color Beige, Slate Grey, Ivory or Black Diamond)
2. Unicare HP Polymeric Max Sand
  - a. Product Type: Dry mix, contains polymeric binding agent, activated with water.
  - b. Color: (Insert color Grey, Tan or custom)
3. Polybind G2 Complete (Nevada Tan, Oxford Grey, Jet Black, Ivory White)

### B. Provide Polymeric Joint Sand meeting the minimum material and physical properties as follows:

1. Compression Strength: proven resistance to compression of 300 PSI minimum after drying for 7 days under controlled conditions (73°F (23°C) at 50% humidity).
  - a. Test sand sample shape: cylinder (2" (5 cm) dia. X 4" (10 cm) high).
2. Gradation as shown Table 1 above.

## 2.04 SETTING BED SAND

### A. Provide Setting Bed Sand as follows:

1. Washed, clean, non-plastic, free from deleterious or foreign matter, symmetrically shaped, natural or manufactured from crushed rock.
2. Do not use limestone screenings, stone dust, or sand material that does not conform to conform to the grading requirements of ASTM C 33.
3. Do not use mason sand or sand conforming to ASTM C 144.
4. Utilize sands that are as hard as practically available where concrete pavers are subject to vehicular traffic.

- a. Conform to the grading requirements of ASTM C 33 with modifications as shown in Table 2 below:

**TABLE 2 – SETTING BED SAND**

**GRADATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SETTING BED SAND**

<b>ASTM C 33</b>	
<b>Sieve Size</b>	<b>Percent Passing</b>
3/8 in (9.5 mm)	100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	95 to 100
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	85 to 100
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	50 to 85
No. 30 (0.600 mm)	25 to 60
No. 50 (0.300 mm)	10 to 30
No. 100 (0.150 mm)	2 to 10
No. 200 (0.075)	0 to 1

Note: Coarser sand than that specified in Table 1 above may be used for joint sand including C 33 material as shown in Table 2. Use material where the largest sieve size easily enters the smallest joints. For example, if the smallest paver joints are 2 mm wide, use sand 2 mm and smaller in particle size. If C 33 sand is used for joint sand, extra effort may be required in sweeping material and compacting the pavers in order to completely fill the joints.

**2.05 BASE AGGREGATE (REMOVE TABLE 3 BELOW IF INCLUDED IN OTHER SECTIONS SUCH AS “EARTHWORK” OR “POUR-IN-PLACE CONCRETE” AND REFERENCE THE SPECIFICATION SECTION)**

- A. Provide Base Aggregate materials conforming to ASTM D 2940 and gradation requirements as presented in Table 3.

**TABLE 3**  
**BASE AGGREGATE**  
**GRADATION REQUIREMENTS**

<b>ASTM D 2940</b>	
<b>Sieve Size</b>	<b>Percent Passing</b>
2 in (50 mm)	100
1-1/2 in (37.5 mm)	95 to 100
3/4 in (19 mm)	70 to 92
3/8 in (9.5 mm)	50 to 70
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	35 to 55
No. 30 (600 µm)	12 to 25
No. 200 (75 µm)	0 to 8*

\* In order to prevent damage by frost heaving, it may be necessary to limit the percentages of material passing the No. 200 sieve to less than shown in the tables.

## **2.06 SUBBASE**

- B. Provide Subbase Aggregate as designed per the structure engineer.

## **2.06 GEOTEXTILE**

- A. Provide Geotextile material conforming to the following performance characteristics, measured per the test methods referenced:
1. 4 oz., nonwoven needle punched geotextile composed of 100% polypropylene staple fibers that are inert to biological degradation and resists naturally encountered chemicals, alkalis, and acids.
  2. Grab Tensile Strength: ASTM D 4632: 115 lbs.
  3. Grab Tensile Elongation: ASTM D 4632: 50%
  4. Trapezoidal Tear: ASTM D 4533: 50 lbs.
  5. Puncture: ASTM D 4833: 65 lbs.
  6. Apparent Opening Size: ASTM D 4751: 0.212 mm, 70 U.S. Sieve

7. Permittivity: ASTM D 4491: 2.0 sec -1
8. Flow Rate: ASTM D 4491: 140 gal/min/s.f.
- B. As supplied by Unilock
  - Contact: Shaun Breuer, 12591 Emerson Dr. Brighton, MI 48116 (248)-388-5833
1. Carthage Mills – FX-40HS
2. U.S. Fabrics
3. Mirafi
4. Gator Fabric

## 2.07 EDGE RESTRAINTS

- A. Concrete Edge Restraint as indicated.
- B. Plastic and Metal Edge Restraints:
  1. Permaloc, [www.permaloc.com](http://www.permaloc.com)
    - a. Material Type: Aluminum
    - b. Model No.: 3 inch GeoEdge capture plate and geogrid
  2. SEK Surebond
    - a. Model No.: 8 feet PermEdge with attached geogrid
  3. Snap Edge
    - a. Material Type: Plastic
    - b. Model No.: One Piece Edging, 96 inches
  4. Pave Tech
    - a. Material Type: Plastic
    - b. Model No.: Pave Edge Rigid, Pave Edge Flexible, Pave Edge Industrial
  5. Polybind Edge
    - a. Material Type: Plastic
    - b. Rigid 33
    - c. Flex 34
  6. Alliance Gator Edge
    - a. Material Type: Plastic
    - b. Rigid
    - c. Flex

Note: The provision of suitable edge restraints is critical to the satisfactory performance of

interlocking concrete block pavement. Abut pavers tightly against the restraints to prevent rotation under load and any consequent spreading of joints. Install sufficiently stable edge restraints that are, in addition to providing suitable edge support for the paver units, able to withstand the impact of temperature changes, vehicular traffic and/or snow removal equipment.

Curbs, gutters or curbed gutter, constructed to the dimensions of municipal standards (noting that these standards generally refer to cast-in-place concrete sections), are considered to be acceptable edge restraints for heavy duty installations. Where extremely heavy industrial equipment is involved such as container handling equipment, review the flexural strength of the edge restraint carefully particularly if a section that is flush with the surface is used and may be subjected to high point loading.

## **2.08 ACCESSORIES**

- A. [Cleaners] [Sealers] [Joint sand stabilizers]
  - 1. Supplier: Unilock (12591 Emerson Dr., Brighton, MI 48116)
    - a. Contact: (Emily Moed email: [emily.moed@unilock.com](mailto:emily.moed@unilock.com))

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas indicated to receive paving for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance for the following items before placing the Concrete Pavers.
  - 1. Verify that subgrade preparation, compacted density and elevations conform to specified requirements.
  - 2. [Verify that Geotextiles, if applicable, have been placed according to drawings and specifications.](#)
  - 3. Verify that the Base [and Subbase](#) Aggregate materials, thickness, compacted density, surface tolerances and elevations conform to specified requirements.
  - 4. Provide written density test results for soil subgrade, Base [and Subbase](#) Aggregate materials to the Owner, General Contractor and paver installation subcontractor.
  - 5. Verify location, type, and elevations of edge restraints, concrete curbing, concrete collars around utility structures, and drainage inlets.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Beginning of Bedding Sand and Concrete Paver installation signifies acceptance of Base and edge restraints.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that the subgrade soil is free from standing water.
- B. Stockpile Setting Bed Sand, Joint Sand, Base and Subbase Aggregate materials such that they are free from standing water, uniformly graded, free of any organic material or sediment, debris, and ready for placement.
- C. Remove any excess thickness of soil applied over the excavated soil subgrade to trap sediment from adjacent construction activities before placing the Geotextile and Subbase Aggregate materials.
- D. Keep area where pavement is to be constructed free from sediment during entire job. Remove and replace all Geotextile, Joint Sand, Setting Bed Sand, Base and Subbase Aggregate materials contaminated with sediment with clean materials.
- E. Complete all subdrainage of underground services within the pavement area in conjunction with subgrade preparation and before the commencement of Base or Subbase Aggregate construction.
- F. Prevent to damage underdrain pipes, overflow pipes, observation wells, or inlets and other drainage appurtenances during installation. Report all damage immediately.
- G. Compact soil subgrade uniformly to at least 95 percent of Standard Proctor Density per ASTM D 698 for pedestrian areas. Compact soil subgrade uniformly to at least 98 percent Modified Proctor per ASTM D 1557 for vehicular areas. Stabilization of the subgrade and/or base material may be necessary with weak or saturated subgrade soils.
- H. Backfill all service trenches within the pavement area to the sub-grade level with approved material placed in uniform lifts not exceeding 4 in. (100 mm) loose thickness. Compact each lift to at least 100 percent Standard Proctor Density as specified in ASTM D 698.
- I. Trim the subgrade to within 0 to ½ in. (0 to 13mm) of the specified grades. Do not deviate the surface of the prepared subgrade by more than 3/8 in. (10mm) from the bottom edge of a 39 in. (1m) straight edge laid in any direction.
- J. Proof-roll prepared subgrade according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

- K. Do not proceed with further pavement construction, under any circumstances, until the subgrade has been inspected by the Architect/Engineer.

Note: Base compaction of the subgrade soil on the recommendations of the Design Engineer. Request the Architect/Engineer to inspect subgrade preparations, elevations and conduct density tests for conformance to specifications.

Note: Mechanical tampers (jumping jacks) are recommended for compaction of soil subgrade and aggregate base around lamp standards, utility structures, building edges, curbs, tree wells and other protrusions. Compact areas, not accessible to roller compaction equipment, to the specified density with mechanical tampers. **CAUTION** – Proceed with care around the perimeters of excavations, buildings, curbs, etc. These areas are especially prone to consolidation and settlement. Do not place wedges of backfill in these areas. If possible particularly in these areas, proceed with backfilling and compacting in shallow lifts, parallel to the finished surface.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

#### A. EDGE RESTRAINTS

1. Provide concrete edge restraints as indicated.
  - a. Install job-built concrete edge restraints to comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - b. Provide concrete edge restraint along the perimeter of all paving as indicated. Install the face of the concrete edge restraint, where it abuts pavers vertical down to the subbase.
  - c. Construct concrete edge restraint to dimensions and level specified and support on a compacted subbase not less than 6 in (150 mm) thick.
2. Provide plastic or metal edge restraints as indicated. (Delete if not being used).
  - a. Provide plastic or metal edge restraints along the perimeter of all paving as indicated and supported on a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) of Base Aggregate.
  - b. Provide 10" spiral galvanized or stainless steel spike to fasten plastic edge restraint at 24 inches on center for straight sections and 12 inches on center for curved sections.

#### B. GEOTEXTILES (Delete if not being used).

1. Provide separation geotextile on bottom and sides of prepared soil subgrade. Secure in place to prevent wrinkling or folding from equipment tires and tracks.
2. Overlap ends and edges a minimum of 18 in. (450 mm) in the direction of drainage.

#### C. BASE AND SUBBASE AGGREGATE

1. Provide the Subbase Aggregate in uniform lifts not exceeding 6 in., (150 mm) loose thickness and compact to at least 100 percent Standard Proctor Density as per ASTM D 698.
2. Compact the Subbase Aggregate material with at least two passes in the vibratory mode then at least two in the static mode with a minimum 10 ton vibratory roller until there is no visible movement. Do not crush aggregate with the roller.
3. Tolerance: Do not exceed the specified surface grade of the compacted Subbase Aggregate material more than  $\pm 3/4$  in. (20 mm) over a 10 ft. (3 m) long straightedge laid in any direction.
4. Provide the Base Aggregate material in uniform lifts not exceeding 6 in. (150 mm) over the compacted Subbase Aggregate (or Subgrade) material and compact to at least 100 percent Standard Proctor Density as per ASTM D 698.
5. Compact the Base Aggregate material with at least two passes in the vibratory mode then at least two in the static mode with a minimum 10 ton vibratory roller until there is no visible movement. Do not crush aggregate with the roller.
6. Tolerance: Do not exceed the specified surface grade of the compacted Base Aggregate material more than  $\pm 3/8$  in. (10 mm) over a 10 ft. (3 m) long straightedge laid in any direction.
7. Compact and grade the upper surface of the base sufficiently to prevent infiltration of the bedding sand into the base both during construction and throughout its service life. Blend segregated areas of the granular base by the application of crushed fines that have been watered and compacted into the surface.

D. SETTING BED SAND

1. Provide, spread and screed Setting Bed Sand evenly over the compacted Base Aggregate course.
  - a. Protect screeded Setting Bed Sand from being disturbed by either pedestrian or vehicular traffic.
  - b. Screed only the area which can be covered by pavers in one day.
  - c. Do not use Setting Bed Sand material to fill depressions in the base surface.
2. Keep moisture content constant and density loose and constant until Concrete Pavers are set and compacted.
3. Screed Setting Bed Sand using either an approved mechanical spreader (e.g.: an asphalt paver) or by the use of screed rails and boards. Maintain in a loose condition slightly ahead of the paving units and fully protect against incidental compaction following

Unilock Non-Permeable



screeding. Loosen compacted sand by rain or screeded sand left overnight before further paving units are placed.

4. Inspect the Setting Bed Sand course prior to commencing the placement of the Concrete Pavers. Acceptance of the Setting Bed Sand occurs with the initiation of Concrete Paver placement.

#### E. CONCRETE PAVERS

1. Replace Concrete Pavers with chips, cracks, voids, discolorations, and other defects that might be visible in finished work.
2. Mix Concrete Pavers from a minimum of three (3) bundles simultaneously drawing the paver vertically rather than horizontally, as they are placed, to produce uniform blend of colors and textures. (Color variation occurs with all concrete products. This phenomenon is influenced by a variety of factors, e.g. moisture content, curing conditions, different aggregates and, most commonly, from different production runs. By installing from a minimum of three (3) bundles simultaneously, variation in color is dispersed and blended throughout the project).
3. Exercise care in handling face mix concrete pavers to prevent surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units.
4. Provide Concrete Pavers using laying pattern as indicated. Adjust laying pattern at pavement edges such that cutting of edge pavers is minimized. Cut all pavers exposed to vehicular tires no smaller than one-third of a whole paver.
5. Use string lines or chalk lines on Setting Bed Sand to hold all pattern lines true.
6. Set paver surface elevation a minimum of 3 mm (1/8 inch) to a maximum of 6 mm (1/4 inch) above adjacent drainage inlets, concrete collars or channels (provided the change in slope does not impede or alter the drainage or direction of flow).
7. Place units hand tight against spacer bars. Adjust horizontal placement of laid pavers to align straight.
  - a. When installation is performed with mechanical equipment, use only unit pavers with spacer bars on sides of each unit.
8. Provide space between paver units of 1/32 in. (1 mm) wide to achieve straight bond lines.
9. Prevent joint (bond) lines from shifting more than  $\pm 1/2$  in. ( $\pm 13$  mm) over 50 ft. (15 m) from string lines.
10. Fill gaps between units or at edges of the paved area that exceed 3/8 inch (10 mm) with pieces cut to fit from full-size unit pavers.

11. Cut Concrete Pavers with motor-driven masonry saw equipment to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units to provide pattern indicated and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible. Hammer cutting is not acceptable.
12. Prevent all traffic on installed Concrete Pavers until Joint Sand has been vibrated into joints. Keep skid steer and forklift equipment off newly laid Concrete Pavers that have not received initial compaction and Joint Sand material.
13. Vibrate Concrete Pavers into leveling course with a low-amplitude plate vibrator capable of a to 5000-lbf (22-kN) compaction force at 80 to 90 Hz. Perform at least three passes across paving with vibrator. Vibrate under the following conditions:
  - a. After edge pavers are installed and there is a completed surface or before surface is exposed to rain.
  - b. Compact installed Concrete Pavers to within 6 feet (2 meters) of the laying face before ending each day's work. Cover Concrete Pavers that have not been compacted and leveling course on which pavers have not been placed, with nonstaining plastic sheets to prevent Setting Bed Sand from becoming disturbed.
14. Protect face mix Concrete Paver surface from scuffing during compaction by utilizing a urethane pad.
15. Remove any cracked or structurally damaged Concrete Pavers and replace with new units prior to installing Joint Sand material.

**F. JOINT SAND**

1. Provide, spread and sweep dry Joint Sand into joints immediately after vibrating pavers into Setting Bed Sand course until full. Vibrate pavers and add Joint Sand material until joints are completely filled, then remove excess material. This will require at least 4 passes with a plate compactor.
2. Leave all work to within 3 ft. (1 m) of the laying face fully compacted with sand-filled joints at the completion of each day.
3. Remove excess Joint Sand broom clean from surface when installation is complete.
4. Polymeric Joint Sand
  - a. Install Polymeric Joint Sand per manufacturers recommended instructions.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Verify final elevations for conformance to the drawings after sweeping the surface clean.

1. Prevent final Concrete Paver finished grade elevations from deviating more than  $\pm 3/8$  in. ( $\pm 10$  mm) under a 10 ft (3 m) straightedge or indicated slope, for finished surface of paving.
- B. Lippage: Paver-to-Paver Lippage:
  1. No greater than 3 mm (1/8 inch) difference in height between adjacent pavers.  
*Note: The industry standard acceptable lippage between adjacent pavers is 3 mm (1/8 inch). Achieving a completely flush paver surface is most desirable but may be unattainable depending on factors such as paver type, setting bed materials or depth, ASTM manufacturing standards or other specific project needs. Consult with your Unilock representative to determine the best approach for a reasonable lippage tolerance on each project.*

### 3.05 REPAIRING, CLEANING AND SEALING

- A. Remove and replace unit pavers that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in same manner as original units, with same joint treatment and with no evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: Remove excess dirt, debris, stains, grit, etc. from exposed paver surfaces; wash and scrub clean.
  1. Clean Concrete Pavers in accordance with the manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. [Seal as indicated](#). (If not indicated elsewhere in the contract documents, sealing is not required and remove this section 3.05, C.)
  1. Apply Sealer for Permeable Concrete Pavers in accordance with the sealer and paver manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect completed work from damage due to subsequent construction activity on the site.

**END OF SECTION 3121413**

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---

## **SECTION 321723**

### **PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes painted markings applied to asphalt pavement.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for painting exterior concrete surfaces other than pavement.
  - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting interior concrete surfaces other than pavement.

##### **1.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to marking pavement including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pavement aging period before application of pavement markings.
    - b. Review requirements for protecting pavement markings, including restriction of traffic during installation period.

##### **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
- B. Shop Drawings: For pavement markings.
  - 1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
  - 2. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

##### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Michigan DOT for pavement-marking work.

1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

## **1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for alkyd materials and 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Aexcel Inc.
2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
3. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings.
4. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
5. Conco Paints.
6. Coronado Paint; Division of INSL-X Products Corporation.
7. Diamond Vogel Paints.
8. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
9. Ennis Traffic Safety Solutions, Inc.
10. Frazee Paint.
11. General Paint.
12. Kwal Paint.
13. M.A.B. Paints.
14. McCormick Paints.
15. Miller Paint.
16. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.
17. PPG Industries.
18. Pratt & Lambert.
19. Rodda Paint Co.
20. Rohm and Haas Company; a subsidiary of The Dow Chemical Company.

21. Scott Paint Company.
22. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

## **2.02 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT**

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.
  1. Color: White

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that pavement is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PAVEMENT MARKING**

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for a minimum of 28 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
  1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to pavement. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond the stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath the stencil.
  2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

### **3.03 PROTECTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION 321723**

---

P24006 WARREN LIBRARY  
Warren, Michigan

ITB-W-1478

100% CD Permit and Bid  
03-14-2025

---



## **SECTION 321726**

### **TACTILE WARNING SURFACING**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cast-in-place detectable warning tiles.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete walkways serving as substrates for tactile warning surfacing.

##### **1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish requiring color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of tactile warning surface, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated, showing edge condition, truncated-dome pattern, texture, color, and cross section; with fasteners and anchors.

##### **1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For tactile warning surfacing, to include in maintenance manuals.

##### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

##### **1.06 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

##### **1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.
- B. Weather Limitations for Adhesive Application:
  - 1. Apply adhesive only when ambient temperature is above 50 deg F and when temperature has not been below 35 deg F for 12 hours immediately before application. Do not apply when substrate is wet or contains excess moisture.
- C. Weather Limitations for Mortar and Grout:
  - 1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  - 2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602. Provide artificial shade and windbreaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F and higher.
    - a. When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F, or when wind velocity exceeds 8 mph and ambient temperature exceeds 90 deg F, set unit pavers within 1 minute of spreading setting-bed mortar.

## **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of tactile warning surfaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering and wear.
    - b. Separation or delamination of materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING, GENERAL**

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for tactile warning surfaces.
  - 1. For tactile warning surfaces composed of multiple units, provide units that when installed provide consistent side-to-side and end-to-end dome spacing that complies with requirements.

## **2.02 DETECTABLE WARNING TILES**

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning tiles with replaceable surface configured for setting flush in new concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes and field of tile.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. East Jordan Iron Works.
  - 2. Material: Cast Iron
  - 3. Shapes and Sizes:
    - a. Rectangular panel, 24 by 48 inches.
    - b. Radius panel, nominal 24 inches deep by 6-foot outside radius.
  - 4. Dome Spacing and Configuration: Manufacturer's standard compliant spacing, in manufacturer's standard pattern.
  - 5. Mounting:
    - a. Permanently embedded detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that installation of tactile warning surfacing will comply with accessibility requirements upon completion.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION OF TACTILE WARNING SURFACING**

- A. General: Prepare substrate and install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place tactile warning surfacing units in dimensions and orientation indicated. Comply with location requirements of AASHTO MP 12.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNING TILES**

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles:

1. Concrete Paving Installation: Comply with installation requirements in Section 321313 "Concrete Paving." Mix, place, and finish concrete to conditions complying with detectable warning tile manufacturer's written requirements for satisfactory embedment of tile.
2. Set each detectable warning tile accurately and firmly in place and completely seat tile back and embedments in wet concrete by tamping or vibrating. If necessary, temporarily apply weight to tiles to ensure full contact with concrete.
3. Set surface of tile flush with surrounding concrete and adjacent tiles, with variations between tiles and between concrete and tiles not exceeding plus or minus 1/8 inch from flush.
4. Protect exposed surfaces of installed tiles from contact with wet concrete. Complete finishing of concrete paving surrounding tiles. Remove concrete from tile surfaces.
5. Clean tiles using methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.

#### **3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove and replace tactile warning surfacing that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Engineer. Replace using tactile warning surfacing installation methods acceptable to Engineer.
- B. Protect tactile warning surfacing from damage and maintain free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material.

**END OF SECTION 321726**

**SECTION 329200**

**TURF AND GRASSES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Seeding.
  - 2. Hydroseeding.
  - 3. Sodding.
  - 4. Plugging.
  - 5. Sprigging.
  - 6. Meadow grasses and wildflowers.
  - 7. Turf renovation.
  - 8. Erosion-control material(s).
  - 9. Grass paving.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 329300 "Plants" for trees, shrubs, ground covers, and other plants as well as border edgings and mow strips.
  - 2. Section 334600 "Subdrainage" for below-grade drainage of landscaped areas.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- B. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. Pesticides include insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. They also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
- C. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. Pests include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

- D. Planting Soil: Existing, on-site soil; imported soil; or manufactured soil that has been modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
- A. Subgrade: The surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

#### **1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project Site

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For landscape Installer.
- B. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture, stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.
  - 1. Certification of each seed mixture for turfgrass sod. Include identification of source and name and telephone number of supplier.
- C. Product Certificates: For fertilizers, from manufacturer.
- D. Pesticides and Herbicides: Product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project.

#### **1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of turf during a calendar year. Submit before expiration of required maintenance periods.

#### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer whose work has resulted in successful turf establishment.
  - 1. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the Professional Landcare Network or the American Nursery and Landscape Association.
  - 2. Experience: Three years' experience in turf installation in addition to requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
  - 3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.

4. Personnel Certifications: Installer's field supervisor shall have certification **in one of** the following categories from the Professional Landcare Network:
  - a. Landscape Industry Certified Technician - Exterior.
  - b. Landscape Industry Certified Lawncare Manager.
  - c. Landscape Industry Certified Lawncare Technician.

#### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of compliance with state and Federal laws, as applicable.
- B. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" sections in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Deliver sod within 24 hours of harvesting and in time for planting promptly. Protect sod from breakage and drying.
- C. Bulk Materials:
  1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
  2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials; discharge of soil-bearing water runoff; and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
  3. Accompany each delivery of bulk materials with appropriate certificates.

#### **1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with initial maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of planting completion
  1. Spring Planting: April 15<sup>th</sup> to June 1<sup>st</sup>
  2. Fall Planting: September 1<sup>st</sup> through October 1<sup>st</sup>
- B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 SEED**

- A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.
- B. Seed Species:
  - 1. Quality: Seed of grass species as listed below for solar exposure, with not less than 85 percent germination, not less than 95 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 weed seed:
  - 2. Full Sun: Bermudagrass (*Cynodon dactylon*).
  - 3. Full Sun: Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), a minimum of three cultivars.
  - 4. Sun and Partial Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
    - a. 50 percent Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*).
    - b. 30 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
    - c. 10 percent perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*).
    - d. 10 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
  - 5. Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
    - a. 50 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
    - b. 35 percent rough bluegrass (*Poa trivialis*).
    - c. 15 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
  - 6. Grass-Seed Mix: Proprietary seed mix as follows:

## **2.02 TURFGRASS SOD**

- A. Turfgrass Sod: Certified Number 1 Quality/Premium, including limitations on thatch, weeds, diseases, nematodes, and insects, complying with "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture that is strongly rooted and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted.
- B. Turfgrass Species: Sod of grass species as follows, with not less than 85 percent germination, not less than 95 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed:
  - 1. Full Sun: Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), a minimum of three cultivars.
  - 2. Sun and Partial Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
    - a. 50 percent Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*).
    - b. 30 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
    - c. 10 percent perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*).
    - d. 10 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).



3. Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
  - a. 50 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
  - b. 35 percent rough bluegrass (*Poa trivialis*).
  - c. 15 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).

## **2.03 FERTILIZERS**

- A. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:
  1. Composition: 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight.
  2. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
- B. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
  1. Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 10 percent potassium, by weight.
  2. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.

## **2.04 MULCHES**

- A. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.
- B. Sphagnum Peat Mulch: Partially decomposed sphagnum peat moss, finely divided or of granular texture, and with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8.
- C. Muck Peat Mulch: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent, and containing no sand.
- D. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 2 to 5 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:
  1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.

- 2. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
- E. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with a maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.
- F. Nonasphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.
- G. Asphalt Emulsion: ASTM D 977, Grade SS-1; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

## **2.05 PESTICIDES**

- A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by the EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

## **2.06 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS**

- A. Erosion-Control Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut-fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches long.
- B. Erosion-Control Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable burlap or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd. with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches long.
- C. Erosion-Control Mats: Cellular, nonbiodegradable slope-stabilization mats designed to isolate and contain small areas of soil over steeply sloped surface, of 3-inch nominal mat thickness. Include manufacturer's recommended anchorage system for slope conditions.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. Invisible Structures, Inc
    - b. Presto Products Company

- c. Tenax Corporation - USA
- d. North American Green

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting installation and performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
  - 2. Suspend planting operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
  - 3. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable or which is dusty.
  - 4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 5. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect structures; utilities; sidewalks; pavements; and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.
  - 1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding and hydromulching overspray.
  - 2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.
- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

### **3.03 TURF AREA PREPARATION**

- A. General: Prepare planting area for soil placement and mix planting soil.
- B. Placing Planting Soil: Place and mix planting soil in place over exposed subgrade
  - 1. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.
- C. Moistening prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

- D. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

### **3.04 PREPARATION FOR EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS**

- A. Prepare area as specified in "Turf Area Preparation" Article.
- B. For erosion-control mats, install planting soil in two lifts, with second lift equal to thickness of erosion-control mats. Install erosion-control mat and fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.
- C. Fill cells of erosion-control mat with planting soil and compact before planting.
- D. For erosion-control blanket or mesh, install from top of slope, working downward, and as recommended by material manufacturer for site conditions. Fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.
- E. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

### **3.05 SEEDING**

- A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph.
  - 1. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
  - 2. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
  - 3. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.
- B. Sow seed at a total rate of 2 lb/1000 sq. ft.
- C. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.
- D. Protect seeded areas with slopes exceeding 1:4 with erosion-control blankets installed and stapled according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Protect seeded areas with erosion-control mats where indicated on Drawings; install and anchor according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Protect seeded areas with slopes not exceeding 1:6 by spreading straw mulch. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons/acre to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches in loose thickness over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.
  - 1. Anchor straw mulch by crimping into soil with suitable mechanical equipment.

2. Bond straw mulch by spraying with asphalt emulsion at a rate of 10 to 13 gal./1000 sq. ft. Take precautions to prevent damage or staining of structures or other plantings adjacent to mulched areas. Immediately clean damaged or stained areas.
- G. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying compost mulch within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16 inch, and roll surface smooth.

### **3.06 HYDROSEEDING**

- A. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, commercial fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.
  1. Mix slurry with fiber-mulch manufacturer's recommended tackifier.
  2. Spray-apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply slurry at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 1500-lb/acre dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.
  3. Spray-apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a two-step process. Apply first slurry coat at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 500-lb/acre dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate. Apply slurry cover coat of fiber mulch (hydromulching) at a rate of 1000 lb/acre

### **3.07 SODDING**

- A. Lay sod within 24 hours of harvesting. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen or muddy.
- B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to soil or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with soil, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.
  1. Lay sod across slopes exceeding 1:3.
  2. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with wood pegs spaced as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than two anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.
- C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within two hours of planting. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below sod.

### **3.08 TURF MAINTENANCE**

- A. General: Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
  - 1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
  - 2. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
  - 3. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.
- B. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.
  - 1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
  - 2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.
- C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than one-third of grass height. Remove no more than one-third of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:
  - 1. Mow grass to a height of 1-1/2 to 2 inches.
- D. Turf Postfertilization: Apply commercial fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.
  - 1. Use fertilizer that provides actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. to turf area.

### **3.09 SATISFACTORY TURF**

- A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:
  - 1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10 sq. ft. and bare spots not exceeding 5 by 5 inches.

2. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities.
- B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements, and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

### **3.10 PESTICIDE APPLICATION**

- A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.
- B. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Nonselective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

### **3.11 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION**

- A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material, including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- C. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.
- D. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

### **3.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in "Turf Maintenance" Article. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established, but for not less than the following periods:
  1. Seeded Turf: 60 days from date of planting completion
    - a. When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or if turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.
  2. Sodded Turf: 30 days from date of planting completion.

**END OF SECTION 329200**

Turf and Grasses  
329200 - 11





---

## SECTION 32 93 00

### PLANTS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Plants.
  - 2. Planting soils.
  - 3. Landscape edgings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for protecting, trimming, pruning, repairing, and replacing existing trees to remain that interfere with, or are affected by, execution of the Work.
  - 2. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for turf (lawn) and meadow planting, hydroseeding, and erosion-control materials.

##### 1.03 ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowances for plants are specified in Division 01 Section "Allowances."
  - 1. Perform planting work under quantity allowances and only as authorized. Authorized work includes work required by Drawings and the Specifications and work authorized in writing by Architect.
  - 2. Notify Architect weekly of extent of work performed that is attributable to quantity allowances.
  - 3. Perform work that exceeds quantity allowances only as authorized by Change Orders.
- B. Furnish trees as part of tree allowance.

##### 1.04 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Division 01 Section "Unit Prices."
  - 1. Unit prices apply to authorized work covered by quantity allowances.
  - 2. Unit prices apply to additions to and deletions from Work as authorized by Change Orders.

## 1.05 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.
- B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.
- C. Balled and Potted Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown and placed, unbroken, in a container. Ball size is not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
- D. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
- E. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.
- F. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- G. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.
- H. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
- I. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired, or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
- J. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.
- K. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
- L. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.

- M. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.
- N. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.
- O. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.
- P. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.
- Q. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

#### **1.06 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including soils.
  - 1. Plant Materials: Include quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for plant materials.
  - 2. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to the Project.
  - 3. Plant Photographs: Include color photographs in digital 3- by 5-inch print format of each required species and size of plant material as it will be furnished to the Project. Take photographs from an angle depicting true size and condition of the typical plant to be furnished. Include a scale rod or other measuring device in each photograph. For species where more than 20 plants are required, include a minimum of three photographs showing the average plant, the best quality plant, and the worst quality plant to be furnished. Identify each photograph with the full scientific name of the plant, plant size, and name of the growing nursery.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each of the following:
  - 1. Organic Mulch: 1-quart volume of each organic mulch required; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.
  - 2. Weed Control Barrier: 12 by 12 inches.
  - 3. Edging Materials and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard size, to verify color selected.
  - 4. Tree Grates , Frames, and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard size delivered to the site for review, to verify design and color selected.

### **1.07 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified landscape Installer. Include list of similar projects completed by Installer demonstrating Installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners' contact persons.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of manufactured product, from manufacturer, and complying with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's certified analysis of standard products.
  - 2. Analysis of other materials by a recognized laboratory made according to methods established by the Association of Official Analytical Chemists, where applicable.
- C. Material Test Reports: For standardized ASTM D 5268 topsoil.
- D. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of plants during a calendar year. Submit before start of required maintenance periods.
- E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### **1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape Installer whose work has resulted in successful establishment of plants.
  - 1. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the Professional Landcare Network or the American Nursery and Landscape Association.
  - 2. Experience Five years' experience in landscape installation in addition to requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
  - 3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
  - 4. Personnel Certifications: Installer's field supervisor shall have certification in all of the following categories from the Professional Landcare Network:
    - a. Certified Landscape Technician - Exterior, with installation and maintenance specialty area(s), designated CLT-Exterior.
    - b. Certified Landscape Technician - Interior, designated CLT-Interior.
    - c. Certified Ornamental Landscape Professional, designated COLP.
  - 5. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.
- B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

- C. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.
1. Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60.
  2. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling; with depth, location, and number of samples to be taken per instructions from Architect. A minimum of three representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.
  3. Report suitability of tested soil for plant growth.
    - a. Based upon the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
    - b. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.
- D. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.
1. Selection of plants purchased under allowances will be made by Architect, who will tag plants at their place of growth before they are prepared for transplanting.
- E. Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.
1. Trees and Shrubs: Measure with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Take height measurements from or near the top of the root flare for field-grown stock and container grown stock. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip to tip. Take caliper measurements 6 inches above the root flare for trees up to 4-inch caliper size, and 12 inches above the root flare for larger sizes.
  2. Other Plants: Measure with stems, petioles, and foliage in their normal position.
- F. Plant Material Observation: Architect may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. Architect retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and to reject

unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.

1. Notify Architect of sources of planting materials seven days in advance of delivery to site.

G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### **1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable.
- B. Bulk Materials:
1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
  2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
  3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.
- C. Deliver bare-root stock plants freshly dug. Immediately after digging up bare-root stock, pack root system in wet straw, hay, or other suitable material to keep root system moist until planting.
- D. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.
- E. Handle planting stock by root ball.
- F. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
1. Heel-in bare-root stock. Soak roots that are in dry condition in water for two hours. Reject dried-out plants.
  2. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
  3. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.

4. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.

#### **1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work.
- B. Interruption of Existing Services or Utilities: Do not interrupt services or utilities to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary services or utilities according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Landscape Architect and Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of each service or utility.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of services or utilities without Owner's written permission.
- C. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- E. Coordination with Turf Areas (Lawns): Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf areas unless otherwise indicated.
  1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf areas, protect turf areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

#### **1.11 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
    - b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
    - c. Faulty performance of tree stabilization, edgings, tree grates.

- d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
- 2. Warranty Periods from Date of Planting Completion:
  - a. Trees, Shrubs, and Ornamental Grasses: 12 months.
  - b. Ground Covers, Perennials, and Other Plants: 12 months.
- 3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:
  - a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
  - b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
  - c. A limit of one replacement of each plant will be required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.
  - d. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced plant material.

## **1.12 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Initial Maintenance Service for Trees and Shrubs: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established but for not less than maintenance period below.
  - 1. Maintenance Period: Three months from date of planting completion.
- B. Initial Maintenance Service for Ground Cover and Other Plants: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established but for not less than maintenance period below.
  - 1. Maintenance Period: Three months from date of planting completion.
- C. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PLANT MATERIAL**

- A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule or Plant Legend shown on Drawings

Plants



and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.

1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch in diameter; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.
  2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.
- C. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which shall begin at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.
- D. Labeling: Label each plant of each variety, size, and caliper with a securely attached, water-proof tag bearing legible designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant as shown on Drawings.
- E. If formal arrangements or consecutive order of plants is shown on Drawings, select stock for uniform height and spread, and number the labels to assure symmetry in planting.

## **2.02 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS**

- A. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
1. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 8 sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through No. 60 sieve.
  2. Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone.
- B. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, and containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 6 sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through No. 40 sieve.
- C. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.
- D. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.

- E. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
- F. Agricultural Gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through No. 50 sieve.
- G. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, and free of toxic materials.
- H. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.
- I. Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

### **2.03 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS**

- A. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 3/4-inch sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:
  - 1. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.
  - 2. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
- B. Sphagnum Peat: Partially decomposed sphagnum peat moss, finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8.
- C. Muck Peat: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.
- D. Wood Derivatives: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture and free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
  - 1. In lieu of decomposed wood derivatives, mix partially decomposed wood derivatives with ammonium nitrate at a minimum rate of 0.15 lb/cu. ft. of loose sawdust or ground bark, or with ammonium sulfate at a minimum rate of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. of loose sawdust or ground bark.
- E. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, debris, and material harmful to plant growth.

### **2.04 FERTILIZERS**

- A. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 4 percent nitrogen and 20 percent phosphoric acid.

- B. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; a minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.
- C. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:
  - 1. Composition: 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight.
- D. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
  - 1. Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 10 percent potassium, by weight.
- E. Planting Tablets: Tightly compressed chip type, long-lasting, slow-release, commercial-grade planting fertilizer in tablet form. Tablets shall break down with soil bacteria, converting nutrients into a form that can be absorbed by plant roots.
  - 1. Size: see detail on L-101.
  - 2. Nutrient Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 5 percent potassium, by weight plus micronutrients.

## **2.05 PLANTING SOILS**

- A. Planting Soil : Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions with the duff layer retained during excavation process and stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of native surface topsoil to produce viable planting soil. Remove stones, roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, 1 inch or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
  - 1. Supplement with planting soil when quantities are insufficient. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained construction or mining sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches deep; do not obtain from bogs or marshes.

## **2.06 MULCHES**

- A. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:
  - 1. Type: Shredded hardwood Retain first subparagraph below if retaining any of first three options in subparagraph above; revise to suit Project.
  - 2. Size Range: 3 inches maximum, 1/2 inch minimum.

3. Color: Natural.

## **2.07 WEED-CONTROL BARRIERS**

- A. Nonwoven Geotextile Filter Fabric: Polypropylene or polyester fabric, 3 oz./sq. yd. minimum, composed of fibers formed into a stable network so that fibers retain their relative position. Fabric shall be inert to biological degradation and resist naturally-encountered chemicals, alkalis, and acids.
- B. Composite Fabric: Woven, needle-punched polypropylene substrate bonded to a nonwoven polypropylene fabric, 4.8 oz./sq. yd.

## **2.08 PESTICIDES**

- A. General: Pesticide registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

## **2.09 LANDSCAPE EDGINGS**

- A. Aluminum Edging: Standard-profile extruded-aluminum edging, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6, fabricated in standard lengths with interlocking sections with loops stamped from face of sections to receive stakes.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Curv-Rite, Inc.
    - b. Permaloc Corporation.
    - c. Russell, J. D. Company (The).
    - d. Sure-Loc Edging Corporation.
  3. Edging Size: 3/16 inch wide by 4 inches deep
  4. Stakes: Aluminum, ASTM B 221, Alloy 6061-T6, approximately 1-1/2 inches wide by 12 inches long.

- 5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint.
- 6. Paint Color: Black

## **2.10 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS**

- A. Antidesiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Burlap: Non-synthetic, biodegradable.
- C. Planter Drainage Gravel: Washed, sound crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 8.
- D. Planter Filter Fabric: Woven geotextile manufactured for separation applications and made of polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fibers or combination of them.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas to receive plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance.
  - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
  - 2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
  - 3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
  - 4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.

- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
- C. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Architect's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.
- D. Lay out plants at locations directed by Architect. Stake locations of individual trees and shrubs and outline areas for multiple plantings.
- E. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.
  - 1. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.
- F. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.

### **3.03 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT**

- A. Loosen subgrade of planting areas to a minimum depth of 8 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
  - 1. Apply superphosphate fertilizer directly to subgrade before loosening.
  - 2. Thoroughly blend planting soil off-site before spreading topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.
    - a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
    - b. Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
  - 3. Spread planting soil to a depth of 8 inches but not less than required to meet finish grades after natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
    - a. Spread approximately one-half the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
- B. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.
- C. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

### **3.04 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS**

- A. Planting Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 45-degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides are not acceptable. Trim perimeter of bottom leaving center area of bottom raised slightly to support root ball and assist in drainage away from center. Do not further disturb base. Ensure that root ball will sit on undisturbed base soil to prevent settling. Scarify sides of planting pit smeared or smoothed during excavation.
  - 1. Excavate approximately three times as wide as ball diameter for balled and burlapped, container-grown stock.
- B. Subsoil and topsoil removed from excavations may be used as planting soil.
- C. Fill excavations with water and allow to percolate away before positioning trees and shrubs.

### **3.05 TREE, SHRUB PLANTING**

- A. Before planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the top-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that root ball still meets size requirements.
- B. Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.
- C. Set balled and burlapped stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 2 inches above adjacent finish grades.
  - 1. Use planting soil for backfill.
  - 2. After placing some backfill around root ball to stabilize plant, carefully cut and remove burlap, rope, and wire baskets from tops of root balls and from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
  - 3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
  - 4. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
  - 5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
- D. Set balled and potted, container-grown stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 2 inches above adjacent finish grades.
  - 1. Use planting soil for backfill.

2. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant.
  3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
  4. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
  5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
- E. When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope; the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.

### **3.06 MECHANIZED TREE SPADE PLANTING**

- A. Trees may be planted with an approved mechanized tree spade at the designated locations. Do not use tree spade to move trees larger than the maximum size allowed for a similar field-grown, balled-and-burlapped root-ball diameter according to ANSI Z60.1, or larger than the manufacturer's maximum size recommendation for the tree spade being used, whichever is smaller.
- B. When extracting the tree, center the trunk within the tree spade and move tree with a solid ball of earth.
- C. Cut exposed roots cleanly during transplanting operations.
- D. Use the same tree spade to excavate the planting hole as was used to extract and transport the tree.
- E. Plant trees as shown on Drawings, following procedures in "Tree, Shrub, and Vine Planting" Article.
- F. Where possible, orient the tree in the same direction as in its original location.

### **3.07 TREE, SHRUB PRUNING**

- A. Remove only dead, dying, or broken branches. Do not prune for shape.
- B. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines as directed by Architect.
- C. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines according to standard professional horticultural and arboricultural practices. Unless otherwise indicated by Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured, dying, or dead branches from trees and shrubs; and prune to retain natural character.
- D. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.



---

### 3.08 TREE STABILIZATION

- A. Install trunk stabilization as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Upright Staking and Tying: Stake trees of 2- through 5-inch caliper. Stake trees of less than 2-inch caliper only as required to prevent wind tip out. Use a minimum of two stakes of length required to penetrate at least 18 inches below bottom of backfilled excavation and to extend at least 72 inches above grade. Set vertical stakes and space to avoid penetrating root balls or root masses.
  - 2. Use two stakes for trees up to 12 feet high and 2-1/2 inches or less in caliper; three stakes for trees less than 14 feet high and up to 4 inches in caliper. Space stakes equally around trees.
  - 3. Support trees with two strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
- B. Staking and Guying: Stake and guy trees more than 14 feet in height and more than 3 inches in caliper unless otherwise indicated. Securely attach no fewer than three guys to stakes 30 inches long, driven to grade.
  - 1. Site-Fabricated Staking-and-Guying Method:
    - a. For trees more than 6 inches in caliper, anchor guys to wood deadmen buried at least 36 inches below grade. Provide turnbuckle for each guy wire and tighten securely.
    - b. Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
    - c. Support trees with strands of cable or multiple strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
    - d. Attach flags to each guy wire, 30 inches above finish grade.
    - e. Paint turnbuckles with luminescent white paint.
  - 2. Proprietary Staking and Guying Device: Install staking and guying system sized and positioned as recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.09 GROUND COVER AND PLANT PLANTING

- A. Set out and space ground cover and plants other than trees, shrubs, and vines as indicated on drawings in even rows with triangular spacing.
- B. Use planting soil for backfill.

- C. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots.
- D. For rooted cutting plants supplied in flats, plant each in a manner that will minimally disturb the root system but to a depth not less than two nodes.
- E. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water.
- F. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.
- G. Protect plants from hot sun and wind; remove protection if plants show evidence of recovery from transplanting shock.

### **3.10 PLANTING AREA MULCHING**

- A. Install weed-control barriers before mulching according to manufacturer's written instructions. Completely cover area to be mulched, overlapping edges a minimum of 6 inches 12 and secure seams with galvanized pins.
- B. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated.
- C. Trees and Tree-like Shrubs in Turf Areas: see details on landscape sheet.
- D. Organic Mulch in Planting Areas: see details on landscape sheet.

### **3.11 EDGING INSTALLATION**

- A. Aluminum Edging: Install aluminum edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor with aluminum stakes spaced approximately 36 inches apart, driven below top elevation of edging.

### **3.12 PLANT MAINTENANCE**

- A. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.
- B. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
- C. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

### **3.13 PESTICIDE APPLICATION**

- A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply to tree, shrub, and ground-cover areas in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not apply to seeded areas.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

### **3.14 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION**

- A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.
- B. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.
- C. After installation and before Substantial Completion, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.

### **3.15 DISPOSAL**

- A. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 329300**



## **SECTION 330500**

### **COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping joining materials.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Sleeves.
  - 5. Identification devices.
  - 6. Grout.
  - 7. Flowable fill.
  - 8. Piped utility demolition.
  - 9. Piping system common requirements.
  - 10. Equipment installation common requirements.
  - 11. Painting.
  - 12. Concrete bases.
  - 13. Metal supports and anchorages.

##### **1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
- B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- C. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- D. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### **1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Dielectric fittings.
  - 2. Identification devices.

#### **1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Steel Piping Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

#### **1.08 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting if devices are applied to surfaces.
- C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." And Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
- H. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - 3. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

## **2.02 TRANSITION FITTINGS**

- A. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller:
  - 1. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  - 2. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.
- C. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
    - f. Viking Johnson.
  3. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Spears Manufacturing Co.
  3. Description: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint or threaded end.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
    - c. Spears Manufacturing Co.



3. Description: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass or stainless-steel threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
- F. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Fernco, Inc.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company.
    - d. Plastic Oddities.
  3. Description: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

### **2.03 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - d. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
    - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  3. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 and smaller.

- a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum and 250 psig at 180 deg F.
  - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 3. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 and larger.
    - a. Pressure Rating 300 psig
    - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 3. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
    - b. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - c. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - d. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Calpico, Inc.
  - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
3. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 and smaller.
  - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded.

F. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Perfection Corporation.
  - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
3. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
  - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

**2.04 SLEEVES**

- A. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

- D. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Molded PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## **2.05 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES**

- A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other utilities Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
  - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
  - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
- C. Stencils: Standard stencils prepared with letter sizes complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1. Minimum letter height is 1-1/4 inches for ducts, and 3/4 inch for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Material: Fiberboard.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd-gloss black enamel, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Snap-on Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Pressure-Sensitive Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, color-coded, pressure-sensitive-vinyl type with permanent adhesive.
- F. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers, extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
- G. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
- H. Lettering: Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by Architect.

- I. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
  - 1. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions of flow, or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- J. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive vinyl tape, at least 3 mils thick.
  - 1. Width: 1-1/2 inches on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than 6 inches; 2-1/2 inches for larger pipes.
  - 2. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch sequenced numbers. Include 5/32-inch hole for fastener.
  - 1. Material: 0.032-inch- thick, polished brass or aluminum.
  - 2. Material: 0.0375-inch- thick stainless steel.
  - 3. Material: 3/32-inch- thick plastic laminate with 2 black surfaces and a white inner layer.
  - 4. Material: Valve manufacturer's standard solid plastic.
  - 5. Size: 1-1/2 inches in diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Shape: As indicated for each piping system.
- L. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link or beaded chain; or brass S-hooks.
- M. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
  - 1. Engraving: Engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Thickness: 1/16 inch, for units up to 20 sq. in. or 8 inches in length, and 1/8 inch for larger units.
  - 4. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type permanent adhesive.
- N. Plastic Equipment Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:
  - 1. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
  - 2. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.

3. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
  4. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet criteria above.
  5. Hazardous Equipment: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
  6. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible. Include the following:
    - a. Name and plan number.
    - b. Equipment service.
    - c. Design capacity.
    - d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
  7. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches for equipment.
- O. Plasticized Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with mat finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3-1/4 by 5-5/8 inches
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommets and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.
- P. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in piped utility identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of piped utility systems and equipment.
1. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

## **2.06 GROUT**

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
1. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **2.07 FLOWABLE FILL**

- A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, portland.

2. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft.
3. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.
4. Retain subparagraph above or first two subparagraphs below.
5. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine.
6. Admixture: ASTM C 618, fly-ash mineral.
7. Water: Comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
8. Strength: 100 to 200 psig at 28 days.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PIPED UTILITY DEMOLITION**

- A. Refer to Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational.
  5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

#### **3.02 DIELECTRIC FITTING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Dry Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
  1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric unions.
  2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Dielectric flanges.
- B. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
  1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric couplings or dielectric nipples.
  2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Dielectric nipples.

3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8: Dielectric nipples or dielectric flange kits.
4. NPS 10 and NPS 12: Dielectric flange kits.

### **3.03 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- I. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- J. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- K. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
    - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
- L. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- M. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

### **3.04 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION**



- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B 32.
- I. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
  - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- L. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- M. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- N. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  1. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  2. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- O. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.05 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  3. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

### **3.06 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION**

- A. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- C. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

### **3.07 PAINTING**

- A. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### **3.08 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
  - 1. Stenciled Markers: According to ASME A13.1.
  - 2. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot noninsulated piping.
  - 3. Locate pipe markers on exposed piping according to the following:
    - a. Near each valve and control device.
    - b. Near each branch, excluding short takeoffs for equipment and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch if flow pattern is not obvious.
    - c. Near locations where pipes pass through walls or floors or enter inaccessible enclosures.
    - d. At manholes and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
    - e. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
- B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of equipment.
  - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch high for name of unit if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch high for distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths of size of principal lettering.
  - 2. Text of Signs: Provide name of identified unit. Include text to distinguish among multiple units, inform user of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
- C. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices that become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.

### **3.09 CONCRETE BASES**

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of base.

3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use 4000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." And Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### **3.10 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES**

- A. Refer to Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor piped utility materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### **3.11 GROUTING**

- A. Mix and install grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

**END OF SECTION 330500**

## **SECTION 334100**

### **STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Nonpressure transition couplings.
  - 3. Stormwater inlets.
  - 4. Pipe outlets.

##### **1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### **1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

##### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Do not store pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle catch basins according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

##### **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Engineer no fewer than 2 days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Engineer's written permission.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Corrugated PE Pipe and Fittings NPS 12 to NPS 60: AASHTO M 294M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
  - 1. Silt-tight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Soil-tight Couplings: AASHTO M 294M, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

## **2.02 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. PVC Cellular-Core Piping:
  - 1. PVC Cellular-Core Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 891, Sewer and Drain Series, PS 50 minimum stiffness, PVC cellular-core pipe with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
  - 2. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC socket-type fittings.
- B. PVC Corrugated Sewer Piping:
  - 1. Pipe: ASTM F 949, PVC, corrugated pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
  - 2. Fittings: ASTM F 949, PVC molded or fabricated, socket type.
  - 3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- C. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping:
  - 1. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, PVC Type PSM sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
  - 2. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
  - 3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

## **2.03 NONPRESSURE TRANSITION COUPLINGS**

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
  - 1. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443, rubber.
  - 2. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
  - 3. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.

- b. Fernco Inc.
  - c. Logan Clay Pipe.
  - d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - e. NDS Inc.
  - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
2. Description: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EARTHWORK**

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### **3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
- 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
  - 2. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

#### **3.03 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:

1. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasketed joints

### **3.04 DRAIN INSTALLATION**

- A. Install type of drains in locations indicated.
  1. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification drains in all areas. AASHTO H-20 highway load rated.
- B. Embed drains in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
- C. Fasten grates to drains as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Set drain frames and covers with tops flush with pavement surface.
- E. Assemble trench sections with flanged joints.
- F. Embed trench sections in 4-inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

### **3.05 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  2. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

### **3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  1. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.



2. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
3. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
  1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate report for each test.
  5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
    - a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

### **3.07 CLEANING**

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with potable water.

**END OF SECTION 334100**



## **SECTION 334600**

### **SUBDRAINAGE**

#### **PART 1 GENERAL**

##### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Perforated-wall pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Drainage conduits.
  - 3. Drainage Panels
  - 4. Geotextile filter fabrics.

##### **1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Drainage conduits, including rated capacities.
  - 2. Drainage panels, including rated capacities.
  - 3. Geotextile filter fabrics.

#### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

##### **2.01 PERFORATED-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS**

- A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:
  - 1. NPS 6 and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
  - 2. NPS 8 and Larger: ASTM F 667; AASHTO M 252, Type CP; or AASHTO M 294, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
  - 3. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.
- B. Perforated PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2729, bell-and-spigot ends, for loose joints.

##### **2.02 DRAINAGE CONDUITS**

- A. Single-Pipe Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with perforated corrugated core molded from HDPE complying with ASTM D 3350 and wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
  - a. Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc.
2. Nominal Size: 12 inches high by approximately 1 inch thick.
  - a. Minimum In-Plane Flow: 30 gpm at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
3. Filter Fabric: PP geotextile.
4. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 outlet connection.
5. Couplings: Corrugated HDPE band.

## **2.03 SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. Soil materials are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

## **2.04 WATERPROOFING FELTS**

- A. Material: Comply with ASTM D 226, Type I, asphalt saturated organic felt.

## **2.05 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRICS**

- A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
- B. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament.
  1. Survivability: AASHTO M 288 Class 2.
  2. Styles: Flat and sock.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine surfaces and areas for suitable conditions where subdrainage systems are to be installed.
- B. If subdrainage is required for landscaping, locate and mark existing utilities, underground structures, and aboveground obstructions before beginning installation and avoid disruption and damage of services.
- C. Verify that drainage panels installed as part of foundation wall waterproofing is properly positioned to drain into subdrainage system.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 EARTHWORK**

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### **3.03 FOUNDATION DRAINAGE INSTALLATION**

- A. Place impervious fill material on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing after concrete footing forms have been removed. Place and compact impervious fill to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches deep and 12 inches wide.
- B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.
- D. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with tape.
- E. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for foundation subdrainage.
- F. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
- G. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches of finish grade.
- H. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
- I. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.
- J. Place backfill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Final backfill to finish elevations and slope away from building.

### **3.04 UNDERSLAB DRAINAGE INSTALLATION**

- A. Excavate for underslab drainage system after subgrade material has been compacted but before drainage course has been placed. Include horizontal distance of at least 6 inches between drainage pipe and trench walls. Grade bottom of trench excavations to required slope, and compact to firm, solid bed for drainage system.
- B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.
- D. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with tape.

- E. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for underslab subdrainage.
- F. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
- G. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping with drainage course to elevation of bottom of slab, and compact and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.

### **3.05 LANDSCAPING DRAINAGE INSTALLATION**

- A. Provide trench width to allow installation of drainage conduit. Grade bottom of trench excavations to required slope, and compact to firm, solid bed for drainage system.
- B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.
- D. Install drainage conduits as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for landscaping subdrainage with horizontal distance of at least 6 inches between conduit and trench walls. Wrap drainage conduits without integral geotextile filter fabric with flat-style geotextile filter fabric before installation. Connect fabric sections with tape.
- E. Add drainage course to top of drainage conduits.
- F. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage conduit to within 12 inches of finish grade.
- G. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
- H. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.
- I. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

### **3.06 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.
  - 1. Foundation Subdrainage: Install piping level and with a minimum cover of 36 inches unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Underslab Subdrainage: Install piping level.

3. Retaining-Wall Subdrainage: When water discharges at end of wall into stormwater piping system, install piping level and with a minimum cover of 36 inches unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Landscaping Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
  6. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.
- B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.
- C. Install thermoplastic piping according to ASTM D 2321.

### **3.07 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Join perforated PE pipe and fittings with couplings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose banded, coupled, or push-on joints.
- B. Join perforated PVC sewer pipe and fittings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose bell-and-spigot, push-on joints.
- C. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.

### **3.08 BACKWATER VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Install horizontal backwater valves in header piping downstream from perforated subdrainage piping.
- C. Install horizontal backwater valves in manholes or pits where indicated.

### **3.09 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Cleanouts for Foundation, Retaining Wall and Landscaping Subdrainage:
1. Install cleanouts from piping to grade. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.

2. In vehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set top of cleanout flush with grade.
  3. In nonvehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 PVC pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 12 by 12 by 4 inches deep. Set top of cleanout 1 inch above grade.
- C. Cleanouts for Underslab Subdrainage:
1. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from piping to top of slab. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
  2. Use NPS 4 cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout flush with top of slab.

### **3.10 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to building's solid-wall-piping storm drainage system.
- C. Where required, connect low elevations of foundation subdrainage to stormwater sump pumps.

### **3.11 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping. Comply with requirements for underground warning tapes specified in specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
1. Install PE warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Install detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

### **3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  1. After installing drainage course to top of piping, test drain piping with water to ensure free flow before backfilling.
  2. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.
- B. Drain piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.



### **3.13 CLEANING**

- A. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 334600**